
Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index

Devised by Melvil Dewey

EDITION 23

Edited by

Joan S. Mitchell, Editor in Chief

Julianne Beall, Assistant Editor

Rebecca Green, Assistant Editor

Giles Martin, Assistant Editor

Michael Panzer, Assistant Editor

VOLUME 3

Schedules 600–999

OCLC

OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc.

Dublin, Ohio

2011

© 2011 OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc. ("OCLC")

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of OCLC.

Previous editions of the Dewey Decimal Classification:

Copyright 1876, 1885, 1911, 1913, 1915, 1919

by Melvil Dewey

Copyright 1888, 1891, 1894, 1899

by Library Bureau

Copyright 1922, 1927, 1932, 1942, 1952, 1958

by Lake Placid Club Education Foundation

Copyright 1951, 1965, 1967, 1971

by Forest Press, Inc.

© 1979 by Forest Press

A Division of the Lake Placid Education Foundation

© 1989, 1996, 2003

OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc.

All copyright rights in Edition 23 and all previous editions of the Dewey Decimal Classification system are owned by OCLC. DDC, Dewey, Dewey Decimal Classification, and WebDewey are registered trademarks and/or service marks of OCLC. Licensing information regarding the Dewey Decimal Classification system is available at www.oclc.org/dewey.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Dewey, Melvil, 1851-1931.

Dewey decimal classification and relative index / devised by Melvil Dewey. — Ed. 23 / edited by Joan S. Mitchell, Editor in Chief ; Julianne Beall, Assistant Editor ; Rebecca Green, Assistant Editor ; Giles Martin, Assistant Editor ; Michael Panzer, Assistant Editor.

v. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

Contents: v. I. Manual. Tables — v. 2. Schedules 000-599 — v. 3. Schedules 600-999 — v. 4.

Relative index.

ISBN-13: 978-1-910608-81-4 (set : alk. paper)

ISBN-10: 1-910608-81-5 (set : alk. paper)

ISBN-13: 978-1-910608-80-7 (vol. 1 : alk. paper)

ISBN-10: 1-910608-80-7 (vol. 1 : alk. paper)

[etc.]

I. Classification, Dewey decimal. I. Mitchell, Joan S. II. Beall, Julianne, 1946- III. Green, Rebecca, 1952- IV. Martin, Giles. V. Panzer, Michael. VI. Title.

Z696.D52 2011

025.4'31—dc22

2011001112

OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc.

6565 Kilgour Place

Dublin, OH 43017-3395 USA

www.oclc.org/dewey



The paper used in this publication meets the requirements of ANSI/NISO Z39.48-1992 (Permanence of Paper).

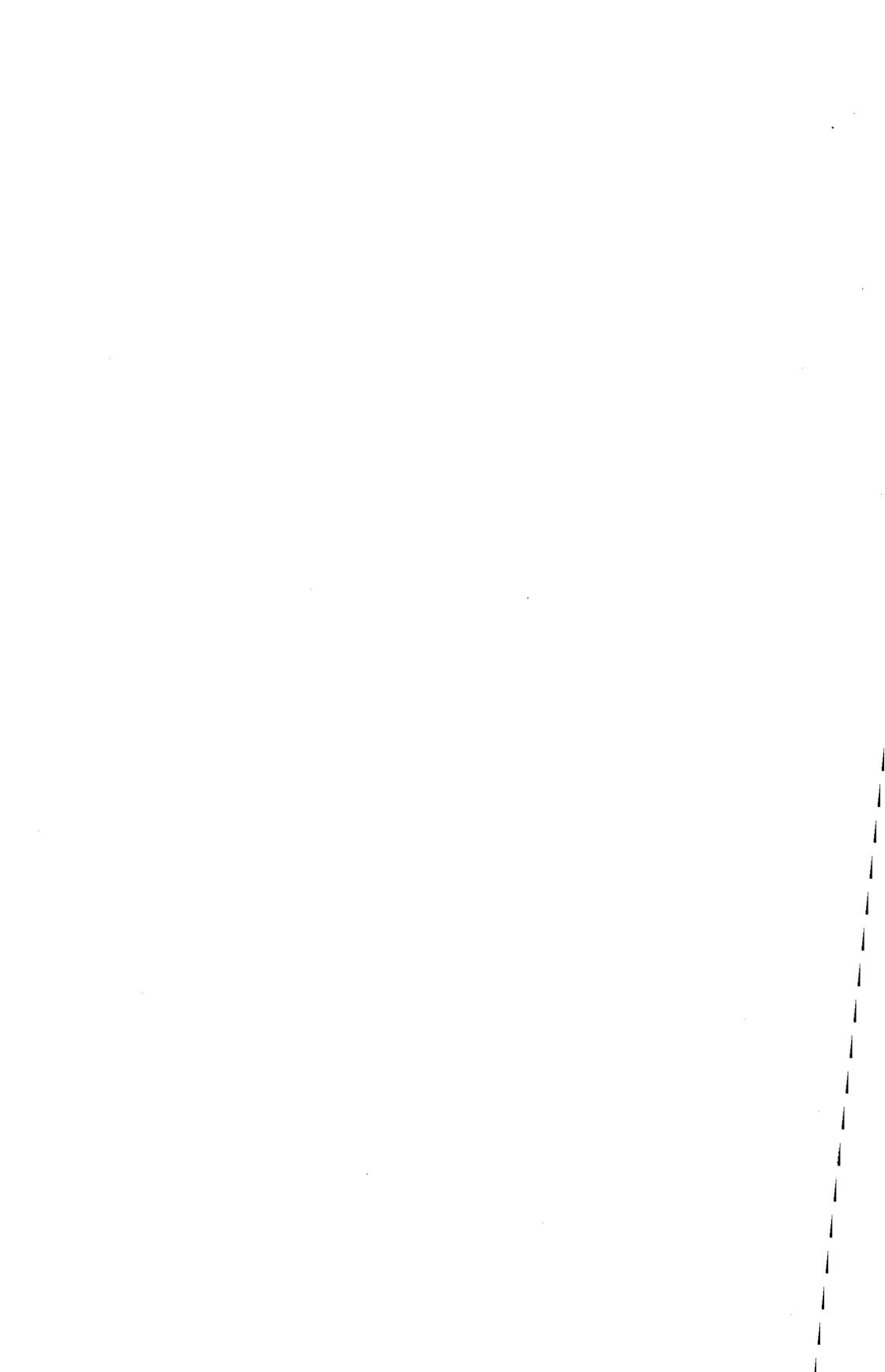
ISBN-13: (set) 978-1-910608-81-4; v. 1 978-1-910608-80-7;
v. 2 978-1-910608-76-0; v. 3 978-1-910608-79-1; v. 4 978-1-910608-78-4

ISBN-10: (set) 1-910608-81-5; v. 1 1-910608-80-7; v. 2 1-910608-76-9;
v. 3 1-910608-79-3; v. 4 1-910608-78-5



Recycled paper

Schedules



600

600 Technology (Applied sciences)

Class here inventions

See also 303.483 for technology as a cause of cultural change; also 306.46 for sociology of technology; also 338.1–338.4 for economic aspects of industries based on specific technologies; also 338.926 for technology transfer; also 338.927 for appropriate technology

See Manual at 300 vs. 600; also at 363 vs. 302–307, 333.7, 570–590, 600; also at 363.1 vs. 600; also at 583–585 vs. 600

SUMMARY

- 601 Philosophy and theory
- 602 Miscellany
- 603 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances
- 604 Technical drawing, hazardous materials technology; groups of people
- 605 Serial publications
- 606 Organizations
- 607 Education, research, related topics
- 608 Patents
- 609 History, geographic treatment, biography

- 610 Medicine and health
 - .1–.9 [Standard subdivisions; group practice; medical personnel and relationships; nursing; services of allied health personnel]
- 611 Human anatomy, cytology, histology
- 612 Human physiology
- 613 Personal health and safety
- 614 Forensic medicine; incidence of injuries, wounds, disease; public preventive medicine
- 615 Pharmacology and therapeutics
- 616 Diseases
- 617 Surgery, regional medicine, dentistry, ophthalmology, otology, audiology
- 618 Gynecology, obstetrics, pediatrics, geriatrics

- 620 Engineering and allied operations
 - .001–.009 Standard subdivisions and engineering design and quality
 - .1–.8 [Engineering mechanics and materials, vibrations, engineering for geographic environments, fine particle and remote control technology, surface engineering, nanotechnology, human factors and safety engineering]
- 621 Applied physics
- 622 Mining and related operations
- 623 Military and nautical engineering
- 624 Civil engineering
- 625 Engineering of railroads and roads
- 627 Hydraulic engineering
- 628 Sanitary engineering
- 629 Other branches of engineering

- 630 **Agriculture and related technologies**
 - .1-.9 **Standard subdivisions**
 - 631 **Specific techniques; apparatus, equipment, materials**
 - 632 **Plant injuries, diseases, pests**
 - 633 **Field and plantation crops**
 - 634 **Orchards, fruits, forestry**
 - 635 **Garden crops (Horticulture)**
 - 636 **Animal husbandry**
 - 637 **Processing dairy and related products**
 - 638 **Insect culture**
 - 639 **Hunting, fishing, conservation, related technologies**
- 640 **Home and family management**
 - .1-.9 **Standard subdivisions; specific aspects of household management; evaluation and purchasing guides**
 - 641 **Food and drink**
 - 642 **Meals and table service**
 - 643 **Housing and household equipment**
 - 644 **Household utilities**
 - 645 **Household furnishings**
 - 646 **Sewing, clothing, management of personal and family life**
 - 647 **Management of public households (Institutional housekeeping)**
 - 648 **Housekeeping**
 - 649 **Child rearing; home care of people with disabilities and illnesses**
- 650 **Management and auxiliary services**
 - .01-.09 **Standard subdivisions**
 - .1 **Personal success in business**
 - 651 **Office services**
 - 652 **Processes of written communication**
 - 653 **Shorthand**
 - 657 **Accounting**
 - 658 **General management**
 - 659 **Advertising and public relations**
- 660 **Chemical engineering and related technologies**
 - .01-.09 **Standard subdivisions and chemical technologies of specific states of matter**
 - .2-.7 **[General topics in chemical engineering, biotechnology, industrial stoichiometry]**
 - 661 **Technology of industrial chemicals**
 - 662 **Technology of explosives, fuels, related products**
 - 663 **Beverage technology**
 - 664 **Food technology**
 - 665 **Technology of industrial oils, fats, waxes, gases**
 - 666 **Ceramic and allied technologies**
 - 667 **Cleaning, color, coating, related technologies**
 - 668 **Technology of other organic products**
 - 669 **Metallurgy**
- 670 **Manufacturing**
 - .1-.9 **Standard subdivisions and special topics of manufacturing**
 - 671 **Metalworking processes and primary metal products**
 - 672 **Iron, steel, other iron alloys**
 - 673 **Nonferrous metals**
 - 674 **Lumber processing, wood products, cork**
 - 675 **Leather and fur processing**
 - 676 **Pulp and paper technology**
 - 677 **Textiles**
 - 678 **Elastomers and elastomer products**
 - 679 **Other products of specific kinds of materials**

- 680 **Manufacture of products for specific uses**
- 681 **Precision instruments and other devices**
- 682 **Small forge work (Blacksmithing)**
- 683 **Hardware and household appliances**
- 684 **Furnishings and home workshops**
- 685 **Leather and fur goods, and related products**
- 686 **Printing and related activities**
- 687 **Clothing and accessories**
- 688 **Other final products, and packaging technology**

- 690 **Construction of buildings**
- .01-.09 **Standard subdivisions**
- .1-.8 **Special topics of construction of buildings**
- 691 **Building materials**
- 692 **Auxiliary construction practices**
- 693 **Construction in specific types of materials and for specific purposes**
- 694 **Wood construction**
- 695 **Roof covering**
- 696 **Utilities**
- 697 **Heating, ventilating, air-conditioning engineering**
- 698 **Detail finishing**

601 **Philosophy and theory**

602 **Miscellany**

- .18 **Standards**
 - Interdisciplinary collections of standards relocated to 389.6
- [.72] **Patents**
 - Do not use; class in 608
- .75 **Trademarks and service marks**
 - Class here comprehensive works on trademarks generally used for products rather than services
 - Class interdisciplinary works on trademarks and service marks in 929.95

.9 **Commercial miscellany**

Class commercial miscellany of products and services used in individual and family living in 640.29; class commercial miscellany of manufactured products in 670.29; class interdisciplinary commercial miscellany in 381.029

603 **Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances**

604 **Technical drawing, hazardous materials technology; groups of people**

.2 **Technical drawing**

Class here engineering graphics, mechanical drawing

For architectural drawing, see 720.284. For technical drawing in a specific subject, see the subject, e.g., map drawing 526, electronic drafting 621.381

See also 006.6 for computer graphics

- .22 Arrangement and organization of drafting rooms, preservation and storage of drawings
- .24 Specific drafting procedures and conventions
- .242 Production illustration
 - Nontechnical graphic representations
- .243 Dimensioning; lettering, titling; shades, shadows
- .245 Projections
 - Including isometric, orthographic, spherical projections; perspectives
- .25 Preparation and reading of copies
 - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 - Including blueprints, photostats
 - See also 686.42 for printing blueprints*

.7 Hazardous materials technology

Methods of extracting, manufacturing, processing, utilizing, handling, transporting, storing solids, liquids, gases of corrosive, explosive, flammable, infectious, radioactive, toxic nature

Class interdisciplinary works on hazardous materials in 363.17. Class technology of a specific hazardous material with the technology, e.g., explosives 662.2; class safety techniques for a specific application of hazardous materials with the application outside 300, plus notation 0289 from Table 1, e.g., safety techniques in working with hazardous paving materials 625.80289 (*not* 363.179)

See Manual at 604.7 vs. 660.2804

.8 Groups of people

Add to base number 604.8 the numbers following —08 in notation 081–089 from Table 1, e.g., women 604.82

605 Serial publications

606 Organizations

[.8] Management

Do not use; class in 658

607 Education, research, related topics

Notation 07 from Table 1 as modified below

- .01–.03 Education, research, related topics in areas, regions, places in general; in ancient world

Add to base number 607.0 notation 1–3 from Table 2, e.g., technical training in ancient Rome 607.0376

[.04--.09] Education, research, related topics in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 607.4–607.9

.1 Education

.2 Research

Class here industrial, products research

Class product planning in management in 658.5038; class management of research for new and improved products in 658.57

[.201--.209] Geographic treatment of research

Do not use; class in 607.21–607.29

.21 Research in areas, regions, places in general

Do not use for research methods; class in 607.2

Add to base number 607.21 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., industrial research in Western Hemisphere 607.21812

Use of this number for historical, descriptive, experimental methods in areas, regions, places in general discontinued; class in 607.2

[.22] Historical research

Do not use; class in 607.2

.23 Research in the ancient world

Do not use for descriptive research; class in 607.2

Add to base number 607.23 the numbers following —3 in notation 31–39 from Table 2, e.g., research in ancient Egypt 607.232

Use of this number for historical, descriptive, experimental methods in the ancient world discontinued; class in 607.2

.24 Research in Europe

Do not use for experimental research; class in 607.2

Add to base number 607.24 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–49 from Table 2, e.g., industrial research in Norway 607.2481

Use of this number for historical, descriptive, experimental methods in Europe discontinued; class in 607.2

.25 Research in Asia

Add to base number 607.25 the numbers following —5 in notation 51–59 from Table 2, e.g., industrial research in Japan 607.252

Use of this number for historical, descriptive, experimental methods in Asia discontinued; class in 607.2

- .26 **Research in Africa**
- Add to base number 607.26 the numbers following —6 in notation 61–69 from Table 2, e.g., industrial research in South Africa 607.268
- Use of this number for historical, descriptive, experimental methods in Africa discontinued; class in 607.2
- .27 **Research in North America**
- Do not use for statistical methods; class in 607.2
- Add to base number 607.27 the numbers following —7 in notation 71–79 from Table 2, e.g., industrial research in Canada 607.271
- Use of this number for historical, descriptive, experimental methods in North America discontinued; class in 607.2
- .28 **Research in South America**
- Do not use for presentation of statistical data; class in 607.2
- Add to base number 607.28 the numbers following —7 in notation 81–89 from Table 2, e.g., industrial research in Argentina 607.282
- Use of this number for historical, descriptive, experimental methods in South America discontinued; class in 607.2
- .29 **Research in other parts of the world**
- Add to base number 607.29 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–99 from Table 2, e.g., industrial research in New Zealand 607.2993
- Use of this number for historical, descriptive, experimental methods in other parts of the world discontinued; class in 607.2
- .3 **Other aspects of education, research, related topics**
- Add to base number 607.3 the numbers following —07 in notation 074–079 from Table 1, e.g., fairs and exhibitions 607.34
- Class commercial aspects of fairs and exhibitions in 381.1; class interdisciplinary works on fairs and exhibitions in 907.4
- .4–9 **Education, research, related topics in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**
- Do not use for museums, collections, exhibits and their activities and services; review and exercise; use of apparatus and equipment in study and teaching; competitions, festivals, awards, financial support; class in 607.3
- Add to base number 607 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., education and research in Japan 607.52

608 Patents

Do not use for history and description of technology with respect to groups of people; class in 604.8

Class here interdisciplinary collections of patents

Class interdisciplinary works on patents in 346.0486

For patents in a specific subject, see the subject, plus notation 0272 from Table 1, e.g., patents in chemical engineering 660.0272

Use of this number for inventions discontinued; class in 600

[.09] History, geographic treatment, biography

Do not use for history and geographic treatment; class in 608.7

[.092] Biography

Do not use; class in 609.2

.7 History and geographic treatment**[.700 1–.700 8] Standard subdivisions**

Do not use; class in 608.01–608.08

[.700 9] History, geographic treatment, biography

Do not use for history and geographic treatment; class in 608.7

[.700 92] Biography

Do not use; class in 609.2

.701–.705 Historical periods

Add to base number 608.70 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., 20th century patents 608.704

.71 Areas, regions, places in general; oceans and seas

Add to base number 608.71 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–18 from Table 2, e.g., patents from developing regions 608.71724

[.72] Biography of inventors, of patentees

Relocated to 609.2

.73–.79 Specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 608.7 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., patents from Brazil 608.781

609 History, geographic treatment, biography

Class here technological aspects of industrial archaeology

Class history and geographic treatment of production and economic aspects of industrial archaeology in 338.09; class history of industrial archaeology in 900

See Manual at 300 vs. 600: Interdisciplinary works

.2 Biography

Class here biography of inventors, of patentees [*both formerly also 608.72*]

610 Medicine and health

Standard subdivisions are added for medicine and health together, for medicine alone

Class here technology of medical services

Class social welfare problems of and services to people with physical illness, interdisciplinary works on social provision of medical services and technology of medical services in 362.1; class home care by nonprofessionals of people with illnesses and disabilities in 649.8

For veterinary medicine, see 636.089

See Manual at 362.1–362.4 vs. 610; also at 571–573 vs. 610; also at 610 vs. 616

SUMMARY

- 610.1–.9** [Standard subdivisions; group practice; medical personnel and relationships; nursing; services of allied health personnel]
- 611 Human anatomy, cytology, histology**
- .001–.009 Standard subdivisions
- .01 Anatomic embryology, cytology, histology
- .1 Cardiovascular organs
- .2 Respiratory organs
- .3 Digestive tract organs
- .4 Hematopoietic, lymphatic, glandular systems
- .6 Urogenital system
- .7 Musculoskeletal system, integument
- .8 Nervous system
- .9 Regional and topographical anatomy
- 612 Human physiology**
- .001–.009 Standard subdivisions
- .01–.04 [Biophysics, biochemistry, control processes, tissue and organ culture, physiology of specific activities]
- .1 Circulatory system
- .2 Respiratory system
- .3 Digestive system
- .4 Hematopoietic, lymphatic, glandular, urinary systems
- .6 Reproduction, development, maturation
- .7 Musculoskeletal system, integument
- .8 Nervous system
- .9 Regional physiology
- 613 Personal health and safety**
- .04 Personal health of people by gender, sex, or age group
- .1 Environmental factors
- .2 Dietetics
- .4 Personal cleanliness and related topics
- .5 Artificial environments
- .6 Personal safety and special topics of health
- .7 Physical fitness
- .8 Substance abuse (Drug abuse)
- .9 Birth control, reproductive technology, sex hygiene, sexual techniques

- 614 Forensic medicine; incidence of injuries, wounds, disease; public preventive medicine
- .1 Forensic medicine
 - .3 Incidence of injuries and wounds
 - .4 Incidence of and public measures to prevent disease
 - .5 Incidence of and public measures to prevent specific diseases and kinds of diseases
 - .6 Disposal of the dead
- 615 Pharmacology and therapeutics
- .1 Drugs (Materia medica)
 - .2 Inorganic drugs
 - .3 Organic drugs
 - .4 Prescription filling
 - .5 Therapeutics
 - .6 Methods of administering drugs
 - .7 Pharmacokinetics
 - .8 Specific therapies and kinds of therapies
 - .9 Toxicology
- 616 Diseases
- .001-.009 Standard subdivisions
 - .02-.09 [General topics of diseases]
 - .1 Diseases of cardiovascular system
 - .2 Diseases of respiratory system
 - .3 Diseases of digestive system
 - .4 Diseases of endocrine, hematopoietic, lymphatic, glandular systems; diseases of male breast
 - .5 Diseases of integument
 - .6 Diseases of urogenital system
 - .7 Diseases of musculoskeletal system
 - .8 Diseases of nervous system and mental disorders
 - .9 Other diseases
- 617 Surgery, regional medicine, dentistry, ophthalmology, otology, audiology
- .001-.008 Standard subdivisions of surgery
 - .02-.09 General topics of surgery; history, geographic treatment, biography of surgery
 - .1 Injuries and wounds
 - .2 Results of injuries and wounds
 - .4 Surgery by systems
 - .5 Regional medicine
 - .6 Dentistry
 - .7 Ophthalmology
 - .8 Otology and audiology
 - .9 Operative surgery and special fields of surgery
- 618 Gynecology, obstetrics, pediatrics, geriatrics
- .01-.09 Standard subdivisions and special topics of gynecology, obstetrics, pediatrics, geriatrics
 - .1 Gynecology
 - .2 Obstetrics
 - .3 Diseases and complications of pregnancy
 - .4 Childbirth
 - .5 Labor complications
 - .6 Normal puerperium
 - .7 Puerperal diseases
 - .8 Obstetrical surgery
 - .9 Pediatrics and geriatrics

[.23] Medicine and health as a profession, occupation, hobby

Do not use; class in 610.69

- .28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
 Class here comprehensive works on biomedical engineering
 For biological aspects of biomedical engineering, see 570.28
- .6 Organizations, management; group practice; medical personnel and relationships**
 Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below
- .65 Group practice
 Class economics of group practice in 338.7–338.8; class social aspects in 362.1042
- .69 Medical personnel and relationships
 Standard subdivisions are added for medical personnel and relationships together, for medical personnel alone
 Nature of duties, characteristics of the professions of medical personnel
 Class here medical missionaries
 Class medical secretaries in 651.3741; class medical records librarians in 651.504261. Class nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships of medical personnel of a specific specialty with the specialty, plus notation 023 from table under 616.1–616.9, notation 023 from table under 617, or notation 023 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g., obstetricians 618.20232, obstetrical nurses 618.20231; class critical appraisal and description of work, individual and collected biographies with the specialty, plus notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., biography of coroners 614.1092, of psychiatrists 616.890092
 For nursing personnel, see 610.73069; for allied health personnel, see 610.737069
- .695 Physicians
- .696 Medical relationships
 Including relationships between medical personnel and patients, between medical personnel and the public, within medical professions
- .7 Education, research, nursing, services of allied health personnel**
 Notation 07 from Table 1 as modified below
- .724 Experimental research
 Class here comprehensive works on experimental biomedical research
 For experimental biology, see 570.724; for clinical trials, see 615.50724; for experimental medicine, see 616.027

- .73 Nursing and services of allied health personnel
- Standard subdivisions are added for nursing and services of allied health personnel together, for nursing alone
- Class here comprehensive works on the nursing process; comprehensive works on nursing care plans, on nursing interventions so long as the works cover both diagnosis and therapy
- For school nursing, see 371.712; for forensic nursing, see 614.1; for patient education by nurses, see 615.5071. For a specific part of the nursing process, a specific part of a nursing care plan, a specific type of nursing intervention, see the part or type in 614–618, e.g., vaccinations provided by nurses 614.47, exercise therapy provided by nurses 615.82, nursing assessment and nursing diagnosis 616.075; for nursing for a specific disease or group of diseases or a specific medical specialty, see the disease or group of diseases or medical specialty in 616–618, plus notation 0231 from table under 616.1–616.9, notation 0231 from table under 617, or notation 0231 from table under 618.1–618.8 if role or work of nursing personnel is emphasized, e.g., a work about cancer nursing that gives much general medical information about cancer 616.994, a work about cancer nursing that focuses on instructions for nurses 616.9940231, a work about geriatric nursing that gives much general information about geriatrics 618.97, a work about geriatric nursing that emphasizes the role and techniques of the geriatric nurse 618.970231*
- [.730 23] Nursing and work of allied health personnel as a profession, occupation, hobby
- Do not use; class in 610.73069
- .730 6 Organizations and personnel
- Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below
- .730 68 Management
- Do not use for management of services of nurses; class in 362.173068
- .730 69 Nursing personnel
- Nature of duties, characteristics of the profession, relationships
- Class here comprehensive works on nursing personnel and allied health personnel
- Class comprehensive works on techniques of nursing operations in 610.73
- For allied health personnel, see 610.737069*
- .730 692 Professional nurses
- Including associate-degree nurses
- Class here nurse practitioners
- Class physician assistants in 610.7372069
- .730 693 Practical nurses
- Including registered nursing assistants

- .730 698 Auxiliary nursing personnel
 Class here nurses' aides, nursing assistants other than
 registered nursing assistants
 Class registered nursing assistants in 610.730693
- .730 699 Relationships of nurses
 Including relationships between nurses and patients, between
 nurses and the public, within nursing profession

> 610.732–610.736 Nursing

Class comprehensive works in 610.73

- .732 Private duty nursing
- .733 Institutional nursing and ward management
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class nonmedical aspects of ward management in 362.173068
- .734 Public health nursing
 Class here Red Cross nursing
- .734 3 Community and district nursing
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including work of health visitors, visiting nurses; home nursing by
 professionals
 Class home nursing by nonprofessionals in 649.8
- .734 6 Occupational health nursing (Industrial nursing)
- .734 9 Disaster nursing
- .736 Long-term care nursing
- .737 Services of allied health personnel
 Class here services of medical assistants, medical technicians
 *For a specific part of the work of allied health personnel, see the part
 in 614–618, e.g., exercise therapy provided by medical technicians
 615.82; for services of allied health personnel for a specific disease
 or group of diseases or a specific medical specialty, see the disease or
 group of diseases or medical specialty in 616–618, plus notation 0233
 from table under 616.1–616.9, notation 0233 from table under 617, or
 notation 0233 from table under 618.1–618.8 if role or work of allied
 health personnel is emphasized, e.g., a work about services of medical
 technicians with respect to geriatric patients that gives much general
 information about geriatrics 618.97, a work that emphasizes the role
 and techniques of the medical technician with respect to geriatric
 patients 618.970233*
- [.737 023] Work of allied health personnel as a profession, occupation, hobby
 Do not use; class in 610.737069

- .737 06 Organizations and personnel
 Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below
- .737 069 Allied health personnel
 Nature of duties, characteristics of the profession, relationships
 Class here medical assistants, medical technicians
 Class comprehensive works on techniques of allied health
 personnel, medical assistants, medical technicians in 610.737
 For physician assistants, see 610.7372069
- .737 2 Services of physician assistants
- [.737 202 3] Work of physician assistants as a profession, occupation,
 hobby
 Do not use; class in 610.7372069
- .737 206 Organizations and personnel
 Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below
- .737 206 9 Physician assistants
 People educated in the medical model and licensed to
 perform diagnostic and therapeutic procedures under the
 supervision of a physician
 Nature of duties, characteristics of the profession,
 relationships
 Class nurse practitioners in 610.730692
- .92 Biography
 See Manual at 610.92 vs. 615.534092

611 **Human anatomy, cytology, histology**

Standard subdivisions are added for human anatomy, cytology, histology together;
 for human anatomy alone

For pathological anatomy, see 616.07

See Manual at 599.94 vs. 611; also at 612 vs. 611

SUMMARY

- | | |
|--------------|---|
| 611.001–.009 | Standard subdivisions |
| .01 | Anatomic embryology, cytology, histology |
| .1 | Cardiovascular organs |
| .2 | Respiratory organs |
| .3 | Digestive tract organs |
| .4 | Hematopoietic, lymphatic, glandular systems |
| .6 | Urogenital system |
| .7 | Musculoskeletal system, integument |
| .8 | Nervous system |
| .9 | Regional and topographical anatomy |

- .001–.009 Standard subdivisions

- .01 Anatomic embryology, cytology, histology
 Class here specific systems, organs, regions
- .013 Anatomic embryology
- .018 Histology and cytology
 Standard subdivisions are added for histology and cytology together, for histology alone
- .018 1 Cytology (Cell biology)
 Connective tissue cells relocated to 611.01826; adipocytes (fat cells) relocated to 611.018276; epithelial cells relocated to 611.01876; cytology and cells of specific systems and organs relocated to 612.1–612.8; cytology and cells of specific regions relocated to 612.9
- .018 15 Pathology (Cytopathology)
- .018 16 Physiological genetics
 Class here nucleic acids
- .018 166 DNA (Deoxyribonucleic acid)
- .018 166 3 Molecular structure
 Class here DNA topology, genetic code; chromosome, gene, genome mapping; base, gene, nucleotide sequences
- .018 167 Chromosomes
 Class mapping chromosomes in 611.0181663
-
- > 611.018 2–611.018 7 Histology (Tissue biology)
 Class here histogenesis, histophysiology, histopathology, tissue regeneration
 Class comprehensive works in 611.018
- .018 2 Connective tissues and connective tissue cells
 Standard subdivisions are added for connective tissues and connective tissue cells together, for connective tissues alone
 Including collagen, elastic tissues, extracellular matrix
 Connective tissues of specific systems and organs relocated to 612.1–612.8; connective tissues of specific regions relocated to 612.9
- .018 26 Connective tissue cells [*formerly* 611.0181]
 Including mast cells
- .018 27 Adipose tissues and adipocytes
 Standard subdivisions are added for adipose tissues and adipocytes together, for adipose tissues alone
- .018 276 Adipocytes (Fat cells) [*formerly* 611.0181]

- [.018 3] Cartilage tissues
Relocated to 612.7517
- [.018 4] Bone tissues
Relocated to 612.751045
- [.018 5] Histology of blood and lymph
Histology of blood relocated to 612.11; histology of lymph relocated to 612.42045
- [.018 6] Muscle tissues
Relocated to 612.74045
- .018 7 Epithelial tissues and cells
Standard subdivisions are added for epithelial tissues and cells together, for epithelial tissues alone
Including endothelium; serous and mucous membranes
Epithelial tissues of specific systems and organs relocated to 612.1–612.8; epithelial tissues of specific regions relocated to 612.9
- .018 76 Epithelial cells [*formerly* 611.0181]
- [.018 8] Nerve tissues
Relocated to 612.81045
- [.018 9] Histology of specific systems, organs, regions
Histology and tissues of specific systems and organs relocated to 612.1–612.8; histology and tissues of specific regions relocated to 612.9

> **611.1–611.9 Gross anatomy**

Class comprehensive works in 611

> **611.1–611.8 Gross anatomy of specific systems and organs**

Class comprehensive works in 611

See Manual at 612.1–612.8

Comprehensive works on gross anatomy and tissue structure of specific systems and organs relocated to 612.1–612.8

.1 Cardiovascular organs

Class hematopoietic system in 611.41

.11 Pericardium

- .12 Heart
 Including ventricles, auricles, endocardium, myocardium
 For pericardium, see 611.11
- .13 Arteries
 Class here comprehensive works on blood vessels
 For veins, see 611.14; for capillaries, see 611.15. For blood vessels of a specific system or organ, see the system or organ, e.g., cerebral blood vessels 611.81
- .14 Veins
- .15 Capillaries
- .2 Respiratory organs**
- .21 Nose and paranasal sinuses
 Standard subdivisions are added for nose and paranasal sinuses together, for nose alone
- .22 Larynx
 Including epiglottis, glottis, laryngeal muscles
- .23 Trachea and bronchi
- .24 Lungs
- .25 Pleura
- .26 Diaphragm
- .27 Mediastinum
- .3 Digestive tract organs**
- .31 Mouth
- .313 Tongue
- .314 Teeth
- .315 Palate
- .316 Salivary glands
- .317 Lips
- .318 Cheeks
- .32 Pharynx, tonsils, esophagus
- .33 Stomach
 Including pylorus
 Class here comprehensive works on gastrointestinal organs
 For intestine, see 611.34
- .34 Intestine

- .341 Small intestine
Including duodenum, jejunum, ileum
- .345 Cecum, vermiform appendix
- .347 Large intestine
Including sigmoid colon
Class here colon
For cecum, vermiform appendix, see 611.345; for rectum, see 611.35
- .35 Rectum and anus
See also 611.96 for perineum
- .36 Biliary tract and liver
Standard subdivisions are added for biliary tract and liver together, for biliary tract alone
Including gallbladder, bile ducts
- .37 Pancreas and islands of Langerhans
Standard subdivisions are added for pancreas and islands of Langerhans together, for pancreas alone
- .38 Peritoneum
Including mesentery, omentum
- .4 Hematopoietic, lymphatic, glandular systems**
Class here endocrine system
For glandular organs of a specific system, see the system, e.g., salivary glands 611.316
- .41 Bone marrow and spleen
Class here comprehensive works on anatomy of hematopoietic (blood-forming, hemopoietic) system
For liver, see 611.36; for lymphatic system, see 611.42
- .42 Lymphatic system
For spleen, see 611.41; for lymphatic glands, see 611.46
- .43 Thymus gland
- .44 Thyroid and parathyroid glands
- .45 Adrenal glands
- .46 Lymphatic glands
- .47 Carotid body; pituitary and pineal glands
- .49 Breasts
- .6 Urogenital system**

- .61 Kidneys and ureters
 Standard subdivisions are added for kidneys and ureters together, for kidneys alone
 Class here comprehensive works on anatomy of urinary organs
For bladder and urethra, see 611.62
- .62 Bladder and urethra
- .63 Testes, prostate, scrotum
 Class here comprehensive works on male genital organs
For penis, see 611.64
- .64 Penis
- .65 Ovaries and fallopian tubes
 Class here comprehensive works on female genital organs
For uterus, see 611.66; for vagina, hymen, vulva, see 611.67
- .66 Uterus
 Including uterine cervix
- .67 Vagina, hymen, vulva
- .7 Musculoskeletal system, integument**
 Standard subdivisions are added for musculoskeletal system, integument together; for musculoskeletal system alone
- .71 Bones
For ossicles, see 611.85
- .711 Bones of spinal column
- .712 Bones of chest
 Including ribs
For sternum, see 611.713
- .713 Sternum
- .715 Bones of skull
For bones of face, see 611.715; for mastoid processes, see 611.85
- .716 Bones of face
- .717 Bones of upper extremities
 Including scapulas, clavicles, humeri, radii, ulnas, carpal and metacarpal bones, phalanges and sesamoid bones of hands
 Class comprehensive works on bones of extremities in 611.718

- .718 **Bones of lower extremities**
 Including hip bones, femurs, patellas, tibias, fibulas, tarsal and metatarsal bones, phalanges and sesamoid bones of feet
 Class here comprehensive works on bones of extremities
 For bones of upper extremities, see 611.717
- .72 **Joints and ligaments**
 Standard subdivisions are added for joints and ligaments together, for joints alone
- .73 **Muscles**
 For muscles of a specific system or organ, see the system or organ, e.g., heart muscles 611.12
- .731 **Muscles of back**
- .732 **Muscles of head**
- .733 **Muscles of neck**
- .735 **Muscles of chest**
- .736 **Muscles of abdomen and pelvis**
- .737 **Muscles of upper extremities**
 Including muscles of shoulders, arms, hands
 Class comprehensive works on muscles of extremities in 611.738
- .738 **Muscles of lower extremities**
 Including muscles of hips, buttocks, thighs
 Class here leg muscles, comprehensive works on muscles of extremities
 For muscles of upper extremities, see 611.737
- .74 **Connective tissues**
 Including tendons, fasciae
 For ligaments, see 611.72; for bursae, sheaths of tendons, see 611.75
- .75 **Bursae, sheaths of tendons**
- .77 **Integument**
 For hair and nails, see 611.78
- .78 **Hair and nails**
 Including hair follicles
- .8 Nervous system**
 Class here neuroanatomy, sense organs

- .81 Brain
 Class here central nervous system
 For spinal cord, see 611.82
- .82 Spinal cord
- .83 Nerves and ganglia
 Class nerves of a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g.,
 optic nerves 611.84
- .84 Eyes
 Class here orbits
- .85 Ears
 Including mastoid processes, ossicles
- .86 Olfactory organs
- .87 Gustatory organs
- .88 Tactile organs
- .9 Regional and topographical anatomy**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including back
 Class specific systems or organs in a region in 611.1–611.8
 Comprehensive works on gross anatomy and tissue structure of specific regions
 relocated to 612.9
- .91 Head
 For face, see 611.92
- .92 Face
 See also 611.317 for lips; also 611.318 for cheeks
- .93 Neck
- .94 Thorax
- .95 Abdomen
 Epigastric through lumbar regions
- .96 Perineum and pelvic region
- .97 Upper extremities
 Class comprehensive works on extremities in 611.98
- .98 Lower extremities
 Class here legs, comprehensive works on extremities
 For upper extremities, see 611.97

612 Human physiology

Class here comprehensive works on human anatomy and physiology

Class physiological psychology in 152

For human anatomy, cytology, histology, see 611; for pathological physiology, see 616.07

See Manual at 612 vs. 611; also at 613 vs. 612, 615.8; also at 616 vs. 612

SUMMARY

- | | |
|---------------------|---|
| 612.001–.009 | Standard subdivisions |
| .01–.04 | [Biophysics, biochemistry, control processes, tissue and organ culture, physiology of specific activities] |
| .1 | Circulatory system |
| .2 | Respiratory system |
| .3 | Digestive system |
| .4 | Hematopoietic, lymphatic, glandular, urinary systems |
| .6 | Reproduction, development, maturation |
| .7 | Musculoskeletal system, integument |
| .8 | Nervous system |
| .9 | Regional physiology |
| .001–.009 | Standard subdivisions |
| .01 | Biophysics and biochemistry |

SUMMARY

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| 612.014 | Biophysics |
| .015 | Biochemistry |
| .014 | Biophysics |
| .014 2 | Physical phenomena in humans |
| | Including human aura when scientifically considered |
| | <i>See also 133.892 for the aura as a manifestation of psychic power</i> |
| .014 21 | Bioenergetics |
| | <i>For body heat, see 612.01426; for bioelectricity, see 612.01427; for energy metabolism, see 612.39</i> |
| .014 26 | Body heat |
| | Including regulation |
| | Class here production, maintenance |
| .014 27 | Bioelectricity |
| | Including electrophysiology |
| .014 4 | Effects of terrestrial agents |
| | Including aerospace physiology |
| | Class space physiology in 612.0145 |
| .014 41 | Mechanical forces |

- .014 412 Gravitational forces
- .014 414 Acceleration and deceleration
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .014 415 Pressure
 Including submarine physiology
- .014 42 Electricity and magnetism
- .014 44 Visible light
- .014 45 Mechanical vibrations, sound, related vibrations
- .014 453 Sound
- .014 455 Ultrasonic vibrations
- .014 46 Thermal forces
- .014 462 Heat and high temperatures
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .014 465 Cold and low temperatures
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 For cryogenic temperatures, see 612.014467
- .014 467 Cryogenic temperatures
- .014 48 Radiation (Radiobiology)
 Class radiation sickness and radiation injuries in 616.9897
 For visible light, see 612.01444
- .014 480 287 Testing and measurement
 Class here radiometry (radiation dosimetry)
 For a specific application of radiometry, see the application, e.g., use of radiometry in radiotherapy 615.842, use for prevention of diseases due to radiation 616.989705
- .014 481 Radio waves and microwaves
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .014 482 Infrared radiation
- .014 484 Ultraviolet radiation
- .014 485 X rays

- .014 486 Particle radiation
Including cosmic rays; beta, gamma, neutron radiation
For X rays, see 612.014485
- .014 5 Extraterrestrial biophysics
Class here bioastronautics, space physiology
Class aerospace physiology in 612.0144; class space medicine in 616.980214
- .014 53 Effects of mechanical forces
- .014 532 Gravitational forces
- .014 534 Acceleration and deceleration
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .014 535 Pressure
- .015 Biochemistry
Class metabolism in 612.39
For physiological genetics, see 611.01816
- .015 01 Philosophy and theory
Class theoretical biochemistry in 612.01582
- .015 02 Miscellany
- .015 028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
Class analytical biochemistry in 612.01585
- .015 1 Enzymes
Add to base number 612.0151 the numbers following 572.7 in 572.75–572.79, e.g., saccharolytic enzymes 612.015156, lipolytic enzymes 612.015157
- .015 2 Fluids, inorganic constituents, pigments
- .015 22 Fluids
Including fluid balance, water, water-electrolyte balance
Class here fluid metabolism
- .015 24 Inorganic constituents
Including minerals
Class inorganic fluids in 612.01522; class inorganic pigments in 612.01528
- .015 28 Pigments
Class biochemistry of skin pigmentation in 612.7927

- .015 4 Biosynthesis
- .015 7 Organic compounds
 *For nucleic acids, see 611.01816; for enzymes, see 612.0151;
 for organic fluids, see 612.01522; for organic pigments, see
 612.01528; for vitamins, see 612.399; for hormones, see 612.405*
- .015 75 Proteins
- .015 756 Components of proteins
 Class here amino acids, peptides, polypeptides
- .015 77 Lipids
 Including steroids
 Class here fats, fatty acids
- .015 78 Carbohydrates
 Including sugars
- .015 8 Theoretical, physical, analytical biochemistry
 Class physical, theoretical, analytical biochemistry of a specific
 constituent with the constituent, e.g., physical chemistry of
 carbohydrates 612.01578
- .015 82 Theoretical biochemistry
- .015 83 Physical biochemistry
- .015 85 Analytical biochemistry
- .02 Control processes and tissue and organ culture
- .022 Control processes
 Including biological rhythms, homeostasis
 *For control processes in biophysics, see the process in 612.014,
 e.g., body heat regulation 612.01426; for control processes in
 biochemistry, see the process in 612.015, e.g., water-electrolyte
 balance 612.01522*
- .028 Tissue and organ culture
- .04 Physiology of specific activities
 Class here comprehensive works on the physiology of physical movements
 in relation to multiple physiological systems
 *For physiology of physical movements in relation to a specific system,
 see the system, e.g., musculoskeletal system 612.76*
- .042 Work

.044

Exercise and sports

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including walking

Class here recreation

*For physiology of exercise on the job, see 612.042***612.1–612.8 Specific functions, systems, organs**

Class here cytology and cells of specific systems and organs [*formerly* 611.0181], connective tissues of specific systems and organs [*formerly* 611.0182], histology and tissues of specific systems and organs [*formerly* 611.0189], comprehensive works on gross anatomy and tissue structure of specific systems and organs [*formerly* 611.1–611.8]

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

04 Tissues and cells

045 Tissues

Class here histology (tissue biology); histogenesis, histophysiology, histopathology, tissue regeneration

046 Cells

Including cytopathology

Class here cytology (cell biology)

Class comprehensive works in 612

*See Manual at 612.1–612.8***.1 *Circulatory system**

Class here cardiovascular system, circulation

For lymphatic system, see 612.42. For circulation in a specific system or organ, see the system or organ, e.g., brain 612.824

.11

Blood

Class here histology of blood [*formerly* 611.0185], cytology of blood

Class hematopoietic system in 612.41; class blood transfusion in 615.39

For blood chemistry, see 612.12

.111

Erythrocytes (Red corpuscles)

.111 1

Biochemistry

Including hemoglobins

.111 2

Counts and counting

.112

Leukocytes (White corpuscles)

.112 1

Biochemistry

.112 7

Counts and counting

*Add as instructed under 612.1–612.8

- .115 Coagulation (Clotting)
 Including role of fibrin, fibrinoplastin, plasma, thrombin in clotting
- .116 Plasma
 Class blood plasma transfusion in 615.39
 For role of plasma in clotting, see 612.115
- .117 Platelets
- .118 Biophysics and biological properties
- .118 1 Biophysics
 Physical properties and phenomena, effect of physical agents
 Including hemorheology (study of blood flow)
 *For biophysics of a specific component or function, see the
 compound or function in 612.111–612.117, e.g., biophysics of
 platelets 612.117*
- .118 2 Biological properties
- .118 25 Blood types and typing (Blood groups and grouping)
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .12 Blood chemistry
 Including cholesterol, lipids, sugar
 Class biological properties in 612.1182
 *For chemistry of a specific component or function, see the component or
 function in 612.111–612.117, e.g., chemistry of coagulation 612.115*

>

 612.13–612.18 Circulation

Class comprehensive works in 612.1

- .13 *Blood vessels
 Class here vascular circulation
 For vasomotors, see 612.18
- .133 *Arteries
 Class here arterial circulation
- .134 *Veins
 Class here venous circulation
- .135 *Capillaries
 Class here capillary circulation
- .14 Blood pressure

*Add as instructed under 612.1–612.8

- .17 *Heart
- .171 Biophysics
 Including contraction and dilation of heart cavities, valvular activity
 For blood pressure, see 612.14
- .173 Biochemistry
 Including metabolism
- .178 *Innervation
- .18 *Vasomotors
 Nerves causing dilation (vasodilators) and constriction (vasoconstrictors) of
 blood vessels
- .2 *Respiratory system**
 Class here respiration
- .21 Biophysics
 Including respiratory sounds
 Class here respiratory mechanics
- .22 Biochemistry
 Including oxygen supply, gas exchange, carbon dioxide removal
- .23 Nose, paranasal sinuses, larynx, trachea, bronchi
- .232 *Nose and paranasal sinuses
 Class here comprehensive works on physiology of the nose
 Subdivisions are added for nose and paranasal sinuses together, for nose
 alone
 For physiology of the nose as an olfactory organ, see 612.86
- .233 *Larynx
 Including epiglottis, glottis
 For physiology of glottis as an organ of speech, see 612.78
- .234 *Trachea and bronchi
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .24 *Lungs
- .25 Pleura, diaphragm, mediastinum
- .26 Tissue respiration
- .28 *Innervation of respiratory system

- .3 *Digestive system**
 Class here digestion, nutrition
 For dietetics and applied nutrition, see 613.2
- .31 *Mouth and esophagus**
 Including ingestion and start of digestion
 Subdivisions are added for mouth and esophagus together, for mouth alone
- .311 *Teeth**
 Including mastication
- .312 Tongue and tonsils**
 Class here comprehensive works on physiology of tongue
 For physiology of tongue as a gustatory organ, see 612.87
- .313 *Salivary glands**
 Including saliva
- .315 *Esophagus**
- .32 *Stomach**
 Including gastric secretions
 Class here comprehensive works on gastrointestinal organs and secretions
 For intestine and intestinal secretions, see 612.33
- .33 *Intestine**
 Including intestinal secretions
 For large intestine, see 612.36
- .34 *Pancreas**
 Including pancreatic secretions
- .35 *Biliary tract and liver**
 Including gallbladder, bile and bile ducts
 Subdivisions are added for biliary tract and liver together, for biliary tract alone
- .352 *Liver**
- .36 *Large intestine**
 Including defecation

- .38 **Absorption**
 Transfer of digested food from alimentary canal into blood stream
 Class absorption in a specific part of the alimentary canal with the part, e.g.,
 intestine 612.33
- .39 **Metabolism**
 Including energy metabolism
 Class bioenergetics in 612.01421
 *For biosynthesis, see 612.0154; for metabolism of drugs, see 615.7;
 for metabolism of toxic substances, see 615.9. For metabolism within a
 specific function, system, or organ, see the function, system, or organ,
 e.g., metabolism of plasma 612.116*
- .391 **Hunger and thirst mechanisms**
- .392 **Metabolism of inorganic substances**
 Class here minerals
- .392 3 **Water**
 Class electrolytic, fluid balance; comprehensive works on fluid
 metabolism in 612.01522
- .392 4 **Elements**
 Including iron, phosphorus, sulfur
- .392 6 **Compounds other than water**
 Including salts
- .396 **Carbohydrate metabolism**
 Class glycemic index as dietetic guide in 613.283
- .397 **Lipid metabolism**
 Including fats
- .398 **Protein metabolism**
- .399 **Vitamins**
- .4 *Hematopoietic, lymphatic, glandular, urinary systems**
 Class here endocrine system, exocrine glands, secretion
 *For glands and glandular activity in a specific system or organ, see the
 system or organ, e.g., salivary glands 612.313, mammary glands and
 lactation 612.664*
- .400 1–400 9 **Standard subdivisions**
- .405 **Hormones**

- .41 *Spleen and bone marrow
 Class here hematopoiesis, comprehensive works on hematopoietic
 (blood-forming, hemopoietic) system
 For liver, see 612.352; for lymphatic system, see 612.42
- .415 *Spleen
- .416 *Bone marrow
- .42 *Lymphatic system
 Class here lymph
 For spleen, see 612.415
- .420 45 Lymphoid tissue
 Number built according to instructions under 612.1–612.8
 Class here histology of lymph [*formerly 611.0185*]
- .43 *Thymus gland
- .44 *Thyroid and parathyroid glands
 Subdivisions are added for thyroid and parathyroid glands together, for
 thyroid gland alone
- .448 *Parathyroid glands
- .45 *Adrenal glands
- .46 *Urinary system
 Class here comprehensive works on excretion, excretory system
 For defecation, see 612.36
- .461 Urine
- .463 *Kidneys
- .467 Ureters, bladder, urethra
- .467 3 *Bladder
- .49 Carotid body; pituitary and pineal glands
- .492 *Pituitary and pineal glands
 Subdivisions are added for pituitary and pineal glands, for pituitary gland
 alone

production, development, maturation

Class here genital system, comprehensive medical works on sex

Class interdisciplinary works on sex in 306.7

For a specific aspect of sex, see the aspect, e.g., sexual disorders 616.69

- .61 *Male reproductive system
 Including function in sexual activity
 For climacteric, see 612.665
- .614 *Testes and scrotum
 Subdivisions are added for testes and scrotum together, for testes alone
- .616 *Penis
- .618 *Prostate
- .62 *Female reproductive system
 Including function in sexual activity
 For pregnancy and childbirth, see 612.63; for menstruation, see 612.662; for climacteric, see 612.665
- .625 *Ovaries and fallopian tubes
 Subdivisions are added for ovaries and fallopian tubes together, for ovaries alone
- .627 *Uterus
 Including uterine cervix
- .628 Vagina, hymen, vulva
- .63 Pregnancy and childbirth
 Including placenta
 Class comprehensive works on pregnancy and childbirth in 618.2
 For physiology of embryo and fetus, see 612.64
- .64 Physiology of embryo and fetus
 Class here comprehensive works on embryology
 For anatomic embryology, see 611.013
- .640 01–.640 09 Standard subdivisions
- .640 1 Development of specific systems, organs, regions
 Add to base number 612.6401 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9, e.g., development of the eye 612.640184
- .646 Development of embryo
- .647 Development of fetus

- > 612.65–612.67 Postnatal development
- Class comprehensive works in 612.6
- For postnatal development of a specific system, organ, region, see the system, organ, region, e.g., postnatal development of teeth 612.311*
- .65 Child development
- .652 Development of newborn (neonate)
- First month of postnatal development
- .654 Development from infancy to beginning of puberty
- From second month of postnatal development
- .66 Adult development and maturity
- For aging, see 612.67*
- .661 Puberty and development prior to attainment of full maturity
- .662 Menstruation
- Including menarche
- .663 Full maturity
- .664 *Mammary glands
- Class here lactation
- .665 Climacteric
- Including menopause
- .67 Aging
- Class here physical gerontology
- See also 616.078 for death*
- .68 Longevity factors
- .7 ***Musculoskeletal system, integument**
- Subdivisions are added for musculoskeletal system, integument together; for musculoskeletal system alone
- .74 *Muscles
- Class locomotion, exercise, rest in 612.76. Class muscles of a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., cardiac muscles 612.17, eye muscles 612.846
- .740 45 Muscle tissues [*formerly* 611.0186]
- Number built according to instructions under 612.1–612.8
- Including skeletal muscle tissue, smooth muscle tissue

*Add as instructed under 612.1–612.8

- .741 Biophysics
 Including contractions, elasticity, irritability, tonus
- .743 *Innervation
- .744 Biochemistry
 Including fatigue products
- .75 Bones, joints, connective tissues
 Class locomotion, exercise, rest in 612.76
- .751 *Bones and cartilage
 Subdivisions are added for bones and cartilage together, for bones alone
 Class bone marrow in 612.416
 For mastoid processes, ossicles, see 612.854
- .751 045 Bone tissues [*formerly* 611.0184]
 Number built according to instructions under 612.1–612.8
 Including periosteum
- .751 7 Cartilage
 Including elastic cartilage, hyaline cartilage; fibrocartilage
 Class here cartilage tissues [*formerly* 611.0183]
- .751 76 Cartilage cells (Chondrocytes)
- .752 Joints and ligaments
 Standard subdivisions are added for joints and ligaments together, for joints alone
- .757 Connective tissues
 Class comprehensive works on histology of connective tissues in 611.0182
 For bone tissues, see 612.751045; for cartilage tissues, see 612.7517; for ligament tissues, see 612.752
- .76 Locomotion, exercise, rest
 Including body mechanics
 Class total physiology of physical movements (including muscle contractions, breathing, blood flow, digestion during exercise) in 612.04
- .78 Voice and speech
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here organs of speech
 Class neurolinguistics in 612.82336

*Add as instructed under 612.1–612.8

- .79 *Integument
 Class here integumentary system, skin
- .791 Biophysics of skin
 Including absorbency, contractions, irritability, resistivity, tonus
- .792 Biochemistry of skin
- [.792 1] Glands of skin
 Relocated to 612.793
- .792 7 Pigmentation
- .793 Glands of skin [*formerly* 612.7921]
 Including perspiration
 Class here glandular secretions
- .798 *Innervation of skin
- .799 Hair and nails
 Including hair follicles

.8 Nervous system

Class here neurophysiology, psychophysiology, sensory functions
See Manual at 612.8 vs. 152

SUMMARY

- 612.804 Special topics of nervous functions**
- .81 Nerves and nerve fibers**
- .82 Central nervous system**
- .83 Spinal cord**
- .84 Eyes**
- .85 Ears**
- .86 Nose**
- .87 Tongue**
- .88 Other sensory organs**
- .89 Autonomic nervous system**
- .804 Special topics of nervous functions
- .804 2 Neurochemistry
 Including cerebrospinal fluid
- .804 3 Biophysics of nervous system

- .81 *Nerves and nerve fibers
 Class here peripheral nervous system
 Subdivisions are added for nerves and nerve fibers together, for nerves alone
 Class comprehensive works on nerves, nerve fibers, central nervous system
 in 612.8
 *For nerves and nerve fibers in central nervous system, see 612.82; for
 autonomic nervous system, see 612.89. For innervation and neural
 activity in a specific system or organ, see the system or organ, e.g., heart
 innervation 612.178*
- .810 45 Nerve tissues [formerly 611.0188]
 Number built according to instructions under 612.1–612.8
- .810 46 Nerve cells
 Number built according to instructions under 612.1–612.8
 Including neuroglia
 Class here neurons
- .811 Motor and sensory nerves
- .813 Biophysics
 Including electrophysiology
 *For irritability, see 612.816. For biophysics of a specific kind of
 nerve, see the nerve, e.g., biophysics of cranial nerves 612.819*
- .814 Biochemistry
 *For biochemistry of a specific kind of nerve, see the nerve, e.g.,
 biochemistry of motor nerves 612.811*
- .816 Irritability
- .819 Cranial and spinal nerves
- .82 *Central nervous system
 Class here brain
 For spinal cord, see 612.83
- .821 Sleep phenomena
 Physiology of brain during sleep and dreams
 Class effect of sleep on other psychological activity, interdisciplinary
 works on sleep in 154.6; class dreams as phenomena that have meaning
 in themselves or in the life of the dreamer, interdisciplinary works on
 dreams in 154.63
- .822 Biochemistry and biophysics
 *For biochemistry and biophysics of a specific part of brain, see the
 part, e.g., biophysics of cerebrum 612.825*

- .823 Emotions, conscious mental processes, intelligence
- .823 2 Emotions
Class here feelings
- .823 3 Conscious mental processes and intelligence
Standard subdivisions are added for conscious mental processes and intelligence together, for conscious mental processes alone
Class here cognitive neuroscience
Add to base number 612.8233 the numbers following 153 in 153.1–153.9, e.g., neurolinguistics 612.82336, physiology of brain with respect to memory 612.823312, with respect to intelligence 612.82339; however, for kinesthesia, see 612.88
- .824 Circulation
For circulation in a specific part of brain, see the part, e.g., circulation in cerebellum 612.827
- .825 *Cerebrum
Including cerebral hemispheres, convolutions, corpus striatum, cortex, rhinencephalon
Class here prosencephalon (forebrain)
For cerebral commissures and peduncles, see 612.826; for diencephalon, see 612.8262
- .825 2 Localization of motor functions
- .825 5 Localization of sensory functions
- .826 Diencephalon and brain stem
Including cerebral commissures and peduncles
For medulla oblongata, see 612.828
- .826 2 *Diencephalon
Including geniculate bodies, hypothalamus, thalamus
- .826 4 *Mesencephalon (Midbrain)
Including corpora quadrigemina
- .826 7 *Pons Variolii
- .827 *Cerebellum
- .828 *Medulla oblongata
- .83 *Spinal cord

- > 612.84–612.88 Sensory functions
- Class here sense organs
- Class comprehensive works in 612.8
- .84 *Eyes
- Class here eyeballs; physiological optics; vision
- .841 Fibrous tunics, conjunctivas, anterior chambers
- Including corneas, scleras
- .842 *Uveas
- Including choroids, ciliary bodies, irises
- .843 Optic nerves and retinas
- .844 Aqueous humors, crystalline lenses, vitreous bodies
- .846 Movements
- Class here ocular neuromuscular mechanism
- .847 Eyelids and tear ducts
- Class conjunctivas in 612.841
- .85 *Ears
- Class here hearing
- .851 *External ears
- .854 *Middle ears
- Including eustachian tubes, mastoid processes, ossicles, tympanic membranes
- .858 *Internal ears
- Including cochleas, labyrinths, semicircular canals, vestibules
- .86 *Nose
- Class here chemical senses, smelling
- Class comprehensive works on physiology of nose in 612.232
- For tasting, see 612.87*
- .87 *Tongue
- Class here tasting
- Class comprehensive works on physiology of the tongue in 612.312

- .88 Other sensory organs
 Including kinesthesia, proprioceptive senses; tactile senses; pain sensations and reactions
- .89 *Autonomic nervous system
 Including sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems
- .9 Regional physiology**
 Including back
 Class here cytology and cells of specific regions [*formerly* 611.0181], connective tissues of specific regions [*formerly* 611.0182], epithelial tissues of specific regions [*formerly* 611.0187], histology and tissues of specific regions [*formerly* 611.0189], comprehensive works on gross anatomy and tissue structure of specific regions [*formerly* 611.9]
 Add to base number 612.9 the numbers following 611.9 in 611.91–611.98, e.g., physiology of face 612.92
 Class physiology, cytology, histology of specific systems and organs in specific regions in 612.1–612.8

613 **Personal health and safety**

Standard subdivisions are added for personal health and safety together, for personal health alone

Class here measures to promote health and prevent disease taken by individuals and their medical advisers, comprehensive medical works on personal and public measures to promote health and prevent disease

For public measures to promote health and prevent disease, see 614; for personal measures to prevent poisoning, see 615.905. For personal measures to prevent a specific disease or group of diseases, see the disease or group of diseases in 616–618, plus notation 05 from table under 616.1–616.9, notation 052 from table under 617, or notation 052 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g., personal measures to prevent cardiovascular diseases 616.105

See Manual at 613 vs. 612, 615.8

SUMMARY

- 613.04 Personal health of people by gender, sex, or age group**
- .1 **Environmental factors**
 - .2 **Dietetics**
 - .4 **Personal cleanliness and related topics**
 - .5 **Artificial environments**
 - .6 **Personal safety and special topics of health**
 - .7 **Physical fitness**
 - .8 **Substance abuse (Drug abuse)**
 - .9 **Birth control, reproductive technology, sex hygiene, sexual techniques**

*Add as instructed under 612.1–612.8

- .04 Personal health of people by gender, sex, or age group
 Class here comprehensive works on personal health and safety of specific gender, sex, and age groups
For personal safety of specific gender, sex, and age groups, see 613.6081–613.6084
- .042 Personal health of specific sex groups
- .042 3 Males
- .042 32 Males under twelve
 Class here comprehensive works on boys
For boys twelve and older, see 613.04233
- .042 33 Males twelve to twenty
- .042 34 Adult men
- .042 4 Females
- .042 42 Females under twelve
 Class here comprehensive works on girls
For girls twelve and older, see 613.04243
- .042 43 Females twelve to twenty
- .042 44 Adult women
- .043 Personal health of specific age groups
 Class personal health of specific age groups of specific sexes in 613.042
- .043 2 Infants and children
 Through age eleven
 Class here pediatric preventive measures
- .043 3 Young people twelve to twenty
- .043 4 Mature adults
 Including young adults, middle-aged people
For people in late adulthood, see 613.0438
- .043 8 People in late adulthood
 Class here geriatric preventive measures
- [.081–.084] People by gender, sex, or age group
 Do not use; class in 613.04

.1 Environmental factors

Class here acclimation, comprehensive works on personal environmental health

For artificial environments, see 613.5; for industrial and occupational health, see 613.62; for travel health, see 613.68; for survival, see 613.69; for environmental toxicology, see 615.902; for environmental diseases, see 616.98

.11 Weather and climate

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including humidity, seasonal changes

[.110 911] Weather and climate in frigid zones

Do not use; class in 613.111

[.110 913] Weather and climate in torrid zone (tropics)

Do not use; class in 613.113

.111 Cold weather and climate

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including arctic climate

.113 Hot weather and climate

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including tropical climate

.12 Physiographic and other regions

Including mountains, seashore

.122 Health resorts**.19 Air and light****.192 Breathing**

Class here breathing exercises

Class breathing exercises in respiratory therapy in 615.836; class comprehensive works on exercises in 613.71

.193 Sun bathing**.194 Nudism**

.2 Dietetics

Class here applied nutrition; guides to nutritional aspects of food, of beverages; comprehensive works on personal health aspects of food, of beverages

Class human nutritional requirements considered in relation to physiological processes and the role of nutrients in the body in 612.3; class personal aspects of preventing alcohol abuse in 613.81; class diet therapy in 615.854; class nutritive values of specific beverages in 641.2; class nutritive values of specific foods in 641.33–641.39; class comprehensive works on diet and physical fitness in 613.7; class interdisciplinary works on food safety in 363.192. Class diets to prevent a specific disease with the disease, plus notation 0654 from table under 616.1–616.9, notation 0654 from table under 617, or notation 0654 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g., diets to prevent hypertension 616.1320654

See also 616.39 for conditions resulting from nutritional deficiencies; also 641.563 for cooking for preventive and therapeutic diets

See Manual at 363.8 vs. 613.2, 641.3

.208 2

Women

Class dietetics for nursing women in 613.269; class dietetics for pregnant women in 618.242

.208 3

Young people

Class home economics and child-rearing aspects of feeding children, interdisciplinary works on feeding children in 649.3

.208 32

Infants

Class breast feeding in 613.269

.208 5

Relatives

.208 52

Mothers

Class dietetics for nursing mothers in 613.269

.23**Calories**

Class here calorie counters

Class high-calorie diet in 613.24; class low-calorie diet in 613.25

.24**Weight-gaining diet**

Weight-gaining diet focused on a specific nutritive element relocated to 613.28

.25**Weight-losing diet (Reducing diet)**

Class here caloric restriction, low-calorie diet

Class diet therapy for obesity in 616.3980654; class comprehensive works on exercise and diet for weight loss in 613.712

Weight-losing diet focused on a specific nutritive element relocated to 613.28

- .26 Specific dietary regimens
 Including regimens involving specific foods, e.g., milk-free diet
 Class human breast milk diet in 613.269
 *For weight-gaining diet, see 613.24; for weight-losing diet, see 613.25;
 for regimens involving specific nutritive elements, see 613.28*
- [.260 1–.260 9] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 613.201–613.209
- .262 Vegetarian diet
 For macrobiotic diet, see 613.264
- .262 2 Vegan diet
- .263 High-fiber and low-fiber diets
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class vegetarian diet in 613.262; class raw food diet in 613.265
- .264 Macrobiotic diet
- .265 Raw food diet
 Class vegetarian diet in 613.262
- .269 Human breast milk diet
 Class here nutritional and general health aspects of breast feeding for
 both mother and infant, comprehensive medical works on breast feeding
 Class interdisciplinary works on breast feeding in 649.33
 *For a specific medical aspect of breast feeding not provided for here,
 see the aspect, e.g., prolactin and physiology of human lactation
 612.664*
- .28 Specific nutritive elements
 Class here weight-gaining diet focused on a specific nutritive element
 [*formerly* 613.24], weight-losing diet focused on a specific nutritive element
 [*formerly* 613.25]
 Class calories in 613.23; class high-fiber and low-fiber diets in 613.263
- [.280 1–.280 9] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 613.201–613.209
- .282 Proteins
- .283 Carbohydrates
 Class here glycemic index as dietetic guide
 Class physiology of carbohydrate metabolism in 612.396
- .283 3 Low-carbohydrate diet (Carbohydrate-restricted diet)
- .283 32 Sugar-free diet

- .284 Fats and oils
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .284 3 Low-fat diet (Fat-restricted diet)
- .284 32 Low-cholesterol diet
- .285 Minerals
- .285 1 Calcium, iron, copper
 Class here metals
 For metals other than calcium, iron, copper, see 613.2852
- .285 16 Calcium
- .285 2 Metals other than calcium, iron, copper
- .285 22 Sodium
- .285 223 Sodium-restricted diet
 Class here low-salt diet, salt-free diet
- .286 Vitamins
 Including antioxidants
- .287 Water

.4 Personal cleanliness and related topics

Standard subdivisions are added for personal cleanliness and related topics together, for personal cleanliness alone

- .41 Bathing
 Including saunas, Turkish baths; showering
- .48 Clothing and cosmetics
- .482 Clothing
 Only health aspects
 Class clothing selection and dressing with style in 646.3
- .488 Cosmetics
 Only health aspects
 Class cosmetics in grooming in 646.72

.5 Artificial environments

- In enclosed spaces
 Including homes, offices; indoor air quality; indoor temperatures and air conditioning
 Class toxicology in 615.9

.6 Personal safety and special topics of health

Standard subdivisions are added for personal safety and special topics of health together, for personal safety alone

Class here accident prevention for individuals, crime prevention for individuals

Class social services to victims of crimes in 362.88; class public safety programs, interdisciplinary works on safety in 363.1; class works on why individuals become victims of specific crimes in 364.1; class crime prevention for society as a whole in 364.4

For prevention of identity theft, see 332.024; for household security, see 643.16. For personal safety in a specific field, see the field, plus notation 0289 from Table 1, e.g., personal safety in recreational boating 797.10289

.62 Industrial and occupational health

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.66 Self-defense

Class here prevention of violent crimes for individuals

Class works on why people become victims of specific violent crimes in 364.15; class martial arts for self-defense, interdisciplinary works on martial arts in 796.8

See also 362.88 for general works on why people become victims of crimes; also 613.7148 for exercises from martial arts traditions for fitness

.660 82 Women

Class here self-defense for women

Class rape prevention in 613.663

.663 Rape prevention for individuals**.68 Travel health****.69 Survival**

After accidents and disasters, in other unfavorable circumstances

Class here survival housekeeping

Class survival as a safety aspect of a specific sport with the sport in 796, plus notation 0289 from Table 1, e.g., survival as a safety aspect of mountaineering 796.5220289

For self-defense, see 613.66

.7 Physical fitness

Class here comprehensive works on diet and physical fitness

For diet, see 613.2

SUMMARY

613.704	Special topics of physical fitness
.71	Exercise and sports activities
.72	Massage
.78	Correct posture
.79	Relaxation, rest, sleep

.704 Special topics of physical fitness

> 613.704 2–613.704 5 Specific age and sex groups

Class physical yoga of specific age and sex groups in 613.7046; class comprehensive works in 613.704

.704 2 Physical fitness of children

.704 3 Physical fitness of young people twelve to twenty

.704 4 Physical fitness of adults

For physical fitness of adult women, see 613.7045

.704 46 Physical fitness of people in late adulthood

Class physical fitness of men in late adulthood in 613.70449

.704 49 Physical fitness of adult men

Class here physical fitness of males

For physical fitness of boys under twelve, see 613.7042; for physical fitness of young men twelve to twenty, see 613.7043

.704 5 Physical fitness of adult women

Class here physical fitness of females

For physical fitness of girls under twelve, see 613.7042; for physical fitness of young women twelve to twenty, see 613.7043

.704 6 Physical yoga

Class here hatha yoga

Class exercises from the martial arts and related traditions in 613.7148

[.708 1–.708 4] People by gender, sex, or age group

Do not use; class in 613.7042–613.7045

- .71 Exercise and sports activities
- Standard subdivisions are added for exercise and sports activities together, for exercise alone
- Class here aerobic exercise, comprehensive works on care of physique and form
- Class physical yoga in 613.7046; class exercises to aid childbirth in 618.244; class parental supervision of children's exercise and sports activities in 649.57; class exercise and sports activities as recreation in 796; class comprehensive works on physiological processes of exercise and sports in 612.044
- For breathing exercises, see 613.192*
- [.710 247 96] The subject for people occupied with athletics and sports
- Do not use; class in 613.711
- .710 82 Women
- Class exercise for pregnant women in 618.244
- .710 88 Occupational and religious groups
- [.710 887 96] People occupied with athletics and sports
- Do not use; class in 613.711
- .711 Fitness training for sports
- Including fitness training for specific sports not provided for in 613.713–613.717, e.g., soccer
- Class here personal health of athletes
- Class a specific kind of fitness training with the kind, e.g., weight lifting 613.713; class fitness training for a specific sport listed in 613.713–613.717 with the sport, e.g., swimming 613.716
- .712 Exercise for weight loss
- Class here reducing, reducing exercises, comprehensive works on exercise and diet for weight loss
- Class exercise therapy for obesity in 616.398062
- For diet for weight loss, see 613.25*
- .713 Weight lifting
- Class here interdisciplinary works on bodybuilding
- For weight lifting as a sport, bodybuilding contests, see 796.41*
- .714 Calisthenics and isometric exercises
- Standard subdivisions are added for calisthenics and isometric exercises together, for calisthenics alone
- Class here gymnastic exercises
- See also 613.713 for weight lifting; also 613.715 for aerobic dancing; also 613.716 for aquatic exercises*

- .714 8 Exercises from the martial arts traditions and related traditions
 Standard subdivisions are added for exercises from the martial arts traditions and related traditions together, for exercises from the martial arts traditions alone
 Including aikido, karate exercises
 Class here tai chi, fitness training for the martial arts
See also 796.815 for jujitso and related martial arts as sports
- .714 89 Qi gong
- .714 9 Isometric exercises
- .715 Aerobic dancing
- .716 Aquatic exercises and swimming
- .717 Running and walking
See also 796.42 for running and walking as sports
- .717 2 Running
 Class here jogging
- .717 6 Walking
- .718 Stretching exercises, and exercises for muscles of specific parts of body
- .718 2 Stretching exercises
See also 613.72 for massage
- .718 8 Exercises for muscles of specific parts of body
 Add to base number 613.7188 the numbers following 611.73 in 611.731–611.738, e.g., abdominal exercises 613.71886
- .719 Specific systems of exercises for health
 Class physical yoga in 613.7046; class exercises from the martial arts traditions and related traditions in 613.7148
- .719 2 Pilates method
- .72 Massage
 Class here massage for health, fitness, relaxation
 Class therapeutic massage, interdisciplinary works on massage in 615.822
- .78 Correct posture
- .79 Relaxation, rest, sleep
- .792 Relaxation
 Class breathing for relaxation in 613.192; class massage for relaxation in 613.72
- .794 Sleep

.8 Substance abuse (Drug abuse)

Only personal preventive aspects

Including abuse of analgesics, depressants, inhalants, sedatives, tranquilizers

Class here appeals to the individual to avoid substance abuse for health reasons

Class comprehensive medical works on addictive drugs in 615.78; class stopping substance abuse, comprehensive medical works on substance abuse as a disease in 616.86; class interdisciplinary works on substance abuse in 362.29

.81 Alcohol

.83 Narcotics, hallucinogens, psychedelics, cannabis

.835 Cannabis

Class here specific kinds of cannabis, e.g., hashish, marijuana

.84 Stimulants and related substances

Standard subdivisions are added for stimulants and related substances together, for stimulants alone

Including amphetamine, ephedrine; cocaine

Class nicotine in 613.85

.85 Tobacco

Class smoking cessation in 616.86506

.9 Birth control, reproductive technology, sex hygiene, sexual techniques

Including sexual abstinence as a method of birth control and disease prevention

Class sexual abstinence for birth control in 613.94; class sexual abstinence for disease prevention in 613.95

.907 1 Education

Class sex education of children in the home in 649.65

.94 Birth control and reproductive technology

Standard subdivisions are added for birth control and reproductive technology together, for birth control alone

Only personal health aspects

Including artificial insemination, measures to increase the likelihood of having a child of the desired sex

Class here family planning

Class comprehensive medical works on human reproductive technology in 616.69206; class comprehensive medical works on birth control and family planning in 618.18; class interdisciplinary works on birth control and family planning in 363.96

- .942 Surgical methods of birth control
 Including tubal sterilization, vasectomy
 Class comprehensive works on surgical methods of birth control for males in 617.463; class comprehensive works on surgical methods of birth control for females in 618.1
- .943 Chemical, natural, mechanical methods of birth control
- .943 2 Chemical methods of birth control
 Including contraceptive drug implants, postcoital contraceptives (morning after pills)
- .943 22 Oral contraceptives
 Class postcoital contraceptives in 613.9432
- .943 4 Natural family planning
 Class here ovulation detection method, rhythm method
- .943 5 Mechanical methods of birth control
 Including intrauterine devices, comprehensive works on condoms
For use of condoms for disease prevention, see 613.95
- .95 Sex hygiene
 Including use of condoms for disease prevention
 Class here techniques for disease prevention
See also 613.96 for sexual techniques
- [.950 81–.950 84] People by gender, sex, or age group
 Do not use; class in 613.951–613.955
- .951 Sex hygiene of young people
 To age twenty
For sex hygiene of males to age twenty, see 613.953; for sex hygiene of females to age twenty, see 613.955
- .952 Sex hygiene of adult men
 Class here sex hygiene of males
For sex hygiene of males to age twenty, see 613.953
- .953 Sex hygiene of males to age twenty
- .954 Sex hygiene of adult women
 Class here sex hygiene of females
For sex hygiene of females to age twenty, see 613.955
- .955 Sex hygiene of females to age twenty

.96 Sexual techniques

Class here techniques for enhancing sexual enjoyment

See also 613.95 for techniques for disease prevention

614 Forensic medicine; incidence of injuries, wounds, disease; public preventive medicine

Class social provision for public health services other than those concerned with incidence and prevention of disease in 362.1; class environmental problems and services in 363.7; class incidence of poisoning in 615.904

SUMMARY

- 614.1 Forensic medicine
- .3 Incidence of injuries and wounds
- .4 Incidence of and public measures to prevent disease
- .5 Incidence of and public measures to prevent specific diseases and kinds of diseases
- .6 Disposal of the dead

.1 Forensic medicine

Including forensic nursing

Class here forensic pathology, medical jurisprudence

.12 Forensic chemistry

Class forensic toxicology in 614.13

.13 Forensic toxicology

.15 Forensic psychology and psychiatry

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.17 Forensic anthropology

Class here forensic osteology

.18 Forensic dentistry

.3 Incidence of injuries and wounds

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including athletic injuries, crash injuries

Add to base number 614.3 the numbers following 617.1 in 617.11–617.19, e.g., gunshot wounds 614.345

Class public safety programs and social provision for prevention of injuries in 363.1

For incidence of injuries and wounds of a specific system, region, organ, see the system, region, organ in 614.59, e.g., eye injuries 614.5997

.4 Incidence of and public measures to prevent disease

Class here epidemiology

For incidence of and public measures to prevent specific diseases and kinds of diseases, see 614.5

See also 353.59 for registration and certification of births and deaths

See Manual at 614.4; also at 362.1–362.4 and 614.4–614.5

.409 History, geographic treatment, biography

For geographic treatment of incidence of diseases, see 614.42; for history of epidemics, see 614.49

.42 Incidence

Range, rate, or amount of occurrence

Class here prevalence; health surveys, medical geography

[.420 91] Areas, regions, places in general

Do not use; class in 614.422

[.420 93–.420 99] Specific continents, countries, localities

Do not use; class in 614.423–614.429

.422 Areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 614.422 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., diseases in the tropics 614.4223

.423–.429 Specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 614.42 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., diseases in the United States 614.4273

.43 Disease vectors and disease transmission by water

Standard subdivisions are added for disease vectors and disease transmission by water together, for disease vectors alone

Class here control of disease-carrying pests [*formerly also 628.96*]

Class comprehensive works on water supply in 363.61; class medical microbiology of waterborne pathogens in 616.9041

See also 614.5 for specific diseases transmitted by vectors or by water

.432 Insects

.432 2 Flies

.432 3 Mosquitoes

.432 4 Fleas and lice

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.433 Arachnids

Including mites, ticks

- .434 Birds
- .438 Rodents
- .44 Public preventive medicine
 - For specific preventive measures, see 614.45–614.48*

- > 614.45–614.48 Specific preventive measures
 - Class comprehensive works in 614.44
 - .45 Patient isolation
 - Class quarantine in 614.46
 - .46 Quarantine
 - Class patient isolation in 614.45
 - .47 Immunization
 - Class here vaccination
 - .48 Disinfection, fumigation, sterilization
 - Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
 - .49 History of epidemics
 - Add to base number 614.49 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., history of epidemics in the United Kingdom 614.4941

.5 Incidence of and public measures to prevent specific diseases and kinds of diseases

Class incidence of and public measures to prevent mental and emotional illnesses and disturbances in 362.2; class incidence of injuries and wounds in 614.3

See Manual at 362.1–362.4 and 614.4–614.5

SUMMARY

- 614.51 **Salmonella infections, bacillary diseases, clostridium infections, diphtheria, cholera, dysenteries, influenza**
 - .52 **Smallpox, scarlet fever, measles, rubella, chickenpox, rickettsial diseases**
 - .53 **Protozoan infections**
 - .54 **Miscellaneous diseases**
 - .55 **Parasitic diseases and diseases due to fungi (mycoses)**
 - .56 **Zoonoses**
 - .57 **Bacterial diseases**
 - .58 **Virus diseases**
 - .59 **Diseases of regions, systems, organs; other diseases**
- .51 Salmonella infections, bacillary diseases, clostridium infections, diphtheria, cholera, dysenteries, influenza
- .511 Salmonella infections
- .511 2 Typhoid fever

- .511 4 Paratyphoid fever
- .512 Clostridium infections, diphtheria
 Standard subdivisions are added for clostridium infections and diphtheria together, for clostridium infections alone
 Class here bacillaceae infections, bacillary infections
For bacillary dysentery, see 614.516; for anthrax, see 614.561
- .512 3 Diphtheria
- .512 5 Botulism
- .512 8 Tetanus
- .514 Cholera
- .516 Dysenteries
 Including amebic dysentery, bacillary dysentery (shigellosis)
- .518 Influenza
- .52 Smallpox, scarlet fever, measles, rubella, chickenpox, rickettsial diseases
- .521 Smallpox and attenuated forms
 Standard subdivisions are added for smallpox and attenuated forms together, for smallpox alone
 Including cowpox
- .522 Scarlet fever
- .523 Measles
- .524 Rubella
- .525 Chickenpox
- .526 Rickettsial diseases
 Add to base number 614.526 the numbers following 616.922 in 616.9222–616.9225, e.g., North Queensland tick typhus 614.5263, Q fever 614.5265
- .53 Protozoan infections
 Add to base number 614.53 the numbers following 616.936 in 616.9362–616.9364, e.g., malaria 614.532
For amebic dysentery, see 614.516
- .54 Miscellaneous diseases
 Limited to the diseases provided for below
- .541 Yellow fever
- .542 Tuberculosis
- .543 Whooping cough (Pertussis)

- .544 Mumps
- .545 Puerperal septicemia and pyemia
 Standard subdivisions are added for puerperal septicemia and pyemia together, for puerperal septicemia alone
 Class comprehensive works on incidence of and public measures to prevent septicemia and pyemia in 614.577
- .546 Hansen's disease (Leprosy)
- .547 Sexually transmitted diseases
 Including chancroid, condylomata acuminata (genital warts), herpes genitalis, lymphogranuloma venereum
For acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), see 614.599392
- .547 2 Syphilis
For neurosyphilis, see 614.5983
- .547 8 Gonorrhea
- .549 Poliomyelitis
 Including postpoliomyelitis syndrome
- .55 Parasitic diseases and diseases due to fungi (mycoses)
 Add to base number 614.55 the numbers following 616.96 in 616.962–616.969, e.g., schistosomiasis 614.553; however, for trichinosis, see 614.562
For protozoan infections, see 614.53; for parasitic skin diseases, see 614.5957; for fungal skin diseases, see 614.59579
- .56 Zoonoses
For incidence of and public measures to prevent a specific zoonotic disease not provided for here, see the disease, e.g., Q fever 614.5265
- .561 Anthrax
- .562 Trichinosis
- .563 Rabies
- .564 Glanders
- .565 Brucellosis
- .566 Psittacosis
- .57 Bacterial diseases
 Including escherichia coli infections, pseudomonas infections, mycoplasma infections
 Class here comprehensive works on gram-negative bacterial infections
For specific bacterial disease or group of bacterial diseases not provided for here, see the diseases, e.g., rickettsial diseases 614.526, brucellosis 614.565

- .573 Pasteurella infections, yersinia infections, chlamydia infections, tularemia
 Standard subdivisions are added for pasteurella infections, yersinia infections, chlamydia infections, tularemia together; for pasteurella infections alone
- .573 2 Plague
- .573 5 Chlamydia infections
- .573 9 Tularemia
- .574 Borrelia infections
- .574 4 Relapsing fevers
- .574 6 Lyme disease
- .577 Bacterial blood diseases
 Including pyemia, septicemia
 Class puerperal septicemia and pyemia in 614.545
- .579 Gram-positive bacterial infections
 Including mycobacterium infections
 For a specific gram-positive bacterial infection or group of gram-positive bacterial infections not provided for here, see the infection or group of infections, e.g., clostridium infections 614.512, anthrax 614.561
- .579 7 Staphylococcal infections
 Including toxic shock syndrome
- .579 8 Streptococcal infections
 Including necrotizing fasciitis
 For scarlet fever, see 614.522; for erysipelas, see 614.59523
- .58 Virus diseases
 For a specific virus disease or group of virus diseases not provided for here, see the disease or group of diseases, e.g., chickenpox 614.525
- .581 DNA virus infections
 Including human papillomavirus infections
 For a specific DNA virus infection not provided for here, see the infection, e.g., smallpox 614.521
- .581 2 Herpesvirus diseases
 Including infectious mononucleosis
 For a specific herpesvirus disease or group of herpesvirus diseases not provided for here, see the disease or group of diseases, e.g., herpes genitalis 614.547

- .588 RNA virus infections
 Including Colorado tick fever, hantavirus infections, retroviridae infections, Rift Valley fever
 For a specific RNA virus infection or retroviridae infection not provided for here, see the infection, e.g., measles 614.523, HIV infections 614.599392
- .588 5 Flavivirus infections
 For yellow fever, see 614.541
- .588 52 Dengue
 Including dengue hemorrhagic fever
- .588 56 West Nile fever
- .59 Diseases of regions, systems, organs; other diseases
 Class here incidence of injuries and wounds of specific regions, systems, organs
 Class comprehensive works on incidence of injuries and wounds in 614.3
- .591–.598 Diseases of regions, systems, organs
 Add to base number 614.59 the numbers following 616 in 616.1–616.8, e.g., epidemic diarrhea 614.593427, erysipelas 614.59523, heart disease 614.5912, nutritional diseases 614.5939, neurosyphilis 614.5983; however, for mental and emotional illnesses, see 362.2; for allergies affecting specific regions, systems, organs, see 614.5993; for tumors (neoplasms) of regions, systems, organs, see 614.5999
- .593 9 Nutritional and metabolic diseases
 Number built according to instructions under 614.591–614.598
 Class here nutrition surveys that emphasize malnutrition
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class comprehensive works on nutrition surveys in 363.82
- .599 Other diseases
- .599 2 Gynecologic, obstetrical, pediatric, geriatric disorders
 Add to base number 614.5992 the numbers following 618 in 618.1–618.9, e.g., pediatric disorders 614.599292; however, for puerperal septicemia and pyemia, see 614.545
- .599 3 Diseases of immune system
 Class here allergies, failures of immunity
 Add to base number 614.5993 the numbers following 616.97 in 616.973–616.979, e.g., acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) 614.599392
- .599 6 Dental diseases
 Including fluoridation of water supply

- .599 7 Eye diseases
- .599 8 Ear diseases
- .599 9 Cancers
- Including benign neoplasms, benign tumors
- Class here carcinoma, malignant neoplasms, malignant tumors, neoplastic diseases; comprehensive works on benign and malignant neoplasms, on benign and malignant tumors
- Class public programs to control cancer-causing agents in 363.179; class public programs to control carcinogens in food in 363.192
- .599 94 Specific cancers
- [.599 940 1–.599 940 9] Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 614.599901–614.599909
- .599 941–.599 949 Subdivisions for specific cancers
- Add to base number 614.59994 the numbers following 616.994 in 616.9941–616.9949, e.g., breast cancer 614.5999449

.6 Disposal of the dead

Class social aspects and services in 363.75

615 Pharmacology and therapeutics

Class comprehensive works on pharmacology in 615.1; class comprehensive works on therapeutics in 615.5

SUMMARY

- 615.1 Drugs (Materia medica)
- .2 Inorganic drugs
- .3 Organic drugs
- .4 Prescription filling
- .5 Therapeutics
- .6 Methods of administering drugs
- .7 Pharmacokinetics
- .8 Specific therapies and kinds of therapies
- .9 Toxicology

.1 Drugs (Materia medica)

Substances used for diagnosis, cure, mitigation, treatment, or prevention of disease

Class here patent medicines, pharmacology, pharmacy

Class drug therapy in 615.58

For specific drugs and groups of drugs, see 615.2–615.3; for practical pharmacy, see 615.4; for physiological and therapeutic action of drugs, see 615.7

See Manual at 615.1 vs. 615.2–615.3; also at 615.1 vs. 615.7

- [.101 513] Arithmetic
 Do not use; class in 615.1401513
- [.101 54] Chemistry
 Do not use; class in 615.19
- .107 24 Experimental research
 Class here experimental research on new drugs before they are ready for clinical trials, e.g., testing on cells in vitro or on animals; comprehensive works on drug testing
 For experimental research in development and manufacture of drugs, see 615.1900724; for clinical drug trials, see 615.580724
- .11 Pharmacopoeias
- [.110 93–.110 99] Specific continents, countries, localities
 Do not use; class in 615.113–615.119
- .113–.119 Specific continents, countries, localities
 Add to base number 615.11 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., pharmacopoeias of Japan 615.1152
- .13 Formularies
 Class here dispensatories
- [.130 93–.130 99] Specific continents, countries, localities
 Do not use; class in 615.133–615.139
- .133–.139 Specific continents, countries, localities
 Add to base number 615.13 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., formularies of United States 615.1373
- .14 Prescription writing
 Including measures to avoid incompatibilities in prescriptions
 Class here dosage determination, posology
- .140 151 3 Arithmetic
 Class here pharmaceutical arithmetic
- .18 Drug preservation techniques
 Class here packaging designed to preserve drug quality and potency
- .19 Pharmaceutical chemistry
 Including specific pharmaceutical dosage forms (forms of medication), e.g., ointments and emulsions; pills, capsules, tablets, troches, powders; solutions and extracts
 Class here drug design, drug development, pharmaceutical technology, comprehensive works on drug compounding
 For drug compounding closely associated with dispensing, see 615.4

- .190 01 Philosophy and theory
- .190 02 Miscellany
- [.190 028 7] Testing and measurement
- Do not use; class in 615.1901
- .190 03–.190 09 Standard subdivisions
- .190 1 Chemical analysis
- Class clinical drug trials in 615.580724; class toxicity testing of drugs in 615.7040724

> **615.2–615.3 Specific drugs and groups of drugs**

Class here pharmaceutical chemistry, preservation, general therapeutics

Class a specific drug or group of drugs affecting a specific system in 615.7; class comprehensive works in 615.1

See Manual at 615.1 vs. 615.2–615.3; also at 615.2–615.3 vs. 615.7

.2 Inorganic drugs

Add to base number 615.2 the numbers following 546 in 546.2–546.7, e.g., calomel (mercurous chloride) 615.2663

Class use of radioactive elements, of radioisotopes in 615.842

.3 Organic drugs

.31 Synthetic drugs

Add to base number 615.31 the numbers following 547.0 in 547.01–547.08, e.g., sulfonamides 615.3167

For a specific synthetic drug not provided for here, see the drug, e.g., synthetic vitamins 615.328

.32 Drugs derived from plants and microorganisms

.321 Drugs derived from plants

Class here herbal medicine, herbals, medicinal plants, minimally processed alkaloids, pharmacognosy; comprehensive works on crude drugs and simples (products that serve as drugs with minimal processing, e.g., medicinal teas)

Class enzymes of plant origin in 615.35

For drugs derived from specific plants, see 615.322–615.327

.321 9 Aromatherapy

.322 Drugs derived from bryophytes

Add to base number 615.322 the numbers following 588 in 588.2–588.3, e.g., drugs derived from Musci 615.3222

- .323–.327 Drugs derived from specific plants
 Add to base number 615.32 the numbers following 58 in 583–587, e.g.,
 belladonna 615.323952
 *For drugs derived from bryophytes, see 615.322; for drugs derived
 from fungi and algae, see 615.329*
- .328 Vitamins
 Including synthetic vitamins, vitamins of animal origin
 Class here vitamin therapy
- .329 Drugs derived from microorganisms, fungi, algae
 Class here comprehensive works on antibiotics
 Add to base number 615.329 the numbers following 579 in 579.2–579.8,
 e.g., streptomycin 615.329378
 For pharmacokinetics of antibiotics, see 615.7922
- .34 Fish-liver oils
- .35 Enzymes
 Including enzymes of plant origin
- .36 Drugs of animal origin
 Class here drugs of animal origin prepared by recombinant DNA
 technology, hormones
 *For a drug of animal origin not provided for here, see the drug, e.g.,
 fish-liver oils 615.34*
- .363 Pituitary hormones
 Including ACTH (adrenocorticotrophic hormone)
- .364 Adrenal hormones
 Including aldosterone, cortisone
 For sex hormones, see 615.366
- .365 Insulin
- .366 Sex hormones
- .37 Immunologic drugs and immune serums
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here antitoxins, immune gamma globulins, immunoglobulins
- .372 Vaccines
 Including toxoids
 Class here development and manufacture of vaccines
 Class use of vaccines in 614.47. Class use of specific vaccines with the
 disease in 614.5, e.g., use of influenza vaccines 614.518

- .39 Human blood products and their substitutes
- Standard subdivisions are added for human blood products and their substitutes together, for human blood products alone
- Including blood and blood plasma transfusion
- For immune gamma globulins, immunoglobulins, immune serums, see 615.37*
- See also 362.1784 for blood and blood plasma banks*
- .399 Blood substitutes
- Including blood plasma substitutes
- .4 Prescription filling**
- Class here drug compounding closely associated with filling prescriptions
- Class comprehensive works on pharmacy in 615.1; class drug compounding by drug manufacturers, comprehensive works on drug compounding in 615.19
- See also 615.14 for prescription writing*
- .401 513 Arithmetic
- Class pharmaceutical arithmetic in 615.1401513
- .5 Therapeutics**
- Class here comprehensive works on alternative therapies, on iatrogenic diseases, on patient compliance, on placebo effect
- Class works on alternative medicine that include pathology and etiology in addition to therapeutics in 610 (or, if arranged by kind of disease, in 616). Class therapies applied to a specific disease or group of diseases with the disease or group of diseases in 616–618, plus notation 06 from table under 616.1–616.9, notation 06 from table under 617, or notation 06 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g., therapies for cardiovascular diseases 616.106
- For specific therapies and kinds of therapies other than drug therapy, chemotherapy, see 615.8; for emergency care, see 616.025; for intensive care, see 616.028; for palliative and terminal care, see 616.029. For a specific occurrence of iatrogenic diseases, patient compliance, placebo effect, see the occurrence, e.g., drug interactions not anticipated by a doctor 615.7045, surgical infections 617.9195*
- .501 9 Psychological principles
- Do not use for psychological therapies; class in 615.851
- .507 1 Education
- Class here comprehensive works on patient education
- For patient education on a specific topic, see the topic, plus notation 071 from Table 1, e.g., patient education about diabetes mellitus 616.4620071*
- .507 2 Research

- .507 24 Experimental research
 Class here comprehensive works on clinical trials
 For clinical trials of diagnostic procedures, see 616.0750724.
 For clinical trials of a specific therapy, see the therapy,
 plus notation 0724 from Table 1, e.g., clinical drug trials
 615.580724; for clinical trials of therapies for a specific
 disease or group of diseases, see the disease or group of
 diseases in 616–618, plus notation 060724 or other subdivision
 of 06 from table under 616.1–616.9, notation 060724 or other
 subdivision of 06 from table under 617, or notation 060724
 or other subdivision of 06 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g.,
 clinical trials of therapies for cancer 616.994060724, clinical
 trials of drugs for cancer 616.9940610724
- .508 3 Young people
 Do not use for therapeutics for infants and children up to puberty,
 comprehensive works on child and adolescent therapeutics; class in
 615.542
- .508 35 Young people twelve to twenty
 Do not use for therapeutics for young people twelve to twenty who
 have not reached puberty; class in 615.542
 Class here therapeutics for adolescents
- .508 4 People in specific stages of adulthood
- [.508 46] People in late adulthood
 Do not use; class in 615.547
- .53 General therapeutic systems
 Including anthroposophical therapy, botanic and eclectic medicine
 Class drug therapy regardless of system in 615.58
 See also 615.321 for botanic remedies, herbal medicine; also 615.88 for
 folk remedies, traditional remedies
 See Manual at 615.53.
- .532 Homeopathy
- .533 Osteopathy
 As a therapeutic system
 Class comprehensive works on osteopathy as a medical science in 610.
 Class a specific application of osteopathy with the application, e.g.,
 osteopathic discussion of thyroid diseases 616.44
- .534 Chiropractic
- .534 092 Biography
 See Manual at 610.92 vs. 615.534092
- .535 Naturopathy
- .538 Ayurvedic medicine

.54 Pediatric and geriatric therapeutics

.542 Pediatric therapeutics

Class here comprehensive works on child and adolescent therapeutics

For adolescent therapeutics, see 615.50835. For a specific aspect of pediatric therapeutics, see the aspect, plus notation 083 from Table 1, e.g., exercise therapy for children 615.82083

.547 Geriatric therapeutics

For a specific aspect of geriatric therapeutics, see the aspect, plus notation 0846 from Table 1, e.g., acupuncture as therapy for people in late adulthood 615.8920846

.58 Drug therapy

Class here chemotherapy

Class general therapeutics of a specific drug or group of drugs in 615.2–615.3

For methods of administering drugs, see 615.6

.580 724 Experimental research

Class here clinical drug trials

Class chemical analysis of drugs in 615.1901; class toxicity testing of drugs in 615.7040724. Class clinical trials for drugs for specific diseases or groups of diseases with the disease or group of diseases in 616–618, plus notation 0610724 from table under 616.1–616.9, notation 0610724 from table under 617, or notation 0610724 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g., clinical trials of drugs for cancer 616.9940610724

.6 Methods of administering drugs

Only works that focus narrowly on methods of administering drugs

Including inhalation, oral, topical administration; injections; parenteral infusions

Class here drug administration routes

Class general works on a specific type of therapy with the therapy, e.g., drug therapy 615.58, inhalation therapy 615.836

For methods of administering a specific drug or group of drugs, see 615.2–615.3

- .7 Pharmacokinetics**
 Class here biopharmaceutics, pharmacodynamics
 Class use of a drug to treat a specific disease or group of diseases with the disease or group of diseases in 616–618, plus notation 061 from table under 616.1–616.9, notation 061 from table under 617, or notation 061 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g., drug treatment for diseases of liver 616.362061
For toxicology, see 615.9
See Manual at 612.1–612.8; also at 615.1 vs. 615.7; also at 615.2–615.3 vs. 615.7; also at 615.7 vs. 615.9
- .704 Special effects and actions of drugs**
 Class here adverse reactions, toxic reactions
 Class toxicity testing of drugs in 615.7040724; class drug allergies in 616.9758
- .704 028 7 Testing and measurement**
 Do not use for toxicity testing of drugs; class in 615.7040724
- .704 2 Side effects**
- .704 5 Interactions**
 Including drug-herb interactions, drug incompatibilities
- .704 52 Drug-nutrient interactions**
- .71 Drugs affecting cardiovascular and hematopoietic systems**
 Standard subdivisions are added for drugs affecting cardiovascular and hematopoietic systems together, for drugs affecting cardiovascular system alone
- .711 Cardiotonic agents**
 Class here heart stimulants
- .716 Anti-arrhythmia agents**
 Class here heart depressants, myocardial depressants
- .718 Drugs affecting blood and hematopoietic system**
- .72 Drugs affecting respiratory system**
 Including bronchodilator agents, cough remedies, expectorants
- .73 Drugs affecting digestive system and metabolism**
 Standard subdivisions are added for drugs affecting digestive system and metabolism together, for drugs affecting digestive system alone
 Class drug-nutrient interactions in 615.70452
- .732 Cathartics**
 Class here laxatives

- .739 Drugs affecting metabolism
 Including antilipemic agents
- .74 Drugs affecting lymphatic and glandular systems
- .76 Drugs affecting urogenital system
- .761 Drugs affecting urinary system
 Including diuretics, antidiuretics
- .766 Drugs affecting reproductive system
 Including abortifacient, contraceptive, fertility drugs
- .766 9 Aphrodisiacs
- .77 Drugs affecting musculoskeletal system, integument
 Standard subdivisions are added for drugs affecting musculoskeletal system,
 integument together; for drugs affecting musculoskeletal system alone
- .771 Drugs affecting bones
- .773 Drugs affecting muscles
- .778 Drugs affecting integument
 For drugs affecting nails and hair, see 615.779
- .779 Drugs affecting nails and hair
- .78 Drugs affecting nervous system
 Class here addictive drugs, psychopharmacology

 Class personal aspects of preventing drug addiction in 613.8; class drug
 therapy for mental disorders in 616.8918; class comprehensive medical
 works on addictions as diseases in 616.86; class interdisciplinary works on
 drug addiction in 362.29

 See also 178 for the ethics of using addictive drugs
- .781 Anesthetics
- .782 Central nervous system depressants
 Class here hypnotics, sedatives

 *For anesthetics, see 615.781; for analgesics, see 615.783; for
 tranquilizers, see 615.7882*
- .782 1 Barbiturates
- .782 2 Narcotics
 Including narcotic antagonists
- .782 7 Cannabis
 Including marijuana
- .782 8 Alcohol

- .783 Analgesics
 Including antipyretics
- .784 Anticonvulsants and antispasmodics
 Standard subdivisions are added for anticonvulsants and antispasmodics
 together, for anticonvulsants alone
 Including parasympatholytics
- .785 Central nervous system stimulants
 For aphrodisiacs, see 615.7669
- .788 Psychotropic drugs
- .788 2 Tranquilizers
 Including anti-anxiety, antipsychotic drugs; chlorpromazine,
 diazepam, meprobamate
- .788 3 Hallucinogens
 Class here psychedelic drugs
 For cannabis, see 615.7827
- .79 Miscellaneous classes of drugs
 Limited to those provided for below
- .792 Anti-infective agents
 Including antifungal agents, antiparasitic agents
- .792 2 Anti-bacterial agents
 Class here antibiotics
 Class interdisciplinary works on antibiotics in 615.329
- .792 4 Antiviral agents
 Including anti-retroviral agents, anti-HIV agents
- .794 Anti-inflammatory agents
- .796 Anti-allergic agents
- .798 Antineoplastic agents
- .8 Specific therapies and kinds of therapies**
 Class comprehensive works in 615.5
 For drug therapy, see 615.58; for surgery, see 617
 See Manual at 615.8; also at 613 vs. 612, 615.8

SUMMARY

615.82	Physical therapies
.83	Phototherapy, thermotherapy, climatotherapy, respiratory therapy; therapeutic use of sound
.84	Radiotherapy, electric stimulation therapy, magnetotherapy
.85	Miscellaneous therapies
.88	Traditional remedies
.89	Other therapies

[.801--.809] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 615.501–615.509

.82 Physical therapies

Including Alexander technique

Class here physiotherapy, therapeutic manipulations and exercises

For phototherapy, thermotherapy, climatotherapy, respiratory therapy; therapeutic use of sound, see 615.83; for radiotherapy, electric stimulation therapy, magnetotherapy, see 615.84; for hydrotherapy and balneotherapy, see 615.853

.822 Therapeutic massage

Including Rolfing

Class here interdisciplinary works on massage

Class aromatherapy in 615.3219

For massage for health and fitness, see 613.72

.822 2 Acupressure

Class here shiatsu

Class comprehensive works on acupuncture and acupressure in 615.892

.822 4 Reflexology

.83 Phototherapy, thermotherapy, climatotherapy, respiratory therapy; therapeutic use of sound

Class music therapy in 615.85154

.831 Phototherapy

.831 2 Color therapy

.831 4 Heliotherapy

.831 5 Ultraviolet therapy

Class here actinotherapy

.832 Thermotherapy

.832 3 Diathermy

Class here ultrasonic therapy

- .832 9 Cryotherapy
 For cryosurgery, see 617.05
- .834 Climatotherapy
- .836 Respiratory therapy
 Including breathing exercises, hyperbaric oxygenation, oxygen inhalation therapy
 Class here aerotherapy, inhalation therapy
 Class aromatherapy in 615.3219
- .836 2 Artificial respiration
- .84 Radiotherapy, electric stimulation therapy, magnetotherapy
- .842 Radiotherapy
 Class phototherapy in 615.831
- .842 2 X-ray therapy
- .842 3 Radium therapy
- .842 4 Radioisotope therapy
 Class radium therapy in 615.8423
- .845 Electric stimulation therapy and magnetotherapy
 Standard subdivisions are added for electric stimulation therapy and magnetotherapy together, for electric stimulation therapy alone
 Class here electrotherapeutics, therapeutic use of electricity
 Class diathermy in 615.8323; class electroacupuncture in 615.892
- .845 4 Magnetotherapy
 Class here therapeutic use of magnetism
- .85 Miscellaneous therapies
 Limited to the therapies provided for below
- .851 Psychological and activity therapies
 Class mental healing (psychic healing) in 615.8528; class comprehensive works on psychotherapy in 616.8914
- .851 2 Hypnotherapy
- .851 22 Self-hypnosis
 Class here autogenic training
 Class therapeutic use of biofeedback in 615.8514
- .851 4 Biofeedback therapy
 Class here therapeutic use of biofeedback training

- .851 5 Activity therapy
 Including therapeutic use of gardening
 Class here occupational therapy
 For bibliotherapy and educational therapies, see 615.8516
- .851 53 Recreational therapy
 Class here play therapy
 Class therapeutic use of horsemanship in 615.851581
- .851 54 Music therapy
- .851 55 Dance therapy
- .851 56 Art therapy
- .851 58 Therapeutic use of animals
 Class here therapeutic use of pets
 Class works that focus on the therapy animal and training it for
 therapeutic use with the animal in 636, e.g., training therapy dogs
 636.7088
- .851 581 Therapeutic use of horses
 Class here therapeutic use of horsemanship
- .851 6 Bibliotherapy and educational therapies
- .852 Religious and psychic therapies
 Standard subdivisions are added for religious and psychic therapies
 together, for religious therapies alone
 Including healing touch (therapeutic touch), Reiki
 Class here faith healing, spiritual therapies
 See Manual at 615.852 vs. 203.1, 234.131, 292–299
- .852 8 Psychic therapies
 Including psychic surgery
 Class here healing facilitated by spiritualism; mental healing (psychic
 healing)
- .853 Hydrotherapy and balneotherapy
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .854 Nutrition therapy
 Class here diet therapy
 *For diet therapy emphasizing a single food, see the food as a type
 of drug in 615.3, e.g., a diet emphasizing soy 615.32374, a diet
 emphasizing garlic 615.32433*

- .854 8 Nutrition support
 Class here artificial feeding
- .854 82 Enteral nutrition
 Class here tube feeding
- .854 84 Parenteral nutrition
 Class here intravenous feeding
- .855 Parenteral therapy
 *For a specific kind of parenteral therapy, see the kind, e.g., parenteral
 drug therapy 615.58, parenteral feeding 615.85484*
- .856 Controversial and spurious therapies
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here quackery
 *For a specific controversial or spurious therapy, see the therapy, e.g.,
 controversial diet therapy 615.854*
- .88 Traditional remedies
 Only therapeutics
 Class here folk remedies, home remedies
 Class theoretical works on traditional general therapeutic systems in 615.53;
 class works on traditional medicine that include pathological or etiological
 beliefs in 610 (or, if arranged by class of disease, in 616). Class a specific
 kind of traditional remedy with the kind, e.g., medicinal herbs 615.321,
 acupuncture 615.892
- .880 9 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .880 901 To 499 A.D.
 Class here ancient remedies
- .880 902 6th–15th centuries, 500–1499
 Class here medieval remedies
- .89 Other therapies
- .892 Acupuncture
 Including moxibustion, electroacupuncture
 Class here comprehensive works on acupuncture and acupressure
 For acupressure, see 615.8222
- .895 Gene therapy

.9 Toxicology

Class here poisons and poisoning

Class forensic toxicology in 614.13. Class effects of poisons on a specific system or organ with the system or organ, plus notation 071 from table under 616.1–616.9, notation 071 from table under 617, or notation 061 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g., effect of poisons on the liver 616.362071

See Manual at 615.7 vs. 615.9

SUMMARY

615.900 1–.900 9	Standard subdivisions
.901–.909	[Industrial toxicology; incidence, prevention, tests, analysis, detection, treatment of poisoning]
.91	Gaseous poisons
.92	Inorganic poisons
.94	Animal poisons
.95	Organic poisons
.900 1	Philosophy and theory
.900 2	Miscellany
[.900 287]	Testing and measurement
	Do not use; class in 615.907
.900 3–.900 9	Standard subdivisions
.902	Industrial toxicology
	Including toxicology of pollution
	Class here environmental toxicology
	Class environmental diseases, environmental medicine in 616.98
	<i>For toxic reactions and interactions of drugs, see 615.704; for toxicology of food additives, see 615.954</i>
.904	Incidence of poisoning
.905	Prevention of poisoning
	Class public safety programs and social provision for prevention of poisoning in 363.1791
.907	Tests, analysis, detection of poisons and poisoning
	Class here diagnoses and prognoses of poisoning
	Topics listed under 616.075 Diagnoses and prognoses are all included here
.908	Treatment of poisoning
	Class here antidotes

- .91 Gaseous poisons
 Including asphyxiating gases
 Class here lethal gases
- .92 Inorganic poisons
 For gaseous inorganic poisons, see 615.91; for radiation poisoning, see 616.9897
- .921 Acids
 For specific acids, see 615.925
- .922 Alkalis
 For specific alkalis, see 615.925
- .925 Specific inorganic poisons
 Add to base number 615.925 the numbers following 546 in 546.2–546.7, e.g., mercurial poisons 615.925663
- .94 Animal poisons
- .942 Venoms
 Including bee, scorpion, snake, spider venoms
- .945 Poisonous food animals
 Only works that emphasize poisons
 Including poisonous fishes; food animals made poisonous by plants or microorganisms, e.g., shellfish made poisonous by red tides
 Class comprehensive medical works on a specific type of communicable disease that involves poisons with the type of disease in 616.9, e.g., salmonella infections 616.927
- .95 Organic poisons
 For gaseous organic poisons, see 615.91; for animal poisons, see 615.94
- .951 Synthetic and manufactured poisons
 Add to base number 615.951 the numbers following 547.0 in 547.01–547.08, e.g., ethers 615.95135
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .952 Plant and microorganism poisons, poisons derived from plants and microorganisms
 Standard subdivisions are added for all topics in heading together, for plant poisons alone, for poisons derived from plants alone
 Class food animals made poisonous by plants and microorganisms in 615.945

- .952 3–.952 8 Specific plant poisons, poisons derived from specific plants
 Add to base number 615.952 the numbers following 58 in 583–588,
 e.g., opium 615.952335
 *For fungi and algae poisons, poisons derived from fungi and
 algae, see 615.9529*
- .952 9 Microorganism, fungi, algae poisons; poisons derived from
 microorganisms, fungi, algae
 Only works that emphasize poisons
 Add to base number 615.9529 the numbers following 579 in
 579.2–579.8, e.g., bacterial food poisons 615.95293
 Class comprehensive medical works on a specific type of
 communicable disease that involves poisons with the type of disease
 in 616.9, e.g., salmonella infections 616.927, botulism 616.9315
- .954 Food poisons
 Only works that emphasize poisons
 Including toxicology of food additives
 Class poisonous food animals in 615.945. Class a specific plant poison
 and poisons derived from specific plants and microorganisms with the
 poison in 615.952, e.g., bacterial food poisons 615.95293

616 Diseases

Class here clinical medicine, evidence-based medicine, internal medicine

*For incidence of and public measures to prevent disease, see 614.4; for
 therapeutics, see 615.5; for injuries and wounds, surgical treatment of diseases,
 diseases by body region, diseases of teeth, eyes, ears, see 617; for gynecologic,
 obstetrical, fetal, pediatric, geriatric diseases, see 618*

*See Manual at 610 vs. 616; also at 616 vs. 612; also at 616 vs. 616.075; also at
 616 vs. 617.4; also at 616 vs. 618.92*

SUMMARY

- 616.001–.009 Standard subdivisions**
 .02–.09 [General topics of diseases]
 .1 Diseases of cardiovascular system
 .2 Diseases of respiratory system
 .3 Diseases of digestive system
 .4 Diseases of endocrine, hematopoietic, lymphatic, glandular systems;
 diseases of male breast
 .5 Diseases of integument
 .6 Diseases of urogenital system
 .7 Diseases of musculoskeletal system
 .8 Diseases of nervous system and mental disorders
 .9 Other diseases

-
- > 616.001–616.009 Standard subdivisions
- Class comprehensive works in 616
- See Manual at 610 vs. 616: Standard subdivisions*
- .001 Philosophy and theory
- .001 9 Psychological principles
- Do not use for psychosomatic medicine; class in 616.08
- .002 Miscellany
- [.002 3] Work with diseases as a profession, occupation, hobby
- Do not use; class in 610.69
- .002 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
- [.002 87] Testing and measurement
- Do not use; class in 616.075
- .003–.006 Standard subdivisions
- .007 Education, research, related topics
- [.007 24] Experimental research
- Do not use; class in 616.027
- .008 Groups of people
- Do not use for incidence of disease in groups of people; class in 614.4208
- .008 3 Young people
- Do not use for diseases of infants and children up to puberty, comprehensive works on child and adolescent medicine; class in 618.92
- .008 35 Young people twelve to twenty
- Do not use for diseases of young people twelve to twenty who have not reached puberty; class in 618.92
- Class here adolescent medicine
- .008 4 People in specific stages of adulthood
- [.008 46] People in late adulthood
- Do not use; class in 618.97
- .009 History, geographic treatment, biography
- Do not use for history and geographic treatment of incidence of disease; class in 614.42. Do not use for history of epidemics; class in 614.49
- [.009 11–.009 13] Frigid, temperate, tropical zones
- Do not use; class in 616.9881–616.9883

- .009 2 Biography
 Class life with a physical disease in 362.19. Class life with a mental disorder with the disorder in 616.85–616.89, plus notation 0092 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., life with manic-depressive illness 616.8950092

SUMMARY

- | | |
|--------|-----------------------------------|
| 616.02 | Special topics of diseases |
| .04 | Special medical conditions |
| .07 | Pathology |
| .08 | Psychosomatic medicine |
| .09 | Case histories |

- .02 Special topics of diseases
 Class special topics applied to special medical conditions in 616.04
- .024 Domestic medicine
 Diagnosis and treatment of ailments without direction of physician
 Including advice on when to go to a doctor
 For first aid, see 616.0252. For a specific kind of therapy, see the therapy in 615, e.g., drug therapy 615.58
- .025 Medical emergencies
 Class here emergency care nursing, resuscitation, comprehensive works on emergency medicine
 For intensive care, see 616.028. For a specific kind of emergency therapy, see the therapy in 615, e.g., oxygen therapy 615.836; for a specific kind of resuscitation, see the kind, e.g., cardiopulmonary resuscitation 616.1025
- .025 2 First aid
- .027 Experimental medicine
 Including use of cultured or genetically engineered tissue, use of human fetal tissue
 Class ethics of animal experimentation in 179.4; class ethics of experimentation on human subjects and comprehensive works on ethics of medical experimentation in 174.28; class comprehensive works on clinical trials in 615.50724; class comprehensive works on clinical trials of diagnostic procedures in 616.0750724; class fetal tissue transplantation in 617.954; class breeding, genetic engineering, care, maintenance of laboratory animals in 636.0885
- .027 3 Mammals other than humans
 As models for experimental research on human diseases
 Including rabbits, swine
 Class here transgenic mammals as experimental animals
 Class experimental research using mammalian cells in 616.0277

- .027 33 Rodents
 Including guinea pigs, hamsters, rats
- .027 333 Mice (Mus)
- .027 38 Primates
 Including apes, monkeys
- .027 7 Cells
 Use for experimental research on human diseases
 Class here cell lines
- .027 74 Stem cells
- .028 Intensive care
 Class here critical care, intensive care nursing
 *For a specific kind of intensive care therapy, see the therapy in 615,
 e.g., oxygen therapy 615.836*
- .029 Palliative and terminal care
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here terminal care nursing
 *For a specific kind of palliative and terminal care therapy, see the
 therapy in 615, e.g., drug therapy 615.58; for palliative treatment of a
 specific symptom, see the symptom, e.g., pain 616.0472*
- .04 Special medical conditions
- .042 Genetic diseases (Hereditary diseases)
 Class here genetic aspects of diseases with complex causation,
 comprehensive works on medical genetics
 *For gene therapy, see 615.895; for immunogenetics, see 616.0796;
 for prenatal procedures to diagnose genetic diseases (e.g.,
 amniocentesis and chorionic villus biopsy), see 618.3204275*
- .043 Congenital diseases
 Including teratology
 Class congenital diseases of genetic origin in 616.042
- .044 Chronic diseases
 For chronic fatigue syndrome, see 616.0478

- .047 Symptoms and general pathological processes as problems in their own right
 Including edema, fever, gangrene
 Class here pathology, diagnosis, treatment of symptoms of various etiologies; symptomatology
 Class comprehensive works on palliative care in 616.029; class interpretation of symptoms for diagnosis and prognosis in 616.075; class infections in 616.9; class results of injuries and wounds in 617.2; class surgical complications and sequelae in 617.919. Class symptoms and pathological processes of a specific disease or class of diseases with the disease or class of diseases, e.g., symptoms of heart diseases 616.12
- .047 2 Pain
 Class headaches in 616.8491
- .047 3 Inflammation
- .047 5 Shock and multiple organ failure
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
For shock associated with injury or surgery, see 617.21
- .047 8 Chronic fatigue syndrome
 Class here chronic fatigue syndrome discussed as a specific kind of disease, myalgic encephalomyelitis
See also 616.044 for chronic diseases

> 616.07–616.09 Pathology, psychosomatic medicine, case histories

Class pathology, psychosomatic medicine, case histories applied to special medical conditions in 616.04; class comprehensive works in 616

- .07 Pathology
For cytopathology, see 611.01815; for histopathology, see 611.0182–611.0189; for forensic pathology, see 614.1; for medical microbiology, see 616.9041; for symptoms and general pathological processes as problems in their own right, see 616.047

SUMMARY

616.071	Etiology
.075	Diagnosis and prognosis
.078	Death
.079	Immunity

- .071 Etiology
 Class here pathogenesis, risk factors
 Class social factors contributing to spread of a disease in 362.1042; class genetic diseases, genetic aspects of diseases with complex causation in 616.042
 For pathogenic microorganisms as causes of communicable diseases, see 616.9041
- .075 Diagnosis and prognosis
 Standard subdivisions are added for diagnosis and prognosis together, for diagnosis alone
 Class here differential diagnosis; disability evaluation; nursing assessment, nursing diagnosis
 Class nonprofessional diagnosis in 616.024
 See Manual at 616 vs. 616.075
- .075 072 4 Experimental research
 Class here clinical trials of diagnostic procedures
 Class comprehensive works on clinical trials of diagnostic procedures and therapy in 615.50724
- .075 1 Medical history taking
- .075 4 Physical diagnosis
 Including thermography
 Class here comprehensive works on diagnostic imaging
 For radiological diagnosis, see 616.0757
- .075 43 Diagnostic ultrasound
 Class here comprehensive works on ultrasonography (sonography, echography)
 Class comprehensive works on tomography in 616.0757
 For ultrasonic therapy, see 615.8323
- .075 44 Diagnosis by sound
 Class here auscultation
- .075 45 Optical diagnosis
 Class here comprehensive works on endoscopy
 Class microscopy in 616.0758
 For endoscopic surgery, see 617.057
- .075 47 Electrodiagnosis

- .075 48 Magnetic diagnosis
 Class here magnetic resonance imaging, nuclear magnetic
 resonance imaging, proton spin tomography
 Class comprehensive works on tomography in 616.0757
- .075 6 Chemical diagnosis
 Including diagnostic serology, immunodiagnosis
 Class here clinical chemistry, laboratory diagnosis
 *For radioimmunoassay, see 616.0757; for microscopy in
 diagnosis, see 616.0758*
- .075 61 Blood analysis
 Including phlebotomy
 See also 616.15075 for diagnosis of diseases of blood
- .075 63 Analysis of gastroenteric contents
 See also 616.3075 for diagnosis of diseases of digestive system
- .075 66 Urinalysis
 Class radioscopic urinalysis in 616.0757; class urinary
 manifestations of diseases of urogenital system in 616.63
 *See also 616.6075 for diagnosis of diseases of urogenital
 system*
- .075 7 Radiological diagnosis
 Including radioimmunoassay, radioscopic urinalysis
 Class here diagnostic radiology; comprehensive works on medical
 radiology, on tomography
 Class diagnostic radiology limited to use of X-rays in 616.07572;
 class comprehensive works on diagnostic imaging in 616.0754
 *For radiotherapy, see 615.842; for magnetic resonance imaging,
 see 616.07548*
- .075 72 Radiography (X-ray examination)
 Including fluoroscopy
 Class diagnostic radiology covering use of X-rays, radioactive
 materials, other ionizing radiation in 616.0757
- .075 722 X-ray computed tomography
 Class here computerized axial tomography (CAT scan, CT)

- .075 75 Radioisotope scanning
 Variant names: nuclear medicine, radionuclide imaging
 Including positron emission tomography (PET),
 radioimmunoimaging, single-photon emission-computed
 tomography (SPECT)
 See also 616.07548 for nuclear magnetic resonance imaging
- .075 8 Microscopy in diagnosis
 Class here biopsy
- .075 81 Bacteriological examination
- .075 82 Cytological examination
- .075 83 Histological and histochemical examination
- .075 9 Autopsy (Postmortem examination)
 Class forensic autopsy in 614.1
- .078 Death
 Class interdisciplinary works on human death in 306.9
- .079 Immunity
 Class here disease resistance, immune system, immunochemistry,
 immunology, leukocytes, lymphocytes
 Class immune serums and immunologic drugs in 615.37; class diagnostic
 immunochemistry, immunodiagnosis in 616.0756; class diseases of
 hematopoietic system in 616.41; class diseases of immune system in
 616.97
-
- > 616.079 1–616.079 6 Immunochemistry
 Class comprehensive works in 616.079. Class applications of immunochemistry
 to a specific type of cell or to reactions associated with a specific type of cell
 with the cell or reaction in 616.0797–616.0799, e.g., immunochemistry of
 antigen-antibody reactions 616.07987
- .079 1 Interferons
- .079 2 Antigens
- .079 5 Immune response
 Including clonal selection
 Class here antigen recognition, comprehensive works on serology
 Class immune reactions associated with specific types of cells in
 616.0797–616.0799
 For diagnostic serology, see 616.0756
- .079 6 Immunogenetics

- .079 7 T cells (T lymphocytes)
 Class here cell-mediated (cellular) immunity, cytotoxic T cells
 See also 616.0799 for killer cells
- .079 8 B cells (B lymphocytes)
 Class here antibodies (immunoglobulins)
 For antibody-dependent immune mechanisms, see 616.0799
- .079 87 Antigen-antibody reactions
- .079 9 Phagocytes and complement
 Standard subdivisions are added for phagocytes and complement
 together, for phagocytes alone
 Including granulocytes, killer cells
 Class here antibody-dependent immune mechanisms,
 reticuloendothelial system
 See also 616.0797 for cytotoxic T cells
- .079 95 Macrophages
- .079 97 Complement
 Class activation of macrophages by complement in 616.07995
- .08 Psychosomatic medicine
 Use only for psychosomatic aspects of diseases defined in 616.1–616.7,
 616.9
 Class somatoform disorders in 616.8524; class diseases caused by stress in
 616.98; class comprehensive works on psychological and psychosomatic
 aspects of disease in 616.0019
- .09 Case histories

>

616.1–616.9 Specific diseases

All notes under 616.02–616.08 are applicable here

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 001 Philosophy and theory
- 002 Miscellany
- [0023] The subject as a profession, occupation, hobby
Do not use; class in 023
- 0028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
- 00284 Apparatus, equipment, materials
Do not use for self-help devices for people with disabilities; class in 03
- [00287] Testing and measurement
Do not use; class in 075
- 003–006 Standard subdivisions
- 007 Education, research, related topics
- [00724] Experimental research
Do not use; class in 027
- 008 Groups of people
Do not use for incidence of specific diseases or kinds of diseases in groups of people; class in 614.5
- 0083 Young people
Do not use for diseases of infants and children up to puberty, comprehensive works on diseases of children and adolescents; class in 618.92
- 00835 Young people twelve to twenty
Do not use for diseases of young people twelve to twenty who have not reached puberty; class in 618.92
Class here diseases of adolescents
- 0084 People in specific stages of adulthood
- [00846] People in late adulthood
Do not use; class in 618.97
- 009 History, geographic treatment, biography
Do not use for history and geographic treatment of incidence of specific diseases or kinds of diseases; class in 614.5
- 0092 Biography
Class life with a physical disease in 362.19. Class life with a mental disease with the disease in 616.85–616.89, plus notation 0092, e.g., life with depression 616.85270092
- >01–03 Medical microbiology, special topics, rehabilitation
Class microbiology, special topics, rehabilitation applied to special classes of diseases in 04; class comprehensive works in 616 without adding from this table

(continued)

>

616.1–616.9 Specific diseases (continued)

- 01 Medical microbiology
When the cause of a disease or class of diseases is known to be a single type of microorganism, use 01 without further subdivision for works about the type of microorganism
Class works on a whole disease and its course, cure, and prevention with the disease without adding from this table, e.g., comprehensive works on tuberculosis 616.995
See Manual at 616.1–9: Add table: 071 vs. 01
- 014 Medical bacteriology
Including medical microbiology of rickettsiae
- 015 Medical mycology
- 016 Medical protozoology
- 019 Medical virology
- 02 Special topics
- 023 Personnel
- 0231 Nurses
Class here nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships; nursing with respect to specific diseases; works that emphasize technology of operations performed by nurses, e.g., works that emphasize techniques used by a cardiovascular nurse 616.10231, by an orthopedic nurse 616.70231
Class works that emphasize a specific technique used by nurses with the technique, e.g., nursing diagnosis 075, nursing diagnosis of cardiovascular diseases 616.1075
- 0232 Physicians
Class here nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships
Do not use for works that emphasize technology of operations performed by physicians; class with the subject without 0232, e.g., works that emphasize techniques used by a physician with respect to cardiovascular diseases 616.1
Class works that emphasize a specific technique used by physicians with the technique, e.g., diagnosis by a physician 075, diagnosis by a physician of cardiovascular diseases 616.1075

(continued)

>

616.1–616.9 Specific diseases (continued)

- 0233 Allied health personnel
Class here nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships; works that emphasize technology of operations performed by allied health personnel, e.g., works that emphasize techniques used by allied health personnel with respect to cardiovascular diseases 616.10233
Class works that emphasize a specific technique used by allied health personnel with the technique, e.g., diagnosis by allied health personnel 075, diagnosis of cardiovascular diseases by allied health personnel 616.1075
- 02332 Physician assistants
- 024 Domestic medicine
Class a specific kind of therapy with the therapy in 06, e.g., drug therapy 061
For first aid, see 0252
- 025 Medical emergencies
Class here comprehensive works on emergency therapy for specific diseases or kinds of diseases
For intensive care, see 028. For a specific kind of emergency therapy, see the therapy in 06, e.g., emergency drug therapy 061
- 0252 First aid
- 027 Experimental medicine
- 028 Intensive care
Class here critical care
For a specific kind of intensive care therapy, see the therapy in 06, e.g., drug therapy 061
- 029 Palliative and terminal care
For a specific kind of palliative or terminal care therapy, see the therapy in 06, e.g., drug therapy 061
- 03 Rehabilitation
Including self-help devices for people with disabilities
Class rehabilitative therapy in 06; class comprehensive works on rehabilitation in 617.03
- 04 Special classes of diseases
Limited to the classes named below
- 042 Genetic diseases (Hereditary diseases)
Class here genetic aspects of diseases with complex causation, medical genetics
- 0421–0423 Microbiology, special topics, rehabilitation
Add to 042 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–03 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., experimental medicine for genetic diseases 04227
- 0425–0429 Preventive measures, therapy, pathology, psychosomatic medicine, case histories
Add to 042 the numbers following 0 in notation 05–09 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., therapy for genetic diseases 0426, gene therapy 042695

(continued)

> **616.1–616.9 Specific diseases (continued)**

- 043 Congenital diseases
Class congenital diseases of genetic origin in 042
- 0431–0433 Microbiology, special topics, rehabilitation
Add to 043 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–03 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., experimental medicine for congenital diseases 04327
- 0435–0439 Preventive measures, therapy, pathology, psychosomatic medicine, case histories
Add to 043 the numbers following 0 in notation 05–09 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., therapy for congenital diseases 0436
- >05–09 Preventive measures, therapy, pathology, psychosomatic medicine, case histories
Class preventive measures, therapy, pathology, psychosomatic medicine, case histories applied to specific classes of diseases in 04; class comprehensive works in 616 without adding from this table
- 05 Preventive measures
By individuals and by medical personnel
Class comprehensive works on public and private measures for preventing diseases in 613. Class public measures for preventing a specific disease, use of specific vaccines with the disease in 614.5, e.g., mosquito control for prevention of malaria 614.532, use of influenza vaccines 614.518; class a specific kind of therapy used for prevention with the kind of therapy in 061–069, e.g., drug therapy 061
- 06 Therapy
Class here alternative therapy; rehabilitative therapy; specific kinds of therapy used in domestic medicine, medical emergencies, intensive care, palliative and terminal care
Class comprehensive works on therapy in 615.5; class comprehensive works on therapy for specific diseases or kinds of diseases in domestic medicine in 024; class comprehensive works on therapy for specific diseases or kinds of diseases in medical emergencies in 025; class comprehensive works on therapy for specific diseases or kinds of diseases in intensive care in 028; class comprehensive works on therapy for specific diseases or kinds of diseases in palliative or terminal care in 029; class comprehensive works on rehabilitative therapy and training for people with a specific disease or kind of disease in 03; class comprehensive works on prevention, therapy, etiology of a specific disease or kind of disease if all related to a specific kind of therapy in 061–069, e.g., diet therapy 0654. Class comprehensive works on therapy and pathology of a specific disease or kind of disease if not all related to a specific kind of therapy with the disease or kind of disease, without adding from add table, e.g., cause, course, and cure of heart disease 616.12 (*not* 616.1206)

(continued)

>

616.1–616.9 Specific diseases (continued)

- 060724 Experimental research
Class here clinical trials
Class clinical trials of a specific kind of therapy with the kind of therapy, plus notation 0724 from Table 1, e.g., clinical drug trials 0610724
- >061–069 Specific therapies
Class here specific kinds of therapy used for prevention; comprehensive works on prevention, therapy, etiology if these all relate to a specific kind of therapy, e.g., nutritional aspects of a disease and diet therapy 0654
- 061 Drug therapy
- 0610724 Experimental research
Class here clinical drug trials
- 062–069 Other therapies
Add to 06 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g., X-ray therapy 06422, psychotherapies 0651
- 07 Pathology
- 071 Etiology
Including effects of poisons on specific systems and organs as cause of disease
Class social factors contributing to spread of a disease in 362.19; class comprehensive works on medical toxicology in 615.9
See Manual at 616.1–.9: Add table: 071 vs. 01
- 075–079 Diagnosis, prognosis, death, immunity
Add to 07 the numbers following 616.07 in 616.075–616.079, e.g., diagnosis 075, clinical trials of diagnostic procedures 0750724
- 08 Psychosomatic medicine
- 09 Case histories

Class comprehensive works in 616. Class a work treating all the complications of a disease with the disease, e.g., all the complications of diabetes mellitus 616.462; class a work that focuses on one specific complication with the complication, e.g., peripheral nerve disorders associated with diabetes mellitus 616.856

See Manual at 612.1–612.8

>

616.1–616.8 Diseases of specific systems and organs

Class comprehensive works in 616

For diseases of immune system, see 616.97; for tumors and cancers of specific systems and organs, see 616.994; for tuberculosis of specific systems and organs, see 616.995

.1 *Diseases of cardiovascular system

Class here cardiopulmonary diseases

Class cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) in 616.1025; class diseases of blood-forming system in 616.41

For pulmonary diseases, see 616.24

SUMMARY**616.11 Diseases of endocardium and pericardium**

.12 Diseases of heart

.13 Diseases of blood vessels

.14 Diseases of veins and capillaries

.15 Diseases of blood

.11 *Diseases of endocardium and pericardium

.12 *Diseases of heart

Including cor pulmonale

Class here cardiology

For diseases of endocardium and pericardium, see 616.11

.122 *Angina pectoris

.123 *Coronary diseases (Ischemic heart diseases)

Class works on heart attacks limited to myocardial infarction in 616.1237; class comprehensive works on cardiac arrest, on heart attacks in 616.123025. Class cardiac arrest and heart attacks not caused by narrowing or blocking of coronary arteries with the cause, e.g., heart attacks caused by congestive heart failure 616.129025

For angina pectoris, see 616.122

.123 028 Intensive care

Number built according to instructions under 616.1–616.9

Class coronary care covering intensive care for any serious heart disease in 616.12028

.123 2 *Coronary arteriosclerosis

.123 7 *Myocardial infarction

.124 *Myocarditis

Class here comprehensive works on diseases of myocardium

For myocardial infarction, see 616.1237

.125 *Valvular diseases

.127 *Rheumatic heart diseases

For rheumatic valvular diseases, see 616.125

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .128 *Arrhythmia
 Class here atrial fibrillation, ventricular fibrillation
 Class electric countershock (electric defibrillation) in 616.1280645; class
 implantation of heart pacers and defibrillators in 617.4120592; class
 functioning of heart pacers and implanted defibrillators in 617.4120645
- .129 *Heart failure
 Class here congestive heart failure
 Class comprehensive works on cardiac arrest in 616.123025
- .13 *Diseases of blood vessels
 Including arterial occlusive diseases
 Class here angiology; diseases of arteries; diseases of blood vessels in a
 specific region, e.g., abdominal and pelvic cavities
 Class a specific arterial occlusive disease with the disease, e.g.,
 arteriosclerosis 616.136; class diseases of blood vessels in a specific system
 or organ with the system or organ, e.g., cerebrovascular diseases 616.81
 For diseases of veins and capillaries, see 616.14
- .131 *Peripheral vascular diseases
-
- > 616.132–616.136 Hypertension, aneurysms, arterial embolisms and
 thromboses, arteriosclerosis
 Class hypertension, aneurysms, embolisms, thromboses, arteriosclerosis of aorta
 in 616.138; class comprehensive works in 616.13
- .132 *Hypertension
 Including renal hypertension
 *For pulmonary hypertension, see 616.24; for portal hypertension, see
 616.362*
- .133 *Aneurysms
- .135 *Arterial embolisms and thromboses
 Class here comprehensive works on embolisms, on thromboses
 *For venous embolisms and thromboses, see 616.145; for pulmonary
 embolisms and thromboses, see 616.249*
- .136 *Arteriosclerosis
 Class here atherosclerosis
- .138 *Diseases of aorta
- .14 *Diseases of veins and capillaries
 Subdivisions are added for diseases of veins and capillaries together, for
 diseases of veins alone

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .142 *Phlebitis
 Including thrombophlebitis
- .143 *Varicose veins (Varix)
- .145 *Venous embolisms and thromboses
 Class thrombophlebitis in 616.142; class comprehensive works on
 embolisms, on thromboses in 616.135
- .148 *Diseases of capillaries
 Including telangiectasis, telangitis
- .15 *Diseases of blood
 Class here hematology, comprehensive works on hemic and lymphatic
 diseases
 For lymphatic diseases, see 616.42; for bacterial blood diseases, see
 616.94
 See also 616.07561 for use of blood analysis in diagnosis of diseases in
 general
- .151 *Diseases of erythrocytes
 Class here hemoglobin disorders
 For anemia, see 616.152; for polycythemia, see 616.153
- .152 *Anemia
 Including iron-deficiency anemia, thalassemia
- .152 7 *Sickle cell anemia
- .153 *Polycythemia
- .154 *Diseases of leukocytes
 Including agranulocytosis
- .157 *Hemorrhagic diseases
 Including von Willebrand disease
 Class here comprehensive works on disorders of blood coagulation, on
 blood platelet disorders
 For arterial embolisms and thromboses, see 616.135; for venous
 embolisms and thromboses, see 616.145
- .157 2 *Hemophilia
- .2 Diseases of respiratory system**
 Class here dyspnea
- .200 1--200 3 Standard subdivisions
 As modified under 616.1-616.9

*Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9

- .200 4 Special topics of diseases of respiratory system
 Add to base number 616.2004 the numbers following 0 in notation
 01-09 from table under 616.1-616.9, e.g., diagnosis of respiratory
 diseases 616.200475
- .200 5-.200 9 Standard subdivisions
 As modified under 616.1-616.9
- .201 *Croup
- .202 *Respiratory allergies
 Class here hay fever
 Class asthma in 616.238
- .203 *Influenza
- .204 *Whooping cough (Pertussis)
- .205 *Common cold
- .208 *Hyperventilation
- .209 *Sleep apnea syndromes
 Class here snoring
- .21 *Diseases of nose, nasopharynx, paranasal sinuses, larynx
 Class here rhinology
 Subdivisions are added for diseases of nose, nasopharynx, paranasal sinuses,
 larynx together; for diseases of nose alone
 Class allergic rhinitis in 616.202; class common cold in 616.205; class
 otolaryngology, comprehensive works on diseases of ears, nose, throat in
 617.51
 For diseases of larynx, see 616.22
- .212 *Diseases of paranasal sinuses
- .22 *Diseases of larynx, epiglottis, glottis, vocal cords
 Class here laryngology
 Subdivisions are added for diseases of larynx, epiglottis, glottis, vocal cords;
 for diseases of larynx alone
- .23 *Diseases of trachea and bronchi
 Including bronchiectasis, tracheitis
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class bronchopneumonia in 616.241
- .234 *Bronchitis

*Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9

- .238 ***Asthma**
 Class here bronchial asthma
 For cardiac asthma, see 616.12
- .24 ***Diseases of lungs**
 Including chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; pulmonary hypertension
 Class here comprehensive works on diseases of lungs and bronchi
 Class cystic fibrosis in 616.372; class pulmonary sarcoidosis in 616.429;
 class pulmonary tuberculosis in 616.995; class comprehensive works on
 cardiopulmonary diseases in 616.1
 For diseases of bronchi, see 616.23
- .241 ***Pneumonia**
 Including Legionnaires' disease
 See also 616.245 for necropneumonia
- .244 ***Pneumoconiosis**
 Including asbestosis, black lung disease, byssinosis (brown lung disease),
 pulmonary abscesses, silicosis
- .245 ***Necropneumonia**
- .248 ***Emphysema**
- .249 ***Pulmonary embolisms and thromboses**
 Class comprehensive works on embolisms, on thromboses in 616.135
- .25 ***Diseases of pleura**
 Class pleural pneumonia in 616.241
- .27 ***Diseases of mediastinum**
- .3 ***Diseases of digestive system**
 Class allergies of digestive system in 616.975
 *See also 616.07563 for use of analysis of gastroenteric contents in diagnosis
 of diseases in general*

SUMMARY

616.31	Diseases of mouth and throat
.32	Diseases of pharynx and esophagus
.33	Diseases of stomach
.34	Diseases of intestine
.35	Diseases of rectum and anus
.36	Diseases of biliary tract and liver
.37	Diseases of pancreas
.38	Diseases of peritoneum
.39	Nutritional and metabolic diseases

- .31 ***Diseases of mouth and throat**
 Subdivisions are added for diseases of mouth and throat together, for
 diseases of mouth alone
 Class oral region (a broader concept than mouth as a digestive organ) in
 617.522; class diseases of teeth and gums in 617.63
 For diseases of larynx, see 616.22; for diseases of pharynx, see 616.32
- .312 ***Necrotizing ulcerative gingivitis (Trench mouth)**
- .313 ***Mumps**
- .314 ***Diseases of tonsils**
- .316 ***Diseases of salivary glands**
 For mumps, see 616.313; for Sjogren's syndrome, see 616.775
- .32 ***Diseases of pharynx and esophagus**
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class diseases of tonsils in 616.314
- .323 ***Deglutition disorders**
 Class here dysphagia
- .324 ***Gastroesophageal reflux**
 Class here heartburn
- .33 ***Diseases of stomach**
 Class here gastroenteritis, comprehensive works on gastroenterology
 (gastrointestinal diseases)
 *For diseases of intestine, see 616.34; for typhoid fever, see 616.9272; for
 cholera, see 616.932; for dysentery, see 616.935; for hiatal hernia, see
 617.559*
- .332 ***Functional disorders**
 Including disorders of secretion; dyspepsia
 Class gastroesophageal reflux, heartburn in 616.324
- .333 ***Gastritis**
- .334 ***Stomach ulcers**
 Class comprehensive works on ulcers in 616.343
- .34 ***Diseases of intestine**
 Including appendicitis, giardiasis
 For hernias, see 617.559
- .342 ***Functional disorders**
 Including irritable bowel syndrome (irritable colon), obstructions

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .342 7 *Diarrhea
- .342 8 *Constipation
- .343 *Peptic ulcers
 Class here comprehensive works on stomach and peptic ulcers
 For stomach ulcers, see 616.334
- .343 3 *Duodenal ulcers
- .344 *Enteritis
 Including duodenitis, jejunitis
 Class here Crohn disease, inflammatory bowel diseases
 See also 616.342 for irritable bowel syndrome
- .344 5 *Ileitis
 Use of this number for Crohn disease discontinued; class in 616.344
- .344 7 *Colitis
- .344 73 *Ulcerative colitis
- .35 *Diseases of rectum and anus
 Including fecal incontinence
 Class here proctology
 Subdivisions are added for diseases of rectum and anus together, for diseases
 of rectum alone
- .352 *Hemorrhoids
- .36 *Diseases of biliary tract and liver
 Subdivisions are added for diseases of biliary tract and liver together, for
 diseases of biliary tract alone
- .362 *Diseases of liver
 Including portal hypertension
 For hepatic encephalopathy, Reye syndrome, see 616.83
- .362 3 *Hepatitis
 Class here viral hepatitis
- .362 4 *Cirrhosis
- .362 5 *Jaundice
- .365 *Diseases of gallbladder and bile duct
 Subdivisions are added for diseases of gallbladder and bile duct together,
 for diseases of gallbladder alone
 Class comprehensive works on diseases of biliary tract in 616.36

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .37 *Diseases of pancreas
 Class diseases of pancreatic internal secretion in 616.46
- .372 *Cystic fibrosis
- .38 *Diseases of peritoneum
- .39 *Nutritional and metabolic diseases
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class inborn (inherited) errors of metabolism in 616.39042. Class nutritional
 and metabolic diseases of a specific system or organ outside the digestive
 system with the system or organ, e.g., iron-deficiency anemia 616.152
 For endocrinology, see 616.4
-
- > 616.392–616.396 Deficiency diseases
 Class comprehensive works in 616.39
- .392 *Beriberi
- .393 *Pellagra
- .394 *Scurvy
- .395 *Rickets
- .396 Other deficiency diseases and states
 Including emaciation, kwashiorkor
 Class anorexia nervosa in 616.85262
 For multiple deficiency states, see 616.399
- .398 *Obesity
- .398 08 Psychosomatic medicine
 Number built according to instructions under 616.1–616.9
 For eating disorders, see 616.8526
- .399 Other nutritional and metabolic diseases
 Including celiac disease, multiple deficiency states, phenylketonuria,
 porphyria
 Class here malabsorption syndromes
- .399 2 *Body fluid disorders
 Including acid-base imbalances
 Class here water-electrolyte imbalances
- .399 5 *Diseases of protein metabolism
 Including amyloidosis

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .399 7 *Diseases of lipid metabolism
 Including hypercholesterolemia, hyperlipidemia
- .399 8 *Diseases of carbohydrate metabolism
 Including lactose intolerance
- .399 9 *Gout
- .4 *Diseases of endocrine, hematopoietic, lymphatic, glandular systems;
 diseases of male breast**
- Class here endocrinology, comprehensive works on diseases of glands
- Subdivisions are added for diseases of endocrine, hematopoietic, lymphatic
 systems, of male breast together; for diseases of endocrine system alone
- Class endocrinal obesity in 616.398. Class diseases of glands in a specific
 system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., diseases of female sex glands
 618.1
- .41 *Diseases of spleen and bone marrow
- Class here diseases of hematopoietic (blood-forming) system
- For anemia, see 616.152*
- .42 *Diseases of lymphatic system
- Class filarial elephantiasis in 616.9652; class Hodgkin disease in 616.99446
- For diseases of spleen, see 616.41*
- .429 *Sarcoidosis
- Class here pulmonary sarcoidosis
-
- > 616.43–616.48 Diseases of endocrine system
- Class comprehensive works in 616.4
- .43 *Diseases of thymus gland
- .44 *Diseases of thyroid and parathyroid glands
- Subdivisions are added for diseases of thyroid and parathyroid glands
 together, for diseases of thyroid alone
- .442 *Goiter
- .443 *Hyperthyroidism
- Including Graves' disease
- .444 *Hypothyroidism
- For myxedema, see 616.858848*

- .445 ***Diseases of parathyroid glands**
 Including hyperparathyroidism, hypoparathyroidism
- .45 ***Diseases of adrenal glands**
 Including Addison's disease, Cushing syndrome, hyperadrenalism,
 hypoadrenalism
- .46 ***Diseases of islands of Langerhans**
- .462 ***Diabetes mellitus**
 Class here comprehensive works on diabetes
 Class diabetic nephropathies in 616.61
 For diabetes insipidus, see 616.47
- .462 2 ***Diabetes mellitus, type 1 (Insulin-dependent diabetes)**
- .462 4 ***Diabetes mellitus, type 2 (Non-insulin-dependent diabetes)**
- .466 ***Hypoglycemia**
- .47 ***Diseases of pituitary gland**
 Including acromegaly, diabetes insipidus, pituitary dwarfism, pituitary
 gigantism, hypopituitarism
- .48 ***Diseases of other glands of endocrine system**
 Including hyperpinealism, polyglandular disorders
- .49 ***Diseases of male breast**
 Class comprehensive works on diseases of breast in 618.19
- .5 *Diseases of integument**
 Class here dermatology, skin diseases
 Class porphyria in 616.399; class mastocytosis in 616.77
 *For allergies of skin, see 616.973; for dermatological manifestations of food
 and drug allergies, see 616.975*
- .51 ***Dermatitis, photosensitivity disorders, urticaria**
 Including contact dermatitis
 Class here eczema
 Subdivisions are added for dermatitis, photosensitivity disorders, urticaria
 together; for dermatitis alone
 Class bacterial and viral skin diseases in 616.52
 For allergic contact dermatitis, see 616.973
- .515 ***Photosensitivity disorders**
 Including sunburn

- .517 *Urticaria (Hives)
 Class urticaria pigmentosa in 616.77
- .52 Viral and bacterial skin diseases; psoriasis
- .522 *Viral skin diseases
 Including herpes labialis (cold sores, fever blisters), shingles (herpes zoster)
 Class herpes genitalis in 616.9518; class comprehensive works on herpesvirus diseases in 616.9112
- .523 *Bacterial skin diseases
 Including boils, carbuncles, erysipelas, impetigo, pinta, yaws
- .526 *Psoriasis
- .53 *Diseases of sebaceous glands
 Including acne, blackheads, seborrhea, wens
- .54 *Skin hypertrophies and ulcerations; diseases of scalp, hair, nails
 For pigmentary changes, see 616.55
- .544 *Skin hypertrophies
 Including callosities, corns, ichthyosis, keratosis, scleroderma, warts
- .545 *Skin ulcerations
 Class here decubitus ulcers (bedsores)
- .546 *Diseases of scalp, hair, hair follicles
 Including baldness (alopecia), dandruff, excessive hairiness (hypertrichosis)
- .547 *Diseases of nails
- .55 *Pigmentary changes
 Including albinism, birthmarks, moles, pigmentary nevi, vitiligo
 Class urticaria pigmentosa in 616.77
 For birthmarks that are capillary hemangiomas, see 616.99315
- .56 *Diseases of sweat glands
- .57 *Parasitic and fungal skin diseases
 Subdivisions are added for parasitic and fungal skin diseases together, for parasitic skin diseases alone
 Class leishmaniasis in 616.9364
- .572 *Lice infestations
 Class here pediculosis

- .573 *Mite infestations
 Class here scabies
- .579 *Fungal skin diseases (Dermatomycoses)
 Including athlete's foot (tinea pedis), ringworm (tinea)
- .58 *Chapping, chilblains, frostbite
 Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

.6 *Diseases of urogenital system
 Class here diseases of urinary system; urology

> 616.61–616.64 Diseases of urinary system

 Class comprehensive works in 616.6

- .61 *Diseases of kidneys and ureters
 Class here diabetic nephropathies, nephrology
 Subdivisions are added for kidneys and ureters together, for kidneys alone
 Class renal hypertension in 616.132; class kidney dialysis in 617.461059
 For kidney stones, see 616.622
- .612 *Nephritis
 Class here glomerulonephritis
 For pyelonephritis, see 616.613
- .613 *Pyelonephritis and pyelocystitis
 Subdivisions are added for pyelonephritis and pyelocystitis together, for
 pyelonephritis alone
- .614 *Renal failure
 Class here chronic renal failure
 Class hemodialysis, peritoneal dialysis in 617.461059
- .62 *Diseases of bladder and urethra
 Including urinary incontinence
 Class here urination disorders
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 For diseases of male urethra, see 616.64; for enuresis, see 616.849
- .622 *Urinary calculi
 Class here bladder stones, kidney stones
- .623 *Cystitis

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .624 *Urethritis
- .63 *Urinary manifestations of diseases of urogenital system
Including albuminuria, hematuria, proteinuria
Class interpretation of symptoms for diagnosis and prognosis of diseases of urogenital system in 616.6075. Class urinary manifestations of a specific disease or of disease in a specific organ with the disease or organ, e.g., urinary manifestations of renal failure 616.614
See also 616.07566 for use of urinalysis to diagnose diseases in general
- .635 *Uremia
- .64 *Diseases of male urethra
- .65 *Diseases of genital system
Class here diseases of male genital system, diseases of prostate gland
Class comprehensive works on reproductive toxicology in 616.65071
For sexual disorders, see 616.69; for diseases of female genital system, see 618.1. For diseases of a specific male genital organ not provided for here, see the organ, e.g., diseases of male urethra 616.64
- .66 *Diseases of penis
- .67 *Diseases of scrotum
- .68 *Diseases of testes and accessory organs
Subdivisions are added for diseases of testes and accessory organs together, for diseases of testes alone
- .69 *Sexual disorders
Class here male sexual disorders
For psychiatric sexual disorders, see 616.8583; for female sexual disorders, see 618.17
- .692 *Infertility and impotence
Class here comprehensive works on male and female infertility
Subdivisions are added for infertility and impotence together, for infertility alone
For female infertility, artificial insemination, see 618.178
- .692 06 Therapy
Number built according to instructions under 616.1–616.9
Class here comprehensive medical works on human reproductive technology
For human reproductive technology applied to female infertility, see 618.17806

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .692 1 *Male infertility
 Class impotence in 616.6922
- .692 2 *Impotence
 For impotence as a psychological disorder, see 616.85832
- .693 *Male climacteric disorders
 Class comprehensive works on climacteric disorders in 618.175
- .694 *Intersexuality
 Class here hermaphroditism, comprehensive medical works on sex differentiation disorders
 Class interdisciplinary works on intersexuality in 306.768. Class a specific sex differentiation disorder with the disorder, e.g., congenital adrenal hyperplasia 616.45, congenital adrenal hyperplasia in children 618.9245
 See also 616.8583 for gender-identity disorders
- .7 ***Diseases of musculoskeletal system**
 Class here comprehensive works on orthopedics
 For orthopedic surgery of musculoskeletal system, see 617.47; for orthopedic regional medicine, orthopedic regional surgery, see 617.5
- .71 *Diseases of bones
 Class here chronic diseases of skeletal system
 Class pituitary gigantism, pituitary dwarfism in 616.47; class Marfan syndrome in 616.773
 For diseases of spine, see 616.73; for fractures, see 617.15
- .712 *Osteitis
 Including osteochondritis, periostitis
 Class here osteitis deformans
- .715 *Osteomyelitis
- .716 *Disorders of metabolic origin
 Class here osteoporosis
 For rickets, see 616.395
- .72 *Diseases of joints
 For gout, see 616.3999
- .722 *Arthritis
- .722 3 *Osteoarthritis

- .722 7 *Rheumatoid arthritis
 For ankylosing spondylitis, see 616.73; for Sjogren's syndrome, see 616.775
- .723 *Rheumatism
 Class here rheumatology, rheumatic diseases
 For a specific rheumatic disease, see the disease, e.g., rheumatoid arthritis 616.7227, rheumatic fever 616.991
- .73 *Diseases of spine
 Including ankylosing spondylitis
 Class backache in 617.564
- .74 *Diseases of muscles
 Class diseases of muscles in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., diseases of heart muscle (myocardium) 616.124
- .742 *Myalgia
 Class here fibromyalgia (muscular rheumatism)
 See also 616.0478 for chronic fatigue syndrome
- .743 *Myositis
- .744 *Neuromuscular diseases
 Class myalgic encephalomyelitis in 616.0478; class neuromuscular diseases resulting from disorders of central nervous system in 616.83
- .744 2 *Myasthenia gravis
- .748 *Muscular dystrophy
- .75 *Diseases of tendons and fasciae
 See also 616.76 for diseases of sheaths of tendons
- .76 *Diseases of bursae and sheaths of tendons
- .77 *Diseases of connective tissues
 Including Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, mastocytosis
 Class here collagen diseases
 Class carpal tunnel syndrome in 616.856
 For rheumatoid arthritis, see 616.7227; for diseases of tendons and fasciae, see 616.75
- .772 *Systemic lupus erythematosus
- .773 *Marfan syndrome
- .775 *Sjogren's syndrome

.8 Diseases of nervous system and mental disorders

Class here diseases of brain; neurology; neuropsychiatry

Class diseases of cranial, spinal, peripheral nerves in 616.856; class diseases of autonomic nervous system in 616.8569. Class diseases of nerves needed to make a specific system or organ function properly with the system or organ, e.g., neuromuscular diseases 616.744, diseases of optic nerves 617.732

Diseases of nerves needed to make a region function properly are classed with diseases of nerves, e.g., disease of peripheral nerves needed to make the hand function properly are classed with diseases of peripheral nerves in 616.856

SUMMARY

616.800 1--800 9	Standard subdivisions
.801--809	Standard subdivisions and special topics of diseases of nervous system, of diseases of brain
.81	Cerebrovascular diseases
.82	Meningeal diseases
.83	Other organic diseases of central nervous system
.84	Manifestations of nervous system diseases
.85	Miscellaneous diseases of nervous system and mental disorders
.86	Substance abuse (Drug abuse)
.89	Mental disorders
.800 1--800 9	Standard subdivisions
.801--803	Standard subdivisions of neurology, of diseases of nervous system, of diseases of brain
	As modified under 616.1--616.9
.804	Special topics of diseases of nervous system, of diseases of brain
	Add to base number 616.804 the numbers following 0 in notation 01--09 from table under 616.1--616.9, e.g., diagnosis of brain diseases 616.80475
	Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
	Class manifestations of neurological diseases as problems in their own right in 616.84
.805--809	Standard subdivisions of neurology, of diseases of nervous system, of diseases of brain
	As modified under 616.1--616.9
.81	*Cerebrovascular diseases
	Including vascular dementia
	Class here stroke
.82	*Meningeal diseases
	Including meningitis
	Class meningoencephalitis in 616.832

*Add as instructed under 616.1--616.9

- .83 Other organic diseases of central nervous system
- Including ataxia telangiectasia, chorea and choreatic disorders other than Huntington disease, Creutzfeldt-Jakob syndrome (both familial form and variant associated with bovine spongiform encephalopathy), Friedreich ataxia, hepatic encephalopathy, neuronal ceroid-lipofuscinosis, neurosyphilis, prion diseases, Reye syndrome, senile dementia, spina bifida, tardive dyskinesia, Tourette syndrome
- Class here diseases of basal ganglia, of spinal cord; comprehensive works on dementia, on memory disorders, on movement disorders
- Class phenylketonuria in 616.399; class senile dementia of the Alzheimer type in 616.831; class comprehensive works on syphilis in 616.9513
- For orthopedic aspects of spina bifida, see 616.73; for Huntington disease, see 616.851; for epilepsy, see 616.853. For a specific kind of dementia or dementia-causing disease, see the dementia or disease, e.g., dementia caused by cerebrovascular disease 616.81*
- .831 *Alzheimer disease
- Class comprehensive works on dementia in 616.83
- .832 *Encephalitis
- Class here meningoencephalitis
- Class postencephalitic Parkinson disease in 616.833
- See also 616.0478 for myalgic encephalomyelitis*
- .833 *Parkinson disease
- Including postencephalitic Parkinson disease
- .834 *Multiple sclerosis
- .835 *Poliomyelitis
- Including postpoliomyelitis syndrome
- .836 *Cerebral palsy
- .839 *Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
- .84 Manifestations of nervous system diseases
- Symptoms as problems in their own right
- Class here pathology, diagnosis, treatment of symptoms
- Class interpretation of symptoms for diagnosis and prognosis of neurological diseases in 616.80475; class manifestations of mental disorders in 616.89. Class diagnostic and prognostic interpretation of symptoms of a specific disease or class of diseases with the disease or class of diseases, e.g., interpretation of symptoms of cerebrovascular diseases 616.81075
- .841 Dizziness and vertigo
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .842 Paralysis
 Including neurological aspects of paraplegia
 Class comprehensive works on neurological and surgical aspects of paraplegia in 617.58
- .845 Convulsions
- .849 Miscellaneous symptoms
 Only those named below
 Including coma, enuresis, pain
 Class comprehensive works on urinary incontinence in 616.62
- .849 1 *Headaches
 Class here vascular headaches
- .849 12 *Migraine
- .849 13 *Cluster headache
- .849 14 *Tension headache
- .849 8 *Sleep disorders
 Including narcolepsy, somnambulism
 For sleep apnea and snoring, see 616.209
- .849 82 *Insomnia
- .85 Miscellaneous diseases of nervous system and mental disorders
 Only those named below

SUMMARY

- 616.851 **Huntington disease**
- .852 **Neuroses**
- .853 **Epilepsy**
- .855 **Speech and language disorders**
- .856 **Diseases of cranial, spinal, peripheral nerves; diseases of autonomic nervous system**
- .858 **Personality, sexual, gender-identity, impulse-control, factitious, developmental, learning disorders; violent behavior; mental retardation**
- .851 *Huntington disease
- .852 *Neuroses
 Including adjustment disorders
 Class neurotic aspects of a specific disease with the disease, e.g., neurotic aspects of asthma 616.238

- .852 1 *Traumatic neuroses
 Class here post-traumatic stress disorders
- .852 12 *War neuroses (Combat disorders)
- .852 2 *Anxiety disorders
 For traumatic neuroses, see 616.8521
- .852 23 *Panic disorder
- .852 25 *Phobic disorders
 Including agoraphobia
- .852 27 *Obsessive-compulsive disorder
 Class comprehensive works on compulsive behavior in 616.8584
- .852 3 *Dissociative disorders and amnesia
 Subdivisions are added for dissociative disorders and amnesia
 together, for dissociative disorders alone
- .852 32 *Amnesia
 Class here amnesic disorders
- .852 36 *Multiple personality disorder
- .852 4 *Somatoform disorders
 Class here conversion disorder, hysteria, somatization disorder
 For hypochondria, see 616.8525
 See also 616.8581 for histrionic personality disorder
- .852 5 *Hypochondria
- .852 6 *Eating disorders
 Class here appetite disorders, food addiction
- .852 62 *Anorexia nervosa
- .852 63 *Bulimia
- .852 7 *Depressive disorder
 Including seasonal affective disorder
 Class here comprehensive works on depression, on mood disorders
 *For manic-depressive illness, see 616.895; for postpartum
 depression, see 618.76*
- .852 8 *Neurasthenia
 See also 616.0478 for chronic fatigue syndrome
- .853 *Epilepsy

- .855 *Speech and language disorders
 Class here articulation disorders, communication disorders
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class comprehensive works on learning and communication disorders in
 616.85889
- .855 2 *Neurological language disorders
 Including dysarthria
 Class here aphasias
 For written language disorders, see 616.8553
- .855 3 *Written language disorders
 Including agraphia
 Class here dyslexia
- .855 4 *Stuttering
 Class here stammering
- .855 6 *Voice disorders
- .856 *Diseases of cranial, spinal, peripheral nerves; diseases of autonomic
 nervous system
 Including carpal tunnel syndrome, neuralgias, neuritis,
 polyradiculoneuritis, sciatica; cutaneous sensory disorders, disorders of
 smell and taste
 Subdivisions are added for diseases of cranial, spinal, peripheral nerves
 and for diseases of autonomic nervous system together; for diseases of
 cranial, spinal, peripheral nerves alone
 Class neurofibromatosis in 616.99383; class comprehensive works on
 overuse injuries in 617.172
 For shingles, see 616.522; for diseases of optic nerves, see 617.732;
 for diseases of aural nervous system, see 617.886
- .856 9 *Diseases of autonomic nervous system
 Including parasympathetic nervous system, sympathetic nervous
 system
- .858 Personality, sexual, gender-identity, impulse-control, factitious,
 developmental, learning disorders; violent behavior; mental
 retardation

SUMMARY

- 616.858 1 **Personality disorders**
 .858 2 **Antisocial personality disorders, family violence and abuse**
 .858 3 **Sexual and gender-identity disorders**
 .858 4 **Disorders of impulse control; homicidal and suicidal behavior**
 .858 5 **Borderline and narcissistic personality disorders**
 .858 6 **Factitious disorders**
 .858 8 **Mental retardation; developmental and learning disorders**
 .858 9 **Attention deficit disorder with hyperactivity**
- .858 1 *Personality disorders
- Including compulsive, dependent, histrionic, paranoid,
 passive-aggressive, schizoid, schizotypal personality disorders
- Class impulsive personality, comprehensive works on compulsive
 behavior in 616.8584
- For a specific type of personality disorder not provided for here,
 see the disorder, e.g., borderline personality disorder 616.85852*
- See also 616.85227 for obsessive-compulsive disorder; also
 616.8524 for hysteria; also 616.897 for paranoid disorders; also
 616.898 for schizophrenia*
- .858 2 *Antisocial personality disorders, family violence and abuse
- Class here self-destructive behavior, violent behavior
- Subdivisions are added for antisocial personality disorders, family
 violence and abuse together; for antisocial personality disorders alone
- Class sexual disorders in 616.8583
- For a specific type of self-destructive or violent behavior, see the
 behavior, e.g., suicide 616.858445*
- .858 22 *Family violence and abuse
- Class here spouse abuse
- Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .858 223 *Child abuse
- Including Munchausen syndrome by proxy
- Class incest involving children, sexual abuse of children in
 616.85836; class abused children in 618.92858223
- .858 223 9 *Adult victims of child abuse
- Class a specific problem of adult victims of child abuse with
 the problem, e.g., depression 616.8527

- .858 3 *Sexual and gender-identity disorders
 Including homosexuality treated as a medical disorder
 Subdivisions are added for sexual and gender-identity disorders together, for sexual disorders alone
 Class interdisciplinary works on gender identity in 305.3; class interdisciplinary works on homosexuality in 306.766; class interdisciplinary works on transgenderism in 306.768
 See also 616.694 for intersexuality
 See Manual at 616.8583
- .858 32 *Frigidity and impotence
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class comprehensive works on impotence in 616.6922
- .858 33 *Sex addiction
 Class here nymphomania, satyromania
- .858 35 *Sadism and masochism
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .858 36 *Sexual abuse of children and adolescents
 Class here incest
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class sexually abused children in 618.9285836
- .858 369 *Adult victims of childhood and adolescent sexual abuse
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class a specific problem of adult victims of childhood and adolescent sexual abuse with the problem, e.g., multiple personality disorder 616.85236
- .858 4 *Disorders of impulse control; homicidal and suicidal behavior
 Including compulsive shopping
 Class here impulsive personality, comprehensive works on compulsive behavior
 For obsessive-compulsive disorder, see 616.85227; for compulsive eating disorders, see 616.8526; for compulsive personality disorder, see 616.8581; for compulsive sexual disorders, see 616.8583; for substance abuse, see 616.86
- .858 41 *Pathological gambling
- .858 42 *Kleptomania
- .858 43 *Pyromania

- .858 44 Homicidal and suicidal behavior
- .858 445 *Suicidal behavior
- .858 5 Borderline and narcissistic personality disorders
- .858 52 *Borderline personality disorder
- .858 54 *Narcissistic personality disorder
- .858 6 *Factitious disorders
Including Munchausen syndrome
Class Munchausen syndrome by proxy in 616.858223
- .858 8 *Mental retardation; developmental and learning disorders
Class here mental disorders usually first diagnosed in infancy, childhood, adolescence
Subdivisions are added for mental retardation, developmental and learning disorders together; for mental retardation alone; for developmental disorders alone
For attention deficit disorder with hyperactivity, see 616.8589
- .858 82 *Autism
Class here comprehensive works on pervasive development disorders
For pervasive development disorders other than autism, see 616.85883
- .858 83 Other pervasive development disorders
Including childhood disintegrative disorder
For Rett syndrome, see 616.85884
- .858 832 *Asperger syndrome
- .858 84 Mental retardation due to genetic disorders, other congenital abnormalities
Class phenylketonuria in 616.399; class learning disorders due to genetic disorders, other congenital abnormalities, and not associated with mental retardation in 616.85889
- .858 841 *Fragile X syndrome
- .858 842 *Down syndrome
- .858 843 *Hydrocephalus
- .858 844 *Microcephaly
- .858 845 *Cerebral sphingolipidosis
Class here Tay-Sachs disease

- .858 848 *Myxedema
 Class congenital myxedema in 616.858848043
- .858 89 *Learning disorders
 Regardless of level of intelligence
 Class here learning disorders due to genetic disorders, other
 congenital abnormalities, and not associated with mental
 retardation; comprehensive works on learning and communication
 disorders
 Class learning disorders associated with a specific disorder with
 the disorder, e.g., minimal brain dysfunction 616.8589
 For communication disorders, see 616.855
- .858 9 *Attention deficit disorder with hyperactivity
 Class here hyperkinesia, minimal brain dysfunction
- .86 †Substance abuse (Drug abuse)
 Including abuse of analgesics, depressants, inhalants, sedatives, tranquilizers
 Class here addiction, dependence, habituation, intoxication
 Class personal measures to prevent substance abuse in 613.8; class food
 addiction in 616.8526; class comprehensive medical works on addictive
 drugs in 615.78; class comprehensive works on compulsive behavior in
 616.8584; class interdisciplinary works on substance abuse in 362.29
 See Manual at 616.86 vs. 158.1, 204.42, 248.8629, 292–299, 362.29
- .861 †Alcohol
 Class here alcoholism
- .861 9 *Effect of alcoholism on people close to alcoholics
 Class here adult children of alcoholics, codependent spouses of
 alcoholics
 Class minor children of alcoholics in 618.928619. Class a specific
 problem of people close to alcoholics with the problem, e.g.,
 depression 616.8527

> 616.863–616.865 Substances other than alcohol

 Including effects on people close to substance abusers

 Class minor children of substance abusers in 618.92863–618.92865; class
 comprehensive works in 616.86. Class a specific problem of people close to
 substance abusers with the problem, e.g., depression 616.8527

- .863 †Narcotics, hallucinogens, psychedelics, cannabis

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

†Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9, except do not use 05; class prevention in 613.8 or its
 subdivisions

- .863 2 †Narcotics
 Opium and its derivatives and synthetic equivalents
 Class here specific narcotics, e.g., heroin, morphine
- .863 4 †Hallucinogens and psychedelics
 Class here specific hallucinogens and psychedelics, e.g., LSD, mescaline, PCP
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class cannabis in 616.8635
- .863 5 †Cannabis
 Class here specific kinds of cannabis, e.g., hashish, marijuana
- .864 †Stimulants and related substances
 Class here specific kinds of stimulants, e.g., amphetamine, ephedrine
 Subdivisions are added for stimulants and related substances together, for stimulants alone
 Class nicotine in 616.865
- .864 7 †Cocaine
 Class here specific forms of cocaine, e.g., crack
- .865 †Tobacco
- .869 *Effect of substance abuse on people close to substance abusers
 Class here adult children of substance abusers, codependent spouses of substance abusers
 Class minor children of substance abusers in 618.92869. Class effect of abuse of a specific substance on people close to abusers with the abuse of the specific substance, e.g., effect of alcoholism on people close to alcoholics 616.8619, effect of cocaine abuse on people close to cocaine abusers 616.8647; class a specific problem of people close to substance abusers with the problem, e.g., depression 616.8527

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

†Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9, except do not use 05; class prevention in 613.8 or its subdivisions

- .89 ***Mental disorders**
- Including manifestations of mental disorders
- Class here abnormal and clinical psychologies, comparative abnormal behavior of animals, psychiatry, psychoses
- Class a specific organic psychosis not provided for here with the psychosis, e.g., psychosis due to brain tumors 616.99481
- For neuroses, see 616.852; for personality, sexual, gender-identity, impulse-control, factitious, developmental, learning disorders; violent behavior, see 616.858; for puerperal mental disorders, see 618.76*
- See Manual at 616.89 vs. 150.195*
- [.890 6] **Therapy**
- Do not use; class in 616.891
- .891 **Therapy**
- .891 2 **Convulsive therapy**
- Variant name: shock therapy
- Including insulin and other drug shock therapies
- .891 22 **Electroconvulsive therapy**
- .891 3 **Physical therapies**
- For electroconvulsive therapy, see 616.89122; for psychosurgery, see 617.481*
- .891 4 **Psychotherapy**
- Class psychotherapy applied to a specific disorder with the disorder, plus notation 0651 as instructed under 616.1–616.9, e.g., psychotherapy applied to borderline personality disorder 616.858520651
- For group and family psychotherapy, see 616.8915; for psychological and activity therapies, see 616.8916; for psychoanalysis, see 616.8917*
- .891 42 **Behavior therapy (Behavior modification therapy)**
- .891 425 **Cognitive therapy**
- .891 43 **Gestalt therapy**
- .891 44 **Milieu therapy**
- .891 45 **Transactional analysis**
- .891 47 **Brief psychotherapy**
- Class a brief form of a specific kind of psychotherapy with the kind, e.g., brief cognitive therapy 616.891425

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .891 5 Group and family psychotherapy
 Class specific psychological and activity therapies in 616.8916
- .891 52 Group psychotherapy
- .891 523 Psychodrama
 Including role playing
- .891 56 Family psychotherapy
- .891 562 Marital psychotherapy
 Class here couples therapy
- .891 6 Psychological and activity therapies
 Add to base number 616.8916 the numbers following 615.851 in
 615.8512–615.8516, e.g., hypnotherapy 616.89162
 Class psychotherapy in 616.8914; class group and family
 psychotherapy in 616.8915; class psychoanalysis in 616.8917
- .891 7 Psychoanalysis
- [.891 701 9] Psychological principles
 Do not use for comprehensive works; class in 150.195. Do
 not use for applications to therapy; class in 616.8917
- .891 8 Drug therapy
 Class drug shock therapy in 616.8912
- .895 *Manic-depressive illness (Bipolar disorder)
 Including depressive reactions, involuntional psychoses
 Class here circular and alternating manic-depressive psychoses
 Class comprehensive works on depression, on mood disorders in
 616.8527
- .897 *Paranoid disorders
 See also 616.8581 for paranoid personality disorder
- .898 *Schizophrenia
 *See also 616.8581 for schizoid personality disorder, schizotypal
 personality disorder*
- .9 Other diseases**
 Class here communicable diseases, infections

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

SUMMARY

- 616.901–.909** **Standard subdivisions and special topics of communicable diseases**
- .91** **Virus diseases**
- .92** **Bacterial diseases**
- .93** **Clostridium infections, diphtheria, cholera, dysenteries, protozoan infections**
- .94** **Bacterial blood diseases**
- .95** **Sexually transmitted diseases, zoonoses**
- .96** **Parasitic diseases and diseases due to fungi (mycoses)**
- .97** **Diseases of immune system**
- .98** **Noncommunicable diseases and environmental medicine**
- .99** **Tumors and miscellaneous communicable diseases**
- [.900 1–.900 9] Standard subdivisions of other diseases
- Do not use; class in 616.001–616.009
- .901–.903 Standard subdivisions of communicable diseases
- As modified under 616.1–616.9
- .904 Special topics of communicable diseases
- Add to base number 616.904 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–09 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., diagnosis of communicable diseases 616.90475
- .904 1 Medical microbiology
- Number built according to instructions under 616.904
- Class here drug resistance in microorganisms
- Class resistance to specific drugs in 615; class comprehensive works on etiology of diseases in 616.071; class comprehensive works on communicable diseases and their course, cure, and prevention in 616.9; class comprehensive works on etiology of communicable diseases in 616.90471. Class medical microbiology of a specific disease or group of diseases with the disease or group of diseases, plus notation 01 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., medical microbiology of tuberculosis 616.99501
- See Manual at 579.165 vs. 616.9041*
- .904 71 Etiology
- Number built according to instructions under 616.904
- Class here comprehensive works on etiology of communicable diseases, e.g., environmental and genetic risk factors plus pathogenic microorganisms
- For pathogenic microorganisms as causes of communicable diseases, see 616.9041*
- .905–.908 Standard subdivisions of communicable diseases
- As modified under 616.1–616.9
- .909 History, geographic treatment, biography of communicable diseases

[.909 11–.909 13] Frigid, temperate, tropical zones

Do not use; class in 616.9881–616.9883

> 616.91–616.96 Specific communicable diseases

Class here diseases caused by microorganisms or parasites even if the diseases are not communicable

Class comprehensive works in 616.9

For a specific communicable disease not provided for here, see the disease, e.g., mumps 616.313

.91 *Virus diseases

For a specific virus disease or group of virus diseases not provided for here, see the disease or group of diseases, e.g., viral hepatitis 616.3623

See also 616.0478 for chronic fatigue syndrome

.910 1 Medical virology

Number built according to instructions under 616.1–616.9

Class here medical microbiology of ultramicrobes

.911 *DNA virus infections

Including human papillomavirus infections

For a specific DNA virus infection not provided for here, see the infection, e.g., smallpox 616.912, condylomata acuminata 616.9518

.911 2 *Herpesvirus diseases

For a specific herpesvirus disease or group of herpesvirus diseases not provided for here, see the disease or group of diseases, e.g., shingles 616.522, herpes genitalis 616.9518

.911 22 *Infectious mononucleosis

.912 *Smallpox

For mild forms of smallpox, see 616.913

.913 *Mild forms of smallpox; cowpox

Including alastrim (amaas, Cuban itch, variola minor)

.914 *Chickenpox

.915 *Measles

.916 *Rubella

.918 *RNA virus infections

Including Colorado tick fever, hantavirus infections, Rift Valley fever

For a specific RNA virus infection not provided for here, see the infection, e.g., measles 616.915

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .918 5 *Flavivirus infections
- .918 52 *Dengue
 Including dengue hemorrhagic fever
- .918 54 *Yellow fever
- .918 56 *West Nile fever
- .918 8 *Retroviridae infections
For a specific retroviridae infection not provided for here, see the infection, e.g., HIV infections 616.9792
- .918 801 Medical microbiology of retroviridae
 Number built according to instructions under 616.1–616.9
For retroviridae as oncogenic viruses, see 616.994019
- .92 *Bacterial diseases
 Including pseudomonas infections, mycoplasma infections
 Class here comprehensive works on gram-negative bacterial infections
For a specific bacterial disease or group of bacterial diseases not provided for here, see the disease or group of diseases, e.g., bacterial skin diseases 616.523, brucellosis 616.957
- .922 *Rickettsial diseases
- .922 2 *Epidemic louse-borne typhus and endemic flea-borne typhus
- .922 3 *Tick-borne rickettsia infections
 Including boutonneuse fever
 Class here North Queensland tick typhus, Rocky Mountain spotted fever
- .922 4 *Tsutsugamushi disease (Scrub typhus)
- .922 5 *Q fever
- .923 *Pasteurella infections, yersinia infections, chlamydia infections, tularemia
 Subdivisions are added for pasteurella infections, yersinia infections, chlamydia infections, tularemia together; for pasteurella infections alone
- .923 2 *Plague
- .923 5 *Chlamydia infections
- .923 9 *Tularemia
- .924 *Borrelia infections
- .924 4 *Relapsing fevers
- .924 6 *Lyme disease

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .926 *Escherichia coli infections
- .927 *Salmonella infections
- .927 2 *Typhoid fever
- .927 4 *Paratyphoid fever
- .929 *Gram-positive bacterial infections
- For a specific gram-positive bacterial infection or group of gram-positive bacterial infections not provided for here, see the infection or group of infections, e.g., clostridium infections 616.931, anthrax 616.956*
- .929 4 *Mycobacterium infections
- For tuberculosis, see 616.995; for Hansen's disease, see 616.998*
- .929 7 *Staphylococcal infections
- Including toxic shock syndrome
- .929 8 *Streptococcal infections
- Including necrotizing fasciitis
- .929 87 *Scarlet fever
- .93 Clostridium infections, diphtheria, cholera, dysenteries, protozoan infections
- .931 *Clostridium infections, diphtheria
- Class here bacillaceae infections, bacillary infections
- Subdivisions are added for clostridium infections and diphtheria together, for clostridium infections alone
- For anthrax, see 616.956*
- See also 616.9355 for bacillary dysentery*
- .931 3 *Diphtheria
- .931 5 *Botulism
- .931 8 *Tetanus
- .932 *Cholera
- .935 *Dysenteries
- .935 3 *Amebic dysentery
- .935 5 *Bacillary dysentery (Shigellosis)
- .936 *Protozoan infections
- Class giardiasis in 616.34
- For amebic dysentery, see 616.9353*

- .936 2 *Malaria
- .936 3 *Trypanosomiasis
 Class here African sleeping sickness (African trypanosomiasis),
 Chagas disease (South American trypanosomiasis)
- .936 4 *Leishmaniasis
 Including cutaneous leishmaniasis (oriental sores), visceral
 leishmaniasis (kala-azar)
- .94 *Bacterial blood diseases
- .944 *Septicemia
 Including pyemia
 For puerperal septicemia, see 618.74
- .95 Sexually transmitted diseases, zoonoses
- .951 *Sexually transmitted diseases
 For acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), see 616.9792
- .951 3 *Syphilis
 For neurosyphilis, see 616.83
- .951 5 *Gonorrhea
- .951 8 Other sexually transmitted diseases
 Including chancroid, condylomata acuminata (genital warts), herpes
 genitalis, lymphogranuloma venereum
 Class comprehensive works on chlamydia infections in 616.9235;
 class comprehensive works on human papillomavirus infections
 in 616.911; class comprehensive works on herpesvirus diseases in
 616.9112
 See also 616.522 for herpes labialis
- .953 *Rabies
- .954 *Glanders
- .956 *Anthrax
- .957 *Brucellosis
- .958 *Psittacosis
- .959 *Zoonoses
 For a specific zoonotic disease, see the disease, e.g., tularemia
 616.9239, rabies 616.953

- .96 *Parasitic diseases and diseases due to fungi (mycoses)
 Class here medical parasitology
 Subdivisions are added for parasitic diseases and diseases due to fungi together, for parasitic diseases alone
For parasitic skin diseases, see 616.57; for protozoan infections, see 616.936

> 616.962–616.968 Parasitic diseases

Class comprehensive works in 616.96

- .962 *Diseases due to endoparasites

Class here comprehensive works on diseases due to worms

For a specific disease due to worms, see 616.963–616.965

> 616.963–616.965 Diseases due to worms

Class here medical helminthology

Class comprehensive works in 616.962

- .963 *Diseases due to flukes (Trematode infections)

Including schistosomiasis (bilharziasis)

- .964 *Diseases due to tapeworms (Cestode infections)

Including echinococcosis

- .965 *Diseases due to roundworms (Nematode infections)

- .965 2 *Diseases due to filariae

Including elephantiasis, onchocerciasis

Class here filariasis

- .965 4 Diseases due to other nematodes

Including ascariasis, enterobiasis, hookworm infections, trichinosis

- .968 *Diseases due to ectoparasites

Class here medical entomology

For a specific entomological disease, see the disease, e.g., lice infestations 616.572

- .969 *Diseases due to fungi (Mycoses)

For fungal skin diseases, see 616.579

- .969 3 *Candidiasis

- .97 *Diseases of immune system
 Class here comprehensive works on allergies
 Class sarcoidosis in 616.429
 For a specific allergy not provided for here, see the allergy, e.g., hay fever 616.202
- .973 *Contact allergies
 Class here allergic contact dermatitis, allergies of skin
 Class comprehensive works on contact dermatitis in 616.51; class dermatological manifestations of food and drug allergies in 616.975
- .975 *Food and drug allergies
 Class here allergies of digestive system
 Subdivisions are added for food and drug allergies together, for food allergies alone
- .975 8 *Drug allergies
- .978 *Autoimmune diseases
 Class here autoimmunity
 For a specific autoimmune disease, see the disease, e.g., systemic lupus erythematosus 616.772
- .979 *Immune deficiency diseases
- .979 2 *Acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)
 Class here HIV infections
- .98 Noncommunicable diseases and environmental medicine
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including Persian Gulf syndrome
 Class here communicable diseases as part of environmental medicine, diseases due to stress
 For poisoning, see 615.9. For a specific noncommunicable or environmentally linked disease or type of disease provided for elsewhere, see the disease or type of disease, e.g., mental disorders 616.89, malaria 616.9362, cancer 616.994
- .980 01–980 08 Standard subdivisions
- .980 09 History, geographic treatment, biography
- [.980 091 1–980 091 3] Frigid, temperate, tropical zones
 Do not use; class in 616.9881–616.9883

- .980 2 Specialized medical fields
 Including travel medicine
 For industrial and occupational medicine, see 616.9803; for sports medicine, see 617.1027
- .980 21 Aerospace medicine
- .980 213 Aviation medicine
- .980 214 Space medicine
- .980 22 Submarine medicine
 Class here diving medicine
 Class diseases due to compression and decompression in 616.9894
- .980 23 Military medicine
 For naval medicine, see 616.98024
- .980 24 Naval medicine
 Class submarine medicine in 616.98022
- .980 3 Industrial and occupational medicine
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 See also 613.62 for industrial and occupational health; also 615.902 for industrial toxicology
- .988 *Diseases due to climate and weather
 Class here medical climatology, medical meteorology
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .988 1--.988 3 Diseases of frigid, temperate, tropical zones
 Class here communicable diseases of frigid, temperate, tropical zones
 Add to base number 616.988 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–13 from Table 2, e.g., diseases due to tropical climate 616.9883
- .989 *Diseases due to heat, cold, motion, altitude, compression, decompression, sound, other vibrations, radiation
 Including heat exhaustion, hypothermia
 Class here comprehensive works on diseases due to physical forces
 For diseases due to light, see 616.5; for chapping, chilblains, frostbite, see 616.58
- .989 2 *Diseases due to motion
- .989 3 *Diseases due to altitude
 Class here mountain sickness

- .989 4 *Diseases due to compression and decompression
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .989 6 *Diseases due to sound and diseases due to other vibrations
 Subdivisions are added for diseases due to sound and diseases due to
 other vibrations together, for diseases due to sound alone
- .989 7 *Diseases due to radiation
 Class here radiation injuries
 Class comprehensive works on radiation dosimetry in 612.01448
- .99 Tumors and miscellaneous communicable diseases
 Only those named below
- [.990 1–.990 9] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 616.99
- .991 *Rheumatic fever
- .993 †Benign tumors
 Variant name: benign neoplasms
 Medical and surgical treatment
 Including adenomas
- .993 1–.993 9 Benign tumors of specific systems and organs
 Add to base number 616.993 the numbers following 611 in
 611.1–611.9, e.g., benign skin tumors 616.99377, neurofibromatosis
 616.99383; then add further as instructed under 618.1–618.8, e.g.,
 therapy for neurofibromatosis 616.9938306
- .994 †Cancers
 Variant names: malignant neoplasms, malignant tumors, neoplastic
 diseases
 Medical and surgical treatment
 Class here carcinoma, oncology, tumors
 For benign tumors, see 616.993
- .994 1 †Cancers of cardiovascular organs and blood
- .994 11–.994 15 Cancers of cardiovascular organs
 Add to base number 616.9941 the numbers following 611.1 in
 611.11–611.15, e.g., cancer of heart 616.99412; then add further
 as instructed under 618.1–618.8, e.g., therapy for cancer of heart
 616.9941206

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

†Add as instructed under 618.1–618.8

- .994 18 †Cancer of blood
 Including multiple myeloma
For cancer of leukocytes, see 616.99419
- .994 19 †Leukemia
 Cancer of leukocytes
- .994 2–.994 9 Cancers of other organs and of regions
 Add to base number 616.994 the numbers following 611 in 611.2–611.9, e.g., breast cancer 616.99449; then for organs, systems, regions having their own number add further as instructed under 618.1–618.8, e.g., surgery for breast cancer 616.99449059
 Subdivisions are added for a specific type of cancer if subdivisions are added for comprehensive works on cancer of the organ or region, e.g., surgery for Hodgkin disease (a cancer of lymphatic glands) 616.99446059
- .995 *Tuberculosis
 Class here pulmonary tuberculosis
- .995 1 Tuberculosis of cardiovascular system
 Add to base number 616.9951 the numbers following 611.1 in 611.11–611.15, e.g., tuberculosis of heart 616.99512; then add further as instructed under 616.1–616.9, e.g., therapy for tuberculosis of heart 616.9951206
- .995 2 Tuberculosis of respiratory system
- .995 21–.995 23 Tuberculosis of nose and nasal accessory sinuses, of larynx, of trachea and bronchi
 Add to base number 616.9952 the numbers following 611.2 in 611.21–611.23, e.g., laryngeal tuberculosis 616.99522; then add further as instructed under 616.1–616.9, e.g., therapy for laryngeal tuberculosis 616.9952206
- .995 25–.995 27 Tuberculosis of pleura, diaphragm, mediastinum
 Add to base number 616.9952 the numbers following 611.2 in 611.25–611.27, e.g., pleural tuberculosis 616.99525; then add further as instructed under 616.1–616.9, e.g., therapy for pleural tuberculosis 616.9952506
- .995 3–.995 9 Tuberculosis of other specific systems and organs
 Add to base number 616.995 the numbers following 611 in 611.3–611.9, e.g., tuberculosis of teeth and surrounding tissues 616.995314, of bones 616.99571, of eyes 616.99584, of ears 616.99585; then add further as instructed under 616.1–616.9, e.g., therapy for tuberculosis of bones 616.9957106
- .998 *Hansen's disease (Leprosy)

*Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

†Add as instructed under 618.1–618.8

617 **Surgery, regional medicine, dentistry, ophthalmology, otology, audiology**

Standard subdivisions are added for surgery alone; however, do not add for surgery, regional medicine, dentistry, ophthalmology, otology, audiology together; class in 616.001–616.009

Except where contrary instructions are given, all notes under 616.02–616.08 and in table under 616.1–616.9 are applicable here

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- | | |
|---------|--|
| 001–007 | Standard subdivisions
As modified under 616.1–616.9 |
| 008 | Groups of people |
| 0083 | Young people
Notation 0083 is used for pediatric aspects of specific kinds of wounds and injuries, e.g., burns and scalds in children 617.110083; for surgery of a specific organ, system, disorder, e.g., brain surgery in children 617.4810083; for specific aspects of pediatric dentistry, e.g., caries in children 617.670083
Class comprehensive works on pediatric dentistry in 617.645; class comprehensive works on surgery for infants and children up to puberty in 617.98; class comprehensive works on pediatrics in 618.92; class regional medicine, ophthalmology, otology, audiology for infants and children up to puberty in 618.92097 |
| 00835 | Young people twelve to twenty
Notation 00835 is used for adolescent medicine aspects of all topics in 617, e.g., brain surgery in adolescents 617.48100835, comprehensive works on surgery for adolescents 617.00835 |
| 0084 | People in specific stages of adulthood |
| 00846 | People in late adulthood
Notation 00846 is used for geriatric aspects of specific kinds of wounds and injuries, e.g., burns and scalds in late adulthood 617.1100846; for surgery of a specific organ, system, disorder, e.g., heart surgery in late adulthood 617.41200846
Class comprehensive works on geriatric surgery in 617.97; class comprehensive works on geriatrics in 618.97; class regional medicine, dentistry, ophthalmology, otology, audiology for people in late adulthood in 618.9775–618.9778 |

(continued)

617 Surgery, regional medicine, dentistry, ophthalmology, otology, audiology (continued)

- 0088 Occupational and religious groups
0088355 Military personnel
Class military surgery in 617.99
- [009] History, geographic treatment, biography
Do not use; class in 09
- >01-03 Surgical complications, preoperative, intraoperative, postoperative care, special topics, rehabilitation
Class surgical complications, preoperative, intraoperative, postoperative care, special topics, rehabilitation applied to special classes of diseases in 04; class comprehensive works in 617, without adding from this table
- 01 Surgical complications; preoperative, intraoperative, postoperative care
Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading Including surgical shock; complicating preconditions, e.g., heart problems
Class intensive care in 028
- 02 Special topics
- 023 Personnel
- 0231 Nurses
Class here specific surgical nursing specialties; nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships; works that emphasize technology of operations performed by nurses, e.g., works that emphasize techniques used by a heart surgery nurse 617.4120231
Class works that emphasize a specific technique used by nurses with the technique, e.g., nursing diagnosis 075, nursing diagnosis with respect to gunshot wounds 617.145075
- 0232 Physicians
Class here nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships
Do not use for works that emphasize technology of operations performed by physicians; class with the subject without 0232, e.g., works that emphasize techniques used by a physician with respect to gunshot wounds 617.145
Class works that emphasize a specific technique used by physicians with the technique, e.g., diagnosis by a physician 075, diagnosis by a physician with respect to gunshot wounds 617.145075
- 0233 Allied health personnel
Class here nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships; works that emphasize technology of operations performed by allied health personnel, e.g., works that emphasize techniques used by allied health personnel with respect to gunshot wounds 617.1450233
Class works that emphasize a specific technique used by allied health personnel with the technique, e.g., diagnosis by allied health personnel 075, diagnosis by allied health personnel with respect to gunshot wounds 617.145075
- 02332 Physician assistants

(continued)

617 Surgery, regional medicine, dentistry, ophthalmology, otology, audiology (continued)

- 024 Domestic medicine
For first aid, see 0262
- 026 Emergencies
- 0262 First aid
- 027 Experimental medicine
- 028 Intensive care
- 03 Rehabilitation
Including self-help devices for people with disabilities
Class rehabilitative therapy in 06
- 04 Special classes of diseases
Limited to the classes named below
- 042 Genetic diseases (Hereditary diseases)
- 0421–0423 Surgical complications, preoperative, intraoperative, postoperative care, special topics, rehabilitation
Add to 042 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–03 from table under 617, e.g., experimental medicine for genetic diseases 04227
- 0425–0428 Preventive measures, surgery, therapy, pathology, psychosomatic medicine
Add to 042 the numbers following 0 in notation 05–08 from table under 617, e.g., diagnosis of genetic diseases 04275
- 043 Congenital diseases
Add to 043 the numbers following 042 in notation 0421–0428 from table under 617, e.g., experimental medicine for congenital diseases 04327
Class congenital diseases of genetic origin in 042
- 044 Injuries and wounds
Including results of injuries and wounds
Class here trauma
Add to 044 the numbers following 042 in notation 0421–0428 from table under 617, e.g., experimental medicine for injuries 04427
Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
See also 01 for surgical shock
- >05–08 Preventive measures, surgery, therapy, pathology, psychosomatic medicine
Class preventive measures, surgery, pathology, psychosomatic medicine applied to special classes of diseases in 04; class comprehensive works on prevention, therapy, etiology of a specific disease or kind of disease if all related to a specific kind of therapy in 061–069, e.g., diet therapy 0654; class comprehensive works in 617, without adding from this table
- 05 Preventive measures and surgery
- 052 Preventive measures
By individuals and by medical personnel
Class public measures for preventing specific diseases in 614.5; class comprehensive works on prevention in 613. Class a specific kind of therapy used for prevention with the kind of therapy in 061–069, e.g., drug therapy 061

(continued)

617 Surgery, regional medicine, dentistry, ophthalmology, otology, audiology (continued)

- 059 Surgery
 Limited to operative surgery
 Including specific surgery utilizing specific instruments or techniques, e.g., catheterization, cryosurgery, microsurgery, radiosurgery
 Class laser microsurgery in 0598; class nonoperative physical procedures in 06
For surgical complications; preoperative, intraoperative, postoperative care, see 01
- 0592 Cosmetic and restorative plastic surgery, transplantation of tissue and organs, implantation of artificial organs
 Including implantation and removal of prostheses, other medical devices
- 0597 Endoscopic surgery
- 0598 Laser surgery
 Including laser coagulation
 Class here laser microsurgery
- 06 Therapy
 Class here rehabilitative therapy
 Class comprehensive works on rehabilitative therapy and training for people with a specific disease or kind of disease in 03; class comprehensive works on prevention, therapy, etiology of a specific disease or kind of disease if all related to a specific kind of therapy in 061–069, e.g., diet therapy 0654
For surgery, see 059
See Manual at 617: Add table: 06
- 060724 Experimental research
 Class here clinical trials
 Class clinical trials of a specific kind of therapy with the kind of therapy, plus notation 0724 from Table 1, e.g., clinical drug trials 0610724
- >061–069 Specific therapies
 Class here specific kinds of therapy used for prevention; comprehensive works on prevention, therapy, etiology if these all relate to a specific kind of therapy, e.g., nutritional aspects of a disease and diet therapy 0654
- 061 Drug therapy
- 0610724 Experimental research
 Class here clinical drug trials
- 062–069 Other therapies
 Add to 06 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g., X-ray therapy 06422, rehabilitative activity therapies 06515
- 07 Pathology
- 071 Etiology
 Including effects of poisons on specific systems and organs as cause of disease
 Class social factors contributing to spread of a disease in 362.19; class comprehensive works on medical toxicology in 615.9
- 075–079 Diagnosis, prognosis, death, immunity
 Add to 07 the numbers following 616.07 in 616.075–616.079, e.g., physical diagnosis 0754

(continued)

617 **Surgery, regional medicine, dentistry, ophthalmology, otology, audiology (continued)**

- 08 Psychosomatic medicine
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography
- 0901–0905 Historical periods
 - Add to 09 the numbers following —090 in notation
 - 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., the subject in late 20th century
 - 09045
- 091–099 Geographic treatment and biography
 - Add to 09 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., the subject in India
 - 0954

Class comprehensive works on minor surgery in 617.024; class comprehensive works on emergency surgery in 617.026; class comprehensive works on surgery by instrument and technique in 617.05; class comprehensive works on surgical pathology in 617.07; class comprehensive works on operative surgery and special fields of surgery in 617.9

For surgical treatment of tumors, see 616.993–616.994

See Manual at 618.92097 vs. 617; also at 618.977 vs. 617

SUMMARY

- | | |
|--------------|---|
| 617.001–.008 | Standard subdivisions of surgery |
| .02–.09 | General topics of surgery; history, geographic treatment, biography of surgery |
| .1 | Injuries and wounds |
| .2 | Results of injuries and wounds |
| .4 | Surgery by systems |
| .5 | Regional medicine |
| .6 | Dentistry |
| .7 | Ophthalmology |
| .8 | Otology and audiology |
| .9 | Operative surgery and special fields of surgery |

> 617.001–617.008 Standard subdivisions of surgery

Class comprehensive works in 617

- .001 Philosophy and theory of surgery
- .002 Miscellany of surgery
- [.002 3] Surgery as a profession, occupation, hobby
 - Do not use; class in 617.023
- [.002 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
 - Do not use; class in 617.9
- [.002 87] Testing and measurement
 - Do not use; class in 617.075
- .003–.007 Standard subdivisions of surgery
- .008 Surgery for groups of people

- .008 3 Young people
 Do not use for surgery for infants and children up to puberty; class in 617.98
- .008 35 Young people twelve to twenty
 Do not use for comprehensive works on surgery for young people twelve to twenty who have not reached puberty; class in 617.98
 Class here adolescent surgery
- .008 4 People in specific stages of adulthood
- [.008 46] People in late adulthood
 Do not use; class in 617.97
- .008 8 Occupational and religious groups
- [.008 835 5] Military personnel
 Do not use; class in 617.99
- [.009] History, geographic treatment, biography of surgery
 Do not use; class in 617.09
-
- > 617.02–617.09 General topics of surgery; history, geographic treatment, biography of surgery
 Class comprehensive works in 617
- .02 Special topics of surgery
- .023 Personnel
- .023 1 Surgical nurses
 Class here general surgical nursing, general works that emphasize technology of operations performed by surgical nurses; nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships
 Class works that emphasize a specific technique used by surgical nurses with the technique, e.g., physical diagnosis by surgical nurses 617.0754
- .023 2 Surgeons
 Class here nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships
 Do not use for general works on technology of operations that surgeons perform; class in 617
 Class works that emphasize a specific technique used by surgeons with the technique, e.g., physical diagnosis by surgeons 617.0754

- .023 3 Surgical allied health personnel
- Class here nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships of surgical technicians and assistants; general works that emphasize technology of operations performed by surgical technicians and assistants
- Class works that emphasize a specific technique used by surgical technicians and assistants with the technique, e.g., techniques of sterilization for surgery by surgical assistants 617.9101
- .023 32 Surgical physician assistants
- Class here nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships; general works that emphasize technology of operations performed by surgical physician assistants
- Class works that emphasize a specific technique used by surgical physician assistants with the technique, e.g., physical diagnosis by surgical physician assistants 617.0754
- .024 Minor surgery
- Class here outpatient surgery
- .026 Emergency surgery
- .03 Rehabilitation
- Class here comprehensive works on rehabilitation
- Class rehabilitative therapy in 617.06. Class rehabilitation from a specific disease or injury with the disease or injury in 616–618, plus notation 03 from table under 616.1–616.9, notation 03 from table under 617, or notation 03 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g., rehabilitation for patients with heart disease 616.1203
- .033 Self-help devices for people with disabilities
- Including wheelchairs
- For orthopedic self-help devices for people with disabilities, see 617.9*
- .05 Surgery utilizing specific instruments and techniques or specific groups of instruments and techniques
- Including catheterization, cryosurgery, microsurgery; geriatric surgery, pediatric surgery, or military surgery utilizing a specific instrument or technique not provided in 617.91–617.96
- Class radiosurgery in 617.481059
- .057 Endoscopic surgery
- Class comprehensive works on endoscopy in 616.07545
- .058 Laser surgery
- Including laser coagulation
- Class here laser microsurgery

- .06 Nonsurgical therapy
 Class here rehabilitative therapy
 Add to base number 617.06 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g., X-ray therapy 617.06422, rehabilitative activity therapies in 617.06515
 Class comprehensive works on rehabilitative therapy and training in 617.03
- .07 Pathology
 Add to base number 617.07 the numbers following 616.07 in 616.071–616.079, e.g., physical diagnosis 617.0754
- .075 Diagnosis and prognosis
 Number built according to instructions under 617.07
 Class comprehensive works on a diagnostic technique used in general medicine, including techniques that involve minor surgery, with the technique in 616.075, e.g., biopsy 616.0758
- .09 History, geographic treatment, biography of surgery
- .090 1–.090 5 Historical periods
 Add to base number 617.090 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., history of surgery in late 20th century 617.09045
- .091–.099 Geographic treatment and biography
 Add to base number 617.09 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., collected biographies of surgeons 617.0922

.1 Injuries and wounds

- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here traumatology
 Class frostbite in 616.58; class heat stress disorders in 616.989; class motion sickness in 616.9892; class results of injuries and wounds in 617.2
- For injuries and wounds of a specific system, region, or organ, see the system, region, or organ in 617.4–617.5, plus notation 044 from table under 617, e.g., thoracic injuries 617.54044*
- .100 1–.100 9 Standard subdivisions
- .102 Special topics of injuries and wounds
- .102 6 Emergencies
- .102 62 First aid
 For first aid for a specific type of injury or wound, see the type, plus notation 0262 from table under 617, e.g., first aid for athletic injuries 617.1027, first aid for gunshot wounds 617.1450262

- .102 7 Athletic and dance injuries
 Standard subdivisions are added for athletic and dance injuries together, for athletic injuries alone
 Class here sports medicine
 Class a specific branch of sports medicine with the branch, e.g., promotion of health of athletes 613.711
- .102 75 Dance injuries
- .102 76–.102 79 Injuries associated with specific kinds of sports
 Add to base number 617.1027 the numbers following 79 in 796–799, e.g., skiing injuries 617.1027693
- .102 8 Crash injuries
 Injuries resulting from transportation accidents
- .103 Rehabilitation
 Including self-help devices for people with disabilities
 Class rehabilitative therapy in 617.106
- .106 Nonsurgical therapy
 Class here rehabilitative therapy
 Add to base number 617.106 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g., therapeutic massage 617.10622, rehabilitative activity therapies 617.106515
 Class comprehensive works on rehabilitative therapy and training in 617.103
- .107 Pathology
 Add to base number 617.107 the numbers following 616.07 in 616.071–616.079, e.g., physical diagnosis 617.10754
- .11 *Burns and scalds
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class burns and scalds resulting from injuries from electricity in 617.12
- .12 *Injuries from electricity
- .13 *Abrasions, contusions, lacerations
 Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .14 *Penetrating wounds
- .143 *Incisions and punctures
 Class here needlestick injuries, stab wounds
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .145 *Gunshot wounds
- .15 Fractures
 Add to base number 617.15 the numbers following 611.71 in
 611.711–611.718, e.g., fracture of femur 617.158
- .16 *Dislocations
- .17 *Sprains and strains
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .172 *Cumulative trauma disorders
 Variant names: overuse injuries, repetitive strain injuries
 *For a specific cumulative trauma disorder, see the disorder, e.g.,
 carpal tunnel syndrome 616.856*
- .18 *Asphyxia
 Including drowning, near drowning
- .19 *Blast injuries
 *For a specific kind of blast injuries, see the kind of injury, e.g., fractures
 617.15*
- .2 Results of injuries and wounds**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 *For results of injuries and wounds of a specific system, region, or organ, see
 the system, region, or organ in 617.4–617.5, plus notation 044 from table
 under 617, e.g., results of thoracic injuries 617.54044*
 See also 617.103 for rehabilitation; also 617.106 for rehabilitative therapy
- .21 Traumatic and surgical shock
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class comprehensive medical works on shock in 616.0475
- .22 Fever, infections, inflammation
 *See also 617.9195 for fever, infections, inflammation as surgical
 complications*

617.4–617.5 Surgery by systems and regions

Class here injuries and wounds of specific systems, regions, organs; surgery of specific organs

Class comprehensive works in 617

.4 Surgery by systems*For respiratory system, see 617.54**See Manual at 612.1–612.8; also at 616 vs. 617.4***SUMMARY**

617.41	Cardiovascular system
.43	Digestive system
.44	Blood-forming, lymphatic, glandular systems
.46	Urogenital system
.47	Musculoskeletal system, integument
.48	Nervous system

.41 †Cardiovascular system**.412 †Heart**

Class implantation of heart pacers in 617.4120592; class functioning of heart pacers in 617.4120645

.413 †Arteries

Class here comprehensive works on surgery of blood vessels (vascular surgery)

Class surgery of blood vessels in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., cerebrovascular surgery 617.481

*For veins, see 617.414; for capillaries, see 617.415***.414 †Veins****.415 †Capillaries****.43 †Digestive system**

Including surgical treatment of morbid obesity

*For surgery of specific organs of digestive system, see 617.5**See also 617.952 for lipectomy***.44 †Blood-forming, lymphatic, glandular systems**

Class here endocrine system

*For surgery of a specific gland, see the gland, e.g., thyroid gland 617.539***.441 †Bone marrow****.46 †Urogenital system***For gynecologic and obstetrical surgery, see 618*

†Add as instructed under 617, except use 059 by itself only for surgery utilizing specific instruments or techniques and do not use 06 by itself

- .461 †Kidneys, adrenal glands, ureters
 Class here comprehensive works on surgery of urinary organs
 Subdivisions are added for kidneys, adrenal glands, ureters together; for kidneys alone
 Class hemodialysis, peritoneal dialysis in 617.461059
For bladder and urethra, see 617.462
- .462 †Bladder and urethra
- .463 †Male genital organs
 Including circumcision; surgical methods of birth control in males, vasectomy
- .47 †Musculoskeletal system, integument
 Class here orthopedic surgery
 Subdivisions are added for musculoskeletal system, integument together; for musculoskeletal system alone
 Class orthopedic regional surgery in 617.5
For amputations, see 617.58059
- .471 †Bones
 Class chronic diseases of skeletal system in 616.71; class spine surgery involving both spinal column and spinal cord in 617.56059
For skull, see 617.514; for jaws, see 617.522
See also 617.441 for bone marrow
- .471 044 Injuries and wounds
 Number built according to instructions under 617
For fractures, see 617.15
- .472 †Joints
For jaws, see 617.522; for joints of extremities, see 617.58
- .472 044 Injuries and wounds
 Number built according to instructions under 617
For dislocations, see 617.16
- .473 †Muscles
- .473 044 Injuries and wounds
 Number built according to instructions under 617
For sprains and strains, see 617.17

†Add as instructed under 617, except use 059 by itself only for surgery utilizing specific instruments or techniques and do not use 06 by itself

- .474 †Tendons
- .475 †Bursae
- .477 †Integument
Including surgery of nails
Class here surgery of skin
- .477 044 Injuries and wounds
Number built according to instructions under 617
For abrasions, see 617.13
- .477 9 †Hair
Including removal
- .48 †Nervous system
Class here neurosurgery
For ophthalmologic surgery, see 617.71; for otologic surgery, see 617.8059
- .481 †Brain
Including psychosurgery
- .481 03 Rehabilitation
Number built according to instructions under 617
Class rehabilitation of brain-injured patients in 617.4810443
- .482 †Spinal cord
Including surgical treatment of spina bifida
Class surgery involving both spinal column and spinal cord in 617.56059
- .483 †Nerves
Class surgery of nerves of a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., neuromuscular surgery 617.473

.5 Regional medicine

Class here regional surgery; orthopedic regional medicine, orthopedic regional surgery

Class nonsurgical medicine of specific systems or organs in specific regions in 616; except as provided for below, class surgery of a specific system in a specific region in 617.4

See also 617.15 for fractures

See Manual at 617.5

†Add as instructed under 617, except use 059 by itself only for surgery utilizing specific instruments or techniques and do not use 06 by itself

SUMMARY

- 617.508 **Groups of people**
- .51 **Head**
- .52 **Face**
- .53 **Neck**
- .54 **Thorax (Chest) and respiratory system**
- .55 **Abdominal and pelvic cavities**
- .56 **Back**
- .57 **Upper extremities**
- .58 **Lower extremities**
- .508 3 Young people
- Do not use for nonsurgical regional medicine of infants and children up to puberty, comprehensive works on child and adolescent medicine; class in 618.920975
- .508 35 Young people twelve to twenty
- Do not use for nonsurgical regional medicine of young people twelve to twenty who have not reached puberty; class in 618.920975
- Class here comprehensive works on nonsurgical regional medicine of adolescents
- .508 4 People in specific stages of adulthood
- .508 46 People in late adulthood
- Do not use for nonsurgical regional medicine; class in 618.9775
- .51 *Head
- Class here otolaryngology, otorhinolaryngology, comprehensive works on diseases of ears, nose, throat
- For face, see 617.52; for throat, see 617.531; for eyes, see 617.7; for ears, see 617.8*
- .514 †Skull
- Limited to surgery
- Class here skull base
- .52 *Face
- Class eyes in 617.7
- .522 *Oral region
- Including lips, tongue, jaws, parotid gland
- Class nonsurgical works on mouth as a digestive organ in 616.31
- For teeth, see 617.6*

*Add as instructed under 617

†Add as instructed under 617, except use 059 by itself only for surgery utilizing specific instruments or techniques and do not use 06 by itself

- .522 059 Surgery
 Number built according to instructions under 617
 Class comprehensive works on kinds of oral surgery commonly performed by dentists in 617.605. Class a specific kind of oral surgery performed by dentists with the kind in 617.6, e.g., periodontal surgery 617.632059, tooth extraction 617.66
- .522 5 *Palate
- .523 *Nose
 Class here comprehensive works on nose and throat
 Class comprehensive works on diseases of ears, nose, throat in 617.51
 For throat, see 617.531
- .53 *Neck
- .531 *Throat
 For pharynx, see 617.532; for larynx and trachea, see 617.533
- .532 †Pharynx
 Limited to surgery
 Including tonsils
- .533 †Larynx and trachea
 Limited to surgery
 Including epiglottis, vocal cords
- .539 †Thyroid and parathyroid glands
 Limited to surgery
- .54 *Thorax (Chest) and respiratory system
 Regional medicine and surgery of thorax; surgery of respiratory system
 Subdivisions are added for thorax and respiratory system together, for thorax alone
 For surgery of heart, see 617.412; for surgery of nose, see 617.523; for surgery of larynx and trachea, see 617.533
- .542 †Lungs
 Limited to surgery
- .543 †Pleura
 Limited to surgery

*Add as instructed under 617

†Add as instructed under 617, except use 059 by itself only for surgery utilizing specific instruments or techniques and do not use 06 by itself

- .544 †Bronchi
 Limited to surgery
- .545 †Mediastinum
 Limited to surgery
- .546 †Thymus gland
 Limited to surgery
- .547 †Diaphragm
 Limited to surgery
- .548 †Esophagus
 Limited to surgery
- .549 †Male breast
 Limited to surgery
 Class comprehensive works on surgery of breast in 618.19059
- .55 *Abdominal and pelvic cavities
For urogenital system, see 617.46
- .551 †Spleen
 Limited to surgery
- .553 †Stomach
 Limited to surgery
 Including pylorus
- .554 †Intestine
 Limited to surgery
- .554 1 †Small intestine
 Limited to surgery
 Including duodenum, jejunum, ileum
- .554 5 †Cecum, vermiform appendix
 Limited to surgery
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

*Add as instructed under 617

†Add as instructed under 617, except use 059 by itself only for surgery utilizing specific instruments or techniques and do not use 06 by itself

- .554 7 †Large intestine
 Limited to surgery
 Including sigmoid colon
 Class here colon
For cecum and vermiform appendix, see 617.5545; for rectum, see 617.555
- .555 †Rectum, anus, perineum
 Limited to surgery
 Subdivisions are added for rectum, anus, perineum together; for rectum alone
- .556 †Biliary tract and liver
 Limited to surgery
 Subdivisions are added for biliary tract and liver together, for biliary tract alone
- .556 2 †Liver
 Limited to surgery
- .556 5 †Gallbladder
 Limited to surgery
- .556 7 †Bile ducts
 Limited to surgery
- .557 †Pancreas and islands of Langerhans
 Limited to surgery
 Subdivisions are added for pancreas and islands of Langerhans together, for pancreas alone
- .558 †Peritoneum
 Limited to surgery
 Including mesentery, omentum
- .559 *Hernias in abdominal region
 Including hiatal hernia
 Class here inguinal hernia
- .56 *Back
 Class shoulders in 617.572; class hips in 617.581
- .564 *Backache

*Add as instructed under 617

†Add as instructed under 617, except use 059 by itself only for surgery utilizing specific instruments or techniques and do not use 06 by itself

- .57 *Upper extremities
 Class here surgery of joints of upper extremities
 Class comprehensive works on extremities in 617.58; class comprehensive works on amputations, on surgery of joints of extremities in 617.58059
- .572 *Shoulders
- .574 *Arms, elbows, wrists
 Subdivisions are added for arms, elbows, wrists together; for arms alone
 Class carpal tunnel syndrome in 616.856
- .575 *Hands
 Class carpal tunnel syndrome in 616.856
- .58 *Lower extremities
 Class here legs; comprehensive works on extremities, on paraplegia
 Class works about "legs" when used to mean segment of lower limb between knee and ankle in 617.584
 For neurological aspects of paraplegia, see 616.842; for upper extremities, see 617.57
 See also 616.72 for nonsurgical medical aspects of joints
- .580 59 Surgery
 Number built according to instructions under 617
 Class here comprehensive works on amputations, on surgery of joints of extremities
 For amputations of upper extremities, surgery of joints of upper extremities, see 617.57059. For surgery of a specific joint, see the joint, e.g., surgery of knees 617.582059
- .581 *Hips
- .582 *Knees and thighs
 Subdivisions are added for knees and thighs together, for knees alone
- .584 *Legs between knee and ankle, ankles
- .585 *Feet
 Class here podiatry
- .6 *Dentistry
- .600 83 Young people
 Do not use for dentistry for infants and children up to puberty; class in 617.645

- .600 835 Young people twelve to twenty
 Do not use for dentistry for young people twelve to twenty who
 have not reached puberty; class in 617.645
 Class here adolescent dentistry
- .601 Oral hygiene and preventive dentistry
 Do not use for surgical complications, preoperative, intraoperative,
 postoperative care; class in 617.605
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here dental hygiene
- .605 Surgery
 Number built according to instructions under 617
 Do not use for preventive measures; class in 617.601
 Including surgical complications; preoperative, intraoperative,
 postoperative care
 For a specific kind of dental surgery, see the kind, e.g., extractions
 617.66, dental implantation 617.693
- [.605 9] Surgery
 Do not use; class in 617.605
- .63 *Dental diseases
 Class here diseases of teeth
 For tumors of teeth and surrounding tissues, see 616.994314; for
 tuberculosis of teeth and surrounding tissues, see 616.995314
- .632 *Diseases of gums and tooth sockets
 Including gingivitis, periapical abscesses, periodontitis
 Class here periodontics
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .634 *Diseases of tooth tissues
 Including diseases of cementum, dentin, enamel
 For caries, see 617.67
- .634 2 *Diseases of dental pulp
 Class here endodontics
- .64 Orthodontics and pediatric dentistry
- .643 *Orthodontics

- .645 ***Pediatric dentistry**
 Class here comprehensive works on pediatric and adolescent dentistry
 *For adolescent dentistry, see 617.600835. For a specific aspect of
 pediatric dentistry, see the aspect, plus notation 0083 from table
 under 617, e.g., periodontics for children 617.6320083*
- .66 ***Extraction**
 Class here exodontics
- .67 ***Caries (Cavities)**
- .672 **Preparation and treatment**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .675 **Fillings and inlays**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including metallic and ceramic fillings and inlays
- .69 **Prosthodontics**
 Class here dental restoration
 For fillings and inlays, see 617.675
- .690 284 **Apparatus and equipment**
 Do not use for materials; class in 617.695
- .692 **Dentures, bridges, crowns**
 Standard subdivisions are added for dentures, bridges, crowns; for
 dentures alone
 For implant-supported dentures, see 617.693
- .692 2 **Crowns**
- .693 **Dental implantation**
 Class here dental implants, implant-supported dentures
- .695 **Materials**
 Class here dental materials used for dental restoration
 For materials used as fillings and inlays, see 617.675
- .7 ***Ophthalmology**
 Class here eye diseases
 For tumors of eyes, see 616.99484; for tuberculosis of eyes, see 616.99584
- [.704 4] **Injuries and wounds**
 Do not use; class in 617.713

- [.705 9] Surgery
 Do not use; class in 617.71
- [.707] Pathology
 Do not use; class in 617.71
- .71 Pathology and surgery of eyes
 Class surgical complications; preoperative, intraoperative, postoperative care
 in 617.701. Class pathology and surgery of a specific disease or part of eyes
 with the disease or part, e.g., diagnosis of glaucoma 617.741075
- .712 *Blindness and partial blindness
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 *See also 617.75 for disorders of refraction and accommodation, color
 vision defects*
- .713 *Injuries and wounds
 Class here trauma
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .715 Diagnosis and prognosis
 Add to base number 617.715 the numbers following 616.075 in
 616.0751–616.0759, e.g., physical diagnosis 617.7154
 Subdivisions are added for diagnosis and prognosis together, for
 diagnosis alone
- .719 *Diseases of corneas and scleras
 Subdivisions are added for corneas and scleras together, for corneas
 alone
 See also 362.1783 for eye banks
- .72 *Diseases of uveas
 Including diseases of choroids, ciliary bodies, irises
- .73 *Diseases of optic nerves, of retinas
- .732 *Diseases of optic nerves
 Class diseases of ocular neuromuscular mechanism in 617.762
- .735 *Diseases of retinas
- .74 *Diseases of eyeballs
 *For diseases of corneas and scleras, see 617.719; for diseases of uveas,
 see 617.72; for diseases of retinas, see 617.735*
- .741 *Glaucoma
- .742 *Diseases of crystalline lenses
 Class here cataracts

*Add as instructed under 617

.771 *Diseases of eyelids

.772 *Trachoma

.773 *Conjunctivitis

For trachoma, see 617.772

.78 *Diseases of orbits

.79 Artificial eyes

Class intraocular lenses in 617.7524; class orbital implants in 617.780592

.8 *Otology and audiology

Class here deafness, partial hearing loss

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

For tumors of ears, see 616.99485; for tuberculosis of ears, see 616.99585

.803 Rehabilitation

Number built according to instructions under 617

Do not use for hearing aids; class in 617.89

.81 *Diseases of external ears

For diseases of auricles, see 617.82; for diseases of auditory canals, see 617.83

.82 *Diseases of auricles

.83 *Diseases of auditory canals

.84 *Diseases of middle ears

For diseases of tympanic membranes, see 617.85; for diseases of eustachian tubes, see 617.86; for diseases of mastoid processes, see 617.87

.842 *Diseases of ossicles

.85 *Diseases of tympanic membranes

.86 *Diseases of eustachian tubes

.87 *Diseases of mastoid processes

.88 *Diseases of internal ears and of aural nervous system

.882 *Diseases of internal ears

Including Meniere's disease; semicircular canals, vestibules

Class here diseases of labyrinths

Class vertigo as a symptom of neurological disease in 616.841; class motion sickness in 616.9892

.882 2 *Diseases of cochleas

.886 *Diseases of aural nervous system
Including sensorineural hearing loss

.89 Correction of impaired hearing
Including hearing aids

For surgical methods of correction that are limited to a specific part of the hearing apparatus, see the part in 617.81–617.88, plus notation 059 from table under 617, e.g., cochlear implants 617.88220592; for nonsurgical methods of correction that are limited to a specific part of the hearing apparatus, see the part in 617.81–617.88, plus notation 06 from table under 617, e.g., drug therapy for diseases of middle ears 617.84061

.9 Operative surgery and special fields of surgery

Class here orthopedic equipment; auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials; comprehensive works on surgical equipment, on prostheses

Class comprehensive works on orthopedic and nonorthopedic self-help devices for people with disabilities in 617.033

For a specific piece of equipment or prosthesis, see the use of the equipment or prosthesis, e.g., dentures 617.692

SUMMARY

617.91	Operative surgery
.93	Surgical dressings
.95	Cosmetic and restorative plastic surgery, transplantation of tissue and organs, implantation of artificial organs
.96	Anesthesiology
.97	Geriatric surgery
.98	Pediatric surgery
.99	Military surgery

617.91–617.96 Surgical techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class comprehensive works in 617.9. Except for anesthesiology, class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials of surgery of a specific system, organ, or region with the surgical therapy of the system, organ, or region, e.g., preoperative care in neck surgery 617.53059

.91 Operative surgery

For anesthesiology, see 617.96

.910 01 Philosophy and theory

.910 02 Miscellany

[.910 028] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 617.9178

- .910 03–.910 09 Standard subdivisions
- .910 1 Asepsis and antisepsis
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here sterilization
- .917 Operating rooms
- .917 8 Surgical instruments, apparatus, equipment, materials
 For surgical dressings, see 617.93
- .919 Surgical complications; preoperative, intraoperative, postoperative care
 Including complicating preconditions, e.g., heart problems
 For surgical complications associated with anesthesia, see 617.96041
- .919 2 Preoperative care
- .919 5 Postoperative care and complications
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including surgical infections
 For surgical shock, see 617.21
- .93 Surgical dressings
- .95 Cosmetic and restorative plastic surgery, transplantation of tissue and organs, implantation of artificial organs
- .952 Cosmetic and restorative plastic surgery
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class transplantation of tissue for cosmetic and restorative purposes in 617.954; class implantation of artificial tissue for cosmetic and restorative purposes in 617.956
 For cosmetic and restorative plastic surgery of a specific system, region, or organ, see the system, region, or organ in 617.4–617.5, plus notation 0592 from table under 617, e.g., plastic surgery of face 617.520592; for cosmetic and restorative plastic surgery in gynecologic and obstetrical surgery, see the tissue or organ in 618, plus notation 0592 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g., mammoplasty 618.190592

.954 Transplantation of tissue and organs

Including transplantation of fetal tissue

Class blood and blood plasma transfusion in 615.39; class transplantation of fetal tissue in experimental medicine in 616.027

For transplantation of tissue of a specific system, region, or organ; or transplantation of a specific organ, see the system, region, or organ in 617.4–617.5, plus notation 0592 from table under 617, e.g., skin transplantation 617.4770592, heart transplantation 617.4120592; for transplantation of tissue of a specific system, region, or organ; or transplantation of a specific organ in gynecological or obstetrical surgery, see the system, region, or organ in 618, plus notation 0592 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g., transplantation of ovarian tissue 618.110592

See also 362.1783 for tissue and organ banks; also 618.1780599 for gamete, zygote, embryo transfer for purpose of human reproduction

.956 Implantation of artificial tissue and organs

Including implantation and removal of prostheses, other medical devices

For implantation of artificial tissue of a specific system, region, or organ; or implantation of an artificial substitute, artificial part, or assistive device for a specific organ, see the system, region, or organ in 617.4–617.5, plus notation 0592 from table under 617, e.g., implantation of bone substitutes 617.4710592, implantation of heart-assist devices 617.4120592; for implantation of artificial tissue, artificial organs, or medical devices in gynecologic and obstetrical surgery, see the tissue or organ in 618, plus notation 0592 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g., breast implants 618.190592

.96 Anesthesiology

Class acupuncture anesthesia in 615.892

.960 4 Special topics of anesthesiology

.960 41 Complications

.960 42 Emergencies

Class resuscitation in 616.025

617.962–617.966 Types of anesthesia

Class anesthesiology regardless of type for specific kinds of surgery in 617.967; class comprehensive works in 617.96

.962 General anesthesia

Including inhalation, intravenous, rectal anesthetics

.964 Regional anesthesia

Including epidural, spinal anesthetics

Class here conduction anesthesia

For local anesthesia, see 617.966

- .966 Local anesthesia
- .967 Anesthesiology for specific kinds of surgery
 General, regional, local anesthesia
 Add to base number 617.967 the numbers following 617 in 617.1–617.9, e.g., dental anesthesia 617.9676
For anesthesiology for gynecology and obstetrics, see 617.968
- .968 Anesthesiology for gynecology and obstetrics
- .968 1 Gynecology
- .968 2 Obstetrics
-
- > 617.97–617.99 Special fields of surgery
 Class comprehensive works in 617.9
For surgery of tumors and cancers, see 616.993–616.994; for gynecologic surgery, see 618.1059. For surgery of a specific organ, system, region, or disorder, see the organ, system, region, or disorder in 617, e.g., brain surgery in children 617.4810083, abdominal surgery in children 617.55059083
- .97 *Geriatric surgery
- [.970 59] Operative surgery
 Do not use for comprehensive works; class in 617.97; do not use for comprehensive works on geriatric surgery utilizing a specific instrument or technique not provided in 617.91–617.96; class in 617.05, e.g., cryosurgery on people in late adulthood 617.05, laser surgery on people in late adulthood 617.0580846; do not use for a specific surgical technique provided in 617.91–617.96; class in 617.91–617.96, e.g., anesthesiology of people in late adulthood 617.960846
- [.970 592] Cosmetic and restorative plastic surgery, transplantation of tissue and organs, implantation of artificial organs
 Do not use; class in 617.950846
- .98 *Pediatric surgery
 Class here comprehensive works on pediatric and adolescent surgery
For adolescent surgery, see 617.00835
- [.980 59] Operative surgery
 Do not use for comprehensive works; class in 617.98; do not use for comprehensive works on pediatric surgery utilizing a specific instrument or technique not provided in 617.91–617.96; class in 617.05, e.g., cryosurgery on children 617.05, laser surgery on children 617.058083; do not use for a specific surgical technique provided in 617.91–617.96; class in 617.91–617.96, e.g., anesthesiology of children 617.96083

*Add as instructed under 617

- [.980 592] Cosmetic and restorative plastic surgery, transplantation of tissue and organs, implantation of artificial organs
Do not use; class in 617.95083
- .99 *Military surgery
- [.990 59] Operative surgery
Do not use for comprehensive works; class in 617.99; do not use for comprehensive works on military surgery utilizing a specific instrument or technique not provided in 617.91–617.96; class in 617.05, e.g., cryosurgery on military personnel 617.05, laser surgery on military personnel 617.058088355; do not use for a specific surgical technique provided in 617.91–617.96; class in 617.91–617.96, e.g., military anesthesiology 617.96088355
- [.990 592] Cosmetic and restorative plastic surgery, transplantation of tissue and organs, implantation of artificial organs
Do not use; class in 617.95088355

618 Gynecology, obstetrics, pediatrics, geriatrics

Standard subdivisions are added for gynecology, obstetrics, pediatrics, geriatrics together; for gynecology and obstetrics together

SUMMARY

618.01–.09 Standard subdivisions and special topics of gynecology, obstetrics, pediatrics, geriatrics

- .1 Gynecology
 - .2 Obstetrics
 - .3 Diseases and complications of pregnancy
 - .4 Childbirth
 - .5 Labor complications
 - .6 Normal puerperium
 - .7 Puerperal diseases
 - .8 Obstetrical surgery
 - .9 Pediatrics and geriatrics
- .01 Philosophy and theory
- .02 Miscellany
- [.028 7] Testing and measurement
Do not use; class in 618.0475
- .03 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances
- .04 Special topics of gynecology, obstetrics, pediatrics, geriatrics
Add to base number 618.04 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–09 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g., drug therapy 618.0461; however, for gynecology, obstetrics, pediatrics, geriatrics as a profession, occupation, hobby, see 618.023
- .05–.07 Standard subdivisions
- .08 Groups of people

*Add as instructed under 617

- .083 Young people
Do not use for infants and children up to puberty; class in 618.92098
- .083 5 Young people twelve to twenty
Do not use for young people twelve to twenty who have not reached puberty; class in 618.92098
Class here adolescent gynecology and obstetrics
- .084 People in specific stages of adulthood
- .084 6 People in late adulthood
Do not use for patients; class in 618.978
- .09 History, geographic treatment, biography
Class life with a disease in 362.198

>

618.1–618.8 Gynecology and obstetrics

Medical and surgical

Except where contrary instructions are given, all notes under 616.02–616.08 and in table under 616.1–616.9 are applicable here

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 001–007 Standard subdivisions
As modified under 616.1–616.9
- 008 Groups of people
- 0083 Young people
Do not use for infants and children up to puberty; class in 618.92098
- 00835 Young people twelve to twenty
Do not use for young people twelve to twenty who have not reached puberty; class in 618.92098
Class here adolescent gynecology and obstetrics
- 0084 People in specific stages of adulthood
- 00846 People in late adulthood
Do not use for patients; class in 618.978
- 009 History, geographic treatment, biography
- 0092 Biography
Class life with a disease in 362.198

(continued)

> **618.1–618.8 Gynecology and obstetrics (continued)**

- 01–03 Microbiology, special topics, rehabilitation
Add to 0 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–03 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., experimental medicine 027
Class microbiology, special topics, rehabilitation applied to special classes of diseases in 04
- 04 Special classes of diseases
Limited to the classes named below
- 042 Genetic diseases (Hereditary diseases)
- 0421–0423 Microbiology, special topics, rehabilitation
Add to 042 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–03 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., experimental medicine for genetic diseases 04227
- 0425–0429 Preventive measures, surgery, therapy, pathology, psychosomatic medicine, case histories
Add to 042 the numbers following 0 in notation 05–09 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g., therapy for genetic diseases 0426
- 043 Congenital diseases
Add to 043 the numbers following 042 in notation 0421–0429 from table under 618.1–618.8, e.g., experimental medicine for congenital diseases 04327
Class congenital diseases of genetic origin in 042
- >05–09 Preventive measures, surgery, therapy, pathology, psychosomatic medicine, case histories
Class preventive measures, surgery, therapy, pathology, psychosomatic medicine applied to special classes of diseases in 04; class comprehensive works on prevention, therapy, etiology of a specific disease or kind of disease if all related to a specific kind of therapy in 061–069, e.g., diet therapy 0654; class comprehensive works in 618.1–618.8, without adding from this table
- 05 Preventive measures and surgery
- 052 Preventive measures
By individuals and by medical personnel
Class public measures preventing specific diseases in 614.5992; class comprehensive works on prevention in 613.
Class a specific kind of therapy used for prevention with the kind of therapy in 061–069, e.g., drug therapy 061
- 059 Surgery
Limited to operative surgery
Including preoperative, intraoperative, postoperative care; surgery utilizing specific instruments or techniques, e.g., catheterization, cryosurgery, microsurgery, radiosurgery; surgical complications
Class laser microsurgery in 0598; class nonoperative physical procedures in 06
- 0592 Cosmetic and restorative plastic surgery, transplantation of tissue and organs, implantation of artificial organs
Including implantation and removal of prostheses, other medical devices

(continued)

- > **618.1–618.8 Gynecology and obstetrics (continued)**
- 0597 Endoscopic surgery
- 0598 Laser surgery
Including laser coagulation
Class here laser microsurgery
- 06 Therapy
Class here rehabilitative therapy
Class comprehensive works on rehabilitative therapy and education for living with handicaps and disabilities in 03; class comprehensive works on prevention, therapy, etiology of a specific disease or kind of disease if all related to a specific kind of therapy in 061–069, e.g., diet therapy 0654
For surgery, see 059
- 060724 Experimental research
Class here clinical trials
Class clinical trials of a specific kind of therapy with the kind of therapy, plus notation 0724 from Table 1, e.g., clinical drug trials 0610724
- >061–069 Specific therapies
Class here specific kinds of therapy used for prevention; comprehensive works on prevention, therapy, etiology if these all relate to a specific kind of therapy, e.g., nutritional aspects of a disease and diet therapy 0654
- 061 Drug therapy
- 0610724 Experimental research
Class here clinical drug trials
- 062–069 Other therapies
Add to 06 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g., X-ray therapy 06422
- 07 Pathology
- 071 Etiology
Including effects of poisons on specific systems and organs as cause of disease
Class social factors contributing to spread of a disease in 362.19; class comprehensive works on medical toxicology in 615.9
- 075–079 Diagnosis, prognosis, death, immunity
Add to 07 the numbers following 616.07 in 616.075–616.079, e.g., physical diagnosis 0754
- 08 Psychosomatic medicine
- 09 Case histories

Class comprehensive works in 618

.1 *Gynecology

Including endocrine gynecology, endometriosis

Class tumors of genital system in 616.99465

For puerperal diseases, see 618.7

See also 616.9297 for toxic shock syndrome

*Add as instructed under 618.1–618.8

- .100 83 Young people
 Do not use for gynecology for infants and children up to puberty;
 class in 618.92098
- .100 835 Young people twelve to twenty
 Do not use for gynecology for young people twelve to twenty
 who have not reached puberty; class in 618.92098
 Class here adolescent gynecology
- .11 *Diseases of ovaries
- .12 *Diseases of fallopian tubes
- .14 *Diseases of uterus
 Class here diseases of uterine cervix
 See also 618.1 for endometriosis
- [.140 59] Surgery
 Do not use; class in 618.145
- .142 *Infections
 Including cervicitis, endometritis
 For leukorrhea, see 618.15
 See also 618.1 for endometriosis
- .144 *Malformations
 Including prolapse of uterus
- .145 Surgery
- .145 3 Hysterectomies
- .145 8 Dilatation and curettage
 See also 618.88 for surgical abortion
- .15 *Diseases of vagina
 Including leukorrhea
- .16 *Diseases of vulva
- .17 *Functional and systemic disorders
 Class here female sexual disorders
 Class comprehensive medical works on sexual disorders in 616.69
- .172 *Menstruation disturbances
 Including amenorrhea, dysmenorrhea, menorrhagia, oligomenorrhea,
 premenstrual syndrome (PMS)

- .175 *Menopause disorders
 Class here disorders of perimenopause, of postmenopause;
 comprehensive works on climacteric disorders
 For male climacteric disorders, see 616.693
- .178 *Infertility
 Including artificial insemination
 Class comprehensive works on male and female infertility in 616.692
- .178 059 Surgery
 Number built according to instructions under 618.1–618.8
- .178 059 9 Gamete, zygote, embryo transfer; fertilization in vitro
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in
 heading
- .178 06 Therapy
 Number built according to instructions under 618.1–618.8
 Class here human reproductive technology applied to female
 infertility
 Class comprehensive works on human reproductive technology in
 616.69206
 For surgery, see 618.178059
- .18 Birth control
 Class here contraception, family planning
 Class personal health aspects of birth control in 613.94; class
 interdisciplinary works on birth control in 363.96. Class surgical methods
 of birth control in females with the kind of surgery in 618.1, e.g., tubal
 sterilization 618.12059
 *For nonsurgical methods of birth control in males, see 616.65; for
 surgical methods of birth control in males, see 617.463*
- .182 Chemical methods of birth control
 Including contraceptive drug implants, spermaticidal agents
 Class pharmacokinetics of chemical contraceptives in 615.766
- .182 2 Oral contraceptives
 Class postcoital contraceptives in 618.1825
- .182 5 Postcoital contraceptives
 Class here morning after pills
- .184 Natural family planning
 Class here ovulation detection method, rhythm method

- .185 Mechanical methods of birth control
 Including female condoms, vaginal diaphragms
- .185 2 Intrauterine devices
- .19 *Diseases of breast
 Class here comprehensive works on diseases of male and female breast
 For diseases of male breast, see 616.49; for tumors of breast, see 616.99449; for diseases of lactation, see 618.71
- .190 59 Surgery
 Number built according to instructions under 618.1–618.8
 Class here comprehensive works on surgery of male and female breast
 For surgery of male breast, see 617.549
- .2 *Obstetrics
 Class here midwifery, comprehensive works on pregnancy and childbirth
 For physiology of pregnancy and childbirth, see 612.63; for diseases, disorders, management of pregnancy, childbirth, puerperium, see 618.3–618.8
- .200 835 Young people twelve to twenty
 Class here adolescent obstetrics
- [.205 2] Preventive measures
 Do not use; class in 618.24
- [.205 9] Surgery
 Do not use; class in 618.8
- .207 5 Diagnosis
 Number built according to instructions under 618.1–618.8
 Class here comprehensive works on diagnosis of diseases and complications of pregnancy, diagnosis of labor complications, diagnosis of puerperal diseases
 To be classed here a work should be broader than diagnosis of diseases and complications of pregnancy; it should include also diagnosis of labor complications (618.5) or diagnosis of puerperal diseases (618.7075)
 For diagnosis of diseases and complications of pregnancy, see 618.3075; for diagnosis of labor complications, see 618.5; for diagnosis of puerperal diseases, see 618.7075
- .24 Prenatal care and preparation for childbirth
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .242 Dietetics and nutrition for pregnant women
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 See also 641.56319 for cooking for pregnant women
- .244 Exercise for pregnant women
- .25 *Multiple pregnancy and childbirth
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .29 Nonsurgical methods of abortion
 Class here use of abortifacient agents
 Class surgical abortion, comprehensive works on induced abortion in 618.88

> **618.3–618.8 Diseases, disorders, management of pregnancy, childbirth, puerperium**

Class comprehensive works in 618.2

See also 618.25 for multiple pregnancy and childbirth

.3 ***Diseases and complications of pregnancy**

.31 *Ectopic pregnancy

Including abdominal, tubal pregnancies

.32 *Fetal disorders

Class here perinatal medicine (perinatology)

Class neonatal medicine in 618.9201; class comprehensive works on congenital diseases in 616.043

For childbirth, see 618.4

.320 75 Diagnosis

Number built according to instructions under 618.1–618.8

Class procedures to diagnose genetic diseases, e.g., amniocentesis and chorionic villi sampling, in 618.3204275

.326 Diseases of specific systems and organs

.326 1 *Diseases of cardiovascular system

.326 8 *Diseases of nervous system

- .326 86 *Substance-related disorders
 Effects on fetus of use of substances by mother
 Including effect of tobacco use
 Class here drug dependence; comprehensive works on fetal disorders and pregnancy complications associated with substance use and abuse
 For pregnancy complications associated with substance use and abuse, see 618.3686
- .326 861 *Alcohol-related disorders
 Class here fetal alcohol syndrome
- .34 *Diseases of placenta and amniotic fluid
 Subdivisions are added for diseases of placenta and amniotic fluid together, for diseases of placenta alone
- .36 Pregnancy complications due to co-occurrence of pregnancy and disease in the mother
 Pre-existing diseases and diseases induced by pregnancy
 Including communicable diseases
- .361 *Diseases of cardiovascular system
- .361 3 *Diseases of blood vessels
- .361 32 *Hypertension
 Including eclampsia
 Class here pregnancy toxemias
 For puerperal eclampsia, see 618.7
- .364 *Diseases of endocrine, hematopoietic, lymphatic systems
 Class here diseases of glands
 Subdivisions are added for diseases of endocrine, hematopoietic, lymphatic systems together; for diseases of endocrine system alone
- .364 6 *Diabetes
 Class here diabetes mellitus, gestational diabetes
- .368 *Diseases of nervous system and mental disorders

- .368 6 *Substance abuse (Drug abuse)
 Including alcohol, tobacco
 Class here substance use that would not be considered a problem
 except during pregnancy
 Class comprehensive works on fetal disorders and pregnancy
 complications associated with maternal substance use and abuse in
 618.32686
- .39 Miscarriage, stillbirth, premature labor
- .392 *Miscarriage and stillbirth
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here perinatal death, spontaneous abortion
 See also 155.937085 for psychology of bereavement
- .397 *Premature labor
 Class here premature birth
- .4 Childbirth**
 Class here labor
 Class a specific aspect not provided for here with the aspect, e.g., Cesarean
 section 618.86
- .42 Presentation
- .45 Natural childbirth
- .5 Labor complications**
 Class here dystocia
- .54 Uterine hemorrhage
- .6 Normal puerperium**
 Class here postnatal care
- .7 *Puerperal diseases**
 Including postpartum hemorrhage, Sheehan's syndrome
- [.707 8] Death
 Do not use; class in 618.79
- .71 *Diseases of lactation
- .74 *Puerperal infections
 Including infectious puerperal peritonitis, puerperal metritis, puerperal
 pyemia
 Class here childbed fever, puerperal septicemia

- .76 ***Puerperal mental disorders**
 Class here postpartum depression
 Class comprehensive works on depression in 616.8527
- .79 Maternal death
- .8 Obstetrical surgery**
 Class embryo transfer in 618.1780599
- .82 Version and extraction
- .85 Minor surgery
 Including episiotomy
- .86 Cesarean section
- .88 Surgical abortion
 Including embryotomy
 Class here comprehensive medical works on abortion
 Class interdisciplinary works on abortion in 362.19888
 For nonsurgical methods of abortion, see 618.29
 See also 615.766 for abortifacient drugs
- .9 Pediatrics and geriatrics**
- .92 Pediatrics
 Medicine for infants and children up to puberty
 Class here comprehensive works on child and adolescent medicine
 For medicine for young people who have reached puberty (adolescent medicine), see 616.00835; for pediatric aspects of injuries and wounds, see 617.10083; for pediatric aspects of results of injuries and wounds, see 617.2083; for pediatric dentistry, see 617.645; for pediatric surgery, see 617.98
 See Manual at 616 vs. 618.92
- .920 001–.920 007 Standard subdivisions
 As modified under 616.1–616.9
- .920 008 Groups of people
- .920 009 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .920 009 2 Biography
 Class life with a physical disease in 362.19892.
 Class life with a mental disorder with the disorder
 in 618.9285–618.9289, e.g., life with depression
 618.9285270092

*Add as instructed under 618.1–618.8

- .920 01–.920 09 General topics of pediatrics
- Add to base number 618.920 notation 01–09 from table under 616.1–616.9, e.g., congenital diseases 618.920043; however, for pediatric preventive measures, see 613.0432; for pediatric therapeutics, see 615.542
- Class chronic diseases; symptoms and general pathological processes as problems in their own right in 618.9204
- .920 1 Newborn infants (Neonates)
- In first month after birth
- Class here neonatal medicine (neonatology)
- Class perinatal medicine in 618.32; class comprehensive works on congenital diseases in 616.043
- .920 11 Premature infants
- Class here low birth weight infants
- .920 2 Infants
- Through age two
- Class a specific medical condition or disease not provided for here with the condition or disease, e.g., pain in infants 618.9204720832, diarrhea in infants 618.92342700832
- For infants in first month after birth, see 618.9201*
- .920 26 †Sudden infant death
- Variant names: cot death, crib death, sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS)
- .920 4 Chronic diseases; symptoms and general pathological processes as problems in their own right
- Add to base number 618.9204 the numbers following 616.04 in 616.044–616.047, e.g., pain in children 618.920472
- .920 9 Special branches of medicine
- Class pediatric sports medicine in 617.1027083; class pediatric dentistry in 617.645; class pediatric surgery in 617.98
- .920 97 Regional medicine, ophthalmology, otology, audiology
- See Manual at 618.92097 vs. 617*
- .920 975 Regional medicine
- Add to base number 618.920975 the numbers following 617.5 in 617.51–617.58, e.g., disorders of face 618.92097522; however, for pediatric regional surgery, see 617.5083

†Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .920 977–.920 978 Ophthalmology, otology, audiology
 Add to base number 618.92097 the numbers following 617
 in 617.7–617.8, e.g., trachoma in children 618.92097772;
 however, for pediatric surgery of eyes, see 617.71; for pediatric
 surgery of ears, see 617.8059083
- .920 98 †Gynecology
 For pediatric gynecologic surgery, see 618.1059083
- .920 981 Specific diseases
 Add to base number 618.920981 the numbers following
 618.1 in 618.11–618.19, e.g., diseases of uterus 618.9209814;
 however, for surgery for pediatric gynecologic diseases, see
 618.11–618.19
- .921–.929 Specific diseases
 Add to base number 618.92 the numbers following 616 in 616.1–616.9,
 e.g., heart diseases in children 618.9212
 Class sudden infant death in 618.92026
 *For pediatric dental diseases, see 617.645; for pediatric regional
 medicine diseases, pediatric diseases of eyes and ears, pediatric
 gynecologic diseases, see 618.9209*
- .97 †Geriatrics
 *For geriatric aspects of injuries and wounds, see 617.100846; for
 geriatric aspects of results of injuries and wounds, see 617.20846; for
 geriatric surgery, see 617.97*
- [.970 42] Genetic diseases (Hereditary diseases)
 Do not use; class in 618.976042
- [.970 43] Congenital diseases
 Do not use; class in 618.976043
- [.970 52] Preventive measures
 Do not use; class in 613.0438
- [.970 6] Therapy
 Do not use; class in 615.547
- .976 Special medical conditions, specific diseases
- [.976 01–.976 03] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 618.97001–618.97003
- .976 04 Special medical conditions
 Add to base number 618.97604 the numbers following 616.04 in
 616.042–616.047, e.g., pain in geriatric patients 618.9760472

†Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- [.976 05--976 09] Standard subdivisions
Do not use; class in 618.97005-618.97009
- .976 1--976 9 Specific diseases
Add to base number 618.976 the numbers following 616 in 616.1-616.9, e.g., geriatric mental disorders 618.97689
- .977 Miscellaneous branches of medicine other than surgery
Only those branches named below
See Manual at 618.977 vs. 617
- [.977 01--977 02] Standard subdivisions
Do not use; class in 618.977
- .977 03 Rehabilitation
Do not use for dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances; class in 618.977

Class rehabilitation from a specific disease with the disease in 618.976-618.978, plus notation 03 from table under 616.1-616.9, notation 03 from table under 617, or notation 03 from table under 618.1-618.8, e.g., rehabilitation for geriatric patients with heart disease 618.9761203
- [.977 04--977 09] Standard subdivisions
Do not use; class in 618.977
- .977 5--977 8 Regional medicine, dentistry, ophthalmology, otology, audiology
Add to base number 618.977 the numbers following 617 in 617.5-617.8, e.g., geriatric dentistry 618.9776; however, for geriatric regional surgery, see 617.50846; for geriatric dental surgery, see 617.6050846; for geriatric surgery of eyes, see 617.71; for geriatric surgery of ears, see 617.80590846
- .978 †Gynecology
For geriatric gynecologic surgery, see 618.10590846
- .978 1 Specific diseases
Add to base number 618.9781 the numbers following 618.1 in 618.11-618.19, e.g., diseases of uterus 618.97814; however, for surgery for geriatric gynecologic diseases, see 618.11-618.19

[619] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 21

†Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9

620 Engineering and allied operations

Standard subdivisions are added for engineering and allied operations together, for engineering alone

Class here manufacturing of products of various branches of engineering

Class comprehensive works on manufacturing in 670

For chemical engineering, see 660

SUMMARY

- 620.001-.009** Standard subdivisions and engineering design and quality
- .1 Engineering mechanics and materials
 - .2 Sound and related vibrations
 - .3 Mechanical vibration
 - .4 Engineering for specific kinds of geographic environments, fine particle and remote control technology, surface engineering
 - .5 Nanotechnology
 - .8 Human factors and safety engineering
- 621** Applied physics
- .04 Special topics of applied physics
 - .1 Steam engineering
 - .2 Hydraulic-power technology
 - .3 Electrical, magnetic, optical, communications, computer engineering; electronics, lighting
 - .4 Prime movers and heat engineering
 - .5 Pneumatic, vacuum, low-temperature technologies
 - .6 Blowers, fans, pumps
 - .8 Machine engineering
 - .9 Tools
- 622** Mining and related operations
- .1 Prospecting
 - .2 Excavation techniques
 - .3 Mining for specific materials
 - .4 Mine environment
 - .5 Mine drainage
 - .6 Mine transport systems
 - .7 Ore dressing
 - .8 Mine health and safety
- 623** Military and nautical engineering
- .04 Special topics of military engineering
 - .1 Fortifications
 - .2 Mine laying and clearance, demolition
 - .3 Engineering of defense
 - .4 Ordnance
 - .5 Ballistics and gunnery
 - .6 Military transportation technology
 - .7 Communications, vehicles, sanitation, related topics
 - .8 Nautical engineering and seamanship
- 624** Civil engineering
- .029 Commercial miscellany
 - .1 Structural engineering and underground construction
 - .2 Bridges

- 625 **Engineering of railroads and roads**
 - .1 **Railroads**
 - .2 **Railroad rolling stock**
 - .3 **Inclined, mountain, ship railroads**
 - .4 **Local rail transit systems**
 - .5 **Cable and aerial railways**
 - .6 **Light rail transit systems**
 - .7 **Roads**
 - .8 **Artificial road surfaces**

- 627 **Hydraulic engineering**
 - .04 **Special topics of hydraulic engineering**
 - .1 **Inland waterways**
 - .2 **Harbors, ports, roadsteads**
 - .3 **Port facilities**
 - .4 **Flood control**
 - .5 **Reclamation, irrigation, related topics**
 - .7 **Underwater operations**
 - .8 **Dams and reservoirs**
 - .9 **Other hydraulic structures**

- 628 **Sanitary engineering**
 - .1 **Water supply**
 - .2 **Sewers**
 - .3 **Sewage treatment and disposal**
 - .4 **Waste technology, public toilets, street cleaning**
 - .5 **Pollution control technology and industrial sanitation engineering**
 - .7 **Sanitary engineering for rural and sparsely populated areas**
 - .9 **Other branches of sanitary and municipal engineering**

- 629 **Other branches of engineering**
 - .04 **Transportation engineering**
 - .1 **Aerospace engineering**
 - .2 **Motor land vehicles, cycles**
 - .3 **Air-cushion vehicles (Ground-effect machines, Hovercraft)**
 - .4 **Astronautics**
 - .8 **Automatic control engineering**

- .001 **Philosophy and theory**
- .001 1 **Systems**
 - Class design of engineering systems in 620.0042; class manufacturing systems in 670.11; class interdisciplinary works covering systems of agriculture, home economics, or management in addition to engineering in 601.1; class interdisciplinary works on systems in 003
- .001 13 **Computer modeling and simulation**
 - Class computer-aided design in 620.00420285
- .001 17 **Kinds of systems**
- .001 171 **Large-scale systems**
 - Class here systems engineering
- .001 5 **Scientific principles**
- [.001 53] **Physical principles in engineering**
 - Do not use; class in 621

- [.001 531] Mechanical principles in engineering
Do not use; class in 620.1
- [.001 534] Principles of sound and related vibrations in engineering
Do not use; class in 620.2
- .002 Miscellany
- [.002 87] Testing and measurement
Do not use; class in 620.0044
- [.002 88] Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class in 620.0046
- [.002 89] Safety measures
Do not use; class in 620.86
- .003 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances
- .004 Design, testing, measurement, quality, maintenance, repair
- .004 2 Engineering design
- .004 202 85 Computer applications
Class here computer-aided design (CAD)
Class comprehensive works on computer-aided design
and computer-aided manufacturing (CAD/CAM) in
670.285
- .004 4 Testing and measurement
Including inspection, simulation
Class interdisciplinary works on measurement in 530.8
- .004 5 Quality
Including interchangeability, maintainability, precision
Class testing and measurement for quality in 620.0044; class
maintenance in 620.0046
- .004 52 Reliability
- .004 54 Durability
- .004 6 Maintenance and repair
Class here interdisciplinary works on maintenance and repair
*For maintenance and repair in a specific subject, see the subject,
plus notation 0288 from Table 1, e.g., clock and watch repair
681.110288*
- .005–.008 Standard subdivisions
- .009 History, geographic treatment, biography

- .009 1 Areas, regions, places in general
Class engineering to overcome problems of specific kinds of geographic environments in 620.41
- .009 2 Biography
Class biography of engineers known primarily as entrepreneurs in 338.76
- .009 9 Other parts of the world
- [.009 99] Treatment by extraterrestrial worlds
Do not use; class in 620.419

.1 Engineering mechanics and materials

Standard subdivisions are added for engineering mechanics and materials together, for engineering mechanics alone

Class here applied mechanics

SUMMARY

620.100 1–.100 9	Standard subdivisions
.103–.107	Engineering mechanics (Applied mechanics)
.11	Engineering materials
.12	Wood
.13	Masonry materials
.14	Ceramic and allied materials
.16	Metals
.17	Ferrous metals
.18	Nonferrous metals
.19	Other engineering materials

.100 1–.100 9 Standard subdivisions

> 620.103–620.107 Engineering mechanics (Applied mechanics)

Class comprehensive works in 620.1

For fine particle technology, see 620.43

See also 531 for mechanics as a subject in physics

.103 Applied statics

For applied solid statics, see 620.1053; for applied fluid statics, see 620.1063; for applied gas statics, see 620.1073

.104 Applied dynamics

For applied solid dynamics, see 620.1054; for applied fluid dynamics, see 620.1064; for applied gas dynamics, see 620.1074

.105 Applied solid mechanics

Class structural theory in 624.17

For mechanical vibration, see 620.3

See also 621.811 for physical principles of machinery

- .105 3 Statics
- .105 4 Dynamics
- .106 Applied fluid mechanics
- Class here applied hydromechanics, comprehensive works on fluid-power technology
- For applied gas mechanics, see 620.107; for steam engineering, see 621.1; for hydraulic-power technology, see 621.2; for hydraulic engineering, see 627*
- .106 3 Statics
- .106 4 Dynamics
- Including cavitation, pressure surge, water hammer
- Class here flow
- See also 621.4022 for convective transport, heat convection*
- .107 Applied gas mechanics
- Class here applied aeromechanics
- For steam engineering, see 621.1; for pneumatic and vacuum technology, see 621.5; for aeromechanics of flight, see 629.1323; for air-conditioning engineering, see 697.93*
- .107 3 Statics
- .107 4 Dynamics
- .11 Engineering materials
- Class comprehensive works on materials, manufacture of materials in 670
- For specific kinds of materials, see 620.12–620.19*
- .110 287 Testing and measurement
- Do not use for nondestructive testing; class in 620.1127
- .112 Properties of materials and nondestructive testing
- Standard subdivisions are added for properties of materials and nondestructive testing together, for properties of materials alone
- Class here failure, resistance, strength of materials
- Class properties and nondestructive testing of porous, organic, composite materials in 620.116–620.118
-
- 620.112 1–620.112 6 Resistance to specific forces
- Class comprehensive works in 620.112
- .112 1 Resistance to thermal forces
- Class resistance to thermal radiation in 620.11228
- See also 620.11296 for thermal properties*

- .112 15 Changes in temperature
- .112 16 Low temperatures
Including cryogenic temperatures
- .112 17 High temperatures
- .112 2 Resistance to decay, decomposition, deterioration
Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
Physicochemical actions not basically thermal or mechanical
Including action of pests
- .112 23 Biodegradation, corrosion, weathering
Including rot, rust
- .112 28 Resistance to radiation
- .112 3 Resistance to mechanical deformation (Mechanics of materials)
For resistance to specific mechanical stresses, see 620.1124; for resistance to fracture, see 620.1126
- .112 302 87 Testing and measurement
Including strain gauges
- .112 32 Temporary deformation (Elasticity)
Including elastic limit
- .112 33 Permanent deformation (Plasticity)
Including creep, plastic flow
For properties affecting permanent deformation, see 620.1125
- .112 4 Resistance to specific mechanical stresses
Class resistance to change of form, regardless of stress, in 620.1125;
class resistance to fracture, regardless of stress, in 620.1126
- .112 41 Tension
- .112 42 Compression
- .112 43 Torsion
- .112 44 Flexure
- .112 45 Shearing
- .112 48 Vibrations
- .112 5 Properties affecting permanent deformation
Including impact strength, rigidity, shock resistance; ductility, malleability

- .112 6 Resistance to fracture (Fracture mechanics)
Including brittleness, hardness
Class here crack resistance, resistance to penetration and breaking;
fatigue; fatigue, fracture, rupture strength
- .112 7 Nondestructive testing
- .112 72 Radiographic testing
Class here X-ray testing
- .112 73 Tracer testing
- .112 74 Ultrasonic testing
- .112 78 Magnetic testing
- .112 9 Other properties
- .112 92 Mechanical properties
Including adhesiveness, roughness, texture; friction and wear
resistance
Class comprehensive works on friction in 621.89
See also 620.44 for surface technology
- .112 94 Acoustical properties
- .112 95 Optical properties
Including luminescence, photoelasticity, refractivity
- .112 96 Thermal properties
Including heat conductivity
See also 620.1121 for resistance to thermal forces
- .112 97 Electrical, electronic, magnetic properties
- .112 972 Semiconductivity
- .112 973 Superconductivity
- .112 99 Microphysical properties
Including crystallographic and molecular properties;
microstructure
For electronic properties, see 620.11297

620.115–620.118 Nanostructured, porous, organic, composite materials

Class comprehensive works in 620.11

*For a specific kind of nanostructured, porous, organic, composite material,
see 620.12–620.19*

.115 *Nanostructured materials
 Class nanoporous materials in 620.116; class nanostructured organic materials in 620.117; class nanostructured composite materials in 620.118

.116 *Porous materials
 Including nanoporous materials
 Class porous organic materials in 620.117; class porous composite materials in 620.118

.117 *Organic materials
 Class organic composite materials in 620.118

.118 *Composite materials
 For a specific composite material, see the predominant component in 620.12–620.19, e.g., reinforced concrete 620.137

> 620.12–620.19 Specific kinds of materials

 Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

 0287 Testing and measurement
 Do not use for nondestructive testing; class in 7

 1–9 Specific properties and nondestructive testing
 Add the numbers following 620.112 in 620.1121–620.1129, e.g., nondestructive testing 7

 Class comprehensive works in 620.11. Class manufacturing and chemical properties of a specific kind of material with the material, e.g., wood 674

For porous, organic, composite materials, see 620.116–620.118

.12 *Wood
 Including laminated wood

.13 Masonry materials
 For brick, terra-cotta, tile, see 620.142

.130 287 Testing and measurement
 Do not use for nondestructive testing; class in 620.130427

.130 4 Special topics of masonry materials

.130 42 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.132 *Natural stones

.135 *Cement
 Class here masonry adhesives

*Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19

- .136 *Concrete
 For reinforced and prestressed concrete, see 620.137; for concrete blocks, see 620.139
- .137 *Reinforced and prestressed concrete
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .139 Artificial stones
 Including cinder and concrete blocks
- .139 028 7 Testing and measurement
 Do not use for nondestructive testing; class in 620.1390427
- .139 04 Special topics of artificial stones
- .139 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing
- .14 Ceramic and allied materials
 Standard subdivisions are added for ceramic and allied materials together, for ceramic materials alone
 Class masonry materials in 620.13
- .140 287 Testing and measurement
 Do not use for nondestructive testing; class in 620.140427
- .140 4 Special topics of ceramic and allied materials
- .140 42 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing
- .142 Brick, terra-cotta, tile
- .143 *Refractory materials
 Including fireclays
 Class refractory metals in 620.16
 For asbestos, see 620.195
- .144 *Glass
 Including fiber glass
- .146 Enamel and porcelain
- .16 *Metals
 Class here alloys
 For ferrous metals, see 620.17; for nonferrous metals, see 620.18
- .17 *Ferrous metals
 Class here iron, steel

- .18 Nonferrous metals
 Class here nonferrous alloys
- .180 287 Testing and measurement
 Do not use for nondestructive testing; class in 620.180427
- .180 4 Special topics of nonferrous metals
- .180 42 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing
- .182 *Copper
 Class here brass, Muntz metal; bronze, gunmetal; copper-aluminum alloys; copper-beryllium alloys
- .183 *Lead
- .184 Zinc and cadmium
- .184 2 *Zinc
 For brass, Muntz metal, see 620.182
- .184 6 *Cadmium
- .185 *Tin
 For bronze, gunmetal, see 620.182
- .186 *Aluminum
 For copper-aluminum alloys, see 620.182
- .187 *Magnesium
- .188 *Nickel
- .189 Other metals
- .189 1 *Mercury
- .189 2 Precious, rare-earth, actinide-series metals
 Add to base number 620.1892 the numbers following 669.2 in 669.22–669.29, e.g., uranium 620.1892931
- .189 3 Metals used in ferroalloys
 For nickel, see 620.188
- .189 302 87 Testing and measurement
 Do not use for nondestructive testing; class in 620.18930427
- .189 304 Special topics of metals used in ferroalloys
- .189 304 2 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing
- .189 32 Titanium, manganese, vanadium
- .189 322 *Titanium

*Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19

- .193 Nonmetallic elements
 Including carbon, silicon
- .193 028 7 Testing and measurement
 Do not use for nondestructive testing; class in 620.1930427
- .193 04 Special topics of nonmetallic elements
- .193 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing
- .194 *Elastomers
 Class here rubber
- .195 Insulating materials
 Including asbestos, corkboard, kapok, rock wool; dielectric materials
- .195 028 7 Testing and measurement
 Do not use for nondestructive testing; class in 620.1950427
- .195 04 Special topics of insulating materials
- .195 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing
- .196 Bituminous materials
 Including asphalt, tar
- .196 028 7 Testing and measurement
 Do not use for nondestructive testing; class in 620.1960427
- .196 04 Special topics of bituminous materials
- .196 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing
- .197 Organic fibrous materials
 Including paper, paperboard, rope, textiles
- .197 028 7 Testing and measurement
 Do not use for nondestructive testing; class in 620.1970427
- .197 04 Special topics of organic fibrous materials
- .197 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing
- .198 Other natural and synthetic minerals
 Including corundum, feldspar, gems, graphite, oil, quartz, water
- .199 Adhesives and sealants
 Class here comprehensive works on laminating materials
 *For masonry adhesives, see 620.135; for plastic laminating materials,
 see 620.1923*

- .199 028 7 Testing and measurement
 Do not use for nondestructive testing; class in 620.1990427
- .199 04 Special topics of adhesives and sealants
- .199 042 *Specific properties and nondestructive testing

.2 Sound and related vibrations

Standard subdivisions are added for sound and related vibrations together, for sound alone

Class here applied acoustics (acoustical engineering)

See also 534 for physics of sound

> **620.21–620.25 Applied acoustics (Acoustical engineering)**

Class electroacoustical communications in 621.3828; class engineering works on architectural acoustics in 690.2; class comprehensive works in 620.2; class interdisciplinary works on architectural acoustics in 729.29

- .21 General topics of applied acoustics
 Including reflection and refraction of sound
- .23 Noise and countermeasures
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .25 Acoustics in specific physical environments
 Including underwater acoustics
- .28 Applied subsonics and ultrasonics
 For ultrasonic testing of materials, see 620.11274

.3 Mechanical vibration

Class effects of vibrations on materials in 620.11248

For sound and related vibrations, see 620.2

- .31 Generation and transmission
- .37 Effects and countermeasures
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.4 Engineering for specific kinds of geographic environments, fine particle and remote control technology, surface engineering

- .41 Engineering for specific kinds of geographic environments

Class a specific technology with the technology, plus notation 091 from Table 1 when the environment is not inherent in the subject, e.g., ergonomics for deserts 620.8209154, nautical engineering 623.8

.411–.417 Specific kinds of terrestrial environments
 Add to base number 620.41 the numbers following —1 in notation
 11–17 from Table 2, e.g., ocean engineering 620.4162; however, for
 engineering of estuaries, see 627.124

 Class hydraulic engineering in 627

.419 Extraterrestrial environments

.43 Fine particle technology

 Including dust, liquid particle technology

 Class here powder technology

.44 Surface engineering

.46 Remote control and telecontrol

 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.5 Nanotechnology

 Technology that manipulates matter on the atomic or molecular scale

 Class a specific application of nanotechnology with the technology, e.g.,
 nanostructured materials 620.115, nanotechnology used in manufacturing
 thin-film circuits 621.3815

.8 Human factors and safety engineering

 Class here work environment engineering

 Class a specific application of human factors engineering with the application,
 e.g., engineering of the home kitchen work environment 643.3

See also 628 for environmental protection engineering

.82 Human factors engineering

 Variant names: biotechnology, design anthropometry, ergonomics

.86 Safety engineering

 Class interdisciplinary works on safety in 363.1

*For safety engineering of a specific technology, see the technology,
 plus notation 0289 from Table 1, e.g., safety in machine engineering
 621.80289*

621 Applied physics

 Class here mechanical engineering

 Class a specific application of applied physics with the application, e.g., military
 engineering 623

For engineering mechanics, see 620.1; for applied acoustics, see 620.2

SUMMARY

- 621.04 **Special topics of applied physics**
 .1 **Steam engineering**
 .2 **Hydraulic-power technology**
 .3 **Electrical, magnetic, optical, communications, computer engineering;**
 electronics, lighting
 .4 **Prime movers and heat engineering**
 .5 **Pneumatic, vacuum, low-temperature technologies**
 .6 **Blowers, fans, pumps**
 .8 **Machine engineering**
 .9 **Tools**

.04 Special topics of applied physics

.042 Energy engineering

Class here engineering of alternative and renewable energy sources

Class interdisciplinary works on energy in 333.79

.044 Plasma engineering

Class interdisciplinary works on plasma in 530.44

> **621.1–621.2 Fluid-power technologies**

Class comprehensive works in 620.106

.1 **Steam engineering**

> 621.15–621.16 Specific kinds of steam engines

Class comprehensive works in 621.1

For marine steam engines, see 623.8722; for steam locomotives, see 625.261; for steam tractors and rollers, see 629.2292

.15 Portable engines

Class comprehensive works on specific structural types of steam engines in 621.16

.16 Stationary engines

Class here comprehensive works on specific structural types of steam engines

For portable engines of specific structural types, see 621.15

.164 Reciprocating engines

.165 Turbines

.18 Generating and transmitting steam

Standard subdivisions are added for generating and transmitting steam together, for generating steam alone

Class generating steam in specific kinds of steam engines in 621.15–621.16; class generating steam in central stations in 621.19

-
- > 621.182–621.183 Generating steam
 Class comprehensive works in 621.18
- .182 Fuels
 - .183 Boilers and boiler furnaces
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including chimneys, mechanical stokers
 - .185 Transmitting steam
 Including insulation, pressure regulators, safety valves, steam pipes
 - .19 Central stations
 - .194 Boiler operations (Boiler-house practices)
 - .197 Accessories
 Including condensers, cooling towers, superheaters
 - .199 Cogeneration of electric power and heat
 Class interdisciplinary works on cogeneration of electricity and heat in
 333.793
- .2 Hydraulic-power technology**
 Class hydraulic control in 629.8042
- .204 Special topics of hydraulic-power technology
 - .204 2 Specific liquids
 - [.204 201–.204 209] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 621.201–621.209
 - .204 22 Water
 - .204 24 Hydraulic fluids
 Other than water
 - .21 Water mills
 Class here comprehensive works on waterwheels
For waterwheels used as water-lifting devices, see 621.69
 - .24 Turbines
 - .25 Pumps and accumulators
 - .252 Pumps
 Class comprehensive works on pumps in 621.69
 - .254 Accumulators

.26 Hydraulic transmission

Class specific liquids in hydraulic transmission in 621.2042

For rams, see 621.27

.27 Rams

.3 Electrical, magnetic, optical, communications, computer engineering; electronics, lighting

Standard subdivisions are added for electromagnetic engineering, for combined electrical and electronic engineering, for electrical engineering alone

See also 537 for physics of electricity and electromagnetism

SUMMARY**621.302 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials**

.31 Generation, modification, storage, transmission of electric power

.32 Lighting

.33 Electric power transmission for railroads

.34 Magnetic engineering

.35 Superconductivity

.36 Optical engineering

.37 Testing and measurement of electrical quantities

.38 Electronics, communications engineering

.39 Computer engineering

.302 84 Apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use for electrical equipment; class in 621.31042

.302 87 Testing and measurement

Do not use for electrical testing and measurement; class in 621.37

.31 Generation, modification, storage, transmission of electric power

Class here alternating current

SUMMARY**621.310 4 Special topics of generation, modification, storage, transmission of electric power**

.312 Generation, modification, storage

.313 Generating machinery and converters

.314 Transformers

.315 Capacitors (Condensers)

.316 Details and parts of generators

.317 Control devices

.319 Transmission

.310 4 Special topics of generation, modification, storage, transmission of electric power

- .310 42 Electrical machinery and equipment
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including eddy currents, shaft currents
 Class a specific application with the application, e.g., refrigerators 621.57
 For electric motors, see 621.46
- .312 Generation, modification, storage
 For equipment for generation, modification, control, see 621.313–621.317
- .312 1 Generation
 Class here central and auxiliary power plants, mechanical generation
 For direct energy conversion, see 621.3124
- .312 13 Specific kinds of mechanical generation
- [.312 130 1–.312 130 9] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 621.312101–621.312109
- .312 132 Steam-powered generation
 Class here comprehensive works on generation from fossil fuels
 For generation by internal-combustion engines, see 621.312133; for nuclear steam-powered generation of electricity, see 621.483
- .312 133 Generation by internal-combustion engines
- .312 134 Hydroelectric generation
 Including tidal generation
 Class engineering of dams for hydroelectric power in 627.8
- .312 136 Wind-powered generation
- .312 4 Direct energy conversion
- .312 42 Electrochemical energy conversion
 Class here batteries
 Class comprehensive works on electrochemical engineering in 660.297
 For solar batteries, see 621.31244
- .312 423 Primary batteries
- .312 424 Secondary batteries (Storage batteries)
- .312 429 Fuel cells

- .312 43 Thermoelectric generation
 Including radioisotope thermoelectric generation; thermionic converters
 Class generation of electricity from solar radiation in 621.31244
- .312 44 Generation of electricity from solar radiation
 Class here photovoltaic generation, use of solar batteries and cells
- .312 45 Magnetohydrodynamic generation
- .312 6 Modification and storage
 Including operation of transformer, converter substations
For storage of electrical energy by chemical methods, see 621.312424

> 621.313–621.317 Machinery and equipment for generation, modification, control

Class comprehensive works in 621.31042

- .313 Generating machinery and converters
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here comprehensive works on generators and motors
For details and parts of generators, see 621.316; for electric motors, see 621.46
- .313 2 Direct-current machinery
 Including converters to alternating current, dynamos
- .313 3 Alternating-current machinery
 Class here synchronous machinery
For synchronous generators, see 621.3134; for synchronous converters to direct current, see 621.3135; for asynchronous machinery, see 621.3136
- .313 4 Synchronous generators
- .313 5 Synchronous converters to direct current
For rectifiers, see 621.3137
- .313 6 Asynchronous machinery
For rectifiers, see 621.3137
- .313 7 Rectifiers
- .314 Transformers
- .315 Capacitors (Condensers)

- .316 Details and parts of generators
 Including armatures, brushes, commutators, contactors, electromagnets
 *For a specific part not provided for here, see the part, e.g.,
 transformers 621.314*
- .317 Control devices
 Including circuit breakers, fuses, grounding devices, lightning arresters,
 relays, rheostats
 Class here power electronics, switching equipment
 Class switches at service end of line in 621.31924
- .319 Transmission
 Including power failure
 Class here electrification
 Class interdisciplinary works on electrification, on power failure in
 333.7932
 For electric power transmission for railroads, see 621.33
- [.319 011] Systems
 Do not use; class in 621.3191
- .319 1 Systems
 Class circuitry and lines in 621.3192
- .319 12 Direct-current systems
- .319 13 Alternating-current systems
 Including high-tension systems
- .319 15 Composite current systems
 Direct and alternating currents combined
- .319 2 Networks (Circuitry and lines)
- .319 21 Physical phenomena in circuits
 Including heat losses in lines, transients
- .319 22 Overhead lines
- .319 23 Underground lines
- .319 24 Apparatus at service end of line
 Including extension cords, outlets, sockets, switches
 Class here interior wiring
 For exterior wiring, see 621.31925
- .319 25 Exterior wiring

- .319 3 Equipment and components
 Class equipment for generation, modification, control in
 621.313–621.317; class use of equipment and components in lines
 and circuitry in 621.3192
- .319 33 Wires
- .319 34 Cables
- .319 37 Insulators
 Class here insulation
- .32 Lighting
 Class here electric lighting
- .321 Principles of lighting
 Class principles of specific kinds of lighting with the kind, e.g.,
 principles of residential lighting 621.3228
- .321 1 Layouts, calculations, photometry
- .321 4 Floodlighting
 Class here directed lighting
 Class exterior floodlighting in 621.3229
- .322 Lighting in specific situations
 Class here interior lighting
 Class specific forms of lighting in 621.323–621.327
 For public lighting, see 628.95; for lighting of airports, see 629.1365
- .322 01–.322 09 Standard subdivisions for interior lighting
 Do not use for comprehensive works on lighting in specific
 situations; class in 621.3201–621.3209
- .322 5–.322 8 Interior lighting for specific kinds of buildings
 Add to base number 621.322 the numbers following 72 in 725–728,
 e.g., lighting for office buildings 621.322523
- .322 9 Exterior lighting
 Including advertising and display lighting, garden and patio lighting
-
- > 621.323–621.327 Specific forms of lighting
 Class comprehensive works in 621.32
- .323 Nonelectrical lighting
 Including candles, oil-burning devices, torches
 For gas lighting, see 621.324
- .324 Gas lighting

-
- > 621.325–621.327 Electric lighting
- Class comprehensive works in 621.32
- .325 Arc lighting
- Electric-discharge lighting in which light is produced by consumable electrodes or by vapors emanating from consumable electrodes
- .326 Incandescent lighting
- .327 Vapor lighting (Luminous-tube lighting)
- .327 3 Fluorescent lighting
- .327 4 Mercury-vapor lighting
- .327 5 Neon lighting
- .327 6 Sodium-vapor lighting
- .33 Electric power transmission for railroads
- .34 Magnetic engineering
- Class here artificial magnets, electromagnets
- Class electromagnets as parts of generators in 621.316; class electromagnets as parts of electric motors in 621.46; class comprehensive works on electromagnetic technology in 621.3
- See also 538 for physics of magnetism; also 538.4 for natural magnets*
- .35 Superconductivity
- Class here superconductors
- Class superconductor circuits in 621.3815
- .36 Optical engineering
- Class here applied optics; works on infrared and ultraviolet technology together
- Class manufacture of optical instruments in 681.4; class interdisciplinary works on photography in 770
- For lighting, see 621.32*
- See also 535 for optics and light as subjects in physics; also 620.11295 for optical properties of engineering materials*
- .361 Spectroscopy
-
- > 621.362–621.364 Infrared and ultraviolet technology
- Class infrared and ultraviolet spectroscopy in 621.361; class infrared and ultraviolet photography in 621.3672; class comprehensive works in 621.36
- .362 Infrared technology
- .364 Ultraviolet technology

- .365 Photonics
- .366 Lasers
 For laser communications, see 621.3827
- .366 1 Solid-state lasers
- .366 2 Fluid-state lasers
 For gaseous-state lasers, see 621.3663
- .366 3 Gaseous-state lasers
- .366 4 Chemical and dye lasers
- .367 Technological photography and photo-optics
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including spectrography, stroboscopic photography
 Class here image processing, optical data processing
 *For photoelectric and photoelectronic devices, see 621.381542; for
 optical communications, see 621.3827*
 See Manual at 006.37 vs. 006.42, 621.367, 621.391, 621.399
- .367 2 Infrared and ultraviolet photography
- .367 3 Radiography (Gamma-ray and X-ray photography)
- .367 5 Holography
- .367 8 Remote sensing technology
 For photogrammetry, see 526.982
- .369 Other branches of applied optics
- .369 2 Fiber optics
 See also 621.381045 for optoelectronics
- .369 3 Integrated optics
- .369 4 Nonlinear optics
- .37 Testing and measurement of electrical quantities
 Instruments and their use
 *For testing and measurement of a specific apparatus, part, or function,
 see the apparatus, part, or function, plus notation 0287 from Table 1,
 e.g., testing overhead lines 621.319220287*
- .372 Units and standards of measurement
 Including calibration of electrical instruments
- .373 Recording meters
 Class meters recording specific electrical quantities in 621.374
- .374 Instruments for measuring specific electrical quantities

- [.374 01–.374 09] Standard subdivisions
Do not use; class in 621.3701–621.3709
- .374 2 Instruments for measuring capacitance, inductance, resistance
Including bridges, ohmmeters, resistance boxes, shunts;
comprehensive works on electrical bridges (bridge circuits)
For frequency bridges, see 621.3747
- .374 3 Instruments for measuring potential
Including electrometers, potentiometers, voltage detectors, voltmeters
- .374 4 Instruments for measuring current
Including ammeters, ampere-hour meters, coulometers,
galvanometers, milliammeters, voltmeters
- .374 5 Instruments for measuring energy
Including electric meters, watt-hour meters
- .374 6 Instruments for measuring power
Including electrodynamicometers, volt-ammeters, wattmeters
- .374 7 Instruments for measuring frequency
Including frequency bridges, oscillographs
Class electric phasemeters in 621.3749
- .374 9 Instruments for measuring phase
Including power-factor meters, synchroscopes
- .38 Electronics, communications engineering
Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 621.38 in the number coming last, e.g., antennas for amateur radio 621.38416 (*not* 621.384135)

SUMMARY

- | | |
|---------|---|
| 621.381 | Electronics |
| .382 | Communications engineering |
| .383 | Telegraphy |
| .384 | Radio and radar |
| .385 | Telephony |
| .386 | Telephone terminal equipment |
| .387 | Telephone transmission and nonterminal equipment |
| .388 | Television |
| .389 | Security, sound recording, related systems |
- .381 Electronics

Class here microelectronics, molecular electronics

Class signal processing in 621.3822; class electronic interference and noise in 621.38224. Class a specific application of electronics with the application, e.g., laser technology 621.366

See also 537.5 for physics of electronics

SUMMARY

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 621.381 04
.381 3
.381 5 | Special topics of electronics
Microwave electronics
Components and circuits |
| .381 04 | Special topics of electronics |
| .381 044 | Power and energy in electronic systems |
| .381 045 | Optoelectronics

<i>See also 621.3678 for remote sensing technology; also 621.3692 for fiber optics</i> |
| .381 046 | Packaging |
| .381 3 | Microwave electronics |
| .381 31 | Wave propagation and transmission

Including interference |
| .381 32 | Circuits

Add to base number 621.38132 the numbers following 621.38153 in 621.381532–621.381537, e.g., amplifiers 621.381325 |
| .381 33 | Components and devices

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class use of components in specific circuits in 621.38132 |
| .381 331 | Wave guides |
| .381 332 | Cavity resonators |
| .381 333 | Klystrons |
| .381 334 | Magnetrons |
| .381 335 | Traveling-wave tubes |
| .381 336 | Masers |
| .381 5 | Components and circuits

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here analog, digital, integrated, microelectronic, semiconductor, superconductor, thin-film circuits; circuits and components common to electronics and communications engineering

Class components and circuits of a specific branch of communications engineering in 621.383–621.389; class very large scale integration in 621.395

<i>For microwave components and circuits, see 621.3813</i> |
| [.381 502 87] | Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 621.381548 |

-
- > 621.381 51–621.381 52 Components
- Class use of components in specific circuits in 621.38153; class devices not intrinsic to circuits in 621.38154; class analog-to-digital and digital-to-analog converters in 621.38159; class comprehensive works in 621.3815
- .381 51 Electronic tubes
- .381 512 Vacuum tubes
- .381 513 Gas tubes
- .381 52 Semiconductors
- Class here crystal devices, miniaturization, optoelectronic devices, thin-film technology
- .381 522 Diodes
- Including junction, light-emitting, tunnel (Esaki), Zener diodes; varactors
- .381 528 Transistors and thyristors
- Standard subdivisions are added for transistors and thyristors together, for transistors alone
- Including phototransistors
- Class here bipolar transistors
- .381 528 2 Junction transistors
- .381 528 4 Field-effect transistors
- .381 528 7 Thyristors
- .381 53 Printed circuits and circuits for specific functions
- .381 531 Printed circuits
- Including microlithography
- Class printed circuits for specific functions in 621.381532–621.381537
-
- > 621.381 532–621.381 537 Circuits for specific functions
- Class comprehensive works in 621.3815
- .381 532 Converters, filters, interference eliminators
- .381 532 2 Converters (Rectifiers and inverters)
- .381 532 4 Filters
- .381 533 Oscillators
- Class use of oscillators in pulse circuits in 621.381534

- .381 534 Pulse circuits
 Including counting circuits, pulse generators and processes
 Class modulation and demodulation (detection) of pulses in
 621.3815365
- .381 535 Amplifiers and feedback circuits
 Standard subdivisions are added for amplifiers and feedback
 circuits together, for amplifiers alone
 Class operational amplifiers in 621.395
- .381 536 Modulators and demodulators (detectors)
 Class here modulation, demodulation (detection)
- .381 536 2 Amplitude
 Including attenuators
- .381 536 3 Frequency
 See also 621.3815486 for frequency synthesizers
- .381 536 4 Phase
 Including phase-locked loops
- .381 536 5 Pulse
- .381 537 Switching, control, trigger circuits, relays
- .381 537 2 Switching theory
 Class switching theory in logic circuit design in 621.395
- .381 54 Supplementary components
 Devices not intrinsic to circuits
 Class here electronic instrumentation (applications of electronics)
 Class instrumentation in a specific field with the field, e.g.,
 electronic control 629.89
- .381 542 Photoelectric and photoelectronic components
 Including electric eyes; photoconductive, photoemissive,
 photovoltaic cells; photomultipliers; phototubes
 *See also 621.367 for image processing; also 621.381045 for
 optoelectronics*
- .381 542 2 Video display components
 Including liquid crystal displays

- .381 548 Testing and measuring components
- Including bridges (bridge circuits); signal, square-wave, sweep generators; thermistors
- Class here testing and measuring electronic circuits and components, instruments for testing and measuring electronic signals
- Class testing and measuring a specific circuit or component with the circuit or component, plus notation 0287 from Table 1, e.g., testing amplifiers 621.3815350287
- .381 548 3 Oscilloscopes
- Including oscillographs
- .381 548 6 Frequency synthesizers
- .381 59 Analog-to-digital and digital-to-analog converters
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class analog-to-digital and digital-to-analog converters in data communications engineering in 621.39814
- .382 Communications engineering
- Class here analog, digital, electronic communications; telecommunications; comprehensive works on digital data and telecommunications engineering
- Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 621.382 in the number coming last, e.g., signal processing in acoustical communications 621.3828 (*not* 621.3822)
- Class comprehensive works on wireless communication in 621.384.
Class a component or circuit common to electronics and communications engineering with the component or circuit in 621.3815, e.g., amplifiers 621.381535, switching circuits 621.381537
- For specific communications systems, see 621.383–621.389; for data communications engineering, see 621.3981*
- See Manual at 004.6 vs. 621.382, 621.3981*
- [.382 028 546 2] Interfacing and communications protocols (standards)
- Do not use; class in 621.38212
- [.382 028 546 5] Communications network architecture
- Do not use; class in 621.38215
- [.382 028 546 6] Data transmission modes and data switching methods
- Do not use; class in 621.38216
- .382 1 Communications networks
- For communications networks based on a specific technology, see the technology, e.g., telephone networks 621.385*

- .382 12 Communications protocols (Communications standards)
 [.382 120 218] Standards
 Do not use; class in 621.38212
- .382 15 Communications network architecture
 Class here systems analysis, design, topology (configuration) of
 communications networks
- .382 16 Data transmission modes and data switching methods
 Including circuit and packet switching, multiplexing,
 asynchronous and synchronous transfer modes
- .382 2 Signal processing
 Class here information theory
 Class interdisciplinary works on information theory in 003.54
- .382 23 Signal analysis and theory
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in
 heading
- .382 24 Interference and noise
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in
 heading
 Class here electronic interference and noise
- .382 3 Miscellaneous topics
 Limited to studios, transmission facilities, and the topics provided for
 below
- .382 32 Power supply in communications systems
- .382 34 Recording devices
 Including discs, tapes
 *For a recording device of a specific communication system,
 see the device in 621.383–621.389, e.g., video recorders
 621.38833, sound recorders 621.38932*
- .382 35 Facsimile transmission
 By wire or radio wave
 Class here telefacsimile
- .382 38 Space communications
 See also 621.3825 for satellite communication
- .382 4 Antennas and propagation
- .382 5 Relay communication
 Class here satellite communication
- .382 54 Antennas and propagation

- .382 7 Optical communications
 Transmission of sound, visual images, other information by light
 Including optical disc technology
 Class here laser communications
 Class optoacoustic communications in 621.3828
- .382 75 Optical-fiber communication
 Class here guided-light communication
- .382 8 Acoustical communications
 Audio systems covering broadcasting and transmission as well as
 recording and reproduction of sound
 Including acousto-optical communications
 Class here electroacoustical communications
 Class audio systems limited to recording and reproduction of sound in
 621.3893
- .382 84 Specific devices
 Including microphones, speakers
 Class antennas in 621.3824

> 621.383–621.389 Specific communications systems

Class comprehensive works in 621.382

.383 Telegraphy

For radiotelegraphy, see 621.3842

.384 Radio and radar

Including digital audio broadcasting

Standard subdivisions are added for radio and radar together, for radio
 alone

Class here broadcasting stations; comprehensive engineering works on
 radio and television, on wireless communication

Class interdisciplinary works on radio and television in 384.5; class
 interdisciplinary works on broadcasting stations in 384.5453

For satellite communication, see 621.3825; for television, see 621.388

.384 028 8 Maintenance and repair

Class maintenance and repair of radio receiving sets in
 621.384187

> 621.384 1–621.384 5 Radio

Class comprehensive works in 621.384

- .384 1 Specific topics in general radio
- [.384 101--384 109] Standard subdivision
- Do not use; class in 621.38401--621.38409
- .384 11 Wave propagation and transmission
- Including interference
- See also 384.54524 for allocation of frequencies*
- .384 12 Circuits
- Including amplifiers, filters, interference eliminators, modulation circuits, oscillators, rectifiers
- Class a specific application of circuits with the application, e.g., receiving set circuits 621.38418
- .384 13 Components and devices
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .384 131 Transmitters
- .384 132 Tubes
- Class use of tubes in specific circuits in 621.38412
- .384 133 Miscellaneous supplementary devices
- Limited to condensers (capacitors), grounding devices, inductors, microphones, resistors, testing equipment
- .384 134 Semiconductor devices
- Class use of semiconductor devices in specific circuits in 621.38412
- .384 135 Antennas
- .384 15 Systems by wave type, satellite and relay systems
- Standard subdivisions are added for systems by wave type, satellite and relay systems together; for systems by wave type alone
-
- > 621.384 151--621.384 153 Systems by wave type
- Class relay and satellite systems of a specific wave type in 621.384156; class comprehensive works in 621.38415
- .384 151 Shortwave systems
- Including ultrahigh frequency (UHF), very-high-frequency (VHF) systems
- For frequency-modulation systems, see 621.384152*
- .384 152 Frequency-modulation (FM) systems

- .384 153 Long-wave systems
Including amplitude modulation (AM), single-sideband, very-low-frequency (VLF) systems
- .384 156 Relay and satellite systems
- .384 16 Amateur radio (Ham radio)
Limited to long distance communication
Class here comprehensive works on amateur and citizens band radio
For citizens band radio, see 621.38454
- .384 18 Radio receiving sets
- [.384 180 288] Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class in 621.384187
- .384 187 Maintenance and repair
- .384 19 Special developments
- .384 191 Direction and position finding
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
Including loran, radio beacons, radio compasses
Class here GPS receivers
Identification and locating relocated to 621.384192; real-time locating systems (RTLS) relocated to 621.384192; radio frequency identification (RFID) systems relocated to 621.384192
- .384 192 Identification and locating [*formerly* 621.384191]
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
Including radio frequency identification (RFID) systems [*formerly* 621.384191]
Class here real-time locating systems (RTLS) [*formerly* 621.384191]; automatic identification and data capture (AIDC)
- .384 196 Radio control
Variant names: remote control, telecontrol
- .384 197 Space communication
- .384 2 Radiotelegraphy

- .384 5 Radiotelephony
 Including portable radios, walkie-talkies
 Class here mobile radio stations, comprehensive works on radio transmission in telephony
For radio relays, see 621.38782
- .384 54 Citizens band radio
 Limited to local communication (ca. 10 miles or 15 kilometers)
 Class comprehensive works on amateur and citizens band radio in 621.38416
- .384 56 Cellular telephone systems
 Variant names: cellular radio, portable telephone systems
- .384 8 Radar
- .384 83 Specific instruments and devices
 Including antennas
- .384 85 Systems
 Including continuous, monopulse, pulse-modulated systems
- .385 Telephony
 Class here telephone systems based on wires, cables, lasers, optical fibers; Internet telephony
 Class cellular telephone systems in 621.38456; class data communications engineering in 621.3981; class interdisciplinary works on telephony in 384.6
For radiotelephony, see 621.3845; for telephone terminal equipment, see 621.386; for telephone transmission and nonterminal equipment, see 621.387
- .385 1 Network analysis
- .385 7 Automatic and semiautomatic switching systems
 Including direct distance dialing
- .386 Telephone terminal equipment
 Dialing, transmitting, receiving equipment
- .386 7 Telephone answering and message recording devices
- .386 9 Pay telephones
- .387 Telephone transmission and nonterminal equipment
 Including switching systems
- .387 8 Transmission
 Class comprehensive works on radio transmission in telephony in 621.3845

- .387 82 Long-distance systems
Including radio relays
- .387 83 Local systems
- .387 84 Transmission lines and cables
- .388 Television
Class here interactive television (TV programming with interactive content and/or enhancements, e.g., interactive program guides, personalized multi-camera angles, real-time voting, video-on-demand)
- .388 001 Philosophy and theory
- .388 002 Miscellany
- .388 002 88 Maintenance and repair
Class here maintenance and repair of broadcast and transmission equipment, of comprehensive works on television repair
For maintenance and repair of receiving sets, see 621.38887
- .388 003–.388 009 Standard subdivisions
- .388 02 Black-and-white television
- .388 04 Color television
- .388 06 High-definition television (HDTV)
- .388 07 Digital television
- .388 1 Wave propagation and transmission
Including interference
- .388 3 Components and devices
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .388 31 Transmitters
- .388 32 Semiconductors, transistors, tubes
- .388 33 Video recorders and video recordings
Standard subdivisions are added for video recorders and video recordings together, for video recorders alone
- [.388 330 288] Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class in 621.388337
- .388 332 Video recordings
Including cassettes, discs
- [.388 332 028 8] Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class in 621.388337

- .388 337 Maintenance and repair of video recorders and video recordings
- .388 34 Cameras and components
- .388 35 Antennas
- .388 5 Communication systems
- .388 53 Satellite television
- .388 57 Cable television
- .388 6 Stations
- .388 8 Television sets
- [.388 802 88] Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class in 621.38887
- .388 87 Maintenance and repair
- .389 Security, sound recording, related systems
- .389 2 Public address, security, related systems
Including paging systems, sirens
- .389 28 Security electronics
Including surveillance systems, e.g., electronic eavesdropping devices
Class here alarm systems
For fire alarms, see 628.9225
- .389 3 Sound recording and reproducing systems
Audio systems limited to recording and reproduction of sound
Class here digital audio engineering
Class telephone message recording in 621.3867; class comprehensive works on acoustical communications, on audio systems covering transmission as well as recording and reproduction in 621.3828
- .389 32 Recorders and recordings
Including compact discs
- .389 324 Tape recorders and recordings
Including cassettes
- .389 33 Reproducers
Including compact disc players, jukeboxes, phonographs
Class combination recorders-reproducers in 621.38932
- .389 332 High-fidelity systems (Hi-fi)
For stereophonic systems, see 621.389334

.389 334 Stereophonic systems
 Including quadraphonic systems

.389 5 Sonar

.389 7 Audiovisual engineering

.39 Computer engineering

Class here electronic digital computers, central processing units, computer reliability, general computer performance evaluation

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 621.39 in the number coming last, e.g., circuitry of computer internal storage 621.3973 (*not* 621.395)

Class selection and use of computer hardware, works treating both hardware and either programming or programs in 004. Class a specific application of computers with the application, e.g., use of computers to regulate processes automatically 629.895

See Manual at 004–006 vs. 621.39

[.390 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 621.392

.391 General works on specific types of computers

Including optical computers

Class here specific types of processors, e.g., multiprocessors

Class programmable calculators in 681.14

See Manual at 006.37 vs. 006.42, 621.367, 621.391, 621.399

> 621.391 1–621.391 6 Digital computers

Class comprehensive works in 621.39

See Manual at 004.11–004.16

.391 1 Supercomputers

.391 2 Mainframe computers

For supercomputers, see 621.3911

.391 4 Midrange computers

Class here minicomputers, server class computers

Class comprehensive works on midrange and personal computers in 621.3916

- .391 6 Personal computers
 Former heading: Microcomputers
 Class here specific types of personal computers; comprehensive works on midrange and personal computers
 For midrange computers, see 621.3914
- .391 67 Handheld computing devices
 Class here specific types of handheld computing devices
- .391 9 Analog and hybrid computers
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .392 Systems analysis and design, computer architecture
 Including hardware description languages
 See Manual at 004.21 vs. 004.22, 621.392
- .395 Circuitry
 Class here logic circuits, logic design of circuits, very large scale integration (VLSI)
- .397 Storage
- .397 3 Internal storage (Main memory)
 Class here random-access memory (RAM), read-only memory (ROM)
 Class CD-ROM (compact disc read-only memory) in 621.3976
- .397 32 Semiconductor memory
 Class here bipolar, metal-oxide-semiconductor (MOS), thin-film memory
- .397 6 External storage (Auxiliary storage)
 Including punched cards
- .397 63 Magnetic storage
 Including floppy disks, floppy disk drives; magnetic tapes, e.g., cartridges, cassettes, reel-to-reel tapes; tape drives
 Class here hard disks, hard disk drives; magnetic bubble memory
- .397 67 Optical storage
 Including CD-ROM (compact disc read-only memory), DVD, WORM (write once read many) discs and drives
 Class storage of pictorial data in optical storage devices in 621.367
- .397 68 Semiconductor storage
 Class here solid-state storage; flash drives, memory cards
- .398 Interfacing and communications devices, peripherals

- .398 1 Interfacing and communications devices
 Class here data communications engineering
 Class Internet telephony in 621.385
 See Manual at 004.6 vs. 621.382, 621.3981
- .398 14 Analog-to-digital and digital-to-analog converters
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including modems
- .398 4 Peripherals
 Class peripheral storage in 621.3976
 For peripherals combining input and output functions, see 621.3985; for input peripherals, see 621.3986; for output peripherals, see 621.3987
- .398 5 Peripherals combining input and output functions
 Class here computer terminals
 Class tape and disk devices in 621.3976
- .398 6 Input peripherals
 Including keyboards
- .398 7 Output peripherals
 Including monitors (video display screens), printers
 See also 621.3996 for computer graphics
- .399 Devices for special computer methods
 Including computer sound synthesis
 See Manual at 006.37 vs. 006.42, 621.367, 621.391, 621.399
- .399 3 Computer vision
- .399 4 Computer pattern recognition
- .399 6 Computer graphics
- .4 Prime movers and heat engineering**
 Standard subdivisions are added for prime movers and heat engineering together, for prime movers alone
 Class here engines, power plants, propulsion systems
 For steam engineering, see 621.1; for hydraulic-power technology, see 621.2

SUMMARY

- 621.400 1–.400 9 Standard subdivisions
 .402–.406 [Heat engineering and turbines]
 .42 Stirling engines and air motors
 .43 Internal-combustion engines
 .44 Geothermal engineering
 .45 Wind engines
 .46 Electric and related motors
 .47 Solar-energy engineering
 .48 Nuclear engineering
- .400 1–.400 9 Standard subdivisions
- .402 Heat engineering
- For low-temperature technology, see 621.56. For a kind of heat engineering, see the kind, e.g., geothermal engineering 621.44, heating buildings 697*
- See also 536 for physics of heat*
- .402 1 Thermodynamics
- .402 2 Heat transfer
- Including heat exchange
- .402 23 Conduction
- .402 25 Convection
- .402 27 Radiation
- .402 3 Fuels and combustion
- Class pollution by-products of combustion in 628.532
- .402 4 Insulation
- .402 5 Equipment
- Including furnaces, heat engines, heat exchangers, heat pumps
- Class solar furnaces in 621.477
- .402 8 Specific heat systems
- Not provided for elsewhere
- Including distribution and storage systems; electric heating
- Class a specific aspect of a specific heat system with the aspect, e.g., heat transfer in electric heating 621.4022
- .406 Turbines
- Class here turbomachines
- .42 Stirling engines and air motors
- For wind engines, see 621.45*

- .43 Internal-combustion engines
 Class generation of electricity by internal-combustion engines in 621.312133
For internal-combustion engines for a specific type of transportation, see the type, e.g., internal-combustion engines of ships 623.8723
-
- > 621.433–621.436 Specific internal-combustion engines
 Class parts and accessories of specific engines in 621.437; class comprehensive works in 621.43
- .433 Gas turbines and free-piston engines
 Standard subdivisions are added for gas turbines and free-piston engines, for gas turbines alone
For turbojet engines, see 621.4352
- .433 5 Free-piston engines
- .434 Spark-ignition engines
 Nondiesel piston engines
 Including rotary spark-ignition engines
 Class here reciprocating spark-ignition engines
- .435 Jet and rocket engines
- .435 2 Jet engines
 Including turbojet engines
- .435 6 Rocket engines
 Class here interdisciplinary works on rocketry
For a specific aspect of rocketry, see the aspect, e.g., rocket weapons 623.4519, booster rockets 629.475
- .436 Diesel and semidiesel engines
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here compression-ignition engines
- [.436 028 8] Maintenance and repair
 Do not use; class in 621.4368
- .436 1 General topics of diesel and semidiesel engines
 Including combustion
- .436 2 Design and construction
- .436 8 Operation, maintenance, repair
- .437 Parts and accessories of internal-combustion engines
 Including carburetors, connecting rods, cylinders, governors, ignition devices, pistons, valves

- .44 Geothermal engineering
- .45 Wind engines
Class wind-powered generation of electricity in 621.312136
- .453 Windmills
- .46 Electric and related motors
Standard subdivisions are added for electric and related motors together, electric motors alone
- .47 Solar-energy engineering
Class engineering of secondary sources of solar energy with the secondary source, e.g., generation of electricity from solar radiation 621.31244, wind energy 621.45
- .471 General topics of solar-energy engineering
- .471 2 Heat storage
- .472 Solar collectors
- .473 Solar engines
- .477 Solar furnaces
- .48 Nuclear engineering
Fission and fusion technology
See also 539.7 for nuclear physics
- .483 Nuclear reactors, power plants, by-products
Standard subdivisions are added for nuclear reactors, power plants, by-products together; for nuclear reactors alone; for nuclear power plants alone
Class here fission reactors, nuclear steam-powered generation of electricity; comprehensive works on fission and fusion reactor, power plants, by-products
For fusion reactors, power plants, by-products, see 621.484
- .483 015 3 Physical principles
Do not use for reactor physics; class in 621.4831
- .483 028 6 Green technology (Environmental technology)
Do not use for waste technology; class in 621.4838
- [.483 028 9] Safety measures
Do not use; class in 621.4835

- .483 1 Reactor physics
 Including critical size
 Class here physics of reactor cores
 Class physics of a specific component, material, or process with the
 component, material, or process, plus notation 0153 from Table 1,
 e.g., nuclear reactions in fuel elements 621.483350153976
- .483 2 Design, construction, shielding, siting
- .483 23 Shielding
- .483 3 Materials
- .483 32 Structural materials
- .483 35 Fuel element materials
 Fuels and cladding
- .483 36 Coolants
- .483 37 Moderators
- .483 4 Specific types of reactors
 Classified by neutron energy, moderator, fuel and fuel conversion,
 coolant
 Including breeder reactors
 Class a specific aspect of a specific type with the aspect, e.g.,
 shielding of fast reactors 621.48323
- .483 5 Operation, control, safety measures
- .483 7 Radioactive isotopes
 Class here comprehensive technological works on radioisotopes
 *For a specific application of radioisotopes, see the application,
 e.g., radioactive isotope therapy 615.8424, radioisotope
 thermoelectric generation 621.31243*
- .483 8 Waste technology
- .484 Fusion reactors, fusion power plants, by-products
 Standard subdivisions are added for fusion reactors, fusion power plants,
 by-products together; for fusion reactors alone; for fusion power plants
 alone
 Variant name for fusion reactors: thermonuclear reactors
 Including tokamaks
 Class comprehensive works on fission and fusion reactor, power plants,
 by-products in 621.483
- .485 Nuclear propulsion
- .5 Pneumatic, vacuum, low-temperature technologies**

- .51 Pneumatic technology
 Class here air compression technology, air compressors
 *For a specific kind of pneumatic technology, see the kind, e.g.,
 compressed-air transmission 621.53, pneumatic control 629.8045*
- .53 Compressed-air transmission
- .54 Pneumatic conveying and cleaning
 Including carriers, cleaners, sandblasters
- .55 Vacuum technology
 Including vacuum pumps
 See also 533.5 for vacuum physics
- .56 Low-temperature technology
 Class here refrigeration
 *For freezers and refrigerators, see 621.57; for ice manufacture, see
 621.58; for cryogenic technology, see 621.59*
 See also 536.56 for physics of low temperatures
- .563 Heat pumps
- .564 Refrigerants
- .57 Freezers and refrigerators
- .58 Ice manufacture
- .59 Cryogenic technology
 Including liquefaction and solidification of gases having low boiling points
- .6 Blowers, fans, pumps**
- .61 Blowers and fans
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 *For rotary blowers and fans, see 621.62; for centrifugal blowers and
 fans, see 621.63*
- .62 Rotary blowers and fans
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .63 Centrifugal blowers and fans
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
-
- 621.64–621.69 Pumps
 Class hydraulic pumps in 621.252; class comprehensive works in 621.69
- .64 Hand pumps
- .65 Reciprocating pumps

- .66 Rotary pumps
- .67 Centrifugal pumps
- .69 Pneumatic pumps
Class here water-lifting devices, comprehensive works on pumps
For a specific kind of pump, see the kind, e.g., hydraulic pumps 621.252
- .691 Jet pumps
- .699 Density and direct-fluid-pressure displacement pumps

.8 Machine engineering

Class a specific kind of machinery not provided for here with the kind, e.g., hydraulic machinery 621.2; class a specific use of machinery with the use, e.g., gears in clocks 681.112

SUMMARY

- | | |
|------------|--|
| 621.802 87 | Testing and measuring |
| .81 | General topics of machine engineering |
| .82 | Machine parts |
| .83 | Gears and cams |
| .84 | Valves and pistons |
| .85 | Power transmission systems |
| .86 | Materials-handling equipment |
| .87 | Cranes and elevators |
| .88 | Fasteners |
| .89 | Tribology |
- [.801 53] Physical principles
Do not use; class in 621.811
- .802 87 Testing and measuring
Class here strength tests of mechanisms
- [.802 88] Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class in 621.816
- .81 General topics of machine engineering
- .811 Physical principles
Including vibration
- .812 Power and speed control devices
- .815 Machine design
- .816 Maintenance and repair
Including balancing
- .82 Machine parts
Including rotors
For gears, ratchets, cams, see 621.83; for valves, pistons, see 621.84

- .821 Journals
- .822 Bearings
Including ball, roller, sliding bearings
Class journals in 621.821
- .823 Shafts
Including axles
Class bearings in 621.822
For journals, see 621.821
- .824 Springs
- .825 Clutches, couplings, universal joints
- .827 Connecting rods, cranks, eccentrics
- .83 Gears and cams
Including pawls, ratchets
- .833 Gears
Class here gearing
- .833 1 Spur gears
- .833 2 Bevel and skew bevel gears
- .833 3 Spiral and worm gears
- .838 Cams
- .84 Valves and pistons
Standard subdivisions are added for valves and pistons, for valves alone
Variant names for valves: cocks, faucets, taps
- .85 Power transmission systems
Class power transmission systems for materials-handling equipment in 621.86. Class a specific machine part of a transmission system with the part, e.g., shafts 621.823
- .852 Power transmission by belt
- .853 Power transmission by rope
- .854 Power transmission by wire
- .859 Power transmission by chain
- .86 Materials-handling equipment
For cranes, elevators, see 621.87
- .862 Hoisting equipment
For chain hoists, fork lifts, tackles, see 621.863; for capstans, winches, windlasses, see 621.864

- .863 Chain hoists, fork lifts, tackles
- .864 Capstans, winches, windlasses
- .865 Excavating machinery
Class here earthmoving machinery, power shovels
- .867 Conveying equipment
For telpherage, see 621.868
- .867 2 Pipes
Including pipe laying
Class here pipelines
Class coal pipelines in 662.624; class petroleum pipelines in 665.544; class industrial gases pipelines in 665.744. Class manufacturing pipes of a specific material with the material, e.g., metal pipes 671.832
- .867 5 Belt conveyors
- .867 6 Escalators
- .868 Telpherage
Including chair lifts, ski tows
Class here comprehensive works on people movers
For escalators, see 621.8676; for elevators, see 621.877
- .87 Cranes and elevators
- .873 Cranes
Including cherry pickers, derricks
- .877 Elevators
Including jacks
- .88 Fasteners
See also 621.97 for fastening equipment
- .882 Bolts, nuts, screws
- .883 Cotters
- .884 Nails and rivets
- .885 Sealing devices
- .89 Tribology
Including lubrication, lubricants, wear
Class here friction
For bearings, see 621.822

.9 Tools

Class here fabricating equipment

Class a specific use with the use, e.g., lathes in woodworking 684.08

- .900 1-.900 9 Standard subdivisions
- .902 Machine tools
- .902 3 Numerical control
- .904 Pneumatic tools
- .908 Hand tools
- .91 Planing and milling tools
 See also 671.35 for machining metal
- .912 Planers, shapers, slotters
- .914 Crushing tools
- .92 Abrading and grinding tools
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .922 Lapping tools
 Including buffing, polishing tools
- .923 Emery wheels and grindstones
- .924 Filing tools
- .93 Cutting, disassembling, sawing tools
 Including axes, crowbars, scissors, shears, slicers, trimmers
- .932 Knives
- .934 Saws
- .94 Turning tools
 Class turning tools used for perforating in 621.95
- .942 Lathes
- .944 Gear-cutting, pipe-threading, screw-cutting tools
 For tapping tools, see 621.955
- .95 Perforating and tapping tools
 Standard subdivisions are added for perforating and tapping tools together,
 for perforating tools alone
 For punching tools, see 621.96
- .952 Drilling tools
 Class here boring tools
- .954 Broaching and reaming tools

- .955 Tapping tools
See also 621.84 for taps (valves)
- .96 Punching tools
 Class die punches in 621.984
- .97 Fastening and joining equipment
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class fasteners in 621.88
- .972 Screwdrivers and wrenches
 Variant name for wrenches: spanners
- .973 Hand hammers
- .974 Power hammers
- .977 Soldering and welding equipment
- .978 Riveting equipment
- .98 Pressing, impressing, molding equipment
 Standard subdivisions are added for pressing, impressing, molding
 equipment together; for pressing equipment alone
- .982 Bending tools
- .984 Impressing and molding equipment
 Including dies, molds, stamps
- .99 Other tools and equipment
- .992 Guiding, holding, safety equipment
 Including chucks, clamps, guards, jigs, vises

622 Mining and related operations

Standard subdivisions are added for mining and related operations together, for
 mining alone

SUMMARY

- 622.1 **Prospecting**
 .2 **Excavation techniques**
 .3 **Mining for specific materials**
 .4 **Mine environment**
 .5 **Mine drainage**
 .6 **Mine transport systems**
 .7 **Ore dressing**
 .8 **Mine health and safety**

[.028 9] Safety measures

Do not use; class in 622.8

.1 Prospecting

Class here exploratory operations

>

622.12–622.17 General topics of prospecting

Class general topics of prospecting applied to specific materials in 622.18; class general topics of prospecting applied to treasure in 622.19; class comprehensive works in 622.1

.12

Surface exploration

Including biogeochemical, geobotanical, geological prospecting

.13

Geochemical prospecting

Including mineral surveys (qualitative and quantitative measurement of mineral content)

Class biogeochemical prospecting in 622.12

.14

Mine surveys

Determination of size, depth, shape of mines

.15

Geophysical prospecting

.152

Gravitational prospecting

.153

Magnetic prospecting

.154

Electrical prospecting

.159

Other methods of prospecting

Including gas-detection, geothermal, radioactivity prospecting

.159 2

Seismic prospecting

Variant names: acoustical, vibration prospecting

.17

Underwater prospecting

.18

Prospecting for specific materials

Add to base number 622.18 the numbers following 553 in 553.2–553.9, e.g., prospecting for petroleum 622.1828; however, for prospecting for water, see 628.11

Standard subdivisions are added for specific materials even if only one type of prospecting is used, e.g., seismic exploration for petroleum in Texas 622.182809764

.19

Prospecting for treasure

Underground and underwater

Class here treasure hunting

Class archaeological methods and equipment in 930.1028

.2 Excavation techniques

Class here underground (subsurface) mining

Class extraction techniques for specific materials in 622.3

See also 622.4–622.8 for nonextractive mining technologies

> 622.22–622.28 Underground mining

Class comprehensive works in 622.2

.22 In-situ processing

Class here leach mining wells, solution mining

See Manual at 622.22, 622.7 vs. 662.6, 669

.23 Underground blasting and drilling**.24 Underground boring****.25 Shaft sinking**

Class here shafts

.26 Tunneling

Class here tunnels

.28 Supporting structures

Class here control of roof and wall failure (rock failure)

.29 Surface and underwater mining**.292 Surface mining**

Class here open-pit and strip mining

Class reclamation after surface mining in 631.64

For quarrying, see 622.35

.292 7 Alluvial mining

Including hydraulic and placer mining

.295 Underwater mining

Class here offshore mining, mineral extraction from ocean floor

.3 *Mining for specific materials

Class here extraction techniques of specific materials

Class prospecting for specific materials in 622.18. Class a nonextractive mining technology relating to specific materials with the technology in 622.4–622.8, e.g., ore dressing 622.7

For surface mining of specific materials, see 622.292

*Do not use notation 0289 from Table 1 for safety measures; class in 622.8

- .33 *Carbonaceous materials
- .331–.337 Coal, graphite, solid and semisolid bitumens
- Add to base number 622.33 the numbers following 553.2 in 553.21–553.27, e.g., coal 622.334; however, for safety measures, see 622.8
- .338 *Oil, oil shales, tar sands, natural gas
- Use 622.338 for extraction of petroleum covering oil and gas, use 622.3382 for petroleum limited to oil
- Class comprehensive technical works on petroleum in 665.5; class interdisciplinary works on petroleum in 553.28
- .338 1 *Drilling techniques
- Including use of drilling muds (drilling fluids)
- .338 19 *Offshore drilling
- Class here comprehensive works on offshore petroleum extraction
- For a specific aspect of offshore petroleum extraction, see the aspect, e.g., offshore enhanced oil recovery 622.3382*
- .338 2 *Oil
- Including well blowouts
- Class here reservoir engineering; enhanced, secondary, tertiary recovery; well flooding
- Class techniques of drilling for oil in 622.3381
- .338 27 *Specific enhanced oil recovery methods
- Including enhanced recovery by use of bacteria
- .338 3 *Oil shale and tar sands
- Variant names for oil shale: bituminous, black shale; for tar sands: bituminous, oil sands
- Class extraction of oils from oil shale and tar sands in 665.4
- .338 5 *Natural gas
- Class techniques of drilling for natural gas in 622.3381
- .339 *Fossil resins and gums
- Standard subdivisions are added for fossil resins and gums together, for fossil resins alone
- .34 *Metals
- Class here the ore of the metal
- .341 *Iron

*Do not use notation 0289 from Table 1 for safety measures; class in 622.8

-
- > 622.342–622.349 Nonferrous metals
 Class comprehensive works in 622.34
- .342 *Precious metals
- .342 2 *Gold
- .342 3 *Silver
- .342 4 *Platinum
- .343–.349 Other nonferrous metals
 Add to base number 622.34 the numbers following 553.4 in 553.43–553.49, e.g., uranium ores 622.34932; however, for safety measures, see 622.8
- .35–.39 Other materials
 Add to base number 622.3 the numbers following 553 in 553.5–553.9, e.g., gem diamonds 622.382; however, for safety measures, see 622.8; for water, see 628.114
- .35 Structural and sculptural stone
 Number built according to instructions under 622.35–622.39
 Class here quarrying
For quarrying of other economic materials, see 622.36
-
- > **622.4–622.8 Nonextractive mining technologies**
 Class here nonextractive mining technologies relating to specific materials
 Class comprehensive works in 622
- .4 Mine environment**
For mine drainage, see 622.5; for mine health and safety, see 622.8
- .42 Ventilation and air conditioning
For temperature control, see 622.43
- .43 Temperature control
- .47 Illumination
- .473 Portable lamps
- .474 Electric lighting systems
- .48 Electricity
 Class electricity applied to a specific operation with the operation, e.g., temperature control 622.43
- .49 Sanitation

*Do not use notation 0289 from Table 1 for safety measures; class in 622.8

.5 Mine drainage**.6 Mine transport systems**

Haulage and hoisting

.65 Hand and animal haulage

.66 Mechanical haulage

Including mine railroads

Class vertical haulage in 622.68

.67 Direct-driven and gear-driven hoists

.68 Elevators

Including skips

.69 Surface transportation

Including loading, unloading, transshipment

.7 Ore dressing

Class here dressing of specific mineral ores

See Manual at 622.22, 622.7 vs. 662.6, 669

.73 Crushing and grinding

.74 Sizing

Including screening

> 622.75–622.77 Ore concentration

Variant names: beneficiation, ore separation

Class comprehensive works in 622.7

.75 Mechanical separation

.751 Gravity concentration

.752 Flotation

.77 Electrostatic and magnetic separation

.79 Milling plants

Class specific milling-plant operations in 622.73–622.77

.8 Mine health and safety

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class control of roof and wall failure (rock failure) in 622.28; class interdisciplinary works on mine safety in 363.119622

For comprehensive works on safety measures for excavation techniques, see 622.20289; for sanitation, see 622.49. For safety measures for a specific excavation technique, see the technique in 622.22–622.29, plus notation 0289 from Table 1, e.g., safety measures in tunneling 622.260289

.82 Control of gas and explosions

Class here comprehensive works on fire control, on respiratory safety

For dust control, see 622.83

.83 Dust control**.89 Rescue operations****623 Military and nautical engineering**

Standard subdivisions are added for military and nautical engineering together, for military engineering alone

See Manual at 355–359 vs. 623

SUMMARY

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| 623.04 | Special topics of military engineering |
| .1 | Fortifications |
| .2 | Mine laying and clearance, demolition |
| .3 | Engineering of defense |
| .4 | Ordnance |
| .5 | Ballistics and gunnery |
| .6 | Military transportation technology |
| .7 | Communications, vehicles, sanitation, related topics |
| .8 | Nautical engineering and seamanship |
| .04 | Special topics of military engineering |
| .042 | Optical engineering |
| | Class here infrared and ultraviolet technology |
| .043 | Electronic engineering |
| .044 | Nuclear engineering |
| .045 | Mechanical engineering |
| .047 | Construction engineering |

> 623.1–623.7 Military engineering

Class special topics of military engineering in 623.04; class naval engineering in 623.8; class comprehensive works in 623

.1 Fortifications

Class here forts and fortresses

Class architectural aspects in 725.18

.109 History and biography

Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 623.19

.15 Temporary fortifications**.19 Geographic treatment**

Add to base number 623.19 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., forts in France 623.1944

.2 Mine laying and clearance, demolition**.26 Mine laying and clearing**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

See also 623.45115 for manufacture of mines

.27 Demolition**.3 Engineering of defense**

Class warning systems in 623.737

See also 623.4 for ordnance

.31 Defense against invasion

Including countermining, flooding, mechanical barriers, moats, traps

Class architectural aspects of moats in 725.98

For fortifications, see 623.1; for mine laying, demolition, see 623.2

.38 Protective construction

Including air raid shelters

.4 Ordnance

Class combat ships in 623.82

For combat vehicles, see 623.74

SUMMARY

623.41	Artillery
.42	Specific pieces of artillery
.43	Gun mounts
.44	Small arms and other weapons
.45	Ammunition and other destructive agents
.46	Accessories

.41 Artillery

For specific pieces of artillery, see 623.42; for artillery projectiles, see 623.4513

- .412 Field artillery
- .417 Coast artillery
- .418 Naval artillery
- .419 Space artillery
- .42 Specific pieces of artillery
Including cannons, howitzers, mortars, crew-served rocket launchers
- .43 Gun mounts
- .44 Small arms and other weapons
Standard subdivisions are added for small arms and other weapons together, for small arms alone
Class here side arms
Class artistic aspects of arms and armor in 739.7. Class vehicle-mounted small arms with the vehicle, e.g., armored cars 623.7475
See also 623.455 for small arms ammunition
- .441 Weaponry of prefirearm origin
Including armor, bayonets, bows and arrows, catapults, knives, maces, shields, spears, swords, tomahawks
- .442 Portable firearms
For handguns, see 623.443
- .442 4 Automatic firearms
Including automatic rifles, machine and submachine guns
Class automatic pistols and revolvers in 623.443
- .442 5 Carbines, muskets, rifles
- .442 6 Portable rocket launchers (Bazookas)
- .443 Handguns
- .443 2 Pistols
- .443 6 Revolvers
- .445 Chemical weapons
Including flame throwers; rifle attachments for launching smoke and gas canisters
Class artillery for launching chemical projectiles in 623.41; class chemical delivery devices in 623.4516
For chemical agents, see 623.4592
- .446 Destructive radiation weapons
Including laser weapons, thermal weapons

- .447 Destructive vibration weapons
 Including ultrasonic weapons
- .45 Ammunition and other destructive agents
 Standard subdivisions are added for ammunition and other destructive agents
 together, for ammunition alone
- .451 Charge-containing devices
 Class here bombs, missiles, projectiles

 Class interdisciplinary works on bombs in 355.8251; class
 interdisciplinary works on missiles in 358.17182

 For tactical rockets, see 623.4543

 See also 623.455 for small arms ammunition
- .451 1 Grenades, mines, nuclear weapons
 Class grenades and mines with special types of charges in
 623.4516–623.4518
- .451 14 Grenades
 Class here hand and rifle grenades
- .451 15 Mines
 Class mine laying and clearance in 623.26
- .451 19 Nuclear weapons
 Including artillery projectiles, bombs

 For nuclear missiles, see 623.4519
- .451 3 Artillery projectiles
 Class artillery projectiles with special types of charges in
 623.4516–623.4518; class nuclear artillery projectiles in 623.45119
- .451 4 Antipersonnel devices
 Including booby traps

 Class here shrapnel devices

 For a specific antipersonnel device other than booby traps and
 shrapnel devices, see the device, e.g., antipersonnel hand grenades
 623.45114

> 623.451 6–623.451 8 Devices with special types of charges

Class comprehensive works in 623.451

For nuclear weapons, see 623.45119

- .451 6 Chemical and biological devices
- Projectiles and related devices containing incendiary materials, microbes, poison gas, smoke
- Standard subdivisions are added for chemical and biological devices together, for chemical devices alone
- Class here weapons of mass destruction
- Class chemical agents in 623.4592; class biological agents in 623.4594
- For nuclear weapons, see 623.45119*
- .451 7 High-explosive devices
- Including blockbusters, high-explosive-antitank (HEAT) projectiles, torpedoes
- For bangalore torpedoes, see 623.4545*
- .451 8 Armor-piercing devices
- .451 9 Guided missiles
- Nuclear and nonnuclear missiles
- Class here storage and launching equipment, launch vehicles; strategic missiles, comprehensive works on rocket weapons
- Class comprehensive works on rocketry in 621.4356
- For tactical rockets, see 623.4543*
- .451 91 Air-to-air guided missiles
- .451 92 Air-to-surface guided missiles
- .451 93 Air-to-underwater guided missiles
- .451 94 Surface-to-air guided missiles
- Class here antimissile missiles, interceptor missiles
- .451 95 Ballistic missiles
- Class here Surface-to-surface guided missiles
- .451 952 Short-range ballistic missiles
- .451 953 Intermediate-range ballistic missiles
- .451 954 Long-range ballistic missiles
- Class here intercontinental ballistic missiles
- .451 96 Surface-to-underwater guided missiles
- .451 97 Underwater guided missiles
- Including underwater-to-air, underwater-to-surface, underwater-to-underwater missiles
- .451 98 Space guided missiles

- .452 Explosives
- .452 6 Burning and deflagrating explosives
 - Including cordite, guncotton, gunpowder, smokeless powder
 - Class here propellant explosives
- .452 7 High explosives
 - Including dynamite, nitroglycerin, TNT
- .454 Detonators, tactical rockets, demolition charges
- .454 2 Detonators
 - Including fuses, percussion caps, primers
- .454 3 Tactical rockets
 - Unguided nuclear and nonnuclear rockets
 - Class comprehensive works on rocket weapons, on rocket-propelled guided missiles in 623.4519
- .454 5 Demolition charges
 - Including bangalore torpedoes, destructors, shaped charges
 - Class shaped charges in bombs, missiles, projectiles in 623.451
- .455 Small arms ammunition
 - Including bazooka rockets, bullets, cartridges
- .459 Nonexplosive agents
 - Class here detection of nonexplosive agents
- .459 2 Chemical agents
 - Including tear gas
 - Class here poisons and gases
- .459 4 Biological agents
- .46 Accessories
 - Including range finders, sighting apparatus
- .5 Ballistics and gunnery**
- .51 Ballistics
- .513 Interior ballistics
 - Motion of projectiles within the bore
- .514 Exterior ballistics
 - Motion of projectiles after leaving gun tube
- .516 Terminal ballistics
 - Effect of projectiles on targets

- .55 Gunnery
 For recoil, see 623.57
- .551 Land gunnery
- .553 Naval gunnery
- .555 Aircraft gunnery
- .556 Spacecraft gunnery
- .557 Target selection and detection
 Class range and sighting apparatus in 623.46; class application to specific
 types of gunnery in 623.551–623.556
- .558 Firing and fire control
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class application to specific types of gunnery in 623.551–623.556
 For target selection and detection, see 623.557
- .57 Recoil
- .6 Military transportation technology**
 For vehicles, see 623.74
- .61 Land transportation
 *For roads, see 623.62; for railroads, see 623.63; for bridges, see 623.67;
 for tunnels, see 623.68*
- .62 Roads
- .63 Railroads
- .631 The way
 Earthwork and track
- .633 Rolling stock
- .64 Naval facilities
 Including artificial harbors, docks
 Class here naval bases
 Class architectural aspects of naval facilities in 725.34
- .66 Air facilities
 Class here air bases, airports, comprehensive works on military aerospace
 engineering
 Add to base number 623.66 the numbers following 629.136 in
 629.1361–629.1368, e.g., airstrips 623.6612
 Class architectural aspects of air facilities in 725.39
 For military astronautics, see 623.69; for aircraft, see 623.746

- .67 Bridges
- .68 Tunnels
- .69 Space facilities
 - Class here comprehensive works on military astronautics
 - For spacecraft, see 623.749*
- .7 **Communications, vehicles, sanitation, related topics**

SUMMARY

- 623.71 **Intelligence and reconnaissance topography**
 - .72 **Photography and photogrammetry**
 - .73 **Communications technology**
 - .74 **Vehicles**
 - .75 **Sanitation and safety engineering**
 - .76 **Electrical engineering**
 - .77 **Camouflage and concealment**
- .71 Intelligence and reconnaissance topography
 - Standard subdivisions are added for intelligence and reconnaissance topography together, for intelligence alone
 - Including sketching and map making
 - For photography and photogrammetry, see 623.72*
- .72 Photography and photogrammetry
- .73 Communications technology
 - Class comprehensive works on military electronics in 623.043
- .731 Visual signals
 - .731 2 Flag signals, heliographs, semaphores
 - .731 3 Pyrotechnical devices
 - .731 4 Electrooptical devices
- .732 Telegraphy
 - For radiotelegraphy, see 623.7342*
- .733 Telephony
 - For radiotelephony, see 623.7345*
- .734 Radio and radar
 - Standard subdivisions are added for radio and radar together, for radio alone
 - .734 1 Shortwave radio
 - .734 2 Radiotelegraphy
 - Class shortwave radiotelegraphy in 623.7341

- .734 5 Radiotelephony
 Class shortwave radiotelephony in 623.7341
- .734 8 Radar
- .735 Television
- .737 Warning systems
 Class here air raid warning systems
- .74 Vehicles
 Support vehicles, combat vehicles and their ordnance
For ammunition and other destructive agents, see 623.45; for railroad rolling stock, see 623.633; for nautical craft, see 623.82
See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388
- .741 Lighter-than-air aircraft
For specific types of lighter-than-air aircraft, see 623.742–623.744
-
- > 623.742–623.744 Specific types of lighter-than-air aircraft
 Class comprehensive works in 623.741
- .742 Free balloons
 Class here comprehensive works on military balloons
For barrage balloons, see 623.744
- .743 Airships (Dirigibles)
- .743 5 Rigid airships
- .743 6 Semirigid airships
- .743 7 Nonrigid airships
- .744 Barrage balloons
- .746 Heavier-than-air aircraft
 Class here comprehensive works on aircraft
For lighter-than-air aircraft, see 623.741
- .746 04 Special topics of aircraft
-
- > 623.746 042–623.746 047 General types of heavier-than-air aircraft
 Class here piloting general types of heavier-than-air aircraft
 Class comprehensive works in 623.746; class comprehensive works on piloting in 623.746048
- .746 042 Propeller-driven airplanes
- .746 044 Jet planes

- .746 045 Rocket planes
- .746 047 Vertical-lift aircraft (VTOL aircraft)
Including helicopters
- .746 048 Piloting
Class piloting of a specific type of heavier-than-air aircraft with the aircraft, e.g., piloting jet planes 623.746044, piloting fighters 623.7464
- .746 049 Components
Including engines, escape equipment, instrumentation (avionics)
Class components of a specific type of aircraft with the aircraft, e.g., components of jet planes 623.746044, of fighters 623.7464

For aircraft ordnance, see 623.7461

- .746 1 Aircraft ordnance

For charge-containing devices, see 623.451

> 623.746 2–623.746 7 Heavier-than-air aircraft for specific uses

Class here piloting heavier-than-air aircraft for specific uses

Class aircraft ordnance regardless of type of aircraft in 623.7461; class pilotless aircraft regardless of type in 623.7469; class comprehensive works in 623.746; class comprehensive works on piloting in 623.746048

- .746 2 Trainers
- .746 3 Bombers and fighter-bombers
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
Including attack airplanes, close support aircraft
Class here close support aircraft
- .746 4 Fighters
- .746 5 Transport aircraft
Cargo and personnel
- .746 6 Rescue aircraft
- .746 7 Reconnaissance aircraft
- .746 9 Pilotless aircraft (Guided aircraft)
Variant name: drones
Reconnaissance and combat
- .747 Motor land vehicles

- .747 2 Motor land vehicles for transporting personnel
 Class armored personnel carriers in 623.7475
- .747 22 Jeeps and similar vehicles
 Standard subdivisions are added for jeeps and similar vehicles
 together, for jeeps alone
- .747 23 Buses
- .747 24 Ambulances
- .747 4 Motor land vehicles for transporting supplies
- .747 5 Motor land vehicles for combat
 Including armored personnel carriers
- .747 52 Tanks
- .748 Air-cushion vehicles
- .748 2 Overland air-cushion vehicles
- .748 4 Overwater air-cushion vehicles
- .748 5 Amphibious air-cushion vehicles
- .749 Spacecraft
- .75 Sanitation and safety engineering
 Class here health engineering
- .751 Water supply
- .753 Sewage treatment and disposal
- .754 Garbage and refuse treatment and disposal
- .76 Electrical engineering
- .77 Camouflage and concealment
- .8 Nautical engineering and seamanship**
 Nautical engineering: engineering of ships and boats and their component parts
 Standard subdivisions are added for nautical engineering and seamanship
 together, for nautical engineering alone
 Class here naval engineering, comprehensive works on military water
 transportation
 Class harbors, ports, roadsteads in 627.2
 For naval facilities, see 623.64

SUMMARY

623.820 01–.820 09	Standard subdivisions
.820 1–.820 7	[Models and miniatures, general types of craft, craft of specific materials]
.821	Ancient and medieval craft
.822	Modern wind-driven ships
.823	Small and medium power-driven ships
.824	Power-driven merchant and factory ships
.825	Power-driven warships
.826	Support warships and other government ships
.827	Nonmilitary submersible craft
.828	Other power-driven ships
.829	Hand-propelled and towed craft
.820 01	Philosophy and theory
.820 02	Miscellany
[.820 022 8]	Models and miniatures
	Do not use; class in 623.8201
.820 03–.820 09	Standard subdivisions
.820 1	Models and miniatures
	Class ships in bottles in 745.5928
.820 104	Models and miniatures of general types of craft
	Add to base number 623.820104 the numbers following 623.820 in 623.8202–623.8205, e.g., models of sailing craft 623.8201043
.820 11–.820 19	Models and miniatures of specific types of craft
	Add to base number 623.8201 the numbers following 623.82 in 623.821–623.829, e.g., models of battleships 623.820152
>	623.820 2–623.820 5 General types of craft
	Class general types of craft in specific materials in 623.8207; class specific types of craft in 623.821–623.829; class comprehensive works in 623.82
.820 2	*Small craft
	Class small sailing craft in 623.8203; class small submersible craft in 623.8205; class small power-driven craft in 623.823
.820 23	*Pleasure craft
	Including yachts
.820 26	*Working craft
.820 3	*Sailing ships

*Do not use notation 0228 from Table 1 for models and miniatures; class in 623.8201

.820 4 *Power-driven ships
 Including hydrofoils, steamships
 Class power-driven submersible craft in 623.8205; class small
 power-driven craft in 623.823

.820 5 *Submersible craft

.820 7 *Craft of specific materials
 Class works limited to hulls of specific materials in 623.84

.821 *Ancient and medieval craft
 Including biremes, caravels, galleys, triremes

> 623.822–623.829 Modern craft
 Class comprehensive works in 623.82

.822 *Modern wind-driven ships
 Including rotor ships
 Class comprehensive works on ancient, medieval, and modern
 wind-driven ships in 623.8203

.822 3 *Pleasure craft
 Including sailing yachts

.822 4 *Merchant ships
 Including clipper ships

.822 5 *Warships

.822 6 *Work ships
 Including research ships
 For merchant ships, see 623.8224

> 623.823–623.828 Power-driven craft
 Class comprehensive works in 623.8204

.823 *Small and medium power-driven ships
 *For small and medium power-driven craft not provided for here, see
 623.824–623.828*

.823 1 *Motorboats
 Class here speedboats

.823 13 *Outboard motorboats

*Do not use notation 0228 from Table 1 for models and miniatures; class in 623.8201

- .823 14 *Inboard motorboats
 Including hydroplanes, motor yachts
- .823 15 *Inboard-outboard motorboats
- .823 2 *Tugboats and towboats
- .823 4 *Ferryboats
- .824 *Power-driven merchant and factory ships
 Standard subdivisions are added for power-driven merchant and factory
 ships together, for power-driven merchant ships alone
 Class trawlers in 623.828
- .824 3 *Passenger ships
 Class ferryboats in 623.8234
- .824 32 *Ocean liners
- .824 36 *Inland-waterway ships
 Including river steamers
- .824 5 *Cargo ships
 Including bulk carriers, freighters, tankers
- .824 8 *Factory ships
 Including ship canneries, whaleboats
- .825 *Power-driven warships
 For support warships, see 623.826
- .825 1 Naval ordnance
 Class here armor, weapons
 *For naval artillery, see 623.418; for charge-containing devices,
 see 623.451*
-
- > 623.825 2–623.825 8 Specific types of combat warships
 Class naval ordnance in 623.8251; class comprehensive works in 623.825
- .825 2 *Battleships
- .825 3 *Cruisers
- .825 4 *Destroyers and destroyer escorts
 Standard subdivisions are added for destroyers and destroyer escorts
 together, for destroyers alone
- .825 5 *Aircraft carriers
- .825 6 *Landing craft

*Do not use notation 0228 from Table 1 for models and miniatures; class in 623.8201

- .825 7 *Submarines
 Class comprehensive works on submersible craft in 623.8205
- .825 72 *Diesel-engine and electric-motor powered submarines
- .825 74 *Nuclear-powered submarines
- .825 8 *Light combat craft
 Including torpedo boats
- .826 *Support warships and other government ships
- .826 2 *Minelayers and minesweepers
- .826 3 *Coast guard ships, police boats, revenue cutters
- .826 4 *Hospital ships and military transports
- .826 5 *Military supply ships
- .827 *Nonmilitary submersible craft
 Including bathyscaphes, bathyspheres
 Class comprehensive works on submersible craft in 623.8205
- .828 *Other power-driven ships
 Including dredgers, drilling ships, icebreakers
 Lightships relocated to 623.8943
- .828 2 *Fishing boats
 Including trawlers
 For whaling ships, see 623.8248
- .829 *Hand-propelled and towed craft
 Including barges, canoes, coracles, lifeboats, rafts, rowboats, scows,
 towed canalboats
- .83 Shipyards
 Including dry docks, floating dry docks
-
- 623.84–623.87 Parts and details of nautical craft
 Class here design
 Class comprehensive works in 623.82
- .84 Hulls of nautical craft
 Class hydrodynamics of hulls in 623.812
- .842 Lofting
- .843 Metalwork

*Do not use notation 0228 from Table 1 for models and miniatures; class in 623.8201

- .843 2 Riveting and welding
- .843 3 Ship fitting
- .844 Carpentry
- .845 Construction with ceramics, masonry, allied materials
Add to base number 623.845 the numbers following 624.183 in
624.1832–624.1838, e.g., concrete hulls 623.8454
- .848 Resistant construction
Including corrosion-resistant, fire-resistant construction
- .85 Engineering systems of nautical craft
For power plants, see 623.87
- .850 01–.850 09 Standard subdivisions
- .850 1 Mechanical systems
- .850 3 Electrical systems
- .850 4 Electronic systems
- .852 Electric lighting
- .853 Temperature controls and air conditioning
Standard subdivisions are added for temperature controls and air
conditioning together, for temperature controls alone
- .853 5 Cooling
Including refrigeration
- .853 7 Heating and air conditioning
- .854 Water supply and sanitation
- .854 2 Potable water
- .854 3 Seawater
Used for fire fighting and sanitation
- .854 6 Sanitation
Class seawater for sanitation in 623.8543
- .856 Communication systems
Add to base number 623.856 the numbers following 623.73 in
623.731–623.737, e.g., flag systems 623.85612
- .86 Equipment and outfit of nautical craft
Including flares, other portable lights
Class use of equipment and outfit in 623.88
- .862 Gear and rigging
Including anchors, cordage, masts, rope, rudders, sails, spars

- .863 Nautical instruments
- .865 Safety equipment
Including fire fighting, lifesaving equipment
Class comprehensive works on marine safety technology in 623.888
- .866 Furniture
- .867 Cargo-handling equipment
Class cargo handling in 623.8881
For onshore cargo-handling equipment, see 627.34
- .87 Power plants of nautical craft
Class here marine engineering
- .872 Specific kinds of engines
[.872 01–.872 09] Standard subdivisions
Do not use; class in 623.8701–623.8709
- .872 2 Steam engines
- .872 3 Internal-combustion engines
Class here inboard motors
Add to base number 623.8723 the numbers following 621.43 in 621.433–621.437, e.g., outboard motors 623.87234, diesel engines 623.87236
- .872 6 Electric engines
- .872 7 Solar engines
- .872 8 Nuclear engines
- .873 Engine auxiliaries
Including boilers, pipes, propellers, pumps, shafts
- .874 Fuels
- .88 Seamanship
For navigation, see 623.89
- [.880 289] Safety measures
Do not use; class in 623.888
- .881 Ship handling
Class safety and related topics in handling craft in 623.888
For handling specific types of craft, see 623.882
- .881 2–.881 5 Handling general types of craft
Add to base number 623.881 the numbers following 623.820 in 623.8202–623.8205, e.g., handling small craft 623.8812

- .882 Handling various specific types of craft
 Class safety and related topics in handling specific types of craft in
 623.888
- [.882 01–.882 09] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 623.88101–623.88109
- .882 1–.882 9 Specific types of craft
 Add to base number 623.882 the numbers following 623.82 in
 623.821–623.829, e.g., handling power-driven merchant ships
 623.8824
- .888 Specific topics of seamanship
 Class here marine safety technology
 For safety equipment, see 623.865
- [.888 01–.888 09] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 623.8801–623.8809
- .888 1 Loading and unloading of nautical craft
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here cargo handling
- .888 2 Knotting and splicing ropes and cables
 Class here interdisciplinary works on knotting and splicing
 *For a specific application of knotting and splicing, see the
 application, e.g., knotting in camping 796.545*
- .888 4 Prevention of collision and grounding
 Including rules of the road
- .888 5 Wreckage studies
 Class wreckage studies in marine architecture in 623.8176
- .888 6 Fire fighting technology
 See also 623.865 for manufacture of fire fighting equipment
- .888 7 Rescue operations
- .89 Navigation
 Selection and determination of course
 Class navigation procedures to prevent collision and grounding in 623.8884
- .892 Geonavigation
 For electronic aids to geonavigation, see 623.893
- .892 021 Tabulated and related materials
 Do not use for tide and current tables; class in 623.8949

- .892 2 Piloting and pilot guides
 Positioning craft by visual observation of objects of known position
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here nautical charts
 For piloting in and pilot guides to specific marine harbors and shores, see 623.8929
- [.892 209 163–.892 209 167] Treatment by specific oceans and seas
 Do not use; class in 623.89223–623.89227
- .892 209 168 Treatment by specific oceanographic forms
 Do not use for inland seas; class in 623.89229
- .892 209 169 Treatment by fresh and brackish waters
 Do not use for specific inland waters; class in 623.89229
- .892 23–.892 27 Piloting in and pilot guides to specific oceans and intercontinental seas
 Add to base number 623.8922 the numbers following —16 in notation 163–167 from Table 2, e.g., pilot guides to North Sea 623.8922336; however, for piloting in and pilot guides to specific marine harbors and shores, see 623.8929
- .892 29 Piloting in and pilot guides to specific inland waters
 Add to base number 623.89229 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., pilot guides to Great Lakes 623.8922977; however, for piloting in and pilot guides to specific marine harbors and shores, see 623.8929
- .892 3 Dead reckoning
- .892 9 Piloting in and pilot guides to specific marine harbors and shores
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here approach and harbor piloting and pilot guides
- [.892 909 1] Areas, regions, places in general
 Do not use; class in 623.89291
- [.892 909 3–.892 909 9] Specific continents, countries, localities
 Do not use; class in 623.89293–623.89299
- .892 91 Piloting in and pilot guides to specific areas, regions, places in general
 Add to base number 623.89291 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., pilot guides of developing countries 623.89291724; however, for approach and harbor piloting and pilot guides dealing comprehensively with specific oceans and intercontinental seas, see 623.89223–623.89227
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.892 93–.892 99 Piloting in and pilot guides to specific continents, countries, localities
 Add to base number 623.8929 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 pilot guides of India 623.892954
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.893 Geonavigation aids

Class here navigation aids [*formerly also* 627.92], electronic aids to geonavigation

For nonelectronic aids to geonavigation, see 623.894

> 623.893 2–623.893 3 Direction-finding and position-finding devices

Class comprehensive works in 623.893

.893 2 Radio aids

Including compasses, loran, radio

.893 3 Microwave aids

Including racon, radar, shoran

Class here GPS receivers

.893 8 Sounding devices

Including echo-ranging and sound-ranging devices, e.g., sonar

.894 Nonelectronic aids to geonavigation

.894 2 Lighthouses [*formerly also* 627.922]

Class interdisciplinary works on lighthouses in 387.155

.894 3 Lightships [*formerly also* 623.828]

.894 4 Light beacons, buoys, daymarks [*all formerly also* 627.924]

.894 5 Light lists

.894 9 Tide and current tables

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

624 Civil engineering

Including engineering of landscape architecture

Class here construction engineering

For military construction engineering, see 623.047. For a specific branch of civil engineering not provided for here, see the branch, e.g., construction of buildings 690

See Manual at 624 vs. 624.1; also at 624 vs. 690

SUMMARY

- 624.029 **Commercial miscellany**
 .1 Structural engineering and underground construction
 .2 Bridges
- .029 Commercial miscellany
 Class interdisciplinary works on quantity surveying in 692.5

.1 Structural engineering and underground construction

Standard subdivisions are added for structural engineering and underground construction together, for structural engineering alone

Class a specific application of structural engineering with the application, e.g., structural engineering of dams 627.8

See Manual at 624 vs. 624.1

SUMMARY

- 624.101 **Philosophy and theory**
 .15 Foundation engineering and engineering geology
 .16 Supporting structures other than foundations
 .17 Structural analysis and design
 .18 Materials
 .19 Underground construction
- .101 Philosophy and theory
 Class structural theory, theory of structure in 624.17
- .15 Foundation engineering and engineering geology
 Standard subdivisions are added for foundation engineering and engineering geology together, for foundation engineering alone
- .151 Engineering geology
 Class here properties of foundation soils
- .151 09 History, geographic treatment, biography
 Class soil surveys in 624.1517
- .151 3 Rock and soil mechanics
- .151 32 Rock mechanics
- .151 36 Soil mechanics
 Including drainage properties, permeability; permafrost
- .151 362 Soil consolidation
- .151 363 Soil stabilization
 Class here soil compaction
- .151 4 Soil content analysis

- .151 7 Soil surveys
 Class interdisciplinary works on soil surveys in 631.47
- [.151 709 1] Areas, regions, places in general
 Do not use; class in 624.15171
- [.151 709 3--.151 709 9] Specific continents, countries, localities
 Do not use; class in 624.15173--624.15179
- .151 71 Areas, regions, places in general
 Add to base number 624.15171 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., soil survey of tropical regions 624.151713
- .151 73--.151 79 Specific continents, countries, localities
 Add to base number 624.1517 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., soil survey of Japan 624.151752

> 624.152–624.158 Foundation engineering
 Class engineering geology of foundations in 624.151; class comprehensive works in 624.15

- .152 Excavation
 Including grading, shoring
 Class here earthwork
 Class embankments in 624.162
- .152 6 Blasting
- .153 Foundation materials
 Add to base number 624.153 the numbers following 620.1 in 620.12–620.19, e.g., iron 624.1537
 Class foundation materials for specific types of foundations in 624.154–624.158

> 624.154–624.158 Specific types of foundations

- Class comprehensive works in 624.15
- .154 Pile foundations
- .156 Floating foundations
 Including cantilever and platform foundations
- .157 Underwater foundations
 Including caissons, cofferdams
 Class underwater pier foundations in 624.158; class comprehensive works on underwater construction in 627.702

- .158 Pier foundations
- .16 Supporting structures other than foundations
 Class temporary supporting structures during excavation in 624.152
- .162 Embankments
- .164 Retaining walls
- .17 Structural analysis and design
 Standard subdivisions are added for structural analysis and design together, for structural analysis alone
 Class here mechanics of structures, structural elements, structural theory, interdisciplinary works on structural analysis and design
 Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 624.17 in the number coming last, e.g., wind loads on shells 624.17762 (*not* 624.175)
 For a specific application of structural analysis and design, see the application, e.g., structural analysis of aircraft 629.1341
- .170 1–.170 9 Standard subdivisions [*formerly also* 624.17101–624.17109]
- .171 Specific elements of structural analysis
 Including structural control, failures, stability
 For loads, see 624.172; for stresses and strains, see 624.176
 Use of this number for comprehensive works on structural analysis discontinued; class in 624.17
- [.171 01–.171 09] Standard subdivisions
 Relocated to 624.1701–624.1709
- .171 2 Graphic statics
- .171 3 Statically indeterminate structures
 Including static determinacy and indeterminacy
- .171 4 Deflections
- .171 5 Moment distribution method
- .172 Loads
 For wind loads, see 624.175
- .175 Wind loads
- .176 Stresses and strains (Deformation)
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including blast-resistant construction
 Class here wreckage studies
- .176 2 Earthquake engineering

- .177 Structural design and specific structural elements
 [.177 01--.177 09] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 624.1701–624.1709
- .177 1 Structural design
 For design with specific materials, see 624.18
- .177 13 Structural optimization
-
- > 624.177 2–624.177 9 Specific structural elements
 Class here specific structural elements in metal, design and construction of
 specific elements
 Class specific structural elements in materials other than metal in 624.18; class
 comprehensive works in 624.17
- .177 2 Beams, girders, cylinders, columns, slabs
- .177 23 Beams and girders
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in
 heading
- .177 25 Columns
- .177 3 Trusses and frames
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .177 4 Cables, wires, bars, rods
- .177 5 Arches and domes
- .177 6 Shells and plates
- .177 62 Shells
- .177 65 Plates
- .177 9 Sandwich and honeycomb constructions
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class specific sandwich and honeycomb constructions in
 624.1772–624.1776
- .18 Materials
 Class here design and construction
- .182 Metals
 Class specific structural elements in metal in 624.1772–624.1779
- .182 1 Iron and steel (Ferrous metals)
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .182 2–.182 9 Nonferrous metals
 Add to base number 624.182 the numbers following 620.18 in
 620.182–620.189, e.g., construction in aluminum 624.1826
- .183 Masonry, ceramic, allied materials
- .183 2 Stone
 Including artificial stone, e.g., concrete blocks
- .183 3 Cement
- .183 4 Concrete
 Class concrete and cinder blocks in 624.1832
 See also 721.0445 for visual concrete
- .183 41 Reinforced concrete (Ferroconcrete)
 Class a specific concrete structural element of reinforced concrete
 in 624.18342–624.18349
- .183 412 Prestressed concrete
- .183 414 Precast concrete
- .183 42–.183 49 Specific concrete structural elements
 Add to base number 624.1834 the numbers following 624.177 in
 624.1772–624.1779, e.g., concrete shells 624.183462
- .183 6 Brick and tile
- .183 8 Glass
- .184 Wood and laminated wood
 Standard subdivisions are added for wood and laminated wood together,
 for wood alone
- .189 Other materials
 Add to base number 624.189 the numbers following 620.19 in
 620.191–620.199, e.g., design in plastics 624.18923
- .19 Underground construction
 Class here ventilation
 Class subsurface mining in 622.2
 For construction of underground waste disposal facilities, see 628.44566
- .192 Mountain tunnels
- .193 Tunnels
 Class architectural aspects in 725.98
 *For military tunnel engineering, see 623.68; for mountain tunnels, see
 624.192; for underwater tunnels, see 624.194*
- .194 Underwater tunnels

.2 Bridges

Class here compound bridges, long-span bridges

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 624.2 in the number coming last, e.g., movable truss bridges 624.24 (*not* 624.217)

Class architecture of bridges in 725.98

For military bridge engineering, see 623.67

.209 3--209 9 Specific continents, countries, localities

Class specific bridges of a specific kind in 624.21–624.24

> 624.21–624.24 Specific kinds of bridges

Class comprehensive works in 624.2

.21 Girder and related kinds of bridges

Standard subdivisions are added for girder and related kinds of bridges together, for girder bridges alone

Including beam bridges, tubular bridges

Class here continuous bridges

.215 Box-girder bridges

.217 Iron and steel truss bridges

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.218 Timber truss bridges

Class here covered bridges

.219 Cantilever bridges

.22 Arch bridges

.225 Masonry arch bridges

.23 Suspension and cable-stayed bridges

Standard subdivisions are added for suspension and cable-stayed bridges together, for suspension bridges alone

.238 Cable-stayed bridges

.24 Movable bridges

.25 Structural analysis and design

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class structural analysis and design of specific kinds of bridges in 624.21–624.24

.252 Loads, stresses, strains

- .257 Specific structural elements
 For floors and foundations, see 624.28
- [.257 01–.257 09] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 624.201–624.209
- .28 Floors and foundations
- .283 Floors
 Class here structural analysis and design of floors
- .284 Foundations
 Class here structural analysis and design of foundations

625 Engineering of railroads and roads

Class tunnel engineering in 624.193; class bridge engineering in 624.2; class land transportation engineering in 629.048

SUMMARY

- 625.1 Railroads
 .2 Railroad rolling stock
 .3 Inclined, mountain, ship railroads
 .4 Local rail transit systems
 .5 Cable and aerial railways
 .6 Light rail transit systems
 .7 Roads
 .8 Artificial road surfaces

.1 Railroads

Including comprehensive works on special-purpose railroads

Class here comprehensive works on broad-gage, narrow-gage, standard-gage railroads

Class electrification of railroads in 621.33; class interdisciplinary works on railroads in 385

For military railroad engineering, see 623.63; for railroad rolling stock, see 625.2; for special-purpose railroads, see 625.3–625.6

- .100 1 Philosophy and theory
- .100 2 Miscellany
- [.100 228] Models and miniatures
 Do not use; class in 625.19
- .100 288 Maintenance and repair
 Including snow removal operations
- .100 3–.100 9 Standard subdivisions
- [.103] Monorail systems
 Relocated to 625.44

- .11 Surveying and design
 Including final location surveys; determination of grades, switchbacks,
 right-of-way
-
- > 625.12–625.16 Permanent way
 Class comprehensive works in 625.1
 For permanent way of special-purpose railroads, see 625.3–625.6
- .12 Earthwork
- .122 Engineering geology
 Including rock and soil mechanics
 Class here properties of soils that support structures (foundation soils)
- .123 Roadbed preparation
 Including excavation
- .13 Protective structures
 Including retaining walls, snow fences, snowsheds
- .14 Track
 *For rails and rail fastenings, see 625.15; for track accessories, see
 625.16*
- .141 Ballast
- .143 Ties (Sleepers)
 Including tie plates
- .144 Track laying
 For laying of tracks over ice, see 625.147
- [.146] Monorail tracks
 Relocated to 625.44
- .147 Tracks over ice
- .15 Rails
 Including rail fastenings
- .16 Track accessories
- .163 Turnouts and crossings
 Including frogs, switches, sidings
- .165 Control devices
 Including signals, signs
- .18 Railroad yards

- .19 Model and miniature railroads and trains
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Add to base number 625.19 the numbers following 625.2 in 625.21–625.26, e.g., models of steam locomotives 625.1961
- Class play with model railroads and trains in 790.133
- For models and miniatures of a specific kind of special-purpose railroad, see the kind in 625.3–625.6, e.g., models of subways 625.420228, models of monorail rolling stock 625.44*
- .2 Railroad rolling stock**
- Class here comprehensive works on specific types of cars, on rolling stock for roads with two running rails
- For rolling stock for special-purpose railroads, see 625.3–625.6*
- See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388*
- [.202 28] Models and miniatures
- Do not use; class in 625.19
- .21 *Running gear
- Including axles, bearings, springs, wheels
- Class here running gear for specific types of cars
-
- 625.22–625.24 Specific types of cars
- Class running gear for specific types of cars in 625.21; class accessory equipment for specific types of cars in 625.25; class comprehensive works in 625.2
- .22 *Work cars (Nonrevenue rolling stock)
- Including cabooses, handcars, railroad snowplows
- .23 *Passenger-train cars
- Including coaches; baggage, dining, sleeping cars
- .24 *Freight cars
- Including boxcars, gondola cars, refrigerator cars, tank cars
- .25 *Accessory equipment
- Including brakes, buffers, couplings
- Class here accessory equipment for specific types of cars
- .26 *Locomotives
- Class running gear in 625.21; class accessory equipment in 625.25
- .261 *Steam locomotives

*Do not use notation 0228 from Table 1; class in 625.19

- .262 *Gas-turbine locomotives
- .263 *Electric locomotives
For diesel-electric locomotives, see 625.2662
- .265 *Air-compression-powered locomotives
- .266 *Diesel and semidiesel locomotives
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .266 2 *Diesel-electric locomotives
- .266 4 *Diesel-hydraulic locomotives
- .27 Mechanical operation
- [.28] Monorail rolling stock
 Relocated to 625.44

>

625.3–625.6 Special-purpose railroads

Class here roadbeds, tracks and accessories, rolling stock

Class comprehensive works in 625.1

*For mine railroads, see 622.66***.3 Inclined, mountain, ship railroads**

.32 Funicular railroads

.33 Rack railroads

.39 Ship railroads

.4 Local rail transit systems

Including guided-way systems

Class here local surface rail systems using conventional (heavy) rail technology [*formerly* 625.6], commuter rail systems, rapid transit rail systems, urban and suburban rail systems; comprehensive works on local rail transit systems with multiple transit modes*For light rail transit systems, see 625.6*

.42 Underground systems (Subways)

.44 Elevated systems

Including monorail systems [*formerly also* 625.103], monorail tracks [*formerly also* 625.146], monorail rolling stock [*formerly also* 625.28]**.5 Cable and aerial railways***For funicular railroads, see 625.32*

*Do not use notation 0228 from Table 1; class in 625.19

.6 Light rail transit systems

Including trolleybus systems

Class here interurban railroads (streetcar lines running between urban areas or from urban to rural areas); streetcar systems, tramways, trolley-car systems

Local surface rail systems using conventional (heavy) rail technology relocated to 625.4

.65 Roadbeds, tracks, accessories

.66 Rolling stock

Including horse-drawn streetcars, trolleybuses

Class here streetcars, trams, trolley cars

.7 Roads

Class here highways, streets

Class grade crossings (road crossings of railroads) in 625.163; class interdisciplinary works on roads and highways in 388.1; class interdisciplinary works on urban roads and streets in 388.411

For military road engineering, see 623.62; for artificial road surfaces, see 625.8; for forestry roads, see 634.93

[.702 88] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 625.76

.72 Surveying and design

.723 Surveying

Class soil surveys in 625.732

.725 Design

Including determination of bankings, grades

.73 Earthwork

.732 Engineering geology

Including rock and soil mechanics

Class here properties of soils that support structures (foundation soils)

.733 Foundation preparation

Including excavation

.734 Drainage

Including conduits, dikes, ditches, gutters, pipes

.734 2 Culverts

.735 Subsurface highway materials

- .74 Dirt roads
 Stabilized and unstabilized
 Including soil stabilization processes
 For surfacing dirt roads, see 625.75
- .75 Surfacing dirt roads
- .76 Maintenance and repair
 Class maintenance and repair of a specific kind of road or associated feature with the road or feature, plus notation 0288 from Table 1, e.g., maintenance of dirt roads 625.740288, of roadside areas 625.770288
- .761 Damages and their repairs
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including resurfacing, shoulder maintenance
- .763 Snow and ice control measures
 Including use of snowplows, snow fences
- .77 Roadside areas
 Including parking turnouts, picnic areas, rest areas; planting and cultivation of roadside vegetation
- .79 Ice crossings, traffic control equipment, protective roadside barriers
 For public lighting for roads, see 628.95
- .792 Ice crossings
 Class here ice and snow-compacted roads
- .794 Traffic control equipment
 Including markings, signals, signs
- .795 Protective roadside barriers
 Including dividers, fences
 Class snow fences in 625.763; class curbs in 625.888

.8 Artificial road surfaces

Class here comprehensive works on paving

For a paving surface not provided for here, see the surface, e.g., airport runways 629.13634

- [.802 88] Maintenance and repair
 Do not use; class in 625.76

> 625.81–625.86 Pavements in specific materials

Class sidewalks in specific materials in 625.881–625.886; class comprehensive works in 625.8

- .81 Flagstones
- .82 Brick and stone
Including gravel and crushed stone pavements
For flagstones, see 625.81
- .83 Wood
- .84 Concretes
For asphalt concrete, see 625.85
- .85 Bituminous materials
Including tar
Class here asphalt, asphalt concrete
For macadam, see 625.86
- .86 Macadam and telford surfaces
- .88 Sidewalks and auxiliary pavements
Standard subdivisions are added for sidewalks and auxiliary pavements together, for sidewalks alone
- .881–.886 Sidewalks in specific materials
Add to base number 625.88 the numbers following 625.8 in 625.81–625.86, e.g., brick sidewalks 625.882
- .888 Curbs
- .889 Auxiliary pavements
Including driveways, parking aprons
For curbs, see 625.888

[626] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

627 Hydraulic engineering

The branch of engineering dealing with utilization and control of natural waters of the earth

Class here hydraulic structures, water resource engineering

Class comprehensive works on ocean engineering in 620.4162

For water supply engineering, see 628.1

SUMMARY

- 627.04 **Special topics of hydraulic engineering**
- .1 **Inland waterways**
- .2 **Harbors, ports, roadsteads**
- .3 **Port facilities**
- .4 **Flood control**
- .5 **Reclamation, irrigation, related topics**
- .7 **Underwater operations**
- .8 **Dams and reservoirs**
- .9 **Other hydraulic structures**
- [.015 325] Hydrodynamics
- Do not use; class in 627.042
- .04 **Special topics of hydraulic engineering**
- .042 **Hydrodynamics of waterways and water bodies**
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .046 **Recreational waters**
- .1 **Inland waterways**
- For underwater operations, see 627.7*
- .12 **Rivers and streams**
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class interdisciplinary works on rivers and streams in 551.483
- For canalized rivers, see 627.13*
- [.120 153 25] Hydrodynamics
- Do not use; class in 627.125
- .122 **Sediment and silt**
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .123 **Water diversion**
- Including construction of barrages
- .124 **Estuaries and river mouths**
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .125 **Applied hydrodynamics**
- .13 **Canals**
- Class here canalized rivers, comprehensive engineering works on canals
- Class tunnels carrying canals in 624.193; class bridges carrying canals in 624.2; class interdisciplinary works on canals in 386.4
- For irrigation canals, see 627.52*
- .131 **Surveying and design**

- .133 Bank protection and reinforcement
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .135 Auxiliary devices
- .135 2 Gates, locks, sluices
- .135 3 Inclines, lifts, ramps

> 627.137–627.138 Specific types of navigation canals

Class engineering and construction details of specific types of canals in 627.131–627.135; class comprehensive works in 627.13

- .137 Ship canals
- .138 Barge canals
- .14 Lakes

.2 Harbors, ports, roadsteads

Standard subdivisions are added for harbors, ports, roadsteads together; for harbors alone; for ports alone

Class interdisciplinary works on harbors, ports, roadsteads in 387.1

For port facilities, see 627.3; for underwater operations, see 627.7

- .22 Roadsteads, anchorages, mooring grounds
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
 Including supertanker berthing areas
 Class freestanding mooring and berthing structures in 627.32
- .23 Channels
 Class here fairways
- .24 Protective structures
 Including breakwaters, jetties, seawalls
 Class comprehensive works on seawalls in 627.58

.3 Port facilities

Class architectural aspects in 725.34

For navigation aids, see 623.893

627.31–627.34 Specific types of structures and equipment

Class specific types of structures in marinas in 627.38; class comprehensive works in 627.3

- .31 Docks
 Class here piers, quays, wharves

- .32 Freestanding mooring and berthing structures
- .34 Cargo-handling equipment
Class comprehensive works on cargo-handling equipment in 623.867
- .38 Marinas
- .4 Flood control**
Including flood wreckage studies
Class here use of dams and reservoirs for flood control
Class construction of dams and reservoirs for flood control in 627.8. Class flood control for and wreckage studies of a specific type of structure with the structure, e.g., flood wreckage studies of bridges 624.2
- .42 Flood barriers
Including seawalls
Class here embankments, levees; comprehensive works on dikes
Class comprehensive works on seawalls in 627.58
For dikes and seawalls in reclamation from sea, see 627.549
- .44 Water impoundment
- .45 Water diversion
- .5 Reclamation, irrigation, related topics**
Class here comprehensive technological works on erosion and its control
Class interdisciplinary works on land reclamation in 333.73153; class interdisciplinary works on erosion in 551.302
For erosion of agricultural soils and its control, see 631.45; for reclamation of agricultural soils, see 631.6; for revegetation and surface mine reclamation, see 631.64
- .52 Irrigation
Class here construction and use of irrigation canals
Class construction of dams and reservoirs for irrigation in 627.8
For on-farm irrigation, see 631.587
- .54 Drainage and reclamation from sea
Standard subdivisions are added for drainage and reclamation from sea together, for drainage alone
- .549 Reclamation from sea
Including dikes
Class here polders
- .56 Artificial recharge of groundwater
Class comprehensive works on engineering of groundwater in 628.114

.58 Shore protection

Including stabilization of coastal dunes by engineering means, comprehensive works on seawalls

Class here beach erosion and its control, shore reclamation, comprehensive works on coastal engineering

Class dune stabilization by revegetation, comprehensive works on dune stabilization in 631.64

For harbor seawalls, see 627.24; for seawalls as flood barriers, see 627.42. For a specific aspect of coastal engineering, see the aspect, e.g., reclamation from sea 627.549

.7 Underwater operations

.700 1–.700 9 Standard subdivisions

> 627.702–627.704 General topics of underwater operations

Class comprehensive works in 627.7

.702 Underwater construction

.703 Salvage operations

.704 Research operations

.72 Diving

Class here interdisciplinary works on diving

For diving sports, see 797.2

.73 Dredging

.74 Blasting

.75 Drilling

.8 Dams and reservoirs

Standard subdivisions are added for dams and reservoirs together, for dams alone

Class here construction of dams and reservoirs for specific purposes

Class a specific use of dams and reservoirs with the use, e.g., water storage and conservation 628.132

.81 Earthwork, planning, surveying

Class earthwork, planning, surveying for specific kinds of dams in 627.82–627.84; class earthwork, planning, surveying for reservoirs in 627.86; class earthwork, planning, surveying for ancillary structures in 627.88

-
- > 627.82–627.84 Specific kinds of dams
- Class ancillary structures of specific kinds of dams in 627.88; class comprehensive works in 627.8
- .82 Masonry dams
- .83 Earth-fill and rock-fill dams
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .84 Movable dams
- .86 Reservoirs
- Including silting control
- Class ancillary structures of reservoirs in 627.88
- .88 Ancillary structures
- .882 Gates, penstocks, sluices
- .883 Spillways and weirs
- .9 Other hydraulic structures**
- [.92] Navigation aids
- Relocated to 623.893
- [.922] Lighthouses
- Relocated to 623.8942
- [.924] Light beacons, buoys, daymarks
- Relocated to 623.8944
- .98 Offshore structures
- Class here artificial islands, drilling platforms
- Class a specific use of offshore structures with the use, e.g., use of drilling platforms in petroleum extraction 622.33819
- For freestanding mooring and berthing structures, see 627.32*

628 Sanitary engineering

Class here environmental engineering (environmental health engineering, environmental protection engineering), green technology (environmental technology), municipal engineering, public sanitation technology, sustainable engineering

Class interdisciplinary works on environmental protection in 363.7

For military sanitary engineering, see 623.75; for plumbing, see 696.1. For a specific aspect of municipal engineering not provided for here, see the aspect, e.g., road and street engineering 625.7, laying gas pipelines 665.744; for a specific aspect of environmental engineering, green technology, sustainable engineering not provided for here, see the aspect, plus notation 0286 from Table 1, e.g., green technology in electronic circuits 621.38150286

See Manual at 300 vs. 600; also at 363 vs. 302–307, 333.7, 570–590, 600

SUMMARY

- 628.1 Water supply
- .2 Sewers
- .3 Sewage treatment and disposal
- .4 Waste technology, public toilets, street cleaning
- .5 Pollution control technology and industrial sanitation engineering
- .7 Sanitary engineering for rural and sparsely populated areas
- .9 Other branches of sanitary and municipal engineering

[.091 734] Treatment in rural regions

Do not use; class in 628.7

.1 Water supply

Class here comprehensive works on engineering of water supply, sewers, sewage treatment and disposal

Class interdisciplinary works on water supply in 363.61

For sewers, see 628.2; for sewage treatment and disposal, see 628.3; for water supply for rural and sparsely populated areas, see 628.72

SUMMARY

- 628.102 87 Measurement
- .11 Sources
- .13 Storage and conservation
- .14 Collection and distribution systems
- .15 Water mains and service pipes
- .16 Testing, analysis, treatment, pollution countermeasures

.102 87 Measurement

Do not use for testing; class in 628.161

- .11 Sources
 Class here protection and engineering evaluation of sources
 Class economic and social evaluation of adequacy, development requirements, conservation of sources in 333.91; class hydraulic engineering in 627; class interdisciplinary works on sources, on evaluation of sources in 553.7
See also 628.132 for reservoirs
- .112 Lakes, rivers, springs
 Class artesian wells in 628.114
- .114 Groundwater
 Including artesian wells, prevention of seawater intrusion, prospecting for water
 Class here wells
- .116 Seawater
 Class desalinization in 628.167
- .13 Storage and conservation
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including storage tanks, water towers
 Class construction of dams for water storage and conservation in 627.8
- .132 Reservoirs
 Including evaporation control
 Class engineering of reservoirs for water supply, comprehensive works on protection of reservoirs in 627.86
- .14 Collection and distribution systems
For construction of dams and reservoirs, see 627.8; for storage and conservation, see 628.13; for water mains and service pipes, see 628.15
- .142 Collection systems
- .144 Distribution systems
- .15 Water mains and service pipes
 Class here aqueducts
- .16 Testing, analysis, treatment, pollution countermeasures
See Manual at 363.61
- .161 Testing and analysis
 Class here testing and measurement of pollution

- .162 Treatment
 Class here treatment of sewage effluent for reuse; comprehensive engineering works on treatment of water supply and sewage
For mechanical treatment, see 628.164; for chemical treatment, see 628.166; for desalinization, see 628.167; for sewage treatment, see 628.3
- .162 2 Coagulation (Flocculation), screening, sedimentation (settling)
- .164 Mechanical treatment
 Including filtration, membrane (osmotic) processes
 Class membrane processes for desalinization in 628.1674
For screening, sedimentation, see 628.1622
- .165 Aeration
 Including deaeration
See also 628.1662 for ozone treatment
- .166 Chemical treatment
For coagulation, see 628.1622; for aeration, see 628.165
- .166 2 Disinfection
 Including chlorination, copper sulfate treatment, ozone treatment, ultraviolet radiation
- .166 3 Fluoridation
 Class interdisciplinary works on fluoridation in 614.5996
- .166 6 Demineralization
 Including softening
For desalinization, see 628.167
- .167 Desalinization
- .167 2 Distillation
- .167 23 Distillation using nuclear energy
- .167 25 Solar desalinization
- .167 3 Electrolysis
- .167 4 Membrane processes
- .167 44 Reverse osmosis
- .168 Pollution countermeasures
 Class prevention of natural pollution of water sources in 628.11; class interdisciplinary works on water pollution countermeasures in 363.7394
For countermeasures that consist of routine water treatment, see 628.162; for countermeasures that consist of sewage treatment, see 628.3

- .24 Design and construction
- .25 Appurtenances of sewers
 - Including catch basins, house connections, manholes
- .29 Pumping stations

.3 Sewage treatment and disposal

Standard subdivisions are added for sewage treatment and disposal together, for sewage treatment alone

For unsewered sewage disposal, see 628.742. For treatment and disposal of sewage in a specific technology, see the technology, plus notation 0286 from Table 1, e.g., treatment of sewage from beverage plants by beverage makers 663.0286

See Manual at 363.61

> 628.32–628.35 Treatment

Class comprehensive works in 628.3

.32 Disinfection

.34 Primary treatment

Including primary sedimentation, screening

Class comprehensive works on a specific process used in both primary and secondary treatment in 628.351–628.354

.35 Secondary and tertiary treatment

Standard subdivisions are added for secondary and tertiary treatment together, for secondary treatment alone

Class here aeration, biological treatment

628.351–628.354 Secondary treatment

Class comprehensive works in 628.35

.351 Oxidation ponds

Variant names: sewage lagoons, stabilization ponds

Including oxidation ditches

.352 Filtration

.353 Secondary sedimentation

.354 Activated sludge process

- .357 Tertiary treatment
 Including nitrogen removal
 Class comprehensive works on a specific process used in both secondary and tertiary treatment in 628.351–628.354
 For demineralization, see 628.358
- .358 Demineralization
- .36 Disposal
 For disposal into water, see 628.39
- .362 Sewage effluent disposal
 For disposal by artificial recharge of groundwater, see 627.56; for treatment for reuse as water supply, see 628.162
- .362 3 Sewage irrigation
- .364 Sewage sludge disposal
 Including sanitary landfills
 For underground disposal of sludge other than in sanitary landfills, see 628.366; for incineration of sludge, see 628.37; for utilization of sludge, see 628.38
- .366 Underground disposal of sludge
 Other than in sanitary landfills
 Including construction of facilities, storage
- .37 Incineration of sludge
- .38 Utilization of sludge
 Class here biosolids
 For a specific use of sludge, see the use, e.g., use as fertilizer 631.869
- .39 Disposal of sewage, sewage effluent, sewage sludge into water
- .4 Waste technology, public toilets, street cleaning**
 Standard subdivisions are added for waste technology, public toilets, street cleaning together; for waste technology alone
 Class here industrial waste treatment and disposal
 Class pollution from wastes in 628.5; class interdisciplinary works on wastes in 363.728
 For gaseous wastes, see 628.53; for waste technology for rural and sparsely populated areas, see 628.74. For control and utilization of wastes in a specific technology, see the technology, plus notation 0286 from Table 1, e.g., waste technology in fuel processing 662.60286

- .42 Hazardous and toxic wastes
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Waste technology only
 Class social services for hazardous and toxic wastes in 363.7287
For hazardous and toxic liquid wastes, see 628.43; for hazardous and toxic solid wastes, see 628.44; for hazardous and toxic gaseous wastes, see 628.53
- .43 Liquid wastes
For liquid wastes released into bodies of water, see 628.168; for sewage treatment and disposal, see 628.3
- .44 Solid wastes (Refuse)
- .442 Collection
- .445 Treatment and disposal
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
-
- > 628.445 6–628.445 9 Disposal
 Class comprehensive works in 628.445
- .445 6 Disposal on land and underground
- .445 62 Open dumps
- .445 64 Sanitary landfills
- .445 66 Underground disposal
 Other than in sanitary landfills
 Including construction of facilities, storage
- .445 7 Incineration
- .445 8 Conversion into useful products
 Class here recycling technology
For a specific conversion technology, see the technology, e.g., converting garbage into fertilizer 668.6375
- .445 9 Disposal into water
- .45 Public toilets
- .46 Street cleaning

.5 Pollution control technology and industrial sanitation engineering

Standard subdivisions are added for pollution control technology and industrial sanitation engineering together, for pollution control technology alone

Class here industrial pollution technology

Class interdisciplinary works on pollution in 363.73

For noise control, see 620.23; for water pollution control, see 628.168. For pollution control technology in a specific technology, see the technology, plus notation 0286 from Table 1, e.g., engineering to control pollution in fuel processing plants 662.60286

.51 Industrial sanitation engineering

Class here plant sanitation

.52 Specific kinds of pollutants

Class here movement through environment

Class specific kinds of pollutants in water in 628.168; class specific kinds of pollutants in air in 628.53; class specific kinds of pollutants in soil in 628.55

.529 Pesticides**.53 Air pollution**

Class here gaseous wastes, dispersal of pollutants from source

Class air quality surveys in 363.73922

.532 Products of combustion

Class here smog

.535 Radioactive substances

Including radon

.536 Microorganisms**.55 Soil pollution****.7 Sanitary engineering for rural and sparsely populated areas**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class pollution in rural and sparsely populated areas in 628.5091734; class pest control in rural and sparsely populated areas in 628.96091734

.72 Water supply**.74 Waste technology****.742 Unsewered sewage disposal**

Including septic tanks

.744 Solid waste technology

Class agricultural solid waste technology in 628.746

- .746 Agricultural waste technology
 Class water pollution from agricultural wastes in 628.1684
 *For utilization of agricultural wastes in a specific technology, see the
 technology, e.g., utilization for biogas 665.776*
- .746 6 Animal wastes
 Class here animal manures
- .9 Other branches of sanitary and municipal engineering**
- .92 Fire safety and fire fighting technology
 Including general disaster and rescue technology
 Class interdisciplinary works on fire hazards and their control in 363.37
 *For a specific disaster and rescue technology, see the technology, e.g.,
 first aid 616.0252*
- .922 Fire safety technology
 Including fire escapes, rescue operations
 Class here fire prevention
- .922 2 Flammability studies and testing
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class development of fire resistance in products in 628.9223
- .922 3 Fireproofing and fire retardation
 Including fire doors, fire retardants
 *For fireproofing a specific product, see the product, e.g., textiles
 677.689, buildings 693.82*
- .922 5 Fire detection and alarms
- .925 Fire fighting technology
 Class here use of equipment and supplies, comprehensive works on their
 manufacture
 *For shipboard fire fighting technology, see 623.8886; for fire fighting
 technology in airports, see 629.1368; for forest fire technology,
 see 634.9618. For manufacture of a specific kind of equipment and
 supplies, see the kind, e.g., nautical fire fighting equipment 623.865,
 fire resistant clothing 687.16, fire stations 690.519*
- .925 2 Extinction with water
 Including hydraulic systems, sprinkler systems
- .925 4 Extinction with chemicals
- .925 9 Fire fighting vehicles
 Class here fire engines
 For construction of fire engines, see 629.225

- .95 Public lighting
 Class lighting of airports in 629.1365
- .96 Pest control
 Class here household pests, comprehensive works on pest control technology
 Class interdisciplinary works on pest control in 363.78
 For control of plant pests, see 628.97; for control of agricultural pests, see 632.6
 Control of disease-carrying pests relocated to 614.43
- .964 Mollusks
 Class here slugs, snails
- .965 Terrestrial invertebrates
- .965 7 Insects
 Including ants, cockroaches, house flies, mosquitoes, termites
- .968 Birds
- .969 Mammals
- .969 3 Rodents
 Class here rat control
- .97 Control of plant pests

629 Other branches of engineering

SUMMARY

- 629.04 **Transportation engineering**
 .1 **Aerospace engineering**
 .2 **Motor land vehicles, cycles**
 .3 **Air-cushion vehicles (Ground-effect machines, Hovercraft)**
 .4 **Astronautics**
 .8 **Automatic control engineering**
- .04 Transportation engineering
 Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 629.04 in the number coming last, e.g., land vehicles 629.049 (*not* 629.046)
 Class military transportation technology in 623.6; class operation of transportation equipment for recreational purposes in 796-797; class interdisciplinary works on transportation in 388. Class technical problems peculiar to transportation of a specific commodity with the commodity, e.g., slurry transportation of coal 662.624
- .040 289 Safety measures
 Including comfort equipment, e.g., air conditioning; control devices, e.g., markings, signals, signs

- .045 Navigation
 For celestial navigation, see 527
- .046 Transportation equipment
 Including remote-control vehicles
 Class here vehicles
 See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388
- .046 022 8 Models and miniatures
 Class interdisciplinary works on remote-control models in
 796.15
 See Manual at 796.15 vs. 629.0460228
- .047 Stationary transportation facilities
 Class here trafficways
 For transportation buildings, see 690.53

> 629.048–629.049 Engineering of transportation in specific mediums

Class comprehensive works in 629.04

For aerospace engineering, see 629.1

- .048 Water transportation engineering
 *For nautical engineering and seamanship, see 623.8; for inland
 waterways, see 627.1; for harbors, ports, roadsteads, see 627.2; for
 overwater air-cushion vehicles, see 629.324*
- .049 Land transportation engineering
 *For pipes and pipelines, see 621.8672; for railroads, roads,
 highways, see 625; for motor land vehicles, cycles, see 629.2; for
 overland air-cushion vehicles, see 629.322; for nonmotor land
 vehicles, see 688.6*

.1 **Aerospace engineering**

Class military aerospace engineering in 623.66

For astronautics, see 629.4

SUMMARY

- 629.11 **Mechanics and operation of aerospace flight**
 .12 **Aerospace vehicles and stationary facilities**
 .13 **Aeronautics**
 .14 **Portable flight vehicles**

.11 Mechanics and operation of aerospace flight

Class mechanics and operation of a specific type of aerospace flight with the
 type, e.g., astromechanics 629.411

- .12 Aerospace vehicles and stationary facilities
 Aerospace vehicles: vehicles that function equally well in the atmosphere
 and space

Class a specific facility with the facility, e.g., air-cushion vehicles 629.3

*For vehicles that function primarily in the atmosphere, see 629.133; for
 vehicles that function primarily in space, see 629.47*

- .13 Aeronautics

See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388

SUMMARY

629.130 01--.130 09	Standard subdivisions
.130 1--.130 9	Standard subdivisions of flight
.132	Mechanics of flight; flying and related topics
.133	Aircraft types
.134	Aircraft components and general techniques
.135	Aircraft instrumentation (Avionics)
.136	Airports

- .130 01--.130 09 Standard subdivisions

- .130 1 Philosophy and theory of flight

- [.130 153 36] Aeromechanics of flight

Do not use; class in 629.1323

- [.130 155 15] Aviation meteorology

Do not use; class in 629.1324

- .130 2--.130 8 Standard subdivisions of flight

- .130 9 History, geographic treatment, biography of flight

Do not use for flight guides; class in 629.13254

Record of flying activities in all types of aircraft

- .130 92 Biography of flight

Class here fliers, pilots

- .132 Mechanics of flight; flying and related topics

- [.132 01--.132 09] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 629.1301--629.1309

- .132 2 Aerostatics

- .132 3 Aerodynamics

Including aircraft noise

Class here comprehensive works on aeromechanics

*For aerostatics, see 629.1322; for weather aerodynamics, see
 629.1324*

- .132 300 1-.132 300 9 Standard subdivisions
- .132 303 Subsonic aerodynamics
- .132 304 Transonic aerodynamics
 Including sonic booms
- .132 305 Supersonic aerodynamics
- .132 306 Hypersonic aerodynamics
- .132 31 Gliding and soaring
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .132 32 Airflow
 Including turbulence
 For boundary layers, see 629.13237
- .132 322 Incompressible airflow
- .132 323 Compressible airflow
- .132 327 Air pockets (Air holes)
- .132 33 Lift and thrust
- .132 34 Drag (Air resistance)
- .132 35 Pressure distribution and aerodynamic load
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .132 36 Stability and control
- .132 362 Aeroelasticity, flutter, vibration
- .132 364 Moments of inertia
 Including pitch, roll, yaw; restoring torques and damping
- .132 37 Boundary layers
- .132 38 Propulsion principles
- .132 4 Aviation meteorology
 Weather conditions and aerodynamics
 Class piloting in bad weather in 629.1325214

- .132 5 Flying and related topics
- Standard subdivisions are added for flying and related topics together, for flying alone
- Class flying model airplanes in 796.154; class flying kites in 796.158; class air sports in 797.5
- For aviation meteorology, see 629.1324; for automatic control, see 629.1326*
- See Manual at 796.15 vs. 629.0460228*
- [.132 509] History, geographic treatment, biography of flight
- Do not use; class in 629.1309
- .132 51 Navigation
- .132 52 Piloting
- Class here comprehensive works on piloting and navigation, on piloting airplanes
- For navigation, see 629.13251*
- [.132 520 92] Biography
- Do not use; class in 629.13092
- .132 521 General topics of piloting
- Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 629.132521 in the number coming first, e.g., landing during bad weather 629.1325213 (*not* 629.1325214)
- Class general topics of specific types of aircraft in 629.132522–629.132528
- .132 521 2 Takeoff
- .132 521 3 Landing
- .132 521 4 Piloting under adverse conditions
- Including bad weather, disablement of craft, nighttime
- Class here instrument flying
- .132 521 6 Piloting commercial craft
- .132 521 7 Piloting private craft
- .132 522 Piloting lighter-than-air aircraft
- .132 523–.132 528 Piloting specific types of heavier-than-air aircraft
- Add to base number 629.13252 the numbers following 629.1333 in 629.13333–629.13338, e.g., piloting helicopters 629.1325252; however, for comprehensive works on piloting airplanes, see 629.13252; for piloting commercial craft, see 629.1325216; for piloting private craft, see 629.1325217
- Class hang gliding in 629.14

- .132 54 Flight guides (Pilot guides)
 Class here charts, logbooks, maps
- [.132 540 91–.132 540 99] Geographic treatment
 Do not use; class in 629.132541–629.132549
- .132 541–.132 549 Specific geographic areas
 Add to base number 629.13254 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 pilot guides to Spain 629.1325446
- .132 55 Wreckage studies
- .132 6 Automatic control
 Manned and guided aircraft
 See also 629.1352 for automatic pilots
- .133 Aircraft types
 Class components of specific aircraft types in 629.134
- [.133 022 8] Models and miniatures
 Do not use; class in 629.1331
- [.133 028 7] Testing and measurement
 Do not use; class in 629.1345
- [.133 028 8] Maintenance and repair
 Do not use; class in 629.1346
- .133 028 9 Safety measures
 Class safety equipment in 629.13443
- .133 1 Models and miniatures
 Add to base number 629.1331 the numbers following 629.133 in
 629.1332–629.1333, e.g., models of helicopters 629.1331352
 Class comprehensive works on models and miniatures of military
 aircraft in 623.7460228; class flying model aircraft, interdisciplinary
 works on building and flying model aircraft in 796.154. Class models
 and miniatures of a specific type of military aircraft with the type
 in 623.741–623.746, plus notation 0228 from Table 1, e.g., models
 of fighters 623.74640228; class models and miniatures of a specific
 aircraft component with the component in 629.134–629.135, plus
 notation 0228 from Table 1, e.g., models of turboprop engines
 629.13435320228
 See Manual at 796.15 vs. 629.0460228
- .133 2 *Lighter-than-air aircraft

*Do not use notation 0228 from Table 1; class in 629.1331

- .133 22 *Free and captive balloons
 Including hot air balloons
 Class dirigible balloons in 629.13324
- .133 24 *Airships (Dirigibles)
 For specific types of airships, see 629.13325–629.13327
-
- > 629.133 25–629.133 27 Specific types of airships
 Class comprehensive works in 629.13324
- .133 25 *Rigid airships
- .133 26 *Semirigid airships
- .133 27 *Nonrigid airships (Blimps)
- .133 3 *Heavier-than-air aircraft
- .133 32 *Kites
 Class flying kites in 796.158
- .133 33 *Gliders
 Class hang gliders in 629.14
- .133 34 Airplanes
 For rocket planes, see 629.13338
- [.133 340 228] Models and miniatures
 Do not use; class in 629.133134
- [.133 340 287] Testing and measurement
 Do not use; class in 629.1345
- [.133 340 288] Maintenance and repair
 Do not use; class in 629.1346
- .133 340 4 Special topics of airplanes
- .133 340 42 General topics of airplanes
- .133 340 422 *Private airplanes
 Class private short takeoff and landing airplanes in
 629.133340426
- .133 340 423 *Commercial airplanes
 Class commercial short takeoff and landing airplanes
 in 629.133340426
- .133 340 426 *Short takeoff and landing airplanes (STOL airplanes)

*Do not use notation 0228 from Table 1; class in 629.1331

- .133 343 *Propeller-driven airplanes
 Piston and turboprop
 Including ultralight airplanes
 Class propeller-driven seaplanes in 629.133347; class
 propeller-driven amphibious planes in 629.133348
- .133 347 *Seaplanes
- .133 348 *Amphibious planes
- .133 349 *Jet airplanes
 Class jet seaplanes in 629.133347; class jet amphibious planes
 in 629.133348
- .133 35 *Vertical-lift craft (VTOL craft)
 Including autogiros, convertiplanes, flying jeeps
- .133 352 *Helicopters
- .133 36 *Orthopters (Ornithopters)
- .133 38 *Rocket planes
- .134 Aircraft components and general techniques
 For aircraft instrumentation, see 629.135
- [.134 028 7] Testing and measurement
 Do not use; class in 629.1345
- [.134 028 8] Maintenance and repair
 Do not use; class in 629.1346
- .134 1 Analysis and design
 Class analysis and design of parts in 629.1343; class analysis and
 design of interiors and special equipment in 629.1344
- .134 2 Manufacturing and assembling
 Class manufacturing and assembling of parts in 629.1343; class
 manufacturing and assembling of interiors and special equipment in
 629.1344
- .134 3 Parts
 Class here components
 For interiors and special equipment, see 629.1344
- .134 31 Airframes
 Class a specific component part with the component, e.g.,
 fuselages 629.13434

*Do not use notation 0228 from Table 1; class in 629.1331

- .134 32 Airfoils
 Including wing accessories
 Class here wings
 For control surfaces, see 629.13433; for propellers, vertical lift rotors, see 629.13436
- .134 33 Control surfaces
 Including ailerons, flaps, rudders
- .134 34 Fuselages
- .134 35 Engines and fuels
 Standard subdivisions are added for engines and fuels together, for engines alone
 Including pollution control
- .134 351 Fuels
 Class here propellants
 Class fuels and propellants for specific engines in 629.134352–629.134355
- .134 352 Reciprocating and compound engines
 Piston and compound piston-turbine engines
 Class comprehensive works on reciprocating, compound, gas-turbine, jet engines in 629.13435
- .134 353 Gas-turbine and jet engines
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .134 353 2 Turboprop engines
- .134 353 3 Turbojet engines
- .134 353 4 Turboramjet engines
- .134 353 5 Ramjet engines
- .134 353 6 Pulse-jet engines
- .134 353 7 Fan-jet engines
- .134 354 Rocket engines
- .134 355 Nuclear power plants
- .134 36 Propellers and vertical lift rotors
- .134 37 Rigging and bracing equipment
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .134 38 Other equipment

- .134 381 Landing gear
 See also 678.32 for manufacture of tires
- .134 386 Escape equipment
 Including capsule cockpits, parachutes, pilot ejection seats
- .134 4 Interiors and special equipment
- .134 42 Comfort equipment
 Including air conditioning, heating, pressurization, soundproofing,
 ventilating equipment
- .134 43 Safety equipment
 Including fire prevention equipment, life rafts, safety belts
- .134 45 Interiors
 Including cabins
- .134 5 Tests and measurements
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Aircraft and airplanes in general
 Class wreckage studies in 629.13255
 *For test and measurements of a specific type of aircraft other
 than airplanes in general or a specific part, see the type of aircraft or
 part, plus notation 0287 from Table 1, e.g., tests and measurements of
 seaplanes 629.1333470287, of interiors 629.134450287*
- .134 52 Ground tests and inspection
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in
 heading
 Including wind and shock tunnels
- .134 53 Flight tests
- .134 6 Maintenance and repair
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Aircraft and airplanes in general
 *For maintenance and repair of specific types of aircraft other than
 airplanes in general or of a specific part, see the type of aircraft or
 part, e.g., maintenance and repair of seaplanes 629.1333470288,
 of interiors 629.134450288*
- .135 Aircraft instrumentation (Avionics)
- .135 1 Navigation instrumentation
 Including landing and navigation lights

- .135 2 Flight instrumentation
 Including accelerometers, altimeters, Machmeters; automatic pilots;
 air-speed, vertical-speed, turn and bank indicators; directional gyros,
 gyrohorizons
- .135 3 Power-plant monitoring instrumentation
- .135 4 Electrical systems
 Class electrical systems of a specific kind of instrumentation in
 629.1351–629.1353
- .135 5 Electronic systems
 Class electronic systems of a specific kind of instrumentation in
 629.1351–629.1353
- .136 Airports
 Class here commercial land airports
- .136 1 Types other than commercial land airports
 Including floating airports (seadromes)
 Class details of airports in 629.1363–629.1368
- .136 12 Airstrips
- .136 16 Heliports
-
- > 629.136 3–629.136 8 Details of airports
 Class comprehensive works in 629.136
- .136 3 Runways
- .136 34 Pavements
- .136 35 Drainage systems
- .136 37 Snow removal and compaction
- .136 5 Lighting systems
- .136 6 Air traffic control systems
 See Manual at 629.1366 vs. 387.740426
- .136 8 Fire fighting equipment
- .14 Portable flight vehicles
 Units intended to be carried by a single person
 Including hang gliders and gliding
 Class hang gliding as a sport in 797.55

.2 Motor land vehicles, cycles

Standard subdivisions are added for motor land vehicles, cycles together; for motor land vehicles alone

Class here automotive engineering

Class military motor land vehicles in 623.747

See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388

SUMMARY

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| 629.201–209 | Standard subdivisions and special topics of motor land vehicles |
| .22 | Types of vehicles |
| .23 | Design, materials, construction |
| .24 | Chassis |
| .25 | Engines |
| .26 | Bodies |
| .27 | Other equipment |
| .28 | Tests, driving, maintenance, repair |
| .29 | Specialized land vehicles |
| [.202 28] | Models and miniatures
Do not use; class in 629.221 |
| .202 84 | Apparatus and equipment
Do not use for materials; class in 629.232 |
| [.202 87] | Testing and measurement
Do not use; class in 629.282 |
| [.202 88] | Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class in 629.287 |
| .202 89 | Safety measures
Class safety engineering of motor land vehicles in 629.2042 |
| .204 | Special topics of motor land vehicles |
| .204 2 | Safety engineering of motor land vehicles
Class here comprehensive works on motor land vehicle and highway safety engineering
<i>For highway safety engineering, see 625.70289</i> |
| .22 | Types of vehicles
Class design, materials, construction of a specific type of vehicle in 629.23; class parts of a specific type of vehicle in 629.24–629.27; class driving a specific type of vehicle in 629.283; class nonsurface motor land vehicles, vehicles for extraterrestrial surfaces in 629.29 |
| [.220 228] | Models and miniatures
Do not use; class in 629.221 |

- [.220 287] Testing and measurement
 Do not use; class in 629.282
- [.220 288] Maintenance and repair
 Do not use; class in 629.287
- .220 289 Safety measures
 Class safety accessories in 629.276
- .220 4 Special topics of types of vehicles
 Including three-wheel vehicles
- .220 42 *Off-road vehicles
 Including all-terrain vehicles, snowmobiles
 For dune buggies, see 629.222
- .220 43 *Natural gas vehicles
- .221 Models and miniatures
 Including models and miniatures of off-road vehicles
 Add to base number 629.221 the numbers following 629.22 in
 629.222–629.229, e.g., models of racing cars 629.2218
 Class comprehensive works on models and miniatures of military motor
 land vehicles in 623.7470228; class operating remote-control models in
 796.156. Class models and miniatures of a specific type of military motor
 land vehicles with the type in 623.7472–623.7475, plus notation 0228
 from Table 1, e.g., models of tanks 623.747520228
 See Manual at 796.15 vs. 629.0460228
-
- > 629.222–629.228 Gasoline-powered, oil-powered, man-powered vehicles
 Class comprehensive works in 629.22
- .222 *Passenger automobiles
 Including dune buggies, minivans, station wagons
 Class passenger automobiles rebuilt or modified for high speed in
 629.2286
 See also 629.2234 for vans
- .222 1 *Sports cars
 Class racing cars in 629.228
 For specific named sports cars, see 629.2222

*Do not use notation 0228 from Table 1 for models and miniatures; class in 629.221. Do not use notation 0287 from Table 1 for testing and measurement; class in 629.282. Do not use notation 0288 from Table 1 for maintenance and repair; class in 629.287

- .222 2 Specific named passenger automobiles
 Arrange alphabetically by name or make of car
- [.222 201--222 209] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 629.22201–629.22209
- .222 3 *Passenger automobiles for public transportation
- .222 32 *Taxicabs and limousines
- .222 33 *Buses
 For guided-way systems, see 625.4; for trolleybuses, see 625.66
- .222 34 *Ambulances
- .223 *Light trucks
- .223 2 *Pickup trucks
- .223 4 *Vans
 See also 629.222 for minivans
- .224 *Trucks (Lorries)
 Class here tractor trailers (articulated lorries, semi-trailers)
 For light trucks, see 629.223
- .225 *Work vehicles
 Including bulldozers, fire engines
 For automotive materials-handling equipment, see 621.86; for trucks, see 629.224
- .225 2 *Tractors
 For steam tractors, see 629.2292
- .226 *Campers, motor homes, trailers (caravans)
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
 Class here comprehensive works on recreational vehicles (RVs)
 Class construction of towed mobile homes in 690.879
 For a specific kind of recreational vehicle not provided for here, see the vehicle, e.g., dune buggies 629.222
 See also 629.224 for tractor trailers
 See Manual at 643.29, 690.879, 728.79 vs. 629.226
- .227 *Cycles
- .227 1 *Monocycles

*Do not use notation 0228 from Table 1 for models and miniatures; class in 629.221. Do not use notation 0287 from Table 1 for testing and measurement; class in 629.282. Do not use notation 0288 from Table 1 for maintenance and repair; class in 629.287

- .227 2 *Bicycles
 For mopeds and motor bicycles, see 629.2275; for tandem bicycles, see 629.2276
- .227 3 *Tricycles
- .227 5 *Motorcycles
 Including minibikes, mopeds, motor bicycles
 Class here motorscooters
- .227 6 *Tandem bicycles
- .228 *Racing cars
 Conventional and converted
 Including karts
- .228 6 *Hot rods
- .229 *Other types of vehicles
- .229 2 *Steam-powered vehicles
 Including steam tractors and steamrollers
 Class comprehensive works on tractors in 629.2252
- .229 3 *Electric-powered vehicles
 For trolleybuses, see 625.66
- .229 4 *Air-compression-powered vehicles
- .229 5 *Solar energy-powered vehicles
- .229 6 *Nuclear-powered vehicles
- .23 Design, materials, construction
 Class materials for, design and construction of parts in 629.24–629.27
- .231 Analysis and design
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including ergonomic and safety design
 Class safety accessories in 629.276
- .232 Materials
- .234 Manufacturing techniques
 Including factory inspection

*Do not use notation 0228 from Table 1 for models and miniatures; class in 629.221. Do not use notation 0287 from Table 1 for testing and measurement; class in 629.282. Do not use notation 0288 from Table 1 for maintenance and repair; class in 629.287

-
- > 629.24–629.27 Parts
- Class comprehensive works in 629.2
- .24 Chassis
- .242 Supporting frames
- .243 Suspension systems
- Class here springs and shock absorbers
- .244 Transmission devices
- .244 6 Automatic transmission devices
- .245 Rear axles, differentials, drive shafts
- .246 Brakes
- Including brake fluids
- .247 Front axles and steering gear
- .248 Wheels
- .248 2 Tires
- See also 678.32 for manufacture of tires*
- .25 Engines
- Class here pollution control
- Most works covering automobile engines as a whole focus on spark-ignition engines and are classed in 629.2504
- .250 01–.250 09 Standard subdivisions
-
- 629.250 1–629.250 9 Specific types of engines
- Class comprehensive works in 629.25
- .250 1 Steam engines
- .250 2 Electric engines
- .250 3–.250 6 Internal-combustion engines
- Add to base number 629.250 the numbers following 621.43 in 621.433–621.436, e.g., spark-ignition engines 629.2504
- .250 7 Air-compression engines
- .250 8 Solar engines
- .250 9 Nuclear engines

- > 629.252–629.258 Parts and auxiliary systems of internal-combustion engines
- Class here comprehensive works on specific kinds of parts and auxiliary systems of automotive engines
- Class comprehensive works in 629.25
- For a specific part and auxiliary system of noninternal-combustion engines, see 629.25*
- .252 Motor parts of internal-combustion engines
Including mufflers (silencers)
- .252 8 Emission control devices
- .253 Fuel systems and fuels of internal-combustion engines
Standard subdivisions are added for fuel systems and fuels together, for fuel systems alone
Class here electronic fuel injection systems
- .253 3 Carburetors
- .253 8 Fuels
- .254 Ignition, electrical, electronic systems of internal-combustion engines
Standard subdivisions are added for ignition, electrical, electronic systems together; for ignition systems alone; for electrical systems alone
Class a specific use of electrical and electronic systems with the use, e.g., electronic fuel injection 629.253, electric starters 629.257
- .254 2 Batteries
- .254 8 Auxiliary electrical systems
For lighting equipment, see 629.271
- .254 9 Electronic systems
- .255 Lubricating systems of internal-combustion engines
Class here lubricants
- .256 Cooling systems of internal-combustion engines
Including antifreeze solutions
- .257 Starting devices of internal-combustion engines
- .258 Throttles and spark control devices of internal-combustion engines
- .26 Bodies
Including convertible tops, doors, fenders, running boards, seats

- .260 288 Maintenance and repair
 Class here bodywork
 Class comprehensive works on customizing and detailing in 629.287
- .262 Decorations
- .266 Windows and windshields
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .27 Other equipment
- .271 Lighting equipment
- .272 Electronic systems
 Class here computer systems
 For electronic fuel injection systems, see 629.253; for electronic systems of internal-combustion engines, see 629.2549
- .273 Panel instrumentation
- .275 Hardware
 Including handles, hinges, locks
- .276 Safety accessories
 Including air bags, bumpers, mirrors, seat belts, windshield wipers and washers
 Class comprehensive works on safety design in 629.231
- .277 Comfort, convenience, entertainment equipment
 Including audio systems, glove compartments, telephones, televisions, two-way radios
- .277 2 Heaters, ventilators, air-conditioners
- .28 Tests, driving, maintenance, repair
- .282 Tests and related topics
 Class testing and measurement of a specific part with the part, plus notation 0287 from Table 1, e.g., testing brakes 629.2460287
 For factory inspection, see 629.234
- .282 4 Road tests (Performance tests)
- .282 5 Periodic inspection and roadability tests
- .282 6 Wreckage studies
 Determination of mechanical failure through examination of remains

- .283 Driving (Operation)
 Class here driving private passenger automobiles
 For driving vehicles other than internal-combustion passenger vehicles, see 629.284
- .283 04 Special topics of driving
 Including factors in safe driving
- .283 042 Driving off-road vehicles
 Including all-terrain vehicles, snowmobiles
- .283 3 Driving public transportation vehicles
- .283 32 Taxicabs and limousines
- .283 33 Buses
- .283 34 Ambulances
- .284 Driving vehicles other than internal-combustion passenger vehicles
 Add to base number 629.284 the numbers following 629.22 in 629.223–629.229, e.g., driving trucks 629.2844
- .286 Services provided by garages and service stations
 For maintenance and repair, see 629.287
 See also 690.538 for construction of garage and service stations
- .287 Maintenance and repair
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here customizing, detailing
 Class works on car tune-ups limited to maintenance and repair of the engine in 629.250288. Class maintenance and repair of a specific part with the part, plus notation 0288 from Table 1, e.g., maintenance of bodies 629.260288
- .287 04 Special topics of maintenance and repair of types of vehicles
 Including three-wheel vehicles
- .287 042 Maintenance and repair of off-road vehicles
 Including all-terrain vehicles, snowmobiles
 For dune buggies, see 629.2872
- .287 043 Maintenance and repair of natural gas vehicles
- .287 1–.287 9 Maintenance and repair of specific kinds of vehicles and of models and miniatures
 Add to base number 629.287 the numbers following 629.22 in 629.222–629.229, e.g., repair of motorcycles 629.28775
 Arrange alphabetically by trade name under each type of vehicle
 (Option: Arrange all vehicles regardless of type alphabetically by trade name)

- .29 Specialized land vehicles
For overland air-cushion vehicles, see 629.322
- .292 Nonsurface motor land vehicles
 Including subterranean, ocean floor vehicles
- .295 Vehicles for extraterrestrial surfaces
 Including moon cars
- .3 Air-cushion vehicles (Ground-effect machines, Hovercraft)**
 Class military air-cushion vehicles in 623.748
- .31 General topics of air-cushion vehicles
 Class general topics applied to specific types of vehicles in 629.32
- .313 Lift systems
- .314 Propulsion systems
- .317 Structural analysis and design
- .32 Types of vehicles
- .322 Overland air-cushion vehicles
 Class amphibious air-cushion vehicles in 629.325
- .324 Overwater air-cushion vehicles
 Class amphibious air-cushion vehicles in 629.325
- .325 Amphibious air-cushion vehicles
- .4 Astronautics**
 Class military astronautics in 623.69; class interdisciplinary works on space policy in 333.94
See also 500.5 for space sciences
See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388

SUMMARY

- 629.409 2 Astronautical engineers
- .41 Space flight
- .43 Unmanned space flight
- .44 Auxiliary spacecraft
- .45 Manned space flight
- .46 Engineering of unmanned spacecraft
- .47 Astronautical engineering
- [.401 521] Astromechanics
 Do not use; class in 629.411
- .409 2 Astronautical engineers
 Class astronauts in 629.450092

- .41 Space flight
 Class preparation for flight to a specific celestial body with the flight, e.g.,
 preparation for manned lunar flight 629.454
 For unmanned space flight, see 629.43; for manned space flight, see
 629.45
- .411 Astromechanics
- .411 1 Gravitation
- .411 3 Orbits
- .415 Planetary atmospheres
 Including reentry problems
- .415 1 Aerodynamics
- .415 2 Atmospheric thermodynamics
- .416 Space phenomena and environments affecting flight
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including meteoroids, radiation
- .418 Weightlessness
- .43 Unmanned space flight
 See Manual at 629.43, 629.45 vs. 559.9, 919.904
- .432 Launching
- .433 Guidance and homing
 Class here mission control
 For communication and tracking, see 629.437
- .434 Flight of artificial satellites
 Class satellite flight for a specific purpose with the purpose, e.g., weather
 satellites 551.6354
- .435 Astronautical exploratory and data-gathering flights
- .435 2 Ionospheric and near-space flights
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .435 3 Lunar flights
- .435 4 Planetary flights
 Add to base number 629.4354 the numbers following 523.4 in
 523.41–523.49, e.g., Venusian probes 629.43542
- .437 Communications and tracking
- .44 Auxiliary spacecraft
- .441 Space shuttles

- .442 Space stations
 Class here space colonies, laboratories
- .45 Manned space flight
 Class auxiliary spacecraft in 629.44
 See Manual at 629.43, 629.45 vs. 559.9, 919.904
- .450 01--450 09 Standard subdivisions
- .450 7 Selection and training of astronauts
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .452 Launching and takeoff
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .453 Guidance, homing, navigation
 Class here mission control
 For communication and tracking, see 629.437
- .454 Circumterrestrial and lunar flights
- .455 Planetary flights
 Class here flights to planetary satellites
 Add to base number 629.455 the numbers following 523.4 in
 523.41-523.49, e.g., flights to Mars 629.4553; then add further as
 follows:
 [001-009] Standard subdivisions
 Relocated to 01-09
 01-09 Standard subdivisions [*formerly* 001-009]
- .457 Communications and tracking
- .458 Piloting and related activities
- .458 2 Piloting
- .458 3 Rendezvous with other spacecraft
- .458 4 Extravehicular activities
 Including space walks
- .458 5 Rescue operations
- .458 8 Atmospheric entry and landing
- .46 Engineering of unmanned spacecraft
 Class here artificial satellites
 Add to base number 629.46 the numbers following 629.47 in
 629.471-629.478, e.g., environmental control 629.467

- .47 Aeronautical engineering
 Class here comprehensive works on spacecraft
 For auxiliary spacecraft, see 629.44; for engineering of unmanned spacecraft, see 629.46
- .471 Structural analysis and design of spacecraft
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .472 Spacecraft materials and components
- .473 Spacecraft construction
- .474 Spacecraft engineering systems
 For propulsion systems, see 629.475; for life-support systems, see 629.477
- .474 2 Flight operations systems
 Including guidance, homing, landing, navigation, piloting systems
- .474 3 Communication and tracking systems
- .474 4 Auxiliary power systems
- .474 43 Nuclear power systems
- .474 45 Electric and magnetohydrodynamic power systems
- .475 Propulsion systems
 Including fuels, auxiliary equipment and instrumentation
 Class here booster rockets, engines
 Class fuels, auxiliary equipment and instrumentation of a specific type of propulsion in 629.4752–629.4755; class comprehensive works on rocketry in 621.4356
- .475 2 Chemical propulsion
- .475 22 Liquid propellant
- .475 24 Solid propellant
- .475 3 Nuclear propulsion
- .475 4 Photon propulsion
- .475 5 Electric and magnetohydrodynamic propulsion
 Including plasma and ion propulsion
- .477 Environmental control and life-support systems
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .477 2 Space suits
- .477 3 Food and water supply

- .477 4 Sanitation and sterilization
Including control of wastes
- .477 5 Control of temperature, humidity, air supply and pressure
- .478 Terrestrial facilities
Including launch complexes, space ports; spacecraft maintenance, ground testing, repair facilities
- .8 Automatic control engineering**
Class here automatons that are not computer controlled
Class a specific application with the application, e.g., numerical control of machine tools 621.9023
- .801 Philosophy and theory
For control theory, see 629.8312
- .804 Special topics of automatic control engineering
- .804 2 Hydraulic control
Class here fluidics
- .804 3 Electric control
Class computer control in 629.89
- .804 5 Pneumatic control
- .82 Open-loop systems
Mechanisms in which outputs have no effect on input signals
Including vending machines
Class computer control of open-loop systems in 629.89
- .83 Closed-loop systems (Feedback systems)
Mechanisms which maintain prescribed relationships between the controlled outputs and the inputs
Class computer control of closed-loop systems in 629.89
- .830 1 Philosophy and theory
For control theory, see 629.8312
- .831 General principles
Class general principles of specific mechanisms and systems in 629.832-629.836

.831 2 Control theory
 Mathematical design, analysis, synthesis
 Including optimal control
 Class here comprehensive works on control theory
 Class interdisciplinary works on control theory in 003.5
*For control theory for open-loop systems, see 629.82; for
 computer control theory, see 629.89*

.831 3 Circuitry

.831 4 Feedback characteristics

.831 5 System components

Including error correctors, error detectors

.831 7 Construction and assembly

> 629.832–629.836 Specific systems

Including components, circuitry

Class here mechanisms

Class comprehensive works in 629.83

.832 Linear systems

.832 3 Servomechanisms

.833 Multiple-loop systems

.836 Nonlinear systems

Including adaptive control systems

.89 Computer control

Class here electronic control, comprehensive works on computer control

For computer factory operations in manufacturing, see 670.427

.892 Robots

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 629.892 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital personal computers 629.892416, but use of digital computers as a whole 629.892 (*not* 629.8924)

For specific kinds of robots, see 629.893

.893 Specific kinds of robots

.893 2 Mobile robots

.893 3 Manipulators

Class here robot hands

.895 Computerized process control

Use of computers to keep conditions of continuous processes as close as possible to desired values or within a desired range by controlling continuous variables such as temperature or pressure

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 629.895 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital personal computers 629.895416, but use of digital computers as a whole 629.895 (*not* 629.8954)

630 Agriculture and related technologies

Standard subdivisions are added for agriculture and related technologies together, for agriculture alone

Class here farming, farms, plant crops; interdisciplinary works on plants of agricultural importance

Class agricultural sociology in 306.349; class agricultural economics in 338.1

For a specific nonagricultural aspect of domestic plants, see the aspect, e.g., biology of domestic plants 580

See also 307.72 for rural sociology; also 333.76 for agricultural land economics; also 909.09734 for general works on rural conditions and civilization; also 930–990, plus notation 009734 from table under 930–990, for rural conditions and civilization in specific areas

See Manual at 571–575 vs. 630; also at 630 vs. 579–590, 641.3

SUMMARY

- | | |
|----------|---|
| 630.1–.9 | Standard subdivisions |
| 631 | Specific techniques; apparatus, equipment, materials |
| .2 | Agricultural structures |
| .3 | Tools, machinery, apparatus, equipment |
| .4 | Soil science |
| .5 | Cultivation and harvesting |
| .6 | Clearing, drainage, revegetation |
| .7 | Water conservation |
| .8 | Fertilizers, soil conditioners, growth regulators |
| 632 | Plant injuries, diseases, pests |
| .1 | Damages caused by environmental factors |
| .2 | Galls |
| .3 | Diseases |
| .4 | Fungus diseases |
| .5 | Weeds |
| .6 | Animal pests |
| .7 | Insect pests |
| .8 | Virus diseases |
| .9 | General topics of pest and disease control |

- 633 **Field and plantation crops**
 - .1 Cereals
 - .2 Forage crops
 - .3 Legumes, forage crops other than grasses and legumes
 - .5 Fiber crops
 - .6 Sugar, syrup, starch crops
 - .7 Alkaloidal crops
 - .8 Other crops grown for industrial processing

- 634 **Orchards, fruits, forestry**
 - .04 Cultivation, harvesting, related topics of orchards, of fruits, of trees
 - .1 Pomaceous fruits
 - .2 Stone fruits
 - .3 Citrus and moraceous fruits
 - .4 Other fruits
 - .5 Nuts
 - .6 Tropical and subtropical fruits
 - .7 Berries and herbaceous tropical and subtropical fruits
 - .8 Grapes
 - .9 Forestry

- 635 **Garden crops (Horticulture)**
 - .04 Cultivation, harvesting, related topics
 - .1 Edible roots
 - .2 Edible tubers and bulbs
 - .3 Edible leaves, flowers, stems
 - .4 Cooking greens and rhubarb
 - .5 Salad greens
 - .6 Edible garden fruits and seeds
 - .7 Aromatic and sweet herbs
 - .8 Mushrooms and truffles
 - .9 Flowers and ornamental plants

- 636 **Animal husbandry**
 - .001-.009 Standard subdivisions
 - .01-.08 [General topics in animal husbandry]
 - .1 Horses
 - .2 Cattle and related animals
 - .3 Sheep and goats
 - .4 Swine
 - .5 Chickens and other kinds of domestic birds
 - .6 Birds other than poultry
 - .7 Dogs
 - .8 Cats
 - .9 Other mammals

- 637 **Processing dairy and related products**
 - .1 Milk processing
 - .2 Butter processing
 - .3 Cheese processing
 - .4 Manufacture of frozen desserts
 - .5 Egg processing

- 638 **Insect culture**
 - .1 Bee keeping (Apiculture)
 - .2 Silkworms
 - .5 Other insects

- 639 **Hunting, fishing, conservation, related technologies**
 .091 6 **Treatment in air and water**
 .1 **Hunting**
 .2 **Commercial fishing, whaling, sealing**
 .3 **Culture of cold-blooded vertebrates**
 .4 **Mollusk fisheries and culture**
 .5 **Crustacean fisheries**
 .6 **Crustacean culture**
 .7 **Harvest and culture of invertebrates other than mollusks and crustaceans**
 .8 **Aquaculture**
 .9 **Conservation of biological resources**

[.15] Scientific principles

Do not use; class in 630.21–630.29

.2 Miscellany and scientific principles

Notation 02 from Table 1 as modified below

.201 Tabulated, illustrative, related materials; humorous treatment; audiovisual treatment

.201 1–.201 2 Tabulated, illustrative, related materials

Add to base number 630.201 the numbers following —02 in notation 021–022 from Table 1, e.g., agricultural pictures 630.20122

.201 7 Humorous treatment

.201 8 Audiovisual treatment

.202 Synopses and outlines

.203–.209 Other miscellany

Add to base number 630.20 the numbers following —02 in notation 023–029 from Table 1, e.g., directories 630.205; however, for apparatus, equipment, materials, see 631

.21–.29 Scientific principles

Do not use for miscellany; class in 630.201–630.209

Add to base number 630.2 the numbers following 5 in 510–590, e.g., agricultural meteorology 630.2515; however, for agricultural genetics, see 631.5233

.7 Education, research, related topics

.71 Education

Notation 071 from Table 1 as modified below

.715 Adult education and on-the-job training

Class here extension departments and services

For extension work for young people, see 630.717

.717 Extension work for young people

631 Specific techniques; apparatus, equipment, materials

Topics common to plant and animal husbandry or limited to plant culture

Class comprehensive works on apparatus, equipment, materials used in a specific auxiliary technique or procedure in 630.208, e.g., computers 630.2085

For plant injuries, diseases, pests, see 632; for specific techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials for specific plant crops, see 633-635; for specific techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials for animal husbandry, see 636.08

SUMMARY

- 631.2 **Agricultural structures**
- .3 **Tools, machinery, apparatus, equipment**
- .4 **Soil science**
- .5 **Cultivation and harvesting**
- .6 **Clearing, drainage, revegetation**
- .7 **Water conservation**
- .8 **Fertilizers, soil conditioners, growth regulators**

[.01-.09] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 630.1-630.9

.2 **Agricultural structures**

Class construction of farm buildings and structures other than farmhouses in 690.537

.21 Farmhouses

Class construction of farmhouses in 690.86

.22 General-purpose buildings

Class here barns

For housing for domestic animals, see 636.0831

.25 Machine and equipment sheds

.27 Fences, hedges, walls

Construction and use

.28 Roads, bridges, dams

Class construction of bridges in 624.2; class construction of farm roads in 625.74; class construction of dams in 627.8

.3 **Tools, machinery, apparatus, equipment**

Class manufacture of tools, machinery, apparatus, equipment in 681.763. Class manufacture of a specific article with the article, e.g., tractors 629.2252

See also 631.2 for agricultural structures

.304 Workshops

.34 Equipment for care and shelter of plants

For equipment for a specific purpose, see the purpose, e.g., greenhouses 631.583

- .37 Power and power machinery
For a specific use of power and power machinery, see the use, e.g., use of combines 633.1045
- .371 Kinds of power
 Including human, animal, mechanical, electric power
- .372 Tractors
- .373 Transport equipment
 Including trucks, wagons
- .4 Soil science**
 Class here interdisciplinary works on soils
For a specific aspect of soils, see the aspect, e.g., soil formation 551.305, engineering use of soils 624.151
- [.401 2] Classification of soils
 Do not use; class in 631.44
- [.401 5] Scientific principles
 Do not use; class in 631.4
- [.409] History, geographic treatment, biography
 Do not use; class in 631.49
- .41 Soil chemistry
For soil fertility, acidity, alkalinity, see 631.42
- .416 Inorganic chemistry
 Including salinity
 Class use of soil conditioners in 631.82
- .417 Organic chemistry
 Including humus
 Class here soil biochemistry
- .42 Soil fertility, acidity, alkalinity
- .422 Soil fertility
For use of fertilizers, see 631.8
- .43 Soil physics
- .432 Moisture and hydromechanics
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .433 Soil mechanics
 Including effect of gas content, micropedology
 Class here soil texture
 Class interdisciplinary works on soil mechanics in 624.15136
 For hydromechanics, see 631.432
- .436 Soil temperature
- .44 Soil classification
- .45 Soil erosion
 Class here control of soil erosion, soil conservation, comprehensive
 agricultural works on soil and water conservation
 Class comprehensive technological works on soil erosion in 627.5;
 class interdisciplinary works on soil conservation in 333.7316; class
 interdisciplinary works on soil erosion in 551.302
 For revegetation, see 631.64; for water conservation, see 631.7
- .451 Conservation tillage
 Including mulch tillage
 For tillage for water conservation, see 631.586
- .452 Crop rotation and cover crops
 Class comprehensive works on crop rotation in 631.582
- .455 Contouring and terracing
- .456 Strip cropping
- .46 Soil biology
 For soil biochemistry, see 631.417
- .47 Soil and land-use surveys
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Soil surveys are detailed studies covering small areas (the size of a county or
 smaller)
 Class geographic studies of soils (less detailed than soil surveys and usually
 covering larger areas) in 631.49
- .470 01--.470 08 Standard subdivisions
- [.470 09] History, geographic treatment, biography
 Do not use for history without subdivision; class in 631.47
- [.470 090 1--.470 090 5] Historical periods
 Do not use; class in 631.4701--631.4705
- [.470 091--.470 099] Geographic treatment
 Do not use; class in 631.471--631.479

- .470 1–.470 5 Historical periods
 Add to base number 631.470 the numbers following —090 in notation
 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., 20th century soil surveys 631.4704
 Subdivisions are added for either soil or land-use surveys or both
 together
- .471–.479 Geographic treatment
 Class here soil types in specific areas
 Add to base number 631.47 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., soil survey
 of Gonzales County, Texas 631.47764257
 Subdivisions are added for either soil or land-use surveys or both
 together
- .49 History, geographic treatment, biography of soil science
 Class here geographic studies of soils (less detailed than soil surveys and
 usually covering areas larger than jurisdictions like counties)
 For soil and land-use surveys, see 631.47
- .490 1–.490 5 Historical periods
 Add to base number 631.490 the numbers following —090 in notation
 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., 20th century soil studies 631.4904
- .491–.499 Geographic treatment, biography
 Add to base number 631.49 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., soil science
 in China 631.4951
- .5 Cultivation and harvesting**
 Standard subdivisions are added for cultivation and harvesting together, for
 cultivation alone
- .51 Soil working (Tillage)
 Before and after planting
 Class here cultivation limited to tillage
 Class soil working in special methods of cultivation in 631.58
 For conservation tillage, see 631.451
- .52 Production of seeds, bulbs, tubers, new varieties
 Standard subdivisions are added for production of seeds, bulbs, tubers, new
 varieties together; for production of seeds, bulbs, tubers alone
 Including domestication, plant selection, seedlings
 Class here nursery practice, plant breeding
- .521 Seeds

- .523 Development of new varieties
 Including plant introduction
 Class here germ plasm, hybrids
 Class interdisciplinary works on germ plasm in 333.9534
- .523 3 Agricultural genetics
 Class here genetic engineering
- .526 Bulbs and tubers
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .53 Plant propagation
 Class here comprehensive works on plant propagation and nursery practice
 For nursery practice, see 631.52; for grafting, pruning, training, see 631.54
- .531 Propagation from seeds (Sowing)
- .532 Propagation from bulbs and tubers
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .533 Propagation from suckers, runners, buds
 Class propagation from tubers in 631.532; class propagation from cuttings in 631.535
- .534 Propagation by layering
- .535 Propagation from cuttings and slips
- .536 Transplanting
 Class here planting seedlings
- .54 Grafting, pruning, training
 Most works on grafting and pruning will be classed in 634.044 and cognate numbers in 634.1–634.8 or in 635.9
- .541 Grafting
- .542 Pruning
- .546 Training
- .55 Harvesting
 Including mowing, reaping
 Class operations subsequent to harvesting in 631.56
- .558 Yields
 See Manual at 338.1 vs. 631.558
- .56 Operations subsequent to harvesting
 Including cleaning, husking, packing

- .567 Grading
- .568 Storage
- .57 Varieties and kinds of organisms used in agriculture
 Class here description of cultivated varieties that contain little or no information on how to grow them
 Class biology of varieties of agricultural plants in 580
For development of new varieties, see 631.523
- .58 Special methods of cultivation
 Including double cropping, multiple cropping, permaculture
 Class special methods of cultivation as topics in land economics in 333.76; class special methods of cultivation as topics in agricultural economics in 338.162
- .581 Reduced cultivation methods
 Class here minimum tillage, surface tillage
- .581 2 Fallowing
- .581 4 No-tillage
- .581 8 Shifting cultivation (Slash-and-burn agriculture)
- .582 Crop rotation
For crop rotation to control erosion, see 631.452
- .583 Controlled-environment agriculture
 Including forcing, retarding, hotbeds, use of artificial light
 Class here greenhouse agriculture
 Most works on use of artificial light in agriculture will be classed in 635.0483 and 635.9826
For greenhouse gardening, see 635.0483
- .584 Organic farming
For organic gardening, see 635.0484. For a specific aspect of organic farming, see the aspect, e.g., compost 631.875
- .585 Soilless culture (Hydroponics)
 Most works on soilless culture will be classed in 635.0485 and cognate numbers in 635.1-635.9
- .586 Dry farming
 Class here tillage for water conservation

- .587 Irrigation
 Use only for works describing what is done on the farm, e.g., installation and use of center-pivot sprinkler systems
 Class digging wells in 628.114; class interdisciplinary works on technological aspects of irrigation, works on obtaining irrigation water from off-farm sources in 627.52; class interdisciplinary works on irrigation in 333.913
 For sewage irrigation, see 628.3623
- .6 Clearing, drainage, revegetation**
 Class here reclamation
 Class interdisciplinary works on technological aspects of reclamation in 627.5
- .61 Clearing
- .62 Drainage
 Class off-farm drainage projects, interdisciplinary works on technological aspects of drainage in 627.54
- .64 Revegetation
 Including inland dune stabilization, surface mine reclamation
 Class reforestation in 634.956
- .7 Water conservation**
 For tillage for water conservation, see 631.586
- .8 Fertilizers, soil conditioners, growth regulators**
 Standard subdivisions are added for fertilizers, soil conditioners, growth regulators together; for fertilizers alone
 Class here interdisciplinary works on agricultural chemicals
 Class comprehensive works on soil fertility in 631.422
 For pesticides, see 632.95; for manufacture of agricultural chemicals, see 668.6
- .81 Nutritive principles, complete fertilizers, methods of application
 For nutritive principles and methods of application of specific fertilizers, see 631.83–631.87
- .811 Nutritive principles
- .813 Complete fertilizers
- .816 Methods of application
- .82 Soil conditioners
 Including conditioners for control of salinity
- .821 Acid-soil conditioners
 Including lime

- .825 Alkaline-soil conditioners
- .826 Conditioners for soil texture
Including peat
-
- > 631.83–631.87 Specific kinds of fertilizers
Class comprehensive works in 631.8
- .83 Potassium fertilizers
- .84 Nitrogen fertilizers
- .841 Ammonium, cyanamide, urea fertilizers
For ammonium nitrate, see 631.842
- .842 Nitrate fertilizers
Including ammonium nitrate
- .843 Slaughterhouse residues
For bone meal, see 631.85
- .847 Biological methods of soil nitrification
Use of nitrifying bacteria, nitrifying crops
- .85 Phosphorus fertilizers
Including bone meal
- .86 Organic fertilizers
Class here animal wastes
For slaughterhouse residues, see 631.843; for vegetable manures and converted household garbage, see 631.87
- .861 Farm manure
- .866 Guano
- .869 Biosolids (Sewage sludge)
- .87 Vegetable manures and converted household garbage
Standard subdivisions are added for vegetable manures and converted household garbage together, for vegetable manure alone
- .874 Green manures
- .875 Compost
Including converted household garbage
- .89 Growth regulators

632 Plant injuries, diseases, pests

Standard subdivisions are added for plant injuries, diseases, pests together; for plant injuries alone

Class here pathology of agricultural plants; comprehensive works on plant and animal injuries, diseases, pests

Class works on both physiology and pathology of agricultural plants in 571.2; class use of agricultural plants in studies of basic pathological processes in 571.92

For injuries, diseases, pests of specific plant crops, see 633–635; for veterinary medicine, see 636.089

.1 Damages caused by environmental factors

Class here damages caused by climatic change, by weather

.11 Frost injury

Including other low-temperature injuries

.12 Drought and heat damage

.14 Hail damage

.15 Lightning damage

.16 Wind and rain damage

.17 Flood damage

.18 Fire damage

.19 Pollution damages

Class here air pollution damages, diseases caused by pollution

> 632.2–632.8 Specific diseases and pests

Class here control of specific diseases

Class comprehensive works on diseases and pests together in 632; class comprehensive works on diseases in 632.3; class comprehensive works on pests in 632.6; class comprehensive works on disease and pest control in 632.9

For pesticides regardless of disease or pest, see 632.95

See Manual at 632.95 vs. 632.2–632.8

.2 Galls

Class here gall-producing organisms

.3 Diseases

Including protozoan diseases, radiation injury

Class here disease control

For diseases caused by pollution, see 632.19; for galls, see 632.2; for fungus diseases, see 632.4; for viral diseases, see 632.8; for pesticides used in disease control, see 632.95

- .32 **Bacterial diseases**
 Including rickettsial diseases
- .4 Fungus diseases**
 Add to base number 632.4 the numbers following 579.5 in 579.52–579.59, e.g.,
 rusts 632.492, smuts 632.493
- .5 Weeds**
 Including poisonous plants
 Class here plant pests, weed control
 For herbicides, see 632.954
- .52 **Parasitic weeds**
 Class parasitic microorganisms in 632.3
- .6 Animal pests**
 Class here pests, control of specific animal pests
 Add to base number 632.6 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g.,
 nematodes 632.6257, common rats 632.69352; however, for gall-producing
 animal pests, see 632.2; for protozoan diseases, see 632.3; for insect pests, see
 632.7
 Class comprehensive works on agricultural pest control, on specific topics of
 pest control other than pesticides in 632.9; class interdisciplinary works on pest
 control technology in 628.96; class interdisciplinary works on pests, works on
 pest control services in 363.78
 For weeds, see 632.5; for pesticides, see 632.95; for predator control in
 animal husbandry, see 636.0839
- .7 Insect pests**
 Add to base number 632.7 the numbers following 595.7 in 595.72–595.79, e.g.,
 locusts 632.726, beetles 632.76
- .8 Virus diseases**
- .9 General topics of pest and disease control**
 Standard subdivisions are added for pest and disease control together, for pest
 control alone
 Including genetic engineering for pest resistance
 Class here control of animal pests, integrated pest management
 For disease control, see 632.3; for weed control, see 632.5; for control of
 specific animal pests, see 632.6
- .902 84 Apparatus and equipment
 Do not use for materials; class in 632.95
- .93 Plant quarantine
- .94 Crop-dusting, fumigation, spraying

- .940 284 Apparatus and equipment
 Do not use for materials; class in 632.95
- .95 Pesticides
 Including algicides
 Class here interdisciplinary works on pesticides [*formerly also* 668.65],
 pesticides used to control animal pests
 Class chemicals used in biological control in 632.960284
 For manufacture of pesticides, see 668.65
 See Manual at 632.95 vs. 632.2–632.8
- .950 4 Special topics of pesticides
 Including fumigants
- .950 42 Undesired effects and their control
 Including pesticide resistance
 Class interdisciplinary works on environmental effects of
 pesticides in 363.7384
- .951 Pesticides used to control specific kinds of animal pests
 Including rodenticides, vermicides
 Class comprehensive works on pesticides used to control animal pests in
 632.95
- [.951 01–.951 09] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 632.9501–632.9509
- .951 7 Insecticides
 Including DDT
 Class here pesticides used to control arthropods
- .952 Fungicides
- .953 Bactericides
- .954 Herbicides
- .96 Biological control

633–635 Specific plant crops

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 1–6 Cultivation and harvesting
 - Add the numbers following 631.5 in 631.51–631.56, e.g., harvesting 5
 - For special cultivation methods, see 8*
- 7 Varieties and kinds
 - Class specific techniques of cultivation and harvesting specific varieties in 1–6; class fertilizers, soil conditioners, growth regulators for specific varieties in 89; class injuries, pests, diseases of specific varieties in 9
- 8 Special cultivation methods; fertilizers, soil conditioners, growth regulators
- 81–87 Special cultivation methods
 - Add to 8 the numbers following 631.58 in 631.581–631.587, e.g., organic farming 84
- 89 Fertilizers, soil conditioners, growth regulators
 - Add to 89 the numbers following 631.8 in 631.81–631.89, e.g., compost 8975
- 9 Injuries, diseases, pests
 - Add to 9 the numbers following 632 in 632.1–632.9, e.g., insect pests 97

Class comprehensive works in 630

See Manual at 633–635

633 Field and plantation crops

Large-scale production of crops intended for agricultural purposes or industrial processing other than preservation

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class truck farming in 635

For a specific field or plantation crop not provided for here, see the crop, e.g., bananas 634.772

SUMMARY

- 633.1 Cereals
- .2 Forage crops
- .3 Legumes, forage crops other than grasses and legumes
- .5 Fiber crops
- .6 Sugar, syrup, starch crops
- .7 Alkaloidal crops
- .8 Other crops grown for industrial processing

[.028] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use for auxiliary techniques and procedures; class in 630.208

[.028 4] Apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 631

.1 Cereals

Including grain amaranths

For cereal crops grown for forage, see 633.25

.104 *Cultivation, harvesting, related topics

.11 *Wheat

.12 *Buckwheat

.13 *Oats

.14 *Rye

.15 *Corn

Variant names: Indian corn, maize

Class sweet corn in 635.672

For popcorn, see 635.677

.16 *Barley

.17 Millets, grain sorghums, upland and wild rice

.171 *Millets (*Panicum* and related genera)

.174 *Grain sorghums

Class sweet sorghums in 633.62

.178 *Wild rice

.179 *Upland rice

.18 *Rice

Class here paddy rice

For upland rice, see 633.179

See also 633.178 for wild rice

.2 Forage crops

Class here forage grasses, Pooideae grasses

For forage crops other than grasses, see 633.3

.200 1–.200 9 Standard subdivisions

.202 Pastures and their grasses

Class here range management

Class pasture use of forests in 634.99; class comprehensive works on ranches and farms devoted to livestock in 636.01

For specific pasture grasses, see 633.21–633.28

.208 *Cultivation, harvesting, related topics of forage crops

*Add as instructed under 633–635

- .21 *Bluegrasses (Poa)
- .22 *Orchard grass
Variant name: cocksfoot
- .23 *Bent grasses (Agrostis)
- .24 *Timothy
- .25 Cereal grasses
Add to base number 633.25 the numbers following 633.1 in 633.11–633.18, e.g., rye grasses 633.254
- .26 Sedges
- .27 Panicoideae grasses
For corn, see 633.255; for millets, see 633.2571; for sorghums, see 633.2574
- .28 Other Pooideae grasses
Including fescues (Festuca)
- .3 Legumes, forage crops other than grasses and legumes**
Standard subdivisions are added for legumes and forage crops other than grasses and legumes together, for legumes alone
Class here forage legumes, grain legumes
Class interdisciplinary works on legumes as food in 641.3565
For leguminous fruits, see 634.46; for garden legumes, see 635.65
- .304 *Cultivation, harvesting, related topics
- .31 *Alfalfa
Variant name: lucerne
- .32 *Trifolium clovers
Class here trefoils
Class sweet clovers in 633.366
- .33 *Cowpeas
Variant name: black-eyed peas
- .34 *Soybeans
Variant names: sojas, soyas
- .35 *Vetches
- .36 Lespedeza, sweet clovers, lupines, peanuts, field peas
- .364 *Lespedeza
Variant name: bush clover

- .366 *Sweet clovers (*Melilotus*)
- .367 *Lupines
- .368 *Peanuts
Variant name: groundnuts
- .369 *Field peas
Variant names: Austrian winter peas, *Pisum arvense*
- .37 Other legumes
Including chick-peas, fava beans (broad beans), lentils, lima beans, *Pisum sativum*
- .372 *Common beans (*Phaseolus vulgaris*)
Former heading: Kidney beans
- .39 Forage crops other than grasses and legumes
- .5 Fiber crops**
Class here soft-fiber crops
Class fiber plants grown for paper pulp in 633.89
-
- > 633.51–633.56 Soft fibers
Class comprehensive works in 633.5
- .51 *Cotton
- .52 *Flax
- .53 *Hemp (*Cannabis sativa*)
See also 633.79 for marijuana
- .54 *Jute
- .55 *Ramie
- .56 Other soft fibers
Including kenaf
- .57 Hard fibers
For hard fibers not provided for below, see 633.58
- .571 *Manila hemp
Variant name: abaca
- .576 *Pineapple fibers
- .577 *Sisal (*Agave* fibers)

- .58 Other hard fibers
 Including bamboo, rattan, other basketwork and wickerwork plants
- .6 Sugar, syrup, starch crops**
 Standard subdivisions are added for sugar, syrup, starch crops together; for sugar crops alone; for syrup crops alone
- .61 *Sugarcane
- .62 *Sorgo
 Variant name: sweet sorghums
- .63 *Sugar beets
- .64 *Sugar maples
- .68 Starch crops
 Including arrowroot, sago, taro
 Class a crop raised for starch and another product with the other product, e.g., potatoes 635.21
- .682 *Cassava (Manioc)
- .7 Alkaloidal crops**
- .71 *Tobacco
- .72 *Tea
- .73 *Coffee
- .74 *Cacao
- .75 *Poppies (*Papaver somniferum*)
- .76 *Kola nuts (*Cola* nuts)
- .77 *Maté
 Variant name: Paraguay tea
- .78 *Chicory
- .79 *Marijuana
 Class here hashish
 See also 633.53 for hemp
- .8 Other crops grown for industrial processing**
- .81 Perfume-producing plants

- .82 Flavoring-producing plants
 Including hops, mints, saffras, vanilla, wintergreen
 *For spices, see 633.83; for alliaceous plants, see 635.26; for aromatic
 and sweet herbs, see 635.7*
- .83 Spices
 Including allspice, cinnamon, clove, ginger, nutmeg
 Class here sweet spices
 For hot spices, see 633.84
- .84 Hot spices
 Including black pepper, chili, horseradish, mustard, paprika
- .85 Plants producing nonvolatile oils
 Class here oilseed plants
 *For a specific plant producing a nonvolatile oil not provided for here,
 see the plant, e.g., corn 633.15; coconuts 634.61; olives 634.63*
- .851 *Oil palms
- .853 *Rapeseed
- .86 Dye-producing plants
- .87 Tannin-producing plants
 Including canaigre
- .88 Medicine-producing plants
 Add to base number 633.88 the numbers following 58 in 583–588, e.g.,
 ginsengs 633.88384; however, for a crop producing medicine as a secondary
 product, see the primary product, e.g., poppy 633.75
- .89 Crops grown for other industrial purposes
- .895 Rubber-producing and resin-producing plants
- .895 2 *Rubber tree (*Hevea brasiliensis*)
- .895 9 *Turpentine-producing plants
- .898 Insecticide-producing plants

634 Orchards, fruits, forestry

Fruits: reproductive bodies of seed plants having an edible more or less sweet pulp associated with the seed

Standard subdivisions are added for orchards, fruits, forestry together; for orchards alone; for fruits alone

Class here comprehensive works on tree crops

For trees grown for plantation crops, see 633; for pepos, see 635.61; for ornamental trees, see 635.977

SUMMARY

- 634.04 Cultivation, harvesting, related topics of orchards, of fruits, of trees**
- .1 Pomaceous fruits
 - .2 Stone fruits
 - .3 Citrus and moraceous fruits
 - .4 Other fruits
 - .5 Nuts
 - .6 Tropical and subtropical fruits
 - .7 Berries and herbaceous tropical and subtropical fruits
 - .8 Grapes
 - .9 Forestry

.04 *Cultivation, harvesting, related topics of orchards, of fruits, of trees

634.1–634.6 Orchards and their fruits

Class comprehensive works in 634

.1 Pomaceous fruits

.11 *Apples

.13 *Pears

See also 634.653 for alligator pears

.14 *Quinces

.15 *Medlars (*Mespilus germanica*)

See also 634.16 for Japanese medlars

.16 *Loquats

Variant name: Japanese medlars

.2 Stone fruits

Variant name: Drupaceous fruits

.21 *Apricots

.22 *Plums

.23 *Cherries

- .25 *Peaches
- .257 Varieties and kinds
 - Number built according to instructions under 633–635
 - Including nectarines
- .3 Citrus and moraceous fruits**
- .304 *Citrus fruits
 - For specific citrus fruits, see 634.31–634.34*
- .31 *Oranges
- .32 *Grapefruit
- .33 Citron group
- .331 *Citrons
- .334 *Lemons
- .337 *Limes
- .34 *Kumquats
- .36 *Moraceous fruits
 - For figs, see 634.37; for mulberries, see 634.38; for breadfruit, see 634.39*
- .37 *Figs
- .38 *Mulberries
- .39 *Breadfruit
- .4 Other fruits**
 - Class tropical and subtropical fruits not provided for here in 634.6
- .41 Annonaceous fruits
 - Including papaws
- .42 Myrtaceous and passifloraceous fruits
- .421 *Guavas
- .425 *Passion fruit
- .43 Sapotaceous fruits
- .44 Anacardiaceous fruits
 - Including mangoes
 - Class cashews in 634.573
- .45 *Persimmons

- .46 Leguminous fruits
 Including carob
 Class comprehensive works on legumes in 633.3
- .5 Nuts**
- .51 *Walnuts
- .52 *Pecans
- .53 *Chestnuts
- .54 *Filberts
- .55 *Almonds
- .57 Cashews, pistachios, Brazil nuts
- .573 *Cashews
- .574 *Pistachios
- .575 *Brazil nuts
- .6 Tropical and subtropical fruits**
 Not provided for elsewhere
For herbaceous tropical and subtropical fruits, see 634.77
- .61 *Coconuts
- .62 *Dates
- .63 *Olives
- .64 *Pomegranates
- .65 Papayas, avocados, mangosteens
- .651 *Papayas
- .653 *Avocados
 Variant name: alligator pears
- .655 *Mangosteens
- .7 Berries and herbaceous tropical and subtropical fruits**
 Standard subdivisions are added for berries and herbaceous tropical and subtropical fruits together, for berries alone
 Class here comprehensive works on small fruits
For a specific small fruit not provided for here, see the fruit, e.g., mulberries 634.38, grapes 634.8
- .71 Cane fruits (Rubus)
- .711 *Raspberries

- .713 *Blackberries
- .714 *Loganberries
- .717 *Dewberries
- .718 *Boysenberries
- .72 Ribes
- .721 *Currants
- .725 *Gooseberries
- .73 Huckleberries and blueberries
- .732 *Huckleberries (*Gaylussacia*)
- .737 *Blueberries (*Vaccinium*)
- .74 Other bush fruits
 - Including barberries, juneberries
- .75 *Strawberries
- .76 *Cranberries
- .77 Herbaceous tropical and subtropical fruits
 - Class comprehensive works on tropical and subtropical fruits in 634.6
- .772 *Bananas
- .773 *Plantains
- .774 *Pineapples
- .775 Cactus fruits
- .8 Grapes**
 - Class here viticulture
- .82 Injuries, diseases, pests
 - Add to base number 634.82 the numbers following 632 in 632.1–632.9, e.g., fungus diseases 634.824
- .83 Varieties and kinds
 - Class a specific aspect of varieties and kinds with the aspect, e.g., fungus diseases of muscadines 634.824
- .88 Cultivation and harvesting
 - Add to base number 634.88 the numbers following 631.5 in 631.51–631.58, e.g., pruning 634.8842; however, for varieties, see 634.83
- .9 Forestry**

SUMMARY

634.92	Forest management
.93	Access and safety features
.95	Silviculture
.96	Injuries, diseases, pests
.97	Kinds of trees
.98	Forest exploitation and products
.99	Agroforestry

[.906 85] Management of production

Do not use; class in 634.92

> 634.92–634.96 General topics of forestry

Class general topics applied to a specific kind of tree in 634.97; class comprehensive works in 634.9

For exploitation and products, see 634.98

.92 Forest management

Class here production management in forestry

Class comprehensive works on management in forestry in 634.9068. Class production management of a specific aspect of forestry with the aspect, e.g., production management of logging 634.980685

.928 Production planning and mensuration

.928 3 Production planning

.928 5 Mensuration

Including estimation

.93 Access and safety features

Including lookout towers, roads

.95 Silviculture

.953 Forest thinning

.955 Brush disposal

Including prescribed burning

.956 Forestation

Class here afforestation, reforestation, plant breeding

Class interdisciplinary works on afforestation in 333.75152; class interdisciplinary works on reforestation in 333.75153

.956 2 Producing seeds and seedlings

See also 634.9565 for propagation with seeds and seedlings

.956 4 Nursery practice

For producing seeds and seedlings, see 634.9562

- .956 5 Propagation at permanent site
Including seeding at permanent site
- .96 Injuries, diseases, pests
Add to base number 634.96 the numbers following 632 in 632.1–632.9, e.g., forest fire technology 634.9618
- .97 Kinds of trees
Class here general topics of forestry applied to specific kinds of trees
Add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:
- 2–6 General topics
Add the numbers following 634.9 in 634.92–634.96, e.g., reforestation 56
For exploitation and products, see 8
 - 7 Varieties and kinds
Class a specific general topic with respect to a specific variety or kind with the topic, e.g., reforestation of a variety 56
 - 8 Exploitation and products
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
Class here logging, logs, lumbering
For minor products, see 634.985–634.987; for sawmill operations, see 674.2
 - 83 Pulpwood
- .972 Dicotyledons
Class here hardwoods
For other dicotyledons, see 634.973
- .972 1 †Oaks
- .972 2 †Maples
- .972 3 †Poplars
Class aspens, cottonwoods in 634.97365
See also 634.97322 for yellow poplar (tulip tree)
- .972 4 †Chestnuts
- .972 5 †Beeches
- .972 6 †Birches
- .972 7 †Lindens
- .972 77 Varieties and kinds
Number built according to instructions under 634.97
Including basswood (American linden), lime (European linden)
- .972 8 †Elms

†Add as instructed under 634.97

.973 Other dicotyledons
 Add to base number 634.973 the numbers following 583 in 583.2–583.9, e.g., eucalyptus 634.973766

.974 Monocotyledons
 Class here palm forestry
See also 633.58 for rattan palms; also 633.851 for oil palms; also 634.61 for coconut palm; also 635.97745 for ornamental palms

.975 Gymnosperms

> 634.975 1–634.975 8 Coniferous trees

Class comprehensive works in 634.975

For coniferous trees not provided for here, see 634.9759

.975 1 †Pines
 Class dammar, huon pines in 634.97593

.975 2 †Spruces

.975 3 †Hemlocks

.975 4 †Firs

.975 5 †Cypresses

.975 6 †Cedars

.975 7 †Larches

.975 8 †Sequoias

.975 9 Other gymnosperms

Add to base number 634.9759 the numbers following 585 in 585.2–585.9, e.g., kauris (dammar pines) 634.97593

.98 Forest exploitation and products

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here logging, logs, comprehensive works on lumbering

Class exploitation and products of specific kinds of trees in 634.97; class lumber in 674. Class trees cultivated for a specific product other than lumber or pulp with the product, e.g., turpentine trees 633.8959, pecan trees 634.52

For sawmill operations, see 674.2

.983 Pulpwood

Class nonwoody plants grown for paper pulp in 633.89

- > 634.985–634.987 Exploitation of minor forest products
 Use only for products that have not been cultivated
 Class here minor products of specific kinds of trees
 Class comprehensive works in 634.987
- .985 Bark
- .986 Sap
- .987 Minor forest products
 Including fruits, seeds, nuts
For bark, see 634.985; for sap, see 634.986
- .99 Agroforestry
 Forestry in combination with other farming
 Including farm forestry, woodlots; pasture use of forestry
 Class a specific forestry aspect of agroforestry with the aspect, e.g., logging
 634.98

635 Garden crops (Horticulture)

Class here vegetables (crops grown primarily for human consumption without intermediate processing other than cooking and preservation); home gardening, truck farming

Class orchards in 634

SUMMARY

635.04 Cultivation, harvesting, related topics

- .1 Edible roots
 - .2 Edible tubers and bulbs
 - .3 Edible leaves, flowers, stems
 - .4 Cooking greens and rhubarb
 - .5 Salad greens
 - .6 Edible garden fruits and seeds
 - .7 Aromatic and sweet herbs
 - .8 Mushrooms and truffles
 - .9 Flowers and ornamental plants
- .04 *Cultivation, harvesting, related topics

> 635.1–635.8 Edible garden crops

Class comprehensive works in 635

.1 Edible roots

For cassava, see 633.682

- .11 *Beets
- .12 Turnips, rutabagas, celeriac
- .125 *Turnips
 Class rutabagas in 635.126
- .126 *Rutabagas
 Variant names: Russian turnips, swedes, Swedish turnips
- .128 *Celeriac
- .13 *Carrots
- .14 *Parsnips
- .15 *Radishes
- .16 *Salsify
- .2 Edible tubers and bulbs**
 Standard subdivisions are added for edible tubers and bulbs together, for edible tubers alone
 For taro, see 633.68
- .21 *Potatoes
- .22 *Sweet potatoes
- .23 *Yams (*Dioscorea*)
- .24 *Jerusalem artichokes
- .25 *Onions
 Alliaceeous plants
 Including chives, garlic, leeks, shallots
 For onions, see 635.25
- .3 Edible leaves, flowers, stems**
 For cooking greens and rhubarb, see 635.4; for salad greens, see 635.5
- .31 *Asparagus
- .32 *Artichokes
 See also 635.24 for Jerusalem artichokes
- .34 *Cabbage
 Class here comprehensive works on cultivation of *Brassica oleracea*
 For cauliflower and broccoli, see 635.35; for Brussels sprouts, see 635.36

- .347 Varieties and kinds
 Number built according to instructions under 633–635
 Including kale (collards)
- .35 **Cauliflower and broccoli*
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .36 **Brussels sprouts*
- .4 Cooking greens and rhubarb**
 Standard subdivisions are added for cooking greens and rhubarb together, for
 cooking greens alone
- .41 **Spinach*
- .42 **Chard*
- .48 **Rhubarb*
- .5 Salad greens**
- .51 **Dandelions*
- .52 **Lettuce*
- .53 **Celery*
 See also 635.128 for celeriac
- .54 **Chicory*
- .55 **Endive*
- .56 *Sorrel and cresses*
- .6 Edible garden fruits and seeds**
- .61 *Pepos*
 Class here melons
 For squashes and pumpkins, see 635.62; for cucumbers, see 635.63
- .611 **Muskmelons*
- .615 **Watermelons*
- .62 **Squashes and pumpkins*
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .63 **Cucumbers*
- .64 Other garden fruits
- .642 **Tomatoes*
- .643 **Sweet peppers*
 Variant names: bell, green peppers

- .646 *Eggplants
- .648 *Okra
- .65 Garden legumes
 Class comprehensive works on legumes in 633.3
- .651 *Broad beans
- .652 *Common beans (*Phaseolus vulgaris*)
 Former heading: Kidney beans
- .653 *Lima beans
- .655 *Soybeans
 Variant names: sojas, soyas
- .656 *Peas
 Variant names: English peas, garden peas, *Pisum sativum*
- .657 *Chick-peas
- .658 *Lentils
- .659 Other garden legumes
- .659 2 *Black-eyed peas
 Variant name: cowpeas
- .659 6 *Peanuts
 Variant name: groundnuts
- .67 Corn
 Variant names: Indian corn, maize
- .672 *Sweet corn
- .677 *Popcorn
- .7 **Aromatic and sweet herbs**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here herb gardens
- .8 **Mushrooms and truffles**
 Standard subdivisions are added for mushrooms and truffles together, for
 mushrooms alone

.9 Flowers and ornamental plants

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here floriculture

Class landscape architecture of flower gardens in 712

For planting and cultivation of roadside vegetation, see 625.77

See Manual at 635.9 vs. 582.1

SUMMARY

- 635.91 Specific techniques; apparatus, equipment, materials**
- .92 Injuries, diseases, pests**
- .93 Groupings by life duration; taxonomic groupings**
- .94 Plants propagated from bulbs and tubers**
- .95 Groupings by environmental factors**
- .96 Groupings by special areas and purposes**
- .97 Other groupings of ornamental plants**
- .98 Special methods of cultivation in floriculture**

[.902 84] Apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 635.91

.91 Specific techniques; apparatus, equipment, materials

Add to base number 635.91 the numbers following 631 in 631.2–631.8, e.g., propagating ornamental plants 635.9153; however, for propagation from bulbs and tubers, see 635.94; for special methods of cultivation, see 635.98

Class specific techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials of specific groupings of ornamental plants in 635.93–635.97

.92 Injuries, diseases, pests

Add to base number 635.92 the numbers following 632 in 632.1–632.9, e.g., fungus diseases 635.924

For injuries, diseases, pests of specific groupings of plants, see 635.93–635.97

> **635.93–635.97 Groupings of plants**

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 635.93–635.97 in the number coming first in the schedule, e.g., succulent house plants 635.9525 (*not* 635.965)

Class comprehensive works in 635.9

.93 Groupings by life duration; taxonomic groupings

.931 Groupings by life duration

Class specific taxonomic kinds regardless of life duration in 635.933–635.938

For perennials, see 635.932

- .931 2 *Annuals
- .931 4 *Biennials
- .932 *Perennials
- .933–.938 Taxonomic groupings
- Add to base number 635.93 the numbers following 58 in 583–588, e.g., cacti 635.93356, roses 635.933734, orchids 635.9344; however, for everlastings, see 635.973; for comprehensive works on dicotyledons, see 635.9; for taxonomic groupings of trees, see 635.9773–635.9775
- .94 Plants propagated from bulbs and tubers
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class here propagating ornamental plants from bulbs, from tubers
- .95 Groupings by environmental factors
- .951 Native habitats
- Add to base number 635.951 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., ornamentals native to Scotland 635.951411
- .952 Groupings by climatic factors
- Including arctic plants
- Class comprehensive works on temperate-zone plants in 635.9
- .952 3 *Tropical plants
- .952 5 *Desert plants
- Including drought-resistant plants
- Class here succulent plants
- Class works on succulent plants emphasizing cactus in 635.93356
- .952 8 *Alpine plants
- Including alpine gardens, high-altitude plants
- Class “alpine gardens” in the sense synonymous with rock gardens (that is, as rock gardens with nonalpine as well as alpine plants) in 635.9672
- .953 Groupings by seasonal and diurnal factors
- Including winter-flowering plants, morning-blooming and night-blooming plants
- .954 Groupings by natural light factors
- Including plants favoring sunlight
- See also 635.9826 for artificial-light gardening*
- .954 3 *Shade-tolerant plants

*Add as instructed under 633–635

- .955 Groupings by soil factors
 Including plants favoring difficult, problem, sandy soils
 Class plants suitable for rock gardens in 635.9672
- .96 Groupings by special areas and purposes
 Class comprehensive works on plants for all purposes in 635.9
 For foliage plants, see 635.975; for butterfly gardening, see 638.5789
- .962 *Flower beds
- .963 *Borders and edgings
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .964 Ground cover
 Class here grass
- .964 2 *Turf
 Class lawns in 635.9647
- .964 7 *Lawns
- .965 *House plants
 Class here indoor gardening in the home
 Class window-box gardening in 635.9678; class comprehensive works on
 container gardening in 635.986
 For bonsai, see 635.9772
- .966 *Flowers for cutting
 Class flower arrangement in 745.92
- .967 Special kinds of gardens
- .967 1 Roof, balcony, patio gardens
 Class comprehensive works on container gardening in 635.986
- .967 2 *Rock gardens
 See also 635.9528 for alpine gardening
- .967 4 *Water gardens
- .967 6 *Wild-flower gardens
 Class wild flowers of a specific native habitat in 635.951
- .967 8 *Window-box gardens
- .968 Plants grown for fragrance and color
- .97 Other groupings of ornamental plants
- .973 *Everlastings

- .974 *Vines
 Class here climbing plants
- .975 *Foliage plants
- .976 *Shrubs and hedges
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class hedges used as fences in 631.27
- .977 Trees
 Class here urban forestry; potted, shade, street trees
 Including tree planting
 Class comprehensive works on container gardening in 635.986
- .977 1 General kinds of ornamental trees
 Class general kinds of trees of a specific taxa in 635.9773–635.9775;
 class comprehensive works in 635.977
 For bonsai, see 635.9772
- .977 13 *Flowering trees
- .977 15 *Evergreen trees
 Class Christmas trees, evergreen trees in the sense of conifers in
 635.9775
- .977 2 *Bonsai
 Class here dwarf potted trees, miniature trees, penjing
 Class specific taxonomic kinds of bonsai in 635.9773–635.9775
- .977 3–.977 5 Taxonomic groupings
 Add to base number 635.977 the numbers following 58 in 583–585,
 e.g., elms 635.977345; however, for comprehensive works on
 dicotyledonous trees, see 635.977
- .98 Special methods of cultivation in floriculture
 Class special methods of cultivation of specific groupings of plants
 in 635.93–635.97; class comprehensive works on special methods of
 cultivating vegetables and ornamental plants in 635.048
- .982 Controlled-environment gardening
 For bell-jar gardening, see 635.985
- .982 3 *Greenhouse gardening
- .982 4 *Terrariums
- .982 6 *Artificial-light gardening
- .985 *Bell-jar gardening

- .986 *Container gardening
 Class here pot gardening
- .987 Organic gardening
 Class a specific aspect of organic gardening in floriculture with the
 aspect in 635.91–635.98, e.g., compost 635.91875

636 **Animal husbandry**

Class here interdisciplinary works on species of domestic mammals

For culture of nondomesticated animals, see 639. For a specific nonagricultural aspect of domestic mammals, see the aspect, e.g., biology 599

See Manual at 800, T3C—362 vs. 398.245, 590, 636

SUMMARY

- 636.001–.009 Standard subdivisions**
.01–.08 [General topics in animal husbandry]
- .1 Horses
 - .2 Cattle and related animals
 - .3 Sheep and goats
 - .4 Swine
 - .5 Chickens and other kinds of domestic birds
 - .6 Birds other than poultry
 - .7 Dogs
 - .8 Cats
 - .9 Other mammals

- .001 Philosophy and theory
- [.001 576 5] Genetics
 Do not use; class in 636.0821
- .002 Miscellany
- [.002 77] Ownership marks
 Do not use; class in 636.0812
- .003–.006 Standard subdivisions
- .007 Education, research, related topics
- .007 9 Competitions, festivals, awards, financial support
 Do not use for animal shows and related awards; class in 636.0811
- .008–.009 Standard subdivisions
- .01 Ranches and farms
 Class feeding livestock in 636.084
 See also 636.0845 for range management

- .07 Young of animals
Class production and maintenance, rearing for specific purposes, veterinary medicine of young animals in 636.08
- .08 Specific topics in animal husbandry
Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the number coming last, e.g., care and maintenance of pets 636.0887 (*not* 636.083)
For ranches and farms, see 636.01; for young of animals, see 636.07

SUMMARY

- | | |
|---------|--|
| 636.081 | Selection, showing, ownership marks |
| .082 | Breeding |
| .083 | Care, maintenance, training |
| .084 | Feeding |
| .085 | Feeds and applied nutrition |
| .086 | Field-crop feeds |
| .088 | Animals for specific purposes |
| .089 | Veterinary medicine |
- [.080 1--.080 9] Standard subdivisions
Do not use; class in 636.001--636.009
- .081 Selection, showing, ownership marks
For selection in breeding, see 636.082
- .081 1 Showing
Class here judging; show animals
- .081 2 Ownership marks
Class here branding
- .082 Breeding
Including breeding stock
- .082 1 Genetics
Including germ plasm
Class here genetic engineering
Class interdisciplinary works on livestock genetic resources in 333.954
- .082 2 Breeding records
Class here herdbooks, pedigrees, studbooks
- .082 4 Breeding and reproduction methods
- .082 45 Artificial insemination

- .083 Care, maintenance, training
 Including transportation
 Class here stable management
For feeding, see 636.084
- .083 1 Housing
 Including barns, cages, stockyards
 Class waste management in 636.0838; class construction of housing for domestic animals in 690.892
See also 636.0843 for feedlot management
- .083 2 Animal welfare
 Class here animal rescue, animal shelters, condition of livestock
 Class veterinary care of animals in 636.089
See also 179.3 for ethical aspects of animal care
- .083 21 Animal hospitals
 Variant name: veterinary hospitals
- .083 3 Individual tending
 Including dipping, shearing
 Class here grooming
- .083 5 Training
 Class training for a specific purpose in 636.088
- .083 7 Harnesses and accessories
 Most works on harnesses and accessories will be classed under horses in 636.10837
- .083 8 Animal waste management
- .083 9 Predator control
For predator control in wildlife conservation, see 639.966
- .084 Feeding
For feeds and applied nutrition, see 636.085
- .084 3 Feedlot management
For feedlot waste management, see 636.0838
- .084 5 Grazing
 Class here browsing, herding, range management
For development of pasturage, see 633.202; for pasture use of forests, see 634.99
- .085 Feeds and applied nutrition

- .085 2 Applied nutrition
 Class here composition and food value
For composition and food value of a specific feed, see the feed, e.g., food value of silage 636.0862
- .085 21 Nitrogen
- .085 22 Proteins
- .085 27 Minerals
 Class here trace elements
- .085 28 Vitamins
- .085 5 Feeds
 Class growing forage crops in 633.2; class grazing in 636.0845
For field-crop feeds, see 636.086
- .085 56 Feed from wastes
 Class here feed from agricultural wastes
- .085 57 Feed additives and formula feeds
- .086 Field-crop feeds
 Including dry fodder, green fodder
- .086 2 Silage
- .088 Animals for specific purposes
See Manual at 636.1–636.8 vs. 636.088
- .088 2 Beasts of burden
 Class here draft animals, pack animals
 Class comprehensive works on work animals in 636.0886
- .088 3 Animals raised for food
For animals raised for eggs and milk, see 636.08842
- .088 4 Animals raised for special products
For animals raised for food, see 636.0883
- .088 42 Animals raised for eggs and milk
 Class milk processing in 637.1; class egg processing in 637.5
See Manual at 636.1–636.8 vs. 636.088
- .088 44 Animals raised for hide
 Class fur farming in 636.97
For hair, see 636.08845

- .088 45 Animals raised for hair and feathers
 Including bristles, wool
- .088 5 Laboratory animals
- .088 6 Work animals
 Including animals used to guard and herd
 For beasts of burden, see 636.0882; for sport and stunt animals, see 636.0888
- .088 7 Pets
 Class here obedience training
 Class reminiscences about and true accounts of pets in 808.883. Class reminiscences about and true accounts of pets in a specific literature with the literature in 800, plus notation 803 from Table 3B under the appropriate language, e.g., reminiscences in English about pets 828.03; class literary treatment of pets other than reminiscences with the appropriate literary form in 800, e.g., a late 20th century English novel about pets 823.914
 See Manual at 800, T3C—362 vs. 398.245, 590, 636
- .088 8 Sport and stunt animals
 Including circus, fighting, hunting, game, racing animals
 Class show animals in 636.0811; class comprehensive works on work animals in 636.0886
- .088 9 Zoo animals
- .089 Veterinary medicine
 Class here veterinary sciences
 Add to base number 636.089 the numbers following 61 in 610–618, e.g., veterinary viral diseases 636.089691
 Class animal welfare in 636.0832; class animal hospitals in 636.08321

> **636.1–636.8 Specific kinds of domestic animals**

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 01 Philosophy and theory
- [015765] Genetics
 - Do not use; class in 2
- 02–06 Standard subdivisions
- 07 Education, research, related topics
- 079 Competitions, awards, financial support
 - Do not use for animal shows and related awards; class in 1
- 08–09 Standard subdivisions
 - 1 Showing
 - Class here judging
 - 2 Breeding
 - 22 Breeding records
 - Class here origin of the breed or breeds; herdbooks, pedigrees, studbooks
 - 3 Care, feeding, training, veterinary medicine
 - 35 Training
 - 39 Veterinary medicine

Class comprehensive works in 636

See Manual at 636.1–636.8 vs. 636.088

.1 Horses

Class here equines

.100 1–.100 9 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 636.001–636.009

.101–.108 Specific topics in husbandry of horses

Add to base number 636.10 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., housing horses 636.10831; however, for racehorses, see 636.12; for riding horses, see 636.13; for draft horses, see 636.15

Class training of riders and drivers, comprehensive works on training horses and their riders and drivers in 798

.109 Miniature horses

Regardless of breed

> **636.11–636.17 Specific breeds and kinds of horses**

Class miniature horses regardless of breed in 636.109; class comprehensive works in 636.1

.11 Oriental horses

.112 *Arabian horse

- .12 *Racehorses
 For a specific breed of racehorse, see the breed, e.g., Thoroughbred horse 636.132
- .13 Saddle horses (Riding horses)
 Including American saddled, Tennessee walking horses; American paint, Appaloosa, Morab, mustang, pinto
 For wild mustang, see 599.6655; for Oriental horses, see 636.11; for comprehensive works on racehorses, see 636.12
- .132 *Thoroughbred horse
- .133 *Quarter horse
- .138 *Lippizaner horse
- .14 *Carriage horses
 Including Cleveland bay and Hackney horses
 Class here coach horses, comprehensive works on harness horses (carriage horses and light harness horses)
 Class comprehensive works on harness and draft horses in 636.15
 For light harness horses, see 636.17
- .15 *Draft horses
 Including Belgian draft, Clydesdale, Shire horses
 Class here comprehensive works on harness and draft horses
 For harness horses, see 636.14
- .16 *Ponies
 Including Chincoteague, Iceland, Shetland, Welsh ponies
- .17 *Light harness horses
- .175 *Standardbred horse
 Class here trotters
- .177 *Morgan horse
- .18 Other equines
 Including zebras
- .182 *Donkeys (Burros)
- .183 *Mules

.2 Cattle and related animals

Class here bovidae, bovines, ruminants

Subdivisions are added for cattle and related animals together, for cattle alone

For sheep and goats, see 636.3; for Tragulidae, see 636.963

.200 1--200 9 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 636.001--636.009

.201--208 Specific topics on husbandry of cattle and related animals together, of cattle alone

Add to base number 636.20 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01--636.08, e.g., heifers 636.207; however, for cattle for specific purposes, see 636.21

.21 Cattle for specific purposes

Class here production, maintenance, training

Add to base number 636.21 the numbers following 636.088 in 636.0882--636.0889, e.g., raising cattle for beef 636.213, for milk 636.2142

Class veterinary science in 636.2089; class specific breeds of cattle for specific purposes in 636.22--636.28; class milking and milk processing in 637.1

> 636.22--636.28 Specific breeds of cattle

Class comprehensive works in 636.2

.22 British breeds of cattle

.222 English beef breeds

Including Hereford and Shorthorn cattle

.223 Scottish, Welsh, Irish beef breeds

Including Aberdeen Angus, Galloway, Highland cattle

.224 Channel Island dairy breeds

Including Guernsey and Jersey cattle

.225 Scottish and Irish dairy breeds

Including Ayrshire and Dexter cattle

.226 Dual-purpose breeds

Including Devon, English Longhorn, Polled Shorthorn cattle

.23 German, Dutch, Danish, Swiss breeds of cattle

.232 Beef breeds

.234 Dairy breeds

Including Brown Swiss and Holstein-Friesian cattle

- .236 Dual-purpose breeds
- .24 French and Belgian breeds of cattle
- .242 Beef breeds
- .244 Dairy breeds
- .246 Dual-purpose breeds
- .27 Other European breeds of cattle
- .28 Non-European breeds of cattle
- .29 Other larger ruminants and Camelidae
 - Including Giraffidae
- .291 Zebus (Brahmans)
- .292 Bison
 - Variant names: American buffalo, buffalo
 - See also 636.293 for water buffalo*
- .293 Other Bovoidea
 - Including water buffalo
- .294 Cervidae (Deer)
 - Use of this number for Giraffidae discontinued; class in 636.29
- .294 4 Cervus
- .294 42 *Cervus elephas
 - Variant names: American elk, red deer, wapiti
- .294 5 *Dama (Fallow deer)
- .294 8 *Rangifer
 - Variant names: caribou, reindeer
- .295 *Camels
 - Subdivisions are added for specific breeds
- .296 Camelidae
 - Including vicuña
 - For camels, see 636.295*
- .296 6 *Llamas (Guanaco, Alpacas)
 - Subdivisions are added for specific breeds

.3 Sheep and goats

Subdivisions are added for sheep and goats together, for sheep alone

* Add as instructed under 636.1–636.8

- .390 1–.390 8 Specific topics in husbandry of goats
 Add to base number 636.390 the numbers following 636.0 in
 636.01–636.08, e.g., goat farms 636.301; however, for goats for
 specific purposes, see 636.391
- .391 Goats for specific purposes
 Class here production, maintenance, training
 Add to base number 636.391 the numbers following 636.088 in
 636.0882–636.0889, e.g., raising goats for hair 636.39145
 Class veterinary science in 636.39089; class specific breeds of goats for
 specific purposes in 636.392–636.398
- .392–.398 Specific breeds of goats
 Add to base number 636.39 the numbers following 636.3 in
 636.32–636.38, e.g., Angora goat 636.3985

.4 Swine

- .400 1–.400 9 Standard subdivisions
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 636.001–636.009
- .401–.408 Specific topics in husbandry of swine
 Add to base number 636.40 the numbers following 636.0 in
 636.01–636.08, e.g., swine for specific purposes other than food
 636.4088
 Class swine for food in 636.4
-
- > 636.42–636.48 Specific breeds of swine
 Class comprehensive works in 636.4
- .42–.47 European breeds of swine
 Add to base number 636.4 the numbers following 636.3 in 636.32–636.37,
 e.g., British breeds 636.42
- .48 Non-European breeds of swine
- .482 Poland China swine
- .483 Duroc-Jersey swine
- .484 American breeds
 Including Cheshire, Chester White, Hampshire, Victoria swine
 *For Poland China swine, see 636.482; for Duroc-Jersey swine, see
 636.483*
- .485 Asian breeds
- .486 African breeds
- .489 Pacific Ocean island breeds

.5 Chickens and other kinds of domestic birds

Class here poultry, comprehensive works on raising birds, interdisciplinary works on species of domestic birds

Subdivisions are added for chickens and other kinds of domestic birds together, for chickens alone

For birds other than poultry, see 636.6. For a specific nonagricultural aspect of domestic birds, see the aspect, e.g., biology of domestic birds 598

.500 1–.500 9 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 636.001–636.009

.501–.508 Specific topics of husbandry of chickens and other kinds of domestic birds together, of chickens alone

Add to base number 636.50 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., chicken breeding 636.5082; however, for poultry for specific purposes, see 636.51

.51 Poultry for specific purposes

Class here production, maintenance, training

Add to base number 636.51 the numbers following 636.088 in 636.0882–636.0889, e.g., raising chickens for meat 636.513, for eggs 636.5142

Class veterinary science in 636.5089; class specific breeds of chickens for specific purposes in 636.52–636.58; class poultry other than chickens for specific purposes in 636.59

> 636.52–636.58 Specific breeds of chickens

Class comprehensive works in 636.5

.52–.57 European breeds of chickens

Add to base number 636.5 the numbers following 636.3 in 636.32–636.37, e.g., Leghorn 636.55

For diminutive varieties of European breeds of chickens, see 636.587

.58 Non-European and diminutive breeds of chickens

.581 American breeds

For Plymouth Rock chicken, see 636.582; for Wyandotte chicken, see 636.583; for Rhode Island Red chicken, see 636.584; for diminutive varieties of American breeds, see 636.587

.582 Plymouth Rock chicken

.583 Wyandotte chicken

.584 Rhode Island Red chicken

.585 Asian breeds

For diminutive varieties of Asian breeds, see 636.587

- .587 Diminutive varieties
- .587 1 *Bantams
- .587 2 Cornish fowl
- .59 Other poultry
- .592 Turkeys
- .592 001–.592 009 Standard subdivisions
- Notation from Table 1 as modified under 636.001–636.009
- .592 01–.592 08 Specific topics in husbandry of turkeys
- Add to base number 636.5920 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., raising turkeys for meat 636.5920883
- .593 Guinea fowl
- .594 Pheasants
- .595 Peafowl
- .596 *Pigeons
- Subdivisions are added for specific breeds
- .597 *Ducks
- Subdivisions are added for specific breeds
- .598 Geese
- .6 Birds other than poultry**
- Class comprehensive works on birds in 636.5
- .61 Birds raised for feathers
- Class a specific kind of bird raised for feathers with the kind, e.g., ostriches 636.694
- .63 Game birds
- .68 Ornamental birds, songbirds, hawks
- Standard subdivisions are added for ornamental birds, songbirds, hawks together; for ornamental birds alone; for songbirds alone
- Including mynas, toucans
- Class here aviary birds, cage birds
- For peafowl, see 636.595*
- .681 Swans
- .686 Finches, parrots, hawks
- .686 2 *Finches

*Add as instructed under 636.1–636.8

- .686 25 *Canaries
 Subdivisions are added for specific varieties
- .686 4 *Budgerigars
 Variant names: lovebirds; grass, shell parakeets
 Subdivisions are added for specific varieties
 Class comprehensive works on parakeets in 636.6865
 See also 636.6865 for lovebirds (Agapornis)
- .686 5 *Parrots
 Including cockatoos, conures, lories, lovebirds (Agapornis), macaws,
 comprehensive works on parakeets
 For budgerigars (lovebirds), see 636.6864
- .686 56 *Cockatiels
 Subdivisions are added for specific varieties
- .686 9 *Hawks
 Class here falcons
 Subdivisions are added for specific varieties
- .69 Ratites
- .694 *Ostriches
- .7 Dogs**
- .700 1–.700 9 Standard subdivisions
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 636.001–636.009
- .701–.708 Specific topics in husbandry of dogs
 Add to base number 636.70 the numbers following 636.0 in
 636.01–636.08, e.g., breeding 636.7082; however, for sled dogs,
 watchdogs, see 636.73; for hunting dogs, see 636.75
 See also 636.73 for working dogs as a recognized group of dog
 breeds; also 636.752 for sporting dogs as a recognized group of dog
 breeds
 See Manual at 636.70886, 636.70888 vs. 636.73, 636.752
- .71 Breeds of dogs
 For specific breeds, see 636.72–636.76

- > 636.72–636.75 Specific breeds and groups of dogs
- Class comprehensive works in 636.71
- For toy dogs of any breed, see 636.76*
- See Manual at 636.72–636.75*
- .72 Nonsporting dogs
- Including bichon frise, Boston terrier, bulldog, Chinese Shar-Pei, chow chow, Dalmatian, Finnish spitz, French bulldog, Keeshond, Lhasa apso, Schipperke, Tibetan spaniel, Tibetan terrier
- Class here utility breeds (United Kingdom)
- Class comprehensive works on terriers in 636.755
- .728 *Poodles
- Class here miniature poodle
- Subdivisions are added for specific breeds
- .73 Working and herding dogs
- Standard subdivisions are added for working and herding dogs together, for working dogs alone
- Including sled dogs, watchdogs (guard dogs)
- Including akita, Alaskan Malamute, Bernese mountain dog, boxer, bullmastiff, Eskimo dogs, Great Dane, Great Pyrenees, Komondor, Kuvasz, mastiffs, Newfoundland, Portuguese water dog, Rottweiler, Saint Bernard, Samoyed, Schnauzers (standard and giant), Siberian husky
- Class Finnish spitz in 636.72; class Norwegian elkhound in 636.753; class miniature Schnauzer in 636.755
- See also 636.70886 for dogs as working animals*
- See Manual at 636.70886, 636.70888 vs. 636.73, 636.752*
- .736 *Doberman pinscher
- Class miniature pinscher in 636.76
- .737 Herding dogs
- Including Australian cattle dog, Belgian Malinois, Belgian Tervuren, Bouvier des Flandres, Briard, puli, Welsh corgis; sheep dogs other than collies and German shepherd dog
- .737 4 *Collies
- Subdivisions are added for specific breeds
- .737 6 *German shepherd dog (German police dog)

- .75 Sporting dogs, hounds, terriers
 Class here hunting dogs, sporting dogs (United Kingdom)
- .752 Sporting dogs
 Including Brittany, Vizsla, Weimaraner, wirehaired pointing griffon
 Class here bird dogs, gundogs (United Kingdom)
 See also 636.70888 for dogs as sport animals
 See Manual at 636.70886, 636.70888 vs. 636.73, 636.752
- .752 4 *Spaniels
 Subdivisions are added for specific breed
 See also 636.72 for Tibetan spaniel; also 636.76 for Japanese spaniel (chin)
- .752 5 *Pointers
 Subdivisions are added for specific breeds
- .752 6 *Setters
 Subdivisions are added for specific breeds
- .752 7 *Retrievers
 Subdivisions are added for specific breeds
- .753 Hounds
 Including Norwegian elkhound
 See Manual at 636.72–636.75: Hounds
- .753 2 Gazeounds (Sighthounds)
 Including Ibizan hound, Saluki, Scottish deerhound, whippet
 For Afghan hound, see 636.7533; for greyhound, see 636.7534; for Borzoi, Irish wolfhound, see 636.7535
- .753 3 *Afghan hound
- .753 4 *Greyhound
 Class Italian greyhound in 636.76; class greyhound racing in 798.8
- .753 5 *Wolfhounds
 Including Borzoi, Irish wolfhound
- .753 6 Scent hounds (Tracking hounds)
 Including Basenji, basset hound, black and tan coonhound, bloodhound, foxhounds, harrier, otterhound, petit basset griffon vendéen, pharaoh hound, Rhodesian ridgeback
 For beagle, see 636.7537; for dachshund, see 636.7538

- .753 7 *Beagle
- .753 8 *Dachshund
 Class miniature dachshund in 636.76
- .755 Terriers
 Including miniature Schnauzer
 For Boston and Tibetan terriers, see 636.72; for toy terriers, see 636.76
- .755 9 *Bull terriers
 Class here pit bull terriers
 Subdivisions are added for specific breeds
- .76 Toy dogs
 Including affenpinscher, Brussels griffon, Chihuahua, Chinese crested, English toy spaniel, Italian greyhound, Japanese chin, Maltese, Mexican hairless (*Xoloitzcuintli*), miniature dachshund, miniature pinscher, Papillon, Pekingese, Pomeranian, pug, shih tzu, silky terrier, toy Manchester terrier, toy poodle, Yorkshire terrier
 Class miniature poodle in 636.728; class miniature Schnauzer in 636.755
- .8 Cats**
- .800 1–.800 9 Standard subdivisions
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 636.001–636.009
- .801–.808 Specific topics in husbandry of cats
 Add to base number 636.80 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., breeding cats 636.8082, cats for specific purposes other than pets 636.8088
 Class cats as pets in 636.8
-
- > 636.82–636.83 Specific breeds and kinds of domestic cats
 Class comprehensive works in 636.8
 See Manual at 636.82–636.83
- .82 Shorthair cats
 Including Chartreux, Russian blue cats
 Class here foreign (Oriental) shorthair cats
- .822 Common shorthair cats
 Breeds of British Isles, Canada, United States
 Including Bengal, Manx, rex cats

- .824 ***Burmese cat**
 Subdivisions are added for specific varieties
- .825 ***Siamese cat**
 Subdivisions are added for specific varieties
- .826 ***Abyssinian cat**
 Subdivisions are added for specific varieties
- .83 **Longhair cats**
 Including Himalayan, Maine coon, Turkish Angora, Turkish Van cats
- .832 ***Persian cat**
 Subdivisions are added for specific varieties
- .89 **Nondomestic cats**
 Including cheetah, ocelot
- .9 Other mammals**

Class here other mammals as pets

Add to base number 636.9 the numbers following 599 in 599.2–599.8, e.g., hamsters 636.9356, fur-bearing animals 636.97; however, for Equidae, see 636.1; for ruminants other than Tragulidae, see 636.2; for Camelidae, see 636.296; for Felidae, see 636.8

637 Processing dairy and related products

Class comprehensive works on dairy farming in 636.2142

.1 Milk processing

- > 637.12–637.14 Cow's milk
 Class comprehensive works in 637.1
- .12 Milking and inspection of cow's milk
- .124 Milking
- .127 Inspection and testing
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .127 6 Butterfat tests
- .127 7 Bacterial counts
- .14 Processing specific forms of cow's milk
- > 637.141–637.146 Whole milk
 Class comprehensive works in 637.1

*Add as instructed under 636.1–636.8

- .141 Fresh whole milk
 Including comprehensive works on pasteurization, homogenization,
 vitamin D treatment
 *For pasteurization, homogenization, vitamin D treatment of products
 other than fresh whole milk, see the product, e.g., cream 637.148*
- .141 028 7 Measurement
 Do not use for testing; class in 637.127
- .142 Concentrated liquid forms of whole milk
- .142 2 Evaporated milk
- .142 4 Sweetened condensed milk
- .143 Dried whole milk
- .146 Cultured whole milk
 For yogurt from whole milk, see 637.1476
- .147 Skim milk
- .147 3 Dried skim milk
- .147 6 Cultured skim milk
 Class here yogurt
- .148 Cream
- .17 Milk other than cow's milk
- .2 Butter processing**
- .24 By-products
 Class here buttermilk
- .3 Cheese processing**
 Including by-products
- .35 Varieties
- .352 Cream cheese
- .353 Ripened soft cheeses
 Including Brie
- .354 Hard cheeses
 Including cheddar and Swiss cheeses
- .356 Fresh cheeses
 Including cottage cheese
 For cream cheese, see 637.352
- .358 Cheese foods

.4 Manufacture of frozen desserts

Class here ice cream

.5 Egg processing

Class raising hens for eggs in 636.5142; class raising poultry other than chickens for eggs in 636.59

.54 Dried eggs

Including dried egg whites and yolks

638 Insect culture**.1 Bee keeping (Apiculture)****.12 Varieties of bees**

Class a specific aspect of a specific variety of bee with the aspect, e.g., pasturage 638.13

.13 Pasturage for bees**.14 Hive management****.144 Supplementary feeding of bees****.145 Queen rearing****.146 Swarming control****.15 Injuries, diseases, pests****.151–.158 Specific injuries, diseases, pests**

Add to base number 638.15 the numbers following 632 in 632.1–632.8, e.g., diseases 638.154

For adverse effects of pesticides, see 638.159

.159 Adverse effects of pesticides**.16 Honey processing**

Class here comprehensive works on bee products

For wax, see 638.17

.17 Wax**.2 Silkworms****.5 Other insects****.57 Specific insects**

Add to base number 638.57 the numbers following 595.7 in 595.72–595.79, e.g., butterfly gardening 638.5789

639 Hunting, fishing, conservation, related technologies

Class here culture of nondomesticated animals

For sports hunting and fishing, see 799

SUMMARY

- 639.091 6 Treatment in air and water
- .1 Hunting
 - .2 Commercial fishing, whaling, sealing
 - .3 Culture of cold-blooded vertebrates
 - .4 Mollusk fisheries and culture
 - .5 Crustacean fisheries
 - .6 Crustacean culture
 - .7 Harvest and culture of invertebrates other than mollusks and crustaceans
 - .8 Aquaculture
 - .9 Conservation of biological resources
- .091 6 Treatment in air and water
- Class aquaculture in 639.8
- .1 Hunting**
- Class here trapping, subsistence hunting
- Class comprehensive works on commercial and sports hunting in 799.2
- .11 Hunting mammals
- Add to base number 639.11 the numbers following 599 in 599.2–599.8, e.g., bison (buffalo) hunting 639.11643, hunting fur-bearing animals 639.117; however, for whaling, see 639.28; for sealing, see 639.29
- Most works on trapping mammals are on fur trapping, and will be classed in 639.117
- See also 333.9549 for resource economics of game mammals in general; also 333.959 for resource economics of specific mammals; also 636.97 for fur farming; also 799.2 for sports hunting*
- .12 Hunting birds
- Most works on hunting game birds will be classed in 333.958 (resource economics) or 799.24 (sports hunting)
- .128 Specific kinds of birds
- Add to base number 639.128 the numbers following 598 in 598.3–598.9, e.g., waterfowl 639.12841
- .13 Hunting amphibians
- See also 639.378 for amphibian farming*
- .14 Reptile hunting
- Add to base number 639.14 the numbers following 597.9 in 597.92–597.98, e.g., hunting alligators 639.148
- See also 639.39 for reptile farming*

.2 Commercial fishing, whaling, sealing

Standard subdivisions are added for commercial fishing, whaling, sealing together; for commercial fishing alone

Class here works on fisheries encompassing culture as well as capture, on fisheries encompassing invertebrates as well as fishes

Class comprehensive works on aquaculture in 639.8

For culture of fishes, see 639.3; for fisheries for invertebrates, see 639.4

> 639.21–639.22 Fishing in specific types of water

Class fishing for specific kinds of fishes regardless of kind of water in 639.27; class comprehensive works in 639.2

.21 Fishing in fresh water**.22 Fishing in salt waters**

Including fishing in brackish waters

Class here deep-sea fishing

.27 Fishing for specific kinds of fishes

Add to base number 639.27 the numbers following 597 in 597.2–597.7, e.g., salmon fishing 639.2756

.28 Whaling**.29 Sealing****.3 Culture of cold-blooded vertebrates**

Class here cold-blooded vertebrates as pets; culture of fishes

> 639.31–639.34 Fish culture

Class comprehensive works in 639.3

For culture of specific kinds of fishes, see 639.372–639.377

.31 Fish culture in fresh water

Class here fishponds, freshwater fish farming

For fish culture in freshwater aquariums, see 639.34

.311 Fish hatcheries**.312 Fish culture in lakes****.313 Fish culture in streams**

Class here fish culture in rivers

- .32 Fish culture in salt waters
 Including fish culture in brackish waters
For fish culture in marine aquariums, see 639.342
- .34 Fish culture in aquariums
 Class here freshwater aquariums, home aquariums
 Class interdisciplinary works on aquariums in 597.073
- .342 Marine aquariums
- .344 Institutional aquariums
 Class interdisciplinary works on educational and scientific aquariums in 597.073
For marine aquariums, see 639.342
- .37 Culture of amphibians and specific kinds of fishes
- [.370 1–.370 9] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 639.301–639.309
- .372–.377 Culture of specific kinds of fishes
 Add to base number 639.37 the numbers following 597 in 597.2–597.7, e.g., carp, koi 639.37483; goldfish 639.37484
- .378 Amphibian culture
 Add to base number 639.378 the numbers following 597.8 in 597.82–597.89, e.g., frog culture 639.3789
- .39 Reptile culture
 Add to base number 639.39 the numbers following 597.9 in 597.92–597.98, e.g., turtle culture 639.392

.4 Mollusk fisheries and culture

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here Bivalvia; comprehensive works on harvest and culture of invertebrates, on shellfish fisheries and culture

For crustacean fisheries, see 639.5; for crustacean culture, see 639.6; for harvest and culture of invertebrates other than mollusks and crustaceans, see 639.7

> 639.41–639.46 Bivalvia

Class comprehensive works in 639.4

.41 Oysters

Class here edible oysters

.412 Pearl oysters

.42 Mussels

- .44 Clams
- .46 Scallops
- .48 Mollusks other than Bivalvia
- Add to base number 639.48 the numbers following 594 in 594.2–594.5, e.g., land snails 639.4838

.5 Crustacean fisheries

Class here comprehensive works on crustacean fisheries and culture

Add to base number 639.5 the numbers following 595.38 in 595.384–595.388, e.g., shrimps 639.58

For crustacean culture, see 639.6

.6 Crustacean culture

Add to base number 639.6 the numbers following 595.38 in 595.384–595.388, e.g., crayfish culture 639.64

.7 Harvest and culture of invertebrates other than mollusks and crustaceans

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

For insect culture, see 638

.75 Worms

Class here bait worm culture, earthworms (night crawlers), fishworms, worm farming

.8 Aquaculture

Class here mariculture

Class aquaculture of a specific kind of animal with the kind, e.g., aquaculture of fishes 639.3

.89 Aquaculture of plants

Class hydroponics in 631.585

.9 Conservation of biological resources

Class here conservation of animals, game animals, mammals, vertebrates, wildlife; game protection

Class interdisciplinary works on conservation of biological resources in 333.9516; class interdisciplinary works on conservation of animals, vertebrates, mammals in 333.95416

See also 636.0888 for raising warm-blooded game animals

> 639.92–639.96 Specific topics in conservation

Class specific topics in conservation of specific kinds of animals in 639.97; class specific topics in conservation of plants in 639.99; class comprehensive works in 639.9

- .92 Habitat improvement
- .93 Population control
- .95 Maintenance of reserves and refuges
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .96 Control of injuries, diseases, pests
- .964 Diseases
- .966 Pests
 Class here predator control
 Class comprehensive works on pest control in agriculture in 632.6; class
 comprehensive works on predator control in agriculture in 636.0839
- .969 Adverse effects of pesticides
- .97 Specific kinds of animals
 Other than vertebrates taken as a whole, mammals taken as a whole
 See Manual at 333.955–333.959 vs. 639.97
- [.970 1–.970 9] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 639.901–639.909
- .971–.978 Specific kinds of animals other than mammals
 Add to base number 639.97 the numbers following 59 in 591–598, e.g.,
 protecting marine animals 639.97177, attracting birds 639.978
 *See also 598.07234 for bird watching; also 638.5789 for butterfly
 gardening; also 639.3 for raising game fishes; also 690.8927 for
 building bird houses*
- .979 Specific kinds of mammals
 Class comprehensive works on mammals in 639.9
- [.979 01–.979 09] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 639.901–639.909
- .979 1–.979 8 Subdivisions for specific kinds of mammals
 Add to base number 639.979 the numbers following 599 in
 599.1–599.8, e.g., habitat improvement for deer 639.97965
- .99 Plant conservation

640 Home and family management

Standard subdivisions are added for home and family management together, for home management alone

Class here home economics, household management

Use 640 for housekeeping covering activities related to running the home, e.g., preparing meals and doing routine repairs as well as cleaning. Use 648 for housekeeping limited to cleaning

Class personal health in 613; class management of public households in 647

SUMMARY

640.1--9 Standard subdivisions; specific aspects of home management; evaluation and purchasing guides

- 641 Food and drink
- 642 Meals and table service
- 643 Housing and household equipment
- 644 Household utilities
- 645 Household furnishings
- 646 Sewing, clothing, management of personal and family life
- 647 Management of public households (Institutional housekeeping)
- 648 Housekeeping
- 649 Child rearing; home care of people with disabilities and illnesses

[.288] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 643.7

.29 Commercial miscellany

Do not use for evaluation and purchasing manuals; class in 640.73

.4 Specific aspects of home management

Class comprehensive works on home management in 640

.41 Helpful hints and miscellaneous recipes

.43 Time management

Class interdisciplinary works on time management in 650.11

.46 Management of household employees

Duties, hours, selection, training

Class management of institutional household employees in 647.2

.6 Organizations

[.68] Management

Do not use for comprehensive works; class in 640. Do not use for specific aspects; class in 640.4

.7 Education, research, related topics; evaluation and purchasing guides

Notation 07 from Table 1 as modified below

.73 Evaluation and purchasing guides

Class here consumer education for home and personal needs

Class comprehensive works on managing household money in 332.024; class interdisciplinary evaluation and purchasing guides and works on consumer education in 381.33. Class evaluation and purchasing guides for a specific product or service with the product or service, plus notation 029 from Table 1, e.g., manual on evaluating automobiles 629.222029

641 Food and drink

Class applied nutrition in 613.2

For meals and table service, see 642

SUMMARY

- 641.01 Philosophy and theory, gastronomy
- .2 Beverages (Drinks)
- .3 Food
- .4 Food preservation and storage
- .5 Cooking
- .6 Cooking specific materials
- .7 Specific cooking processes and techniques
- .8 Cooking specific kinds of dishes and preparing beverages

.01 Philosophy and theory, gastronomy

Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below

.013 Gastronomy

Class here pleasures of food and drink, comprehensive works on the slow food movement

For a specific aspect of the slow food movement, see the aspect, e.g., purchasing food at farmers markets 381.4, growing heirloom tomatoes 635.642, slow food cooking in restaurants 641.572

.2 Beverages (Drinks)

Class here interdisciplinary works on beverages

Class comprehensive works on nutritive values of beverages in 613.2. Class nutritive values of a specific beverage with the beverage, e.g., nutritive value of wine 641.22

For a specific aspect of beverages, see the aspect, e.g., manufacture (commercial preparation) 663

.21 Alcoholic beverages

Class home preparation of alcoholic beverages, bartending in 641.874

For wine, see 641.22; for brewed and malted beverages, see 641.23; for distilled liquor, see 641.25

- .22 Wine
- Class here grape wine, comprehensive works on white and red wine, comprehensive works on specific white and red wines (specific brands, estate wines)
- Class home preparation of wine in 641.872
- See also 641.23 for mead, rice wine*
- .222 Kinds of grape wine
- Including ice wine
- [.222 01–.222 09] Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 641.2201–641.2209
- .222 2 White wine
- Class here specific white wines (specific brands, estate wines, varietals)
- Class comprehensive works on white and red wine in 641.22; class white ice wine in 641.222
- For sparkling white wine, see 641.2224; for fortified white wine, see 641.2226*
- .222 3 Red wine
- Class here specific red wines (specific brands, estate wines, varietals)
- Class red ice wine in 641.222
- For sparkling red wine, see 641.2224; for fortified red wine, see 641.2226*
- .222 32 Rosé wine
- Class here specific rosé wines (specific brands, estate wines, varietals)
- .222 4 Sparkling wine
- Class here specific sparkling wines (specific brands, estate wines, varietals)
- Class comprehensive works on white wine in 641.2222; class comprehensive works on red wine in 641.2223
- .222 6 Fortified wine
- Class here specific fortified wines (specific brands, estate wines, varietals)
- Class comprehensive works on white wine in 641.2222; class comprehensive works on red wine in 641.2223
- .229 Nongrape wine
- Including fermented cider

- .23 Brewed and malted beverages
 Including mead (honey wine), pulque, rice wine
 Class here beer, ale
 Class malt whiskey in 641.252; class home brewing in 641.873
- .25 Distilled liquor
 Including mescal, potato whiskey, tequila, vodka
- .252 Whiskey
 Class potato whiskey in 641.25
- .253 Brandy
- .255 Compound liquors
 Including absinthe, gin
 Class here cordials, liqueurs
- .259 Rum
- .26 Nonalcoholic beverages
 Including carbonated, malted, mineralized beverages
For specific nonalcoholic beverages made from a single principal ingredient, see 641.3, e.g., orange juice 641.3431; for nonalcoholic beverages made from multiple ingredients, see 641.875
- .3 Food**
 Class here interdisciplinary works on food
For interdisciplinary works on specific dishes, see 641.8. For a specific aspect of food, see the aspect, e.g., manufacture (commercial preparation) 664
See Manual at 363.8 vs. 613.2, 641.3; also at 630 vs. 579–590, 641.3
- .300 1 Philosophy and theory
- .300 2 Miscellany
- .300 29 Commercial miscellany
 Do not use for evaluation and purchasing manuals; class in 641.31
- .300 3–.300 9 Standard subdivisions
- .302 Health foods
 Including substitutes for food regarded as unhealthy, e.g., dairy substitutes
 Class here natural foods, organically grown foods
 Class dietetics in 613.2
See also 641.563 for health cooking

- .303 Food from plants
 Class here vegetarian foods
 For specific food from plant crops, see 641.33–641.35
 See also 641.5636 for vegetarian cooking
- .306 Food from animals
 For specific food from animals, see 641.36–641.39
- .308 Food additives
- .31 Evaluation and purchasing manuals
 Class comprehensive works on applied nutrition in 613.2; class evaluation
 and purchasing manuals of specific food in 641.33–641.39
- .33–.35 Specific food from plant crops
 Class here nutritive values
 Add to base number 641.3 the numbers following 63 in 633–635, e.g., field
 legumes 641.3565
 Class comprehensive works on food from plants in 641.303
-
- > 641.36–641.39 Specific food from animals
 Class here nutritive values
 Class comprehensive works on food from animals in 641.306
- .36 Meat
 Add to base number 641.36 the numbers following 636 in 636.1–636.8, e.g.,
 ham 641.364
 For game and seafood, see 641.39
- .37 Dairy and related products
 Add to base number 641.37 the numbers following 637 in 637.1–637.5, e.g.,
 skim milk 641.37147
- .38 Honey
- .39 Game and seafood
 Add to base number 641.39 the numbers following 641.69 in
 641.691–641.696, e.g., oysters 641.394
- .4 Food preservation and storage**
 Standard subdivisions are added for food preservation and storage together, for
 food preservation alone
 Class interdisciplinary works on food preservation in 664.028

-
- > 641.41–641.46 Preservation techniques for fruit and vegetables, for food as a whole
- Class comprehensive works in 641.4
- For preservation techniques for meat and allied food, see 641.49*
- .41 Preliminary treatment
- .42 Canning
- .44 Drying and dehydrating
- Including freeze-drying
- .45 Low-temperature techniques
- .452 Cold storage
- .453 Deep freezing
- For freeze-drying, see 641.44*
- .46 Pickling, brining, smoking
- Class here chemical preservation
- .462 Pickling
- Class here pickles
- .48 Storage
- .49 Meat
- Class storage of meat in 641.48
- .492 Red meat
- Add to base number 641.492 the numbers following 641.4 in 641.41–641.46, e.g., canning red meat 641.4922
- .493 Poultry
- Add to base number 641.493 the numbers following 641.4 in 641.41–641.46, e.g., freezing poultry 641.49353
- .494 Seafood
- Add to base number 641.494 the numbers following 641.4 in 641.41–641.46, e.g., brining seafood 641.4946
- .495 Other animal flesh

.5 Cooking

Preparation of food with and without use of heat

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., outdoor cooking for children 641.5622 (*not* 641.578):

Cooking for special situations, reasons, ages	641.56
Quantity, institutional, travel, outdoor cooking	641.57
Money-saving and timesaving cooking	641.55
Cooking with specific fuels, appliances, utensils	641.58
Cooking specific meals	641.52–641.54
Beginner and gourmet cooking	641.51
Cooking characteristic of specific geographic environments, ethnic cooking	641.59

Class menus and meal planning in 642

For cooking specific materials, see 641.6; for specific cooking processes and techniques, see 641.7; for cooking specific kinds of dishes, preparing beverages, see 641.8

SUMMARY

641.501–.509	Standard subdivisions
.51	Beginner and gourmet cooking
.52	First meal of the day
.53	Light meals
.54	Main meal of the day
.55	Money-saving and timesaving cooking
.56	Cooking for special situations, reasons, ages
.57	Quantity, institutional, travel, outdoor cooking
.58	Cooking with specific fuels, appliances, utensils
.59	Cooking characteristic of specific geographic environments, ethnic cooking
.502	Miscellany
.502 8	Auxiliary techniques and procedures
[.502 84]	Apparatus, equipment, materials
	Do not use; class in 643.3
.508	Cooking with respect to groups of people
.508 3	Cooking with respect to young people
	Do not use for cooking by children; class in 641.5123. Do not use for cooking for young people; class in 641.5622
.508 4	Cooking with respect to people in specific ages of adulthood
	Do not use for cooking for people in specific ages of adulthood; class in 641.562
.508 7	Cooking with respect to people with disabilities, gifted people
	Do not use for cooking for people with illnesses; class in 641.5631
.508 8	Cooking with respect to occupational groups

- [.508 82] Cooking with respect to religious groups
 Do not use; class in 641.567
- [.508 9] Cooking with respect to ethnic and national groups
 Do not use for Jewish cooking; class in 641.5676. Do not use for
 cooking with respect to other ethnic and national groups; class in
 641.592
- .509 History, geographic treatment, biography
 Do not use for cooking characteristic of specific geographic
 environments; class in 641.59
 Class here collections of recipes from specific restaurants
- .51 Beginner and gourmet cooking
- .512 Beginner cooking
 Class here easy dishes
- .512 3 Children's cooking
 Class cooking of food for consumption by children in 641.5622
- .514 Gourmet cooking
 Gourmet cooking characteristic of specific geographic environments,
 ethnic cooking relocated to 641.59
-
- > 641.52–641.54 Cooking specific meals
 Class comprehensive works in 641.5
- .52 First meal of the day
 Class here brunches [*formerly* 641.532], breakfasts
- .53 Light meals
 Class here snacks; dinners, lunches, suppers, teas as light meals
 Class breakfasts and brunches in 641.52; class dinners, lunches, suppers, teas
 as main meals in 641.54
- [.532] Brunches
 Relocated to 641.52
- [.534–.539] Box and bag lunches, afternoon teas, suppers, snacks
 Numbers discontinued; class in 641.53
- .54 Main meal of the day
 Class here dinners, lunches, suppers, teas as main meals
 Class breakfasts and brunches in 641.52; class dinners, lunches, suppers, teas
 as light meals in 641.53
- .55 Money-saving and timesaving cooking

- .552 Money-saving cooking
 - Including leftovers
- .555 Timesaving cooking
 - Class here make-ahead meals
- .56 Cooking for special situations, reasons, ages

SUMMARY

- 641.561 **Cooking for one or two people**
 - .562 **Cooking for people of specific ages**
 - .563 **Cooking for health, appearance, personal reasons**
 - .564 **Seasonal cooking**
 - .566 **Cooking for Christian church limitations and observances**
 - .567 **Cooking for religious limitations and observances**
 - .568 **Cooking for special occasions**
- .561 Cooking for one or two people
 - .561 1 Cooking for one
 - .561 2 Cooking for two
 - .562 Cooking for people of specific ages
 - .562 2 Young people
 - Class here cooking for children
 - Class cooking by children in 641.5123
 - .562 22 Cooking for infants
 - Class here baby food
 - Class comprehensive works on baby food in 641.300832
 - .562 7 People in late adulthood
- .563 Cooking for health, appearance, personal reasons
 - Standard subdivisions are added for cooking for health, appearance, personal reasons together; for cooking for health alone
 - Class here cooking to prevent illness
- .563 1 Cooking for people with medical conditions
 - Class cooking for specific dietary regimens for specific medical conditions in 641.5632–641.5638
- .563 11 People with heart disease
- .563 14 People with diabetes
- .563 18 People with food allergies
- .563 19 Pregnant women
- .563 2 Cooking with specified vitamin and mineral content

- .563 23 Low-salt cooking
 Class here low-sodium cooking, salt-free cooking
- .563 5 Low-calorie cooking
 Class here cooking for overweight people
 Class cooking with respect to low carbohydrate, fat, protein content in
 641.5638
- .563 6 Vegetarian cooking
 Class comprehensive works on vegetarian foods in 641.303
 See also 641.65 for cooking vegetables
- .563 7 Health-food cooking
 Class comprehensive works on health cooking in 641.563
- .563 8 Cooking with respect to carbohydrate, fat, protein content
- .563 83 Low-carbohydrate cooking
- .563 837 Sugar-free cooking
- .563 84 Low-fat cooking
 Class here fat-free cooking
- .563 847 Low-cholesterol cooking
- .564 Seasonal cooking
 Class cooking for special occasions in 641.568
- .566 Cooking for Christian church limitations and observances
 Including Lent
 Class here cooking for specific Christian groups
 For cooking for Christmas, see 641.5686
- .567 Cooking for religious limitations and observances
 Class here cooking for days of feast and fast, cooking with respect to
 religious groups
 Add to base number 641.567 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g.,
 Jewish cooking 641.5676
 *For cooking for Christian church limitations and observances, see
 641.566*
- .568 Cooking for special occasions
 Class here cooking for holidays, for parties
 Class cooking that emphasizes religious aspects of holidays in 641.567;
 class comprehensive works on food service and cooking for parties in
 642.4
- .568 6 Christmas cooking

- .57 Quantity, institutional, travel, outdoor cooking
 Including cooking for armed services
 Class here short-order cooking
 Class naval cooking in 641.5753
- .571 School cooking
- .572 Hotel and restaurant cooking
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .575 Travel cooking
 Including airline, bus, camper (caravan), dining car cooking
- .575 3 Marine cooking (Shipboard cooking)
 Class here naval cooking
- .577 Canteen cooking
 Temporary or mobile facilities for serving food
- .578 Outdoor cooking
 Class here cookouts
 Class cooking in campers (caravans) in 641.575
- .578 2 Camp cooking
- .578 4 Cooking at an outdoor grill
 Class here cooking at outdoor barbecues
 Class comprehensive works on techniques of barbecuing in 641.76
- .579 Cooking for health care facilities
 Class here cooking for hospitals
- .58 Cooking with specific fuels, appliances, utensils
 Including convection-oven cooking, wood-stove cooking
 Class outdoor cooking in 641.578. Class a specific use of a specific
 appliance or utensil with the use, e.g., frying with frying pans 641.77
- .584 Gas
- .585 Alcohol-based fuels
 Class here cooking with chafing dishes
- .586 Electricity
 Cooking with electric ranges and appliances
 Class convection-oven cooking in 641.58; class microwave cooking in
 641.5882; class electric slow cooking in 641.5884
- .587 Steam and pressure cooking
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .588 Slow and fireless cooking
- .588 2 Microwave cooking
- .588 4 Electric slow cooking
- .589 Specific utensils
Including clay pots, Dutch ovens, foils, specially coated utensils
Class cooking with specific utensils using specific fuels in 641.584–641.588
- .589 2 Food processors
- .589 3 Blenders
- .59 Cooking characteristic of specific geographic environments, ethnic cooking
Class here gourmet cooking characteristic of specific geographic environments, ethnic cooking [*formerly* 641.514]; international cooking
Class history and geographic treatment of general cooking, collections of recipes from specific restaurants, in 641.509
- .591 Cooking characteristic of areas, regions, places in general
Add to base number 641.591 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., arctic and cold-weather cooking 641.5911, tropical and hot-weather cooking 641.5913
- .592 Ethnic cooking
- .592 05–.592 09 Specific ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent
Add to base number 641.592 notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., cooking of ethnic groups of European descent 641.59209
- .592 1–.592 9 Specific ethnic and national groups
Add to base number 641.592 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., African American cooking 641.59296073; however, for Jewish cooking, see 641.5676; for cooking of ethnic groups dominant in their areas, see 641.593–641.599
- .593–.599 Cooking characteristic of specific continents, countries, localities
Add to base number 641.59 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Southern cooking (United States) 641.5975
Class ethnic cooking of nondominant groups in 641.592
- .6 Cooking specific materials**
Class specific kinds of dishes featuring specific materials in 641.8
For leftovers, see 641.552

- .61 Cooking preserved foods
 Add to base number 641.61 the numbers following 641.4 in 641.42–641.46, e.g., cooking using frozen foods 641.6153
 Class home preservation in 641.4; class cooking using specific preserved foods in 641.63–641.69
- .62 Cooking with beverages and their derivatives
 Including vinegar
 Class home preparation of beverages in 641.87. Class cooking with a specific nonalcoholic beverage with the product from which it is derived, e.g., cooking with chocolate 641.6374, with apple juice 641.6411
- .622 Wine
- .623 Beer and ale
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .625 Distilled liquor
-
- > 641.63–641.69 Specific foods
 Class comprehensive works in 641.6
- .63–.67 Cooking food derived from plant crops and domesticated animals
 Add to base number 641.6 the numbers following 63 in 633–637, e.g., legumes 641.6565 (*not* 641.633), garden legumes 641.6565, meat 641.66, chicken meat 641.665; however, for ices, sherbet, sorbet, see 641.863
 Class vegetarian cooking in 641.5636; class comprehensive works on cooking with beverages in 641.62
 For cooking with honey, see 641.68
- .68 Cooking with honey
- .69 Cooking game and seafood
 Class here cooking nondomesticated animals
- .691 Game
 Mammals and birds
- .692 Fish
 Class here seafood
 For mollusks, see 641.694; for crustaceans, see 641.695
- .694 Mollusks
 Including clams, mussels, octopuses, oysters, snails, squid
 Class here shellfish
 For crustaceans, see 641.695

- .695 Crustaceans
 Including crabs, lobsters, shrimp
- .696 Amphibians, insects, reptiles
- .7 Specific cooking processes and techniques**
 Class specific processes applied to specific materials in 641.6; class specific
 processes applied to specific kinds of dishes, preparing beverages in 641.8
- [.701–.709] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 641.501–641.509
- .71 Baking and roasting
 Standard subdivisions are added for baking and roasting together, for baking
 alone
- .73 Braising [*formerly* 641.77], boiling, simmering, steaming, stewing
- .76 Barbecuing, broiling, grilling
 Standard subdivisions are added for barbecuing, broiling, grilling together;
 for barbecuing alone
 Including skewer cooking
 For barbecuing, broiling, grilling at outdoor grills, see 641.5784
- .77 Frying and sautéing
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Braising relocated to 641.73
- .774 Stir frying
 Class here wok cooking
- .79 Preparation of cold dishes
 Class here chilled dishes
- .8 Cooking specific kinds of dishes and preparing beverages**
 Class here interdisciplinary works on specific dishes
 For manufacture (commercial preparation) of complete dishes, see 664.65

SUMMARY

- | | |
|--------|--------------------------------|
| 641.81 | Side dishes, sauces, garnishes |
| .82 | Main dishes |
| .83 | Salads |
| .84 | Sandwiches and related dishes |
| .85 | Preserves and candy |
| .86 | Desserts |
| .87 | Preparing beverages |
- [.801–.809] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 641.501–641.509

- .81 Side dishes, sauces, garnishes
 Standard subdivisions are added for side dishes, sauces, garnishes together;
 for side dishes alone
 Side dishes other than salads, sandwiches, desserts
 Including fondues, stuffing
 Class here specific side dishes treated as entrées
- .812 Appetizers
 Including dips, pâtés, relishes
 Class here finger foods, hors d'oeuvres, savories, starters, tapas
- .813 Soups
- .814 Sauces and salad dressings
 Standard subdivisions are added for sauces and salad dressings together,
 for sauces alone
- .815 Bread and bread-like foods
 Standard subdivisions are added for bread and bread-like foods together,
 for bread alone
 Including crackers, unleavened breads
 Class here yeast breads, comprehensive works on baked goods
 Class main dishes based on bread and bread-like foods in 641.82; class
 sandwiches and related dishes in 641.84
For pastries, see 641.865
- .815 3 Crepes, pancakes, waffles
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .815 7 Quick breads
 Class here biscuits, muffins, scones
See also 641.8654 for biscuits (cookies)
- .819 Garnishes
- .82 Main dishes
 Including quiches, soufflés, sushi
 Class here entrées, one-dish cooking
 Class a side dish, salad, sandwich or stuffed food regarded as a main dish
 with the topic elsewhere in 641.8, e.g., soup 641.813, hamburger on a roll
 641.84
- .821 Casserole dishes
- .822 Noodle and pasta dishes
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .823 Stews
- .823 6 Chili
- .824 Meat and cheese pies
 Including meat loaf
- .824 8 Pizza
- .83 Salads
- .84 Sandwiches and related dishes
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here sandwiches and related dishes of any type, e.g., open-faced
 sandwiches, grilled sandwiches, wraps
- .85 Preserves and candy
- .852 Jams, jellies, marmalades, preserves
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
 See also 641.8642 for jellies (gelatin desserts)
- .853 Candy
 Variant name: sweets
- .86 Desserts
 Class here comprehensive works on candies and desserts
 For preserves and candy, see 641.85
- .862 Frozen desserts
 Including frozen yogurt, ice milk
 Class here ice cream
 For ices, sherbet, sorbet, see 641.863
- .863 Ices, sherbet, sorbet
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .864 Gelatin desserts; puddings
- .864 2 Gelatin desserts
 Variant name: jellies
 See also 641.852 for jellies (preserves)
- .864 4 Puddings
- .865 Pastries
 Class comprehensive works on baked goods in 641.815
- .865 2 Pies and tarts
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .865 3 Cakes
See also 641.8659 for coffee cakes
- .865 39 Cake decoration
 Class here cake icing, sugar art
- .865 4 Cookies
 Variant name: biscuits
See also 641.815 for crackers; also 641.8157 for biscuits (quick breads)
- .865 9 Danish, French, related pastries
 Including coffee cakes, cream puffs, eclairs
- .87 Preparing beverages
 Class interdisciplinary works on beverages in 641.2
See also 641.62 for cooking with beverages
- .872 Wine
- .873 Alcoholic brewed beverages
 Class here beer, ale
- .874 Alcoholic beverages
 Class here bartending, comprehensive works on cocktails (mixed drinks)
For wine, see 641.872; for alcoholic brewed beverages, see 641.873; for bottled and canned cocktails, see 663.1
- .875 Nonalcoholic beverages
 Including carbonated drinks, fruit drinks, juices, malted drinks
For nonalcoholic brewed beverages, see 641.877
- .877 Nonalcoholic brewed beverages
 Including cocoa, coffee, teas; their concentrates and substitutes
 Class cooking with cocoa, coffee, tea in 641.637

642 Meals and table service

Class here menus, menu cookbooks, specific meals

Class banquets, catered meals in 642.4; class comprehensive works on cookbooks in 641.5

- > **642.1–642.5 Meals in specific situations**
 Class here comprehensive works on meals and table service in specific situations
 Class comprehensive works in 642
 For table service in specific situations, see 642.6
- .1 Meals for home, family, individuals**
 Standard subdivisions are added for meals for home, family, individuals together; meals for home alone, for family alone
 Class family and individual meals for camp, picnic, travel in 642.3
- .3 Meals for camp, picnic, travel**
- .4 Meals for social and public occasions**
 Including banquets, catered meals
 Class here entertaining and catering for social and public occasions
 Class party cooking in 641.568; class picnics in 642.3; class catering that includes restaurant operations in 647.95; class interdisciplinary works on entertaining in 793.2
- .5 Meals in public and institutional eating places**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here meals in cafeterias and restaurants
 Class meals for social and public occasions in 642.4; class operation of public eating places in 647.95
- .56 Health care facilities**
 Class here hospitals
- .57 Schools**
 Regardless of level
- .6 Table service**
 Including carving, place setting, seating guests
 Class here table service at specific meals, waiting on tables
 Class comprehensive works on meals and table service in specific situations in 642.1–642.5
 For table furnishings, see 642.7; for table decorations, see 642.8
- .7 Table furnishings**
 Including dinnerware, glassware, silverware, table linens
 For table decorations other than folded napkins, see 642.8
- .79 Napkin folding**

.8 Table decorations

For folded napkins, see 642.79

643 Housing and household equipment

Works for owner-occupants or renters covering activities of members of household

SUMMARY

- 643.1 **Housing**
- .2 **Special-purpose housing and special kinds of housing**
- .3 **Kitchens**
- .4 **Eating and drinking areas**
- .5 **Other areas of the home**
- .6 **Appliances and laborsaving installations**
- .7 **Renovation, improvement, remodeling**

[.028 4] Apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 643

[.028 8] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 643.7

.1 Housing

For special-purpose housing and special kinds of housing, see 643.2

See also 690.8 for construction of houses; also 728 for comprehensive works on design and construction of houses

See Manual at 363.5 vs. 643.1

[.102 88] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 643.7

.102 9 Commercial miscellany

Do not use for evaluation and purchasing guides; class in 643.12

.12 Selecting, buying, selling homes

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Including site selection, supervision of construction

Class here evaluation and purchasing guides; home buying, home inspection

Class moving in 648.9

See also 333.338 for economics of home acquisition; also 346.043 for law of real property

.16 Household security

Class here burglarproofing

Class burglary in 364.1622

.2 Special-purpose housing and special kinds of housing

Including houseboats, modular and prefabricated houses

Class comprehensive works on single-family houses in 643.1. Class a specific aspect of special-purpose housing or a special kind of housing with the aspect, e.g., renovating vacation homes 643.7

.25 Vacation homes**.27 Apartments**

Including condominium and cooperative apartments

Class management of condominiums and cooperative apartment houses in 647.92

.29 Mobile homes

See also 388.346 for motorized homes

See Manual at 643.29, 690.879, 728.79 vs. 629.226

> 643.3–643.5 Specific areas of the home

Class household utilities in 644; class household furnishings in 645; class comprehensive works in 643.1

See also 684.08 for home workshops

.3 *Kitchens

Including cooking apparatus, equipment, materials

Class cooking with specific appliances and utensils not limited to a specific kind of cooking in 641.58. Class a specific appliance or utensil used for a specific kind of cooking with the kind of cooking, e.g., frying with frying pans 641.77

.4 *Eating and drinking areas

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here dining areas

.5 *Other areas of the home

Including attics, basements, storage areas

.52 *Bathrooms

Class plumbing, plumbing fixtures in 644.6

.53 *Bedrooms

Bedclothes relocated to 645.4

.54 *Living rooms, drawing rooms, parlors

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

*Do not use notation 0284 from Table 1; class in base number

.55 *Recreation areas

Indoor and outdoor

Including family and recreation rooms, patios, porches

.556 *Swimming pools

.58 *Study and work areas

Including dens

*See also 658.0412 for management of home-based enterprises***.6 Appliances and laborsaving installations**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class appliances and installations for specific areas in 643.3–643.5; class appliances and installations for specific household utilities in 644; class appliances and installations for specific kinds of household furnishings in 645. Class appliances and installations for a specific purpose with the purpose, e.g., sewing machines 646.2044

See also 683.8 for manufacture of household appliances

.602 88 Maintenance and repair

Class here maintenance and repair by members of household, maintenance and repair of electrical appliances

.7 Renovation, improvement, remodeling

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Class here do-it-yourself work, home repairs; comprehensive works on maintenance and repair in home economics, on maintenance and repair by members of household

Class renovation, improvement, remodeling of specific areas of the home in 643.3–643.5; class renovation, improvement, remodeling of specific household utilities in 644; class renovation, improvement, remodeling of specific kinds of household furnishings in 645

For maintenance and repair of a specific item in the home, see the item, plus notation 0288 from Table 1, e.g., repair of appliances 643.60288, repair of furniture 645.40288

See Manual at 690 vs. 643.7

[.702 88] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 643.7

644 Household utilities

Works for owner-occupants or renters covering activities by members of household

Class here home energy conservation

See Manual at 647 vs. 647.068, 658.2, T1–0682

*Do not use notation 0284 from Table 1; class in base number

.1 Heating**.3 Lighting**

Class lighting fixtures as furnishings in 645.5

.5 Ventilation and air conditioning**.6 Plumbing**

Class here water fixtures

645 Household furnishings

Works for owner-occupants or renters covering activities by members of household

Class here household furnishings of residential buildings, comprehensive works on household furnishings and interior decoration

Class manufacture of household furnishings in 684

For home construction of fabric furnishings, see 646.21; for interior decoration, see 747

.04 Special topics of household furnishings**.046 Fabrics**

Description, selection, purchase, care, use

Class home construction of household articles made of fabric in 646.21

> 645.1–645.5 Specific kinds of interior furnishings

Class comprehensive works in 645

.1 Floor covering**.12 Rugs**

Class here carpets

.2 Wall and ceiling coverings

Standard subdivisions are added for wall and ceiling coverings together, for wall coverings alone

Including hangings, paint, paneling, wallpaper

.3 Window furnishings

Including awnings, blinds, shades

.32 Draperies

Class here curtains

.4 Furniture and accessories

Standard subdivisions are added for furniture and accessories together, for furniture alone

Including bedclothes [*formerly also* 643.53], upholstery, slipcovers

Class home construction of furniture in 684.1; class artistic aspects of furniture and accessories in 749

For outdoor furniture and accessories, see 645.8

.5 Lighting fixtures**.6 Furnishings for specific rooms**

Class interior furnishings of specific kinds regardless of room in 645.1–645.5

See also 644 for utilities for specific rooms

.8 Outdoor furnishings

Including furnishings for balconies, gardens, patios, roofs

Class here outdoor furniture and accessories

646 Sewing, clothing, management of personal and family life**SUMMARY**

- 646.1 Sewing materials and equipment
- .2 Sewing and related operations
- .3 Clothing and accessories
- .4 Clothing and accessories construction
- .5 Construction of headwear
- .6 Care of clothing and accessories
- .7 Management of personal and family life

.1 Sewing materials and equipment

Standard subdivisions are added for sewing materials and equipment together, for sewing materials alone

Including leathers and furs

See also 646.30284 for materials and equipment used for clothing

.11 Fabrics

Class here comprehensive works on fabrics in the home

For fabrics for a specific use, see the use, e.g., use in furnishings 645.046

.19 Sewing equipment, fasteners

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including needles, pins, scissors, shears, thimbles, thread

Class here notions

For sewing machines, see 646.2044

.2 Sewing and related operations

Standard subdivisions are added for sewing and related operations together, for sewing alone

Class here mending, sewing for the home

Class clothing construction in 646.4; class mending clothes in 646.6

For a specific technique in textile arts, see the technique in 746, e.g., weaving 746.14

- [.202 84] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use; class in 646.1. Do not use for sewing machines; class in 646.2044
- [.202 88] Maintenance and repair
 Do not use; class in 646.2
- .204 Basic sewing operations
 Class here darning
- .204 2 Hand sewing
- .204 4 Machine sewing
 Including serging
- .21 Construction of home furnishings
 Including making bedclothes, curtains, hangings, slipcovers, table linens, towels
 Class basic sewing operations in 646.204; class artistic and decorative aspects of construction of interior furnishings in 746.9
- .25 Reweaving

.3 Clothing and accessories

Standard subdivisions are added for clothing and accessories together, for clothing alone

Description, selection, purchase of clothing and accessories for utility, quality, economy, appearance, style

Class here casual wear (sportswear)

Class interdisciplinary works on clothing and accessories in 391

For clothing and accessories construction, see 646.4; for care of clothing and accessories, see 646.6

See Manual at 391 vs. 646.3, 746.92

- [.302 88] Maintenance and repair
 Do not use; class in 646.6
- [.308 1] Clothing for men and women
 Do not use; class in 646.32–646.34

- .308 3 Clothing for young people
 Do not use for children under twelve; class in 646.36
- .308 4 Clothing for people in specific stages of adulthood
 Do not use for clothing for men in specific stages of adulthood; class in 646.32. Do not use for clothing for women in specific stages of adulthood; class in 646.34
- .308 7 Clothing for gifted people
 Do not use for clothing for people with disabilities and illnesses; class in 646.31
- .31-.36 Clothing for people with disabilities and illnesses; men, women, children
 Add to base number 646.3 the numbers following 646.40 in 646.401-646.406, e.g., women's clothing 646.34
 Class clothing for young people twelve to twenty in 646.30835

.4 **Clothing and accessories construction**

Standard subdivisions are added for clothing and accessories construction together, for clothing construction alone

Class here dressmaking, tailoring; construction of casual wear (sportswear)

For construction of headwear, see 646.5; for commercial manufacture of clothing, see 687. For clothing construction by a specific technique in textile arts, see the technique in 746, e.g., knitting sweaters 746.4320432

See also 646.47 for construction of activewear (clothing for athletic and outdoor sports)

SUMMARY

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 646.400 1-.400 9
.401-.409 | Standard subdivisions
[Clothing for people with disabilities and illnesses, men, women, children; patterns; fitting and alterations] |
| .42 | Construction of undergarments and hosiery |
| .43 | Construction of specific kinds of garments |
| .45 | Construction of outerwear |
| .47 | Construction of garments for special purposes |
| .48 | Accessories construction |
- .400 1-.400 7 Standard subdivisions
- .400 8 Clothing with respect to groups of people
- [.400 811] Clothing for men
 Do not use; class in 646.402
- [.400 82] Clothing for women
 Do not use; class in 646.404
- .400 83 Clothing for young people
 Do not use for children under twelve; class in 646.406

- .400 84 Clothing for people in specific stages of adulthood
 Do not use for clothing for men in specific stages of adulthood;
 class in 646.402. Do not use for clothing for women in specific
 stages of adulthood; class in 646.404
- .400 87 Clothing for gifted people
 Do not use for clothing for people with disabilities and illnesses;
 class in 646.401
- .400 9 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .401 Clothing for people with disabilities and illnesses

- > 646.402–646.406 Clothing for men, women, children
 Class construction of clothing for people with disabilities and illnesses
 regardless of age or sex in 646.401; class patterns regardless of groups of
 people in 646.407; class fitting and alterations regardless of groups of people in
 646.408; class comprehensive works in 646.4
- .402 Men's clothing
- .404 Women's clothing
- .406 Children's clothing
 From birth through age eleven
 Class clothing for young people twelve to twenty in 646.400835
- .407 Patterns
- .407 2 Pattern design and patternmaking
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .408 Fitting and alterations
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

> 646.42–646.48 Specific kinds of clothing

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 001–007 Standard subdivisions
- 008 Clothing with respect to groups of people
 - [00811] Clothing for men
 - Do not use; class in 02
 - [0082] Clothing for women
 - Do not use; class in 04
- 0083 Clothing for young people
 - Do not use for children under twelve; class in 06
- 0084 Clothing for people in specific stages of adulthood
 - Do not use for clothing for men in specific stages of adulthood; class in 02. Do not use for clothing for women in specific stages of adulthood; class in 04
- 0087 Clothing for gifted people
 - Do not use for clothing for people with disabilities and illnesses; class in 01
- 009 History, geographic treatment, biography
- 01–06 Clothing for people with disabilities and illnesses, men, women, children
 - Add to 0 the numbers following 646.40 in 646.401–646.406, e.g., clothing for people with physical disabilities 01

Class comprehensive works in 646.4

.42 *Construction of undergarments and hosiery

Subdivisions are added for construction of undergarments and hosiery together, for construction of undergarments alone

See also 646.433 for vests (waistcoats); also 646.436 for pants (trousers)

.43 *Construction of specific kinds of garments

Not provided for elsewhere

.432 *Dresses

.433 *Suits

Class here jackets, sport coats, vests (waistcoats)

Class skirts in 646.437; class outerwear, comprehensive works on coats and jackets in 646.45

See also 646.42 for vests (undergarments)

Pants (trousers) relocated to 646.436

.435 *Shirts, blouses, tops

Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

.436 *Pants (Trousers) [*formerly* 646.433]

.437 *Skirts

- .45 *Construction of outerwear
 Including capes, cloaks, stoles, sweaters
 Class here overcoats, topcoats, raincoats; comprehensive works on coats and jackets
 Class garments for special purposes in 646.47
 For suit jackets, sport coats, see 646.433
- [.452--.457] Overcoats, raincoats, sweaters, cloaks, jackets, stoles
 Numbers discontinued; class in 646.45
- .47 *Construction of garments for special purposes
 Including activewear (clothing for athletic and outdoor sports), maternity garments
 Class accessories for special purposes in 646.48
 See also 646.4 for casual wear (sportswear)
- .475 *Sleepwear and loungewear
 Former heading: Nightclothes
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .476 *Evening and formal dress, wedding clothes
 Subdivisions are added for evening and formal dress, wedding clothes together; for evening and formal dress together; for evening dress alone; for formal dress alone
- .478 *Costumes
 Including party, period costumes
 Class here theatrical costumes
- .48 Accessories construction
 Including aprons, belts, gloves and mittens, handbags, handkerchiefs, neckwear, scarves
 Class hosiery in 646.42; class headwear in 646.5; class footwear in 685.3; class handcrafted costume jewelry in 745.5942
- .5 **Construction of headwear**
 Class here bonnets, caps, hats
 For construction of headwear by a specific technique in textile arts, see the technique in 746, e.g., crocheting hats 746.4340432
- .500 1--.500 7 Standard subdivisions
- .500 8 Construction of headwear with respect to groups of people

- [.500 811] Men
Do not use; class in 646.502
- [.500 82] Women
Do not use; class in 646.504
- [.500 83] Young people
Do not use; class in 646.506
- .500 84 People in specific stages of adulthood
Do not use for headwear for men in specific stages of adulthood; class in 646.502. Do not use for headwear for women in specific stages of adulthood; class in 646.504
- .500 9 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .502 Men's headwear
- .504 Women's headwear
Class here millinery
- .506 Young people's headwear
Class here children's headwear

.6 Care of clothing and accessories

Standard subdivisions are added for care of clothing and accessories together, for care of clothing alone

Including mending, reweaving; packing, storage

For laundering and related operations, see 648.1

.7 Management of personal and family life

Class here grooming; life skills, success in personal and family life

Class clothing selection and dressing with style in 646.3; class training children in grooming in 649.63; class interdisciplinary works on success in 650.1

For parapsychological and occult means for achievement of well-being, happiness, success, see 131; for psychological means for achievement of personal well-being, happiness, success, see 158; for etiquette, see 395; for care of physique and form, see 613.71; for success in business and other public situations, see 650.1

See also 362.82 for social services to families

SUMMARY

- 646.700 1--700 9 Standard subdivisions of management of personal and family life
- .701--709 Standard subdivisions of grooming
- .72 Care of hair, face, skin, nails
- .76 Social skills
- .77 Dating and choice of mate
- .78 Family life
- .79 Guides for people in late adulthood

- .700 1--.700 7 Standard subdivisions of management of personal and family life
- .700 8 Management of personal and family life with respect to groups of people
- [.700 846] Management of personal and family life with respect to people in late adulthood
- Do not use; class in 646.79
- .700 9 History, geographic treatment, biography of management of personal and family life
- .701--.703 Standard subdivisions of grooming
- .704 Grooming for women, men, young people
- .704 2 Grooming for women
- .704 4 Grooming for men
- .704 6 Grooming for young people
- Class here grooming for children
- .705--.707 Standard subdivisions of grooming
- .708 Grooming for groups of people
- [.708 1--.708 3] Grooming for men, women, young people
- Do not use; class in 646.704
- .708 4 Grooming for people in specific stages of adulthood
- Do not use for grooming for women in specific stages of adulthood; class in 646.7042. Do not use for grooming for men in specific stages of adulthood; class in 646.7044
- .709 History, geographic treatment, biography of grooming
- .72 Care of hair, face, skin, nails
- Class here cosmetology, cosmetics, makeup
- Class cosmetology, cosmetics, makeup limited to face in 646.726
- .724 Care of hair
- Including care of beard, shaving; dyeing, hairweaving, permanent waving, relaxing
- Class here barbering, haircutting, hairdressing, hairstyling
- .724 7 Braiding
- .724 8 Wigs
- Including cleaning, dyeing, selection, styling
- .726 Care of face and skin
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Including care of eyes, lips
- Class manicuring and pedicuring in 646.727

- .727 Care of nails
 Class here manicuring, pedicuring
- .76 Social skills
 Class social skills in family living in 646.78
 For dating and choice of mate, see 646.77
- .77 Dating and choice of mate
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .78 Family life
 Class here guides to harmonious intrafamily relationships
 For child rearing, see 649.1
- .782 Spousal relationship
 Class here husband-wife relationship, married people
- .79 Guides for people in late adulthood
 Class here guides to retirement
 Class family life in 646.78
 See also 362.6 for social services to people in late adulthood

647 **Management of public households (Institutional housekeeping)**

See Manual at 647 vs. 647.068, 658.2, T1—0682

SUMMARY

- 647.068 **Management**
- .2 **Employees**
- .6 **Employee hours and duties**
- .9 **Specific kinds of public households and institutions**
- .068 Management
 See Manual at 647 vs. 647.068, 658.2, T1—0682
- [.068 3] Personnel management (Human resource management)
 Do not use; class in 647.2
- .2 **Employees**
 Class here personnel management
 Class comprehensive home economics works on household employees in 640.46. Class employees and personnel management in a specific field of institutional housekeeping with the field, e.g., waiters 642.6, personnel management of waiters 642.60683
 For hours and duties, see 647.6
- .6 **Employee hours and duties**

.9 Specific kinds of public households and institutions

Class a specific aspect of public households and institutions with the aspect, e.g., grounds keeping 635.9, laundering 648.1

See Manual at 647 vs. 647.068, 658.2, TI—0682

[.901--.909] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 647.01–647.09

.92 Multiple dwellings for long-term residents

Including apartment hotels, condominiums, cooperatives, public housing, tenements; trailer and mobile home parks

Class here apartment houses

Class recreation vehicle (RV), trailer camps in 647.942

For boarding and rooming houses for temporary residents, see 647.94

.94 Lodging for temporary residents

Class here household management in hospitality industry, bed and breakfast establishments, hostels, hotels, inns, motels, resorts

Class interdisciplinary works on hospitality industry in 338.4791; class interdisciplinary works on tourism in 910; class interdisciplinary and descriptive works on lodging for temporary residents, hotels, inns, motels in 910.46; class interdisciplinary and descriptive works on resorts in 910.462; class interdisciplinary and descriptive works on bed and breakfast establishments in 910.464; class interdisciplinary and descriptive works on hostels in 910.466; class interdisciplinary and descriptive works on campsites in 910.468

For eating and drinking places, see 647.95

See Manual at 913–919: Add table: 04: Guidebooks

.940 25 Directories of persons and organizations

Limited to directories of personnel and organizations concerned with household management of lodging for temporary residents

Do not use for directories of lodging for temporary residents; class in 910.46

.942 Campsites

Class here recreation vehicle (RV) camps, trailer camps

Class trailer and mobile home parks in 647.92

.95 Eating and drinking places

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here catering establishments

Class interdisciplinary works on facilities for travelers in 910.46

See Manual at 913–919: Add table: 04: Guidebooks

- [.950 253–.950 259] Directories of specific continents, countries, localities
Do not use; class in 647.953–647.959
- [.950 93–.950 99] Specific continents, countries, localities
Do not use; class in 647.953–647.959
- .953–.959 Specific continents, countries, localities
Class here directories
Add to base number 647.95 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., restaurants of Hawaii 647.95969
- .96 Miscellaneous institutional households
Not provided for elsewhere
Add to base number 647.96 the numbers following 725 in 725.1–725.9, e.g., office buildings 647.9623
- .98 Religious institutions
Add to base number 647.98 the numbers following 726 in 726.1–726.9, e.g., monasteries 647.987
- .99 Educational and research institutions
Add to base number 647.99 the numbers following 727 in 727.1–727.9, e.g., libraries 647.998

648 Housekeeping

Class here household sanitation

Use 640 for housekeeping covering activities related to running the home, e.g., preparing meals and doing routine repairs as well as cleaning. Use 648 for housekeeping limited to cleaning

See Manual at 647 vs. 647.068, 658.2, T1–0682

.1 Laundering and related operations

Standard subdivisions are added for laundering and related operations together, for laundering alone

Including bleaching, drying, dyeing, ironing, spot removal

Class dry cleaning in 667.12; class commercial laundering, interdisciplinary works on laundering in 667.13

.5 Housecleaning

Class here cleaning floors, furnishings

.7 Pest control

.8 Storage

.9 Moving

649 Child rearing; home care of people with disabilities and illnesses

SUMMARY

- 649.1 Child rearing
- .3 Feeding children
- .4 Child health care
- .5 Children's activities and recreation
- .6 Child training
- .7 Moral and character training of children
- .8 Home care of people with disabilities and illnesses

.1 Child rearing

Class here supervision

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 649.1 in the number coming last, e.g., gifted boys 649.155 (*not* 649.132)

Class specific elements of home care of children regardless of age, sex, or other characteristics in 649.3–649.7

For child training, see 649.6

- .102 4 Works for specific types of users
 - Including child rearing for people in specific occupations
 - Do not add as instructed in Table 1
- .102 42 Works for expectant parents
- .102 43 Works for single parents
- .102 45 Works for older children in family
- .102 48 Works for babysitters
- .108 Child care with respect to groups of people
 - Do not use for care of specific groups of children; class in 649.12–649.15
- .12 Children of specific age groups
 - Add to base number 649.12 the numbers following —083 in notation 0832–0835 from Table 1, e.g., preschool children 649.123
- .13 Children of specific sexes
 - Class children of specific sexes belonging to specific age groups in 649.12
- .132 Boys
- .133 Girls
- .14 Children of specific status, type, relationships
 - Add to base number 649.14 the numbers following 155.44 in 155.442–155.446, e.g., the only child 649.142

- .15 Exceptional children; children by social and economic levels, with social disadvantages, by ethnic and national origin
 Standard subdivisions are added for all topics in heading together, for exceptional children alone
- .151–.155 Exceptional children
 Add to base number 649.15 the numbers following 371.9 in 371.91–371.95, e.g., home care of gifted children 649.155
- .156 Children by social and economic levels, with social disadvantages
- .156 7 Children with social disadvantages
 Class here children with cultural disadvantages
- .157 Children by ethnic and national origin
- .157 001–.157 009 Standard subdivisions
- .157 05–.157 09 Ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent
 Add to base number 649.157 notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., American native children of mixed ancestry with ethnic origins from more than one continent 649.1570597
- .157 1–.157 9 Specific ethnic and national groups
 Add to base number 649.157 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., Japanese children 649.157956, Japanese-American children 649.157956073

> **649.3–649.7 Specific elements of home care of children**

Class comprehensive works in 649.1

.3 Feeding children

.33 Breast feeding

Class here interdisciplinary works on breast feeding

For nutritional aspects of breast feeding, see 613.269

.4 Child health care

Class feeding in 649.3; class home care of children with disabilities and illnesses in 649.8

.48 Substance abuse

.5 Children's activities and recreation

.51 Creative activities

Including modeling, music, painting, paper work

- .55 Play with toys
 Including games
 Class sports games in 649.57
- .57 Exercise, gymnastics, sports
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .58 Reading and related activities
 Standard subdivisions are added for reading and related activities together, for reading alone
 Including storytelling, reading aloud to children, listening
For home teaching of reading, see 649.68
- .6 Child training**
 Class religious training in 204.4; class Christian religious training in 248.845
For moral and character training, see 649.7
- .62 Toilet training
- .63 Training in grooming and self-reliance
 Including bathing, dressing, feeding self
- .64 Behavior modification, discipline, obedience
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
 Class a specific application with the application, e.g., behavior modification in dressing habits 649.63
- .65 Sex education
- .68 Home preschool education
 Development of learning ability, of readiness for school by parents in the home
 Including home teaching of reading
 Class primary level home schools and schooling in 372.104242; class techniques of study at primary level for parents in 372.130281; class home schools and schooling in reading at primary level in 372.4
- .7 Moral and character training of children**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class religious training of children in the home in 204.4; class Christian religious training of children in the home in 248.845
- .8 Home care of people with disabilities and illnesses**
 Class social services to people with disabilities and illnesses in 362.1–362.4; class nursing aspects in 610.73
For home care of children with disabilities, see 649.151

650 Management and auxiliary services

Class here business

See Manual at 330 vs. 650, 658

SUMMARY

- | | |
|------------|---|
| 650.01–.09 | Standard subdivisions |
| .1 | Personal success in business |
| 651 | Office services |
| .2 | Equipment and supplies |
| .3 | Office management |
| .5 | Records management |
| .7 | Communication |
| .8 | Computer applications |
| .9 | Office services in specific kinds of enterprises |
| 652 | Processes of written communication |
| .1 | Penmanship |
| .3 | Keyboarding |
| .4 | Copying |
| .8 | Cryptography |
| 653 | Shorthand |
| .076 | Review and exercise |
| .1 | Basic shorthand practice |
| .2 | Abbreviated longhand systems |
| .3 | Machine systems |
| .4 | Handwritten systems |
| 657 | Accounting |
| .04 | Levels of accounting |
| .1 | Constructive accounting |
| .2 | Bookkeeping (Recordkeeping) |
| .3 | Financial reports (Financial statements) |
| .4 | Specific fields of accounting |
| .6 | Specific kinds of accounting |
| .7 | Accounting for specific phases of business activity |
| .8 | Accounting for enterprises engaged in specific kinds of activities |
| .9 | Accounting for enterprises of specific sizes or specific kinds of legal or ownership form |
| 658 | General management |
| .001–.009 | Standard subdivisions |
| .01–.09 | [Management of enterprises of specific sizes, scope, forms; computer applications] |
| .1 | Organization and financial management |
| .2 | Plant management |
| .3 | Personnel management (Human resource management) |
| .4 | Executive management |
| .5 | Management of production |
| .7 | Management of materials |
| .8 | Management of marketing |
| 659 | Advertising and public relations |
| .1 | Advertising |
| .2 | Public relations |
| .01–.09 | Standard subdivisions |

.1 Personal success in business

Including creative ability

Class here interdisciplinary works on success

For success in personal and family life, see 646.7; for success as an executive, see 658.409. For a specific aspect of success, see the aspect, e.g., techniques of study for success as a student 371.30281

.11 Time management

Class here personal efficiency, interdisciplinary works on time management

For time management in personal life, see 640.43; for executive time management, see 658.4093

.12 Financial success**.13 Personal improvement and success in business relationships**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.14 Success in obtaining jobs and promotions

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.142 Résumés, cover letters, job applications

Standard subdivisions are added for résumés, cover letters, job applications together; for résumés alone

Including writing cover letters for job hunting

Class here résumé writing

.144 Employment interviewing

Class here employment interviewing from the job seeker's viewpoint, comprehensive works on employment interviewing

For employment interviewing from the employer's viewpoint, see 658.31124

> 651–657 Auxiliary services

Class comprehensive works in 650

For advertising and public relations, see 659

651 Office services

Including problems of security and confidentiality

Class a specific aspect of security and confidentiality in office services with the aspect, e.g., security and confidentiality in records management 651.5

For processes of written communication, see 652; for accounting, see 657

SUMMARY

- 651.2 **Equipment and supplies**
- .3 **Office management**
- .5 **Records management**
- .7 **Communication**
- .8 **Computer applications**
- .9 **Office services in specific kinds of enterprises**

- [.028 4] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 - Do not use for apparatus and equipment; class in 651.2. Do not use for materials; class in 651.29

- [.028 5] Computer applications
 - Do not use; class in 651.8

- .2 Equipment and supplies**
 - Standard subdivisions are added for equipment and supplies together, for equipment alone
 - Class procurement of office equipment and supplies in 658.72
 - For a specific type of equipment, see the use of the equipment, e.g., computers 651.8, photocopying machines 652.4*
- .23 Furniture
- .26 Processing equipment
 - Class here electronic office machines
- .29 Forms and supplies
 - Standard subdivisions are added for forms and supplies together, for forms alone
 - Including materials

- .3 Office management**
- .37 Clerical services
 - For written communication, see 652*
 - See also 657 for accounting*
- .374 Secretarial and related services
 - Class here office practice
- .374 1 Secretarial services
 - Work of secretaries, stenographers, typists
- .374 3 Related services
 - Including work of filers, messengers, receptionists
 - Class work of stenographers, typists in 651.3741

.5 Records management

Class clerical services associated with records management in 651.37

For creation and transmission of records, see 651.7

.504 Special topics of records management

.504 2 Records management in specific types of enterprises

[.504 201–.504 209] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 651.501–651.509

.504 26 Records management in technical enterprises

.504 261 Medical records management

.51 Retention, maintenance, final disposition of records

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Class filing systems and storage in 651.53

.53 Filing systems

Including comprehensive works on storage of records

Class here filing procedures

For specific aspects of storage, see 651.54–651.59

.530 285 Computer applications

Do not use for digitization of files; class in 651.59

> 651.54–651.59 Specific aspects of storage

Class here space, equipment, control, protection, preservation

Class comprehensive works in 651.53

.54 Storage of original documents

Including storage in filing cabinets, visible and rotary files

For storage of inactive files, see 651.56

.56 Storage of inactive files

Original documents in permanent (dead) storage

.58 Microreproduction of files

Active and inactive

.59 Digitization of files

Active and inactive

.7 Communication

Class here creation and transmission of records

Class communication as a technique of management in 658.45; class interdisciplinary works on communication in 302.2

See Manual at 658.45 vs. 651.7, 808.06665

.73 Oral communication

Including use of telephone, telephone answering machines, voice mail

.74 Written communication

Including dictating and use of dictating equipment

For specific types of written communication, see 651.75–651.78; for processes of written communication, see 652

See also 653.14 for recording in shorthand and transcribing shorthand notes

> 651.75–651.78 Specific types of written communication

Class comprehensive works in 651.74

.75 Correspondence

Including layout of letters

.752 Form letters**.755 Memorandums****.759 Mail handling****.77 Minutes****.78 Reports****.79 Internal communication**

Including electronic mail

Class interdisciplinary works on electronic mail in 004.692

For oral internal communication, see 651.73; for written internal communication, see 651.74

.792 Intranets

Class interdisciplinary works on intranets in 004.682

.8 Computer applications

Use in carrying out office functions

Unless it is redundant, add to base number 651.8 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital personal computers 651.8416, but use of digital computers as a whole 651.8 (*not* 651.84)

Class interdisciplinary works on data processing in 004

For computer applications in a specific office activity, see the activity, e.g., digitization of files 651.59

.9 Office services in specific kinds of enterprises

Class specific elements of office services in specific kinds of enterprises in 651.2–651.8

[.900 01–.900 09] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 651.01–651.09

.900 1–.999 9 Subdivisions for office services in specific kinds of enterprises

Add to base number 651.9 notation 001–999, e.g., office services in libraries 651.902

652 Processes of written communication

For word processing, see 005.52; for shorthand, see 653

.1 Penmanship

See also 745.61 for calligraphy

.3 Keyboarding

Class here typing

.300 1–.300 6 Standard subdivisions

.300 7 Education, research, related topics

.300 76 Review and exercise

Do not use for speed and accuracy tests and drills; class in 652.307

.300 8–.300 9 Standard subdivisions

.302 Specific levels of skill

Class speed and accuracy tests and drills in 652.307

[.302 01–.302 09] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 652.3001–652.3009

.302 4 Basic level

Class here beginning level

.302 5 Intermediate level

.302 6 Advanced level

- .307 **Speed and accuracy**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here tests, drills
- [.307 076] Review and exercise
 Do not use; class in 651.307
- .32 **Keyboarding for specific purposes**
 Other than general commercial and professional keyboarding
 Including keyboarding for personal use
- [.320 1–.320 9] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 652.3001–652.3009
- .326 **Keyboarding for specific kinds of enterprises**
 Including legal, medical keyboarding
- [.326 01–.326 09] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 652.3001–652.3009

.4 Copying

- Class here photocopying
 Class interdisciplinary works on photocopying in 686.4

.8 Cryptography

- Class here interdisciplinary works on cryptography

For cryptographic techniques used for a specific purpose, see the purpose, e.g., cryptographic techniques used for security in computer systems 005.82

653 Shorthand

- .076 Review and exercise
 Do not use for speed and accuracy tests and drills; class in 653.15
- .1 **Basic shorthand practice**
 Class basic practice in a specific system with the system, e.g., Gregg shorthand transcription 653.4270424
- .14 **Taking dictation, and transcription**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 See also 651.74 for dictating and use of dictating equipment
- .15 **Speed and accuracy**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here tests, drills
 Class speed and accuracy in transcription in 653.14

- [.150 76] Review and exercise
 Do not use; class in 653.15
- .18 Specific uses
 Including court reporting; medical, personal uses
- [.180 1–.180 9] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 653.101–653.109

> **653.2–653.4 Systems**

Class comprehensive works in 653

.2 **Abbreviated longhand systems**

Systems using conventional letters

.3 **Machine systems**

Add to base number 653.3 the numbers following 653.1 in 653.14–653.18, e.g., specific uses 653.38

.4 **Handwritten systems**

For abbreviated longhand systems, see 653.2

.41 Multilingual systems

.42 English-language systems

.424 Pitman systems

.424 04 Special topics of Pitman systems

.424 042 Basic shorthand practice

Add to base number 653.424042 the numbers following 653.1 in 653.14–653.18, e.g., speed and accuracy 653.4240425

.424 07 Education, research, related topics

.424 076 Review and exercise

Do not use for speed and accuracy tests and drills; class in 653.4240425

.427 Gregg systems

.427 04 Special topics of Gregg systems

.427 042 Basic shorthand practice

Add to base number 653.427042 the numbers following 653.1 in 653.14–653.18, e.g., transcription 653.4270424

.427 07 Education, research, related topics

.427 076 Review and exercise

Do not use for speed and accuracy tests and drills; class in 653.4270425

- .428 Script systems
Including Dewey system (1936)
- .43–.49 Systems used in other languages
Add to base number 653.4 notation 3–9 from Table 6, e.g., French-language systems 653.441

[654] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

[655] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 17

[656] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

657 Accounting

Class here financial accounting

Class use of accounting information by management in 658.1511

SUMMARY

- 657.04 Levels of accounting**
- .1 Constructive accounting**
 - .2 Bookkeeping (Recordkeeping)**
 - .3 Financial reports (Financial statements)**
 - .4 Specific fields of accounting**
 - .6 Specific kinds of accounting**
 - .7 Accounting for specific phases of business activity**
 - .8 Accounting for enterprises engaged in specific kinds of activities**
 - .9 Accounting for enterprises of specific sizes or specific kinds of legal or ownership form**
- .04 Levels of accounting
- .042 Elementary level
- .044 Intermediate level
Including college-level accounting
- .046 Advanced level

> **657.1–657.9 Elements of accounting**

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., accounting for cost of inventory in a corporation engaged in manufacturing 657.867072 (*not* 657.42, 657.72, 657.95):

Accounting for enterprises engaged in specific kinds of activities	657.8
Financial reports (Financial statements)	657.3
Accounting for specific phases of business activity	657.7
Constructive accounting	657.1
Bookkeeping (Recordkeeping)	657.2
Specific fields of accounting	657.4
Accounting for enterprises of specific sizes or specific kinds of legal or ownership form	657.9
Specific kinds of accounting	657.6

Class comprehensive works in 657

.1 Constructive accounting

Development of accounting systems to fit the needs of individual organizations

.2 Bookkeeping (Recordkeeping)

Including secretarial bookkeeping and accounting

Class elementary accounting in 657.042

.3 Financial reports (Financial statements)

Class here consolidated financial statements

Class use of financial reports by management to improve business performance in 658.1512

.32 Preparing financial statements

.4 Specific fields of accounting

Including human resources accounting

For constructive accounting, see 657.1; for bookkeeping, see 657.2; for payroll accounting, see 657.742

See also 658.1511 for managerial accounting; also 658.4013 for management audits

[.401–.409] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 657.01–657.09

.42 Cost accounting

Class here activity-based costing

.45 Auditing

See also 658.4013 for management audits

- .450 285 Computer applications
 - Class auditing of computer-processed accounts in 657.453
- .452 Audit reports
 - Class here audit reporting
- .453 Auditing of computer-processed accounts
- .458 Internal auditing
- .46 Tax accounting
 - Including accounting for social security taxes
- .47 Fiduciary accounting
 - Accounting for receiverships, estates, trusts
- .48 Inflation accounting
- .6 Specific kinds of accounting**
- [.601–.609] Standard subdivisions
 - Do not use; class in 657.01–657.09
- .61 Public accounting
- .63 Private accounting
- .7 Accounting for specific phases of business activity**
 - Including accounting for income, for profit
- [.701–.709] Standard subdivisions
 - Do not use; class in 657.01–657.09
- .72 Current assets
 - Including accounts receivable, cash, inventory
- .73 Fixed assets
 - Including depreciation, valuation and revaluation of land, buildings, equipment; insurance
- .74 Current liabilities
 - Including accounts payable, notes payable
 - For tax accounting, see 657.46*
- .742 Payroll accounting
- .75 Fixed liabilities
 - Including bonds payable, leases, mortgages, pension plans, purchase contracts

- .76 Capital accounting
 Accounting for ownership equity
 Including accounting for stock and dividends
- .8 Accounting for enterprises engaged in specific kinds of activities**
 Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:
 001–009 Standard subdivisions
 01–07 Specific aspects of accounting
 Add to 0 the numbers following 657 in 657.1–657.7, e.g., auditing 045
- [.801–.809] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 657.01–657.09
- .83 Services and professional activities
 Standard subdivisions are added for services and professional activities together, for services alone
 Class here service industries
- .832 Social services
 Including libraries, prisons, religious institutions
- .832 2 *Health care facilities
 Class here hospitals
- .832 7 *Educational institutions
- .833 Finance and real estate
- .833 3 *Finance
For insurance, see 657.836
- .833 5 *Real estate
- .834 Professions
- .835 *Government
 Including military accounting
 Class accounting for government corporations (*except municipalities*) in 657.95. Class accounting for a specific government service other than military with the service in a subdivision of 657.83, e.g., educational institutions 657.8327
- .835 045 Government auditing
 Number built according to instructions under 657.8
 Class here manuals of government audit procedure
- .836 *Insurance

*Add as instructed under 657.8

- .837 *Hotels and restaurants
 Class here hospitality industry
- .837 4 *Hotels
- .837 5 *Restaurants
- .838 *Public utilities
- .839 *Commerce
 Class here wholesale trade, retail trade
- .84 Communications and entertainment media
 Including motion-picture producers and theaters, publishing houses,
 television and radio networks and stations, theaters
- .86 Other activities
 See also 657.83 for services and professional activities
- .861 *Labor unions
- .862 *Mining
- .863 *Agriculture
- .867 *Manufacturing
- .869 *Construction
- .9 Accounting for enterprises of specific sizes or specific kinds of legal or
 ownership form**
- [.901–.903] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 657.01–657.03
- .904 Enterprises of specific sizes
- .904 2 Small business
- [.905–.909] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 657.05–657.09
- .91 Individual proprietorships
- .92 Partnerships
 For international partnerships, see 657.96
- .95 Corporations
 For multinational corporations, see 657.96
- .96 Combinations
 Class here mergers, multinational organizations
- .97 Cooperatives

.98 Nonprofit organizations

658 General management

Management comprises the conduct of all types of enterprises (for profit and not for profit) except government agencies that do not themselves provide direct services

Class here general business management, general industrial management; management of public agencies that themselves provide direct services (in contrast to public agencies that regulate, support, or control services provided by other organizations)

Class analysis and description of behavior in complex organizations, sociology of management in 302.35; class specific principles of management in 658.401–658.403; class comprehensive works on management and economics in 330

For public administration, see 351. For management of enterprises engaged in a specific field of activity, see the field, plus notation 068 from Table 1, e.g., management of commercial banks 332.12068, management of automobile manufacturing 629.222068

See also 306.36 for industrial sociology

See Manual at T1—068 vs. 353–354; also at 330 vs. 650, 658

SUMMARY

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| 658.001–.009 | Standard subdivisions |
| .02–.05 | [Management of enterprises of specific sizes, scope, forms; computer applications] |
| .1 | Organization and financial management |
| .2 | Plant management |
| .3 | Personnel management (Human resource management) |
| .4 | Executive management |
| .5 | Management of production |
| .7 | Management of materials |
| .8 | Management of marketing |
| .001 | Philosophy and theory |
| [.001 1] | Systems |
| | Do not use for systems theory and analysis; class in 658.4032. Do not use for operations research; class in 658.4034. Do not use for models and simulation; class in 658.40352 |
| .002 | Miscellany |
| [.002 85] | Computer applications |
| | Do not use; class in 658.05 |
| .003–.009 | Standard subdivisions |
| .02 | Management of enterprises of specific sizes and scope |
| | Class management of enterprises of specific forms regardless of size or scope in 658.04 |

- [.020 1–.020 9] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 658.001–658.009
- .022 Small enterprises
- .022 08 Groups of people
 Class here minority enterprises
- .023 Big enterprises
- .04 Management of enterprises of specific forms
 *For initiation of specific forms of ownership organization, management
 of new enterprises of specific forms, see 658.114*
 See Manual at 658.04 vs. 658.114, 658.402
- [.040 1–.040 9] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 658.001–658.009

> 658.041–658.046 For-profit organizations

- Class international for-profit organizations in 658.049; class comprehensive works in 658
- .041 Individual proprietorships
 Including part-time enterprises
 Class here one-person enterprises, self-employment enterprises
 Class executive management by entrepreneurs in 658.421
 For one-person corporations, see 658.045
- .041 2 Home-based businesses
- .042 Partnerships
 General and limited
 Class partnership associations in 658.044
- .044 Unincorporated business enterprises
 Including joint stock companies, joint ventures, partnership associations
 *For individual proprietorships, see 658.041; for partnerships, see
 658.042*
- .045 Corporations
 Including close, family, one-person corporations
 Class government corporations as part of the public administrative process in 352.266; class general works on management that do not emphasize the organizational form corporation even though the works may be predominantly about managing corporations in 658; class combinations in 658.046

- .046 Combinations
 Including conglomerates, holding companies, interlocking directorates,
 subsidiaries, trusts
 Class mergers in 658.16
- .047 Cooperatives
- .048 Nonprofit organizations
 Class international nonprofit organizations in 658.049
 See also 658.047 for cooperative organizations
- .049 International enterprises
 Class organization of international enterprises and activities in 658.18
- .05 Computer applications
 Unless it is redundant, add to base number 658.05 the numbers following
 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital personal computers 658.05416, but use
 of digital computers as a whole 658.05 (*not* 658.054); however, for data
 security, see 658.478
 See also 651.8 for computer applications in clerical operations; also
 658.4032 for systems analysis in decision making

.1 Organization and financial management

Standard subdivisions are added for organization and finance together, for
 organization alone

For internal organization, see 658.402

SUMMARY

- | | |
|--------|--|
| 658.11 | Initiation of business enterprises |
| .12 | Management for legal compliance |
| .15 | Financial management |
| .16 | Reorganization and dissolution of enterprises |
| .18 | Organization of international enterprises |
- .11 Initiation of business enterprises
 Including location
 Class here management of new business enterprises
 Class capitalization in 658.152; class reorganization and dissolution of
 business enterprises in 658.16
- .114 Initiation of business enterprises by form of ownership organization
 Add to base number 658.114 the numbers following 658.04 in
 658.041–658.049, e.g., initiation of corporations 658.1145
 Class comprehensive works on management of specific forms of
 ownership organization in 658.04
 See Manual at 658.04 vs. 658.114, 658.402

- .12 Management for legal compliance
 Former heading: Legal administration
 Including use of legal counsel
For management for legal compliance with respect to a specific subject, see the subject in 658, e.g., management for legal compliance with respect to collective bargaining 658.3154
See also 346.06 for law of organizations
- .15 Financial management
 Including insolvency, bankruptcy; valuation of businesses
 Class here financial decision making, financial planning
 Class reorganization and dissolution of business enterprises because of business failure in 658.16. Class a specific aspect of valuation of businesses with the aspect, e.g., valuation of capital 658.1522
See Manual at 332 vs. 338, 658.15
- .151 Financial control
For budgeting, see 658.154; for management of income and expense, see 658.155
- .151 1 Managerial accounting
 Design and use of accounting procedures to provide internal reports needed for day-to-day management
 Class accounting in 657; class internal auditing in 657.458; class budgeting in 658.154
See also 658.4013 for management audits
- .151 2 Use of reports
 Including balance sheets, income and expense statements, profit and loss statements
 Class here financial reports made to directors, stockholders, top management
- .152 Management of financial operations
 Class here management of investment, comprehensive works on capital and its management
For capital, see 332.041; for budgeting (including capital budgets), see 658.154; for management of income and expense, see 658.155; for compensation management, see 658.32; for management of credit extended by seller to buyer, see 658.88

> 658.152 2–658.152 4 Capital and its management

Class comprehensive works in 658.152

- .152 2 Procurement of capital
 Class here costs and valuation of capital
For procurement of specific kinds of capital, see 658.1524
- .152 24 External sources
 Including conversion of closely held corporations to corporations whose stocks are publicly traded; endowments, grants; issue and sale of stocks and bonds; loans
 Class here fund raising
 Class debt management in 658.1526
For fund raising for enterprises engaged in a specific field of activity, see the field, plus notation 0681 from Table 1, e.g., private charitable and philanthropic fund raising for social welfare 361.70681
- .152 26 Internal sources
 Including reserves, savings
- .152 4 Procurement and management of specific kinds of capital
- [.152 401–.152 409] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 658.152201–658.152209
- .152 42 Fixed capital
 Class here long-term capital
 Including land, buildings, associated industrial equipment; long-term loans receivable; leasing
See also 658.72 for procurement of other kinds of equipment
- .152 44 Working capital
 Including accounts receivable, cash, inventory, 30–90 day loans receivable
 Class here short-term capital
- .152 6 Debt management
 Including accounts payable, bonds outstanding, notes payable
- .153 Taxes, insurance, charitable donations
 Including ways that management can deal with taxes, what insurance is needed for the organization
 Class interdisciplinary works on and economic aspects of business taxes in 336.207; class interdisciplinary works on charitable donations in 361.765; class interdisciplinary works on insurance in 368
See also 343.068 for law of business taxes
- .154 Budgeting
 Including capital budgets, zero-base budgeting

- .155 Management of income and expense
 Including distribution of profits, dividend policy
 Class here management of profit and loss, risk management
 Class interdisciplinary works on risk management in 368; class increasing profits in 658.1554
For use of income and expense statements, see 658.1512; for taxes, insurance, charitable donations, see 658.153; for health and safety programs, see 658.382; for business security, see 658.47; for pricing, see 658.816
- .155 2 Cost analysis and control
 Standard subdivisions are added for cost analysis and control together, for cost control alone
 Class managerial accounting in 658.1511
For cost accounting, see 657.42; for analysis and control of specific kinds of costs, see 658.1553; for cost-benefit analysis, cost-volume-profit analysis, see 658.1554
- .155 3 Kinds of costs
 Including fixed and overhead costs; variable costs; labor, material costs
For costs of capital, see 658.1522
- .155 4 Income (Revenue)
 Including break-even analysis, cost-benefit analysis, cost-volume-profit analysis
 Class here increasing profits
- .159 Financial management in enterprises of specific sizes, scope, forms
 Including financial management in nonprofit organizations
For a specific aspect of financial management in enterprises of specific sizes, scope, forms, see the aspect in 658.151–658.155, e.g., budgeting management in small business 658.154
- [.159 01–.159 09] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 658.1501–658.1509
- .159 2 Small business
- .159 208 Groups of people
 Class here minority enterprises
- .159 9 International enterprises

- .16 Reorganization and dissolution of enterprises
 Standard subdivisions are added for reorganization and dissolution of enterprises together, for reorganization of enterprises alone
 Class here comprehensive works on reorganization, comprehensive works on reorganization resulting from business failure
 Class financial management of insolvency, of bankruptcy in 658.15
 For internal reorganization, see 658.402
- .162 Mergers
 Class here acquisitions, consolidations, take-overs
- .164 Sales
 Class here corporate divestiture
- .166 Dissolution
 Class here dissolution resulting from business failure
 Class reorganization resulting from business failure in 658.16
- .18 Organization of international enterprises
 Including foreign licensing
 Class here organization of international business activities
 Class initiation of international enterprises and activities in 658.1149
- .2 Plant management**
 Class procurement of land and buildings in 658.15242
 See Manual at 647 vs. 647.068, 658.2, T1—0682
- .200 1–.200 9 Standard subdivisions
- .202 Maintenance management
 Including total productive maintenance
- .21 Location
 Class location of businesses in 658.11
- .23 Layout
- .24 Lighting
- .25 Heating, ventilating, air conditioning
- .26 Utilities
 Including electricity, gas, power and power distribution, water
 Class here comprehensive business works on energy management
 For lighting, see 658.24; for heating, ventilating, air conditioning, see 658.25. For a specific aspect of energy management, see the aspect, e.g., energy management to promote efficiency in production 658.515

- .27 **Equipment**
 Class procurement of industrial equipment associated with plants in 658.15242; class procurement of other kinds of equipment in 658.72
 For office equipment, see 651.2; for utilities, see 658.26; for equipment for safety and comfort, see 658.28
- .28 **Equipment for safety and comfort**
 Including equipment for noise control, for sanitation
- .3 **Personnel management (Human resource management)**
 Class interdisciplinary works on industrial relations, on labor in 331
 For management of executive personnel, see 658.407

SUMMARY

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| 658.300 1–.300 9 | Standard subdivisions |
| .301–.306 | [General topics of personnel management] |
| .31 | Elements of personnel management |
| .32 | Compensation management |
| .38 | Employee health, safety, welfare |
- .300 1–.300 7 Standard subdivisions
- .300 8 Groups of people
 Class here affirmative action, discrimination in employment, equal employment opportunity, workplace diversity
- .300 9 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .301 Personnel planning and policy
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .302 Supervision
 By immediate supervisors
 Class employee development in 658.3124; class personnel management of supervisors in 658.4071245
- .303 Personnel management in enterprises of specific sizes
- [.303 01–.303 09] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 658.3001–658.3009
- .304 Management of personnel occupying specific types of positions and management of problem employees
- .304 4 Management of personnel occupying specific types of positions
 Including blue collar and professional employees; sales personnel
 For management of office personnel, see 651.30683; for management of supervisors, executive personnel, see 658.407
- [.304 401–.304 409] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 658.3001–658.3009

.304 5 Management of problem employees
 Class management of problem employees occupying specific types of positions in 658.3044. Class management of a specific type of problem employee provided for elsewhere with the type, e.g., alcoholic employees 658.300874

.306 Job analysis
 Including specifications of qualifications required of personnel in each position
 Class here job description, job evaluation, position classification

.31 Elements of personnel management

SUMMARY

658.311 Recruitment and selection of personnel
 .312 Conditions of employment, performance rating, utilization of personnel
 .313 Separation from service
 .314 Motivation, morale, discipline
 .315 Employer-employee relationships

.311 Recruitment and selection of personnel

.311 1 Recruitment

.311 2 Selection

Including drug testing, handwriting analysis, security clearance, background investigation, use of lie detector

Class here comprehensive works on selection and placement

For placement, see 658.3128

See also 658.383 for payment of moving expenses

.311 24 Interviewing

Class employment interviewing from the job seeker's viewpoint, comprehensive works on employment interviewing in 650.144

.311 25 Testing

Class here aptitude testing

.312 Conditions of employment, performance rating, utilization of personnel

Standard subdivisions are added for conditions of employment, performance rating, utilization of personnel together; for conditions of employment alone

> 658.312 1–658.312 4 Conditions of employment

Class comprehensive works in 658.312

For compensation management, see 658.32; for personnel health, safety, welfare, see 658.38

- .312 1 Hours
- Former heading: Days and hours of work
- Including workday, overtime; flexible hours, shift work, part-time work; compressed workweek; night, holy day, Sunday, holiday work
- Class here workweek
- For leave and rest periods, see 658.3122*
- Lunch periods and breaks relocated to 658.3122
- .312 2 Leave and rest periods (breaks)
- Standard subdivisions are added for leave and rest periods together, for leave alone
- Including lunch periods and breaks [*both formerly 658.3121*]; educational, parental, sabbatical, sick leave
- Class here annual leave, holidays, paid vacations
- Class absenteeism in 658.314
- .312 3 Telecommuting
- .312 4 Education and training
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Including mentoring
- Class here employee development
- .312 404 Development and administration of training programs
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Including evaluation of training programs, selection and training of training personnel, teaching methods
- .312 42 Orientation
- Class here induction
- .312 43 In-house work training
- Training needed to enable an employee to do his or her job
- Including retraining, adjustment to automation
- .312 44 Other kinds of training
- Including attitude training, literacy training, rehabilitation training, safety training, training in human relations

- .312 45 Training of personnel occupying specific types of positions
 Including blue collar and professional employees; sales personnel
 Class induction and orientation of personnel occupying specific
 types of positions in 658.31242; class in-house work training of
 personnel occupying specific types of positions in 658.31243;
 class other kinds of training regardless of type of position occupied
 by employee in 658.31244
 For training of supervisors, see 658.4071245
- [.312 450 1--.312 450 9] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 658.312401--658.312409
- .312 5 Performance rating (Evaluation)
 Class here performance standards
- .312 8 Utilization of personnel
 Including allocation of staff to specific responsibilities, staffing
 patterns; placement, transfer of employees from one position to
 another
 Class training in 658.3124; class performance rating in 658.3125;
 class motivation in 658.314; class work teams in 658.4022
- .313 Separation from service
 Including dismissal for cause
- .313 2 Retirement
- .313 4 Reduction in force
 Class here downsizing
- .314 Motivation, morale, discipline
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
 Including absenteeism, misconduct, retention, turnover
 Class here promotion of creativity, productivity
 Class performance rating in 658.3125
- .314 2 Incentives
 For incentive payments, see 658.3225
- .314 22 Job satisfaction
 Class job enrichment in 658.31423
- .314 23 Job enrichment
- .314 24 Promotion
 *See also 650.14 for how to obtain a promotion (employee's
 viewpoint)*

- .314 4 Penalties
 Including demotion, fines, reprimands
 For dismissal for cause, see 658.313
- .314 5 Interpersonal relations
 Including informal, day-to-day relations between superiors and
 subordinates; conflict management, prevention of sexual harassment
 Class comprehensive works on employer-employee relationships from
 a management perspective in 658.315
- .315 Employer-employee relationships
 Class here labor relations
 For informal relations, see 658.3145
- .315 2 Employee participation in management
 Including open-book management, worker self-management
 Class industrial democracy in 331.0112; class worker control of
 industry in 338.6
- .315 3 Labor unions and other employee organizations
 Standard subdivisions are added for labor unions and other employee
 organizations together, for labor unions alone
 *For collective bargaining, see 658.3154; for role of employee
 organizations in grievance procedures, see 658.3155*
- .315 4 Collective bargaining
 Including arbitration, mediation, negotiation of contracts, strikes
- .315 5 Grievance procedures
- .32 Compensation management
 Class here wage administration, salary administration
 Class management of labor costs in 658.1553
- .321 Payroll administration
 Class clerical techniques involved in maintaining payroll records in
 651.37; class payroll accounting procedures in 657.74
- .322 Compensation plans
- .322 2 Wage and salary scales
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Hourly or other periodic scales
 Including locality pay (weighting), longevity pay, overtime pay,
 severance pay

- .322 5 Incentive compensation
 Including merit awards, merit pay; bonuses, piecework rates, profit sharing
 Class comprehensive works on incentives in 658.3142
- .322 59 Employee stock ownership plans
 Class here employee stock options
- .325 Employee benefits
 For personnel health, safety, welfare programs and services, see 658.38
- .325 3 Pensions
- .325 4 Insurance and workers' compensation
- .38 Employee health, safety, welfare
 Class comprehensive management works on employee benefits in 658.325
- .382 Health and safety programs
 Including mental health programs
 Class safety of plant and equipment in 658.200289; class safety training in 658.31244; class provision of health and accident insurance in 658.3254; class comprehensive works on safety management in 658.408; class interdisciplinary works on industrial safety in 363.11
- .382 2 Programs for substance abuse
 Including alcohol abuse and drug abuse programs; drug testing
 Class drug testing in employee selection in 658.3112
- .383 Economic services
 Including discounts, housing, moving expenses, transportation
- .385 Counseling services
 Including retirement counseling services, vocational guidance services
 Class mental health programs and services in 658.382
- .4 Executive management**
 Limited to those activities named below
 Class here role, function, powers, position of top and middle management
 Class supervision in 658.302; class comprehensive works on management for legal compliance in 658.12. Class a specific executive managerial activity not provided for here with the activity in management, e.g., personnel management 658.3; class application of a specific activity named below in another branch of management with the branch, e.g., production planning 658.503

SUMMARY

658.400 1–.400 9	Standard subdivisions
.401–.409	Specific executive management activities
.42	Top management
.43	Middle management
.45	Communication
.46	Use of consultants
.47	Business security and intelligence
.400 1–.400 9	Standard subdivisions

> 658.401–658.409 Specific executive management activities

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., planning for change 658.406 (*not* 658.4012):

Personal aspects of executive management	658.409
Management of executive personnel	658.407
Internal organization	658.402
Managing change	658.406
Negotiation, conflict management, crisis management, contracting out	658.405
Planning, policy making, control, quality management	658.401
Decision making and information management	658.403
Social responsibility of executive management	658.408
Project management	658.404

Class comprehensive works in 658.4

For communication, see 658.45; for use of consultants, see 658.46; for business intelligence and security, see 658.47

SUMMARY

658.401	Planning, policy making, control, quality management
.402	Internal organization
.403	Decision making and information management
.404	Project management
.405	Negotiation, conflict management, crisis management, contracting out
.406	Managing change
.407	Management of executive personnel
.408	Social responsibility of executive management
.409	Personal aspects of executive management
.401	Planning, policy making, control, quality management
.401 2	Planning and policy making
	Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
	Class here management by objectives, strategic management
	Class decision making in 658.403; class forecasting in 658.40355

- .401 3 Control and quality management
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class here management audits (assessments of management effectiveness), total quality management
- Class management audits applied to a specific function with the function, e.g., management audits applied to production management 658.5; class total quality management applied to a specific function with the function, e.g., total quality management in marketing 658.8
- See also 657.45 for financial audits; also 658.562 for quality control of products*
- .402 Internal organization
- Including line and staff, functional, departmental organization; decentralization, distribution and delegation of authority and responsibility; internal reorganization
- Class sociology of economic institutions in 306.3; class comprehensive management works on organization in 658.1; class comprehensive management works on reorganization in 658.16
- For allocation of personnel to specific responsibilities, see 658.3128*
- See also 302.3 for social interaction within groups*
- See Manual at 658.04 vs. 658.114, 658.402*
- .402 2 Work teams
- Class here work groups
- .403 Decision making and information management
- Class here problem solving
- .403 001–403 009 Standard subdivisions
- .403 01 Philosophy and theory of decision making
- [.403 011] Systems in decision making
- Do not use; class in 658.4032
- .403 015 Scientific principles
- [.403 015 1] Mathematical techniques of decision making
- Do not use; class in 658.4033
- .403 02–403 09 Standard subdivisions of decision making
- .403 2 Systems theory and analysis
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Including critical path method (CPM), network analysis, program evaluation review technique (PERT)
- For decision theory, see 658.40301; for operations research, see 658.4034; for simulation, see 658.40352; for decision analysis, see 658.40354; for forecasting, see 658.40355*

- .403 3 Mathematical techniques of decision making
 Including mathematical programming
 Class here econometrics as an aid in decision making
 For simulation, see 658.40352
- .403 4 Operations research
 Including probability theory, queuing theory
 Class mathematical methods in 658.4033; class simulation in
 658.40352; class games in 658.40353
- .403 5 Other techniques of decision making
- .403 52 Simulation
 Class here models
- .403 53 Games
- .403 54 Decision analysis
- .403 55 Forecasting
- .403 6 Group decision making
 Class specific techniques of group decision making in
 658.4032–658.4035
 See also 658.4052 for negotiation
- .403 8 Information management
 Class here gathering of information by management for use in
 managerial decision making; information resources, knowledge
 management
 Class communication in 658.45
- .403 801 1 Systems
 Class here information systems
- .404 Project management
- .405 Negotiation, conflict management, crisis management, contracting
 out
- .405 2 Negotiation
 See also 658.4036 for group decision making
- .405 3 Conflict management
- .405 6 Crisis management

- .405 8 Contracting out
 Contracting for services
 Class here subcontracting
 Class contracting out a particular managerial service with the service in 658, e.g., personnel management 658.3; class contracting out a particular nonmanagerial service with the service, plus notation 0684 from Table 1, e.g., contracting out hospital care 362.110684
 See also 658.723 for contracting for materials
- .406 Managing change
 Class here expansion, modernization
 Class comprehensive works on reorganization of enterprises in 658.16
 For internal reorganization, see 658.402. For managing change in a specific branch of management, see the branch, e.g., changes in production 658.5
- .406 2 Externally induced change
 Including technological innovations
- .406 3 Innovation by management
 Including corporate turnarounds
 Class here reengineering
- .407 Management of executive personnel
 Add to base number 658.407 the numbers following 658.3 in 658.31–658.38, e.g., training of supervisors 658.4071245
- .408 Social responsibility of executive management
 Class here comprehensive works on safety management
 Class managing welfare services for employees in 658.38; class managing welfare services for people other than employees in 361.7; class interdisciplinary works on safety in 363.1
 For a specific aspect of safety management, see the aspect, e.g., product safety 658.56
 See Manual at 363.1
- .408 3 Protection of environment
 Class interdisciplinary works on protection of environment in 363.7
- .409 Personal aspects of executive management
 Class here success as an executive
 Class general success in business in 650.1
- .409 2 Executive leadership

- .409 3 Time management
Class here personal efficiency (management by executives of their own time and work)
- .409 4 Personal characteristics of executives
Including creative ability
- .409 5 The management environment
Including interpersonal relations, job stress, social pressures
- .42 Top management
Class initiation of business enterprises in 658.11; class comprehensive works on top and middle management in 658.4
For a specific activity of top management, see the activity, e.g., decision making by top management 658.403
- .421 Entrepreneurial management
Class management of small business in 658.022
- .422 Boards of directors
Class here boards of trustees
- .43 Middle management
- .45 Communication
As a technique of management
Class mechanics of communication in 651.7
See Manual at 658.45 vs. 651.7, 808.06665
- .452 Oral communication
Class here business presentations
See also 808.51 for techniques of public speaking
- .453 Written communication
- .455 Informational programs
Including bulletin boards, house organs
Class here communication of information by management in order to guide people and control activities
See also 658.4038 for gathering of information by management for use in managerial decision making
- .456 Meetings
Class interdisciplinary works on meetings in 060; class general rules of order in 060.42

- .46 Use of consultants
 Class here techniques of management consulting
 For use of consultants in a specific branch of management, see the branch, e.g., use of consultants in market research 658.83
- .47 Business security and intelligence
 Standard subdivisions are added for business security and intelligence together, for business security alone
 Class insurance in 658.153
- .472 Business intelligence, and security of information and ideas
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
 Class here industrial espionage, countering industrial espionage, trade secrets
 For security of information stored in computers, see 658.478
- .473 Physical security
 Including protection from fraud, theft, violence
 Class here crime prevention
 For protection against fires and other disasters, see 658.477; for physical security of computers, see 658.478
- .477 Protection against fires and other disasters
- .478 Computer security
 Class here data security
 Class comprehensive works on security of information in 658.472; class interdisciplinary works on computer security in 005.8
- .5 Management of production**
 Class here production management in manufacturing enterprises, production management in service industries, comprehensive works on logistics
 Class marketing in 658.8; class comprehensive works on energy management in 658.26
 For materials handling, see 658.781; for physical distribution, see 658.788; for factory operations engineering, see 670.42. For production management in enterprises engaged in a specific kind of activity other than manufacturing, see the activity, plus notation 0685 from Table 1, e.g., management of agricultural production 630.685
- .500 1–.500 9 Standard subdivisions
- .503 General production planning
- .503 6 Decision making and use of information
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .503 8 Product planning
 Including diversification
 Class marketing in 658.8
 For new product development, see 658.575
- .51 Organization of production
 For sequencing, see 658.53; for work studies, see 658.54
- .514 Use of technology
 Including automation, man-machine ratios, modernization, technological
 innovations
 See also 658.577 for development of technology
- .515 Promotion of efficiency
 For use of technology, see 658.514
- .53 Sequencing
 Including dispatching, routing
 Class here scheduling, workflow
- .533 Kinds of sequences
 Including assembly-line, team methods
- .54 Work studies
 Including work load
- .542 Time and motion studies
- .542 1 Time studies
- .542 3 Motion studies
- .544 Fatigue and monotony studies
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .56 Product control, packaging; waste control and utilization
 Including product liability, recall, safety
 Class product planning in 658.5038; class product design in 658.5752; class
 comprehensive works on safety management in 658.408
- .562 Quality control
 Class comprehensive works on quality control in 658.4013
 For inspection, see 658.568

- .564 Packaging
 Including labeling
 Class here interdisciplinary works on packaging
 For storage containers, see 658.785; for packing for shipment, see 658.7884; for use of packaging in sales promotion, see 658.823; for packaging technology, see 688.8
- .567 Waste control and utilization
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .568 Inspection
 Class comprehensive works on quality control in production management in 658.562
- .57 Research and development (R and D)
 Standard subdivisions are added for research and development together, for research alone
- .571 Fundamental research
- .575 New product development
 For decisions to develop new products, see 658.5038; for market research on new products, see 658.83
- .575 2 Product design
- .577 Equipment and process research
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .7 Management of materials**
 Class here management of supplies
 Class comprehensive works on energy management in 658.26; class comprehensive works on logistics in 658.5
 For management of office supplies, see 651.29
- .72 Procurement
 Acquisition of equipment, materials, parts, subassemblies, supplies, tools
 Class here procurement of office equipment and supplies, comprehensive works on procurement
 Class management of costs of materials in 658.1553
 For procurement of land, buildings, associated industrial equipment, see 658.15242
- .722 Vendor selection
- .723 Contracts
 Class here negotiation of contracts
 Class contracting out, subcontracting for services in 658.4058

- .728 Receiving
- .78 Internal control of materials and physical distribution
- .781 Materials handling
- .785 Storage
Including storage containers
Class here warehouse management
Class location of warehouses in 658.21
- .787 Inventory control
Class here stock control
Class financial control of inventories in 658.15244
For receiving, see 658.728; for storage, see 658.785
- .788 Physical distribution
Class here shipment
Class internal movement of materials in 658.781
- .788 2 Transportation management
Selection of carrier and routing
- .788 4 Packing for shipment
Class interdisciplinary works on packaging in 658.564
- .788 5 Loading and unloading
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.8 Management of marketing

Class here management of distribution; management of marketing goods, marketing services; management of merchandising

Class product design in 658.5752; class comprehensive works on logistics in 658.5

For physical distribution, see 658.788; for advertising and public relations, see 659

SUMMARY

658.800 1–.800 9	Standard subdivisions
.802–.804	[General topics of marketing management; marketing to specific kinds of buyers]
.81	Sales management
.82	Sales promotion
.83	Market research
.84	Export marketing
.85	Personal selling
.86	Wholesale marketing
.87	Marketing channels
.88	Credit management

- .800 1 Philosophy and theory
- [.800 11] Systems
 Do not use; class in 658.802
- .800 19 Psychological principles
 For consumer psychology, see 658.8342
- .800 2--.800 6 Standard subdivisions
- .800 7 Education, research, related topics
- .800 72 Research
 For market research, see 658.83
- .800 8--.800 9 Standard subdivisions
- .802 General topics of marketing management
 Including communication in marketing, green marketing, market
 segmentation
 Class application of general topics to marketing to specific kinds of
 buyers in 658.804
- .804 Marketing to specific kinds of buyers
 Including governments and their agencies, hospitals; key accounts
 Class here industrial marketing
 Class consumer research in 658.834
 For marketing to foreign buyers, see 658.84
- .804 01--.804 09 Standard subdivisions of industrial marketing
 Do not use for marketing to specific kinds of buyers; class in
 658.8001--658.8009
- .81 Sales management
 Class management of sales personnel in 658.3044
 For sales promotion, see 658.82
- .810 01 Philosophy and theory
- .810 011 2 Forecasting and forecasts
 Do not use for sales forecasting; class in 658.818
- .810 02--.810 09 Standard subdivisions
- .810 1 Sales planning
 For market research, see 658.83
- .810 2 Organization of sales force
 Including organization by area, by product, by type of customer, by
 key accounts

- .810 6 Sales meetings
 Class comprehensive management works on business meetings in
 658.456
- .812 Customer relations
 Including claims, complaints, returns, servicing of products
- .816 Pricing
- .818 Sales forecasting
- .82 Sales promotion
 Including use of coupons, discounts, gifts, prizes, samples, trading stamps
 *For servicing of products, see 658.812; for use of credit to promote sales,
 see 658.88*
- .823 Use of packaging
 Class interdisciplinary works on packaging in 658.564
- .827 Use of brands and trademarks
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including business names; producer and distributor brands
- .83 Market research
 Class here market analysis, market study; interviewing, use of consultants
 and research agencies, techniques of consulting in market research
 Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or
 more subdivisions of 658.83 in the number coming first, e.g., research in
 Germany on consumer preferences 658.83430943 (*not* 658.83943)
 Class results of market research in 381–382
 For sales forecasting, see 658.818
- [.830 9] History, geographic treatment, biography
 Do not use; class in 658.839
- .834 Consumer research
- .834 019 Psychological principles
 Do not use for consumer psychology; class in 658.8342
- .834 2 Consumer behavior
 Including motivation research
 Class here consumer psychology
 For consumer attitudes, preferences, reactions, see 658.8343
- .834 3 Consumer attitudes, preferences, reactions
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
 Including brand preferences, consumer satisfaction

- .839 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .839 01–.839 05 Historical periods
- Add to base number 658.8390 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., market research 2000–2009 658.8390511
- .839 1–.839 9 Geographic treatment and biography
- Add to base number 658.839 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., market research in Germany 658.83943
- .84 Export marketing
- .85 Personal selling
- Techniques for the individual, regardless of channel
- Class here personal salesmanship
- .86 Wholesale marketing
- Class personal selling through wholesale channels in 658.85; class wholesale marketing through specific channels in 658.87. Class management of enterprises doing wholesale marketing of a specific type of product with the product in 381.4, plus notation 068 from Table 1, e.g., management of wholesale food marketing 381.4564130068, financial management of wholesale food marketing 381.45641300681
- .87 Marketing channels
- Including consumer cooperatives, managing producers' cooperatives; convenience stores, shopping centers; fairs, markets; garage, yard sales
- Class here marketing through specific wholesale channels, marketing through retail channels; comprehensive works on marketing channels
- Class personal selling through specific channels, e.g., personal selling by telephone, in 658.85; class comprehensive works on wholesale marketing in 658.86; class direct-mail advertising in 659.133. Class management of enterprises selling a specific type of product with the product in 381.4, plus notation 068 from Table 1, e.g., management of bookstores 381.45002068, financial management of bookstores 381.450020681; class a specific aspect of managing chain stores, outlet stores, franchise businesses if there is no emphasis on a specific kind of product with the kind of store or business in 658.8702–658.8708, plus notation 0681–0687 from Table 1, e.g., financial management of chain stores 658.87020681; class a specific aspect of managing enterprises in a specific channel if there is no emphasis on a specific kind of product with the channel in 658.871–658.879, plus notation 0681–0687 from Table 1, e.g., financial management of department stores 658.8710681
- For export marketing, see 658.84*
- .870 01–.870 09 Standard subdivisions
- .870 2 Chain stores
- Including voluntary retail chains
- Class chain department stores in 658.871

- .870 5 Outlet stores
Class here discount stores that are outlet stores, factory outlets, manufacturers' outlets, wholesale outlets
- .870 8 Franchise businesses
- .871 Department stores
Class department stores that are discount stores or superstores in 658.879
- .872 Telemarketing and direct marketing
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
Class here catalog, mail-order, online, telephone-order marketing; direct-mail marketing, direct selling, multilevel marketing, pyramid marketing; television selling
See also 659.143 for television advertising; also 659.144 for online advertising
- .877 Auctions
- [.877 028 5] Computer applications
Do not use; class in 658.8777
- .877 7 Online auctions
- .879 Discount stores
Including customer, warehouse, wholesale clubs
Class here supermarkets that are not predominantly food stores; hypermarkets, superstores
Class discount stores that are outlet stores in 658.8705
For management of food retailing in supermarkets, see 381.4564130068
- .88 Credit management
Limited to credit extended by seller to buyer
Including collections, credit investigations
Class comprehensive works on management of financial operations in 658.152. Class credit management by banks and other financial institutions with the institution or type of credit in 332, plus notation 0685 from Table 1, e.g., management of loans issued by commercial banks 332.17530685
- .882 Mercantile credit management
- .883 Consumer credit management
Class here retail credit management

(9) Management of enterprises engaged in specific fields of activity

(Optional number; prefer specific subject, plus notation 068 from Table 1)

- (.91) Enterprises other than those engaged in extraction, manufacturing, construction
 (Optional number; prefer specific subject, plus notation 068 from Table 1)
 Add to base number 658.91 notation 001–999, e.g., management of banks 658.913321; however, for management of election campaigns, see 324.7
- (.92–.99) Enterprises engaged in extraction, manufacturing, construction
 (Optional number; prefer specific subject, plus notation 068 from Table 1)
 Add to base number 658.9 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., management of mines 658.922

659 Advertising and public relations

Class here publicity

.1 Advertising

See also 658.81 for sales management; also 658.85 for personal selling

.104 Special topics of advertising

.104 2 Social aspects of advertising

Class social aspects of use of specific images and themes in advertising in 659.10452–659.10459, e.g., social aspects of images of women in advertising 659.1045522

.104 5 Use of images and themes in advertising

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here iconography of advertising

Add to base number 659.1045 the numbers following —3 in notation 32–39 from Table 3C, e.g., use of images of women in advertising 659.1045522, use of sports themes in advertising 659.1045579

.11 General topics of advertising

Class application of general topics to advertising in specific media in 659.13; class application of general topics to specific kinds of advertising in 659.131; class application of general topics to advertising specific kinds of organizations, products, services in 659.19

.111 Planning and control

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.112 Organization

Managerial organization only

See also 338.7616591 for economics and history of advertising organizations

.112 2 Advertising departments

.112 5 Advertising agencies

.113 Advertising campaigns

- .13 Kinds of advertising and advertising in specific media
 Class advertising of specific kinds of organizations, products, services in a specific kind of medium in 659.19
 For advertising in electronic media, see 659.14; for display advertising, see 659.15; for contests and lotteries, see 659.17
- .131 Kinds of advertising
 Including classified advertising, specialty advertising
 Class advertising of specific kinds of organizations, products, services by a specific kind of advertising in 659.19. Class a specific kind of advertising in a specific medium with the medium, e.g., classified advertising in print media 659.132, online classified advertising 659.144
- .131 2 National advertising
- .131 4 Retail advertising
- .131 5 Industrial advertising
 Class here business-to-business advertising
 See also 659.19 for advertising specific kinds of organizations, products, services
- .132 Advertising in print media
 Including directory advertising
 For direct advertising, see 659.133
- .133 Direct advertising
 Printed advertising delivered or handed directly to consumer
 Including circulars, letters, mail-order catalogs; direct-mail advertising
 Class direct-mail marketing in 658.872; class online advertising in 659.144
- .134 Advertising by location of media
 For point-of-sale advertising, see 659.157
- .134 2 Outdoor advertising
 Including billboards, roadside signs
 Class outdoor transportation advertising in 659.1344
 For advertising by electric signs, see 659.136
- .134 4 Transportation advertising
 Including airplane banners, car cards, traveling displays on exteriors of vehicles, station posters
- .136 Advertising by electric signs

- .14 Advertising in electronic media
 Including advertising in motion pictures
 Class advertising of specific kinds of organizations, products, services,
 issues in a specific electronic medium in 659.19
- .142 Radio
- .143 Television
 See also 658.872 for television selling
- .144 Advertising in digital media
 Class here online advertising
 See also 658.872 for online marketing
- .15 Display advertising
- .152 Exhibitions and shows
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including fashion modeling
 Class interdisciplinary works on fashion modeling in 746.92
- .157 Point-of-sale advertising
 Including counter, showcase, window displays
- .17 Advertising by contests and lotteries
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 *See also 659.19790134 for advertising of contests; also 659.1979538 for
 advertising of lotteries*
- .19 Advertising specific kinds of organizations, products, services
 Class here advertising to influence behavior or public opinion with respect
 to specific subjects; advertising specific kinds of organizations, products,
 services in a specific kind of medium; advertising specific kinds of
 organizations, products, services by a specific kind of advertising
- [.190 001–.190 009] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 659.101–659.109
- .190 01–.199 99 Subdivisions for specific kinds of organizations, products, services
 Add to base number 659.19 notation 001–999, e.g., library
 advertising 659.1902, traffic safety advertising 659.19363125,
 advertising pharmaceutical drugs 659.196151; however, for
 advertising for political election campaigns, see 324.73
- .2 Public relations**
- .28 Public relations in enterprises of specific forms
 Class public relations in enterprises producing specific kinds of products and
 services, or pursuing specific objectives, regardless of form of enterprise in
 659.29

- [.280 1–.280 9] Standard subdivisions
Do not use; class in 659.201–659.209
- .281–.289 Subdivisions for enterprises of specific forms
Add to base number 659.28 the numbers following 658.04 in 658.041–658.049, e.g., corporations 659.285
- .29 Public relations in organizations producing specific kinds of products and services, or pursuing specific objectives
- [.290 001–.290 009] Standard subdivisions
Do not use; class in 659.201–659.209
- .290 01–.299 99 Subdivisions for organizations producing specific kinds of products and services, or pursuing specific objectives
Add to base number 659.29 notation 001–999, e.g., public relations for computer industry 659.29004, public relations for lobbying in general 659.293244, public relations for public welfare lobbying 659.293616; however, for public relations in libraries, see 021.7; for public relations for religion, see 200; for public relations for conduct of political election campaigns, see 324.7; for public relations for government, see 352.748; for public relations for armed forces, see 355.342

660 Chemical engineering and related technologies

Standard subdivisions are added for chemical engineering and related technologies together, for chemical engineering alone

Class military applications in 623

For pharmaceutical chemistry, see 615.19; for pulp and paper technology, see 676; for elastomers and elastomer products, see 678

SUMMARY

- 660.01–.09 Standard subdivisions and chemical technologies of specific states of matter
- .2–.7 [General topics in chemical engineering, biotechnology, industrial stoichiometry]
- 661 Technology of industrial chemicals
- 662 Technology of explosives, fuels, related products
- 663 Beverage technology
- 664 Food technology
- 665 Technology of industrial oils, fats, waxes, gases
- 666 Ceramic and allied technologies
- 667 Cleaning, color, coating, related technologies
- 668 Technology of other organic products
- 669 Metallurgy
- .01 Philosophy and theory
- .011 5 Theory of communication and control
Do not use for process control; class in 660.2815
- .02 Miscellany

- [.028 4] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use for materials; class in 660.282. Do not use for apparatus
 and equipment; class in 660.283
- [.028 9] Safety measures
 Do not use; class in 660.2804
- .03 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances
- .04 Chemical technologies of specific states of matter
 Add to base number 660.04 the numbers following 530.4 in 530.41–530.44,
 e.g., plasma technology 660.044
 Class industrial gases in 665.7
- .05–.09 Standard subdivisions
- .2 General topics in chemical engineering**
 For biochemical engineering, see 660.63; for industrial stoichiometry, see
 660.7
- .28 Specific types of chemical plant and specific activities in chemical
 plants
- .280 01–.280 09 Standard subdivisions
- .280 4 Safety measures
 See also 363.179 for interdisciplinary works on hazardous
 chemicals
 See Manual at 604.7 vs. 660.2804
- .280 7 Specific types of chemical plant
- .280 71 Bench-scale plants
- .280 72 Pilot plants
- .280 73 Full-scale plants
-
- > 660.281–660.283 Process and materials
 Class specific applications in unit operations in 660.2842; class specific
 applications in unit processes in 660.2844; class comprehensive works in
 660.28
- .281 Process design, assembly, control
- .281 2 Process design

- .281 5 Process control
- Class here computerized process control
- Unless it is redundant, add to base number 660.2815 the numbers following 00 in 004-006, e.g., use of digital personal computers 660.2815416, but use of digital computers 660.2815 (*not* 660.28154)
- Class interdisciplinary works on computerized process control in 629.895
- .282 Materials
- .283 Process equipment
- Including piping
- Class computer equipment in process control in 660.2815; class interdisciplinary works on piping in 621.8672; class interdisciplinary works on pressure vessels in 681.76041
- .283 04 Control of corrosion
- Class interdisciplinary works on corrosion in 620.11223
- .283 2 Chemical reactors
- .284 Unit operations and unit processes
- .284 2 Unit operations
- Unit operations: operations basically physical
- Class here separation processes; transport phenomena engineering
- .284 22 Crushing, grinding, screening
- .284 23 Mass transfer
- Including absorption, gas chromatography
- For precipitation, filtration, solvent extraction, see 660.28424;*
for fractional distillation, see 660.28425
- .284 235 Adsorption
- .284 24 Precipitation, filtration, solvent extraction
- .284 245 Filtration
- .284 248 Solvent extraction
- .284 25 Fractional distillation
- .284 26 Evaporative and drying processes
- For dehumidification of air and gas, see 660.28429*
- .284 27 Heat transfer
- Class a specific heat transfer process with the process, e.g., melting 660.284296
- .284 29 Other unit operations
- Including dehumidification of air and gas

- .284 292 Momentum transfer and fluidization
Including mixing
- .284 293 Humidification
- .284 296 Melting
- .284 298 Crystallization
- .284 4 Unit processes
Operations basically chemical
For polymerization, see 668.92
- .284 43 Oxidation-reduction reaction (Redox reaction)
Including hydrogenation
Class here oxidation, reduction
- .284 49 Fermentation

.29 Applied physical chemistry

Add to base number 660.29 the numbers following 541.3 in 541.33–541.39, e.g., catalytic reactions 660.2995; however, for absorption, see 660.28423; for adsorption, see 660.284235; for synthesis (e.g., addition, condensation, hydrolysis, oxidation, reduction) and name reactions, see 660.2844; for polymerization, see 668.92

.6 **Biotechnology**

Application of living organisms or their biological systems or processes to the manufacture of useful products

See also 620.82 for human factors engineering

.62 Industrial microbiology

Class a specific aspect of industrial microbiology with the aspect, e.g., fermentation 660.28449, use of microorganisms in biochemical engineering 660.63

.63 Biochemical engineering

.634 Enzyme technology

.65 Genetic engineering

.7 **Industrial stoichiometry**

661 Technology of industrial chemicals

Production of chemicals used as raw materials or reagents in manufacture of other products

For industrial gases, see 665.7

SUMMARY

661.001–.009	Standard subdivisions
.03–.08	Inorganic compounds
.1	Nonmetallic elements
.2	Acids
.3	Bases
.4	Salts
.5	Ammonium salts
.6	Sulfur and nitrogen salts
.8	Organic chemicals

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

> 661.03–661.08 Inorganic compounds

Class acids, bases, salts in 661.2–661.6; class comprehensive works in 661

.03 Metallic compounds

Class here alkali and alkaline-earth compounds

Add to base number 661.03 the numbers following 546.3 in 546.38–546.39, e.g., sodium compounds 661.0382

For metallic compounds other than those of alkali and alkaline-earth metals, see 661.04–661.07

.04–.07 Other inorganic compounds

Add to base number 661.0 the numbers following 546 in 546.4–546.7, e.g., sulfur compounds 661.0723

For hydrogen compounds, see 661.08

.08 Hydrogen compounds

Including heavy water (deuterium oxide), hydrides

.1 Nonmetallic elements

For carbon, see 662.9; for gaseous elements, see 665.8

> 661.2–661.6 Acids, bases, salts

Class organic acids, bases, salts in 661.8; class comprehensive works in 661

.2 Acids

.22 Sulfuric acid

.23 Hydrochloric acid

.24 Nitric acid

.25 Phosphoric acid

.3 Bases

Class here alkalis

- .32 Sodas
- .322 Caustic soda (Sodium hydroxide)
- .323 Sodium bicarbonate
- .324 Sodium carbonate
- .33 Potassium alkalis
- .332 Caustic potash (Potassium hydroxide)
- .333 Potassium bicarbonate
- .334 Potassium carbonate
- Class here comprehensive works on potash
- For a specific potash compound other than potassium carbonate, see the compound, e.g., caustic potash 661.332*
- .34 Ammonia and ammonium hydroxide
- Standard subdivisions are added for ammonia and ammonium hydroxide together, for ammonia alone
- .35 Other alkalis
- Including hydroxides and carbonates of cesium, francium, lithium, rubidium, alkaline-earth metals
- .4 Salts**
- For ammonium salts, see 661.5; for sulfur and nitrogen salts, see 661.6*
- .42 Halogen salts
- Including chlorides, chlorites, chlorates, corresponding salts of other halogens
- .43 Phosphorus and silicon salts
- Including phosphides, phosphites, phosphates, corresponding salts of silicon
- .5 Ammonium salts**
- .6 Sulfur and nitrogen salts**
- For ammonium salts, see 661.5*
- .63 Sulfur salts
- Including sulfides, sulfites, sulfates
- For plaster of paris, see 666.92*
- .65 Nitrogen salts
- Including nitrides, nitrites, nitrates
- .8 Organic chemicals**
- .800 1–800 9 Standard subdivisions

> 661.802–661.804 Derived chemicals

Class derived special-purpose chemicals in 661.806–661.808; class comprehensive works in 661.8

.802 Cellulose derivatives

.803 Coal tar chemicals

.804 Petrochemicals

Industrial chemicals produced from petroleum or natural gas

Class comprehensive works on petrochemicals in 665.538

For a specific petrochemical, see the chemical, e.g., alcohols 661.82, carbon black 662.93

.805 Synthetic chemicals

> 661.806–661.808 Special-purpose chemicals

Class comprehensive works in 661.8

.806 Essential oils

Class essential oils used for manufacture of perfumes in 668.54

.807 Solvents, diluents, extenders

.808 Photographic chemicals and photosensitive surfaces

Including sensitometry

Class here comprehensive works on chemical engineering of organic and inorganic photographic chemicals

For inorganic photographic chemicals, see 661.1–661.6

.81 Hydrocarbons

.814 Aliphatic hydrocarbons

.815 Alicyclic hydrocarbons

.816 Aromatic hydrocarbons

> 661.82–661.89 Compounds based on specific elements other than carbon

Add to each subdivision identified by * the numbers following 661.81 in 661.814–661.816, e.g., aliphatic esters 661.834

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., phosphoric acids 661.87 (*not* 661.86):

Sulfur compounds	661.896
Phosphorus compounds	661.87
Silicon compounds	661.88
Organometallic compounds	661.895
Nitrogen compounds	661.894
Oxy and hydroxy compounds	661.82–661.86
Halogenated compounds	661.891

Class comprehensive works in 661.8

> 661.82–661.86 Oxy and hydroxy compounds

Class comprehensive works in 661.8

.82 *Alcohols and phenols

For glycerin, see 668.2

.83 *Esters

.84 *Ethers

.85 *Aldehydes and ketones

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.86 *Acids

.87 *Phosphorus compounds

.88 *Silicon compounds

.89 Other organic compounds

.891 *Halogenated compounds

.894 *Nitrogen compounds

.895 *Organometallic compounds

.896 *Sulfur compounds

662 Technology of explosives, fuels, related products

.1 Fireworks (Pyrotechnics)

*Add as instructed under 661.82–661.89

- .2 Explosives**
 Class nuclear explosives in 621.48
For fireworks, see 662.1
- .26 Propellants**
 Including black powder (gunpowder), cordite, flashless and coated powders, nitrocellulose (guncotton), smokeless powder
 Class here low (deflagrating) explosives
For rocket propellants, see 662.666
- .27 High explosives**
 Including dynamite, PETN (pentaerythritol tetranitrate); primary explosives, e.g., mercury fulminate
- .4 Detonators**
 Including boosters, firing mechanisms, fuses, percussion caps, primers
 Class explosives used in detonators in 662.27
- .5 Matches**
- .6 Fuels**
 Class industrial oils, fats, waxes, gases as fuels in 665
For a specific fuel not provided for here, see the fuel, e.g., nuclear fuels 621.48335, biomass as fuel 662.88, petroleum 665.5
See also 621.4023 for combustion of fuels
See Manual at 622.22, 622.7 vs. 662.6, 669
- .602 86 Green technology (Environmental technology)**
 Class wastes as fuels, comprehensive works on chemical technology of energy from waste materials in 662.87
- .62 Coal**
For coke, see 662.72
- [.620 287] Testing and measurement
 Do not use; class in 662.622
- .622 Properties, tests, analysis**
- .622 09 History and biography**
 Do not use for properties, tests, analysis of coal from specific places; class in 662.6229
- .622 1–.622 5 Properties, tests, analysis of specific types of coal**
 Add to base number 662.622 the numbers following 553.2 in 553.21–553.25, e.g., analysis of bituminous coal 662.6224

- .622 9 Properties, tests, analysis of coal from specific places
 Add to base number 662.6229 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 properties of Virginia coal 662.6229755
 Class specific types of coal regardless of place in 662.6221–662.6225
- .623 Treatment of coal
 Including desulfurization, sizing, washing; conversion to slurry, slurry
 dewatering
- .624 Storage, transportation, distribution of coal
- .625 Uses of coal
 Including as a fuel, as a raw material
 Class a specific use with the use, e.g., metallurgical use 669.81
- .65 Wood and wood derivatives
 Standard subdivisions are added for wood and wood derivatives together, for
 wood alone
 Including sawdust, wood briquettes
For charcoal, see 662.74
- .66 Synthetic fuels
 Class synthetic fuel gases in 665.77
- .662 Synthetic petroleum
- .662 2 Production of synthetic petroleum through hydrogenation and
 liquefaction of coal
 Including Bergius process
 Class production from coal gas in 662.6623
- .662 3 Production of synthetic petroleum through hydrogenation of
 carbonaceous gases
 Including Fischer-Tropsch processes
- .666 Rocket fuels (Rocket propellants)
 Liquid and solid
- .669 Other liquid fuels
 Including benzene from waste products
- .669 2 Alcohol as fuel
 Including ethanol, gasohol, methanol
- .7 Coke and charcoal**
- .72 Coke
- .74 Charcoal
- .8 Other fuels**

.82 Colloidal and mud fuels

.86 Boron fuels

.87 Wastes as fuels

Class here comprehensive works on the chemical technology of energy from waste materials

Class waste biomass as fuel in 662.88; class interdisciplinary works on energy from waste materials in 333.7938

For a specific form of energy from waste materials, see the form, e.g., benzene made from waste products 662.669

.88 Biomass as fuel

Including bagasse

Class here plant biomass as fuel, comprehensive works on the chemical technology of biomass as fuel

Class interdisciplinary works on biomass as fuel in 333.9539

For wood and wood derivatives as fuels, see 662.65; for biodiesel fuel, see 665.37

See also 665.776 for gases manufactured from biological wastes

.9 Nonfuel carbons

.92 Graphite and graphite products

Standard subdivisions are added for graphite and graphite products together, for graphite alone

.93 Adsorbent carbons

Including activated carbons, adsorbent charcoals, animal black, bone char, carbon black, decolorizing carbons, lampblack

663 Beverage technology

Commercial preparation, preservation, packaging

Class household preparation of beverages in 641.87; class interdisciplinary works on beverages in 641.2

.1 Alcoholic beverages

For wine, see 663.2; for brewed and malted beverages, see 663.3; for distilled liquor, see 663.5

.102 84 Apparatus and equipment

Do not use for materials; class in 663.11

.11 Materials

.12 Preliminary preparations

.13 Fermentation

.14 Packing

- .15 Refrigeration and pasteurization
- .16 Distillation
- .17 Aging
- .19 Bottling
- .2 Wine**
- Class here grape wine, comprehensive works on white and red wine, comprehensive works on specific white and red wines (specific brands, estate wines)
- See also 663.4 for mead; also 663.49 for rice wine*
- .200 1 Philosophy and theory
- .200 2 Miscellany
- .200 284 Apparatus and equipment
- Do not use for materials; class in 663.201
- .200 3–.200 9 Standard subdivisions
- .201–.209 Materials, processes, operations
- Add to base number 663.20 the numbers following 663.1 in 663.11–663.19, e.g., fermentation 663.203
- .22 Kinds of grape wine
- Including ice wine
- [.220 1–.220 9] Standard subdivisions
- Do not use; class in 663.2001–663.2009
- .222 White wine
- Class here specific white wines (specific brands, estate wines, varieties)
- Class comprehensive works on white and red wine in 663.2; class white ice wine in 663.22
- For sparkling white wine, see 663.224; for fortified white wine, see 663.226*
- .223 Red wine
- Class here specific red wines (specific brands, estate wines, varieties)
- Class red ice wine in 663.22
- For sparkling red wine, see 663.224; for fortified red wine, see 663.226*
- .223 2 Rosé wine
- Class here specific rosé wines (specific brands, estate wines, varieties)

- .224 Sparkling wine
 Class here specific sparkling wines (specific brands, estate wines, varieties)
 Class comprehensive works on white wine in 663.222; class comprehensive works on red wine in 663.223
- .226 Fortified wine
 Class here specific fortified wines (specific brands, estate wines, varieties)
 Class comprehensive works on white wine in 663.222; class comprehensive works on red wine in 663.223
- .29 Nongrape wine
 Including fermented cider
- .3 Brewed and malted beverages**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 For specific kinds of brewed and malted beverages, see 663.4
- .302 84 Apparatus and equipment
 Do not use for materials; class in 663.31
- .31--39 Materials, processes, operations
 Add to base number 663.3 the numbers following 663.1 in 663.11--663.19, e.g., fermentation 663.33
- .4 Specific kinds of brewed and malted beverages**
 Including mead (honey wine)
 Class malt whiskey in 663.52
- .42 Beer and ale
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .49 Rice wine; pulque
 Standard subdivisions are added for rice wine and pulque together, for rice wine alone
 Class here specific kinds of rice wine
- .5 Distilled liquor**
 Including mescal, potato whiskey, tequila, vodka
- .500 1 Philosophy and theory
- .500 2 Miscellany
- .500 284 Apparatus and equipment
 Do not use for materials; class in 663.501
- .500 3--500 9 Standard subdivisions

- .501–.509 Materials, processes, operations
 Add to base number 663.50 the numbers following 663.1 in
 663.11–663.19, e.g., distillation 663.506
- .52 Whiskey
 Including bourbon
 Class potato whiskey in 663.5
- .53 Brandy
- .55 Compound liquors
 Distilled spirits flavored with various seeds, roots, leaves, flowers, fruits
 Including cordials (liqueurs), gin
- .59 Rum
- .6 Nonalcoholic beverages**
 Including fruit drinks
 For nonalcoholic brewed beverages, see 663.9; for milk, see 637.1
- .61 Bottled drinking water
 Including carbonated water
 Class here potable mineral water
- .62 Carbonated and mineralized beverages
 Standard subdivisions are added for carbonated and mineralized beverages
 together, for carbonated beverages alone
 Class carbonated and mineralized water in 663.61
- .63 Fruit and vegetable juices
 Standard subdivisions are added for fruit and vegetable juices together, for
 fruit juices alone
 Class here drinks in which the principal ingredient is juice
 Class fermented cider in 663.2; class fruit drinks in 663.6; class carbonated
 juices in 663.62
- .64 Milk substitutes
 Including coconut milk, nondairy coffee whiteners, soybean milk

.9 Nonalcoholic brewed beverages

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 0284 Apparatus and equipment
Do not use for materials; class in 1
- 1 Materials
 - 2 Preliminary preparations
 - 3 Fermentation and oxidation
 - 4 Firing, roasting, curing
 - 5 Blending
 - 7 Specific varieties
 - 8 Concentrates
 - 9 Packaging

.92 *Cocoa and chocolate

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.93 *Coffee**.94 *Tea****.96 Herb teas**

Including catnip, maté, sassafras

.97 Coffee substitutes

Including acorns, cereal preparations, chicory

664 Food technology

Commercial preparation, preservation, packaging

Class here comprehensive works on commercial food and beverage technology

Class household preservation, storage, cooking in 641.4–641.8; class interdisciplinary works on food in 641.3

For commercial processing of dairy and related products, see 637; for commercial beverage technology, see 663

SUMMARY

- 664.001–.009 Standard subdivisions**
.01–.09 [Materials, processes, operations, by-products]
- .1 Sugars, syrups, their derived products**
 - .2 Starches and jelling agents**
 - .3 Fats and oils**
 - .4 Food salts**
 - .5 Flavoring aids**
 - .6 Special-purpose food and aids**
 - .7 Grains, other seeds, their derived products**
 - .8 Fruits and vegetables**
 - .9 Meats and allied foods**

.001 Philosophy and theory

- .001 15 Theory of communication and control
Do not use for process control; class in 664.02
- .001 5 Scientific principles
- .001 579 Microorganisms, fungi, algae
Class here food microbiology
- .002 Miscellany
- .002 84 Apparatus and equipment
Do not use for materials; class in 664.01
- [.002 87] Testing and measurement
Do not use; class in 664.07
- .003–.009 Standard subdivisions
- .01 Materials
For additives, see 664.06
- .02 Processes
Class here process design, control, equipment
- .022 Extraction
- .023 Refining
- .024 Manufacturing processes
Not provided for elsewhere
Including fermentation, food biotechnology, food processing with microorganisms
- .028 Preservation techniques
Class here interdisciplinary works on food preservation
For home preservation of foods, see 641.4
- .028 1 Preliminary treatment
Including peeling
- .028 2 Canning
- .028 4 Drying and dehydrating
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .028 42 Drying and dehydrating by slow, thermal processes
- .028 43 Drying and dehydrating through pulverizing and flaking
- .028 45 Drying and dehydrating by freeze-drying
- .028 5 Low-temperature preservation techniques
For freeze-drying, see 664.02845

- .028 52 Cold storage
- .028 53 Deep freezing
- .028 6 Chemical preservation
Including brining, pickling, smoking
For chemical preservation by use of additives, see 664.0287
- .028 7 Chemical preservation by use of additives
- .028 8 Irradiation
- .06 Additives
Production, properties, use
Class flavoring aids in 664.5
For chemical preservation by use of additives, see 664.0287
- .062 Food colors
- .07 Tests, analyses, quality controls
For color, contaminants, flavor, odor, texture
Including grading
Class tests, analyses, quality controls of additives in 664.06
- .072 Sensory evaluation of food
- .08 By-products
- .09 Packaging
- .1 Sugars, syrups, their derived products**
Standard subdivisions are added for sugars, syrups, their derived products together; for sugars and syrups together; for sugars alone
Class here sweeteners
For artificial sweeteners, see 664.5
- .102 84 Apparatus and equipment
Do not use for materials; class in 664.111
- [.102 87] Testing and measurement
Do not use; class in 664.117
-
- > 664.11–664.13 Sugars and syrups
Class comprehensive works in 664.1
- .11 Materials, techniques, processes, operations, by-products of sugars and syrups
Class materials, techniques, processes, operations, by-products of specific sugars and syrups in 664.12–664.13

- .111 Materials
 - .112 Preliminary preparations
 - .113 Extraction and purification
 - .114 Concentration
 - Production of syrup
 - .115 Crystallization
 - Production of sugar
 - .116 Additives
 - .117 Tests, analyses, quality controls
 - For color, contaminants, flavor, texture
 - Class tests, analyses, quality controls of additives in 664.116
 - .118 By-products
 - Including molasses
 - Class utilization in 664.19
 - .119 Packaging
-
- > 664.12–664.13 Specific sugars and syrups
- Class comprehensive works in 664.1
 - .12 Cane and beet sugar and syrup
 - Standard subdivisions are added for cane and beet sugar and syrup together, for cane and beet sugar alone
 - .122 Cane sugar and syrup
 - Standard subdivisions are added for cane sugar and syrup together, for cane sugar alone
 - .122 028 4 Apparatus and equipment
 - Do not use for materials; class in 664.1221
 - [.122 028 7] Testing and measurement
 - Do not use; class in 664.1227
 - .122 1–.122 9 Materials, processes, operations, by-products
 - Add to base number 664.122 the numbers following 664.11 in 664.111–664.119, e.g., cane molasses 664.1228
 - .123 Beet sugar and syrup
 - Standard subdivisions are added for beet sugar and syrup together, for beet sugar alone
 - .13 Other sugars and syrups
 - For honey, see 638.16*

- .132 Maple sugar and syrup
Standard subdivisions are added for maple sugar and syrup together, for maple syrup alone
- .133 Corn and sorghum sugars and syrups
- .139 Jerusalem artichoke sugar and syrup
- .15 Sugar products
- .152 Jams, jellies, marmalades, preserves
Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
See also 664.26 for jellies (gelatin desserts)
- .153 Candy (Sweets)
See also 664.6 for chewing gum
- .19 By-product utilization
Class a specific use with the use, e.g., molasses for rum 663.59
- .2 Starches and jellying agents**
Standard subdivisions are added for starches and jellying agents together, for starches alone

> 664.22–664.23 Starches

Class comprehensive works in 664.2

- .22 Cornstarch and potato starch
- .23 Cassava and arrowroot starches
- .25 Jellying agents
Class here pectin
For gelatin, see 664.26

.26 Gelatin

.3 Fats and oils

Class interdisciplinary works on animal fats and oils in 665.2; class interdisciplinary works on vegetable fats and oils in 665.3

For butter, see 637.2; for peanut butter, see 664.726

- .32 Margarine
- .34 Lard
- .36 Salad and cooking oils
- .362 Olive oil
- .363 Cottonseed oil
- .368 Soy oil

- .37 Salad dressings
Including mayonnaise
- .4 **Food salts**
Including monosodium glutamate, table salt, tenderizers, sodium-free and other dietetic salts
Class comprehensive works on commercial technology of food flavoring aids in 664.5
- .5 **Flavoring aids**
Including artificial sweeteners, chocolate, sugar substitutes
Class here condiments
Class flavoring aids in a specific kind of food with the kind of food, e.g., chocolate candies 664.153
For food salts, see 664.4. For a specific flavoring aid not provided for here, see the aid, e.g., sugar 664.1
- .52-.54 Essences and spices
Add to base number 664.5 the numbers following 633.8 in 633.82-633.84, e.g., vanilla extract 664.52
- .55 Vinegar
- .58 Complex condiments
Including catsup, chutney, miso, sauces
Class salad dressings in 664.37
- .6 **Special-purpose food and aids**
Including chewing gum, snack food
Class special-purpose flavoring aids in 664.5
-
- > 664.62-664.66 Special-purpose food
Class comprehensive works in 664.6. Class a specific food with the food, e.g., vegetables 664.8
- .62 Baby food
- .63 Low-calorie food
- .64 Meatless high-protein food
Including synthetic meat
- .65 Complete dishes
Including complete meals, packaged ingredients for complete recipes
Class packaged ingredients for recipes based on a specific kind of food with the kind, e.g., mixes and prepared doughs for bakery goods 664.753

- .66 Food for animals
 Class here pet food
 For animal feed made from grains and other seeds, see 664.76
- .68 Leavening agents and baking aids
 Including baking powder, baking soda, cream of tartar, yeast
- .7 Grains, other seeds, their derived products**
 Class sugars and syrups from grain and other seeds in 664.13; class starches and jellying agents from grain and other seeds in 664.2; class fats and oils from grains and other seeds in 664.3
- .72 Milling and milling products
 Standard subdivisions are added for milling and milling products together, for milling alone
 For animal feeds, see 664.76
- .720 01 Philosophy and theory
- .720 02 Miscellany
- [.720 028 7] Testing and measurement
 Do not use; class in 664.7204
- .720 03–.720 09 Standard subdivisions
- .720 1 Preliminary treatment
- .720 3 Grinding and deflaking
- .720 4 Sifting, grading, quality controls
- .720 7 Products
 Including flour, meal, refined grain
 See also 664.7208 for by-products
- .720 8 By-products
 Including bran, siftings
- .720 9 Packaging
- .722 Wheat
- .722 7 Products
 See also 664.7228 for by-products
- .722 72 Flour
- .722 73 Meal
- .722 8 By-products
 Including bran, siftings

- .724 Corn
 Variant names: Indian corn, maize
- .725 Rice
- .726 Nuts, legumes, other non-cereal seeds and their flours, meals,
 by-products
 Including cottonseeds, sunflower seeds
 Class comprehensive works on commercial processing of nuts in
 664.8045; class comprehensive works on commercial processing of
 legumes in 664.80565
 For salad and cooking oils, see 664.36
- .75 Secondary products
- .752 Bakery goods
 Including crackers
 Class mixes and prepared doughs for bakery goods in 664.753
- .752 3 Breads
 Including biscuits, quick breads
- .752 5 Pastries
 Including cakes, cookies (biscuits), pies
- .753 Mixes and prepared doughs
 Including biscuit, cake, pancake mixes
- .755 Noodles and pastas
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .756 Ready-to-eat cereals
- .76 Animal feeds
 Class comprehensive works on commercial processing of foods for animals
 in 664.66
- .762 Cereal grains
 Individual grains and mixtures
 Class formula feeds in 664.768
- .763 Other seeds
 Individual seeds and mixtures
 Class formula feeds in 664.768
- .764 Cereal grain and seed mixtures
- .768 Formula feeds
 Cakes, flakes, granules, pellets, powders basically of cereal grains and
 other seeds and fortified with vitamins and minerals

.8 Fruits and vegetables

Class a specific product derived from fruits and vegetables with the product, e.g., jams 664.152, fats and oils 664.3

.800 1 Philosophy and theory

.800 2 Miscellany

[.800 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 664.807

.800 3-.800 9 Standard subdivisions

.804 Specific fruits and groups of fruits

Add to base number 664.804 the numbers following 634 in 634.1-634.8, e.g., citrus fruits 664.804304, nuts 664.8045

.805 Specific vegetables and groups of vegetables

Add to base number 664.805 the numbers following 635 in 635.1-635.8, e.g., salad greens 664.8055

.806-.809 Additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging

Add to base number 664.80 the numbers following 664.0 in 664.06-664.09, e.g., packaging vegetables 664.809

Class additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging applied to specific fruits and groups of fruits in 664.804; class additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging applied to specific vegetables and groups of vegetables in 664.805

See also 664.81-664.88 for preservation techniques

.81-.88 Preservation techniques

Add to base number 664.8 the numbers following 664.028 in 664.0281-664.0288, e.g., deep freezing fruits 664.853

Class preservation techniques applied to specific fruits and groups of fruits in 664.804; class preservation techniques applied to specific vegetables and groups of vegetables in 664.805

.9 Meats and allied foods

Standard subdivisions are added for meats and allied foods together, for meats alone

.900 1 Philosophy and theory

.900 2 Miscellany

[.900 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 664.907

.900 3-.900 9 Standard subdivisions

.902 Preservation techniques, slaughtering, meat cutting

- .902 8 Preservation techniques
 Add to base number 664.9028 the numbers following 664.028 in
 664.0281–664.0288, e.g., canning 664.90282
- .902 9 Slaughtering and meat cutting
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .906–.909 Additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging
 Add to base number 664.90 the numbers following 664.0 in
 664.06–664.09, e.g., packaging meats and allied foods 664.909
 Class additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging
 applied to specific meats or allied foods with the meat or food, e.g.,
 packaging red meats 664.9299
 See also 664.9028 for preservation techniques
- .92 Red meat
- [.920 287] Testing and measurement
 Do not use; class in 664.9297
- .921–.928 Preservation techniques
 Add to base number 664.92 the numbers following 664.028 in
 664.0281–664.0288, e.g., canning red meat 664.922
 Subdivisions are added for specific red meats, e.g., canning beef
 664.922
- .929 Additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging
 Add to base number 664.929 the numbers following 664.0 in
 664.06–664.09, e.g., packaging red meat 664.9299
 Subdivisions are added for specific red meats, e.g., packaging beef
 664.9299
 See also 664.921–664.928 for preservation techniques
- .93 Poultry
- [.930 287] Testing and measurement
 Do not use; class in 664.9397
- .931–.938 Preservation techniques
 Add to base number 664.93 the numbers following 664.028 in
 664.0281–664.0288, e.g., deep freezing 664.9353
 Subdivisions are added for specific kinds of poultry, e.g., deep
 freezing turkeys 664.9353
- .939 Additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging
 Add to base number 664.939 the numbers following 664.0 in
 664.06–664.09, e.g., poultry by-products 664.9398
 Subdivisions are added for specific kinds of poultry, e.g., turkey
 by-products 664.9398
 See also 664.931–664.938 for preservation techniques

- .94 **Fishes and shellfish**
 Standard subdivisions are added for fish and shellfish together, for fishes alone
 Class here seafood
- [.940 287] **Testing and measurement**
 Do not use; class in 664.9497
- .941-.948 **Preservation techniques**
 Add to base number 664.94 the numbers following 664.028 in 664.0281-664.0288, e.g., canning seafood 664.942
 Subdivisions are not added for specific kinds of fishes and shellfish, e.g., canning oysters 664.94 (*not* 664.942)
- .949 **Additives, tests, analyses, quality controls, by-products, packaging**
 Add to base number 664.949 the numbers following 664.0 in 664.06-664.09, e.g., quality controls for seafood 664.9497
 Subdivisions are not added for specific kinds of fishes and shellfish, e.g., quality controls for catfish 664.94 (*not* 664.9497)
 See also 664.941-664.948 for preservation techniques
- .95 **Other meats and allied foods**
 Including frogs, turtles, snails, insects

665 **Technology of industrial oils, fats, waxes, gases**

SUMMARY

- 665.028 **Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials**
- .1 **Waxes**
 .2 **Animal fats and oils**
 .3 **Vegetable fats and oils**
 .4 **Mineral oils and waxes**
 .5 **Petroleum**
 .7 **Natural gas and manufactured gases**
 .8 **Other industrial gases**
- .028 **Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials**
 Notation 028 from Table 1 as modified below
 Class here basic techniques and procedures
- .028 2 **Extraction**
 Including pressurizing, rendering, steam distilling
- .028 3 **Refining**
 Including bleaching, blending, coloring, fractionating, purifying
- .028 7 **Maintenance and repair**
 Do not use for testing and measurement; class in 665.0288

- .028 8 Tests, analyses, quality controls
 Do not use for maintenance and repair; class in 665.0287
- .1 Waxes**
 Class polishing waxes in 667.72
 For mineral waxes, see 665.4
- .12 Vegetable waxes
 Including bayberry, candleberry, carnauba, laurel, myrtle waxes
- .13 Animal waxes
 Including lanolin (wool wax), spermaceti
 For beeswax, see 638.17
- .19 Blended waxes
- .2 Animal fats and oils**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including fish, neat's-foot, whale oils; tallow; biodiesel fuel from animal fats and oils
 Class here interdisciplinary works on animal fats and oils
 Class comprehensive works on biodiesel fuel in 665.37
 For animal fats and oils used in food or food preparation, see 664.3
 See also 665.13 for spermaceti
- .3 Vegetable fats and oils**
 Class here interdisciplinary works on vegetable fats and oils
 Class interdisciplinary works on specific vegetable oils used primarily as food with the vegetable oil in 641.3, e.g., olive oil 641.3463
 For the food technology of vegetable fats and oils used in food and food preparation, see 664.3
- .33 Wood oil
 Class here comprehensive works on naval stores
 For a specific kind of naval store, see the kind, e.g., pitch 665.5388
- .332 Crude turpentine
 Class turpentine oils in 661.806
- .333 Tung oil (Chinese wood oil)
- .35 Seed oils
 Class biodiesel fuel in 665.37
 For tung oil, see 665.333
- .352 Linseed oil (Flaxseed oil)

- .353 Castor oil
- .354 Cocoa butter (Cacao butter)
- .355 Coconut oil
- .37 Biodiesel fuel
- Class here comprehensive works on biodiesel fuel
- For biodiesel fuel from animal fats and oils, see 665.2*
- .4 Mineral oils and waxes**
- Including natural asphalt, shale oil, tar sand
- For petroleum, see 665.5*
- .5 Petroleum**
- Class here comprehensive works on technology of petroleum and natural gas
- Class synthetic petroleum in 662.662
- For technology of extraction of petroleum and natural gas, see 622.338; for comprehensive works on technology of natural gas, see 665.7*
- .53 Refinery treatment and products
- Standard subdivisions are added for refinery treatment and products together, for refinery treatment alone
- Class preliminary refining of oil sands and oil shale to obtain distillable fluids in 665.4
- .530 286 Green technology (Environmental technology)
- Do not use for pollution control technology, waste technology; class in 665.5389
- .532 Fractional distillation
- .533 Cracking processes
- Including thermal and catalytic cracking, hydrogenation of residual petroleum distillates
- .534 Purification and blending of distillates
- .538 Refinery products and by-products
- Including waste products
- Class here petrochemicals
- For petrochemicals as a type of industrial chemical, see 661.804*
- .538 2 Highly volatile products
- .538 24 Naphthas
- .538 25 Aviation fuel
- Including high-octane-rating gasoline, jet and turbojet fuel
- Class interdisciplinary works on gasoline in 665.53827

- .538 27 Gasoline
For high-octane-rating gasoline, see 665.53825
- .538 3 Kerosene
For jet and turbojet fuel, see 665.53825
- .538 4 Heavy fuel oil
 Including absorber oil, diesel fuel, gas oil, heating oil
See also 665.37 for biodiesel fuel
- .538 5 Lubricating oil and grease
 Including paraffin wax and petrolatum
- .538 8 Residues (Bottoms)
 Including asphalt, bunker and road oils, petroleum coke, pitch
 Class unusable residues (wastes) in 665.538; class asphalt concrete in 666.893
- .538 9 Waste control
 Class here pollution control
- .54 Storage, transportation, distribution
- .542 Storage
- .543 Transportation
 Including transportation by tankers
For pipeline transportation, see 665.544
- .544 Pipeline transportation
- .55 Uses
 Class a specific use with the use, e.g., automobile engine lubricants 629.255
- .7 Natural gas and manufactured gases**
 Standard subdivisions are added for natural gas and manufactured gases together, for natural gas alone
 Class here comprehensive works on technology of industrial gases
For technology of extracting natural gas, see 622.3385; for technology of industrial gases not provided for here, see 665.8
- .702 86 Green technology (Environmental technology)
 Class production of manufactured gases from biological wastes in 665.776
- .73 Processing natural gas
 Including extraction of helium

- .74 Storage, transportation, distribution of natural gas and manufactured gases
Standard subdivisions are added for natural gas, manufactured gases, or both
- .742 Storage
Standard subdivisions are added for natural gas, manufactured gases, or both
- .743 Transportation
Standard subdivisions are added for natural gas, manufactured gases, or both
For pipeline transportation, see 665.744
- .744 Pipeline transportation
Standard subdivisions are added for natural gas, manufactured gases, or both
- .75 Uses of natural gas and manufactured gases
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
Class a specific use with the use, e.g., heating buildings 697.043
- .77 Production of manufactured gases
Class here comprehensive works on technology of manufactured gases
For storage, transportation, distribution, see 665.74; for uses, see 665.75
- .772 Production of manufactured gases from coal and coke
Including blast-furnace, carbureted-blue, city, coke-oven, producer, water gases
Class here coal gasification
- .773 Production of manufactured gases from petroleum and natural gas
Including oil, refinery, reformed natural, reformed refinery, liquefied petroleum gases, e.g., butane, butene, pentane, propane, and their mixtures
- .776 Production of manufactured gases from biological wastes
Class here biogas
- .779 Production of manufactured gases by mixing fuel gases from several sources
- .8 Other industrial gases**
For ammonia, see 661.34
- .81 Hydrogen
- .82 Gases derived from liquefaction and fractionation of air

- .822 Noble gases
 Variant names: inert, rare gases
 Including argon, helium, krypton, neon, radon, xenon
 Class extraction of helium from natural gases in 665.73
- .823 Oxygen
- .824 Nitrogen
- .83 Halogen gases
- .84 Sulfur dioxide
- .85 Acetylene
- .89 Carbon dioxide, ozone, hydrogen sulfide

666 Ceramic and allied technologies

Standard subdivisions are added for ceramic and allied technologies together, for ceramic technologies alone

SUMMARY

- 666.04 Special topics of ceramic and allied technologies**
- .1 Glass
- .2 Enamels
- .3 Pottery
- .4 Pottery materials, equipment, processes
- .5 Porcelain
- .6 Earthenware and stoneware
- .7 Refractories and structural clay products
- .8 Synthetic and artificial minerals and building materials
- .9 Masonry adhesives
- .04 Special topics of ceramic and allied technologies
- .042 Ceramic-to-metal bonding
- .1 Glass**
- [.102 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures
 Do not use; class in 666.13
- [.102 84] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use; class in 666.12
- .102 86 Green technology (Environmental technology)
 Do not use for pollution control technology, waste technology;
 class in 666.14
- .104 Special topics of glass
- .104 2 Physicochemical phenomena occurring during glassmaking processes
 Including phase and structural transformations

-
- > 666.12–666.14 General topics of glass
- Class general topics of specific types of glass in 666.15; class general topics of products in 666.19; class comprehensive works in 666.1
- .12 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
- For auxiliary techniques and procedures, see 666.13*
- .121 Materials
-
- > 666.122–666.129 Specific operations in glassmaking
- Class tests, analyses, quality controls in 666.137; class comprehensive works in 666.12
- .122 Blowing
- .123 Pressing
- .124 Drawing
- .125 Molding and casting
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .126 Multiform processes
- Cold-molding glass powder under pressure, and firing at high temperatures
- .129 Annealing and tempering
- .13 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
- Add to base number 666.13 the numbers following —028 in notation 0285–0289 from Table 1, e.g., quality control in glassmaking 666.137; however, for waste technology, see 666.14
- .14 Waste technology
- Including recycling
- Class here pollution control
- Class recycling a specific type of glass or glass product with the type of glass or product, e.g., recycling bottles 666.192
- .15 Specific types of glass
- See also 669.94 for metallic glass*
- .152 Window glass
- Sheet glass that differs from plate glass primarily in being annealed more quickly and in not being ground and polished
- .153 Plate glass
- Class laminated plate glass in 666.154
- .154 Laminated glass

- .155 Heat-resistant glass
- .156 Optical glass
- .157 Fiber glass and foam glass
Class fiberglass-reinforced plastic in 668.4942
- .19 Products
- .192 Bottles and jars
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .2 Enamels**
- .3 Pottery**
Class here comprehensive works on clay technology
Class pottery limited to earthenware or stoneware in 666.6
For techniques and procedures, see 666.44; for specific types of pottery, see 666.5–666.6; for structural clay products, see 666.73
- [.301–.309] Standard subdivisions
Do not use; class in 666.31–666.39
- .31–.39 Standard subdivisions
Add to base number 666.3 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 1, e.g., auxiliary techniques and procedures 666.328; however, for apparatus, equipment, materials, see 666.4
- .4 Pottery materials, equipment, processes**
Add to base number 666.4 the numbers following 738.1 in 738.12–738.15, e.g., kilns 666.436
- .44 Techniques and procedures
Number built according to instructions under 666.4
For auxiliary techniques and procedures, see 666.328
auxiliary techniques and procedures relocated to 666.328
-
- > **666.5–666.6 Specific types of pottery**
Class comprehensive works in 666.3
- .5 Porcelain**
- .58 Specific products
Including figurines, tableware, vases
- .6 Earthenware and stoneware**
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .68 Specific products
 Including containers, figurines, industrial products, tableware
- .7 Refractories and structural clay products**
- .72 Refractory materials
 Including alumina, asbestos, chrome, fireclays, mica, talc, zirconia
- .73 Structural clay products
- .732 Roofing tiles
- .733 Tile drains and piping
- .737 Bricks
 For hollow and perforated bricks, see 666.738
- .738 Hollow and perforated bricks
- .8 Synthetic and artificial minerals and building materials**
- .86 Synthetic and artificial minerals
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including cryolite, feldspar, graphite, mica
 For synthetic and artificial gems, see 666.88
- .88 Synthetic and artificial gems
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including diamonds, garnets, rubies, sapphires
- .89 Synthetic building materials
 Including drywall
 For structural clay products, see 666.73
- .893 Concrete
 Including asphalt concrete, ready-mix concrete
 Class concrete blocks in 666.894
- .894 Hollow concrete and cinder blocks
 Class here interdisciplinary works on concrete blocks
 For solid concrete blocks, see 666.895
- .895 Solid concrete blocks
- .9 Masonry adhesives**
 Class concrete in 666.893
- .92 Gypsum plasters
 Including Keene's cement, plaster of paris

- .93 Lime mortars
- .94 Portland cement
 - Class here comprehensive works on cement
 - For Keene's cement, see 666.92; for other cements, see 666.95*
- .95 Other cements
 - Including high-alumina cement, magnesia

667 **Cleaning, color, coating, related technologies**

Standard subdivisions are added for cleaning, color, coating, related technologies together; for color technology alone

.1 **Cleaning and bleaching**

- Of textiles, leathers, furs, feathers
- Class household bleaching, cleaning, laundry in 648

.12 Dry cleaning

Including manufacture of dry-cleaning materials

.13 Laundering and finishing operations

For soaps, see 668.12; for detergents, see 668.14

.14 Bleaching

Including manufacture of bleaching materials

.2 **Dyes and pigments**

Standard subdivisions are added for dyes and pigments together, for dyes alone
Including stains

> 667.25–667.26 Dyes

Class comprehensive works in 667.2

.25 Synthetic dyes

.252 Nitro and nitroso dyes

.253 Azo-oxy and azo-tetrazo dyes

.254 Diphenylmethane and triphenylmethane dyes

.256 Hydroxyketone dyes

Including alizarines, quinoidals

.257 Indigoid dyes

See also 667.26 for indigo

.26 Natural dyes

Including indigo

- .29 Pigments
- .3 Dyeing and printing**
- Standard subdivisions are added for dyeing and printing together, for dyeing alone
- Class here dyeing and printing of textiles, of textile fibers
- Class dyeing and printing of a specific material not provided for here with the material, e.g., dyeing leather 675.25
- For dyes, see 667.25–667.26*
- See also 686.2 for printing of books and related products*
- .31–.35 Dyeing specific textiles
- Add to base number 667.3 the numbers following 677 in 677.1–677.5, e.g., dyeing nylon 667.3473
- .38 Textile printing
- .4 Inks**
- For printing ink, see 667.5*
- .5 Printing ink**
- .6 Paints and painting**
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Including paint removers, sign painting
- .62 Oil-soluble paint
- .622 Oils, driers, plasticizers
- .623 Pigments and extenders
- For carbon black, see 662.93*
- .624 Diluents (Thinners)
- .63 Water-soluble paint
- Including latex paint, whitewash
- .69 Special-purpose paints
- Including fire-resistant, luminous, rust-resistant paints
- .7 Polishes, lacquers, varnishes**
- Class here methods of applying polishes, lacquers, varnishes
- .72 Polishes and polishing
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.75 **Lacquers and lacquering**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including japans, japanning [*both formerly 667.8*]

.79 **Varnishes and varnishing**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including shellac, spar varnish
 Class here spirit varnishes
 For lacquers and lacquering, see 667.75

[.8] Japans and japanning

 Relocated to 667.75

.9 Coatings and coating

 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

 Comprehensive works on methods and materials for producing protective and decorative coatings

For a coating made of a specific material, see the material, e.g., enamel coatings 666.2, thermoset plastic coatings 668.422; for methods of applying a specific kind of coating, see the kind of coating, e.g., painting 667.6; for coatings applied to a specific thing and methods of applying the coatings, see the thing to which the coating is applied, e.g., coatings for metal 671.73, metal coatings for polymers 668.9, painting a building 698.1, varnishing a violin 787.21923

668 Technology of other organic products

SUMMARY

- 668.1 **Surface-active agents (Surfactants)**
- .2 **Glycerin**
- .3 **Adhesives and related products**
- .4 **Plastics**
- .5 **Perfumes and cosmetics**
- .6 **Agricultural chemicals**
- .9 **Polymers and polymerization**

.1 Surface-active agents (Surfactants)

.12 Soaps

.124 Soluble soaps

 Including liquid concentrates, powders

.125 Insoluble soaps (Metallic soaps)

 Including oleates and stearates of aluminum

.127 Scouring compounds

.14 Detergents and wetting agents

Nonsoap materials that manifest surface activity

Standard subdivisions are added for detergents and wetting agents together, for detergents alone

Including fatty-alcohol sulfates, sulfated oils and hydrocarbons

.2 **Glycerin**

.3 **Adhesives and related products**

Standard subdivisions are added for adhesives and related products together, for adhesives alone

For masonry adhesives, see 666.9

> 668.31–668.37 Specific kinds of adhesives

Class products made from specific kinds of adhesives in 668.38; class comprehensive works in 668.3

.31 Synthetic glue

.32 Animal glue

Including casein glue

.33 Vegetable glue

Including mucilage

See also 668.37 for gum

.34 Crude gelatin

.37 Gum and resin

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.372 Natural gum and resin

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

See also 668.33 for mucilage

.374 Synthetic gum and resin

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including epoxy resin

.38 Products made from adhesives

Including tape

Class here sealants

.4 **Plastics**

[.402 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 668.41

- .404 Special topics of plastics
- .404 2 Physicochemical phenomena of plastics manufacture
- .41 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
Class application to specific kinds of plastics in 668.42–668.45; class application to forms and products in 668.49
- .411 Materials
Including fillers, plasticizers
-
- > 668.412–668.419 Specific operations
Class comprehensive works in 668.41
- .412 Molding and casting
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .413 Extrusion
- .414 Laminating
- .415 Welding
- .416 Reinforcing
- .419 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
- .419 2 Waste technology
Class here pollution control
- .419 5–419 9 Miscellaneous auxiliary techniques and procedures
Add to base number 668.419 the numbers following —028 in notation 0285–0289 from Table 1, e.g., quality control in plastics manufacture 668.4197; however, for waste technology, see 668.4192
-
- > 668.42–668.45 Specific kinds of plastics
Class forms and products of specific kinds of plastics in 668.49; class comprehensive works in 668.4
- .42 Polymerization plastics
- .422 Thermosetting plastics
- .422 2 Phenolics
- .422 3 Ureas
- .422 4 Melamines
- .422 5 Polyesters
Including polyurethanes
Class interdisciplinary works on polyurethanes in 668.4239
- .422 6 Epoxies

- .422 7 Silicones
- .423 Thermoplastic plastics
 Including acetals, acetates, butyrates, polycarbonates, polyethers
- .423 2 Acrylics (Polyacrylics)
- .423 3 Styrenes (Polystyrenes)
- .423 4 Polyolefins
 Including polyethylenes, polyisobutylenes, polypropylenes
- .423 5 Polyamides (Nylons)
- .423 6 Vinyls (Polyvinyls)
- .423 7 Vinylidene chlorides
- .423 8 Polyfluoro hydrocarbons
- .423 9 Polyurethanes
 Class here interdisciplinary works on polyurethanes
 For thermosetting polyurethanes, see 668.4225; for polyurethane rubber, see 678.72
- .43 Protein plastics
 Including plastics derived from casein
- .44 Cellulosics
 Including celluloid
- .45 Plastics from natural resins
 Including lignin-derived plastics
 For protein plastics, see 668.43
- .49 Forms and products
 Class plastic fibers and fabrics in 677.4
-
- > 668.492–668.495 Specific forms
 Class comprehensive works in 668.49
- .492 Laminated plastic
- .493 Plastic foams
 Including structural foam
- .494 Reinforced plastic
- .494 2 Glass-reinforced plastic
 Class here fiberglass-reinforced plastic
- .495 Plastic films

- .497 Containers
- .5 Perfumes and cosmetics**
- .54 Perfumes
- .542 Natural perfumes
Including floral oils and waters; potpourris
- .544 Synthetic perfumes
- .55 Cosmetics
- .6 Agricultural chemicals**
- .62 Fertilizers
Add to base number 668.62 the numbers following 631.8 in 631.83–631.85, e.g., superphosphates 668.625
For organic fertilizers, see 668.63
- .63 Organic fertilizers
Add to base number 668.63 the numbers following 631.8 in 631.86–631.87, e.g., manufacture of fertilizers from animal wastes 668.636, converting household garbage 668.6375
- .64 Soil conditioners
Manufactured and organic
- .65 Pesticides
Interdisciplinary works on pesticides relocated to 632.95
- .651 Insecticides, rodenticides, vermicides
- .652 Fungicides and algicides
- .653 Bactericides
- .654 Herbicides (Weed killers)
- .9 Polymers and polymerization**
Standard subdivisions are added for polymers and polymerization together, for polymers alone
Class here synthetic polymers
Class a specific application with the application, e.g., manufacture of nylon hosiery 687.3; class a specific polymer with the polymer, e.g., plastics 668.4
- .92 Polymerization

669 Metallurgy

Class here alloys, extractive metallurgy, process metallurgy, interdisciplinary works on metals

For a specific aspect of metals, see the aspect, e.g., chemistry 546.3, metalworking and primary metal products 671

See Manual at 669; also at 622.22, 622.7 vs. 662.6, 669

SUMMARY**669.01-.09 Standard subdivisions and special topics of metallurgy**

- .1 Ferrous metals
- .2 Precious and group 3 metals
- .3 Copper
- .4 Lead
- .5 Zinc and cadmium
- .6 Tin
- .7 Other nonferrous metals
- .8 Metallurgical furnace technology
- .9 Physical and chemical metallurgy

.028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Notation 028 from Table 1 as modified below

.028 2 Pyrometallurgy

Extraction by furnace methods, e.g., smelting

Class electrical zone melting in 669.0284

.028 3 Hydrometallurgy

Extraction by leaching methods

.028 4 Electrometallurgy

Do not use for apparatus and equipment; class in 669.028. Do not use for materials; class in 669.042

Including electrical zone melting, vacuum metallurgy

Class here electrorefining, electrowinning

.04 Special topics of metallurgy

.042 Materials

Class here prepared ores and scrap metals

Class furnace materials in 669.8

669.1-669.7 Metallurgy of specific metals and their alloys

Class comprehensive works in 669

For physical and chemical metallurgy of specific metals and their alloys, see 669.96

.1 Ferrous metals

- .14 Reduction and refining of ferrous ores
 Class comprehensive works on production of iron and steel in 669.1
- [.140 1--.140 9] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 669.101–669.109
- .141 Production of iron
 For production of ingot iron, see 669.1423
- .141 3 Blast-furnace practice
 Class here casting as a part of the refining process, production of pig iron and crude cast iron
 Class iron casting as a metalworking process in 672.25; class cast iron products in 672.8
- .141 4 Puddling furnace practice
 Class here production of wrought iron
- .142 Production of steel
 Class here stainless steel
- .142 2 Open-hearth furnace practice (Siemens process)
- .142 3 Bessemer converter practice
 Including production of duplex-process steel, ingot iron
- .142 4 Electric furnace practice
 Including arc furnace practice
- .142 9 Production of crucible steel

> **669.2–669.7 Nonferrous metals**

 Class comprehensive works in 669

.2 Precious and group 3 metals

 Standard subdivisions are added for precious and group 3B metals together, for precious metals alone

> **669.22–669.24 Precious metals**

 Class comprehensive works in 669.2

- .22 Gold
- .23 Silver
- .24 Platinum
- .29 Group 3 metals
- .290 01--.290 09 Standard subdivisions

- .290 1 Scandium
- .290 3 Yttrium
- .291-.294 Rare earth elements (Lanthanide series) and actinide series
- Add to base number 669.29 the numbers following 546.4 in 546.41-546.44, e.g., rare earth elements 669.291, actinide series metals 669.292, uranium 669.2931
- .3 Copper**
- Class here brass, Muntz metal; bronze, gunmetal; copper-aluminum alloys; copper-beryllium alloys
- .4 Lead**
- .5 Zinc and cadmium**
- .52 Zinc
- For brass, Muntz metal, see 669.3*
- .56 Cadmium
- .6 Tin**
- For bronze, gunmetal, see 669.3*
- .7 Other nonferrous metals**
- Including iridium, osmium, palladium, rhodium, ruthenium; rhenium
- See also 669.24 for platinum*
- .71 Mercury
- .72 Light, alkali, alkaline-earth metals
- Standard subdivisions are added for light, alkali, alkaline-earth metals together; for light metals alone
- For titanium, see 669.7322; for zirconium, see 669.735*
- .722 Aluminum
- For copper-aluminum alloys, see 669.3*
- .723 Magnesium
- .724 Beryllium
- For copper-beryllium alloys, see 669.3*
- .725 Alkali and alkaline-earth metals
- Including barium, calcium, cesium, francium, lithium, potassium, radium, rubidium, sodium, strontium
- For magnesium, see 669.723; for beryllium, see 669.724*
- .73 Metals used in ferroalloys
- .732 Titanium, vanadium, manganese

- .732 2 Titanium
- .733 Nickel and cobalt
- .733 2 Nickel
- .734 Chromium, molybdenum, tungsten
- .735 Zirconium and tantalum
- .75 Antimony, arsenic, bismuth
- .79 Miscellaneous rare metals and metalloids
 Limited to gallium, hafnium, indium, niobium, polonium, thallium;
 germanium, selenium, tellurium
- .8 Metallurgical furnace technology**
 Class metallurgical furnace technology used for a specific metal with the metal,
 e.g., nickel 669.7332
- .802 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use for refractory material; class in 669.82
- .81 Fuel
- .82 Refractory material
 Class comprehensive works on technology of refractory materials in 666.72
- .83 Firing and heat control
- .84 Fluxes and slag
- .85 Physical processes
 Including heat exchange
- .9 Physical and chemical metallurgy**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Physical and chemical phenomena occurring during metallurgical processes;
 physical and chemical analyses of metals; formation of alloys
 Class metalworking and manufacture of primary metal products in 671-673
- .92 Chemical analysis
 Including assaying
 Class chemical analysis of specific metals and their alloys in 669.96
- .94 Physicochemical metallurgical phenomena
 Including alloy binary systems, intermetallic compounds, metallic glass,
 solid solutions, solidification; phase diagrams
 Class physicochemical metallurgical phenomena of specific metals and their
 alloys in 669.96
- .95 Metallography

- .950 28 Specific kinds of techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
- .950 282 Microscopical metallography
 Optical and electron metallography
- .950 283 X-ray metallography
- .951-.957 Metallography of specific metals and their alloys
 Add to base number 669.95 the numbers following 669 in 669.1-669.7, e.g., aluminum 669.95722
- .96 Physical and chemical metallurgy of specific metals and their alloys
 Add to base number 669.96 the numbers following 669 in 669.1-669.7, e.g., titanium 669.967322
 For metallography of specific metals and their alloys, see 669.951-669.957

670 Manufacturing

Including planning and design for manufactured products

Class here manufactured products

Class military applications in 623; class planning and design for specific kinds of products in 671-679; class the arts in 700. Class comprehensive works on products made by a specific process with the process, e.g., seasoned wood 674.38; however, if a specific provision is made for the product, class with the product, e.g., coated papers 676.283 (*not* 676.235)

For manufacture of products based on specific branches of engineering, see 620; for manufacture of products based on chemical technologies, see 660; for manufacture of final products for specific uses not provided for elsewhere, see 680

See Manual at T1-025 vs. T1-029

SUMMARY

- 670.1-.9 Standard subdivisions and special topics of manufacturing
- 671 Metalworking processes and primary metal products
- 672 Iron, steel, other iron alloys
- 673 Nonferrous metals
- 674 Lumber processing, wood products, cork
- 675 Leather and fur processing
- 676 Pulp and paper technology
- 677 Textiles
- 678 Elastomers and elastomer products
- 679 Other products of specific kinds of materials

- .285 **Computer applications**
 Class here computer-aided design / computer-aided manufacture (CAD/CAM), computer integrated manufacturing systems (CIM), comprehensive works on computer use in the management of manufacturing and computer-aided design or computer-aided manufacture
 Class computer-aided design (CAD) in 620.00420285; class computer use in the management of manufacturing in 658.05
 For computer-aided manufacture (CAM), flexible manufacturing systems limited to factory operations, see 670.427
- .4 Special topics of manufacturing**
- .42 **Factory operations engineering**
 Class here shop and assembly-line technology
 For tools and fabricating equipment, see 621.9; for packaging technology, see 688.8
- [.420 685] Management of factory operations
 Do not use; class in 658.5
- .423 Machine-shop practice
- .425 Inspection technology
- .427 **Mechanization and automation of factory operations**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here assembling machines, computer control of factory operations; computer-aided manufacture (CAM), flexible manufacturing systems if limited to factory operations
 Class computer-aided design (CAD) in 620.00420285; class computer-aided design / computer-aided manufacture (CAD/CAM), computer integrated manufacturing systems (CIM), computer-aided manufacture (CAM), flexible manufacturing systems if applied to design and production of manufactured products in 670.285; class automated machine-shop practice in 670.423; class automated inspection technology in 670.425; class comprehensive works on computer control in 629.89
- .427 2 Robots
 Unless it is redundant, add to base number 670.4272 the numbers following 00 in 004-006, e.g., use of digital personal computers 670.4272416, but use of digital computers 670.4272 (*not* 670.42724)
- .427 5 Computerized process control
 Unless it is redundant, add to base number 670.4275 the numbers following 00 in 004-006, e.g., use of digital personal computers 670.4275416, but use of digital computers 670.4275 (*not* 670.42754)
 Class comprehensive works on computerized process control in 629.895

- [.685] Management of production
Do not use; class in 658.5

> **671–679 Manufacture of products from specific materials**

- Class here manufacture of primary products
Class comprehensive works in 670

For manufacture of ceramic products, see 666; for manufacture of plastic products, see 668.49

See Manual at 671–679 vs. 680

671 Metalworking processes and primary metal products

Standard subdivisions are added for metalworking processes and primary metal products together, for metalworking processes alone

Class metallurgy and interdisciplinary works on metals in 669

For metalworking processes and primary metal products with iron, steel, other iron alloys as the main metal, see 672; for metalworking processes and primary metal products with nonferrous metals as the main metal, see 673

> **671.2–671.7 Specific metalworking processes**

Class specific processes applied to specific primary products in 671.8; class comprehensive works in 671

.2 Founding (Casting)

See also 671.3 for hot-working operations

- .202 84 Materials

Do not use for apparatus and equipment; class in 671.22

- .22 Foundry equipment

- .23 Patternmaking and moldmaking

- .24 Melting

- .25 Specific methods of casting

- .252 Sand casting

- .253 Permanent-mold casting

Including die casting

- .254 Centrifugal casting

- .255 Investment casting

Variant names: cire perdue, lost-wax, precision casting

Including lost-foam casting

- .256 Continuous casting

.3 Mechanical working and related processes

Standard subdivisions are added for mechanical working and related processes together, for mechanical working alone

Class here hot-working operations, cold-working operations, high-energy forming

For small forge work, see 682

.32 Rolling

.33 Forging, pressing, stamping

.332 Forging

.334 Stamping

.34 Extruding and drawing

.35 Machining

Including grinding

Class here cutting as a machining process, milling

Class comprehensive works on cutting metal in 671.53

.36 Heat treatment and hardening

Including age-hardening, annealing, quenching, shot peening, tempering

.37 Powder metallurgical processes (Powder metallurgy)

.373 Sintering

.4 Electroforming of metals**.5 Joining and cutting of metals**

Standard subdivisions are added for joining and cutting together, for joining alone

Class ceramic-to-metal bonding in 666.042

.52 Welding

Including laser welding, underwater welding

Class underwater welding of a specific type with the type, e.g., underwater arc welding 671.5212

[.520 287] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 671.520423

.520 4 Special topics of welding

.520 42 Welds (Welded joints)

.520 422 Weldability, weld stability, weld defects

.520 423 Inspection and testing

.521 Electric welding

- .521 2 Arc welding
- .521 3 Resistance welding
 - Including flash, projection, seam, spot welding
- .521 4 Electron beam welding
- .521 5 Induction welding
- .522 Gas welding
- .529 Pressure and thermit welding
 - Including diffusion welding, forge welding, ultrasonic welding
- .53 Cutting
 - Class cutting as a machining process in 671.35
- .56 Soldering and brazing
 - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .58 Bonding
- .59 Riveting
- .7 Finishing and surface treatment of metals; metal coating of nonmetals**
 - Including cleaning, deburring
 - .72 Polishing and buffing
 - Standard subdivisions are added for polishing and buffing together, for polishing alone
 - .73 Coating
 - Including cladding; coating of various metals with a specific metal and metal coating of nonmetals
 - Class enameling in 666.2; class coating various metals with a specific metal and metal coating of nonmetals using a specific type or method of coating in 671.732–671.736; class comprehensive works on coating in 667.9. Class metal coating of a specific material with the material, e.g., metal coating of plastics 668.4, metal coating of ferrous metals 672.73
 - .732 Electroplating
 - Add to base number 671.732 the numbers following 669 in 669.1–669.7, e.g., nickel plating 671.7327332
 - .733 Hot-metal dipping
 - .734 Metal spraying
 - Class here metallizing
 - For vacuum metallizing, see 671.735*
 - .735 Vapor plating (Vacuum deposition)
 - Including vacuum metalizing, vapor-phase deposition
 - .736 Diffusion coating

.8 Primary products

Class here comprehensive works on technology of metal products

For a specific metal product not provided for here, see the product, e.g., metal furniture 684.105

- .82 Rolled products
- .821 Patternmaking
- .823 Strips and sheets
- .83 Forged, pressed, stamped products
- .832 Pipes
- .84 Extruded and drawn products
 - Including cables
- .842 Wires
- .87 Powder metal products

672 Iron, steel, other iron alloys

Metalworking processes and primary products

Add to base number 672 the numbers following 671 in 671.2–671.8, e.g., heat treatment 672.36, galvanizing 672.732

Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

For small forge work, see 682

673 Nonferrous metals

Metalworking processes and primary products

Class here alloys of nonferrous metals

Add to each subdivision identified by * the numbers following 671 in 671.2–671.8, e.g., welding aluminum 673.72252

Class metalworking processes and primary products in which nonferrous metals are not the main metal of the final product with the process or the main metal, e.g., nickel plating of various metals 671.7327332, zinc coating of steel 672.73252

.2 Precious metals

- .22 *Gold
- .23 *Silver
- .24 *Platinum

.3 *Copper

Class here brass, Muntz metal; bronze, gunmetal; copper-aluminum alloys; copper-beryllium alloys

.4 *Lead

*Add as instructed under 673

.5 Zinc and cadmium**.52 *Zinc***For brass, Muntz metal, see 673.3***.56 *Cadmium****.6 *Tin***For bronze, gunmetal, see 673.3***.7 Other nonferrous metals****.72 Light, alkali, alkaline-earth metals**

Standard subdivisions are added for light, alkali, alkaline-earth metals together; for light metals alone

*For titanium, see 673.7322; for zirconium, see 673.735***.722 *Aluminum***For copper-aluminum alloys, see 673.3***.723 *Magnesium****.724 *Beryllium***For copper-beryllium alloys, see 673.3***.73 Metals used in ferroalloys****.732 Titanium, vanadium, manganese****.732 2 *Titanium****.733 Nickel and cobalt****.733 2 *Nickel****.734 Chromium, molybdenum, tungsten****.735 Zirconium and tantalum****674 Lumber processing, wood products, cork****.001-.009 Standard subdivisions****.01 Philosophy and theory of lumber technology****.02 Miscellany of lumber technology****.021 2 Tables and formulas**

Do not use for specifications; class in 674.5

.028 6 Green technology (Environmental technology)

Do not use for pollution control technology, waste technology; class in 674.84

*Add as instructed under 673

.43 Production of pattern lumber

Including shiplap, sidings, tongue-and-groove products

.5 **Grading lumber**

Including inspection and specifications

.8 **Wood products**

Class here comprehensive works on wood-using technologies

For a specific product or wood-using technology not provided for here, see the product or technology, e.g., wood as a fuel 662.65, finished lumber 674.4, pulp and paper technology 676, wooden furniture 684.104, carpentry 694

.82 Containers and pallets

Including barrels, boxes, casks, crates

.83 Composite woods; veneers

Standard subdivisions are added for veneers and composite woods together, for composite woods alone

.833 Veneers

> 674.834–674.836 Composite woods

Class comprehensive works in 674.83

.834 Plywood

See also 674.835 for specialty plywoods

.835 Laminated wood (Sandwich panels, Specialty plywoods)

.836 Particle board

.84 Wood waste and residues

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including excelsior, sawdust, wood flour and shavings

Class here pollution control technology, waste technology

Class utilization of wood waste and residues in making a specific product with the product, e.g., particle board 674.836

.88 Other products

Including picture frames, signs, spools, toothpicks, wood-cased pencils, woodenware

.9 **Cork**

675 Leather and fur processing

Standard subdivisions are added for leather and fur processing together, for leather processing alone

For leather and fur goods, see 685

.2 Processing of natural leather

[.202 87] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 675.29

.22 Preliminary operations

Including fleshing, unhairing (liming), bating hides and skins

.23 Tanning

.24 Dressing

.25 Finishing

Including dyeing, embossing, glazing, production of patent leather

.29 Properties, tests, quality controls

.3 Fur processing

Including manufacture of imitation furs

.4 Manufacture of imitation leathers**676 Pulp and paper technology**

Standard subdivisions are added for pulp and paper technology together, for paper technology alone

Class here comprehensive works on paper and paper products, on the total process of making paper out of logs or other sources of pulp

Class the process of making pulp, through bleaching, in 676.1; class conversion of pulp into paper or paper products, starting with beating and refining the pulp, in 676.2

SUMMARY**676.04 Special topics of pulp and paper technology**

.1 Pulp

.2 Conversion of pulp into paper, and specific types of paper and paper products

.3 Paper and paperboard containers

.4 Purified pulp

.5 Pulp by-products

.7 Paper from man-made and noncellulosic fibers

.028 6 Green technology (Environmental technology)

Do not use for pollution control technology, waste technology; class in 676.042

.04 Special topics of pulp and paper technology

- .042 Waste technology
 Class here pollution control
 Class paper recycling in 676.142
- .1 Pulp**
 Class here the process of making pulp, through bleaching
 Class conversion of pulp into paper, starting with beating and refining the pulp,
 in 676.2; class pulp by-products in 676.5
- [.102 87] Testing and measurement
 Do not use; class in 676.17
-
- > 676.12–676.14 Specific pulps
 Class comprehensive works in 676.1
 For purified pulp, see 676.4
- .12 Wood pulp
 Testing and measurement
 Do not use; class in 676.121
- [.120 287]
- .121 Properties, tests, quality controls
-
- 676.122–676.127 Specific processes
 Class comprehensive works in 676.12
- .122 Mechanical process (Ground wood process)
- .124 Soda process
- .125 Sulfite process
- .126 Sulfate process (Kraft process)
- .127 Semichemical process
- .13 Rag pulp
- .14 Other pulps
 Including bagasse, bamboo, cornstalks, hemp, jute, straw
- .142 Wastepaper
 Class here paper recycling
- .17 Properties, tests, quality controls
 Class properties, tests, quality controls of specific pulps in 676.12–676.14
- .18 Molded products and pulpboards
- .182 Molded products

- .183 Pulpboards
 Including chip boards, fiberboards, wallboards
See also 666.89 for drywall

> **676.2–676.5 Pulp products**

Class comprehensive works in 676

For molded products and pulpboards, see 676.18

.2 Conversion of pulp into paper, and specific types of paper and paper products

Class paper recycling in 676.142

- [.202 87] Testing and measurement

Do not use; class in 676.27

> **676.22–676.27 General topics of conversion of pulp into paper**

Class general topics of specific types of paper and paper products in 676.28;
 class comprehensive works in 676.2

- .22 Production by hand

- .23 Specific processes of machine production

- .232 Basic processes

- .234 Finishing

Including calendering, coloring, creping, sizing

For coating, see 676.235

- .235 Coating

- .27 Properties, tests, quality controls

- .28 Specific types of paper and paper products

For photographic paper, see 661.808

- .280 27 Patents and identification marks

Including watermarks

- .282 Graphic arts paper

- .282 3 Stationery

Including onionskin paper

- .282 4 Book paper

Class coated book paper in 676.283

- .282 5 Drawing and art paper

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .282 6 Currency paper
 Papers for printing money, bonds, securities
- .283 Coated paper
 For specific kinds of coated paper, see the kind, e.g., coated wallpaper 676.2848
- .284 Specialty paper
- .284 2 Tissue paper
 Including cleansing tissues, toilet paper
 Class onionskin paper in 676.2823
- .284 4 Blotting and saturating paper
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .284 5 Vulcanized and parchment papers
 See also 685 for parchment prepared from the skin of an animal
- .284 8 Wallpaper
- .286 Unsized paper
 Including newsprint
- .287 Wrapping and bag papers
 Including bogus wrapping, butcher, kraft wrapping, Manila paper
- .288 Paperboard
 Including bristol board, cardboard, food board, pasteboard
- .289 Roofing and building papers
- .3 Paper and paperboard containers**
- .32 Boxes and cartons
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including corrugated and solid paperboard boxes, folding boxes
 For food board containers, see 676.34
- .33 Bags
- .34 Food board containers
 Including food cartons, paper plates and cups
- .4 Purified pulp**
 Production of alpha cellulose from wood pulp and cotton linters
- .5 Pulp by-products**
 Including fatty acids, lignin, resins, tall oil, turpentine
 Class comprehensive works on naval stores in 665.33

.7 Paper from man-made and noncellulosic fibers**677 Textiles**

Production of fibers, fabrics, cordage

Class here comprehensive works on manufacture of textiles and clothing

For manufacture of clothing, see 687

SUMMARY

677.001–.009	Standard subdivisions
.02	General topics of textiles
.1	Textiles of bast fibers
.2	Textiles of seed-hair fibers
.3	Textiles of animal fibers
.4	Textiles of man-made fibers
.5	Other textiles of specific fibers
.6	Special-process fabrics regardless of composition
.7	Cordage, trimmings and allied products
.8	Surgical gauze and cotton

- .001 Philosophy and theory
- .002 Miscellany
- .002 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
- [.002 84] Apparatus, equipment, materials
Do not use; class in 677.028
- .002 86 Green technology (Environmental technology)
Class waste and reused wool and hair in 677.36; class waste and reused silk in 677.394
- [.002 87] Testing and measurement
Do not use; class in 677.0287
- .003–.009 Standard subdivisions
- .02 General topics of textiles
- .022 Designs (Working patterns)
- .028 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, products
For auxiliary techniques and procedures, see 677.0028
- .028 2 Operations
- .028 21 Preliminary operations
Including carding, combing
- .028 22 Spinning, twisting, reeling
Standard subdivisions are added for spinning, twisting, reeling together; for spinning alone
- .028 24 Weaving, knitting, felting

- .028 242 Weaving
- .028 245 Knitting
- .028 25 Basic finishing
Physical and chemical processes
Including beetling, calendering, creping, mercerizing, pressing,
shearing, singeing, tentering
For dyeing and printing, see 667.3
- .028 3 Materials
- .028 32 Fibers
- .028 35 Textile chemicals
- .028 5 Power equipment
- .028 52 Spinning machines
- .028 54 Looms and loom equipment
Standard subdivisions are added for looms and loom equipment
together, for looms alone
- .028 55 Basic finishing machines
- .028 6 Products
*For tests and quality controls of products, see 677.0287; for
cordage, trimmings and allied products, see 677.7; for surgical
gauze and cotton, see 677.8*
- .028 62 Yarns and threads
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in
heading
- .028 64 Fabrics
For special-process fabrics, see 677.6
- .028 7 Testing and measurement
Including tests and quality controls of products

> **677.1–677.5 Textiles of specific composition**

Class here specific kinds of textile fibers

Class special-process fabrics regardless of composition in 677.6; class
comprehensive works in 677

.1 Textiles of bast fibers

.11 Flax

[.110 284] Apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 677.112–677.117

- .112–.117 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, products
 Add to base number 677.11 the numbers following 677.028 in
 677.0282–677.0287, e.g., linen fabrics 677.1164
 For auxiliary techniques and procedures, see 677.11028
- .12 Hemp
- .13 Jute
- .15 Ramie
- .18 Coir
- .2 Textiles of seed-hair fibers**
- .21 Cotton
- [.210 284] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use; class in 677.212–677.217
- .212–.217 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, products
 Add to base number 677.21 the numbers following 677.028 in
 677.0282–677.0287, e.g., cotton ginning, carding, combing 677.2121
 For auxiliary techniques and procedures, see 677.21028
- .23 Kapok
- .3 Textiles of animal fibers**
- .31 Sheep wool
 Class here comprehensive works on technology of wool textiles
 For llama, alpaca, vicuña, guanaco wool textiles, see 677.32
- [.310 284] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use; class in 677.312–677.317
- .312–.317 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, products
 Add to base number 677.31 the numbers following 677.028 in
 677.0282–677.0287, e.g., sheep wool fibers 677.3132
 For auxiliary techniques and procedures, see 677.31028
- .32 Llama, alpaca, vicuña, guanaco wools
- .33 Goat hair
- .34 Camel's hair
- .35 Rabbit hair
- .36 Waste and reused wool and hair
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .39 Silk
- .391 Cultivated silk

- [.391 028 4] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use; class in 677.3912-677.3917
- .391 2--391 7 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, products
 Add to base number 677.391 the numbers following 677.028 in
 677.0282-677.0287, e.g., beetling cultivated silk 677.39125
 For auxiliary techniques and procedures, see 677.391028
- .392 Wild silk (Tussah silk)
- .394 Waste and reused silk
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.4 Textiles of man-made fibers

- .46 Cellulosics (Rayon and acetates)
 For textiles of paper fibers, see 677.5
- .460 01-.460 09 Standard subdivisions
- .460 1-.460 9 Standard subdivisions of rayon

-
- > 677.461-677.463 Rayon
 Class comprehensive works in 677.46
- .461 Nitrocellulose
- .462 Cuprammonium rayon
- .463 Viscose rayon
- .464 Cellulose acetate
- .47 Noncellulosics
 For fiber glass, see 677.52
- .472 Azlon
- .473 Polyamides (Nylons)
- .474 Other polymerization textiles
- .474 2 Acrylics
 Class here polyacrylics
- .474 3 Polyesters
- .474 4 Vinyls
 Including nitrils, sarans, vinyons
 Class here polyvinyls
- .474 5 Olefins
 Including polyethylene, polypropylene

- .474 8 Polyfluoro hydrocarbons
- .5 Other textiles of specific fibers**
- .51 Textiles of asbestos fibers
- .52 Textiles of fiber glass
- .53 Textiles of metal fibers
- .54 Textiles of unaltered vegetable fibers
Including bamboo, cane, raffia, rattan, rush
- .55 Textiles of elastic fibers
- .6 Special-process fabrics regardless of composition**
Class here nonwoven fabrics
- .61 Fancy-weave fabrics
For tapestries, carpets, rugs, see 677.64; for openwork fabrics, see 677.65
- .615 Fabrics in dobby weave
Including bird's-eye, figured madras, huckaback, sharkskin
- .616 Fabrics in Jacquard weave
Including brocade, brocatelle, damask, lamé, upholstery fabrics
- .617 Fabrics in pile weave
Including chenille, corduroy, frieze, plush, terry cloth, velour, velvet, velveteen
- .62 Woven felt
Class comprehensive works on felt in 677.63
- .624 Flannel and swanskin yard goods
- .626 Blankets, lap robes, coverlets
- .63 Felt
For woven felt, see 677.62
- .632 Yard goods and carpets
- .64 Tapestries, carpets, rugs
- .642 Tapestry yard goods
- .643 Rugs
Class here carpets
For nonwoven felt carpets, see 677.632
- .65 Openwork fabrics
For chain-stitch and knotted fabrics, see 677.66

- .652 Fabrics in leno weave
 - Including grenadines, marquisettes
- .653 Laces
 - Including bobbin, machine, needlepoint laces
- .654 Tulles
- .66 Chain-stitch and knotted fabrics
- .661 Knitted fabrics
- .662 Crocheted fabrics
- .663 Tatted fabrics
- .664 Netted fabrics
- .68 Fabrics with functional finishes
 - Including drip-dry, durable press fabrics
 - Class specific types of special-process fabrics regardless of finish in 677.61–677.66
- .681 Crease-resistant and wrinkle-resistant fabrics
 - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .682 Waterproof and water-repellent fabrics
 - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .688 Shrinkage-controlled fabrics
- .689 Flameproof and flame-resistant fabrics
 - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .69 Bonded and laminated fabrics
 - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .7 Cordage, trimmings and allied products**
- .71 Ropes, twines, strings
 - Class here cordage
 - For passementerie, see 677.76*
- .76 Passementerie
 - Including decorative bias bindings, braids, cords, gimps, lacings, ribbons, tapes, tinsel; upholstery trimmings
- .77 Machine embroidery
 - Including clip spot, lappet, Schiffli, swivel (dotted swiss) embroidery
 - Class laces in 677.653

.8 Surgical gauze and cotton

Including bandages, sanitary napkins

678 Elastomers and elastomer products

Standard subdivisions are added for elastomers and elastomer products together, for elastomers alone

.2 Rubber

For rubber products, see 678.3; for properties of rubber, see 678.4; for natural rubber, see 678.62; for synthetic rubber, see 678.72

.202 84 Apparatus and equipment

Do not use for materials; class in 678.21

.202 86 Green technology (Environmental technology)

Do not use for pollution control technology, waste technology; class in 678.29

.21 Materials

For reclaimed rubber, see 678.29

.22 Mastication

.23 Compounding

Including use of accelerators, antioxidants, pigments, solvents

.24 Vulcanization

.27 Molding, extruding, calendering

.29 Reclaimed rubber and waste control

Including devulcanizing

Class here pollution control technology, waste technology

.3 Rubber products

Class elastic fiber textiles in 677.55

For natural rubber products, see 678.63; for synthetic rubber products, see 678.723

.32 Tires

.33 Overshoes

.34 Articles molded and vulcanized in presses

Including doorstops, hollow ware, hot-water bottles, tiles

.35 Extruded articles

Including inner tubes, rubber bands, weather stripping, windshield wipers

.36 Articles made by dipping, spreading, electrodeposition

Including conveyor and driving belts, hose, sheeting

.4 Properties of rubber**.5 Latexes**

For natural latexes, see 678.61; for synthetic latexes, see 678.71

[.502 84]

Apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 678.52

.52 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

.521 Materials

.522 Preliminary treatment

Including preservation, concentration, creaming, centrifuging,
preparation of latex biscuits

.524 Vulcanization

.527 Other operations

Including casting, coating, dipping, electrodepositing, molding, spreading

.53 Products

.532 Foam articles

.533 Articles made by dipping and casting

Including feeding-bottle nipples

.538 Articles made by extruding, spreading, spraying, electrodeposition

.54 Properties

.6 Natural elastomers

.61 Natural latexes

.62 Natural rubber

*For natural rubber products, see 678.63; for properties of natural
rubber, see 678.64*

.63 Natural rubber products

.64 Properties of natural rubber

.68 Chemical derivatives of natural rubber

Including cyclo and halogenated rubber, rubber hydrochloride

.7 Synthetic elastomers

.71 Synthetic latexes

- .72 Synthetic rubber and derivatives
 Standard subdivisions are added for synthetic rubber and derivatives together, for synthetic rubber alone
 Including acrylonitrile rubber (GR-A), butadiene-styrene rubber (GR-S), chloroprene rubber (GR-M), isobutylene rubber (GR-I), polybutadiene rubber, polyurethane rubber
 Class comprehensive works on polyurethanes in 668.4239
- .720 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use for auxiliary techniques and procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials for synthetic rubber; class in 678.722
- .722 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials for synthetic rubber
- .723 Synthetic rubber products
- .724 Properties of synthetic rubber
- .728 Chemical derivatives of synthetic rubber
- .73 High-styrene resins (Elastoplastics)

679 Other products of specific kinds of materials

- .4 **Products of keratinous and dentinal materials**
- .43 Ivory products
- .47 Feather products
- .6 **Products of fibers and bristles**
 Including brooms, brushes, mops
- .7 **Products of tobacco**
 See also 688.4 for tobacco substitutes
- .72 Cigars
- .73 Cigarettes

680 Manufacture of products for specific uses

Not provided for elsewhere

Class here interdisciplinary works on handicrafts

Class repairs of household equipment by members of household in 643.7. Class manufacture of a product based on a specific branch of engineering with the branch of engineering in 620, e.g., military engineering 623, manufacture of motor vehicles 629.2; except for products provided for in 681–688, class manufacture of products of a specific material with the material in 671–679, e.g., manufacture of steel pipes 672.832, but manufacture of steel toys 688.72

For artistic handicraft work, see 745.5

See Manual at 671–679 vs. 680; also at 680 vs. 745.5

SUMMARY

681	Precision instruments and other devices
682	Small forge work (Blacksmithing)
683	Hardware and household appliances
684	Furnishings and home workshops
685	Leather and fur goods, and related products
686	Printing and related activities
687	Clothing and accessories
688	Other final products, and packaging technology

681 Precision instruments and other devices

Standard subdivisions are added for precision instruments and other devices together, for precision instruments alone

SUMMARY

- | | |
|-------|---|
| 681.1 | Instruments for measuring time, counting and calculating machines and instruments |
| .2 | Testing, measuring, sensing instruments |
| .4 | Optical instruments |
| .6 | Printing, writing, duplicating machines and equipment |
| .7 | Other scientific and technological instruments, machinery, equipment |
| .8 | Musical instruments |
- .1 Instruments for measuring time, counting and calculating machines and instruments**
- For testing, measuring, sensing instruments, see 681.2*
- | | |
|--------|---|
| .11 | Instruments for measuring time |
| .111 | Ancient and primitive instruments |
| | Including hourglasses, water clocks |
| .111 2 | Sundials |
| .112 | Constituent parts (Clockwork) |
| | Including gears, escapements, bearings, regulating devices |
| .113 | Clocks |
| | Class here interdisciplinary works on clocks |
| | <i>For constituent parts, see 681.112; for pneumatic clocks, see 681.115; for electric clocks, see 681.116; for chronographs, chronoscopes, chronometers, see 681.118; for clocks considered as works of art, see 739.3</i> |
| .114 | Watches |
| | Class here interdisciplinary works on watches |
| | <i>For constituent parts, see 681.112; for chronographs, chronoscopes, chronometers, see 681.118; for watches considered as works of art, see 739.3</i> |
| .115 | Pneumatic clocks |

- .116 Electric clocks
- .118 Chronographs, chronoscopes, chronometers
Including metronomes, stopwatches, tachometers, time clocks, time and date recorders
- .14 Counting and calculating machines and instruments
Including cash registers, slide rules, sorting machines, voting machines
For computers, see 621.39
- .145 Calculators
- .2 Testing, measuring, sensing instruments**
Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
Including calorimeters
Class here testing, measuring, sensing instruments of general application in science or technology; testing, measuring, sensing instruments for nontechnological application; instruments for measuring physical quantities; electrical and electronic instruments for measuring nonelectrical and nonelectronic quantities
Class testing, measuring, sensing instruments for a specific branch of science (other than instruments for measuring physical quantities) in 681.75. Class testing, measuring, sensing instruments for a specific technological application with the manufacturing number, e.g., aircraft instrumentation 629.135, medical diagnostic equipment 681.761
For instruments for measuring electrical quantities, see 621.37; for instruments for testing and measuring electronic signals, see 621.381548; for instruments for measuring time, see 681.11
- .25 Optical testing, measuring, sensing instruments
Including polarimeters
Class here fiber optic sensors
Class optical testing, measuring, sensing instruments applied to a specific property with the property, e.g., fiber optic sensors to measure flow 681.28
For spectrosopes, see 681.414; for photometers, see 681.415
- .28 Flowmeters
- .4 Optical instruments**
- .41 Specific instruments
Including contact lenses
For component parts of specific instruments, see 681.42–681.43
- .411 Eyeglasses
- .412 Telescopes and binoculars
- .412.3 Telescopes

- .412 5 Binoculars
 Including opera glasses
 Class here field glasses
- .413 Microscopes
- .414 Spectroscopes
- .414 2–.414 6 Optical, infrared, ultraviolet spectroscopes
 Add to base number 681.414 the numbers following 535.84 in
 535.842–535.846, e.g., infrared spectroscopes 681.4142
- .414 8 Other spectroscopes
 Including magnetic resonance, microwave, radio-frequency, X-ray
 and gamma-ray spectroscopes
- .415 Photometers
- .418 Photographic equipment
 Including cameras, projectors, accessories
 Class film and other chemical photographic supplies in 661.808
 *For photometers, see 681.415; for photocopying equipment, see
 681.65*

> 681.42–681.43 Component parts

Class comprehensive works in 681.4

- .42 Lenses, prisms, mirrors
- .423 Lenses
- .428 Mirrors
- .43 Frames and other housings

.6 Printing, writing, duplicating machines and equipment

Including computer output microform (COM) devices, pens, mechanical pencils, rubber stamps

Class here comprehensive works on manufacturing of office equipment

Class facsimile recorders in 621.38235; class wood-cased pencils in 674.88; class interdisciplinary works on office equipment in 651.2

*For manufacturing a specific kind of office equipment, see the kind, e.g.,
 calculators 681.145*

- .61 Stenographic and composing machines, typewriters
- .62 Printers and printing presses
 Class here computer output printers
- .65 Photocopying equipment

- .7 Other scientific and technological instruments, machinery, equipment**
 Not provided for elsewhere
- .75 Scientific instruments and equipment**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here testing, measuring, sensing equipment for specific branches of science
 Class comprehensive works on scientific testing, measuring, sensing instruments in 681.2
- .753 Physical instruments and equipment**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including instruments with multiple applications based on physical principles, e.g., gyroscopes
 Class instruments for measuring physical quantities in 681.2
- .754 Chemical instruments and equipment**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .755 Geological instruments and equipment**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .757 Biological instruments and equipment**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .76 Technological equipment**
 Including construction, pollution control, mining, surveying equipment
 Class here instruments, machinery; testing, measuring, sensing instruments in specific branches of technology not provided for elsewhere
 Class comprehensive works on technological testing, measuring, sensing instruments in 681.2
- .760 4 Special topics of technological equipment**
- .760 41 Pressure vessels**
 Class a specific use of pressure vessels with the use, e.g., nuclear pressure vessels 621.483
- .761 Medical and health equipment**
 Standard subdivisions are added for medical and health equipment together, for medical equipment alone
 Including condoms, crutches, diagnostic equipment, exercise equipment, prosthetic devices
 Class interdisciplinary works on medical and health equipment in 610.284; class interdisciplinary works on exercise equipment in 613.710284

- .763 Agricultural and related equipment
- Standard subdivisions are added for agricultural and related equipment together, for agricultural equipment alone
- Including subsistence hunting, fishing, shooting equipment
- Class comprehensive works on commercial and sports hunting, fishing, shooting equipment in 688.79
- .763 1 Equipment for plant culture
- .763 6 Equipment for animal culture
- .766 Equipment for chemical and related technologies
- .766 4 Equipment for food and beverage technology
- .766 5 Equipment for petroleum and industrial gas technologies
- .766 6 Equipment for ceramic technology
- .766 8 Equipment for plastic and elastomer technologies
- .766 9 Equipment for metallurgy
- .767 Equipment for nonchemical manufactures
- .767 1 Equipment for metal manufactures
- .767 6 Equipment for wood and paper technologies
- .767 7 Equipment for textile and clothing technologies

.8 Musical instruments

Add to base number 681.8 the numbers following 78 in 786–788, e.g., manufacture of pianos 681.862

Class hand construction of specific instruments or groups of instruments in 786–788; class comprehensive works on hand construction in 784.1923

682 Small forge work (Blacksmithing)

.1 Horseshoeing

.4 Ironwork and hand-forged tools

Standard subdivisions are added for ironwork and hand-forged tools together, for ironwork alone

683 Hardware and household appliances

Standard subdivisions are added for hardware and household appliances together, for hardware alone

Class here comprehensive works on manufacture of hardware and building supplies

For a specific hardware or building supply product not provided for here, see the product, e.g., tools 621.9, paints 667.6

.3 Locksmithing

- .31 Bolts and latches
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .32 Locks and keys
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .34 Safes and strongboxes
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.4 Small firearms

Class here interdisciplinary works on small firearms, on gunsmithing

For military small firearms, see 623.442

- .400 1 Philosophy and theory
- .400 2 Miscellany
- [.400 288] Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class in 683.403
- .400 3–.400 9 Standard subdivisions

> **683.401–683.406 General topics of small firearms**

Class comprehensive works in 683.4

- .401 Design
- .403 Maintenance and repair
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .406 Ammunition
- .42 Rifles and shotguns
- .422 Rifles
- .426 Shotguns
- .43 Handguns
- .432 Pistols
Class here single-shot pistols
- .432 5 Automatic pistols
- .436 Revolvers

.8 Household utensils and appliances

Including tableware

For nonmetallic household utensils and appliances, see the material from which they are made, e.g., porcelain tableware 666.58, woodenware 674.88

- .802 88 Maintenance and repair
For maintenance and repair by members of household, see 643.60288
- .82 Kitchen utensils
 Including cutlery, pots, pans, pails
- .83 Electrical appliances
 Class comprehensive works on electrical equipment in 621.31042
For electrical equipment requiring special installation, see 683.88
- .88 Heavy equipment
 Electrical, gas, other equipment requiring special installation
 Including dishwashers, dryers, garbage-disposal units, ranges, stoves, washing machines, water heaters
For refrigerators and freezers, see 621.57; for heating, ventilating, air-conditioning equipment, see 697

684 Furnishings and home workshops

Standard subdivisions are added for furnishings and home workshops together, for furnishings alone

Class here home furnishings

For lighting fixtures, see 621.32

- .001–.009 Standard subdivisions
- .08 Woodworking
 Class here comprehensive works on home (amateur) workshops
For metalworking in home workshops, see 684.09; for furniture making in home workshops, see 684.1
- .082 Woodworking with hand tools
 Including woodworking with specific hand tools, e.g., planes
- .083 Woodworking with power tools
 Add to base number 684.083 the numbers following 621.9 in 621.91–621.95, e.g., routers 684.08321, power saws 684.08334
- .084 Surface finishing
- .09 Metalworking
- .1 Furniture**
 Class here home construction of furniture
- .100 1–.100 9 Standard subdivisions

-
- > 684.104–684.106 General topics of furniture
 Class comprehensive works in 684.1
- .104 Wooden furniture
 Class here cabinetmaking
- [.104 028 8] Maintenance and repair
 Do not use; class in 684.1044
- .104 2 Basic construction
- .104 3 Surface finishing
- .104 4 Maintenance and repair
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .104 42 Body restoration
- .104 43 Surface refinishing
- .105 Metal furniture
- .106 Furniture in other materials
 Including composite materials, plastics, rattan, tiles
-
- > 684.12–684.16 Specific kinds of furniture
 Class outdoor furniture in 684.18; class comprehensive works in 684.1
- .12 Upholstered furniture
 Including couches, sofas, upholstered chairs
- .13 Chairs and tables
- .132 Chairs
For upholstered chairs, see 684.12
- .135 Tables
For desks, see 684.14
- .14 Desks
- .15 Beds
 Including frames, springs, mattresses
- .16 Cabinets and built-in furniture
 Standard subdivisions are added for cabinets and built-in furniture together,
 for cabinets alone
 Including chests, china cabinets, dressers, file cabinets
 Class here furniture used for storage
See also 684.104 for cabinetmaking

- .162 Shelving
 Class here bookcases
 For built-in wooden shelves, see 694.6

- .18 Outdoor furniture
 Including garden, patio, porch furniture
 Class camping furniture in 685.53

- .3 Fabric furnishings**
 Including bedclothes, curtains, draperies, hangings, slipcovers
 Class home construction of fabric furnishings in 646.21
 For carpets and rugs, see 677.643

685 Leather and fur goods, and related products

Standard subdivisions are added for leather and fur goods and related products together, for leather goods alone

Including parchment prepared from the skin of an animal

See also 676.2845 for parchment paper made from pulp

- .1 Saddlery and harness making**
- .2 Leather and fur clothing and accessories**
 Class leather and fur footwear in 685.3; class leather and fur gloves and mittens in 685.4
- .22 Leather clothing and accessories
 Including aprons, belts, jackets, skirts, trousers
- .24 Fur clothing and accessories
 Standard subdivisions are added for fur clothing and accessories together, for fur clothing alone
 Including coats, hats, jackets, muffs, neckpieces, stoles
- .3 Footwear and related products**
 For overshoes, see 678.33; for hosiery, see 687.3
- .31 Boots and shoes
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class shoes for specific activities in 685.36; class shoes for people with disabilities in 685.38
 For wooden shoes and clogs, see 685.32
- .310 01 Philosophy and theory
- .310 02 Miscellany

- [.310 028 8] Maintenance and repair
 Do not use; class in 685.3104
- .310 03–.310 09 Standard subdivisions
- .310 2 Design
- .310 3 Construction
- .310 4 Maintenance and repair
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .32 Wooden shoes and clogs
- .36 Footwear for specific activities
 Footwear used as equipment in a specific sport relocated to the sport in 688.7
- [.361] Ice skates
 Relocated to 688.7691
- [.362] Roller skates and skateboards
 Roller skates relocated to 688.7621; Skateboards relocated to 688.7622
- [.363] Snowshoes
 Relocated to 688.7692
- [.364] Skis
 Relocated to 688.7693
- [.367] Stilts
 Relocated to 688.7
- .38 Footwear and related products for people with disabilities
 Standard subdivisions are added for footwear and related products together, for footwear alone
 Including orthopedic shoes
- .4 Gloves and mittens**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Regardless of material
- .41 Conventional gloves
- .43 Gloves and mittens for specific activities
 Including protective gloves for industry
 Gloves and mittens used as equipment in a specific sport relocated to the sport in 688.7
- .47 Conventional mittens
- .5 Luggage, handbags, camping equipment**

- .51 Luggage and handbags
 - Including briefcases, attaché cases
- .53 Camping equipment
 - Including sleeping bags, tents

686 **Printing and related activities**

Class here design and manufacture of publications, book arts

Class interdisciplinary works on the book in 002

For book illustration, see 741.64

See also 681.6 for manufacture of printing equipment

SUMMARY

- 686.1 **Invention of printing**
 - .2 **Printing**
 - .3 **Bookbinding**
 - .4 **Photocopying**

.1 **Invention of printing**

.2 **Printing**

Class here printing in the Latin alphabet

Class works on desktop publishing that emphasize typography in 686.22; class comprehensive works on printing and publishing in 070.5; class interdisciplinary works on print media in 302.232

See also 070.593 for self-publishing

.209 **History, geographic treatment, biography**

Class invention of printing in 686.1

.21 **Printing in non-Latin alphabets and characters**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here typefounding, typesetting, typefaces for non-Latin alphabets and characters

For other specific aspects of printing in non-Latin alphabets and characters, see the aspect, e.g., letterpress printing 686.2312

.218 **Greek alphabet**

.219 **Other non-Latin alphabets and characters**

Add to base number 686.219 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–99 from Table 6, e.g., Cyrillic alphabet 686.21918

.22 **Typography**

.221 **Typefounding and typesetting**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .224 Typefaces
- Design, style, specimens of letters, ornaments, other characters and devices
- Class here typefaces for the Latin alphabet
- Class typefaces for non-Latin alphabets and characters in 686.21; class typefaces for braille and other raised characters in 686.282
- .224 7 Specific typefaces and kinds of typefaces for the Latin alphabet
- Including Gothic, italic, roman type; Bodoni, Garamond, Times Roman type
- .225 Composition (Typesetting)
- [.225 028 5] Computer applications
- Do not use; class in 686.22544
- .225 2 Page design
- Including paste-up
- Class here layout
- .225 3 Hand composition
- .225 4 Machine composition
- .225 42 Composition by use of human-operated equipment
- Including linotype composition
- .225 44 Composition by use of automatic equipment
- Including phototypesetting (photocomposition)
- Class here computerized typesetting
- Unless it is redundant, add to base number 686.22544 the numbers following 00 in 004-006, e.g., personal computer programs for typesetting 686.22544536, the use of digital personal computers 686.22544416, but the use of digital computers 686.22544 (*not* 686.225444)
- [.225 5] Proofreading
- Number discontinued; class in 686.225
- .225 6 Imposition and lockup
- .23 Presswork (Impression)
- Class interdisciplinary works on use of computer printers as low-volume output devices in 004.77. Class a specific use with the use, e.g., use in typesetting 686.22544477
- For printing special graphic materials, see 686.28*
- See also 621.38235 for facsimile transmission; also 681.6 for manufacture of printing equipment*
- .230 4 Special topics of presswork

- .230 42 Color printing
- .231 Mechanical techniques
 For photomechanical techniques, see 686.232
- .231 2 Printing from type
 Class here comprehensive works on letterpress techniques
 For printing from plates, see 686.2314
- .231 4 Printing from plates
 Printing from stereotypes, electrotypes, autotypes, engraved plates,
 paper mats
 See also 686.2315 for printing from planographic plates
- .231 5 Planographic (Flat-surface)
 Class here lithography and offset (offset lithography)
 For photolithography, photo-offset, collotype, see 686.2325
- .231 6 Stencil techniques
 Including silk-screen printing
- .232 Photomechanical techniques
- .232 5 Photolithography, photo-offset, collotype (gelatin process)
 *See also 621.381531 for photolithography in manufacture of
 printed circuits (microlithography)*
- .232 7 Photoengraving (Photointaglio)
 Including line and halftone cuts, photogravure
- .233 Nonimpact techniques
 Including electrographic, electrophotographic, laser processes
 See also 686.44 for electrophotographic processes in photocopying
- .28 Printing special graphic materials
- .282 Braille and other raised characters
 Standard subdivisions are added for braille and other raised characters
 together, for braille alone
 Class comprehensive works on braille and other raised-character
 alphabets in 411
- .283 Maps
- .284 Music
- .288 Materials of direct monetary value
 Including postage stamps, securities

.3 Bookbinding

Processes and materials

.300 1–.300 9 Standard subdivisions**.302** Hand and fine binding

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.303 Specific kinds of commercial binding**.303 2** Library binding**.303 4** Edition binding**.34** Types of covers**.342** Leather**.343** Cloth and imitation leather**.344** Paper**.35** Methods of fastening

Including hand sewing, oversewing, side-sewing, wire-stitching; perfect binding and other kinds of gluing

.36 Ornamentation

Including gilding, lettering, marbling, tooling

.4 Photocopying

Class here photoduplication, interdisciplinary works on photocopying

Class facsimile transmission in 621.38235

*For a specific aspect of photocopying, see the aspect, e.g., library photocopying services 025.12**See also 681.65 for manufacture of photocopying equipment***.42** Blueprinting**.43** Microphotography

Production of microforms

Class here production of microfiche and microfilms

.44 Electrostatic and electrophotographic processes**.442** Xerography**.45** Production of photostats

687 Clothing and accessories

Standard subdivisions are added for clothing and accessories together, for clothing alone

Class here dressmaking, casual wear (sportswear)

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 687 in the number coming last, e.g., military headwear 687.4 (*not* 687.15)

Class interdisciplinary works on clothing in 391; class interdisciplinary works on clothing construction in 646.4

For leather and fur clothing, see 685.2

SUMMARY

- 687.04 General topics of clothing**
 .1 Specific kinds of garments
 .2 Undergarments
 .3 Hosiery
 .4 Headwear
 .8 Items auxiliary to clothing construction (Notions)

.04 General topics of clothing

.042 Patternmaking and grading

Standard subdivisions are added for patternmaking and grading together, for patternmaking alone

.043 Cutting

.044 Tailoring

.1 Specific kinds of garments

For footwear, see 685.3; for gloves and mittens, see 685.4; for undergarments, see 687.2; for hosiery, see 687.3; for headwear, see 687.4

.11 Miscellaneous kinds of garments

Limited to those provided for below

.112 Dresses

Use of this number for dressmaking discontinued; class in 687

.113 Suits

Class here jackets, sport coats, vests (waistcoats)

Class skirts in 687.117

Pants (trousers) relocated to 687.116

.115 Shirts, blouses, tops

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

.116 Pants (Trousers) [*formerly* 687.113]

See also 687.2 for pants (undergarments)

- .117 Skirts
- .14 Outerwear
 Class here overcoats, topcoats, raincoats; comprehensive works on coats and jackets
 For suit jackets, sport coats, see 687.113
- [.140 811] Outerwear for men
 Do not use; class in 687.141
- [.140 82] Outerwear for women
 Do not use; class in 687.142
- .140 83 Outerwear for young adults
 Do not use for outerwear for children; class in 687.143
 For outerwear for young adult men aged twenty-one and over, see 687.141; for outerwear for young adult women twenty-one and over, see 687.142
- .140 84 Outerwear for people in specific stages of adulthood
 Class outerwear for adult men regardless of age in 687.141; class outerwear for adult women regardless of age in 687.142
- .141 Outerwear for men
 Class outerwear for young adult men in 687.1408351
- .142 Outerwear for women
 Class outerwear for young adult women in 687.1408352
- .143 Outerwear for children
- [.144–147] Sweaters, wraps, specific types of outer coats
 Numbers discontinued; class in 687.14
- .15 Uniforms and symbolic garments
 Including civil and military uniforms, ceremonial and academic robes, ecclesiastical vestments
- .16 Garments for special purposes
 Including activewear (clothing for athletic and outdoor sports), costumes, evening and formal dress, maternity garments, wedding clothes
 For uniforms and symbolic garments, see 687.15
 See also 687 for casual wear (sportswear)
- .162 Protective clothing
 Including fire-resistant clothing

.165 Sleepwear and loungewear

Former heading: Nightclothes

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.19 Accessories

Including aprons, belts, cuffs, handkerchiefs, muffs, neckwear, scarves

Headscarves relocated to 687.4

Class interdisciplinary works on accessories in 391.44; class interdisciplinary works on making costume jewelry in 688.2; class interdisciplinary works on making jewelry in 739.27

For gloves and mittens, see 685.4; for handbags, see 685.51; for headwear, see 687.4

.2 Undergarments

See also 687.3 for hosiery

[.208 11] Undergarments for men

Do not use; class in 687.21

[.208 2] Undergarments for women

Do not use; class in 687.22

[.208 3] Undergarments for young people

Do not use; class in 687.23

.208 4 Undergarments for people in specific stages of adulthood

Class undergarments for adult men regardless of age in 687.21; class undergarments for adult women regardless of age in 687.22

.208 7 Undergarments for people with disabilities and illnesses

Class supporting undergarments worn for medical or health reasons in 687.25

.21 Men's undergarments

.22 Women's undergarments

Class here comprehensive works on lingerie

For women's sleepwear and loungewear, see 687.165082

.23 Children's undergarments

Class young men's undergarments in 687.21; class young women's undergarments in 687.22

.25 Supporting undergarments worn for medical or health reasons

.3 Hosiery

.4 Headwear

Including headscarves [*formerly* 687.19], helmets, protective headwear

Class here bonnets, caps, hats

For helmets as armor, see 623.441

Headwear used as equipment in a specific sport relocated to 688.7

[.408 11]

Men's headwear

Do not use; class in 687.41

[.408 2]

Women's headwear

Do not use; class in 687.42

[.408 3]

Young people's headwear

Do not use; class in 687.43

.408 4

Headwear for people in specific stages of adulthood

Class headwear for adult men regardless of age in 687.41; class headwear for adult women regardless of age in 687.42

.41

Men's headwear

.42

Women's headwear

.43

Children's headwear

Class headwear for young men in 687.41; class headwear for young women in 687.42

.8**Items auxiliary to clothing construction (Notions)**

Including buttons

Class here comprehensive works on manufacture of sewing equipment and supplies

Class interdisciplinary works on sewing equipment and supplies in 646.1

For manufacture of sewing machinery and equipment, see 681.7677. For manufacture of a specific kind of sewing supply, see the kind, e.g., thread 677.02862

688**Other final products, and packaging technology****.1****Models and miniatures**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here interdisciplinary works on models and miniatures

Class interdisciplinary works on handcrafted models and miniatures in 745.5928

For models and miniatures of a specific object, see the object, plus notation 0228 from Table 1, e.g., scale models of space stations 629.4420228

See Manual at 745.5928

.2 Costume jewelry

Class here interdisciplinary works on making costume jewelry

Class handcrafted costume jewelry in 745.5942; class interdisciplinary works on costume jewelry in 391.7; class interdisciplinary works on making jewelry in 739.27

.4 Supplies for tobacco users

Including ash trays, cigarette holders and cases, hookahs, lighters, tobacco pouches, tobacco substitutes

Class here supplies for smoking tobacco, for chewing tobacco

.42 Pipes**.5 Accessories for personal grooming**

Including combs, electric shavers, nail-care tools, razors, razor blades, tweezers

For cosmetics, see 668.55; for brushes, see 679.6

.6 Nonmotor land vehicles

Including carriages, carts, wagons, wheelbarrows

For cycles, see 629.227

See also 688.7622 for skateboards

See Manual at 629.046 vs. 388

.7 Recreational equipment

Including stilts [*formerly* 685.367]

Class here footwear used as equipment in a specific sport [*formerly* 685.36], gloves and mittens used as equipment in a specific sport [*formerly* 685.43], headwear used as equipment in a specific sport [*formerly* 687.4]

See also 681.761 for exercise equipment

.72 Toys

Class here interdisciplinary works on mass-produced and handcrafted toys

For handcrafted toys, see 745.592

.722 Dolls, puppets, marionettes**.722 1 Dolls****.722 4 Puppets and marionettes****.723 Dollhouses and furniture**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.724 Soft toys

Class stuffed dolls in 688.7221

.724 3 Teddy bears

- .725 Educational toys
Including construction toys, science sets
- .726 Novelties, ornaments, puzzles, tricks
Not provided for elsewhere
- .728 Action toys
Mechanical, electrical, electronic, others
Class scale-model action toys in 688.1

> 688.74–688.79 Equipment for sports and games

Not provided for elsewhere

Class comprehensive works in 688.7

- .74 Equipment for indoor games of skill
Add to base number 688.74 the numbers following 794 in 794.1–794.8, e.g., chessmen 688.741
- .75 Equipment for games of chance
Add to base number 688.75 the numbers following 795 in 795.1–795.4, e.g., playing cards 688.754
- .76 Equipment for outdoor sports and games
Add to base number 688.76 the numbers following 796 in 796.1–796.9, e.g., roller skates 688.7621 [*formerly* 685.362], skateboards 688.7622 [*formerly* 685.362], tennis rackets 688.76342, ice skates 688.7691 [*formerly* 685.361], baseball helmets 688.76357 [*formerly* 687.4], snowshoes 688.7692 [*formerly* 685.363], skis 688.7693 [*formerly* 685.364]; however, for camping equipment, see 685.53; for baseball caps, see 687.4
For equipment for equestrian sports and animal racing, see 688.78; for equipment for fishing, hunting, shooting, see 688.79
- .78 Equipment for equestrian sports and animal racing
Including hurdles
For saddles and harnesses, see 685.1
- .79 Equipment for fishing, hunting, shooting
Add to base number 688.79 the numbers following 799 in 799.1–799.3, e.g., artificial flies 688.79124
For small firearms, see 683.4
See also 681.763 for subsistence hunting, fishing, shooting equipment

.8 Packaging technology

Materials, equipment, techniques

Class interdisciplinary works on packaging in 658.564. Class manufacture and use of containers made of a specific material with the material, e.g., paper containers 676.3; class artistic aspects of containers with the aspect in 700, e.g., earthenware vases 738.38; class containers for a specific product with the product, e.g., beer cans 663.42

[689] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

690 Construction of buildings

Planning, analysis, engineering design, construction, destruction of habitable structures and their utilities

Class interdisciplinary works on design and construction of buildings in 720

See Manual at 624 vs. 690; also at 690 vs. 643.7

SUMMARY

690.01-.09	Standard subdivisions
.1-.8	Special topics of construction of buildings
691	Building materials
692	Auxiliary construction practices
693	Construction in specific types of materials and for specific purposes
694	Wood construction
695	Roof covering
696	Utilities
697	Heating, ventilating, air-conditioning engineering
698	Detail finishing

.01 Philosophy and theory

.02 Miscellany

.021 2 Formulas

Do not use for specifications; class in 692.3

[.022 3] Maps, plans, diagrams

Do not use; class in 692.1

.028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

.028 4 Apparatus and equipment

Do not use for materials; class in 691

- .028 6 Green technology (Environmental technology)
- Do not use for comprehensive works on environmental engineering of buildings; class in 696
- Including pollution control technology; comprehensive works on waste technology
- For water drainage, see 696.13; for chimneys and flues, see 697.8; for air quality components of air conditioning systems, see 697.9324*
- See also 696 for comprehensive works on energy engineering of buildings*
- [.028 8] Maintenance and repair
- Do not use; class in 690.24
- [.028 9] Safety measures
- Do not use; class in 690.22
- .029 Commercial miscellany
- Do not use for estimates of labor, time, materials; class in 692.5
- .03–.09 Standard subdivisions

>

690.1–690.8 Special topics of construction of buildings

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., maintenance and repair of residential buildings 690.80288 (*not* 690.24):

Specific parts of buildings	690.4
Specific types of buildings	690.5–690.8
Structural elements	690.1
General activities of buildings	690.2
Buildings by shape, buildings with atriums	690.38
Portable and temporary buildings	690.34
Special topics of buildings (without subdivision)	690.3

.1 Structural elements

Add to base number 690.1 the numbers following 721 in 721.1–721.8, e.g., auxiliary roof structures 690.15; however, for fireplaces, see 697.1; for chimneys, see 697.8

Class construction of structural elements in wood in 694

.2 General activities of buildings

Including architectural acoustics

Class interdisciplinary works on architectural acoustics in 729.29

.21 Structural analysis

Including statics, dynamics, stability, strength of buildings

- .22 Provision for safety
Engineering for safe buildings, safety during construction
- .24 Maintenance and repair
Including remodeling
For home repairs by members of household, see 643.7
See Manual at 690 vs. 643.7
- .26 Wrecking and razing
- .3 Special topics of buildings**
- .34 Portable and temporary buildings
- .342 Portable buildings
- .344 Temporary buildings
- .38 Buildings by shape, buildings with atriums
Including circular, single-story buildings
- .383 Tall buildings
- .4 Specific parts of buildings**
- Class plumbing in specific parts of buildings in 696.18
- .42 Bathrooms and lavatories
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
Class interdisciplinary works on bathrooms and lavatories in 643.52
- .43 Laundries
Class interdisciplinary works on laundries in 667.13
- .44 Kitchens
Class interdisciplinary works on kitchens in 643.3
- .5-.8 Specific types of buildings**
- Add to base number 690 the numbers following 72 in 725-728, e.g., airport terminal buildings 690.539; however, for construction of buildings for defense against military action, see 623.1; for naval facilities, see 623.64; for military air facilities, see 623.66; for port facilities, see 627.3
- .879 Mobile homes
Number built according to instructions under 690.5-690.8
See Manual at 643.29, 690.879, 728.79 vs. 629.226

691 Building materials

Class here construction properties, selection

Class construction in a specific type of material in 693

- .1 Timber**
- .12 Prevention of decay
 - Including impregnation, painting, spraying with fungicides
- .14 Prevention of termite damage
- .15 Treatment for fire resistance
- .2 Natural stones**
 - Including granite, limestone, marble, sandstone, serpentine, slate, soapstone
- .3 Concrete and artificial stones**
 - Including concrete blocks, cinder blocks
- .4 Ceramic and clay materials**
 - Including brick, terra-cotta, tile, sun-dried blocks
- .5 Masonry adhesives**
- .6 Glass**
- .7 Iron and steel (Ferrous metals)**
 - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .8 Metals**
 - Add to base number 691.8 the numbers following 669 in 669.2–669.7, e.g., aluminum 691.8722
 - For iron and steel, see 691.7*
- .9 Other building materials**
- .92 Plastics and their laminates
 - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .95 Insulating materials
 - Including asbestos, corkboard, diatomaceous earth, kapok, rock wool
- .96 Bituminous materials
 - Including asphalts, tar
- .97 Prefabricated materials
- .99 Adhesives and sealants

For masonry adhesives, see 691.5; for plastics and their laminates, see 691.92

692 Auxiliary construction practices

Class application of a specific auxiliary practice to a specific subject with the subject, e.g., construction specifications for air conditioning 697.93

.1 Plans and drawings

Interpretation and use of rough sketches, working drawings, blueprints

For detail drawings, see 692.2

.2 Detail drawings

Interpretation and use of large-scale drawings of trims, moldings, other details

.3 Construction specifications**.5 Estimates of labor, time, materials**

Class here interdisciplinary works on quantity surveying

Class estimates for a specific subject in building with the subject, plus notation 029 from Table I, e.g., estimates for air conditioning 697.93029

.8 Contracting

Provision of construction materials and services in accordance with specifications

693 Construction in specific types of materials and for specific purposes

Class comprehensive works on construction in all types of materials in 690

For selection, preservation, construction properties of building materials, see 691; for wood construction, see 694; for roofing materials, see 695

[.01–.09] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 690.01–690.09

> 693.1–693.7 Construction in specific materials

Class construction in specific materials for specific purposes in 693.8; class comprehensive works in 690

For construction in other materials, see 693.9

.1 Masonry

Including construction in natural stone

For masonry using materials other than natural stone, see 693.2–693.5

> 693.2–693.5 Masonry using materials other than natural stone

Class comprehensive works in 693.1

.2 Stabilized earth materials**.21 Bricks**

For hollow bricks, see 693.4

- .22 Sun-dried blocks
 - Including adobe, cob, pisé, tabby, tapia
- .3 **Tiles and terra-cotta**
 - For hollow tiles, see 693.4*
- .4 **Artificial stones and hollow bricks**
 - Including cinder blocks, concrete blocks, hollow tiles
- .5 **Concrete**
 - For concrete blocks, see 693.4*
 - .52 Concrete without reinforcement
 - .521 Poured concrete
 - .522 Precast concrete
 - .54 Concrete with reinforcement (Ferroconcrete)
 - .541 Poured concrete
 - .542 Prestressed concrete
 - .544 Precast concrete
- .6 **Lathing, plastering, stuccowork**
 - Including drywall construction
- .7 **Metals**
 - .71 Iron and steel (Ferrous metals)
 - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 - .72–.77 Nonferrous metals
 - Add to base number 693.7 the numbers following 669 in 669.2–669.7, e.g., tin 693.76
- .8 **Construction for specific purposes**
 - .82 Fireproof construction
 - .83 Insulated construction
 - .832 Thermal insulation
 - .834 Acoustical insulation (Soundproofing)
 - .84 Pest-resistant construction
 - .842 Termite-resistant construction
 - .844 Rodent-resistant construction
 - .85 Shock-resistant construction
 - .852 Earthquake-resistant construction

- .854 Blast-resistant construction
- .89 Waterproof, moistureproof, lightning-resistant construction
- .892 Waterproof construction
 - Class moistureproof construction in 693.893
- .893 Moistureproof construction
- .898 Lightning-resistant construction
- .9 Construction in other materials**
- .91 Ice and snow
- .92 Sandwich panels
 - Class sandwich panels in a specific substance with the substance, e.g., wood 694
- .96 Glass
- .97 Prefabricated materials
 - Class materials prefabricated in a specific substance with the substance, e.g., precast concrete 693.522
- .98 Nonrigid materials
 - Including pneumatic construction
- .99 Miscellaneous materials
 - Add to base number 693.99 the numbers following 620.19 in 620.191–620.199, e.g., plastics 693.9923; however, for nonrigid materials, see 693.98

694 Wood construction

Class here carpentry

.1 Planning, analysis, engineering design

> 694.2–694.6 Carpentry

Class comprehensive works in 694

.2 Rough carpentry (Framing)

Construction of ceilings, floors, foundations, frames, openings, partition frames, posts, roofs, sidings, walls

.6 Finish carpentry (Joinery)

On-site construction of doors, doorways; blinds, shutters, windows; balconies, porches, verandas; balustrades, rails, ramps, stairs; trims, e.g., inlays, moldings, paneling; built-in cases and shelves

Class off-site manufacture of finishing items in 680

695 Roof covering

Class wooden roofs in 694.2; class comprehensive works on roofs as structural elements in 690.15

696 Utilities

Class here comprehensive works on energy and environmental engineering of buildings

Class interior electric wiring in 621.31924; class comprehensive works on waste technology in buildings in 690.0286; class interdisciplinary works on energy for use in buildings in 333.7962

For heating, ventilating, air-conditioning engineering, see 697. For a specific aspect of energy engineering, see the aspect, e.g., thermal insulation 693.832; for a specific aspect of environmental engineering not provided for here, see the aspect, plus notation 0286 from Table 1, e.g., environmental engineering of building materials 691.0286, environmental engineering in hot water heating 697.30286

.1 Plumbing

Design and installation of water fixtures and pipes

.12 Water supply

Including intake pipes, water receiving fixtures, water-softening equipment

For water supply in specific parts of buildings, see 696.18; for hot-water supply, see 696.6

.13 Water drainage

For water drainage in specific parts of buildings, see 696.18

.18 Plumbing in specific parts of buildings

Class here water supply in specific parts of buildings, drainage in specific parts of buildings

[.180 1–.180 9] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 696.101–696.109

.182 Bathrooms and lavatories

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.183 Laundries**.184 Kitchens**

Including installation of dishwashers and garbage-disposal units

.2 Pipe fitting

Including gas pipes (gas fitting)

For water pipes, see 696.1; for steam fitting, see 696.3

.3 Steam pipes (Steam fitting)

.6 Hot-water supply

Including pipes, water heaters, water-softening equipment

697 Heating, ventilating, air-conditioning engineering

Standard subdivisions are added for heating, ventilating, air-conditioning engineering together; for heating alone

SUMMARY

- 697.001–.009** **Standard subdivisions**
.02–.07 **[Local and central heating, heating with specific sources of energy, heating equipment]**
- .1** **Heating with open fires (Radiative heating)**
 - .2** **Heating with space heaters (Convective heating)**
 - .3** **Hot-air heating**
 - .4** **Hot-water heating**
 - .5** **Steam heating**
 - .7** **Other heating methods**
 - .8** **Chimneys and flues**
 - .9** **Ventilation and air conditioning; heating, ventilation, air-conditioning in specific kinds of buildings**

[.000 1–.000 9] Standard subdivisions

Relocated to 697.001–697.009

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions [*formerly also* 697.0001–697.0009]

.001 Philosophy and theory

.002 Miscellany

.002 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

.002 84 Apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use for heating apparatus and equipment; class in 697.07

.003–.009 Standard subdivisions

.02 Local heating

Class local heating by source of heat in 697.1–697.2

.03 Central heating

Class here comprehensive works on district heating

For district heating by hot water, see 697.4; for district heating by steam, see 697.54. For a specific type of central heating, see the type in 697.3–697.7, e.g., solar heating 697.78

.04 Heating with specific sources of energy

Class here fuels

Class a specific fuel used in local heating in 697.02; class a specific fuel used in central heating in 697.03

For solar heating, see 697.78; for nuclear heating, see 697.79

.042 Coal and coke heating

- .043 Gas heating
- .044 Oil heating
- .045 Electric heating
- .07 Heating equipment
 - Including boilers, furnaces, radiators, thermostats
 - Class here heating apparatus

> **697.1–697.8 Heating**

Class heating in specific kinds of buildings in 697.95–697.98; class comprehensive works in 697

> **697.1–697.2 Local heating**

Class chimneys and flues for local heating in 697.8; class comprehensive works in 697.02

.1 Heating with open fires (Radiative heating)

Including braziers, fireplaces

Class fireplace-like stoves that have visible fires but which are convective heaters in 697.2

.2 Heating with space heaters (Convective heating)

Class comprehensive works on local heating in 697.02

.22 Stationary stoves

Class cooking stoves in 683.88

.24 Portable heaters

> **697.3–697.7 Central heating**

Class chimneys and flues for central heating in 697.8; class comprehensive works in 697.03

.3 Hot-air heating

Class radiant panel hot-air heating in 697.72

.4 Hot-water heating

Class hot-water supply in 696.6; class radiant panel hot-water heating in 697.72; class comprehensive works on district heating in 697.03

.5 Steam heating

Class steam fitting in 696.3; class radiant panel steam heating in 697.72

.500 1 Philosophy and theory

- .500 2 Miscellany
- .500 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; materials
- .500 284 Materials
- Do not use for apparatus and equipment; class in 697.507
- .500 3–.500 9 Standard subdivisions
- .507 Equipment
- Including boilers, furnaces, radiators
- Class here apparatus
- .54 District heating
- Heating a group of buildings from a central station
- Class comprehensive works on steam and hot-water district heating in 697.03
- See also 697.4 for hot-water district heating*
- .7 Other heating methods**
- .72 Radiant panel heating
- .78 Solar heating
- Class building of solar houses in 690.83704724
- .79 Nuclear heating
- .8 Chimneys and flues**
- .9 Ventilation and air conditioning; heating, ventilation, air-conditioning in specific kinds of buildings**
- .92 Ventilation
- Class ventilation in specific kinds of buildings in 697.95–697.98
- .93 Air conditioning
- Class heating in 697.1–697.8
- .931 General topics of air conditioning
- Class general topics applied to specific components in 697.932; class general topics applied to specific systems in 697.933; class general topics applied to specific types of buildings in 697.95–697.98
- .931 2 Design principles
- .931 5 Psychrometrics
- Determination and control of enclosed atmospheric environments for optimum comfort
- .931 6 Industrial and commercial applications
- Determination and control of enclosed atmospheric environment for effective operations

- .932 Components
 - Class here manufacturing
- .932 2 Cooling and heating components
 - Including cooling and heating coils, thermostats
- .932 3 Humidifying and dehumidifying components
 - Including humidistats
- .932 4 Air quality components
 - Devices for removing particulates, e.g., dust, pollen
 - Class here filters
- .932 5 Air circulation components
 - Including blowers
- .933 Systems
 - Class system components in 697.932; class systems in specific types of buildings in 697.95–697.98
- .933 2 Winter systems
- .933 3 Summer systems
- .933 4 Year-round systems
- [.935–.938] Air conditioning in specific types of buildings
 - Relocated to 697.95–697.98
- .95–.98 Air-conditioning in specific types of buildings [*formerly* 697.935–697.938]; heating, ventilation in specific types of buildings
 - Add to base number 697.9 the numbers following 72 in 725–728, e.g., heating, ventilation, air-conditioning of industrial buildings 697.954
 - Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
 - Class components of air-conditioning systems for specific types of buildings in 697.932

698 Detail finishing

Including cladding, siding, suspended ceilings

Class roof covering in 695

For lathing, plastering, stuccowork, see 693.6; for wooden moldings, paneling, inlays, see 694.6

.1 Painting

.102 Miscellany

.102 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

.102 83 Paint mixing

- [.102 88] Maintenance and repair
Do not use; class in 698.1028
- .12 Exteriors
- .14 Interiors
Class painting woodwork in 698.35
- .142 Walls
- .146 Floors
- .147 Ceilings
- .2 Calcimining and whitewashing**
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .3 Finishing woodwork**
- .32 Staining
Including graining and marbling
- .33 Polishing with wax and oil
- .34 Lacquering and varnishing
- .35 Painting
- .5 Glazing and leading windows**
- .6 Paperhanging**
- .9 Floor coverings**
Including carpets, rugs; linoleum, tiles
Class comprehensive works on floors in 690.16

[699] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

700

700 The arts

Description, critical appraisal, techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials of the fine, decorative, literary, performing, recreational arts

Class here conceptual art, fine and decorative arts, government policy on the arts, plastic arts (visual arts), visual arts

Use 700 and standard subdivisions 700.1–700.9 for artists' books, performance art covering the arts in general; use 702.81 and 709 for artists' books, performance art limited to fine and decorative arts

Class plastic arts when limited to the three-dimensional arts in 730

For book arts, see 686; for literature, see 800

SUMMARY

- 700.1–.9 Standard subdivisions of the arts
- 701–703 Standard subdivisions of fine and decorative arts
- 704 Special topics in fine and decorative arts
- 705–706 Standard subdivisions of fine and decorative arts
- 707 Education, research, related topics of fine and decorative arts
- 708 Galleries, museums, private collections of fine and decorative arts
- 709 History, geographic treatment, biography

- 710 Area planning and landscape architecture
- 711 Area planning (Civic art)
- 712 Landscape architecture (Landscape design)
- 713 Landscape architecture of traffieways
- 714 Water features in landscape architecture
- 715 Woody plants in landscape architecture
- 716 Herbaceous plants in landscape architecture
- 717 Structures in landscape architecture
- 718 Landscape design of cemeteries
- 719 Natural landscapes

- 720 Architecture
- .1–.9 Standard subdivisions and special topics of architecture
- 721 Architectural materials and structural elements
- 722 Architecture from earliest times to ca. 300
- 723 Architecture from ca. 300 to 1399
- 724 Architecture from 1400
- 725 Public structures
- 726 Buildings for religious and related purposes
- 727 Buildings for educational and research purposes
- 728 Residential and related buildings
- 729 Design and decoration of structures and accessories

- 730 **Sculpture and related arts**
 .1-.9 **Standard subdivisions of sculpture and related arts together, of sculpture alone**
- 731 Processes, forms, subjects of sculpture
 732 Sculpture from earliest times to ca. 500, sculpture of nonliterate peoples
 733 Greek, Etruscan, Roman sculpture
 734 Sculpture from ca. 500 to 1399
 735 Sculpture from 1400
 736 Carving and carvings
 737 Numismatics and sigillography
 738 Ceramic arts
 739 Art metalwork
- 740 **Graphic arts and decorative arts**
 .1-.9 **Standard subdivisions and iconography of graphic arts and decorative arts**
- 741 Drawing and drawings
 742 Perspective in drawing
 743 Drawing and drawings by subject
 745 Decorative arts
 746 Textile arts
 747 Interior decoration
 748 Glass
 749 Furniture and accessories
- 750 **Painting and paintings**
 .1-.8 **Standard subdivisions**
- 751 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, forms
 752 Color
 753 Symbolism, allegory, mythology, legend
 754 Genre paintings
 755 Religion
 757 Human figures
 758 Nature, architectural subjects and cityscapes, other specific subjects
 759 History, geographic treatment, biography
- 760 **Printmaking and prints**
 .1-.8 **Standard subdivisions**
- 761 Relief processes (Block printing)
 763 Lithographic processes (Planographic processes)
 764 Chromolithography and serigraphy
 765 Metal engraving
 766 Mezzotinting, aquatinting, related processes
 767 Etching and drypoint
 769 Prints
- 770 **Photography, computer art, cinematography, videography**
 .1-.9 **Standard subdivisions**
- 771 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
 772 Metallic salt processes
 773 Pigment processes of printing
 774 Holography
 775 Digital photography
 776 Computer art (Digital art)
 777 Cinematography and videography
 778 Specific fields and special kinds of photography
 779 Photographic images

780	Music
.000 1–.099 9	Relation of music to other subjects
.1–.9	Standard subdivisions; analytical guides, program notes; texts; treatises on music scores and recordings; performances
781	General principles and musical forms
782	Vocal music
783	Music for single voices
784	Instruments and instrumental ensembles and their music
785	Ensembles with only one instrument per part
786	Keyboard, mechanical, electrophonic, percussion instruments
787	Stringed instruments (Chordophones)
788	Wind instruments (Aerophones)
790	Recreational and performing arts
.001–.099	Standard subdivisions of recreation; recreation centers
.1–.2	[General kinds of recreational activities and the performing arts in general]
791	Public performances
792	Stage presentations
793	Indoor games and amusements
794	Indoor games of skill
795	Games of chance
796	Athletic and outdoor sports and games
797	Aquatic and air sports
798	Equestrian sports and animal racing
799	Fishing, hunting, shooting

> 700.1–700.9 Standard subdivisions of the arts

Use this standard subdivision span for material that includes two or more of the fine and decorative arts and one or more of the other arts, e.g., a work about a painter who is also a sculptor and a poet 700.92. If only one fine or decorative art and one of the other arts is involved, class in the number coming first in the schedule, e.g., a United States painter and poet 759.13

Class comprehensive works in 700

.1 Philosophy and theory of the arts

Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below

Class here effects of other topics on the arts

.103 Effects of social conditions and factors on the arts

.104 Effects of humanities on the arts

.105 Effects of science and technology on the arts

.108 Effects of other concepts on the arts

Including humor, mythology, nature, parapsychology

.2 Miscellany

.285 Computer applications

Class here computers used as a technique to support traditional techniques in the arts

Class computer art in 776

See Manual at 776 vs. 006.5–006.7

.3 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances**.4 Special topics in the arts****.41 Arts displaying specific qualities of style, mood, viewpoint**

Add to base number 700.41 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–18 from Table 3C, e.g., horror in the arts 700.4164.

Class arts dealing with specific themes and subjects regardless of quality displayed in 700.42–700.49

.42–.49 Arts dealing with specific themes and subjects

Add to base number 700.4 the numbers following —3 in notation 32–39 from Table 3C, e.g., historical themes in the arts 700.458

.5–.8 Standard subdivisions of the arts**.9 History, geographic treatment, biography of the arts****.92 Biography**

Class here the works themselves and critical appraisal and description of works of an artist or artists

See Manual at 700.92

> 701–708 Standard subdivisions of fine and decorative arts

Other than history, geographic treatment, biography

Class standard subdivisions of specific schools, styles, periods of development in 709.012–709.05; class comprehensive works in 700

701 Philosophy and theory of fine and decorative arts

Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below

Including appreciative aspects, inherent features

Class here effects of other topics on the arts

.03–.08 Special topics of philosophy and theory of fine and decorative arts

Add to base number 701.0 the numbers following 700.10 in 700.103–700.108, e.g., effects of social conditions and factors on fine and decorative arts 701.03

.1 Appreciative aspects

Do not use for systems; class in 701

Including use of audiovisual aids

See also 709 for history of the fine arts

.15 Psychological principles

Fine arts as products of creative imagination

- .17 Aesthetics
 - Class interdisciplinary works in 111.85
- .18 Criticism and appreciation
 - Class here theory, technique, history
 - Class works of critical appraisal in 709
- .8 Inherent features**
 - Including composition, decorative values, form, light, movement, space, style, symmetry, time, vision
- .82 Perspective
 - See also 742 for drawing aspects of perspective*
- .85 Color
 - See also 752 for painting aspects of color*
- .9 Methodology**
 - Do not use for psychological principles; class in 701.15

702 Miscellany of fine and decorative arts

- .8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials**
 - Notation 028 from Table 1 as modified below
 - Including testing and measurement, use of artists' models
 - Class here basic techniques and procedures
- .81 Mixed-media and composites
 - Including artists' books; performance art
 - Class finished works of mixed-media and composite art in 709; class two-dimensional mixed-media art or composites in 760
- .812 Collage
 - Class decoupage in 745.546
- .813 Montage
- .814 Assemblage
- .85 Computer applications
 - Class here computers used as a technique to support traditional techniques in fine and decorative arts
 - Class computer art in 776
 - See Manual at 776 vs. 006.5-006.7*
- .87 Techniques of reproduction, execution, identification
 - Do not use for testing and measurement; class in 702.8

- .872 Reproductions and copies
 .874 Forgeries and alterations
 .88 Maintenance and repair
 Including expertizing
 Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 702.87

.9 Commercial miscellany

Class auction and sales catalogs in which an exhibition is involved in 707.4

703 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of fine and decorative arts

704 Special topics in fine and decorative arts

> 704.03–704.08 Groups of people

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 704.03–704.08 in the number coming last, e.g., women with disabilities 704.87 (*not* 704.042)

Class description, critical appraisal, works, biography of artists as individuals in 709.2; class comprehensive works in 704

.03 Ethnic and national groups

Class people by gender or sex of a specific ethnic or national group in 704.04; class groups of miscellaneous specific groups of people of a specific ethnic or national group in 704.08; class ethnic and national groups in places where they predominate in 709.1–709.9

.030 5–.030 9 Specific ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent

Add to base number 704.03 notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., art of ethnic groups of European descent 704.0309

.031–.039 Specific ethnic and national groups

Add to base number 704.03 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., art of North American native peoples 704.0397

.04 People by gender or sex

Class groups of miscellaneous specific groups of people of a specific gender or sex in 704.08

For transgendered people, see 704.0867

.041 Men

Works specifically emphasizing male sex

.042 Women

- .08 Miscellaneous specific groups of people
 Add to base number 704.08 the numbers following —08 in notation 083–088 from Table 1, e.g., people with disabilities 704.087; however, for art dealers, see 381.457092; for nonliterate peoples, see 709.011

See Manual at 709.2 vs. 381.457092

.9 Iconography

See Manual at 704.9 and 753–758

.94 Specific subjects

A work with two or more subjects is classed with the subject that is the center of interest, e.g., cityscapes with incidental human figures 704.944 (*not* 704.942), church interiors displaying Stations of the Cross 704.9484 (*not* 704.944)

SUMMARY

704.942	Human figures
.943	Nature and still life
.944	Architectural subjects and cityscapes
.946	Symbolism and allegory
.947	Mythology and legend
.948	Religion
.949	Other specific subjects

[.940 1–.940 9] Standard subdivision

Do not use; class in 704.901–704.909

.942 Human figures

Class here portraits

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., groups of children 704.9425 (*not* 704.9426):

Erotica	704.9428
Nudes	704.9421
Specific groups of people	704.9423–704.9425
Groups of human figures	704.9426

Class symbolism of human figures in 704.946. Class human figures engaged in a specific occupation with the occupation, e.g., farmers 704.943092, doctors 704.94961092, circus clowns 704.94979133

For human figures associated with mythology and legend, see 704.947; for human figures associated with religion, see 704.948

.942 092 Biography

Artists and critics

Class works about the person portrayed in 704.942

.942 1 Nudes

Class here nudes of men [*formerly* 704.9423], nudes of women [*formerly* 704.9424], nudes of children [*formerly* 704.9425], groups of nudes [*formerly* 704.9426]

[.942 2]

Draped figures

Number discontinued; class in 704.942

>

704.942 3–704.942 5 Specific groups of people

Class comprehensive works in 704.942

.942 3

Men

Nudes of men relocated to 704.9421

.942 4

Women

Nudes of women relocated to 704.9421

.942 5

Children

Nudes of children relocated to 704.9421

.942 6

Groups of human figures

Groups of nudes relocated to 704.9421; hunters relocated to 704.94979929

.942 8

Erotica

Including pornography

.943

Nature and still life

Standard subdivisions are added for nature and still life together, for nature alone

Class here agriculture

Class symbolism of nature and still life in 704.946; class comprehensive works on science in 704.9495

For nature and still life associated with mythology and legend, see 704.947; for nature and still life associated with religion, see 704.948

.943 2

Animals

Class here pets

Add to base number 704.9432 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., eagles 704.94328942

Class symbolism of animals in 704.946

.943 4

Plants

Class symbolism of plants in 704.946

.943 43

Flowers

.943 5

Still life

.943 6

Landscapes

Add to base number 704.9436 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., landscapes of Utah 704.9436792

- .943 7 Marine scenes and seascapes
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .944 Architectural subjects and cityscapes
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
Add to base number 704.944 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., cityscapes of England 704.94442
- .946 Symbolism and allegory
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
For religious symbolism, see 704.948
- .947 Mythology and legend
Class religious mythology in 704.948
- .948 Religion
Class here religious mythology, religious symbolism
Class significance and purpose of art in religion in 203.7; class significance and purpose of art in Christianity in 246; class significance and purpose of art in non-Christian religions in 292–299
- (.948 1) (Permanently unassigned)
(Optional number used to provide local emphasis and a shorter number for a specific religion other than Christianity; prefer the number for the specific religion in 704.9489)
- .948 2 Christianity
Class here icons, santos, votive offerings
For specific Christian subjects, see 704.9484–704.9487
-
- > 704.948 4–704.948 7 Specific Christian subjects
Class comprehensive works in 704.9482
- .948 4 Biblical characters and events
For Trinity and Holy Family and its members, see 704.9485; for apostles, saints, angels, see 704.9486; for devils, see 704.9487
- .948 5 Trinity and Holy Family and its members
- .948 52 Trinity
- .948 53 Jesus Christ
- .948 55 Madonna and Child
Class here Mary without Child

- .948 56 Holy Family
 Presented as a group
 Class Jesus Christ in 704.94853; class Mary with or without Child
 in 704.94855; class Saint Joseph in 704.94863
- .948 6 Apostles, saints, angels
- .948 62 Apostles
- .948 63 Saints
 For Apostles, see 704.94862
- .948 64 Angels
- .948 7 Devils
- .948 9 Other religions
 Add to base number 704.9489 the numbers following 29 in 292–299,
 e.g., Buddhism in art 704.948943; however, for Old Testament
 characters and events, see 704.9484
 (Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to iconography
 of a specific religion, class in 704.9481, which is permanently
 unassigned)
- .949 Other specific subjects
 Add to base number 704.949 notation 001–999, e.g., hunters
 704.94979929 [*formerly* 704.9426], technological subjects 704.9496;
 however, for agriculture, see 704.943

705 Serial publications of fine and decorative arts

706 Organizations and management of fine and decorative arts

707 Education, research, related topics of fine and decorative arts

.4 Temporary and traveling collections and exhibits

Do not use for museums and permanent collections and exhibits; class in 708

Class here permanent collections on tour, temporary exhibits of a private
 collection, auction and sales catalogs in which an exhibition is involved

*For temporary in-house exhibits selected from a museum's or gallery's
 permanent collection, see 708*

708 Galleries, museums, private collections of fine and decorative arts

Do not use for groups of people; class in 704.03–704.08

General art collections

Class here annual reports dealing with acquisitions, activities, programs, projects

For temporary and traveling collections and exhibits, see 707.4

.001–.008 Standard subdivisions

.009 History and biography

Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 708.1–708.9

> 708.1–708.9 Geographic treatment

Class here guidebooks and catalogs of specific galleries, museums, private collections

Class comprehensive works in 708

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to galleries, museums, private collections of a specific country, use one of the following:

(Option A: Place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Japan 708.J [preceding 708.1])

(Option B: Class them in 708.1; in that case class galleries, museums, private collections in North America in 708.97)

.1 North America

For galleries, museums, private collections in Middle America, see 708.972

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to galleries, museums, private collections of a specific country other than United States and Canada, class them in this number; in that case class galleries, museums, private collections in North America in 708.97)

.11 Canada

Add to base number 708.11 the numbers following —71 in notation 711–719 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in British Columbia 708.111

.13–.19 United States

Add to base number 708.1 the numbers following —7 in notation 73–79 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Pennsylvania 708.148

For galleries, museums, private collections in Hawaii, see 708.9969

>

708.2–708.8 Europe

Class comprehensive works in 708.94

*For galleries, museums, private collections not provided for here, see 708.949, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Belgium 708.9493***.2 British Isles**

Class here England

.21–.28 England

Add to base number 708.2 the numbers following —42 in notation 421–428 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Manchester 708.2733

.29 Scotland, Ireland, Wales

Add to base number 708.29 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–42 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Wales 708.2929

.3–.8 Miscellaneous parts of Europe

Add to base number 708 the numbers following —4 in notation 43–48 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in France 708.4

.9 Other geographic areas

Add to base number 708.9 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., comprehensive works on galleries, museums, private collections in Islamic areas 708.91767, in European countries 708.94, in Belgium 708.9493, in Middle America 708.972, in Hawaii 708.9969

Class parts of Europe in notation 41–48 from Table 2 in 708.2–708.8

709 History, geographic treatment, biography

Development, description, critical appraisal, works

Class here finished works of experimental and mixed-media art that do not fit easily into a recognized medium

Class two-dimensional experimental and mixed-media art in 760

*See also 364.16287 for looting, plundering, theft of art as a crime; also 364.164 for destruction of art as a crime***SUMMARY**

709.01	Arts of nonliterate peoples, and earliest times to 499
.02	6th–15th centuries, 500–1499
.03	Modern period, 1500–
.04	20th century, 1900–1999
.05	21st century, 2000–2099
.1	Areas, regions, places in general
.2	Biography
.3–.9	Specific continents, countries, localities

.01 Arts of nonliterate peoples, and earliest times to 499

Notation 0901 from Table 1 as modified below

.011 Nonliterate peoples

Regardless of time or place, but limited to nonliterate peoples of the past and nonliterate peoples clearly not a part of contemporary society

.011 2 Paleolithic art

.011 3 Rock art

> 709.012–709.015 Periods of development to 499 A.D.

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality, comprehensive works on European art limited by period, school, or style

Add to each subdivision identified by † notation 01–08 from Table 1, e.g., exhibits of prehistoric art 709.012074

Class comprehensive works in 709

For European art limited to a specific location, see the location in 709.4, e.g., art of Germany 709.43

See Manual at 704.9 and 753–758; also at 709.012–709.015, 709.02–709.05 vs. 709.3–709.9

.012 †To 4000 B.C.

.013 †3999–1000 B.C.

.014 †999–1 B.C.

.015 †1st–5th centuries, 1–499 A.D.

> 709.02–709.05 Periods of development, 500–

Notation 0902–0905 from Table 1 as modified below

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality, comprehensive works on European art limited by period, school, or style

Add to each subdivision identified by * notation 01–08 from Table 1, e.g., exhibits of cubism 709.04032074

Class comprehensive works in 709

For European art limited to a specific location, see the location in 709.4, e.g., art of Germany 709.43

See Manual at 704.9 and 753–758; also at 709.012–709.015, 709.02–709.05 vs. 709.3–709.9

.02 *6th–15th centuries, 500–1499

Class here medieval art

*Add as instructed under 709.02–709.05

†Add as instructed under 709.012–709.015

- .021 *6th–12th centuries, 500–1199
- .021 2 *Early Christian art
For early Christian art before 500, see 709.015
- .021 4 *Byzantine art
For Byzantine art before 500, see 709.015
- .021 6 *Romanesque art
- .022 *13th century, 1200–1299
Class here Gothic art
For Gothic art of an earlier or later period, see the specific period, e.g., 500–1199 709.021
- .023 *14th century, 1300–1399
- .024 *15th century, 1400–1499
Class here Renaissance art
For Renaissance art of an earlier or later period, see the specific period, e.g., 16th century 709.031
- .03 *Modern period, 1500–
For 20th century, 1900–1999, see 709.04; for 21st century, 2000–2099, see 709.05
- .031 *16th century, 1500–1599
- .032 *17th century, 1600–1699
Class here baroque art
For baroque art of 18th century, see 709.033
- .033 *18th century, 1700–1799
- .033 2 *Rococo art
- .034 *19th century, 1800–1899
- .034 1 *Classical revival (Neoclassicism)
For classical revival of 18th century, see 709.033
- .034 2 *Romanticism
For romanticism of 18th century, see 709.033
- .034 3 *Naturalism and realism
For naturalism and realism of an earlier or later period, see the specific period, e.g., 18th century 709.033
- .034 4 *Impressionism
Including luminism, pleinairism

*Add as instructed under 709.02–709.05

- .034 5 *Neo-impressionism
 Including divisionism, pointillism
- .034 6 *Postimpressionism
- .034 7 *Symbolism and synthetism
- .034 8 *Kitsch (Trash)
 *For kitsch of a later period, see the period, e.g., 20th century
 709.04013*
- .034 9 *Art nouveau
 *For art nouveau of a later period, see the period, e.g., 20th
 century 709.04014*
- .04 20th century, 1900–1999
 Class here modern art
 *For 19th century, 1800–1899, see 709.034; for 21st century, 2000–2099,
 see 709.05; for computer art (Digital art), see 776*
- .040 01–.040 08 Standard subdivisions
- [.040 09] History
 Do not use; class in 709.04
- .040 1 *Art deco, kitsch, art nouveau
- .040 12 *Art deco
- .040 13 *Kitsch (Trash)
 Class comprehensive works on kitsch in 709.0348
- .040 14 *Art nouveau
 Class comprehensive works on art nouveau in 709.0349
- .040 2 *Functionalism
- .040 3 *Cubism and futurism
 Including geometric design
- .040 32 *Cubism
- .040 33 *Futurism
- .040 4 *Expressionism and fauvism
- .040 42 *Expressionism
 Class abstract expressionism in 709.04052
- .040 43 *Fauvism
- .040 5 *Abstractionism, nonobjectivity, constructivism

- .040 52 *Abstractionism
 Including abstract expressionism, geometric abstractionism,
 neoplasticism
- .040 56 *Nonobjectivity
 Class here concrete art
- .040 57 *Constructivism
- .040 58 *Minimalism
- .040 6 *Dadaism and surrealism
- .040 62 *Dadaism
- .040 63 *Surrealism
- .040 7 *Composite media and sensations
 Class techniques of composite media in 702.81
 For specific composite media, see 709.0408
- .040 71 *Pop art
- .040 72 *Optical art (Op art)
 See also 776 for computer art
- [.040 73] Kinetic art
 Number discontinued; class in 709.0407
- .040 74 *Happenings, environments, events
- .040 75 *Conceptual art
 For happenings, environments, events, see 709.04074
- .040 752 *Body art
- .040 755 *Performance art
- .040 76 *Land art (Earthworks)
- [.040 77] Structuralism
 Number discontinued; class in 709.0407
- [.040 78] Multiple art
 Number discontinued; class in 709.0407
- [.040 79] Space art
 Number discontinued; class in 709.0407
- .040 8 Specific composite media
 Class techniques of composite media in 702.81
- .040 82 *Artists' books

- .040 84 *Mail art (Correspondence art)
- .040 9 *Outsider art (Art brut)
- .041–.049 Periods
- Add to base number 709.04 the numbers following —0904 in notation
09041–09049 from Table 1, e.g., arts of 1960–1969 709.046
- Class a specific school or style in a specific period in 709.0401–709.0407
- .05 21st century, 2000–2099
- .050 01–.050 08 Standard subdivisions [*formerly* 709.0501–709.0508]
- [.050 09] History
- Do not use; class in 709.05
- [.050 1–.050 8] Standard subdivisions
- Relocated to 709.05001–709.05008
- .051 *2000–2019
- Class a specific school or style in a specific period in 709.05
- .051 1 *2000–2009
- .051 2 *2010–2019
- .1 Areas, regions, places in general**
- Class groups of people in 704.03–704.08; class art of nonliterate peoples
regardless of place in 709.011
- .2 Biography**
- Class here description, critical appraisal, works of artists not limited to or
chiefly identified with a specific form, e.g., painting, or group of forms, e.g.,
graphic arts
- See Manual at 709.2 vs. 381.457092*
- .22 Collected biography
- Class works of more than one artist in the same geographic area not limited
by continent, country, locality in 709.1; class works of more than one artist
in the same continent, country, locality in 709.3–709.9
- .3–.9 Specific continents, countries, localities**
- Class here art of specific periods, e.g., art of 1800–1899 in Germany
709.4309034
- Class groups of people in 704.03–704.08; class art of nonliterate peoples
regardless of place in 709.011. Class comprehensive works on European art
of specific periods with the period in 709.01–709.05 (*not* 709.4), e.g., art of
1800–1899 in Europe 709.034 (*not* 709.409034)
- See Manual at 709.012–709.015, 709.02–709.05 vs. 709.3–709.9*

*Add as instructed under 709.02–709.05

710 Area planning and landscape architecture

Former heading: Civic and landscape art

Class comprehensive works on area planning, landscape architecture, and architecture in 720

SUMMARY

711	Area planning (Civic art)
712	Landscape architecture (Landscape design)
713	Landscape architecture of trafficways
714	Water features in landscape architecture
715	Woody plants in landscape architecture
716	Herbaceous plants in landscape architecture
717	Structures in landscape architecture
718	Landscape design of cemeteries
719	Natural landscapes

711 Area planning (Civic art)

Design of physical environment for public welfare, convenience, pleasure

Class here plans

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., planning of pedestrian malls in business districts 711.5522 (*not* 711.74):

Specific kinds of areas	711.5
Specific elements	711.6–711.8
Specific levels	711.2–711.4
Procedural and social aspects	711.1

Class comprehensive works on area planning and architecture in 720; class interdisciplinary works on area planning in 307.12

SUMMARY

711.1	Procedural and social aspects
.2	International and national planning
.3	Interstate, state, provincial, county planning
.4	Local community planning (City planning)
.5	Specific kinds of areas
.6	Structural elements
.7	Transportation facilities
.8	Nontransportation utilities

.1 Procedural and social aspects

.12 Professional practice and technical procedures

Including collection of data, preparation and presentation of plans and models

.13 Social factors affecting planning

.14 Economic factors affecting planning

-
- > **711.2–711.4 Specific levels**
 Class comprehensive works in 711
- .2 **International and national planning**
- .3 **Interstate, state, provincial, county planning**
 For urban counties, see 711.4; for metropolitan areas, see 711.43
- .4 **Local community planning (City planning)**
 Class here urban renewal (conservation, rehabilitation, redevelopment)
 Class interdisciplinary works on city planning in 307.1216; class
 interdisciplinary works on urban renewal in 307.3416
 For urban renewal of specific kinds of areas, see 711.5
- .409 3–.409 9 Specific continents, countries, localities
 Class here specific types of plans for specific cities
-
- > **711.41–711.45 Specific types of plans**
 Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more
 subdivisions of 711.4 in the number coming last, e.g., plans for small cities in
 cold climates 711.43 (*not* 711.42)
 Class comprehensive works in 711.4
- .41 *Plans based on street patterns
 Including gridiron, radial, studied irregularity plans
- .42 *Plans based on environment
 Including plans based on topography and climate
- .43 *Plans based on size
 Including plans for villages, small and large cities, metropolitan areas
- .45 *Plans based on function
 Including new towns; plans for cities serving primarily as governmental,
 industrial, residential centers
- .5 **Specific kinds of areas**
 Class here planning for urban renewal (conservation, rehabilitation,
 redevelopment) of specific kinds of areas
 Class interdisciplinary works on urban renewal in 307.3416

*Do not use notation 093–099 from Table I for specific cities; class in 711.4093–711.4099

- .55 Functional areas
 Class here plazas, squares
 For religious centers, see 711.56; for cultural and educational areas, see 711.57; for residential areas, see 711.58; for parking areas, see 711.73
- .551 Civic, administrative, governmental areas
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .552 Commercial and industrial areas
 Class planning of transportation facilities in 711.7
- .552 2 Commercial areas
 Class here business districts, shopping centers
- .552 4 Industrial areas
 Class here industrial parks
- .554 Agricultural areas
- .555 Medical centers
- .556 Prison and reformatory areas
- .557 Hotel and restaurant areas
 Including trailer camps for temporary residents
- .558 Recreational areas
 Including parks, playgrounds, theatrical and performing arts centers
- .56 Religious centers
- .57 Cultural and educational areas
 Including areas for libraries, museums, colleges and universities
 Class theatrical and performing arts centers in 711.558
- .58 Residential areas
 Urban, suburban, rural areas
 Including apartment-house districts, trailer parks for long-term residents
 For hotel areas, trailer camps for temporary residents, see 711.557; for housing renewal, see 711.59
- .59 Housing renewal
 Class interdisciplinary works on housing renewal in 307.34

> 711.6–711.8 Specific elements

Class comprehensive works in 711.6

.6 Structural elements

Adaptation to site and use

Class here comprehensive works on specific elements

For utilities, see 711.7

.7 Transportation facilities

Class here comprehensive works on utilities

For nontransportation utilities, see 711.8

.72 Bicycle transportation facilities

.73 Motor vehicle transportation facilities

Including motorcycle transportation facilities, parking areas

.74 Pedestrian transportation facilities

Including pedestrian malls

.75 Railroad transportation facilities

Including rapid transit facilities

.76 Marine transportation facilities

.78 Air transportation facilities

.8 Nontransportation utilities

Including water, gas, electricity transmission and supply; communication lines; sanitation and flood control facilities

712 Landscape architecture (Landscape design)

Class engineering aspects of landscape architecture in 624; class comprehensive works on landscape architecture and architecture in 720

For specific elements in landscape architecture, see 714–717

.01 Philosophy and theory

Class aesthetics, composition, style in 712.2

> 712.2–712.3 General considerations

Class general considerations of design of specific kinds of land tracts in 712.5–712.7; class comprehensive works in 712

.2 Principles

Including aesthetics, composition, effect, style

.3 Professional practice and technical procedures

Including collection of data, preparation and presentation of plans and models, supervision of operations

> **712.5–712.7 Specific kinds of land tracts**

Class comprehensive works in 712

For trafficways, see 713; for cemeteries, see 718; for natural landscapes, see 719

.5 Public parks and grounds

Class here amusement parks, commons, fairgrounds, zoological and botanical gardens; comprehensive works on parks

For private parks, see 712.6; for parks of public reserved lands, see 719.3

.6 Private parks and grounds

Class here estates, home gardens, penthouse gardens, yards

.7 Semiprivate and institutional grounds

Class here grounds of churches, country clubs, hospitals, hotels, industrial plants, schools

713 Landscape architecture of trafficways

See also 625.77 for planting and cultivation of roadside vegetation

> **714–717 Specific elements in landscape architecture**

Class comprehensive works in 712

714 Water features in landscape architecture

Including cascades, fountains

Class here natural and artificial pools

Class comprehensive works on fountains in 731.724

715 Woody plants in landscape architecture

Cultivated for flowers or for other attributes

Class here comprehensive works on plants in landscape architecture

Class comprehensive works on plants cultivated for their flowers in landscape architecture in 716

For herbaceous plants in landscape architecture, see 716

See also 635.97 for planting and cultivation of woody plants

.1 Topiary work

715.2–715.4 Specific kinds of plants

Class topiary work on specific kinds of plants in 715.1; class comprehensive works in 715

.2 **Trees**

.3 **Shrubs**

.4 **Vines**

716 Herbaceous plants in landscape architecture

Cultivated for flowers or for other attributes

Including ground cover

Class here comprehensive works on plants cultivated for their flowers in landscape architecture

For woody plants cultivated for their flowers, see 715

See also 635.9 for planting and cultivation of herbaceous plants

717 Structures in landscape architecture

Relationship of buildings, terraces, fences, gates, steps, ornamental accessories to other elements of landscape architecture

Including pedestrian facilities, street furniture

718 Landscape design of cemeteries

.8 **National cemeteries**

719 Natural landscapes

Class natural water features in 714

.3 **Reserved lands**

.32 **Public parks and natural monuments**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.33 **Forest and water-supply reserves**

.36 **Wildlife reserves**

720 Architecture

Class here architectural structure; comprehensive works on architecture, area planning, and landscape architecture; on architecture and area planning; on architecture and landscape architecture; on architecture and structural engineering; interdisciplinary works on design and construction of buildings

For structural engineering, see 624.1; for engineering design and construction of buildings, see 690; for area planning and landscape architecture, see 710

SUMMARY

720.1--9	Standard subdivisions and special topics of architecture
721	Architectural materials and structural elements
722	Architecture from earliest times to ca. 300
723	Architecture from ca. 300 to 1399
724	Architecture from 1400
725	Public structures
726	Buildings for religious and related purposes
727	Buildings for educational and research purposes
728	Residential and related buildings
729	Design and decoration of structures and accessories

.1 Philosophy and theory [*formerly also 721.01*]

Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below

.103--.108 Special topics of philosophy and theory

Add to base number 720.10 the numbers following 700.10 in 700.103--700.108, e.g., effects of social conditions and factors on architecture 720.103

.2 Miscellany [*formerly also 721.02*]

.22 Illustrations, models, miniatures

Class architectural drawing in 720.284

.222 Pictures and related illustrations

Class here architectural drawings

Add to base number 720.222 notation 1--9 from Table 2, e.g., architectural drawings from England 720.22242

Class drawings in the vertical plane, e.g., elevations, in 729.1; class drawings in the horizontal plane, e.g., floor plans in 729.2. Class architectural drawings for one structure or a specific type of structure with the structure in 725--728, plus notation 0222 from table under 721--729, e.g., architectural drawings of palaces 728.820222

.28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment

Including site planning

Green technology (environmental technology) relocated to 720.47; waste technology relocated to 720.475; architectural materials relocated to 721.04

.284 Architectural drawing

Do not use for apparatus and equipment; class in 720.28. Do not use for materials; class in 721.04

Class drawings, illustrations, models in 720.22

.286 Remodeling

Do not use for green technology; class in 720.47

- .288 Maintenance and repair
 Class here conservation, preservation, restoration
 Class interdisciplinary works on conservation, preservation, restoration in 363.69
See Manual at 930–990: Historic preservation
- .3 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances [formerly also 721.03]**
- .4 Special topics of architecture**
 Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., temporary circular buildings 720.48 (*not* 720.444):
- | | |
|--|--------|
| Architecture and the environment | 720.47 |
| Buildings by shape, buildings with atriums | 720.48 |
| Multiple-purpose buildings | 720.49 |
| Portable and temporary buildings | 720.44 |
- .44 Portable and temporary buildings
- .442 Portable buildings
- .444 Temporary buildings
- .47 Architecture and the environment [*formerly also* 721.0467]
 Including pollution control technology
 Class here green technology (environmental technology) [*formerly* 720.28], sustainable architecture
- .472 Energy resources
 Class here energy conservation
- .472 4 Use of solar energy
For solar heating, see 697.78; for daylighting, see 729.28
- .473 Earth-sheltered buildings
 Class here underground architecture
- .475 Waste technology [*formerly* 720.28]
- .48 Buildings by shape, buildings with atriums [*both formerly also* 721.042]
 Including circular, single-story buildings
- .483 Tall buildings
 Class here skyscrapers
- .49 Multiple-purpose buildings [*formerly also* 721.0469]
 Class a multiple-purpose building with one primary purpose with the single-purpose buildings of that type, e.g., an apartment building with a floor of commercial space 728.314
- .5–.8 Standard subdivisions [formerly also 721.05–721.08]**

.9 History, geographic treatment, biography [formerly also 721.09]

Class here architectural aspects of historic buildings, schools and styles limited to a specific country or locality

Class architectural drawings in 720.222; class comprehensive works on specific schools and styles not limited to a specific country or locality in 722–724

See Manual at 913–919: Historic sites and buildings; also at 930–990: Historic preservation

[.901–.905] Historical periods

Do not use; class in 722–724

[.93] Ancient world

Do not use; class in 722

.95 Asia

Class here Buddhist, Oriental architecture

Class Buddhist architecture of a national style with the style, e.g., Japanese Buddhist architecture 720.952

.954 India and neighboring south Asian countries

Class here Hindu, Jain architecture

> 721–729 Specific aspects of architecture

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

01 Philosophy and theory

Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below

0103–0108 Special topics

Add to 010 the numbers following 700.10 in 700.103–700.108, e.g., effects of social conditions and factors on architecture 0103

02 Miscellany

0222 Pictures and related illustrations

Class here architectural drawings

Add to 0222 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., architectural drawings from England 022242

028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

Notation 028 from Table 1 as modified below

0286 Remodeling

Do not use for green technology; class in 047

03 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

04 Special topics

Add to 04 the numbers following 720.4 in 720.44–720.49, e.g., energy conservation 0472

05–08 Standard subdivisions

09 History, geographic treatment, biography.

Class architectural drawings in 0222

See Manual at 913–919: Historic sites and buildings; also at 930–990: Historic preservation

Class comprehensive works in 720

721 Architectural materials and structural elements

Use of this number for architectural structure discontinued; class in 720

- [.01] Philosophy and theory
 - Relocated to 720.1
- [.02] Miscellany
 - Relocated to 720.2
- [.03] Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances
 - Relocated to 720.3
- .04 Architectural materials [*formerly also* 720.28]
 - For engineering design and construction in specific materials, see 693*
- .040 1–.040 9 Standard subdivisions [*formerly* 721.04401–721.04409]
 - Relocated to 720.48
- [.042] Buildings by shape, buildings with atriums
 - Relocated to 720.48
- .044 Specific materials
 - [.044 01–.044 09] Standard subdivisions
 - Relocated to 721.0401–721.0409
 - .044 1–.044 6 Masonry
 - Add to base number 721.044 the numbers following 693 in 693.1–693.6, e.g., architectural construction in reinforced concrete 721.04454
 - .044 7 Metals
 - Add to base number 721.0447 the numbers following 669 in 669.1–669.7, e.g., architectural construction in aluminum 721.0447722
 - .044 8 Wood
 - .044 9 Other materials
 - Add to base number 721.0449 the numbers following 693.9 in 693.91–693.99, e.g., architectural construction in glass 721.04496
- [.046] Architecture and the environment, multiple-purpose buildings
 - Provision discontinued because without meaning in context
- [.046 7] Architecture and the environment
 - Relocated to 720.47
- [.046 9] Multiple-purpose buildings
 - Relocated to 720.49
- [.05–.08] Standard subdivisions
 - Relocated to 720.5–720.8

[.09] History, geographic treatment, biography

Relocated to 720.9

> **721.1–721.8 Structural elements**

Class here decoration; interdisciplinary works on design and construction

Class decoration of structural elements in specific mediums in 729.4–729.8;
class comprehensive works in 721

For engineering design and construction, see 690.1

.1 Foundations

.2 Walls

Including footings, entablatures; colonnades, partitions; bearing and retaining walls

See also 725.96 for free-standing walls

.3 Columnar constructions

Including abutments, colonnettes, columns, pedestals, piers, pilasters, posts

For colonnades, entablatures, see 721.2

.36 Architectural orders

.4 Curved constructions and details

.41 Arcades and arches

For groined arches, see 721.44

See also 725.96 for free-standing arches

.43 Vaults

For specific types of vaults, see 721.44–721.45

721.44–721.45 Specific types of vaults

Class comprehensive works in 721.43

.44 Groined vaults

Including groined arches

.45 Other types of vaults

Including expanding, fan, rib, tunnel vaults

.46 Domes

Class cupolated roofs in 721.5

.48 Niches

.5 Roofs and roof structures

Standard subdivisions are added for roofs and roof structures together, for roofs alone

Including dormers, gables; cornices, pediments; cupolas, pinnacles, spires, towers; chimneys, skylights

.6 Floors**.7 Ceilings****.8 Other elements**

Including balustrades, fastenings, fireplaces

.82 Openings

Class here blinds

.822 Doors and doorways

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.823 Windows

Class windows as parts of roof structures in 721.5

.83 Means of vertical access

Including ramps

.832 Stairs

Including escalators

.833 Elevators**.84 Semi-enclosed and uncovered spaces**

Former heading: Extensions

Including balconies, courtyards, decks, patios, porches, verandas

For arcades, see 721.41; for decks and patios of residential buildings, see 728.93

>

722–724 Architectural schools and styles

Class architects of specific schools and styles not limited to a specific type of structure in 720.92; class details of construction of specific schools and styles in 721; class specific types of structures regardless of school or style in 725–728; class design and decoration of structures of specific schools and styles in 729; class comprehensive works, schools and styles from ca. 300 limited to a specific country or locality in 720.9

722**Architecture from earliest times to ca. 300**

.1 *Ancient Chinese, Japanese, Korean architecture

Class here ancient Oriental architecture

For ancient south and southeast Asian architecture, see 722.4; for ancient Middle Eastern architecture, see 722.5

.11 *Ancient Chinese architecture

Class ancient Tibetan architecture in 722.4

.12 *Ancient Japanese architecture**.13 *Ancient Korean architecture****.2 *Ancient Egyptian architecture****.3 *Ancient Semitic architecture**

Class comprehensive works on Semitic architecture in 720.8992

.31 *Phoenician architecture

Class here architecture of Tyre, ancient Sidon

For colonial Phoenician, see 722.32

.32 *Colonial Phoenician architecture

Including architecture of Carthage, Utica, ancient Cyprus

.33 *Ancient Palestinian architecture

Including ancient Israelite, Judean, Jewish architecture

.4 *Ancient south and southeast Asian architecture**.44 *Ancient Indian architecture****.5 *Ancient Middle Eastern architecture**

For ancient Egyptian architecture, see 722.2; for ancient Semitic architecture, see 722.3; for ancient Aegean architecture, see 722.61

.51 *Mesopotamian architecture**.52 *Ancient Persian architecture****.6 *Ancient western architecture**

For Roman architecture, see 722.7; for Greek (Hellenic) architecture, see 722.8; for other ancient western architecture, see 722.9

.61 *Aegean, Minoan, Mycenaean architecture

Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

.62 *Etruscan architecture**.7 *Roman architecture**

.709 37 Architecture of Italian Peninsula and adjacent territories
 Class architecture of Roman empire in 722.7

.8 *Greek (Hellenic) architecture

Class here comprehensive works on Greek and Roman architecture

For Roman architecture, see 722.7

.809 38 Architecture of Greece

Class architecture of Hellenistic world in 722.8

.9 *Other ancient western architecture

723 †Architecture from ca. 300 to 1399

Class here medieval architecture

.1 †Early Christian architecture

.2 †Byzantine architecture

.3 †Saracenic architecture

Class here Moorish architecture

For Mudéjar architecture, see 720.9460902

.4 †Romanesque and Norman architecture

.5 †Gothic architecture

724 †Architecture from 1400

Class here modern architecture

.1 †1400–1800

Class here colonial styles

For colonial styles of a later period, see the period, e.g., 1800–1899 724.5

.12 †1400–1499

Class here Renaissance architecture

For Renaissance architecture of an earlier or later period, see the period, e.g., 1500–1599 724.14

.14 †1500–1599

.16 †1600–1699

Class here comprehensive works on baroque architecture

For baroque architecture of 1700–1799, see 724.19

*Add as instructed under 721–729

†Do not use notation 09 from Table 1; class architecture limited to a specific country or locality in 720.9, biography in 720.92

.19 †1700–1799

Class here Georgian, rococo architecture

.2 †**Classical revival architecture**

Class here neoclassical architecture

.22 †Roman revival architecture

.23 †Greek revival architecture

.3 †**Gothic revival architecture**

.5 †**1800–1899**

Class here eclecticism, revivals, Victorian architecture

For classical revival architecture, see 724.2; for gothic revival architecture, see 724.3. For eclecticism and revivals of another specific period, see the period, e.g., 1700–1799 724.19

.52 †Italianate revivals

Including Renaissance revival, Romanesque revival architecture

.6 †**1900–1999**

Including art nouveau, expressionism, functionalism, international style

.7 †**2000–**

> 725–728 Specific types of structures

Class here development of architectural schools and styles, comprehensive works on specific structures and their interior design and decorations, interdisciplinary works on design and construction

Class comprehensive works in 720. Class structures rehabilitated to a single new use with the new use, e.g., warehouses converted into apartments 728.314; class structures rehabilitated to multiple new uses with the old use, e.g., warehouses converted into retail stores and apartments 725.35

For structural engineering, see 624.1; for engineering design and construction of specific types of habitable structures, see 690.5–690.8; for interior decoration, see 747

725 *Public structures

For public structures used primarily for religious and related purposes, see 726; for public structures used primarily for educational and research purposes, see 727; for public structures used primarily for residential and related purposes, see 728

*Add as instructed under 721–729

†Do not use notation 09 from Table 1; class architecture limited to a specific country or locality in 720.9, biography in 720.92

SUMMARY

- 725.1 **Government buildings**
- .2 **Commercial and communications buildings**
- .3 **Transportation, storage, agricultural buildings**
- .4 **Industrial buildings**
- .5 **Welfare and health buildings**
- .6 **Correctional institutions**
- .7 **Refreshment facilities and park structures**
- .8 **Recreation buildings**
- .9 **Other public structures**

- .1 ***Government buildings**
 - Class here international government, civic center buildings
- .11 ***Legislative buildings**
 - Class here capitols
- .12 ***Executive buildings**
 - Class here buildings containing branches of executive department
- .13 ***Local government buildings**
 - Regardless of specific kind of local jurisdiction
- .14 ***Customs buildings**
- .15 ***Court, record, archive buildings**
 - Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .16 ***Post offices**
- .17 ***Official residences**
 - Including embassy, legation, consulate buildings
 - Class here executive mansions, palaces of rulers
- .18 ***Military and police buildings**
 - Including armories, arsenals, barracks, castles, fortresses, forts
 - Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 - Class engineering of forts and fortresses in 623.1; class comprehensive works on castles in 728.81
- .19 ***Fire stations**
- .2 ***Commercial and communications buildings**
 - Subdivisions are added for commercial and communications buildings together, for commercial buildings alone
 - For refreshment facilities, see 725.7*

- .21 *Retail trade buildings
 Class here bazaars, shopping malls, shops, stores
- .23 *Office and communications buildings
 Including medical office buildings and clinics, radio and television buildings
 and towers
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .24 *Financial institutions
 For exchanges, see 725.25
- .25 *Exchanges
 Including board of trade, chamber of commerce buildings, stock and
 commodity exchange
- .3 ***Transportation, storage, agricultural buildings**
 Subdivisions are added for transportation, storage, agricultural buildings
 together; for transportation buildings alone
- .31 *Railroad and rapid transit stations
 Class here passenger stations
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 For railroad freight stations, see 725.32
- .32 *Railroad freight stations
- .33 *Railroad and rapid transit buildings
 Including roundhouses
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 For railroad and rapid transit stations, see 725.31
- .34 *Marine transportation facilities
 Including docks, piers
 Class engineering of naval facilities in 623.64; class engineering of harbors,
 ports, roadsteads in 627.2
 See also 725.4 for shipyards
- .35 *Warehouses
 Class here comprehensive works on storage buildings
 *For a specific kind of storage building other than warehouse, see the
 kind, e.g., storage elevators 725.36*
- .36 *Storage elevators

- .37 ***Agricultural buildings**
 Including comprehensive works on greenhouses [*formerly* 728.924];
 shearing sheds
 Class here comprehensive works on agricultural structures [*formerly*
 728.92], farm buildings
 For storage elevators, see 725.36; for farmhouses, see 728.6; for
 agricultural buildings associated with residential buildings, see 728.92
- .372 ***Barns and sheds**
 Class here comprehensive works on barns
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class shearing sheds in 725.37
 For barns and sheds associated with residential buildings, see
 728.922
- .38 ***Motor vehicle transportation buildings**
 Including bus terminals, filling stations, garages, parking facilities
- .39 ***Air transportation buildings**
 Including air terminals, hangars
 Class engineering of military air facilities in 623.66
- .4 ***Industrial buildings**
 Including factories, mills, plants, shipyards
- .5 ***Welfare and health buildings**
 Subdivisions are added for welfare and health buildings together, for welfare
 buildings alone
- .51 ***General hospital and sanatorium buildings**
 Class here comprehensive works on health buildings
 For a specific kind of health building not provided for here, see the kind,
 e.g., medical office buildings and clinics 725.23, children's hospital
 buildings 725.57
- .52 ***Mental health facility buildings**
 Class here psychiatric hospital buildings
- .53 ***Buildings of institutions for people with mental disabilities**
- .54 ***Buildings of institutions for people with physical disabilities**
- .55 ***Buildings of institutions for poor people**
 Class buildings of institutions for poor people in late adulthood in 725.56
- .56 ***Buildings of institutions for people in late adulthood**

- .57 *Child welfare institutions and children's hospital buildings
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .59 Other types of welfare buildings
- .592 *Veterinary hospitals and shelters
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .594 *Veterans' homes
- .597 *Morgues and crematories
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .6 *Correctional institutions**
 Class here prison and reformatory buildings
- .7 *Refreshment facilities and park structures**
- .71 *Eating places
 Class here restaurants
- .72 *Drinking places
 Class here bars, pubs, taverns
- .73 *Bathhouses and saunas
 Class here comprehensive works on public and domestic bathhouses and saunas
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 For domestic bathhouses and saunas, see 728.96
- .74 *Swimming pools
 Class here comprehensive works on public and domestic swimming pools
 For domestic swimming pools, see 728.962
- .76 *Amusement park buildings and casinos
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .8 Recreation buildings**
 For refreshment facilities and park structures, see 725.7
- .804 General categories of recreation buildings
- .804 2 *Multiple-purpose complexes
 Class here cultural centers
 Class community centers for adult education in 727.9
- .804 3 *Sports complexes (Sports centers, Sports pavilions)

- .81 *Concert and music halls
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 For opera houses, see 725.822
- .82 *Buildings for shows and spectacles
- .822 *Theaters and opera houses
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .823 *Motion picture theaters (Cinemas)
- .827 *Buildings for outdoor performances and for athletic and outdoor
 sports and games
 Including grandstands
 Class here amphitheaters, astrodomes, stadiums
 Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
 For racetrack buildings, see 725.89
- .83 *Auditoriums
 Class here performing arts centers
 *For concert and music halls, see 725.81; for theaters and opera houses,
 see 725.822*
- .84 *Buildings for indoor games
 Including bowling alleys; pool halls; halls for card games, checkers, chess
 For gymnasiums, see 725.85
- .85 *Athletic club buildings and gymnasiums
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .86 *Dance halls and rinks
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .87 *Boathouses and recreation pier buildings
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .88 *Riding-club buildings
- .89 *Racetrack buildings
- .9 **Other public structures**
 Including fountains with little or no sculptural decoration
 Class comprehensive works on fountains in 731.724
- .91 *Convention centers
 Class here exhibition buildings

- .94 ***Memorial buildings**
 Class memorial buildings for a specific purpose with the purpose, e.g.,
 memorial library buildings 727.8
- .96 **Arches, gateways, walls**
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
 *See also 721.2 for walls as structural elements; also 721 for arches as
 structural elements*
- .97 ***Towers**
 Including bell, clock towers
 See also 726.2 for minarets; also 726.597 for church towers
- .98 **Bridges, tunnels, moats**
 Class engineering of moats in 623.31; class engineering of tunnels in
 624.193; class engineering of bridges in 624.2

726 *Buildings for religious and related purposes

SUMMARY

- 726.1 **Temples and shrines**
 .2 **Mosques and minarets**
 .3 **Synagogues and Jewish temples**
 .4 **Accessory houses of worship**
 .5 **Buildings associated with Christianity**
 .6 **Cathedrals**
 .7 **Monastic buildings**
 .8 **Mortuary chapels and tombs**
 .9 **Other buildings for religious and related purposes**

> **726.1–726.3 Buildings associated with non-Christian religions**

Class comprehensive works in 726. Class a specific kind of building for religious purposes associated with a specific religion with the building, e.g., Buddhist monasteries 726.7843

See also 726.5 for buildings associated with Christianity

.1 *Temples and shrines

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.12--.19 Temples and shrines of a specific non-Christian religion

Add to base number 726.1 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g., Buddhist temples and shrines 726.143; however, for mosques and minarets, see 726.2; for synagogues and Jewish temples, see 726.3

.2 *Mosques and minarets

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

*Add as instructed under 721–729

.3 *Synagogues and Jewish temples

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.4 *Accessory houses of worship

For all religions

Including chapels, parish houses, Sunday school buildings; comprehensive works on baptistries

Class Christian chapels in 726.5

For baptistries as a part of church buildings, see 726.596

See also 726.9 for residential parish houses

.5 *Buildings associated with Christianity

Class here Christian chapels; church buildings

Class side chapels in 726.595

For mortuary chapels, see 726.8. For a specific kind of building not provided for here, see the building, e.g., cathedrals 726.6, Franciscan monasteries 726.773

.51 Design, decoration, construction of structural elements

Add to base number 726.51 the numbers following 721 in 721.1–721.8, e.g., design, decoration, construction of church vaulting 726.5143

Class decoration of structural elements in specific mediums in 726.524–726.528

.52 Decoration in specific mediums, built-in church furniture, design and decoration of parts**.524–.528 Decoration in specific mediums**

Add to base number 726.52 the numbers following 729 in 729.4–729.8, e.g., decoration in relief 726.525

Class decorations of built-in church furniture in 726.529. Class decoration in a specific medium not in an architectural context with the medium, e.g., sculpture 730

.529 Built-in church furniture

Class built-in church furniture in a specific medium not in an architectural context with the medium, e.g., carved pew ends 731.54

.529 1 Sacramental furniture

Including altars, baptismal fonts, confessionals, tabernacles

.529 2 Rostral furniture

Including lecterns, prayer desks, pulpits

- .529 3 Seats and canopies
 Including baldachins, bishops' thrones, choir stalls, pews
- .529 6 Screens and railings
 Including altar and rood screens, altar and chancel railings, reredoses
- .529 7 Organ cases
- .529 8 Lighting fixtures
- .58 Buildings of specific denominations
 Add to base number 726.58 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g.,
 Anglican church buildings 726.583; however, for geographic treatment of
 buildings of specific denominations, see 726.509
 Class specific parts of church buildings of specific denominations in 726.59
- .59 Parts
 Class design and construction of parts in 726.51; class design and decoration
 of parts in 726.52
- .591 Entrances and approaches
- .592 Naves and transepts
- .593 Chancels, choirs, sanctuaries, choir lofts, pulpit platforms
- .594 Clerestories
- .595 Side chapels
 Class chapels as separate buildings in 726.5
- .596 Sacristies and baptistries
 Class comprehensive works on baptistries in 726.4
- .597 Towers and steeples
- .6 ***Cathedrals**
 For details and parts of cathedrals, see 726.51–726.59
- .62 Cathedrals of Eastern churches
 For Orthodox cathedrals, see 726.63
- .620 9 History and biography
 Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 726.609
- .63 Orthodox cathedrals
- .630 9 History and biography
 Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 726.609
- .64 Roman Catholic cathedrals

- .640 9 History and biography
 Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 726.609
- .65 Anglican cathedrals
- .650 9 History and biography
 Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 726.609
- .69 *Accessory structures
 Including cathedral cloisters, chapter houses
 Comprehensive works on cloisters relocated to 726.796
- .7 *Monastic buildings**
 Class here abbeys, convents, friaries, monasteries, priories
 Class monastic churches either as a place of public worship or as a separate church building in 726.5
- .77 Monastic buildings of specific Christian orders
- [.770 1–.770 9] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 726.701–726.709
- .771–.779 Subdivisions of monastic buildings of specific Christian orders
 Add to base number 726.77 the numbers following 271 in 271.1–271.9, e.g., Franciscan monasteries 726.773; however, for geographic treatment of buildings of specific orders, see 726.709
- .78 Monastic buildings of orders of other religions
 Add to base number 726.78 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g., Buddhist monasteries 726.7843
- .79 Parts and accessory structures
 Including cells, refectories
 Class monastic libraries in 727.8
- .796 Cloisters
 Class here comprehensive works on cloisters [*formerly* 726.69]
 For cathedral cloisters, see 726.69; for collegiate cloisters, see 727.38
- .8 *Mortuary chapels and tombs**
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .9 Other buildings for religious and related purposes**
 Including episcopal palaces, missions, parsonages, buildings of religious associations, buildings housing roadside shrines

727 *Buildings for educational and research purposes

Class here school buildings

Subdivisions are added for buildings for educational and research purposes together, for buildings for educational purposes alone

727.1–727.3 Buildings for education at specific levels

Class professional and technical school buildings at a specific level in 727.4; class comprehensive works in 727

For buildings for adult education, see 727.9

.1 *Primary school buildings**.2 *Secondary school buildings****.3 *College and university buildings**

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class specialized buildings of colleges and universities in 727.4–727.8

.38 Accessory structures

Including dining halls, dormitories, student unions

.4 Professional and technical school buildings

.400 01–.400 09 Standard subdivisions

.400 1–.499 9 Specific types of professional and technical school buildings

Add to base number 727.4 notation 001–999, e.g., law school buildings 727.434

.5 Research buildings

Class here laboratory, observatory buildings

.500 01–.500 09 Standard subdivisions

.500 1–.599 9 Specific types of research buildings

Add to base number 727.5 notation 001–999, e.g., conservatories (botanical research buildings) 727.558 [*formerly* 728.924], physics laboratories 727.553

.6 Museum buildings

.600 01–.600 09 Standard subdivisions

.600 1–.699 9 Specific types of museum buildings

Add to base number 727.6 notation 001–999, e.g., science museum buildings 727.65; however, for art museum buildings, see 727.7

.7 *Art museum and gallery buildings

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.8 *Library buildings**.82 *General libraries**

.820 9 History and biography

Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 727.809

.821–.828 Specific kinds of general libraries

Add to base number 727.82 the numbers following 027 in 027.1–027.8, e.g., public library buildings 727.824; then add further as instructed under 721–729, e.g., energy conservation in public library buildings 727.8240472; however, for geographic treatment, see 727.809; for branch libraries, see 727.84

.83 *Libraries devoted to specific subjects

.830 9 History and biography

Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 727.809

.84 *Branch libraries

.840 9 History and biography

Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 727.809

.9 Other buildings for educational and research purposes

Including community centers for adult education, learned society buildings

728 *Residential and related buildings

Class here domestic architecture, conventional housing

Subdivisions are added for residential and related buildings together, for residential buildings alone

For official residences, see 725.17; for episcopal palaces, parsonages, see 726.9; for residential educational buildings, see 727.1–727.3

.1 *Low-cost housing

Dwellings designed along simple lines to reduce construction costs

Class specific types of low-cost housing in 728.3–728.7

.3 Specific kinds of conventional housing

[.301–.309] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 728.01–728.09

.31 *Multiple dwellings

- .312 *Duplex houses and row houses
 Class here double houses, semi-detached houses, terrace houses,
 townhouses
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .314 *Apartment houses
 Including apartment hotels, tenements
- .37 *Separate houses
 Class here cottages
 *For farmhouses, see 728.6; for vacation houses, see 728.72; for large
 and elaborate private dwellings, see 728.8*
- .372 *Multistory houses
- .373 *Single-story houses
 Class here bungalows, ranch and split-level houses

> **728.4–728.7 Special-purpose housing**

 Class comprehensive works in 728

- .4 ***Club houses**
 Country, city, fraternal clubs
 Class a type of club house not provided for here with the type, e.g., racetrack
 club houses 725.89
- .5 ***Hotels and motels**
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 For apartment hotels, see 728.314
- .6 ***Farmhouses**
 Class here farm cottages
 Class comprehensive works on farm buildings in 725.37
- .7 ***Vacation houses, cabins, hunting lodges, houseboats, mobile homes**
- .72 *Vacation houses
- .73 *Cabins
 Class vacation cabins in 728.72
- .78 *Houseboats

- .79 *Mobile homes
 Including campers, trailers
 For houseboats, see 728.78
 See Manual at 643.29, 690.879, 728.79 vs. 629.226
- .8 ***Large and elaborate private dwellings**
 Class here chateaux, manor houses, mansions, plantation houses, villas
- .81 *Castles
 Fortified residences
 Class here comprehensive works on architecture of castles
 For castles as military structures, see 725.18
- .82 *Palaces
 Residences of nobility
 Class fortified palaces in 728.81
 See also 725.17 for palaces of rulers; also 726.9 for episcopal palaces
- .9 ***Miscellaneous structures associated with residential buildings**
 Including gatehouses
- .92 *Agricultural structures associated with residential buildings
 For farmhouses, see 728.6
 Comprehensive works on agricultural structures relocated to 725.37
- .922 *Barns and sheds
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .924 *Greenhouses
 Class here conservatories
 Comprehensive works on greenhouses relocated to 725.37;
 conservatories (botanical research buildings) relocated to 727.558
- .927 *Birdhouses
 Class here aviaries
- .93 *Decks and patios
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .96 Swimming pools and related structures
 Including bathhouses, saunas
 Class comprehensive works on bathhouses and saunas in 725.73

.962 *Swimming pools
 Class comprehensive works on swimming pools in 725.74

.98 *Garages

729 **Design and decoration of structures and accessories**

Class here interior architecture (the art or practice of planning and supervising the design and execution of architectural interiors and their furnishings)

Class design and decoration of structures and accessories of specific types of buildings in 725–728

For interior decoration, see 747

See Manual at 729

> **729.1–729.2 Design in specific planes**

Class design of structural elements in specific planes in 721.1–721.8; class comprehensive works in 729. Class architectural drawings for one structure or a specific type of structure with the structure in 725–728, plus notation 0222 from table under 721–729, e.g., architectural drawings of palaces 728.820222

.1 Design in vertical plane

Including facades

Class here elevations, sections

.102 22 Pictures and related illustrations

Do not use for architectural drawings; class in 729.1

.11 Composition

.13 Proportion

.19 Inscriptions and lettering

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.2 Design in horizontal plane

Class here modular design; floor plans

Class architectural plans as a set of drawings for a project in 720.222

.202 22 Pictures and related illustrations

Do not use for architectural drawings; class in 729.2

.23 Proportion

.24 *Interior arrangement

.25 *Lines of interior communication

- .28 Lighting
 Including daylighting
- .29 Acoustics

> **729.4–729.8 Decoration in specific mediums**

Class comprehensive works in 729. Class decoration in a specific medium not in an architectural context with the medium, e.g., sculpture 730

- .4 **Decoration in paint**
 As an adjunct to architecture
- .5 **Decoration in relief**
 Including carved and sculptured decoration and ornament, Gothic tracery
- .6 **Decoration in veneer and incrustation**
 Use of wood, stone, metal, enamel in architectural decoration
- .7 **Decoration in mosaic**
 Class comprehensive works on mosaics in 738.5
- .8 **Decoration in ornamental glass**

730 Sculpture and related arts

Standard subdivisions are added for sculpture and related arts together, for sculpture alone

Class here plastic arts

Class plastic arts covering all visual arts in 700

SUMMARY

- 730.1–.9 **Standard subdivisions of sculpture and related arts together, of sculpture alone**
- 731 **Processes, forms, subjects of sculpture**
- 732 **Sculpture from earliest times to ca. 500, sculpture of nonliterate peoples**
- 733 **Greek, Etruscan, Roman sculpture**
- 734 **Sculpture from ca. 500 to 1399**
- 735 **Sculpture from 1400**
- 736 **Carving and carvings**
- 737 **Numismatics and sigillography**
- 738 **Ceramic arts**
- 739 **Art metalwork**

[.01] Philosophy and theory of plastic arts

 Relocated to 730.1

[.02] Miscellany of plastic arts

 Relocated to 730.2

- [.03–.08] Standard subdivisions of plastic arts
Relocated to 730.3–730.8
- [.09] Standard subdivisions of plastic arts
Relocated to 730.9
- .1 Philosophy and theory of sculpture and related arts together, of sculpture alone**
Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below
Class here philosophy and theory of plastic arts [*formerly* 730.01]
- .11 Appreciative aspects
Do not use for systems; class in 730.1
Class psychological principles in 730.19
- .117 Aesthetics
- .118 Criticism and appreciation
Theory, technique, history
Class works of critical appraisal in 730.9
- .18 Inherent features
Including color, composition, decorative values, form, movement, space, style, symmetry, vision
- .2 Miscellany of sculpture and related arts together, of sculpture alone**
Class here miscellany of plastic arts [*formerly* 730.02]
- .28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials of sculpture and related arts
Notation 028 from Table 1 as modified below
Do not use for auxiliary techniques and procedures of sculpture alone; class in 731.028
Class here basic techniques and procedures, techniques of two or more of the plastic arts, e.g., firing of clays in sculpture and ceramics
- .284 Apparatus, equipment, materials of sculpture and related arts
Do not use for materials for sculpture alone; class in 731.2. Do not use for apparatus and equipment for sculpture alone; class in 731.3
- .3–.8 Standard subdivisions of sculpture and related arts together, of sculpture alone**
Class here standard subdivisions of plastic arts [*formerly* 730.03–730.08]

.9 History, geographic treatment, biography of sculpture and related arts together, of sculpture alone

Class here standard subdivisions of plastic arts [*formerly* 730.09], schools and styles limited to a specific country or locality

Class sculpture of nonliterate peoples regardless of time or place in 732.2; class comprehensive works on specific schools and styles of sculpture not limited to country or locality in 732-735

.901-.905 Historical periods of sculpture and related arts

Do not use for sculpture alone; class in 732-735

.92 Biography

Class here description and critical appraisal of sculptors or plastic artists and their works regardless of process, representation, style or school, period, place; sculptors who also work in the other plastic arts

.922 Collected biography

Including works of sculptors or plastic artists from several geographic areas

Class works of more than one sculptor or plastic artist in the same geographic area, region, place in general (*not* limited by continent, country, locality) in 730.91

.922 3 Ancient world

Class here works of more than one plastic artist

Class works of more than one sculptor in 732-733

.922 4-.922 9 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Class works of more than one sculptor or plastic artist in 730.94-730.99

.93 Ancient world

Do not use for sculpture alone; class in 732-733

.95 Asia

Class here Buddhist, Oriental sculpture

For Buddhist sculpture in an area not provided for here, see the area, e.g., Buddhist sculpture in Hawaii 730.9969

.954 India and neighboring south Asian countries

Class here Hindu, Jain sculpture

For Hindu sculpture in an area not provided for here, see the area, e.g., Hindu sculpture in Indonesia 730.9598

>

731-735 Sculpture

Class comprehensive works in 730

See Manual at 731-735 vs. 736-739

731 Processes, forms, subjects of sculpture

Class processes, forms, subjects of specific periods and by specific schools in 732–735

.028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures

Class comprehensive works on basic and auxiliary techniques and procedures in 731.4

[.028 4] Apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use for materials; class in 731.2. Do not use for apparatus and equipment; class in 731.3

[.028 8] Maintenance and repair

Do not use; class in 731.48

.092 Biography

Do not use for individual sculptors; class in 730.92

> 731.2–731.4 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class forms employing techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials in 731.5; class subjects employing techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials in 731.8; class comprehensive works in 731.4

.2 *Materials

Including ceramic materials, found objects, metals, paper, papier-mâché, plastics, rope, stone, textiles, wax, wire, wood

Class use of materials in specific techniques in 731.4

.3 *Apparatus and equipment

Including tools, machines, accessories

Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 731.4

.4 *Techniques and procedures

Class here comprehensive works on techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials together

For auxiliary techniques and procedures, see 731.028; for materials, see 731.2; for apparatus and equipment, see 731.3

.41 *Direct-metal sculpture

Including beating, bending, cutting, hammering, shaping, soldering, welding metals (including pipe and wire)

Class art metalwork in 739

.42 *Modeling

In clay, wax, other plastic materials with and without armatures

*Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for individual sculptors; class in 730.92

- .43 ***Molding**
 Preparation of molds and models
 Class use of molds in 731.45
- .45 ***Casting**
 Including sand casting
- .452 ***Cement and plaster casting**
- .453 ***Plastics casting**
- .456 ***Casting in bronze**
 Including lost-wax casting
 Class here casting in metals
 For casting in metals other than bronze, see 731.457
- .457 ***Casting in metals other than bronze**
 Class comprehensive works on casting in metals in 731.456
- .46 ***Carving and chiseling techniques in sculpture**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .462 ***Sculpturing in wood**
- .463 ***Sculpturing in stone**
- .47 ***Firing and baking**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including firing and baking clay models for molding
 Class techniques of firing and baking in ceramics in 738.143
- .48 ***Maintenance and repair**
 Class here conservation, preservation, restoration
- .5 *Forms**
 Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works not limited by
 time or place
 For sculpture in the round, see 731.7
- .54 ***Sculpture in relief**
 Class iconography of sculpture in relief in 731.8
- .542 ***Portals and doors**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .549 ***Monumental reliefs**
 For monumental brasses, see 739.522

*Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for individual sculptors; class in 730.92

.55 *Mobiles and stabiles

.7 *Sculpture in the round

Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works

Class iconography of sculpture in the round in 731.8

.72 *Decorative sculpture

Including garden sculpture, sculptured vases and urns

.724 *Fountains

Class here comprehensive works on fountains

*For fountains as a water feature in landscape architecture, see 714;
for public fountains with little or no sculptural decoration, see 725.9;
for tabletop and indoor fountains, see 745.5946*

.74 *Busts

.75 *Masks

.76 *Monuments

For monumental brasses, see 739.522

.77 *Totem poles

.8 *Iconography

Development, description, critical appraisal, works not limited by time or place

.81 *Equestrian sculpture

.82-.89 Other specific subjects

Add to base number 731.8 the numbers following 704.94 in
704.942-704.949, e.g., mythology and legend 731.87; however, for
individual sculptors, see 730.92; for busts, see 731.74; for masks, see 731.75

> **732-735 Schools and styles of sculpture**

Class comprehensive works in 730.9

732 Sculpture from earliest times to ca. 500, sculpture of nonliterate peoples

[.09] History, geographic treatment, biography

Do not use for biography; class in 730.92. Do not use for history and geographic treatment; class in 732

.2 †Sculpture of nonliterate peoples

Regardless of time or place

*Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for individual sculptors; class in 730.92

†Do not use notation 092 from Table 1; class biography in 730.92

- .22 †Paleolithic sculpture
 .23 †Rock art (sculpture)

> **732.3–732.9 Ancient sculpture**

Class comprehensive works in 732

- .3 †**Ancient Palestinian sculpture**
 Including Israelite, Judean, Jewish sculpture
 .4 †**Ancient south and southeast Asian sculpture**
 .44 †Ancient Indian sculpture
 .5 †**Mesopotamian and ancient Persian sculpture**
 .6 †**Ancient British, Celtic, Germanic, Iberian, Slavic sculpture**
 .7 †**Ancient Oriental sculpture**

For ancient Oriental sculpture of a specific place not provided for here, see the place, e.g., ancient Indian sculpture 732.44

- .71 †Ancient Chinese sculpture
 .72 †Ancient Japanese sculpture
 .73 †Ancient Korean sculpture
 .8 †**Ancient Egyptian sculpture**
 .9 **Sculpture of other ancient areas**

Add to base number 732.9 the numbers following —39 in notation 392–398 from Table 2, e.g., Phoenician sculpture 732.944; however, for biography, see 730.92; for ancient sculpture of Greek Archipelago, see 733.309391

For Greek, Etruscan, Roman sculpture, see 733

733 †Greek, Etruscan, Roman sculpture

- .3 †**Greek (Hellenic) sculpture**
 Class comprehensive works on Greek and Roman sculpture in 733
 .309 38 Sculpture of Greece
 Class sculpture of Hellenistic world in 733.3
 .4 †**Etruscan sculpture**
 .5 †**Roman sculpture**
 .509 37 Sculpture of Italian Peninsula and adjacent territories
 Class sculpture of Roman Empire in 733.5

†Do not use notation 092 from Table 1; class biography in 730.92

734 *Sculpture from ca. 500 to 1399

Class here medieval sculpture

.2 *Styles

.22 *Early Christian and Byzantine sculpture

.222 *Early Christian sculpture

.224 *Byzantine sculpture

.24 *Romanesque sculpture

.25 *Gothic sculpture

735 *Sculpture from 1400

Class here modern sculpture

.2 Specific periods

.21 *1400–1799

Including baroque, Renaissance sculpture

.22 *1800–1899

Including classical revival sculpture, romanticism, realism

.23 *1900–1999

.230 4 Schools and styles

Add to base number 735.2304 the numbers following 709.040 in 709.0401–709.0407, e.g., abstractionism in sculpture 735.230452; however, for assemblages, constructions, sound sculpture, land art, mixed media, composites, see 709.04; for geographic treatment, see 730.9; for biography, see 730.92

.231–.239 Periods

Add to base number 735.23 the numbers following —0904 in notation 09041–09049 from Table 1, e.g., sculpture of 1960–1969 735.236; however, for geographic treatment, see 730.9; for biography, see 730.92

.24 *2000–2099

> 736–739 Other plastic arts

Processes and products

Class comprehensive works in 730. Class a plastic art not provided for here with the art in 745–749, e.g., textile arts 746

See also 731–735 for sculpture

See Manual at 731–735 vs. 736–739

*Do not use notation 09 from Table 1; class geographic treatment in 730.9, biography in 730.92

736 Carving and carvings

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.2 Precious and semiprecious stones (Glyptics)

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class engraved seals, stamps, signets in 737.6; class setting of precious and semiprecious stones in 739.27

.202 8 Lapidary work

Do not use for auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials; class in 736.202

Including cutting, polishing, engraving gems

.22 Specific forms

Class carving in specific materials regardless of form in 736.23–736.28

For scarabs, see 736.20932

.222 Cameos

.223 Intaglios

.224 Figurines

> 736.23–736.28 Specific stones

Class comprehensive works in 736.2

.23 Diamonds

.24 Jade

See also 731–735 for jade sculpture

.25 Sapphires

.28 Obsidian

.4 Wood

Including butter prints and molds, whittling

See also 731–735 for wood sculpture; also 745.51 for wood handicrafts

.5 Stone

Including lettering, inscriptions, designs

Class here effigial and sepulchral slabs

See also 731–735 for stone sculpture

.6 Ivory, bone, horn, shell, amber

- .62 Ivory
 Class netsukes of ivory in 736.68; class scrimshaws of ivory in 736.69

See also 731–735 for ivory sculpture

- .68 Netsukes
 .69 Scrimshaws

.7 Ornamental fans

Class fans of a specific material with the material, e.g., ivory fans 736.62

.9 Other materials

- .93 Wax
 .94 Ice and snow
 .95 Soap
 .96 Sand sculpture
 Class here sandcastles
 .98 Paper cutting and folding
 .980 952 Paper cutting and folding of Japan
For origami, see 736.982
 .982 Origami
 .984 Silhouettes

Class comprehensive works on drawing and cutting silhouettes in 741.7

737 Numismatics and sigillography

Standard subdivisions are added for numismatics and sigillography together, for numismatics alone

For paper money, see 769.55

.2 Medals and related objects

- .22 Medals
 Class here medallions
 .222 Commemorative medals
 .223 Civilian and military medals
 Including decorations, orders
 .224 Religious medals
 .23 Amulets and talismans
 .24 Buttons and pins

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .242 Political buttons and pins
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
Class here campaign buttons and pins
- .243 Sports buttons and pins
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .3 Counters and tokens**
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .4 Coins**
Class here counterfeit coins
- .409 3--409 9 Specific continents and localities
Do not use for specific countries; class in 737.49
- .43 Gold coins
- .430 93--430 99 Specific continents and localities
Do not use for specific countries; class in 737.49
- .49 Coins of specific countries
By place of origin
Add to base number 737.49 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., Roman coins minted in Egypt 737.4932
- .6 Engraved seals, signets, stamps**
Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
Class here sigillography
Class interdisciplinary works on sigillography in 929.9

738**Ceramic arts**

Class here pottery

Use 738 for pottery covering porcelain and earthenware or porcelain and stoneware. Use 738.3 for pottery limited to earthenware or stoneware. Because porcelain, which was invented in China, did not reach other parts of Asia until the 9th century and Europe before the 17th century, ancient pottery of a place other than China was either earthenware or stoneware and is classed in 738.309, e.g., pottery of ancient Italy 738.30937, Aztec pottery 738.09720902

Class ceramic sculpture in 731-735

For glass, see 748

SUMMARY

- 738.01--.09 **Standard subdivisions**
- .1 **Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials**
- .2 **Porcelain**
- .3 **Earthenware and stoneware**
- .4 **Enamels**
- .5 **Mosaics**
- .6 **Ornamental bricks and tiles**
- .8 **Other products**
- .028 **Auxiliary techniques and procedures**
 Class comprehensive works on techniques and procedures in 738.14
- [.028 4] **Apparatus, equipment, materials**
 Do not use for materials; class in 738.12. Do not use for apparatus and equipment; class in 738.13
- [.028 8] **Maintenance and repair**
 Do not use; class in 738.18
- .09 **History, geographic treatment, biography**
 Class here brands of pottery
- .092 **Biography**
 Regardless of material or product
 Class here ceramic artists
 For enamellers, see 738.4092; for mosaicists, see 738.5092
- .1 **Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials**
 Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials of specific products in 738.4–738.8
- .12 **Materials**
 Including clays, e.g., kaolin; color materials
 Class use of materials in specific techniques in 738.14
- .127 **Glazes**
- .13 **Apparatus and equipment**
 Including potter's wheels
 Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 738.14
- .136 **Kilns**
- .14 **Techniques and procedures**
 For auxiliary techniques and procedures, see 738.028; for decorative treatment, see 738.15; for conservation, preservation, restoration, see 738.18
- .142 **Modeling and casting**

- .143 Firing
 Before and after glazing
- .144 Glazing
- .15 Decorative treatment
 Including sgraffito decoration, slip tracing, transfer painting, underglaze and
 overglaze painting
 For glazing, see 738.144
- .18 Maintenance and repair
 Including expertizing
 Class here conservation, preservation, restoration

> **738.2–738.8 Products**

Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works
 Class comprehensive works in 738

.2 Porcelain

Class comprehensive works on porcelain, earthenware, stoneware in 738

For specialized porcelain products, see 738.4–738.8

- [.202 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use for auxiliary techniques and procedures; class in 738.028
- [.202 84] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use for materials; class in 738.12. Do not use for apparatus
 and equipment; class in 738.13
- .209 History and geographic treatment of porcelain
 Class here brands
- [.209 2] Biography
 Do not use; class in 738.092
- .27 Specific types and varieties of porcelain
 Including blue and white transfer ware
- [.270 1–.270 8] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 738.201–738.208
- [.270 9] History, geographic treatment, biography
 Do not use for history and geographic treatment; class in 738.209. Do
 not use for biography; class in 738.092

- .28 **Tableware and vessels**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class tableware and vessels of specific types or varieties in 738.27
- .280 9 History
 Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 738.209
- [.280 92] Biography
 Do not use; class in 738.092
- .3 Earthenware and stoneware**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Use 738 for pottery covering porcelain and earthenware or porcelain and stoneware. Use 738.3 for pottery limited to earthenware or stoneware. Because porcelain, which was invented in China, did not reach other parts of Asia until the 9th century and Europe before the 17th century, ancient pottery of a place other than China was either earthenware or stoneware and is classed in 738.309, e.g., pottery of ancient Italy 738.30937, Aztec pottery 738.09720902
 For specific earthenware and stoneware products, see 738.4–738.8
- [.302 8] Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use for auxiliary techniques and procedures; class in 738.028
- [.302 84] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use for materials; class in 738.12. Do not use for apparatus and equipment; class in 738.13
- .309 History and geographic treatment
 Class here brands
- [.309 2] Biography
 Do not use; class in 738.092
- .309 3 Ancient world
 For ancient and classical Middle Eastern and western vessels, see 738.382
- .37 **Specific types and varieties of earthenware and stoneware**
 Including delftware, faience
- [.370 1–.370 8] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 738.301–738.308
- [.370 9] History, geographic treatment, biography
 Do not use for history and geographic treatment; class in 738.309. Do not use for biography; class in 738.092
- .372 Majolica

- .372 09 History
Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 738.309
- [.372 092] Biography
Do not use; class in 738.092
- .38 Tableware and vessels
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
Class tableware and vessels of specific types and varieties in 738.37
- .380 9 History
Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 738.309. Do not use for biography; class in 738.092
- .382 Middle Eastern and western vessels
Standard subdivisions are added for a specific type of vessel, e.g., ancient Egyptian vases 738.3820932
Ancient and classical
- [.382 092] Biography
Do not use; class in 738.092

>

738.4–738.8 Specific products and techniques of making them

Class ceramic sculpture in 731–735; class comprehensive works on porcelain products in 738.28; class comprehensive works on earthenware and stoneware products in 738.38; class comprehensive works in 738

For porcelain tableware and vessels, see 738.28; for earthenware and stoneware tableware and vessels, see 738.38

.4 Enamels

Including basse-taille, champlevé, ronde bosse

For nielloing, see 739.15; for jewelry, see 739.27; for enameling glass, see 748.6

.42 Cloisonné**.46 Surface-painted enamels****.5 Mosaics**

Class here mosaic painting, comprehensive works on mosaics in all materials

For mosaics of a specific material not provided for here, see the material, e.g., mosaic glass 748.5

.52 Mosaics used with architecture

Including floors, pavements, walls; fixed screens and panels

.56 Mosaics applied to portable objects

Including mosaic jewelry, ornaments, ornamental objects, movable panels

.6 Ornamental bricks and tiles

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.8 Other products

Including braziers, candlesticks, lamps, lighting fixtures, stoves

.82 Figurines

Including figure groups, animals, plants

See also 738.83 for dolls

.83 Dolls

Class comprehensive works on handicrafting dolls in 745.59221

739 Art metalwork

For numismatics, see 737

SUMMARY**739.028****Auxiliary techniques and procedures**

- .1 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials**
- .2 Work in precious metals**
- .3 Clocks and watches**
- .4 Ironwork**
- .5 Work in metals other than iron**
- .7 Arms and armor**

.028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures

Class comprehensive works on techniques and procedures in 739.14

[.028 4] Apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use for materials; class in 739.12. Do not use for apparatus and equipment; class in 739.13

.1 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials for a specific kind of metalwork with the kind, e.g., goldsmithing 739.22028

.12 Materials

Class use of materials in specific techniques in 739.14

.13 Apparatus and equipment

Including tools, machines, accessories

Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 739.14

.14 Techniques and procedures

Including bending, casting, drawing, forging, rolling, shaping metals by hammering and beating (repoussé work), stamping, welding

For auxiliary techniques and procedures, see 739.028; for decorative treatment, see 739.15

- .15 Decorative treatment
 Including chasing, damascening, nielloing, painting, patinating
- .2 Work in precious metals**
 Class clocks and watches in precious metals in 739.3
- .209 2 Biography
 Use 739.2092 for goldsmiths who work in gold and other materials, especially silver. Use 739.22092 for goldsmiths who work in gold alone
-
- > 739.22–739.24 Work in specific metals
 Class jewelry in specific metals in 739.227; class comprehensive works in 739.2
- .22 Goldsmithing
 Class comprehensive works on goldsmithing and silversmithing in 739.2
- .220 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
 Class here comprehensive works on techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials together
 Class comprehensive works on basic and auxiliary techniques and procedures in 739.224
- [.220 284] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use for materials; class in 739.222. Do not use for apparatus and equipment; class in 739.223
- .220 9 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .220 92 Biography
 Use 739.2092 for goldsmiths who work in gold and other materials, especially silver. Use 739.22092 for goldsmiths who work in gold alone
- .222–.225 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
 Add to base number 739.22 the numbers following 739.1 in 739.12–739.15, e.g., decorative treatment 739.225; however, for history, geographic treatment, biography, see 739.2209
 Class techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials for specific products in 739.228; class comprehensive works in 739.22028
- .228 *Products
 Gold and gold-plate
- .228 2 *Religious articles

*Do not use notation 09 from Table 1; class in 739.209

- .228 3 *Tableware
 Including flatware, hollow ware
 Class tableware for religious use in 739.2282
- .228 4 *Receptacles
 Including boxes, loving cups, vases
 Class religious receptacles in 739.2282
- .23 Silversmithing
- .230 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
 Class here comprehensive works on techniques, procedures,
 apparatus, equipment, materials together
 Class comprehensive works on basic and auxiliary techniques and
 procedures in 739.234
- [.230 284] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use for materials; class in 739.232. Do not use for
 apparatus and equipment; class in 739.233
- .232–238 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials; products
 Add to base number 739.23 the numbers following 739.22 in
 739.222–739.228, e.g., silver tableware 739.2383
- .24 Platinumwork
- .27 Jewelry
 Design of settings, mounting gems, repair work
 Class here interdisciplinary works on making fine and costume jewelry
 Class interdisciplinary works on jewelry in 391.7; class interdisciplinary
 works on making costume jewelry in 688.2
 *For carving precious and semiprecious stones, see 736.2; for making
 handcrafted costume jewelry, see 745.5942. For jewelry made with
 little or no precious metal, see the specific material other than metal
 elsewhere in 700, e.g., mosaic jewelry 738.56, glass bead necklaces
 748.85*
- .270 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
 Class here comprehensive works on techniques, procedures,
 apparatus, equipment, materials together
 Class comprehensive works on basic and auxiliary techniques and
 procedures in 739.274
- [.270 284] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use for materials; class in 739.272. Do not use for
 apparatus and equipment; class in 739.273

*Do not use notation 09 from Table 1; class in 739.209

- .272-.275 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
 Add to base number 739.27 the numbers following 739.1 in
 739.12-739.15, e.g., decorative treatment 739.275
 Class techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials for specific products in
 739.278; class comprehensive works in 739.27028
- .278 Products
 Including belt buckles, shoe buckles, watch fobs
- .278 2 Finger rings
- .3 Clocks and watches**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here clockcases regardless of material
 Class clocks as furniture in 749.3; class interdisciplinary works on clocks in
 681.113; class interdisciplinary works on watches in 681.114
- .302 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
 Class here comprehensive works on techniques, procedures,
 apparatus, equipment, materials together
 Class comprehensive works on basic and auxiliary techniques and
 procedures in 739.34
- [.302 84] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use for materials; class in 739.32. Do not use for apparatus
 and equipment; class in 739.33
- .32-.35 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
 Add to base number 739.3 the numbers following 739.1 in 739.12-739.15,
 e.g., decorative treatment 739.35; however, for history, geographic
 treatment, biography, see 739.309
 Class techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials for specific products in
 739.38; class comprehensive works in 739.3028

> **739.4-739.5 Work in base metals**

Class clocks and watches in base metals in 739.3; class comprehensive works in
 739

For arms and armor, see 739.7

.4 Ironwork

Class here wrought iron, cast iron, stainless steel

- .402 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
 Class here comprehensive works on techniques, procedures,
 apparatus, equipment, materials together
 Class comprehensive works on basic and auxiliary techniques and
 procedures in 739.44

- [.402 84] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use for materials; class in 739.42. Do not use for apparatus
 and equipment; class in 739.43
- .42-.45 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
 Add to base number 739.4 the numbers following 739.1 in 739.12-739.15,
 e.g., decorative treatment 739.45; however, for history, geographic
 treatment, biography, see 739.409
 Class techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials for specific products in
 739.48; class comprehensive works in 739.4028
- .48 Products
 Including balcony motifs, balustrades, grills, knockers, ornamental nails
- [.480 9] History, geographic treatment, biography
 Do not use; class in 739.409
- .5 Work in metals other than iron**
- .51 Copper and its alloys
 For brass, see 739.52
- .511 Copper
- .512 Bronze
 See also 731-735 for bronze sculpture
- .52 Brass
- .522 Monumental brasses
 Class here rubbing and rubbings for study and research of brasses
 Class rubbings as art form in 760
- .53 Tin and its alloys
 For bronze, see 739.512
- .532 Tin
- .533 Pewter
- .54 Lead
- .55 Zinc and its alloys
 Subdivisions are added for zinc and its alloys together, for zinc alone
 For brass, see 739.52
- .56 Nickel
- .57 Aluminum
- .58 Chromium

.7 Arms and armor

Standard subdivisions are added for arms and armor together, for arms alone

Class here decorative treatment of shapes, handles, grips, metalwork

Class interdisciplinary works on arms and armor in 623.44

See also 623.441 for stone weapons

> 739.72–739.74 Arms

Class comprehensive works in 739.7

.72 Edged weapons

Including axes, daggers, dirks, knives, spears

Class edged arrows in 739.73; class interdisciplinary works on knives in 621.932

.722 Swords and sabers

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.723 Bayonets**.73 Missile-hurling weapons**

Including air guns, bows and arrows, spring guns

For firearms, see 739.74

.74 Firearms

Add to base number 739.74 the numbers following 623.4 in 623.42–623.44, e.g., pistols 739.74432

Class interdisciplinary works on small firearms in 683.4

.75 Armor**.752 Shields****740 Graphic arts [formerly 760] and decorative arts**

Standard subdivisions are added for graphic and decorative arts together, for graphic arts alone

Including copy art made with photoduplication equipment, rubbings, typewriter art, typographical designs; two-dimensional mixed-media art and composites

Class here digital images, two-dimensional art

Class comprehensive works on graphic and plastic arts in 701–709. Class rubbings used for study and research in a specific field with the field, e.g., monumental brasses 739.522

For painting and paintings, see 750; for printmaking and prints, see 760; for photography and photographs, see 770; for cinematography and videography, see 777

SUMMARY

- 740.1--.9 Standard subdivisions and iconography of graphic arts and decorative arts
- 741 Drawing and drawings
- 742 Perspective in drawing
- 743 Drawing and drawings by subject
- 745 Decorative arts
- 746 Textile arts
- 747 Interior decoration
- 748 Glass
- 749 Furniture and accessories

.285 Computer applications

Do not use for comprehensive works on digital images; class in 740; however use subdivisions of 740.285 for specific computer applications in graphic arts, e.g., application of computer programs to digital images 740.28553

.4 **Iconography of graphic arts [formerly 760.044], iconography of decorative arts**

Add to base number 740.4 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942--704.949, e.g., landscapes in graphic arts 740.436

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.9 **History, geographic treatment, biography of graphic arts [formerly 760.09]; history, geographic treatment, biography of graphic and decorative arts together**

.901--.905 Periods of development

Not limited by country or locality

Add to base number 740.90 the numbers following 709.0 in 709.01--709.05, e.g., graphic arts of the Renaissance 740.9024

741 Drawing and drawings

Class comprehensive works on drawing and painting in 750; class comprehensive works on two-dimensional art in 760

For drawing and drawings by subject, see 743

SUMMARY

- 741.01--.09 Standard subdivisions
- .2 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
- .5 Comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas, cartoons, caricatures, comic strips
- .6 Graphic design, illustration, commercial art
- .7 Silhouettes
- .9 Collections of drawings

.01 Philosophy and theory

Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below

- .011 Appreciative aspects
 Do not use for systems; class in 741.01
 Class psychological principles in 741.019
- .011 7 Aesthetics
- .011 8 Criticism and appreciation
 Including theory, technique, history
 Class works of critical appraisal in 741.09
- .018 Inherent features
 Including color, composition, decorative values, form, light, movement,
 space, style, symmetry, time
 Class perspective in 742
- .02 Miscellany
- .028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
 Class comprehensive works on basic and auxiliary techniques and
 procedures in 741.2
- [.028 4] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use; class in 741.2
- .028 8 Maintenance and repair
 Including expertizing
 Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in
 741.217
- .07 Education, research, related topics
- .074 Museums and exhibits
 For collections of drawings, see 741.9
- .09 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .090 1–.090 5 Historical periods
 For collections of drawings from specific periods, see 741.92
- .092 Biography
 Regardless of medium, process, subject, period, place
 Class artists working in special applications in 741.5–741.7; class
 collections of drawings in 741.9
- .093–.099 Specific continents, countries, localities
 *For collections of drawings from specific continents, countries,
 localities, see 741.93–741.99*

.2 *Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Including one-color washes highlighting drawings

Class here comprehensive works on basic and auxiliary techniques and procedures

Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials used in special applications in 741.5–741.7; class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials used in drawing specific subjects in 743.4–743.8; class collections of drawings regardless of medium or process in 741.9

For auxiliary techniques and procedures, see 741.028; for perspective, see 742

See also 751.422 for watercolor

.21 *Techniques of reproduction and conservation**.217 *Reproduction**

Execution and identification

.217 2 *Reproductions and copies

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.217 4 *Forgeries and alterations**> 741.22–741.29 Specific mediums**

Class comprehensive works in 741.2

.22 *Charcoal**.23 *Chalk and crayon****.235 *Pastel****.24 *Pencil****.25 *Silverpoint****.26 *Ink**

Class here brush, marker, pen drawing

.29 *Scratchboard and airbrush drawing**> 741.5–741.7 Special applications**

Class here works that began with drawing but use other techniques such as painting, printing, photography to create the final product

Class comprehensive works in 741.6

.5 Comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas, cartoons, caricatures, comic strips

Standard subdivisions are added for comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas, cartoons, caricatures, comic strips together; for comic books alone; for graphic novels alone; for fotonovelas alone.

Variant name for comic books: comics

Class comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas, cartoons, caricatures, comic strips whose purpose is to inform or persuade with the subject, e.g., political cartoons 320.0207

See Manual at 741.5; also at 741.5 vs. 741.56

.502 8

Auxiliary techniques and procedures

Class comprehensive works on basic and auxiliary techniques and procedures in 741.51

[.502 84]

Apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 741.51

.507 4

Museums and exhibits

Do not use for collections; class in 741.59

[.509]

History, geographic treatment, biography

History, geographic treatment, biography of cartoons, caricatures, comic strips relocated to 741.569; history, geographic treatment, biography of comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas and comprehensive history, geographic treatment, biography of comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas, cartoons, caricatures, comic strips relocated to 741.59

.51

Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class here comprehensive works on basic and auxiliary techniques and procedures; comprehensive works on drawing and writing comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas, cartoons, caricatures, comic strips

Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials used for special aspects in 741.53; class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials used for cartoon animation in 741.58

For auxiliary techniques and procedures, see 741.5028; for photographic techniques for fotonovelas, see 771; for writing comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas, cartoons, caricatures, comic strips, see 808.06

.53

Special aspects of comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas, cartoons, caricatures, comic strips

Class here critical appraisal and description of genres, techniques for creating works in specific genres

Class single works and collections of cartoons, caricatures, comic strips regardless of genre in 741.569; class single works and collections of comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas regardless of genre in 741.59

- .531 Comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas, cartoons, caricatures, comic strips displaying specific qualities
 Add to base number 741.531 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–17 from Table 3C, e.g., critical appraisal of horror graphic novels 741.53164
 Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .532–.539 Comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas, cartoons, caricatures, comic strips dealing with specific themes and subjects
 Add to base number 741.53 the numbers following —3 in notation 32–39 from Table 3C, e.g., history and critical appraisal of superhero graphic novels 741.5352, drawing cartoon animals 741.5362
 Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .56 Cartoons, caricatures, comic strips
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
 Variant name for comic strips: strip cartoons
See Manual at 741.5 vs. 741.56
- .560 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
 Class comprehensive works on basic and auxiliary techniques and procedures in 741.51
- .560 74 Museums and exhibits
 Do not use for collections; class in 741.569
- [.560 9] History, geographic treatment, biography
 Do not use; class in 741.569
- .569 History, geographic treatment, biography of cartoons, caricatures, comic strips [*formerly* 741.509]
 Single works or collections of works
 Class here collections of cartoons, caricatures, comic strips [*formerly* 741.59]; development, description, critical appraisal
 Class cartoon animation in 741.58; class comprehensive works on history, geographic treatment, biography of comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas, cartoons, caricatures, comic strips in 741.59. Class works of description and critical appraisal that focus on a specific aspect and are not limited to an individual artist or writer with the aspect in 741.53, e.g., critical appraisal of comic strips about animals 741.5362
- .569 1 Treatment by areas, regions, places in general
 Add to base number 741.5691 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., caricatures from Western Hemisphere 741.5691812

.569 3–.569 9

Specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 741.569 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., a collection of European cartoons 741.5694, a collection of cartoons by multiple artists from London 741.569421, a collection of comic strips by a single author first published in United States 741.56973

Single works, collections by individual artists or writers, biographies and critical appraisal of individual artists or writers are classed at country level only, without further addition. For example, a biography of an individual artist from London is classed in 741.56942 (*not* 741.569421, 741.56942092). Notation from Table 1 is added for works treating more than one artist or writer, e.g., general history of United States comic strips 741.5697309, collected biography of English caricature artists 741.569420922

See Manual at 741.593–741.599 and 741.5693–741.5699

.58

Cartoon animation

Class here animation cels; techniques for creating animated drawings

Class photographic techniques in 777.7; class comprehensive works on animated films in 791.4334; class animated films themselves in 791.437; class comprehensive works on animated television programs in 791.453; class animated television programs themselves in 791.457

.59

History, geographic treatment, biography

Single works or collections of works

Class here history, geographic treatment, biography of comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas and comprehensive history, geographic treatment, biography of comic books, graphic novels, fotonovelas, cartoons, caricatures, comic strips [*formerly* 741.509]; development, description, critical appraisal

Class cartoon animation in 741.58. Class works of description and critical appraisal that focus on a specific aspect and are not limited to a single work or to an individual artist or writer with the aspect in 741.53, e.g., critical appraisal of superhero graphic novels 741.5352

Collections of cartoons, caricatures, comic strips relocated to 741.569

.591

Treatment by areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 741.591 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., graphic novels from Western Hemisphere 741.591812

.593--.599 Specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 741.59 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., a collection of European comic books 741.594, a collection of comic books by multiple artists from London 741.59421, a single graphic novel first published in Japan 741.5952

Single works, collections by individual artists or writers, biographies and critical appraisal of individual artists or writers are classed at country level only, without further addition. For example, a biography of an individual graphic novelist from London is classed in 741.5942 (not 741.59421, 741.5942092). Notation from Table 1 is added for works treating more than one artist or writer, e.g., general history of Japanese comic books 741.595209, collected biography of Japanese comic artists 741.59520922

See Manual at 741.593–741.599 and 741.5693–741.5699

.6 Graphic design, illustration, commercial art

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Class here comprehensive works on special applications of drawing

Class comprehensive works on graphic arts, comprehensive works on two-dimensional art in 740. Class a specific type of illustration, a specific form of graphic design, a specific form of commercial art, not provided for here with the type or form, e.g., original oil paintings for book jackets 759

See Manual at 741.6 vs. 800

.64 Books and book jackets

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class illumination of manuscripts and books in 745.67

.642 Children's books

.65 Magazines and newspapers

.652 Magazines and magazine covers

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.66 Covers for sheet music and recordings

.67 Advertisements and posters

Standard subdivisions are added for advertisements and posters together, for advertisements alone

.672 Fashion drawing

Class fashion design in 746.92

.674 Commercial posters

Class here comprehensive works on posters

For art posters (posters as a specific form of prints), see 769.5

.68 Calendars, postcards, greeting and business cards

.682 Calendars

- .683 Postcards
Class government-issued postcards without illustration in 769.566
- .684 Greeting cards
- .685 Business cards (Trade cards)
- .69 Labels and match covers
- .692 Labels
- .694 Match covers
- .7 Silhouettes**
Class cut-out silhouettes in 736.984
- .9 Collections of drawings**
Regardless of medium or process
Class here exhibition catalogs, preliminary drawings as works of art in their own right
Class collections by artists devoted to special applications in 741.5–741.7; class collections of drawings by subject not from a specific period or place in 743.9.
Class preliminary drawings not treated as works of art in their own right with the finished work, e.g., preliminary drawings for frescoes 751.73
- .92 Specific periods
Not limited geographically
- .921 Earliest times to 499
- .922 500–1399
- .923 1400–1799
- .924 1800–
- .924 1 1800–1899
- .924 2 1900–1999
- .924 3 2000–2099
- .93–.99 Specific continents, countries, localities
Add to base number 741.9 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., collections of drawings from London 741.9421
Collections by individual artists are classed at country level only.
Notation 074 from Table 1 for collections is not added. For example, a collection of an individual artist from London is classed in 741.942 (*not* 741.9421, 741.942074421)

742 Perspective in drawing

Theory, principles, methods

Class perspective in special applications in 741.5–741.7; class perspective in drawing specific subjects in 743.4–743.8; class comprehensive works on perspective in the arts in 701.82

743 *Drawing and drawings by subject

Standard subdivisions are added for drawing and drawings by subject together, for drawing alone

.4 *Drawing human figures

Class here nudes

For fashion drawing, see 741.672

.42 *Portraiture

Class portraiture of specific kinds of people in 743.43–743.45

743.43–743.45 Specific kinds of people

Class anatomy of specific kinds of people in 743.49; class comprehensive works in 743.4

.43 *Men**.44 *Women****.45 *Children****.46 *Bones (Skeletal system)****.47 *Muscles (Muscular system)****.49 *Anatomy for artists**

Including parts and regions of body, e.g., head, abdomen, hands

For bones, see 743.46; for muscles, see 743.47

.5 *Drawing draperies**.6 *Drawing animals**

Add to base number 743.6 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., drawing birds 743.68; however, for artists, see 741.092

.7 *Drawing plants

Including fruits

.73 *Drawing flowers**.76 *Drawing trees****.8 Drawing other subjects**

Add to base number 743.8 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.943–704.949, e.g., landscapes 743.836; however, for artists, see 741.092

.9 Collections of drawings by subject (Iconography)

Not limited by period or by place of production

Add to base number 743.9 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., collections of drawings of buildings 743.94

Class collections of drawings by subject from a specific period or place in 741.92–741.99

[744] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 17

745 Decorative arts

Class here folk art

For a decorative art not provided for here, see the art in 736–739, 746–749, e.g., interior decoration 747

SUMMARY

- 745.1 Antiques
- .2 Industrial art and design
- .4 Pure and applied design and decoration
- .5 Handicrafts
- .6 Calligraphy, heraldic design, illumination
- .7 Decorative coloring
- .8 Cycloramas, dioramas, panoramas
- .9 Other decorative arts

.1 Antiques

For a specific kind of antique, see the kind, e.g., brasses 739.52, passenger automobiles 629.222

See Manual at 745.1

- .102 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
 - Notation 028 from Table 1 as modified below
 - Class here basic techniques and procedures
- .102 87 Techniques of reproduction, execution, identification
 - Do not use for testing and measurement; class in 745.1028
- .102 872 Reproductions and copies
- .102 874 Forgeries and alterations
- .102 88 Maintenance and repair
 - Including expertizing
 - Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 745.10287

.2 Industrial art and design

Creative design of mass-produced commodities

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

For design of a specific commodity, see the commodity, e.g., automobiles 629.231

.4 Pure and applied design and decoration

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Class here design source books

For industrial design, see 745.2. For design in a specific art form, see the form, e.g., design in architecture 729

.5 Handicrafts

Creative work done by hand with aid of simple tools or machines

Including work in bread dough

Class home (amateur) workshops in 684.08; class interdisciplinary works on handicrafts in 680. Class the handicraft aspects of another form of art with the art, e.g., printmaking using rubber stamps 761

For decorative coloring, see 745.7; for floral arts, see 745.92

See Manual at 680 vs. 745.5

745.51–745.58 Specific materials

Class specific objects made from specific materials in 745.59; class comprehensive works in 745.5

For textile handicrafts, see 746; for glass handicrafts, see 748

.51 Woods

Including bamboo; ornamental woodwork

Class treen (woodenware) in 674.88; class woodworking in 684.08; class cabinetmaking (wooden furniture making) in 684.104; class artistic aspects of furniture in 749

For ornamental woodwork in furniture, see 749.5

.512 Marquetry

Class here inlaying

.513 Scrollwork

Class here work with jig saws (scroll saws)

.514 Woodburning (Pyrography)**.53 Leathers and furs**

Class construction of clothing in 646.4

- .531 Leathers
- .537 Furs
- .54 Papers
 Including endpapers, paper boxes, tissue papers, wallpapers; gift wrapping,
 quilling
 Class paper cutting and folding in 736.98
- .542 Papier-mâché
 Class papier-mâché used in sculpture in 731.2
- .546 Decoupage
 Including potichomania
- .55 Shells
- .56 Metals
 Class art metalwork in 739
- .57 Rubber and plastics
- .572 Plastics
- .572 3 Polymer clay
- .58 Beads, found and other objects
 Class specific objects made from other objects in 745.59
- .582 Beads
 For bead embroidery, see 746.5
 See also 745.5942 for beaded costume jewelry
- .584 Found objects
 Including cattails, hosiery, scrap, stones
- .59 Making specific objects
 Class here handicrafts in composite materials
 For textile handicrafts, see 746; for glass handicrafts, see 748
- .592 Toys, models, miniatures, related objects
 Standard subdivisions are added for toys, models, miniatures, related
 objects together; for toys alone
 Including paper airplanes
 Class interdisciplinary works on mass-produced and handcrafted toys in
 688.72

- > 745.592 2–745.592 4 Toys and related objects
- Class comprehensive works in 745.592
- For toy soldiers, see 745.59282*
- .592 2 Dolls, puppets, marionettes
- Class here clothing
- .592 21 Dolls
- Class porcelain dolls in 738.83
- .592 24 Puppets and marionettes
- .592 3 Dollhouses and furniture
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- See also 749.0228 for miniature furniture*
- .592 4 Soft toys
- Class here stuffed toys
- For stuffed dolls, see 745.59221*
- .592 43 Teddy bears
- .592 8 Models and miniatures
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Including ships in bottles
- Class here interdisciplinary works on handcrafted models and miniatures
- Class models and miniatures produced by assembly-line or mechanized manufacturing, interdisciplinary works on models and miniatures in 688.1; class play with remote-control models in 796.15
- For handcrafted models and miniatures of a specific object, models for technical and professional use, see the object or use, plus notation 0228 from Table 1, e.g., handcrafted models of space stations 629.4420228; for miniature and model educational exhibits, see the subject illustrated, plus notation 074 from Table 1, e.g., handcrafted miniature physical anthropology exhibits 599.9074*
- See Manual at 745.5928*
- .592 82 Military models and miniatures
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Including toy soldiers
- .593 Useful objects
- For toys, models, miniatures, related objects, see 745.592*

- .593 2 Lampshades
- .593 3 Candles and candlesticks
- .593 32 Candles
- .593 4 Snuffboxes
- .593 6 Decoys
 - Class carved birds not used for hunting in 730
- .593 8 Scrapbooks
- .594 Decorative objects
 - .594 1 Objects for special occasions
 - Including weddings
 - Class here greeting cards
 - .594 12 Christmas
 - .594 16 Holidays
 - Add to base number 745.59416 the numbers following 394.26 in 394.261–394.267, e.g., Halloween 745.5941646, Easter 745.5941667; however, for Christmas, see 745.59412; for Easter eggs, see 745.5944
 - .594 2 Costume jewelry
 - Class interdisciplinary works on costume jewelry in 391.7; class interdisciplinary works on making costume jewelry in 688.2; class interdisciplinary works on making jewelry in 739.27
 - .594 3 Artificial flowers
 - Class arrangement of artificial flowers in 745.92
 - .594 4 Egg decorating
 - Including Easter eggs
 - Class comprehensive works on handicrafts for Easter in 745.5941667
 - .594 6 Fountains
 - Class here tabletop fountains
 - Class comprehensive works on fountains in 731.724
- .6 Calligraphy, heraldic design, illumination**
 - .61 Calligraphy
 - Class here artistic, decorative lettering
 - Class penmanship in 652.1; class typography in 686.22
 - .619 Styles
 - .619 7 Latin styles (Western styles)
 - .619 74 Carolingian calligraphy

- .619 75 Black-letter and Gothic calligraphy
- .619 77 Italic calligraphy
- .619 78 Roman calligraphy
- .619 8 Greek calligraphy
- .619 9 Other styles
- Add to base number 745.6199 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–99 from Table 6, e.g., Chinese calligraphy 745.619951
- .66 Heraldic design
- .67 Illumination of manuscripts and books
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class here facsimiles of manuscripts reproduced for their illuminations
- Class development, description, critical appraisal of manuscripts in 091; class development, description, critical appraisal of illustrated books in 096.1
- See also 741.64 for book illustration*
- .674 Illuminated manuscripts and books by language
- Add to base number 745.674 notation 1–9 from Table 6, e.g., illuminated manuscripts in Byzantine Greek 745.67487; however, for illuminated manuscripts in Latin, see 745.67094
- Class illuminated manuscripts and books in specific languages produced in specific countries and localities in 745.67093–745.67099
- .7 Decorative coloring**
- Class printing, painting, dyeing textiles in 746.6
- .72 Painting and lacquering
- .723 Painting
- Including rosemaling, tolecraft
- .726 Lacquering
- Class here japanning
- .73 Stenciling
- .74 Decalcomania
- .75 Gilding
- Class gilding as an aspect of bookbinding in 686.36; class gilding as an aspect of illumination of manuscripts and books in 745.67
- .8 Cycloramas, dioramas, panoramas**
- .9 Other decorative arts**

.92 Floral arts

Flower arrangement: selection and arrangement of plant materials and appropriate accessories

Class here arrangement of artificial flowers, three-dimensional arrangements

Class making artificial flowers in 745.5943; class potted plants as interior decorations in 747.98

> 745.922–745.925 Three-dimensional arrangements with specific materials

Class arrangements with specific materials for special occasions in 745.926; class comprehensive works in 745.92

.922 Flower arrangements in containers

.922 4 Western flower arrangements

.922 5 Asian flower arrangements

.922 51 Chinese flower arrangements

.922 52 Japanese flower arrangements

.923 Flower arrangements without containers

Including boutonnieres, corsages, set floral pieces

.924 Fruit and vegetable arrangements

Including carving of vegetables to produce artificial flowers

.925 Arrangements with other plant materials

Including driftwood, pods and cones, dried and gilded grasses and leaves

.926 Three-dimensional arrangements for special occasions

Including arrangements for church services, funerals, holidays, weddings

.928 Two-dimensional arrangements

Use of seeds and other dried plant materials in pictures, hangings, trays, for other decorative purposes

746 Textile arts

Class here textile handicrafts

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
- 0288 Maintenance and repair
 - Including expertizing
 - Class here conservation, preservation, restoration
 - Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 048
- 04 Special topics
- 041 Patterns
 - Class patterns for specific products in 043
- 042 Stitches
 - Class stitches for specific products in 043
- 043 Products
 - Use only with base numbers for techniques
 - For laces and related fabrics, see 746.2; for rugs and carpets, see 746.7*
- 0432 Costume
 - Including sweaters
- 0433 Pictures, hangings, tapestries
 - Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- 0434-0438 Interior furnishings
 - Add to base number 043 the numbers following 746.9 in 746.94-746.98, e.g., bedclothes 0437
- 048 Reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations
 - Execution and identification

Class domestic sewing and related operations in 646.2. Class a specific textile product not provided for here with the product, e.g., stuffed animals 745.5924

SUMMARY

- 746.04 Specific materials**
 - .1 Yarn preparation and weaving**
 - .2 Laces and related fabrics**
 - .3 Pictures, hangings, tapestries**
 - .4 Needlework and handwork**
 - .5 Bead embroidery**
 - .6 Printing, painting, dyeing**
 - .7 Rugs**
 - .9 Other textile products**

.04 Specific materials

Add to base number 746.04 the numbers following 677 in 677.1-677.7, e.g., silk 746.0439, string art 746.0471

Class products in a specific material with the product, e.g., string pictures 746.3

> **746.1–746.9 Products and processes**

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., embroidered rugs 746.74 (*not* 746.44):

Laces and related fabrics	746.2
Rugs	746.7
Yarn preparation and weaving	746.1
Needlework and handwork	746.4
Bead embroidery	746.5
Printing, painting, dyeing	746.6
Pictures, hangings, tapestries	746.3
Other textile products	746.9

Class home sewing and clothing in 646; class textile manufacturing in 677; class comprehensive works in 746

.1 Yarn preparation and weaving

.11 Carding and combing

.12 Spinning, twisting, reeling

Standard subdivisions are added for spinning, twisting, reeling together; for spinning alone

.13 Dyeing

.14 *Weaving

Including card weaving

For weaving unaltered vegetable fibers, see 746.41; for nonloom weaving, see 746.42

.2 Laces and related fabrics

.22 *Laces

Including crocheted, darned laces

For tatting, see 746.436

.222 *Bobbin laces

.224 *Needlepoint laces

.226 *Knitted laces

.27 Passementerie

Including braids, cords, fringes

.3 *Pictures, hangings, tapestries

Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

- [.309] History, geographic treatment, biography
Do not use; class in 746.39
- (.309 2) Biography
(Optional number; prefer 746.392)
- .39 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .390 01-.390 09 Standard subdivisions
Add to base number 746.3900 the numbers following —00 in notation 001-009 from Table 2, e.g., periodicals of the history of tapestries 746.39005
- .390 1-.390 5 Historical periods
Add to base number 746.390 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901-0905 from Table 1, e.g., tapestries from 20th century 746.3904
- .391-.399 Geographic treatment, biography
Add to base number 746.39 notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., artists 746.392
(Option: Class biography in 746.3092)
- .4 Needlework and handwork**
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .41 Weaving, braiding, matting unaltered vegetable fibers
Including raffia work, rushwork
- .412 Basketry
- .42 Nonloom weaving and related techniques
Including braiding, plaiting, twining
Class nonloom weaving of unaltered vegetable fibers in 746.41
For card weaving, see 746.14
- .422 *Knotting
- .422 2 *Macramé
- .422 4 *Netting
Including knotless netting, sprang
- .43 *Knitting, crocheting, tatting
- .432 *Knitting
Class comprehensive works on knitting and crocheting in 746.43
- .434 *Crocheting
- .436 *Tatting

- .44 *Embroidery
 Including couching, cutwork, drawn work, hardanger, smocking
- .440 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
 Including machine embroidery
- .442 *Canvas embroidery and needlepoint
 Including bargello
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class cross-stitch and counted thread embroidery in 746.443
- .443 *Cross-stitch
 Class here counted thread embroidery
- .445 *Appliqué
- .446 *Crewelwork
- .447 *Silk ribbon embroidery
- .46 *Patchwork and quilting
 Class here quilts
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .460 437 Bedclothes
 Number built according to instructions under 746
 Class quilts in 746.46
- .5 ***Bead embroidery**
- .6 ***Printing, painting, dyeing**
 Including hand decoration, stenciling
- .62 *Printing
 Block and silk-screen
- .66 *Resist-dyeing
- .662 *Batik
- .664 *Tie-dyeing
- .7 ***Rugs**
 Class here carpets
- [.709] History, geographic treatment, biography
 Do not use; class in 746.79

- .92 **Costume**
 Class here fashion design
 Class interdisciplinary works on clothing in 391; class interdisciplinary works on clothing construction in 646.4
 See Manual at 391 vs. 646.3, 746.92
- .94 ***Draperies**
 Class here curtains
- .95 ***Furniture covers**
 Class here antimacassars, kneelers, slipcovers, upholstery
- .96 ***Table linens**
 Class here doilies, mats, napkins (serviettes), scarves, tablecloths; fair linens
- .97 ***Bedclothes**
 Class here bedspreads, blankets; sheets, pillowcases
 For afghans, see 746.430437; for quilts, see 746.46
- .98 ***Towels**
 Class here toweling

747 Interior decoration

Design and decorative treatment of interior furnishings

Class here interior decoration of residential buildings

Class interior architecture (interior design) in 729; class textile arts and handicrafts in 746; class interior decoration of specific types of residential buildings in 747.88

For furniture and accessories, see 749

.1 Decoration under specific limitations

Including decorating on a budget

Class a specific aspect of decoration under limitations with the aspect, e.g., decorating dining rooms on a budget 747.76

> 747.3–747.4 Decoration of specific elements

Class decoration of specific elements in specific rooms of residential buildings in 747.7; class decoration of specific elements in specific types of buildings in 747.8; class specific decorations of specific elements in 747.9; class comprehensive works in 747

- .3 Ceilings, walls, doors, windows**
 Including decorative hangings, painting, paneling, woodwork
 Class here textile wall coverings, wallpapers
For draperies, see 747.5
- .4 Floors**
For rugs and carpets, see 747.5
- .5 Draperies, upholstery, rugs and carpets**
- .7 Decoration of specific rooms of residential buildings**
 Class specific decorations regardless of room in 747.9
- .73 Studies**
 Class here home libraries
- .75 Living rooms, drawing rooms, parlors**
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .76 Dining rooms**
- .77 Bedrooms**
 Class here nurseries
- .78 Bathrooms**
 Including powder rooms
- .79 Other rooms**
- .791 Recreation rooms**
 Class here family rooms
- .797 Kitchens**
- .8 Decoration of specific types of buildings**
 Class specific decorations regardless of type of building in 747.9
- .85–.87 Decoration of public, religious, educational, research buildings**
 Add to base number 747.8 the numbers following 72 in 725–727, e.g.,
 decoration of theaters 747.85822
- .88 Decoration of specific types of residential buildings**
 Add to base number 747.88 the numbers following 728 in 728.1–728.9, e.g.,
 decoration of hotels 747.885
 Class decoration of residential buildings of institutions in 747.85–747.87;
 class comprehensive works on decoration of residential buildings in 747
For decoration of specific rooms of residential buildings, see 747.7

.9 Specific decorations

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., decorative lighting for Christmas 747.92 (*not* 747.93):

Decorating with houseplants	747.98
Decorative lighting	747.92
Decorating with color	747.94
Decorations for specific occasions	747.93

See also 747.5 for draperies, upholstery, rugs and carpets

- .92 Decorative lighting
- .93 Decorations for specific occasions
 - Including holidays, parties, weddings
- .94 Decorating with color
- .98 Decorating with houseplants

748 Glass

Class here glassware

For glass sculpture, see 730

- .092 Biography
 - Class here glassmakers

.2 Blown, cast, decorated, fashioned, molded, pressed glass

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Class here comprehensive works on tableware

Class stained glass in 748.5; class comprehensive works on glass made by a specific technique in 748

For methods of decoration, see 748.6; for stained, painted, leaded, mosaic tableware, see 748.5; for specific articles made from blown, cast, decorated, fashioned, molded, pressed glass, see 748.8

Use of this number for glassware discontinued; class in 748

- .202 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
 - Notation 028 from Table 1 as modified below
 - Class here basic techniques and procedures
- .202 82 Glassblowing
- .202 86 Bottle and jar cutting
 - Do not use for green technology; class in 748.2028
 - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .202 87 Reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations
Do not use for testing and measurement; class in 748.2028
Execution and identification
- .202 88 Maintenance and repair
Including expertizing
Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 748.20287
- .5 Stained, painted, leaded, mosaic glass**
Standard subdivisions are added for stained, painted, leaded, mosaic glass together; for stained glass alone; for painted glass alone; for leaded glass alone
Class comprehensive works on mosaics in 738.5; class comprehensive works on tableware in 748.2
For specific articles made from stained, painted, leaded, mosaic glass, see 748.8
- .502 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
Notation 028 from Table 1 as modified below
Class here basic techniques and procedures
- .502 82 Glass painting and staining
- .502 84 Leaded glass craft
Do not use for apparatus, equipment, materials of stained, painted, leaded, mosaic glass together; class in 748.5028
- .502 85 Mosaic glass craft
Do not use for computer applications; class in 748.5028
- .6 Methods of decoration**
Including cutting, enameling, sandblasting
Class methods of decoration of specific articles in 748.8
For painted glass, see 748.5
- [.609 2] Biography
Do not use; class in 748.2092
- .62 Engraving
- .63 Etching
- .8 Specific articles**
Including mirrors, ornaments
Class mirrors as furniture in 749.3; class glass lamps and lighting fixtures in 749.63

- .82 Bottles
 - Bottles of artistic interest regardless of use
 - Class manufacture of glass bottles in 666.192
- .83 Specific articles of tableware
 - Class here drinking glasses
 - Class works on more than one type of tableware, comprehensive works on tableware in 748.2
- .84 Paperweights
- .85 Glass beads

749 **Furniture and accessories**

Standard subdivisions are added for furniture and accessories together, for furniture alone

For upholstery, see 747.5

.1 **Antique furniture**

Class specific kinds of antique furniture in 749.3

- .102 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
 - Notation 028 from Table 1 as modified below
- .102 87 Reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations
 - Do not use for testing and measurement; class in 749.1028
 - Execution and identification
- .102 88 Maintenance and repair
 - Including expertizing
 - Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 749.10287
- [.109] History, geographic treatment, biography
 - Do not use; class in 749.09

.3 **Specific kinds of furniture**

Including beds, cabinets, chests, clockcases, desks, mirrors, screens, tables

Class outdoor furniture in 749.8

For built-in furniture, see 749.4; for heating and lighting fixtures and furniture, see 749.6; for picture frames, see 749.7

- [.301–.309] Standard subdivisions
 - Do not use; class in 749.01–749.09
- .32 Chairs

.4 Built-in furniture

Class built-in church furniture in architectural design in 726.529

For heating and lighting fixtures and furniture, see 749.6

.5 Ornamental woodwork in furniture

Including inlay trim, lacquer work, marquetry, scrollwork

Class ornamental woodwork in a specific kind of furniture with the kind, e.g., picture frames 749.7

.6 Heating and lighting fixtures and furniture**.62 Heating**

Including mantels, fireplace and inglenook fixtures and furniture

.63 Lighting

Including chandeliers, lamps, sconces

Class built-in church lighting fixtures in architectural design in 726.5298

.7 Picture frames

Including shadow boxes

Class here picture framing

.8 Outdoor furniture

Class furniture used both indoors and outdoors in 749.3

750 Painting and paintings

Class here comprehensive works on painting and drawing

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., an individual Canadian painter of landscapes 759.11 (*not* 758.10971), landscape painting in Canada 758.10971 (*not* 759.11):

Individual painters and their work	759.1–759.9
Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials	751.2–751.6
Iconography	753–758
Specific forms	751.7
Geographic treatment	759.1–759.9
Periods of development	759.01–759.07
Color	752

Class comprehensive works on graphic arts, two-dimensional art in 760. Class painting in a specific decorative art with the art, e.g., illumination of manuscripts and books 745.67

For drawing and drawings, see 741

SUMMARY

- 750.1–.8 **Standard subdivisions**
 751 **Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials, forms**
 752 **Color**
 753 **Symbolism, allegory, mythology, legend**
 754 **Genre paintings**
 755 **Religion**
 757 **Human figures**
 758 **Nature, architectural subjects and cityscapes, other specific subjects**
 759 **History, geographic treatment, biography**
- .1 Philosophy and theory**
 Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below
- .11 **Appreciative aspects**
 Do not use for systems; class in 750.1
 Class psychological principles in 750.19
- .117 **Aesthetics**
- .118 **Criticism and appreciation**
 Including theory, technique, history
 Class works of critical appraisal in 759
- .18 **Inherent features**
 Including composition, decorative values, form, light, movement,
 perspective, space, style, symmetry, vision
 For color, see 752
- .28 **Auxiliary techniques and procedures**
 *For comprehensive works on basic and auxiliary techniques and
 procedures, see 751.4*
- [.284] **Apparatus, equipment, materials**
 Do not use for materials; class in 751.2. Do not use for apparatus and
 equipment; class in 751.3
- [.288] **Maintenance and repair**
 Do not use; class in 751.6
- [.9] History, geographic treatment, biography**
 Do not use; class in 759
- (.92) **Biography**
 (Optional number; prefer 759)

- 751 *Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, forms**
- .2 *Materials**
Including coatings, fixatives, mediums, pigments, surfaces
Class use of materials in specific techniques in 751.4
- .3 *Apparatus, equipment, artists' models**
Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 751.4
- .4 *Techniques and procedures**
Class here comprehensive works on basic and auxiliary techniques and procedures
For auxiliary techniques and procedures, see 750.28; for techniques of reproduction, see 751.5; for maintenance and repair, see 751.6
- .42 *Use of water-soluble mediums**
For tempera painting, see 751.43
- .422 *Watercolor painting**
Including casein painting, gouache
Class ink painting in color in 751.425
- .422 4 Watercolor painting techniques by subject**
Add to base number 751.4224 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., techniques of landscape painting in watercolor 751.422436; however, for individual painters, see 759.1–759.9
- .425 *Ink painting**
- .425 1 *Chinese ink painting**
- .425 14 Chinese ink painting techniques by subject**
Add to base number 751.42514 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., techniques of landscape painting in Chinese ink painting 751.4251436; however, for individual painters, see 759.1–759.9
- .425 2 *Japanese ink painting**
- .426 *Acrylic painting**
- .426 4 Acrylic painting techniques by subject**
Add to base number 751.4264 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., techniques of landscape painting in acrylics 751.426436; however, for individual painters, see 759.1–759.9
- .43 *Tempera painting**
- .44 *Fresco painting**

*Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for individual painters; class in 759.1–759.9

- .45 *Oil painting
- .454 Oil painting techniques by subject
 - Add to base number 751.454 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., techniques of landscape painting in oils 751.45436; however, for individual painters, see 759.1–759.9
- .46 *Encaustic painting (Wax painting)
- .49 *Other methods
 - Including finger, polymer, roller (brayer), sand painting
 - For mosaic painting, see 738.5*
- .493 *Collage
 - With painting as the basic technique
- .494 *Airbrush
- .5 *Techniques of reproduction**
 - Execution, identification, determination of authenticity of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations
 - For printmaking and prints, see 760*
- .58 *Forgeries and alterations
- .6 *Maintenance and repair**
- .62 *Conservation, preservation, restoration
 - Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
 - Including expertizing
 - Class identification of reproductions, copies, forgeries, alterations in 751.5
- .7 *Specific forms**
- .73 *Murals and frescoes
 - Class here painted graffiti, street art
- .74 *Panoramas, cycloramas, dioramas
 - Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .75 *Scene paintings
 - Including theatrical scenery
- .76 *Glass underpainting
 - Class glass underpainting as a technique of glass decoration in 748.6
- .77 *Miniatures
 - Class miniatures done as illuminations in manuscripts and books in 745.67

*Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for individual painters; class in 759.1–759.9

752 *Color

Class technology of color in 667; class comprehensive works on color in the fine and decorative arts in 701.85

> 753–758 Iconography

Class here development, description, critical appraisal, works regardless of form

A work with two or more subjects is classed with the subject that is the center of interest, e.g., cityscapes with incidental human figures 758.7 (*not* 757), church interiors displaying Stations of the Cross 755.4 (*not* 758.7)

Class comprehensive works in 750

See Manual at 704.9 and 753–758

753 *Symbolism, allegory, mythology, legend**.6 *Symbolism and allegory**

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

For religious symbolism, see 755

.7 *Mythology and legend

Class religious mythology in 755

754 *Genre paintings**755 *Religion**

Class here religious symbolism

Add to base number 755 the numbers following 704.948 in 704.9482–704.9489, e.g., paintings of Holy Family 755.56; however, for individual painters, see 759.1–759.9

[756] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 19

*Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for individual painters; class in 759.1–759.9

757 *Human figures

Class here portraits

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., groups of nude women 757.2 (*not* 757.4 or 757.6):

Erotica	757.8
Nudes	757.2
Miniature portraits	757.7
Specific groups of people	757.3–757.5
Groups of human figures	757.6

Class symbolism of human figures in 753.6. Class human figures engaged in a specific activity or occupation with the activity or occupation, e.g., farmers 758.5092, doctors 758.961092, circus clowns 758.979133

For human figures associated with mythology and legend, see 753.7; for human figures associated with religion, see 755

Human figures engaged in a specific activity relocated to the activity, e.g., ice skaters 758.979691092

.2 *Nudes

Class here nudes of men [*formerly* 757.3], nudes of women [*formerly* 757.4], nudes of children [*formerly* 757.5], groups of nudes [*formerly* 757.6]

[.22] Nudes

Number discontinued; class in 757.2

[.23] Draped figures

Number discontinued; class in 757

> 757.3–757.5 Specific groups of people

Class comprehensive works in 757

.3 *Men

Nudes of men relocated to 757.2

.4 *Women

Nudes of women relocated to 757.2

.5 *Children

Nudes of children relocated to 757.2

.6 *Groups of human figures

Groups of nudes relocated to 757.2; hunters relocated to 758.979929

.7 *Miniature portraits

*Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for individual painters; class in 759.1–759.9

.8 *Erotica

Including pornography

758 *Nature, architectural subjects and cityscapes, other specific subjects

Standard subdivisions are added for nature and other specific subjects together; for nature alone

> 758.1–758.5 Nature

Class comprehensive works in 758

.1 *Landscapes

Add to base number 758.1 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., landscapes of Utah 758.1792; however, for individual painters, see 759.1–759.9

.2 *Marine scenes and seascapes

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.3 *Animals

Add to base number 758.3 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., eagles 758.38942

Class symbolism of animals in 753.6

For animals associated with mythology and legend, see 753.7; for animals associated with religion, see 755

.4 *Still life

Class symbolism of still life in 753.6

For still life associated with mythology and legend, see 753.7; for still life associated with religion, see 755

.42 *Flowers**.5 *Plants**

Class here agriculture

Class symbolism of plants in 753.6; class landscapes in 758.1

For plants associated with mythology and legend, see 753.7; for plants associated with religion, see 755; for animals, see 758.3; for flowers, see 758.42

.7 *Architectural subjects and cityscapes

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Add to base number 758.7 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., cityscapes of England 758.742; however, for individual painters, see 759.1–759.9

*Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for individual painters; class in 759.1–759.9

.9 Other specific subjects

Not provided for elsewhere

Add to base number 758.9 notation 001–999, e.g., paintings of scientific subjects 758.95, of hunters 758.979929 [*formerly* 757.6], of historical events 758.99; however, for individual painters, see 759.1–759.9

759 History, geographic treatment, biography

Class here development, description, critical appraisal, works

Class exhibitions of paintings not limited by place, period, or subject in 750.74

(Option: Class biography in 750.92)

> 759.01–759.07 Periods of development

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality, works on one or two periods of European painting

Class works on three or more periods of European painting in 759.94; class comprehensive works in 759. Class schools associated with a specific locality with the locality in 759.1–759.9, e.g., Florentine school of Italian painting 759.551

When classifying works of more than one painter, notation 074 and notation 075 from Table 1 for Museums, collections, exhibits and Museum activities, respectively, take preference over notation 0922 for Collected biography

See Manual at 704.9 and 753–758

.01 *Nonliterate peoples, and earliest times to 499

.011 *Nonliterate peoples

Regardless of time or place

Class paintings of both nonliterate and literate cultures in 759.1–759.9

.011 2 *Paleolithic painting and paintings

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.011 3 *Rock art (painting and paintings)

.02 *500–1399

Class here medieval painting and paintings

.021 *500–1199

.021 2 *Early Christian painting and paintings

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

For early Christian painting and paintings before 500, see 759.01

*Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for individual painters; class in 759.1–759.9

- .021 4 *Byzantine painting and paintings
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
For Byzantine painting and paintings before 500, see 759.01
- .021 6 *Romanesque painting and paintings
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .022 *1200–1399
Class here Gothic painting and paintings
For Gothic painting and paintings of an earlier or later period, see the specific period, e.g., 500–1199 759.021
- .03 *1400–1599
Class here Renaissance painting and paintings
For Renaissance painting and paintings before 1400, see 759.022
- .04 *1600–1799
- .046 *1600–1699
Class here baroque painting and paintings
For baroque painting and paintings of 1700–1799, see 759.047
- .047 *1700–1799
Including rococo painting and paintings
- .05 *1800–1899
Add to base number 759.05 the numbers following 709.034 in 709.0341–709.0349, e.g., romanticism in painting 759.052; however, for individual painters, see 759.1–759.9
- .06 *1900–1999
Class here modern painting
Add to base number 759.06 the numbers following 709.040 in 709.0401–709.0407, e.g., surrealist painting 759.0663; however, for individual painters, see 759.1–759.9
For 1800–1899, see 759.05; for 2000–2099, see 759.07
- .07 *2000–2099

*Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for individual painters; class in 759.1–759.9

> **759.1–759.9 Geographic treatment**

Individual painters are classed in notation at country level only. Standard subdivisions —074, —075, and —092 from Table 1 are not added for individual painters, e.g., an exhibition of the work of a Canadian painter, collecting the person's works, and a biography of the painter 759.11 (*not* 759.11074, 759.11075, or 759.11092, respectively)

Class painting and paintings of nonliterate peoples in 759.011; class western painting of one or two specific periods in 759.02–759.07; class comprehensive works in 759

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to painting and paintings of a specific country, use one of the following:

(Option A: Place them first by use of a letter or other symbol for the country, e.g., Burmese painting and paintings 759.B [preceding 759.1])

(Option B: Class them in 759.1; in that case class painting and paintings of North America in 759.97)

.1 North America

For painting and paintings of Middle America, see 759.972

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to painting and paintings of a specific country other than United States and Canada, class them in this number; in that case class painting and paintings of North America in 759.97)

.11 Canada

Add to base number 759.11 the numbers following —71 in notation 711–719 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of Toronto 759.113541

.13 United States

Class painting and paintings of specific states in 759.14–759.19

See also 759.97295 for painting and paintings of Puerto Rico

.14–.19 Specific states of United States

Add to base number 759.1 the numbers following —7 in notation 74–79 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of San Francisco 759.19461

Class individual painters in 759.13

For painting and paintings of Hawaii, see 759.9969

> **759.2–759.8 Europe**

Class comprehensive works in 759.94

For countries and localities not provided for here, see the country or locality in 759.949, e.g., painting and paintings of Belgium 759.9493

.2 British Isles

Class here England

When classifying individual painters, England, Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland are considered to be separate countries. Therefore, an English painter is classed in 759.2, a Scottish painter in 759.2911, a Welsh painter in 759.2929, and a Northern Ireland painter in 759.2916

.21–.28 England

Add to base number 759.2 the numbers following —42 in notation 421–428 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of Manchester 759.2733

.29 Scotland, Ireland, Wales

Add to base number 759.29 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–42 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of Scotland 759.2911

.3–.8 Miscellaneous parts of Europe

Add to base number 759 the numbers following —4 in notation 43–48 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of France 759.4

.9 Other geographic areas**.91 Areas, regions, places in general**

Add to base number 759.91 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., Western Hemisphere 759.91812

Individual painters are classed in the notation for their respective countries, e.g., painters from Canada 759.11

.93–.99 Specific continents, countries, localities

Class here painting and paintings of specific periods, e.g., painting and paintings of 1800–1899 in South America 759.9809034

Add to base number 759.9 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., comprehensive works on painting and paintings of Europe 759.94, Etruscan painting and paintings 759.9375, painting and paintings of Hawaii 759.9969; however, for individual Hawaiian painters, see 759.13

Class works on one or two periods of European painting in 759.02–759.07, e.g., painting and paintings of 1800–1899 in Europe 759.05 (*not* 759.9409034); class painting and paintings from parts of Europe in notation 41–48 from Table 2 in 759.2–759.8

760 Printmaking and prints

For printing, see 686.2

Graphic arts relocated to 740

SUMMARY

- 760.1–.8 **Standard subdivisions**
- 761 **Relief processes (Block printing)**
- 763 **Lithographic processes (Planographic processes)**
- 764 **Chromolithography and serigraphy**
- 765 **Metal engraving**
- 766 **Mezzotinting, aquatinting, related processes**
- 767 **Etching and drypoint**
- 769 **Prints**

- [.044] **Iconography of graphic arts**
 Relocated to 740.4

- [.09] **History, geographic treatment, biography of graphic arts**
 Relocated to 740.9

- .1 **Philosophy and theory**
 Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below
- .11 **Appreciative aspects**
 Do not use for systems; class in 760.1
 Class psychological principles in 760.19
- .117 **Aesthetics**
- .118 **Criticism and appreciation**
 Including theory, technique, history
 Class works of critical appraisal in 769.9

- .18 **Inherent features**
 Including color, composition, decorative values, form, light, movement,
 perspective, space, style, symmetry, vision

- .2 **Miscellany**
- .28 **Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials**
 Notation 028 from Table 1 as modified below
 Class here basic techniques and procedures
 Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials for making
 specific kinds of prints in 761–767

- .7 **Education, research, related topics**
- .75 **Museum activities and services**
 Do not use for collecting; class in 769.12

- [.9] **History, geographic treatment, biography**
 Do not use; class in 769.9

- (.92) **Biography**
 (Optional number; prefer 769.92)

> **761–767 Printmaking**

Fine art of executing a printing block or plate representing a picture or design conceived by the printmaker or copied from another artist's painting or drawing or from a photograph

Techniques, procedures, equipment, materials

Class maintenance and repair in 769.0288; class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials of reproduction in 769.1; class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials employed by individual printmakers in 769.92; class comprehensive works in 760.28

761 Relief processes (Block printing)

Including raw potato printing, rubber-stamp printing

- .2 **Wood engraving**
 .3 **Linoleum-block printing**
 .8 **Metal relief engraving**

[762] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

763 Lithographic processes (Planographic processes)

For chromolithography, see 764.2

- .2 **Surfaces**
 .22 Stone lithography
 .23 Aluminum lithography
 .24 Zinc lithography

764 Chromolithography and serigraphy

- .2 **Chromolithography**
 .8 **Serigraphy**
 Class here silk-screen printing

765–767 Intaglio processes

Class comprehensive works in 765

765 Metal engraving

Class here comprehensive works on metal relief and metal intaglio processes, on intaglio processes

For metal relief engraving, see 761.8; for mezzotinting and aquatinting, see 766; for etching and drypoint, see 767

.2 **Line engraving**

.5 **Stipple engraving**

.6 **Criblé engraving**

766 Mezzotinting, aquatinting, related processes

.2 **Mezzotinting**

.3 **Aquatinting**

.7 **Composite processes**

Use of two or more processes in a single print

767 Etching and drypoint

.2 **Etching**

.3 **Drypoint**

[768] [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

769 Prints

Works produced using a printing block, screen, or plate

Class here description, critical appraisal, collections regardless of process

.075 **Museum activities and services**

Do not use for collecting; class in 769.12

[.09] **History, geographic treatment, biography**

Do not use; class in 769.9

.1 **Collecting and reproduction of prints**

Class collecting and reproduction of specific forms of prints in 769.5

.12 **Collecting prints**

.17 **Techniques of reproduction**

.172 **Reproductions and copies**

.174 **Forgeries and alterations**

.4 *Iconography

Add to base number 769.4 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., portrait prints 769.42; however, for individual printmakers, see 769.92

Class postage stamps by subject in 769.564; class printmakers regardless of subject in 769.92; class sports cards in 796.075

.5 *Forms of prints

Including lettering, inscriptions, designs on name cards, diplomas, decorative prints, art posters

Class prints other than postage stamps on a specific subject regardless of form in 769.4; class comprehensive works on posters in 741.674

For sports cards, see 796.075

.52 *Bookplates**.53 *Paper dolls****.55 Paper money**

Class here counterfeit paper money

[.550 9] History, geographic treatment, biography

Do not use; class in 769.559

.559 History, geographic treatment, biography

.559 001–.559 009 Standard subdivisions

Add to base number 769.55900 the numbers following —00 in notation 001–009 from Table 2, e.g., periodicals of the history of paper money 769.559005

.559 01–.559 05 Historical periods

Add to base number 769.5590 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., paper money from 20th century 769.55904

.559 1–.559 9 Geographic treatment, biography

Add to base number 769.559 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., paper money of France 769.55944; however, for individual printmakers, see 769.92

.56 Postage stamps and related devices

Standard subdivisions are added for postage stamps and related devices together, for postage stamps alone

Class here philately (study and collecting of stamps)

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 769.56 in the number coming first, e.g., counterfeit stamps depicting plants 769.562 (*not* 769.56434)

Class stamps other than for prepayment of postage in 769.57

*Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for individual printmakers; class in 769.92

- [.560 9] History, geographic treatment, biography
Do not use; class in 769.569
- .561 *United Nations postage stamps, postal stationery, covers
- .562 *Counterfeit postage stamps, covers, cancellations
- .563 *Postage stamps commemorating persons and events
- .564 Postage stamps depicting various specific subjects (Iconography)
Add to base number 769.564 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.943–704.949, e.g., postage stamps of plants of the world 769.56434; however, for individual printmakers, see 769.92
For stamps commemorating persons and events, see 769.563
- .565 *Covers
- .566 *Postal stationery
Postal-service-issued stationery (e.g., letter sheets, envelopes, postcards) bearing imprinted stamps
Class illustrated postcards in 741.683
- .567 *Postmarks, cancellations, cachets
Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
See also 769.562 for counterfeit cancellations
- .569 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .569 001–.569 009 Standard subdivisions
Add to base number 769.56900 the numbers following —00 in notation 001–009 from Table 2, e.g., periodicals of the history of postage stamps 769.569005
- .569 01–.569 05 Historical periods
Add to base number 769.5690 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., postage stamps from 20th century 769.56904
- .569 1–.569 9 Geographic treatment, biography
Add to base number 769.569 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., postage stamps from San Marino 769.5694549; however, for individual printmakers, see 769.92
- .57 *Stamps other than for prepayment of postage
Including Christmas seals, officially sealed labels, ration coupons; postage-due, postal savings, and savings stamps
- .572 *Revenue stamps

*Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for individual printmakers; class in 769.92

.9 History, geographic treatment, biography of printmaking and prints

Class the history of a specific process with the process, e.g., history of lithography 763.09

See Manual at 769.9

.900 1–.900 9 Standard subdivisions

Add to base number 769.900 the numbers following —00 in notation 001–009 from Table 2, e.g., periodicals of the history of printmaking 769.9005

.901–.905 Historical periods

Add to base number 769.90 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., printmaking in 20th century 769.904

.91–.99 Geographic treatment, biography

Add to base number 769.9 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., printmaking in England 769.942

.92 Biography

Number built according to instructions under 769.91–769.99

Class here engravers, printmakers

(Option: Class in 760.92)

770 Photography, computer art, cinematography, videography

Standard subdivisions are added for photography, computer art, cinematography, videography together; for photography alone

Class here conventional photography (photography using film), digital photography

Class technological photography in 621.367

See also 760 for hybrid photography

SUMMARY

- 770.1–.9 Standard subdivisions**
- 771 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials**
- 772 Metallic salt processes**
- 773 Pigment processes of printing**
- 774 Holography**
- 776 Computer art (Digital art)**
- 777 Cinematography and videography**
- 778 Specific fields and special kinds of photography**
- 779 Photographic images**

.1 Philosophy and theory

Notation 01 from Table I as modified below

- .11 Inherent features
 Do not use for systems; class in 770.1
 Including color, composition, decorative values, form, light, movement,
 perspective, space, style, symmetry, vision
- .2 Miscellany**
- .23 Photography as a profession, occupation, hobby
- .232 Photography as a profession and occupation
- .233 Photography as a hobby
- .28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
 *For comprehensive works on basic and auxiliary techniques and
 procedures, see 771*
- [.284] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use; class in 771
- .285 Computer applications
 Do not use for comprehensive works on digital photography; class
 in 770; however use subdivisions of 770.285 for specific computer
 applications in photography, e.g., application of computer programs to
 digital photography 770.28553
- [.286] Green technology (Environmental technology)
 Do not use; class in 771.40286
- .9 History, geographical treatment, biography**
- .92 Biography
 Class here photographers regardless of type of artistic photography
 Class photographs in 779. Class photographers associated with a specific
 application with the application, e.g., photojournalists 070.49092
 For motion picture, television, video photographers, see 777.092
 See Manual at 779 vs. 770.92

771 *Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Including techniques of pinhole photography, of photography without camera; comprehensive works on basic and auxiliary techniques and procedures

Class here interdisciplinary works on description, use, manufacture of apparatus, equipment, materials

Class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials used in special processes in 772–774; class techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials used in specific fields and special kinds of photography in 778

For auxiliary techniques and procedures, see 770.28. For manufacture of a specific kind of apparatus, equipment, material, see the apparatus, equipment, or material, e.g., cameras 681.418

.1 Studios, laboratories, darkrooms

Class laboratory and darkroom practice in 771.4

.2 Furniture and fittings**.3 Cameras and accessories**

Standard subdivisions are added for cameras and accessories, for cameras alone

Class here digital cameras

.31 Specific makes of cameras

Class here specific makes and brands of digital cameras [*both formerly 771.33*], specific brands of cameras

Arrange alphabetically by trade name

.32 Specific types of cameras that use film

Including 35mm, automatic, instant, large format, miniature, single-lens reflex

Class here specific types of digital cameras [*formerly 771.33*]

Class specific makes of specific types of cameras with film in 771.31

[.33] Digital cameras

Use of this number for comprehensive works on digital cameras discontinued; class in 771.3

Specific makes and brands of digital cameras relocated to 771.31; specific types of digital cameras relocated to 771.32

*Do not use notation 0285 from Table 1 for comprehensive works on digital photography; class in 770 and its subdivisions without use of notation 0285, e.g., digital trick photography 778.8; however, use subdivisions of notation 0285 for specific computer applications in photography, e.g., application of computer programs to digital trick photography 778.8028553. Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for photographers; class in 770.92

- .35 Optical parts of cameras
 Class optical parts of specific makes of cameras in 771.31
 For shutters, see 771.36; for focusing and exposure apparatus, see 771.37
- .352 Lenses
- .356 Filters
- .36 Camera shutters
 Class shutters of specific makes of cameras in 771.31
- .37 Focusing and exposure apparatus
 Including exposure meters, range finders, viewfinders
 Class focusing and exposure apparatus of specific makes of cameras in 771.31
- .38 Accessories
 Including carrying cases, tripods
- .4 *Processing of photographic images**
 Photographic images: negatives, positives, digital images, photographs, prints, slides, transparencies
 Class here comprehensive works on laboratory practice of photography and cinematography
 Class comprehensive works on photographic images in 779
 For chemical materials, see 771.5; for laboratory practice of cinematography, see 777.55
- .402 86 Green technology (Environmental technology)
 Including waste technology [*formerly also 771.47*]
- .43 *Preparation and manipulation of negatives
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here comprehensive works on negatives
 Class comprehensive works on darkroom practice in 771.44
 For preservation and storage of negatives, see 771.45; for organization and distribution of negatives, see 771.48

*Do not use notation 0285 from Table 1 for comprehensive works on digital photography; class in 770 and its subdivisions without use of notation 0285, e.g., digital trick photography 778.8; however, use subdivisions of notation 0285 for specific computer applications in photography, e.g., application of computer programs to digital trick photography 778.8028553. Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for photographers; class in 770.92

- .44 *Preparation and manipulation of positives
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Including developing and printing apparatus [*formerly* 771.49]; contact printing, enlarging, developing, mounting
- Class here preparation and manipulation of photographic digital images [*formerly* 775]; preparation and manipulation of photographs, prints, slides, transparencies; comprehensive works on positives, on darkroom practice, on preparation and manipulation of photographic images
- For darkroom practice involving negatives, preparation and manipulation of negatives, see 771.43; for preservation and storage of positives, see 771.46; for organization and distribution of positives, see 771.48; for darkroom practice of cinematography, see 777.55*
- .45 *Preservation and storage of negatives
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class here comprehensive works on preservation and storage of photographic images
- For preservation and storage of positives, see 771.46*
- Preservation and storage of slides and transparencies relocated to 771.46
- .46 *Preservation and storage of positives
- Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- Class here preservation and storage of slides and transparencies [*both formerly* 771.45]; preservation and storage of photographic digital images, photographs, prints
- For mounting, see 771.44*
- [.47] Waste technology
- Relocated to 771.40286
- .48 *Projection [*formerly* 778.2], organization, distribution of photographic images
- Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- For motion picture projection, see 777.57; for stereoscopic projection, see 778.4*
- [.49] Developing and printing apparatus
- Relocated to 771.44
- .5 Chemical materials**

*Do not use notation 0285 from Table 1 for comprehensive works on digital photography; class in 770 and its subdivisions without use of notation 0285, e.g., digital trick photography 778.8; however, use subdivisions of notation 0285 for specific computer applications in photography, e.g., application of computer programs to digital trick photography 778.8028553. Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for photographers; class in 770.92

- .52 Support materials
 - Including backings of cellulose compounds, ceramics, glass, metal, paper
- .53 Photosensitive surfaces
 - .532 Specific photosensitive surfaces
 - .532 2 Plates
 - .532 3 Papers
 - .532 4 Films
 - Class here comprehensive works on film used in photography and cinematography
 - For film used in cinematography, see 777.38*
- .54 Developing and printing supplies
 - Including developing, fixing, intensifying, reducing, toning solutions

> **772–774 Special photographic processes**

Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class processing techniques in specific fields and special kinds of photography in 778; class comprehensive works in 771

For photomechanical printing techniques, see 686.232

772 *Metallic salt processes

- .1 *Direct positive and printing-out processes
 - Early photographic processes
 - For platinum printing-out process, see 772.3*
- .12 *Daguerreotype process
- .14 *Ferrotype, tintype, wet-collodion processes

*Do not use notation 0285 from Table 1 for comprehensive works on digital photography; class in 770 and its subdivisions without use of notation 0285, e.g., digital trick photography 778.8; however, use subdivisions of notation 0285 for specific computer applications in photography, e.g., application of computer programs to digital trick photography 778.8028553. Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for photographers; class in 770.92

- .16 ***Kallitype processes**
- .3 ***Platinotype processes**
 Including platinum printing-out process
- .4 ***Silver processes**
 Use of silver halides in principal light-sensitive photographic emulsions

773 *Pigment processes of printing

Early photographic printing processes

- .1 ***Carbon and carbro processes**
 Including Mariotype, ozotype, ozobrome
- .2 ***Powder processes (Dusting-on processes)**
 Class xerography in 686.44
- .3 ***Imbibition processes**
- .5 ***Gum-bichromate processes**
- .6 ***Photoceramic and photoenamel processes**
- .7 ***Diazo type processes**
- .8 ***Oil processes**
 Including bromoil process

774 *Holography

Class here holographic images

[775] Digital photography

Use of this number for comprehensive works on digital photography discontinued; class in 770

Preparation and manipulation of photographic digital images relocated to 771.44

*Do not use notation 0285 from Table 1 for comprehensive works on digital photography; class in 770 and its subdivisions without use of notation 0285, e.g., digital trick photography 778.8; however, use subdivisions of notation 0285 for specific computer applications in photography, e.g., application of computer programs to digital trick photography 778.8028553. Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for photographers; class in 770.92

776 Computer art (Digital art)

Art objects produced using computers for display using computer output devices

Including artistic aspects of virtual reality

Class here comprehensive works on computer art and computer applications in the arts

For computer applications in the arts, see 700.285; for computer applications in fine and decorative arts, see 702.85; for computer music, see 786.76. For computer design of specific commodity, see the commodity, e.g., computer design of automobiles 629.231

See Manual at 776 vs. 006.5–006.7

.2 Graphics displayed on computer display devices**.4 Prints of computer graphics****.6 Animation and video**

For animated cartoon cinematography and videography, see 777.7

.7 Multimedia computer art

For web page design, see 006.7

777 Cinematography and videography

This schedule, which replaces that formerly appearing at 778.5, is new. A comparative table giving both old and new numbers for a substantial list of topics and equivalence tables showing the numbers in the old and new schedules appear in volume 1 in this edition

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here conventional cinematography (cinematography using film), digital cinematography and videography, amateur and professional cinematography and videography; home video systems, television photography, video art

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 777 in the number coming last, e.g., cameras used for special effects 777.9 (*not* 777.34)

Class comprehensive works on motion picture production and cinematography, interdisciplinary works on motion pictures in 791.43; class comprehensive works on television production in 791.45; class interdisciplinary works on television in 384.55. Class a specific application of cinematography, videography, or video art with the application, e.g., use of videography in diagnosis of diseases 616.075028, use of videos in performance art 709.04

See also 006.7 for interactive video

See Manual at 791.43, 791.45 vs. 777

.028 5 Computer applications

Do not use for comprehensive works on digital cinematography and videography; class in 777; however use subdivisions of notation 0285 for specific computer applications in cinematography and videography, e.g., application of computer programs to digital cinematography 777.028553

- .028 8 Maintenance and repair
Do not use for preservation; class in 777.58
- .092 Biography
Class here cinematographers and videographers regardless of type of artistic cinematography and videography
Class cinematographers and videographers associated with a specific application with the application, e.g., photojournalists 070.49092
- .3 †Apparatus, equipment, materials**
Class here interdisciplinary works on use and manufacture of apparatus, equipment, materials
For manufacture of a specific kind of apparatus, equipment, materials, see the apparatus, equipment, or material, e.g., cameras 681.418
- .34 †Cameras and camcorders
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topic in heading
- .36 †Recorders
- .38 †Recording formats
Class here DVDs, film
- .5 †Elements and modes**
Including electronic field production (EFP)
See also 070.43 for electronic new gathering
- .52 †Lighting
- .53 †Sound
- .55 †Editing and post-production
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
Including titling
Class here darkroom and laboratory practice
For animation, see 777.7; for special effects, see 777.9
- .57 †Projection and display

†Do not use notation 0285 from Table 1 for comprehensive works on digital cinematography and videography; class in 777 and its subdivisions without use of notation 0285, e.g., digital trick videography 777.9; however, use subdivisions of notation 0285 for specific computer applications in cinematography and videography, e.g., application of computer programs to digital trick videography 777.9028553. Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for photographers; class in 770.92

- .58 †Preservation and storage
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including restoration
See also 025.1773 for archiving of motion picture films and video recordings
- .6 †Specific kinds and types of cinematography and videography
 Including aerial, close-up, high-speed, infrared, macrography, micrography, panoramic, space, time-lapse, underwater cinematography and videography
- .65 †Stereoscopic cinematography and videography
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .7 †Animation
 Including stop motion
 Class here animated cartoons
 Class comprehensive works on animated cartoons in 791.4334
- .8 **Cinematography and videography of specific subjects**
 Add to base number 777.8 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., cinematography of animals 777.832, videography of landscapes 777.836; then, for either or both topics in heading, add further as follows:
 01 Philosophy and theory
 02 Miscellany
 0285 Computer applications
 Do not use for comprehensive works on digital cinematography and videography; class in 777.82–777.89 without use of notation 0285 e.g., digital cinematography of animals 777.832; however, use subdivisions of notation 0285 for specific computer applications in cinematography and videography, e.g., application of computer programs to digital cinematography of animals 777.832028553
 03–08 Standard subdivisions
 09 History, geographic treatment, biography
 092 Biography
 Do not use for cinematographers and videographers; class in 777.092
- .9 †Special effects
 Class here trick cinematography and videography

†Do not use notation 0285 from Table 1 for comprehensive works on digital cinematography and videography; class in 777 and its subdivisions without use of notation 0285, e.g., digital trick videography 777.9; however, use subdivisions of notation 0285 for specific computer applications in cinematography and videography, e.g., application of computer programs to digital trick videography 777.9028553. Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for photographers; class in 770.92

778 Specific fields and special kinds of photography

Class here interdisciplinary works on use and manufacture of apparatus, equipment, materials of specific fields and specific kinds of photography

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., color aerial photography 778.35 (*not* 778.6):

Special effects and trick photography	778.8
Photography of specific subjects	778.9
Stereoscopic photography and projection	778.4
Special kinds of photography	778.3
Photography under specific conditions	778.7
Color photography	778.6

Class photographs created by a specific field or kind of photography in 779

For manufacture of a specific kind of apparatus, equipment, materials, see the apparatus, equipment, or material, e.g., cameras 681.418

SUMMARY

778.3	Special kinds of photography
.4	Stereoscopic photography and projection
.6	Color photography
.7	Photography under specific conditions
.8	Special effects and trick photography
.9	Photography of specific subjects

[.2] Projection

Projection relocated to 771.48; comprehensive works on filmstrips, slides relocated to 779

.3 *Special kinds of photography

Not provided for elsewhere

Including Kirlian photography (high-voltage, high-frequency photopsychography)

Class a special kind of photography in relation to cinematography and videography in 777. Class a specific application of photography with the application, e.g., use of photography in astronomy 522.63

For technological photography and photo-optics, see 621.367

See also 133.892 for parapsychological aspects of Kirlian photography

Photography of specific subjects by special kinds of photography relocated to 778.9

.31 *Photomicrography

*Do not use notation 0285 from Table 1 for comprehensive works on digital photography; class in 770 and its subdivisions without use of notation 0285, e.g., digital trick photography 778.8; however, use subdivisions of notation 0285 for specific computer applications in photography, e.g., application of computer programs to digital trick photography 778.8028553. Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for photographers; class in 770.92

- .32 *Photography in terms of focus
- .322 *Telephotography
 *For aerial and space photography, see 778.35; for panoramic
 photography, see 778.36*
- .324 *Close-up photography
 Including photomacrography
- .34 *Infrared photography
 Interdisciplinary works
 For technological infrared photography, see 621.3672
- .35 *Aerial and space photography
 Including interpretation
 For photogrammetry, see 526.982
- .36 *Panoramic photography
- .37 *High-speed photography
 Including use of short-duration electronic flash
 Class use of normal photographic electronic flash (flashbulb photography) in
 778.72
- .4 ***Stereoscopic photography and projection**
 *For stereoscopic motion picture projection, see 777.57; for stereoscopic
 cinematography and videography, see 777.65*
 Stereoscopic photography and projection of specific subjects relocated to 778.9
- [.5] **Cinematography and videography**
 Relocated to 777
-
- > **778.6–778.8 Specific topics in photography**
 Class specific topics in relation to cinematography and videography in 777;
 class comprehensive works in 770
- .6 ***Color photography**
 Class here photography of colors
 Class color photomicrography in 778.31
 Color photography of specific subjects relocated to 778.9

*Do not use notation 0285 from Table 1 for comprehensive works on digital photography; class in 770 and its subdivisions without use of notation 0285, e.g., digital trick photography 778.8; however, use subdivisions of notation 0285 for specific computer applications in photography, e.g., application of computer programs to digital trick photography 778.8028553. Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for photographers; class in 770.92

.8 *Special effects and trick photography

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including composite, high-contrast, tabletop photography; photomontage; photography of specters, distortions, multiple images, silhouettes

.9 Photography of specific subjects

Class here photography of specific subjects by special kinds of photography [*formerly* 778.3]; stereoscopic photography and projection of specific subjects [*formerly* 778.4]; color photography of specific subjects [*formerly* 778.6]; photography of specific subjects under specific conditions [*formerly* 778.7]; comprehensive works on techniques of photographing, photographs of, and photographers of a specific subject

Add to base number 778.9 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., portrait photography 778.92; then add further as follows:

01 Philosophy and theory

02 Miscellany

0285 Computer applications

Do not use for comprehensive works on digital photography in the topic; class in 778.92–778.99 without use of notation 0285, e.g., digital portrait photography 778.92; however, use subdivisions of notation 0285 for specific computer applications in photography, e.g., application of computer programs to digital portrait photography 778.92028553

03–08 Standard subdivisions

09 History, geographic treatment, biography

092 Biography

Do not use for photographers; class in 770.92

779 Photographic images

Collections, history, criticism

Class here filmstrips, slides [*formerly* 778.2], transparencies; digital images, photographs, prints

Add to base number 779 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., photographic images of children 779.25

For processing of photographic images, see 771.4; for holographic images, see 774

See Manual at 779 vs. 770.92

*Do not use notation 0285 from Table 1 for comprehensive works on digital photography; class in 770 and its subdivisions without use of notation 0285, e.g., digital trick photography 778.8; however, use subdivisions of notation 0285 for specific computer applications in photography, e.g., application of computer programs to digital trick photography 778.8028553. Do not use notation 092 from Table 1 for photographers; class in 770.92

780 Music

After general topics (780 and 781) the basic arrangement of the schedule is based on the voice, instrument, or ensemble making the music. Any tradition of vocal music (e.g., classical, popular) is classed in 782–783; any tradition of instrumental music (e.g., classical, popular) is classed in 784–788

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 780 in the number coming last, e.g., sacred vocal music 782.22 (*not* 781.7)

When instructed, add the indicator 0 or 1 and the notation from the subdivisions coming earlier in the schedule, e.g., rock songs 782.42166 (*not* 781.66). In building numbers, do not add by use of 0 or 1 (alone or in combination) more than twice, e.g., history of rock protest songs 782.421661592 (*not* 782.42166159209)

(Option: Add as many times as desired)

This schedule does not distinguish scores, texts, or recordings

(Option: To distinguish scores, texts, recordings, use one of the following:

(Option A: Prefix a letter or other symbol to the number for treatises, e.g., scores for violin M787.2, violin recordings R787.2 or MR787.2; use a special prefix to distinguish miniature scores from other scores, MM787.2

(Option B: Add to the number for treatises the numbers following 78 in 780.26–780.269, e.g., miniature scores of music for violin 787.20265

(Option C: Class recordings in 789, e.g., recordings of folk music 789.2, recordings of violin folk music 789.2072)

See Manual at 780; also at 781.6 vs. 780, 780.9

SUMMARY

780.000 1–.099 9	Relation of music to other subjects
.1–.9	Standard subdivisions; analytical guides, program notes; texts; treatises on music scores and recordings; performances
781	General principles and musical forms
.01–.09	Standard subdivisions
.1	Basic principles of music
.2	Elements of music
.3	Composition
.4	Techniques of music
.5	Kinds of music
.6	Traditions of music
.7	Sacred music
.8	Musical forms

- 782 **Vocal music**
 .001-.009 **Standard subdivisions**
 .01-.08 **[General principles of vocal music and musical forms]**
 .1 **Operas and related dramatic vocal forms**
 .2 **Nondramatic vocal forms**
 .3 **Services (Liturgy and ritual)**
 .4 **Secular forms**
 .5 **Mixed voices**
 .6 **Women's voices**
 .7 **Children's voices**
 .8 **Men's voices**
 .9 **Other types of voices**
- 783 **Music for single voices**
 .001-.009 **Standard subdivisions**
 .01-.09 **[General principles of music for single voices, musical forms, nondramatic vocal forms]**
 .1 **Single voices in combination**
 .2 **Solo voice**
 .3 **High voice**
 .4 **Middle voice**
 .5 **Low voice**
 .6-.8 **Women's, children's, men's voices**
 .9 **Other types of voice**
- 784 **Instruments and instrumental ensembles and their music**
 .01-.09 **Standard subdivisions**
 .1 **General principles, musical forms, instruments**
 .2 **Full orchestra (Symphony orchestra)**
 .3 **Chamber orchestra**
 .4 **Light orchestra**
 .6 **Keyboard, mechanical, electronic, percussion bands**
 .7 **String orchestra**
 .8 **Wind band**
 .9 **Brass band**
- 785 **Ensembles with only one instrument per part**
 .001-.009 **Standard subdivisions**
 .01-.09 **[General principles of ensembles with only one instrument per part, musical forms, instruments]**
 .1 **Ensembles by size**
 .2 **Ensembles with keyboard**
 .3 **Ensembles without electrophones and with percussion and keyboard**
 .4 **Ensembles without keyboard**
 .5 **Ensembles without keyboard and with percussion**
 .6 **Keyboard, mechanical, aeolian, electrophone, percussion ensembles**
 .7 **String ensembles**
 .8 **Woodwind ensembles**
 .9 **Brass ensembles**
- 786 **Keyboard, mechanical, electrophonic, percussion instruments**
 .2 **Pianos**
 .3 **Clavichords**
 .4 **Harpsichords**
 .5 **Organs**
 .6 **Mechanical and aeolian instruments**
 .7 **Electronic instruments (Electrophones)**
 .8 **Percussion instruments**
 .9 **Drums and devices used for percussive effects**

- 787 **Stringed instruments (Chordophones)**
 .2 **Violins**
 .3 **Violas**
 .4 **Cellos (Violoncellos)**
 .5 **Double basses**
 .6 **Viols and related instruments**
 .7 **Plectral instruments**
 .8 **Plectral lute family**
 .9 **Harps and musical bows**
- 788 **Wind instruments (Aerophones)**
 .2 **Woodwind instruments and free aerophones**
 .3 **Flute family**
 .4 **Reed instruments**
 .5 **Double-reed instruments**
 .6 **Single-reed instruments**
 .7 **Saxophones**
 .8 **Free reeds**
 .9 **Brass instruments (Lip-reed instruments)**
- .000 1–.099 9 **Relation of music to other subjects**
 Works in which the focus is music
 Add to base number 780.0 three-digit numbers 001–999 (but stop before any zero that follows a non-zero number), e.g., music and literature 780.08, music and Welsh literature 780.0891 (*not* 780.089166), music and the performing arts 780.079 (*not* 780.07902)
 See Manual at 780.079 vs. 790.2
- .1 **Philosophy and theory, analytical guides, program notes**
 Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below
 For general principles, theory of music, see 781
- .14 **Communication, editing**
 Notation 014 from Table 1 as modified below
- .148 **Musical notation, abbreviations, acronyms, symbols**
 Including staff notation, neumes, tablature, tonic sol-fa; braille musical notation
 Class transcription from one form of notation to another in 780.149
- .149 **Editing**
- .15 **Analytical guides and program notes**
 Do not use for scientific principles; class in 781.2
- (.16) **Bibliographies, catalogs, indexes**
 (Optional number; prefer 016.78)
- (.162) †**Bibliographies and catalogs of music literature**
- (.164) †**Bibliographies and catalogs of scores and parts**
 Including bibliographies and catalogs of manuscript scores and parts

- (.166) †Discographies
 Bibliographies and catalogs of music recorded on phonorecords
 (cylinders, discs, wires, tapes, films)
 Including biodiscographies

- [.19] Psychological principles
 Do not use; class in 781.11

.2 Miscellany; texts; treatises on music scores and recordings

Notation 02 from Table 1 as modified below

- .202 Synopses and outlines
For synopses of stories and plots, see 782.00269

- .216 Lists, inventories, catalogs of music
 Class here thematic catalogs
 Class bibliographic catalogs of music in 016.78
For thematic catalogs of individual composers, see 780.92

- .26 Texts; treatises on music scores and recordings
 Standard subdivisions are added for a combination of two or more topics in heading, for scores alone
 In schedules other than 780, indicate scores, recordings, texts, and treatises about them by adding the numbers following 78 in 780.262–780.269, e.g., bibliography of music manuscripts 016.780262, bibliography of manuscripts of violin music 016.78720262, discography of violin music 016.78720266
See Manual at 780.26
 (Option: To distinguish scores and recordings within 780, add to the number for treatises the numbers following 78 in 780.26–780.269, e.g., miniature scores of music for violin 787.20265. Other options are described at 780)
 (Option: Class here law of music; prefer appropriate subdivisions of 340)

- > 780.262–780.265 Scores
 Class comprehensive works in 780.26
For words and other vocal sounds to be sung or recited with music, see 780.268

- .262 *Manuscripts
 Including autograph scores, sketch books

*(Option: Use this standard subdivision to distinguish scores and recordings; see details in note under 780.26)

†(Optional number; prefer 016.78)

- .263 *Printed music
 For performance scores, see 780.264; for study scores, see 780.265
 See also 070.5794 for music publishing; also 686.284 for music printing
- .264 *Performance scores and parts
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Including full scores, conducting scores, piano-vocal scores
- .265 *Study scores (Miniature scores, Pocket scores)
- .266 *Sound recordings of music
 Class here comprehensive works on music recordings
 For video recordings, see 780.267
 See also 781.49 for recording of music
- .267 *Video recordings of music
- .268 Words and other vocal sounds to be sung or recited with music
 Including librettos, lyrics, poems, screenplays
 Class here texts
 The words must be discussed in a musical context. If the words are presented as literature, folklore, or religious text, class the work in 800, 398, or 200, respectively, e.g., hymn texts presented as religious texts 264.23
 Use this number only for building other numbers, e.g., lyrics of songs 782.420268, texts of choral symphonies 784.221840268; never use it by itself
 Class comprehensive works in 782.00268
 For stories, plots, synopses, see 780.269
- .269 Stories, plots, synopses
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
 Including scenarios
 Use this number only for building other numbers, e.g., plots of operas 782.10269, synopses of choral symphonies 784.221840269; never use it by itself
 Class comprehensive works in 782.00269
- .28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
 See also 781.4 for techniques of music

*(Option: Use this standard subdivision to distinguish scores and recordings; see details in note under 780.26)

- .284 Apparatus, equipment, materials
Do not use for musical instruments; class in 784.19
See also 780.26 for scores; also 780.266 for recordings
- .285 Computer applications
For computer composition, see 781.34; for the computer as a musical instrument, see 786.76
- .7 Education, research, related topics; performances**
Notation 07 from Table 1 as modified below
Including use of apparatus and equipment in study and teaching
Class here special teaching and learning methods
- .72 Research
- .721 Research methods
Class here musicology
- .74 Museums, collections, exhibits
Do not use for festivals; class in 780.78
Exhibitions and fairs relocated to 780.78
- .76 Review, exercises, examinations, works for self-instruction
- .77 Special teaching and learning methods
For techniques for acquiring musical skills and learning a repertoire, see 781.42
- .78 Performances (Concerts and recitals)
Do not use for use of apparatus and equipment in study and teaching; class in 780.7
Class here exhibitions and fairs [*formerly* 780.74]; festivals [*formerly* 780.79]; performances at festivals and competitions
Add to base number 780.78 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., concerts in London 780.78421
See also 781.43 for performance techniques
- .79 Competitions, awards, financial support
Add to base number 780.79 notation 3–9 from Table 2 for geographic eligibility only, e.g., music competitions open to contestants from Italy 780.7945, music awards open to entries from the United States 780.7973, music fellowships limited to residents of California 780.79794
Class performances at competitions in 780.78
Festivals relocated to 780.78
- .8 Groups of people**

.89 Ethnic and national groups

For folk music, see 781.62

See Manual at 781.62 vs. 780.89

.9 **History, geographic treatment, biography**

No distinction is made between the music of a place and music in a place, e.g., Viennese music and music played in Vienna are both classed in 780.943613

Class critical appraisal in analytical guides and program notes in 780.15

See Manual at 781.6 vs. 780, 780.9

> 780.901–780.905 Periods of stylistic development of music

Even though the periods are those of western music, this does not limit the use of these numbers to western or European music only

Class here schools, styles, time periods not limited ethnically or by country or locality

Class comprehensive works in 780.9

.901 Ancient times through 499

.902 500–1449

Including Gothic style, ars antiqua, ars nova, medieval music

For 1450–1499, see 780.9031

.903 1450–

Class here modern music

For 1900–1999, see 780.904; for 2000–2099, see 780.905

.903 1 Ca. 1450–ca. 1600

Including Renaissance music

.903 2 Ca. 1600–ca. 1750

Including baroque music, nuove musiche

.903 3 Ca. 1750–ca. 1825

Including preclassicism, classicism, rococo style

Class here 18th century music

For rococo style of earlier period, music of 1700–1750, see 780.9032

.903 4 Ca. 1825–ca. 1900

Including nationalism, romanticism

Class here 19th century music

For music of earlier part of 19th century, see 780.9033; for 20th century nationalism, see 780.904

- .904 1900–1999
 Including avant-garde music, impressionism, neoclassicism
 For early impressionism, see 780.9034
- [.904 1–.904 9] Individual decades
 Do not use; class in 780.904
- .905 2000–2099
- .92 Biography
 Class here composers, performers, critics; thematic catalogs of individual
 composers
 Class general thematic catalogs in 780.216
 See Manual at 780.92; also at 780.92 and 791.092
 (Option: Class individual composers in 789)
- .94 Music of Europe
 Use only for works that stress that they are discussing the European origin
 and character of music in contrast to music from other sources

>

781–788 Principles, forms, ensembles, voices, instruments

Class here music of all traditions

(Option: 781–788 may be used for only one tradition of music; in that case, class all other traditions in 789. For example, if it is desired to emphasize western art music, class it here, and class all other traditions of music in 789, e.g., jazz 789.5; or, if it is desired to emphasize jazz, class it here, and class all other traditions of music in 789, e.g., western art music 789.8)

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 781–788 in the number coming last, e.g., jazz mass 782.323165 (*not* 781.65), Johann Sebastian Bach's cello sonatas 787.4183 (*not* 784.183)

Class comprehensive works in 780

781 General principles and musical forms

Class here music theory

Use the subdivisions of 781 only when the subject is not limited to voice, instrument, or ensemble. If voice, instrument, or ensemble is specified, class with voice, instrument, or ensemble; and then add as instructed. For example, rehearsal of music 781.44, rehearsal of opera (a form for the voice) 782.1144, rock music (both vocal and instrumental) 781.66, rock songs 782.42166

See Manual at 780.92

SUMMARY

781.01--.09	Standard subdivisions
.1	Basic principles of music
.2	Elements of music
.3	Composition
.4	Techniques of music
.5	Kinds of music
.6	Traditions of music
.7	Sacred music
.8	Musical forms

.01--.09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1--780.9, e.g., music theory during the Renaissance 781.09031

.1 Basic principles of music

.11 Psychological principles

For aesthetics, appreciation, taste, see 781.17

.12 Religious principles

.17 Artistic principles

Class here aesthetics, appreciation, taste

>

781.2--781.8 Other principles and musical forms

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

01--09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1--780.9, e.g., performances 078

1 General principles

Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1--781.7, e.g., rock music 166, rehearsing rock music 166144

In building numbers, do not add by use of 0 or 1 (alone or in combination) more than twice, e.g., history of rock protest songs 782.421661592 (*not* 782.42166159209)

(Option: Add as many times as desired)

Class comprehensive works in 781

.2 *Elements of music

Class here scientific principles

.22 *Time

For playing time, see 781.432

.222 *Pulse

.224 *Rhythm

.226 *Meter

*Add as instructed under 781.2--781.8

- .23 *Musical sound
- .232 *Pitch
- .233 *Volume
- .234 *Timbre (Tone color)
- .235 *Attack and decay
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .236 *Silence
 Including rests
- .237 *Intervals
 For consonance, see 781.238; for dissonance, see 781.239
- .238 *Consonance
- .239 *Dissonance
- .24 *Melody
- .246 *Scales and scalic formations
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class comprehensive works on modes in 781.263
- .247 *Ornaments
 Including embellishments, trills
- .248 *Themes
 Including subject, countersubject, idée fixe, leitmotif
 See also 780.216 for thematic catalogs
- .25 *Harmony
 Class here harmonic organization, comprehensive works on harmony and counterpoint
 Class intervals in 781.237; class figured bass in 781.47
 For homophony, see 781.285; for counterpoint, see 781.286
- .252 *Chords
 Including arpeggios
- .254 *Cadences
- .256 *Harmonic rhythm
- .258 *Tonality
 Key relationships
 For tonal systems, see 781.26

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

- .26 ***Tonal systems**
- .262 ***Diatonicism**
- .263 ***Medieval church modes**
 Class here comprehensive works on modes, modes of western folk music
 For other modes, see 781.264
- .264 **Other modes**
 Including ancient Greek modes, Byzantine echoi, Indian rāgas
 Class modes of western folk music in 781.263
- .265 ***Macrotonality**
 Tonality based on units larger than the diatonic whole tone
 Including pentatonicism
- .266 ***Whole tonality**
 Tonality based on scales of diatonic whole tones
- .267 ***Atonality**
 Music with no fixed tonic or key center
 For dodecaphony, see 781.268
- .268 ***Dodecaphony (Twelve-tone system, Note rows)**
 Class comprehensive works on serialism in 781.33
- .269 ***Microtonality**
 Tonality based on melodic units smaller than the diatonic semitone
- .28 ***Texture**
- .282 ***Monody**
 Music with a single melodic line
- .283 ***Heterophony**
 Music with a single melodic line simultaneously varied by two or more performers
- [.284] **Polyphony**
 Relocated to 781.286
- .285 ***Homophony**
 A dominant melodic line over chordal accompaniment

- .286 *Counterpoint
 Two or more independent melodic lines
 Class here polyphony [*formerly* 781.284]
 Class comprehensive works on harmony and counterpoint in 781.25
- .3 *Composition**
- .302 85 Computer applications
 Do not use for computer composition; class in 781.34
- .32 *Indeterminacy and aleatory composition
 Forms of composition based on chance
- .33 Serialism
- .330 1–.330 9 Standard subdivisions
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g.,
 performances of serial music 781.33078
- .331 Basic principles of serialism
- .331 1 Psychological principles
 For aesthetics, appreciation, taste, see 781.3317
- .331 2 Religious principles
- .331 7 Artistic principles
 Class here aesthetics, appreciation, taste
- .332–.338 Specific elements of serialism
 Add to base number 781.33 the numbers following 781.2 in
 781.22–781.28, e.g., serialized rhythm 781.3324; however, for atonality,
 see 781.267
- .34 *Computer composition
 See also 786.76 for computers as a musical instrument
- .344–.346 Computer science aspects
 Unless it is redundant, add to base number 781.34 the numbers following
 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital personal computers 781.34416, but use
 of digital computers 781.34 (*not* 781.344)
- .36 *Extemporization (Improvisation)
- .37 *Arrangement
 Including transcription
 For arrangements, see 781.38
- .374 *Orchestration

- .377 *Paraphrase and parody
- .38 *Arrangements
 See Manual at 781.38
- .382–.388 Original voice, instrument, ensemble of the arrangements
 Add to base number 781.38 the numbers following 78 in 782–788, e.g.,
 arrangements of violin music 781.3872
 Use these numbers only for building other numbers; never use them by
 themselves
- .4 *Techniques of music**
 For techniques of composition, see 781.3
- .42 *Techniques for acquiring musical skills and learning a repertoire
- .423 *Sight and score reading
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .424 *Listening and ear training
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .426 *Memorizing
- .43 *Performance techniques
 For extemporization, see 781.36; for specific performance techniques,
 see 781.44–781.48
 See also 784.193 for techniques for playing instruments
- .432 *Playing time
- .434 *Harmonization
- .436 *Transposition
- .438 *Ensemble technique
-
- 781.44–781.48 Specific performance techniques
 Class comprehensive works in 781.43
- .44 *Rehearsal and practice
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .45 *Conducting
- .46 *Interpretation
 Including rubato

- .47 *Accompaniment
 Including continuo (figured bass, thorough bass)
 See Manual at 781.47
- .48 *Breathing and resonance
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class breathing and resonance associated with instrumental performance in
 784.1932
- .49 *Recording of music
 *See also 006.5 for computer hardware and software used in digital
 sound recording; also 621.3893 for sound recording and reproducing
 equipment; also 780.266 for treatises on music recordings*
- .5 ***Kinds of music**
- .52 *Music for specific times
- .522 *Music for days of week
- .522 2 *Sunday
- .522 8 *Saturday
- .523 *Music for times of day
- .524 *Music for the seasons
- .524 2 *Spring
- .524 4 *Summer
- .524 6 *Fall (Autumn)
 Including harvest
- .524 8 *Winter
- .53 *Music in specific settings
- .532 *Outdoor music
 Including street music
- .534 *Indoor music
 For specific indoor settings, see 781.535–781.539

-
- > 781.535–781.539 Specific indoor settings
 Class music in religious settings in 781.7; class comprehensive works in
 781.534
- .535 *Domestic setting
- .536 *Court setting

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

- .538 *Theater setting
- .539 *Concert hall setting
- .54 *Music for specific media
 Background or mood music
- .542 *Film music
 See also 777.53 for sound synchronization of motion pictures
- .544 *Radio music
- .546 *Television music
 See also 777.53 for sound synchronization of television programs
- .55 *Music accompanying public entertainments
- .552 *Dramatic music
 Class here incidental music
 Class incidental music for specific media in 781.54; class dramatic vocal music in 782.1
- .554 *Dance music
 For ballet music, see 781.556
- .556 *Ballet music
- .56 *Program music
 Music depicting nonmusical concepts, e.g., music depicting the sea
 Class musical forms depicting nonmusical concepts in 784.18, e.g., nocturnes 784.18966
- .57 *Music accompanying activities
 Including inaugurations, initiations
 Class music accompanying stages of the life cycle in 781.58; class music reflecting other themes and subjects regardless of activity in 781.59
 See also 781.55 for music accompanying public entertainments
- .58 *Music accompanying stages of the life cycle
- .582 *Birth and infancy
 Including music for infant baptism and circumcision
 Class here music for confinement
- .583 *Attainment of puberty
 Including music for bar or bat mitzvahs
- .584 *Attainment of majority
 Including music for debuts

- .586 *Courtship and engagement
- .587 *Weddings and marriage
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .588 *Dying and death
 Including music for burials, cremations, funerals, mourning
- .59 *Music reflecting other themes and subjects
- .592 *Protest
- .593 *Work
- .594 *Sports and recreation
- .595 *Sea life
- .599 *Patriotic, political, military music
 Class here music commemorating historical events
 Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .6 *Traditions of music**
 Works emphasizing a specific tradition
 See Manual at 781.6; also at 781.6 vs. 780, 780.9
 (Option: If 781–788 is used for only one tradition of music, class all other traditions in 789)
- .62 Folk music
 Music originating within and associated with an ethnic or national group
 Class folk rock in 781.66172. Class a specific style of music provided for in 781.64–781.66 with the style, e.g., reggae 781.646, Afro-Cuban jazz 781.6572687291
 See also 780.9 for music of and performed in a specific location
 See Manual at 781.62 vs. 780.89; also at 781.62 vs. 781.63–781.66
- .620 01–.620 07 Standard subdivisions
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of folk music 781.620078
- .620 08 Groups of people
- [.620 089] Specific ethnic and national groups
 Do not use; class in 781.621–781.629
- .620 09 History, geographic treatment, biography

- .620 090 1–.620 090 3 Historical periods to 1900
 Add to base number 781.620090 the numbers following
 780.90 in 780.901–780.903, e.g., folk music of the
 Renaissance 781.62009031
- .620 090 4–.620 090 5 1900–2099
 Add to base number 781.620090 the numbers following
 —090 in notation 0904–0905 from Table 1, e.g., folk music
 of the 1970s 781.62009047
- .620 091 Areas, regions, places in general
*For geographic treatment of folk music of specific ethnic
 and national groups, see 781.621–781.629*
- .620 092 Biography
 Class here composers, performers, critics; thematic catalogs of
 individual composers
See Manual at 780.92; also at 780.92 and 791.092
 (Option: Class individual composers in 789)
- .620 093–.620 099 Specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds
*For geographic treatment of folk music of specific ethnic
 and national groups, see 781.621–781.629*
- .620 1–.620 5 General principles of folk music
 Add to base number 781.620 the numbers following 781 in
 781.1–781.5, e.g., folk music for springtime 781.6205242, rehearsing
 folk music for springtime 781.6205242144
- .620 6 Influence of other traditions of music
 Add to base number 781.6206 the numbers following 781.6 in
 781.63–781.69, e.g., influence of jazz on folk music 781.62065,
 performances of folk music influenced by jazz 781.62065078

.621–.629 Folk music of specific ethnic and national groups

Add to base number 781.62 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., Spanish folk music 781.6261; then add further as follows:

001–008 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under

780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of Spanish folk music
781.62610078

009 History, geographic treatment, biography

00901–00903 Historical periods to 1900

Add to base number 0090 the numbers following
780.90 in 780.901–780.903, e.g., Spanish folk
music of the Renaissance 781.6261009031

00904–00905 1900–2099

Add to base number 0090 the numbers following
—090 in notation 0904–0905 from Table
1, e.g., Spanish folk music of the 1970s
781.6261009047

[0093–0099] Specific continents, countries, localities

Do not use; class in 03–09

01 General principles

Add to 01 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5,
e.g., Spanish folk music for springtime 781.6261015242,
rhythm in Spanish folk music for springtime
781.62610152421224

02 Influence of other traditions of music

Add to 02 the numbers following 781.6 in 781.63–781.69,
e.g., influence of jazz on Spanish folk music
781.6261025, performances of Spanish folk music
influenced by jazz 781.6261025078

03–09 Specific continents, countries, localities

Add to 0 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Spanish folk
music in New York City 781.626107471

In building numbers, do not add by use of 0 or 1 (alone or in
combination) more than twice, e.g., history of Spanish protest folk-songs
782.421626101592 (*not* 782.42162610159209)

(Option: Add as many times as desired)

> 781.63–781.69 Other traditions of music

Add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01–08 Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.8, e.g., performances 078
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography
- 0901–0903 Historical periods to 1900
Add to base number 090 the numbers following 780.90 in 780.901–780.903, e.g., music of the Renaissance 09031
- 0904–0905 1900–2099
Add to base number 090 the numbers following —090 in notation 0904–0905 from Table 1, e.g., music of the 1970s 09047
- 1 General principles, influence of other traditions of music, hybrid styles
- 11–15 General principles
Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g., springtime music 15242, melody in springtime music 15242124
- 16 Influence of other traditions of music
Add to 16 the numbers following 781.6 in 781.62–781.69, e.g., influence of folk music 162, performances of music influenced by folk music 162078
See also 17 for hybrid styles
- 17 Hybrid styles
Fusion of two or more styles from different traditions of music to create a new style
Add to 17 the numbers following 781.6 in 781.62–781.69, e.g., fusion with folk music 172, folk rock 781.66172
See Manual at 781.6: Hybrid styles
See also 16 for influence of other traditions of music

In building numbers, do not add by use of 0 or 1 (alone or in combination) more than twice, e.g., history of rock protest songs 782.421661592 (*not* 782.42166159209)

(Option: Add as many times as desired)

Class comprehensive works in 781.6

.63 †Popular music

Class popular music originating within and associated with an ethnic or national group in 781.62

For western popular music, see 781.64

See Manual at 781.62 vs. 781.63–781.66

.64 †Western popular music

Class western popular music originating within and associated with an ethnic or national group in 781.62; class country music in 781.642

For jazz, see 781.65; for rock, see 781.66

See Manual at 781.62 vs. 781.63–781.66

- .642 †Country music
Class here bluegrass music; specific country music styles
- .643 †Blues
Class here traditional rhythm and blues; specific blues styles
Comprehensive works on rhythm and blues relocated to 781.644
- .644 †Soul
Class here comprehensive works on rhythm and blues [*formerly* 781.643], R&B; specific soul styles
For traditional rhythm and blues, see 781.643
- .645 †Ragtime
- .646 †Reggae
Class here specific reggae styles
- .648 †Electronica
Class here specific electronica styles
Class comprehensive works on electronic music in 786.7
- [.648 155 4] Dance music
Do not use; class in 781.648
- .649 †Rap
Class here specific rap styles
Class comprehensive works on rap in 782.421649
- .65 †Jazz
See Manual at 781.62 vs. 781.63–781.66
- [.651 7] Hybrid styles
Do not use; class in 781.657
- .652 †Early jazz
Class here origins of jazz
- .653 †Traditional jazz
Including New Orleans, Dixieland, Southwest and Kansas City, Harlem, white New York styles; Chicago breakdown
- .654 †Mainstream jazz
Including swing

- .655 †Modern jazz
Including bop (bebop), hard bop, cool jazz, progressive jazz
For avant-garde jazz, see 781.656
- .656 †Avant-garde jazz
- .657 Hybrid styles
Add to base number 781.657 the numbers following 781.6 in 781.62–781.69, e.g., Afro-Cuban 781.6572687291, Indo-jazz 781.657291411
Third stream relocated to 781.68175
- .66 †Rock (Rock'n' roll)
Class here specific rock styles
See Manual at 781.62 vs. 781.63–781.66
- .68 †Western art music (Classical music)
Limited to classical music as a tradition in contrast to other traditions
Class here comprehensive works on traditions of art music
Class classical music in general in 780
For nonwestern art music, see 781.69
- .681 75 Hybrid styles
Number built according to instructions under 781.63–781.69
Class here third stream [*formerly 781.657*]
- .69 †Nonwestern art music
- .7 **Sacred music**
Class sacred music accompanying stages of life cycle in 781.58; class works about church music that are limited to Christian church music in 781.71; class sacred vocal music in 782.22
- .700 1–.700 9 Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table I as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of sacred music 781.70078
- .701–.706 General principles of sacred music
Add to base number 781.70 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.6, e.g., harmonic rhythm in sacred music 781.70256, appreciation of harmonic rhythm in sacred music 781.70256117
- .71 Christian sacred music
For music of Christian church year, see 781.72

†Add as instructed under 781.63–781.69

- .73 *Sacred music of classical (Greek and Roman) and Germanic religions
 .74-.79 Sacred music of other religions and sects

Add to base number 781.7 the numbers following 29 in 294-299 for the religion or sect only, e.g., Jewish sacred music 781.76; then add further as follows:

- 001-009 Standard subdivisions
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1-780.9,
 e.g., performances of Jewish sacred music 781.760078
 01-06 General principles
 Add to base number 0 the numbers following 781 in
 781.1-781.6, e.g., harmonic rhythm in Jewish sacred music
 781.760256, appreciation of harmonic rhythm in Jewish
 sacred music 781.760256117

.8 *Musical forms

Class here formal analysis; works that do not specify voice, instrument, or ensemble

Class works for specific voice, instrument, or ensemble with the voice, instrument, or ensemble, e.g., Brahms' Variations on a theme by Schumann 786.21825 (*not* 781.825)

For vocal forms, see 782.1-782.4; for instrumental forms, see 784.183-784.189

- .82 Specific musical forms
 [.820 1-.820 9] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 781.801-781.809
- .822 *Binary, ternary, da capo forms
 Subdivisions are added for a combination of two or more forms
- .822 2 *Binary form
- .822 3 *Ternary form
- .822 5 *Da capo form
- .823 *Strophic form
- .824 *Rondos
 Including sonata-rondos
- .825 *Variations
 Including theme and variations
- .826 *Paraphrase forms
 Including musical parody
- .827 *Ground bass (Ostinato)
 Including chaconnes, passacaglias

*Add as instructed under 781.2-781.8

.828 *Cantus firmus

782 Vocal music

Class orchestral music with vocal parts in 784.22

For music for single voices, see 783

See Manual at 782; also at 782: Flow chart

SUMMARY

782.001–.009	Standard subdivisions
.01–.08	[General principles of vocal music and musical forms]
.1	Operas and related dramatic vocal forms
.2	Nondramatic vocal forms
.3	Services (Liturgy and ritual)
.4	Secular forms
.5	Mixed voices
.6	Women's voices
.7	Children's voices
.8	Men's voices
.9	Other types of voices

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of vocal music 782.0078

.01–.07 General principles of vocal music

Add to base number 782.0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., patriotic vocal music 782.0599, rhythm in patriotic vocal music 782.05991224

.08 Musical forms

Add to base number 782.08 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., vocal music in waltz form 782.08846

For vocal forms, see 782.1–782.4

*Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

> **782.1–782.4 Vocal forms**

Class here treatises about and recordings of vocal forms for specific voices and ensembles

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078

1 General principles and musical forms

11–17 General principles

Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., rock music 166, rehearsing rock music 166144

18 Musical forms

Add to 18 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., da capo form 1822, composition in da capo form 182213

In building numbers, do not add by use of 0 or 1 (alone or in combination) more than twice, e.g., history of rock protest songs 782.421661592 (*not* 782.42166159209)

(Option: Add as many times as desired)

Class comprehensive works in 782

.1 *Operas and related dramatic vocal forms

Regardless of type of voice or vocal group

Subdivisions are added for operas and related dramatic vocal forms together, for operas alone

Class here concert versions

See Manual at 782.1 vs. 792.5, 792.6

.109 2 Biography

Class here biographies of singers known equally well as opera and recital singers, of conductors known primarily as opera conductors

Class biographies of singers known primarily as recital singers in 782.42168092; class biographies of conductors known equally well for conducting operas and orchestral music in 784.2092

.109 4 European opera

Use only for works that stress that they are discussing European opera in contrast to operas from all other sources

.12 *Operettas

Class here zarzuelas

.13 *Singspiels

.14 *Musical plays

Musical plays differ from other dramatic musical forms by the fact that in them the action is predominantly outside the music, while in the other dramatic forms the action is predominantly in the music

Class here ballad operas, musicals, revues

For masques, see 782.15

See Manual at 782.1 vs. 792.5, 792.6

.15 *Masques

.2 *Nondramatic vocal forms

For secular forms, see 782.4

.22 *Sacred vocal forms

For specific sacred vocal forms, see 782.23–782.29

> 782.23–782.29 Specific sacred vocal forms

Class comprehensive works in 782.22

For services, see 782.3

.23 *Oratorios

Including passions

.24 *Large-scale vocal forms

Class here comprehensive works on cantatas

For oratorios, see 782.23; for secular cantatas, see 782.48

.25 *Small-scale vocal forms

Class here anthems [*formerly* 782.265], sacred songs

Unless otherwise indicated, if the forms are called motets, class them in 782.26; if called hymns, class them in 782.27; if called carols, class them in 782.28; otherwise, class them here

Class comprehensive works on songs in 782.42

See also 782.421599 for national anthems

.253 *Spirituals

.254 *Gospel music

.26 *Motets

Motets composed after 1600 limited to those using imitative polyphony in the style of Palestrina

- [.265] Anthems
 Relocated to 782.25
- .27 *Hymns
For carols, see 782.28
- .28 *Carols
- .29 *Liturgical forms
- .292 *Chant
 Including responses, e.g., litanies, suffrages
 Class here plainsong
 Class Gregorian chant in 782.3222; class Anglican chant in 782.3223

- > 782.294–782.298 Specific texts
 Class comprehensive works in 782.29
- .294 *Psalms
- .295 *Biblical texts
 Including amens, canticles
For psalms, see 782.294
- .296 *Non-Biblical texts
 Class parts of the mass in 782.323
- .297 *Tropes
 Accretions to the liturgy
For liturgical drama, see 782.298
- .298 *Liturgical drama
- .3 *Services (Liturgy and ritual)
 Musical settings of prescribed texts of specific religions
 Class texts used by a specific religion with the religion, e.g., liturgy and ritual of a Christian church 264
- .32 *Christian services
- .322 Services of specific denominations
- [.322 01–.322 09] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 782.3201–782.3209

.322 1–.322 9 Subdivisions for services of specific denominations

Add to base number 782.322 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., music for Lutheran services 782.32241; then add further as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of music for Lutheran services 782.322410078

01–07 General principles

Add to 0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., music for Lutheran Easter Sunday services 782.322410727, composition of music for Lutheran Easter Sunday services 782.32241072713

08 Musical forms

Add to 08 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., preludes for Lutheran services 782.3224108928, composition of preludes for Lutheran services 782.322410892813

Class specific liturgies of specific denominations in 782.323–782.326

> 782.323–782.326 Specific liturgies

Class comprehensive works in 782.32

.323 *Mass (Communion service)

This number is used for music including both the common and the proper of the mass. Masses written from 1350 to today are usually limited to the common and are thus classed in 782.3232. The major exception is the requiem mass, which is classed in 782.3238. Music for an individual part of the mass is classed with that part, e.g., gradual 782.3235

.323 2 *Common of the mass (Ordinary of the mass)

Including Kyrie, Gloria, Credo, Sanctus, Benedictus, Agnus Dei

For common of requiem mass, see 782.3238

.323 5 *Proper of the mass

Including introit, gradual, tract, sequence, offertory, communion

For proper of requiem mass, see 782.3238

.323 8 *Requiem mass

.324 *Divine office

Including matins, lauds, prime, terce, sext, none, vespers, compline

See also 782.325 for morning prayer; also 782.326 for evening prayer

.325 *Morning prayer

Including matins of the Anglican church

- .326 *Evening prayer
 Including evensong of the Anglican church
- .33 *Services of classical (Greek and Roman) and Germanic religions
- .34–.39 Services of other specific religions and sects
 Add to base number 782.3 the numbers following 29 in 294–299 for the religion or sect only, e.g., music for Jewish services 782.36; then add further as follows:
- 001–009 Standard subdivisions
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of music for Jewish services 782.360078
- 01–07 General principles
 Add to 0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., music for Jewish spring services 782.3605242, composition of music for Jewish spring services 782.360524213
- 08 Musical form
 Add to 08 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., preludes for Jewish services 782.3608928, composition of preludes for Jewish services 782.360892813
- .4 *Secular forms
- .42 *Songs
 Class here comprehensive works on songs
 For sacred songs, see 782.25
- .421 599 National anthems
 Number built according to instructions under 782.1–782.4
 See also 782.25 for sacred anthems
- .421 64 Western popular songs
 Number built according to instructions under 782.1–782.4
 Class comprehensive works on western popular music in 781.64
 For jazz songs, see 782.42165; for rock songs, see 782.42166
- .421 649 Rap songs
 Number built according to instructions under 782.1–782.4
 Class here comprehensive works on rap music
 For rap music limited to instrumental tracks, see the instrument, e.g., drum rap beats 786.91649

- .421 65 Jazz songs
 Number built according to instructions under 782.1–782.4
 Class comprehensive works on jazz in 781.65; class
 comprehensive works on western popular songs in 782.42164
- .421 66 Rock (Rock'n' roll) songs
 Number built according to instructions under 782.1–782.4
 Class comprehensive works on rock music in 781.66; class
 comprehensive works on western popular songs in 782.42164
- .421 68 Art songs
 Number built according to instructions under 782.1–782.4
 Class here lieder
- .421 680 92 Biography
 Number built according to instructions under
 782.1–782.4
 Class here biographies of singers known primarily as
 recital singers
 Class biographies of singers known equally well as
 opera and recital singers in 782.1092
- .43 *Forms derived from poetry
 Including ballads, ballets, chansons, frottole, villancicos
 Class here madrigals
 For villancicos that are Christmas carols, see 782.281723
- .47 *Song cycles
- .48 *Secular cantatas

>

782.5–782.9 Vocal executants

Add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01–09 Standard subdivisions
 - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078
- 1 General principles and musical forms
- 11–17 General principles
 - Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., rock music 166, rehearsing rock music 166144
- 18 Musical forms
 - Add to 18 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., da capo form 1822, composition in da capo form 182213
 - Class dramatic vocal forms in 782.1
 - For nondramatic vocal forms, see 2–4*
- 2–4 Nondramatic vocal forms
 - Add the numbers following 782 in 782.2–782.4, e.g., secular cantatas 48

In building numbers, do not add by use of 0 or 1 (alone or in combination) more than twice, e.g., texts of rock protest songs for mixed voices 782.5421661592 (*not* 782.54216615920268)

(Option: Add as many times as desired)

Use 782.5–782.9 for scores and parts of vocal forms for specific kinds of vocal ensembles, e.g., mixed-voice choirs 782.5, children's choirs 782.7. Use 782.1–782.4 for treatises about and recordings of vocal forms for specific kinds of vocal ensembles. Class performance techniques for a specific ensemble or form with the ensemble or form, e.g., breathing techniques for choral music 782.5148, for opera 782.1148

Class comprehensive works in 782

See Manual at 782

.5 †Mixed voices

Class here choral music, music intended equally for choral or part-song performance, choral music with solo parts, unison voices

For part songs, see 783.1

>

782.6–782.9 Types of voices

Class comprehensive works in 782

.6 †Women's voices

Class here music intended equally for women's or children's voices

Class music for children's voices in 782.7

.66 †Soprano voices (Treble voices)**.67 †Mezzo-soprano voices**

†Add as instructed under 782.5–782.9

- .68 †Contralto voices (Alto voices)
- .7 †**Children's voices**
 - Class music intended equally for women's or children's voices in 782.6
- .76 †Soprano voices (Treble voices)
- .77 †Mezzo-soprano voices
- .78 †Contralto voices (Alto voices)
- .79 †Changing voices
- .8 †**Men's voices**
- .86 †Treble and alto voices
 - Class here countertenor, falsetto, castrato voices
 - Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .87 †Tenor voices
- .88 †Baritone voices
- .89 †Bass voices
- .9 †**Other types of voices**
- .96 †Speaking voices (Choral speech)
- .97 †Sprechgesang
- .98 †Whistle

783 Music for single voices

Class here the voice

Use 783 for scores and parts of vocal forms for specific kinds or ensembles of single voice. Use 782.1–782.4 for treatises about and recordings of vocal forms for specific kinds or ensembles of single voice. Class performance techniques for a specific kind or ensemble of single voice or for a specific form with the kind, ensemble, or form, e.g., breathing techniques for part songs 783.1148, for opera 782.1148

See Manual at 782

- .001–.009 Standard subdivisions
 - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of music for single voice 783.0078
- .01–.07 General principles of music for single voices
 - Add to base number 783.0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., patriotic music for single voices 783.0599, rhythm in patriotic music for single voices 783.05991224

†Add as instructed under 782.5–782.9

- .08 Musical forms
 Add to base number 783.08 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., vocal music in waltz form for the single voice 783.08846
For dramatic vocal forms, see 782.1; for nondramatic vocal forms, see 783.09
- .09 Nondramatic vocal forms
 Add to base number 783.09 the numbers following 782 in 782.2–782.4, e.g., carols for single voices 783.0928
- .1 Single voices in combination**
 Class here part songs
 Class music intended equally for choral or part-song performance in 782.5
- .101–.109 Standard subdivisions
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of part songs 783.1078
- .11 General principles and musical forms
- .111–.117 General principles of single voices in combination
 Add to base number 783.11 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., patriotic part songs 783.11599, rehearsing patriotic part songs 783.11599144
- .118 Musical forms
 Add to base number 783.118 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., part songs in waltz form 783.118846, rehearsing part songs in waltz form 783.118846144
For dramatic vocal forms, see 782.1; for nondramatic vocal forms, see 783.119
- .119 Nondramatic vocal forms
 Add to base number 783.119 the numbers following 782 in 782.2–782.4, e.g., carols for single voices in combination 783.11928

> 783.12–783.19 Ensembles by size

Add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01–09 Standard subdivisions
 - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078
- 1 General principles and musical forms
- 11–17 General principles
 - Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., rock music 166, rehearsing rock music 166144
- 18 Musical forms
 - Add to 18 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., da capo form 1822, composition in da capo form 182213
 - Class dramatic vocal forms in 782.1
 - For nondramatic vocal forms, see 2–4*
- 2–4 Nondramatic vocal forms
 - Add the numbers following 782 in 782.2–782.4, e.g., secular cantatas 48
- 6–9 Types of voices
 - Add the numbers following 782 in 782.6–782.9, e.g., female voices 6; then add notation 01–09 and 1–4 from this table, e.g., secular cantatas for female voice 648

In building numbers, do not add by use of 0 or 1 (alone or in combination) more than twice, e.g., texts of rock protest songs for two singers 783.12421661592 (*not* 783.124216615920268)

(Option: Add as many times as desired)

Class comprehensive works in 783.1

- .12 †Duets
- .13 †Trios
- .14 †Quartets
- .15 †Quintets
- .16 †Sextets
- .17 †Septets
- .18 †Octets
- .19 †Nonets and larger combinations

†Add as instructed under 783.12–783.19

>

783.2–783.9 Solo voices

Add to each subdivision identified by ‡ as follows:

- 01–09 Standard subdivisions
 - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078
- 1 General principles and musical forms
- 11–17 General principles
 - Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., rock music 166, rehearsing rock music 166144
- 18 Musical forms
 - Add to 18 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., da capo form 1822, composition in da capo form 182213
 - Class dramatic vocal forms in 782.1
 - For nondramatic vocal forms, see 2–4*
- 2–4 Nondramatic vocal forms
 - Add the numbers following 782 in 782.2–782.4, e.g., secular cantatas 48

In building numbers, do not add by use of 0 or 1 (alone or in combination) more than twice, e.g., history of rock protest songs for high voice 783.3421661592 (*not* 783.342166159209)

(Option: Add as many times as desired)

Class comprehensive works in 783.2

.2 ‡Solo voice

Class here comprehensive works on types of single voices

For specific types of single voices, see 783.3–783.9

783.3–783.9 Specific types of single voices

Class single voices in ensembles in 783.12–783.19; class comprehensive works in 783.2

.3 ‡High voice

Class woman's soprano voice in 783.66; class child's soprano voice in 783.76; class man's treble voice and alto voice in 783.86; class tenor voice in 783.87

.4 ‡Middle voice

Class woman's mezzo-soprano voice in 783.67; class child's mezzo-soprano voice in 783.77; class baritone voice in 783.88

.5 ‡Low voice

Class woman's contralto voice in 783.68; class child's contralto voice in 783.78; class bass voice in 783.89

.6–.8 Women's, children's, men's voices

Add to base number 783 the numbers following 782 in 782.6–782.8, e.g., bass voice 783.89

‡Add as instructed under 783.2–783.9

.9 ‡Other types of voice

.96 ‡Speaking voice

.97 ‡Sprechgesang

.98 ‡Whistle

.99 ‡Voice instruments

Including didjeridu, mirliton (kazoo), roarers, voice disguisers (sympathetic instruments relying on the human voice for their sound production)

>

784–788 Instruments and their music

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078

See Manual at 784–788: Add table: 092

1 General principles, musical forms, instruments

11–17 General principles

Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., performance techniques 143

For techniques for playing instruments, see 193

18–19 Musical forms and instruments

Add to 1 the numbers following 784.1 in 784.18–784.19, e.g., sonata form 183, techniques for playing instruments 193

In building numbers, do not add by use of 0 or 1 (alone or in combination) more than twice, e.g., history of atonality in piano sonatas 786.21831267 (*not* 786.2183126709)

(Option: Add as many times as desired)

Class comprehensive works in 784

See Manual at 784–788

784**Instruments and instrumental ensembles and their music**

For ensembles with only one instrument per part, see 785; for specific instruments and their music, see 786–788

See also 787 for music for unspecified melody instrument

See Manual at 784–788

SUMMARY

784.01–.09

Standard subdivisions

- .1 **General principles, musical forms, instruments**
- .2 **Full orchestra (Symphony orchestra)**
- .3 **Chamber orchestra**
- .4 **Light orchestra**
- .6 **Keyboard, mechanical, electronic, percussion bands**
- .7 **String orchestra**
- .8 **Wind band**
- .9 **Brass band**

‡Add as instructed under 783.2–783.9

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 784.078

.1 General principles, musical forms, instruments

SUMMARY

784.11–.17 General principles of instruments and instrumental ensembles and their music

.18 Musical forms

.19 Instruments

.11–.17 General principles of instruments and instrumental ensembles and their music

Add to base number 784.1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., performance techniques 784.143

For techniques for playing instruments, see 784.193

.18 †Musical forms

> 784.182–784.189 Specific musical forms

Add to each subdivision identified by † as instructed under 781.2–781.8, e.g., composing waltzes 784.1884613

Class comprehensive works in 784.18

SUMMARY

784.182 General musical forms
.183 Sonata form and sonatas
.184 Symphonies
.185 Suites and related forms
.186 Concerto form
.187 Contrapuntal forms
.188 Dance forms
.189 Other instrumental forms

.182 †General musical forms

.182 2 †Binary, ternary, da capo forms

Subdivisions are added for a combination of two or more forms

.182 3 †Strophic form

.182 4 †Rondos

Including sonata-rondos

.182 5 †Variations

Including theme and variations

†Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

- .182 6 †Paraphrase forms
 Including musical parody
- .182 7 †Ground bass (Ostinato)
 Including chaconnes, passacaglias

> 784.183–784.189 Instrumental forms

Except for concerto form, comprehensive works on an instrumental form regardless of the executant are classed here, e.g., symphony form 784.184. Individual works and works for a specific executant are classed with the executant, e.g., Camille Saint-Saëns' Symphony No. 3 (for full orchestra including an organ) 784.2184, Charles Marie Widor's Symphony No. 5 (for solo organ) 786.5184

Class comprehensive works in 784.18

- .183 †Sonata form and sonatas
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class sonata-rondos in 784.1824
- .183 2 †Sonatinas
- .184 †Symphonies
 Including sinfoniettas
 Class symphonies, sinfoniettas for full orchestras in 784.2184
- .184 3 †Symphonic poems
 Class symphonic poems for full orchestras in 784.21843
- .184 5 †Sinfonia concertantes
- .185 †Suites and related forms
 Including cassations
 Subdivisions are added for a combination of two or more forms
- .185 2 †Divertimentos
- .185 4 †Partitas
- .185 6 †Serenades
- .185 8 †Suites
- .186 †Concerto form
 Use this subdivision only for concerto as a form other than solo instruments with full orchestra, e.g., concerto forms for wind bands 784.8186, Bartok's Concerto for orchestra 784.2186
 Including cadenzas, concertantes
 Class comprehensive works on concertos in 784.23

†Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

- .186 2 †Concertinos
- .187 †Contrapuntal forms
- .187 2 †Fugues
- .187 4 †Inventions
- .187 5 †Canzonas
- .187 6 †Fancies and ricercares
 Including innomines, tientos
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
See also 784.1894 for fantasias (an improvisatory form)
- .187 8 †Canons
- .188 †Dance forms
- .188 2 †European dance forms
 Including galliards, saltarellos
For dances of the classical suite, see 784.1883; for European dance forms of the 19th and later centuries, see 784.1884
- .188 23 †Pavans
- .188 3 †Dances of the classical suite
 Including gavottes, sicilianas
- .188 35 †Minuets
- .188 4 †European dance forms of the 19th and later centuries
 Including galops, mazurkas, polonaises
- .188 44 †Polkas
- .188 46 †Waltzes
- .188 5 †Asian dance forms
- .188 6 †African dance forms
- .188 7 †North American dance forms
 Including cakewalks, hoedowns, square dances
For Latin-American dance forms, see 784.1888
- .188 8 †Latin-American dance forms
 Including rumbas, sambas
- .188 85 †Tangos
- .188 9 †Dance forms of the Pacific Ocean islands and other parts of the world

- .189 †Other instrumental forms
 Class here small-scale and character instrumental forms
- .189 2 †Introductory forms
 Music preceding other music or other activities
- .189 24 †Fanfares
- .189 26 †Overtures
 Class here concert overtures
 Class overtures for full orchestras in 784.218926
- .189 28 †Preludes
- .189 3 †Intermediate forms
 Music for between or after other activities
 Including interludes, intermezzos, postludes, voluntaries
 Class voluntaries for organs in 786.51893
For incidental music, see 781.552
- .189 4 †Forms of music of an improvisatory or virtuoso nature
 Including arabesques, fantasias, impromptus
See also 784.1876 for fancies (a contrapuntal form)
- .189 45 †Rhapsodies
- .189 47 †Toccatas
- .189 49 †Artistic études
- .189 6 †Romantic and descriptive forms
 Including ballades, meditations, songs without words
- .189 64 †Elegies
- .189 66 †Nocturnes
- .189 68 †Romances
- .189 7 †Marches
- .189 9 †Forms derived from vocal music
- .189 92 †Forms derived from sacred music
 Including chorale preludes
 Class chorale preludes for organs in 786.518992
For instrumental forms derived from liturgical forms, see 784.18993
- .189 925 †Chorales

†Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

- .189 93 †Instrumental forms derived from liturgical forms
- .19 Instruments
 Class here acoustic form of instruments, electric form of instruments
For specific instruments, see 786–788
- .190 28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures
- [.190 284] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use; class in 784.19
- [.190 287] Testing and measurement
 Do not use; class in 784.1927
- [.190 288] Maintenance and repair
 Do not use; class in 784.1928
- [.190 94–.190 99] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 784.194–784.199
- .192 Techniques and procedures for instruments themselves
See also 784.193 for techniques for playing instruments
- .192 2 Description and design
- .192 3 Construction
For construction by machine, see 681.8
- .192 7 Testing, measurement, verification
- .192 8 Maintenance, tuning, repair
 Including temperament
- .193 †Techniques for playing instruments
 Class comprehensive works on performance techniques in 784.143
- .193 2 †Breathing and resonance
- .193 4 †Embouchure
 Including lipping, tonguing
- .193 6 †Arm techniques
- .193 62 †Forearm techniques
- .193 64 †Wrist techniques
- .193 65 †Hand techniques
For left-hand techniques, see 784.19366; for right-hand techniques, see 784.19367
- .193 66 †Left-hand techniques

†Add as instructed under 781.2–781.8

- .193 67 †Right-hand techniques
- .193 68 †Finger techniques
Including fingering, touch, vibrato
- .193 69 †Bowing techniques
- .193 8 †Leg techniques
Including pedaling
- .194--199 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
Add to base number 784.19 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., instruments of Germany 784.1943
- .2 *Full orchestra (Symphony orchestra)**
Class here comprehensive works on orchestral combinations, music intended equally for orchestral or chamber performance
For other orchestral combinations, see 784.3-784.9; for chamber music, see 785
- .209 2 Biography
Class here biographies of conductors known equally well for conducting operas and orchestral music
Class biographies of conductors known primarily as opera conductors in 782.1092
- .22 *Orchestra with vocal parts
- .23 *Orchestra with one or more solo instruments
Class here comprehensive works on concertos
For concerto form, see 784.186; for orchestra with more than one solo instrument, see 784.24; for orchestra with one solo instrument, see 784.25
- .24 *Orchestra with more than one solo instrument
Including concerti grossi
- .25 *Orchestra with one solo instrument
Class here comprehensive works on solo concertos
For specific solo instruments, see 784.26-784.28
- .26-.28 Specific solo instruments with orchestra
Add to base number 784.2 the numbers following 78 in 786-788, e.g., orchestra with solo piano 784.262, rehearsing orchestra with solo piano 784.262144

*Add as instructed under 784-788

†Add as instructed under 781.2-781.8

>

784.3–784.9 Other orchestral and band combinations

Add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078

1 General principles, musical forms, instruments

11–17 General principles

Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., sacred music 17, rehearsing sacred music 17044

18–19 Musical forms and instruments

Add to 1 the numbers following 784.1 in 784.18–784.19, e.g., waltz form 18846, bowing techniques 19369

2 Featured voices, instruments, ensembles

Add to 2 the numbers following 78 in 782–788, e.g., flutes 2832

Class comprehensive works on orchestral and band combinations, on band in 784; class comprehensive works on orchestral combinations in 784.2

.3 †Chamber orchestra*For chamber music, see 785***.4 †Light orchestra**

Class here salon orchestra

.44 †School orchestra**.46 †Orchestra with toy instruments****.48 †Dance orchestra (Dance band)**

Class here big bands

.6 †Keyboard, mechanical, electronic, percussion bands**.68 †Percussion band**

Class here rhythm band

.7 †String orchestra**.8 †Wind band**

Band consisting of woodwind instruments, brass instruments, or both

*For brass band, see 784.9***.83 †Marching band****.84 †Military band****.89 †Woodwind band****.9 †Brass band**

†Add as instructed under 784.3–784.9

785 Ensembles with only one instrument per part

Class here chamber music

Class works for solo melody instrument with keyboard or other accompaniment in 786–788

See Manual at 784–788

SUMMARY

- | | |
|--------------|---|
| 785.001–.009 | Standard subdivisions |
| .01–.09 | [General principles of ensembles with only one instrument per part, musical forms, instruments] |
| .1 | Ensembles by size |
| .2 | Ensembles with keyboard |
| .3 | Ensembles without electrophones and with percussion and keyboard |
| .4 | Ensembles without keyboard |
| .5 | Ensembles without keyboard and with percussion |
| .6 | Keyboard, mechanical, aeolian, electrophone, percussion ensembles |
| .7 | String ensembles |
| .8 | Woodwind ensembles |
| .9 | Brass ensembles |
| | |
| .001–.009 | Standard subdivisions |
| | Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of chamber music 785.0078 |
| | |
| .01–.07 | General principles of ensembles with only one instrument per part |
| | Add to base number 785.0 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., performance techniques 785.043, jazz ensembles 785.065 |
| | <i>For techniques for playing instruments, see 785.093</i> |
| | |
| .08–.09 | Musical forms and instruments |
| | Add to base number 785.0 the numbers following 784.1 in 784.18–784.19, e.g., waltz form 785.08846, techniques for playing instruments 785.093 |
| | |
| .1 | Ensembles by size |
| | These provisions, when applied throughout 785, refer to the number of instruments, except when percussion instruments are involved; in that case they refer to the number of performers |
| .12 | *Duets |
| .13 | *Trios |
| .14 | *Quartets |
| .15 | *Quintets |
| .16 | *Sextets |
| .17 | *Septets |
| .18 | *Octets |

*Add as instructed under 784–788

.19 *Nonets and larger ensembles

> **785.2–785.9 Specific kinds of ensembles**

Add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01–09 Standard subdivisions
 - Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances 078
- 1 General principles, musical forms, size of ensemble
- 11–17 General principles
 - Add to 1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.7, e.g., sacred music 17, conducting sacred music 17045
 - Class instrumental techniques for mixed ensembles in 784.193.
 - Class instrumental techniques for a specific instrument with the instrument in 786–788, e.g., bowing techniques for violins 787.219369
- 18 Musical forms
 - Add to 18 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., waltz form 18846
- 19 Size of ensemble
 - Add to 19 the numbers following 785.1 in 785.12–785.19, e.g., octets 198

In building numbers, do not add by use of 0 or 1 (alone or in combination) more than twice, e.g., history of atonality in piano duets 785.621921267 (*not* 785.62192126709)

(Option: Add as many times as desired)

Class comprehensive works in 785

> **785.2–785.5 Ensembles consisting of two or more instrumental groups**

Class comprehensive works in 785

.2 †Ensembles with keyboard

For ensembles without electrophones and with percussion and keyboard, see 785.3

- .22 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, keyboard
- .23 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, keyboard
- .24 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, keyboard
- .25 †Ensembles of brass, strings, keyboard
- .26 †Ensembles of woodwind and keyboard

Three or more instruments

See also 788.2 for ensembles of one woodwind instrument and keyboard

*Add as instructed under 784–788

†Add as instructed under 785.2–785.9

- .27 †Ensembles of brass and keyboard
 Three or more instruments
See also 788.9 for ensembles of one brass instrument and keyboard
- .28 †Ensembles of strings and keyboard
 Three or more instruments
See also 787 for ensembles of one stringed instrument and keyboard
- .29 †Ensembles with electrophones, percussion, keyboard
- .292 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, electrophones, percussion, keyboard
- .293 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, electrophones, percussion, keyboard
- .294 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, electrophones, percussion, keyboard
- .295 †Ensembles of brass, strings, electrophones, percussion, keyboard
- .296 †Ensembles of woodwind, electrophones, percussion, keyboard
- .297 †Ensembles of brass, electrophones, percussion, keyboard
- .298 †Ensembles of strings, electrophones, percussion, keyboard
- .299 †Ensembles with electrophones and keyboard
- .299 2 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, electrophones, keyboard
- .299 3 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, electrophones, keyboard
- .299 4 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, electrophones, keyboard
- .299 5 †Ensembles of brass, strings, electrophones, keyboard
- .299 6 †Ensembles of woodwind, electrophones, keyboard
- .299 7 †Ensembles of brass, electrophones, keyboard
- .299 8 †Ensembles of strings, electrophones, keyboard
- .299 9 †Ensembles of electrophones and keyboard
 Two or more electrophones
See also 786.7 for ensembles of one electrophone and keyboard
- .3 †Ensembles without electrophones and with percussion and keyboard**
- .32 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, percussion, keyboard
- .33 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, percussion, keyboard
- .34 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, percussion, keyboard
- .35 †Ensembles of brass, strings, percussion, keyboard
- .36 †Ensembles of woodwind, percussion, keyboard

†Add as instructed under 785.2–785.9

- .37 †Ensembles of brass, percussion, keyboard
- .38 †Ensembles of strings, percussion, keyboard
- .39 †Ensembles of keyboard and percussion
- .4 †Ensembles without keyboard**
- For ensembles without keyboard and with percussion, see 785.5*
- .42 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings
- .43 †Ensembles of woodwind and brass (Wind ensembles)
- .44 †Ensembles of woodwind and strings
- .45 †Ensembles of brass and strings
- .46 †Ensembles with electrophones
- .462 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, electrophones
- .463 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, electrophones
- .464 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, electrophones
- .465 †Ensembles of brass, strings, electrophones
- .466 †Ensembles of woodwinds and electrophones
- .467 †Ensembles of brass and electrophones
- .468 †Ensembles of strings and electrophones
- .5 †Ensembles without keyboard and with percussion**
- .52 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, percussion
- .53 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, percussion
- .54 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, percussion
- .55 †Ensembles of brass, strings, percussion
- .56 †Ensembles of woodwind and percussion
- .57 †Ensembles of brass and percussion
- .58 †Ensembles of strings and percussion
- .59 †Ensembles with electrophones and percussion
- .592 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, strings, electrophones, percussion
- .593 †Ensembles of woodwind, brass, electrophones, percussion
- .594 †Ensembles of woodwind, strings, electrophones, percussion
- .595 †Ensembles of brass, strings, electrophones, percussion
- .596 †Ensembles of woodwind, electrophones, percussion
- .597 †Ensembles of brass, electrophones, percussion

- .598 †Ensembles of strings, electrophones, percussion
 .599 †Ensembles of electrophones and percussion

> **785.6–785.9 Ensembles consisting of only one instrumental group**

The inclusion of “only one kind” in the 785.6–785.9 headings limits the subdivisions to individual kind of instruments, not to family of instruments. For example, a string quartet, which usually consists of two violins, a viola, and a cello is classed in 785.7194 string quartets, not 785.72194 violin quartets

When adding from 786–788 to indicate the instrument, add only the notation for the instrument; do not follow the footnote leading to add instructions. After indicating the instrument, add as instructed under 785.2–785.9, where notation 19 is used to indicate size of ensemble. For example, 785.7194 means string quartets, not string instruments of Europe (the meaning that would result from following the footnote instruction). The correct number for string quartets of Europe is 785.7194094

Class comprehensive works in 785

.6 †Keyboard, mechanical, aeolian, electrophone, percussion ensembles

.62–.65 Keyboard ensembles

Add to base number 785.6 the numbers following 786 in 786.2–786.5 for the instrument only, e.g., music for piano ensembles 785.62; then add further as instructed under 785.2–785.9, e.g., music for three pianos 785.62193

Notation 19 from table under 785.2–785.9 for size of ensemble can mean either number of instruments or, when only one instrument is used, number of performers. For example, 785.62192 can mean either music for two pianos or music for piano (four hands)

.66 †Ensembles of mechanical and aeolian instruments

Subdivisions are added for ensembles of mechanical and aeolian instruments together, for ensembles of mechanical instruments alone

.664–.668 Ensembles with only one kind of mechanical instrument

Add to base number 785.66 the numbers following 786.6 in 786.64–786.68 for the instrument only, e.g., music for carillons 785.664

.669 †Aeolian ensembles

.67 †Electrophone ensembles

For ensembles of a specific kind or group of electrically amplified or modified standard instruments, see the instrument or group of instruments, e.g., electric guitar ensembles 785.787

See also 786.7 for electronic music for one performer

.673–.676 Ensembles with only one type of electrophone instrument

Add to base number 785.67 the numbers following 786.7 in 786.73–786.76 for the instrument only, e.g., music for synthesizers 785.674; then add further as instructed under 785.2–785.9, e.g., sextets for synthesizers 785.674196

†Add as instructed under 785.2–785.9

.68 †Percussion ensembles

Class here ensembles for more than one performer; see note under 785.1

See also 786.8 for percussion music for one performer

.7 †String ensembles

Class here bowed string ensembles

.72–.79 Ensembles of only one kind of stringed instrument

Add to base number 785.7 the numbers following 787 in 787.2–787.9 for the instrument only, e.g., music for guitar 785.787; then add further as instructed under 785.2–785.9, e.g., quartet for guitars 785.787194

.8 †Woodwind ensembles**.83–.88 Ensembles of only one kind of woodwind instrument**

Add to base number 785.8 the numbers following 788 in 788.3–788.8 for the instrument only, e.g., music for saxophones 785.87; then add further as instructed under 785.2–785.9, e.g., quartet for saxophones 785.87194

.9 †Brass ensembles**.92–.99 Ensembles of only one kind of brass instrument**

Add to base number 785.9 the numbers following 788.9 in 788.92–788.99 for the instrument only, e.g., music for trombones 785.93; then add further as instructed under 785.2–785.9, e.g., quartet for trombones 785.93194

>

786–788 Specific instruments and their music

Class here music for solo instrument, music for solo instrument accompanied by one other instrument when the accompanying instrument clearly has a subsidiary role; acoustic form of instruments, electric form of instruments

Unless the forerunner of a modern instrument has its own notation, class it with the modern instrument. For example, the shawm, a forerunner of the oboe and an instrument without its own number, is classed with the oboe in 788.52; however, the vihuela, the forerunner of the guitar, is classed in 787.86 (its own number), not with the guitar in 787.87

Class chamber music in 785; class comprehensive works in 784

For voice instruments, see 783.99

786 *Keyboard, mechanical, electrophonic, percussion instruments

Class here comprehensive works on keyboard instruments, on keyboard stringed instruments; music for unspecified keyboard instrument

See Manual at 784–788

*Add as instructed under 784–788

†Add as instructed under 785.2–785.9

SUMMARY

786.2	Pianos
.3	Clavichords
.4	Harpichords
.5	Organs
.6	Mechanical and aeolian instruments
.7	Electronic instruments (Electrophones)
.8	Percussion instruments
.9	Drums and devices used for percussive effects

> **786.2–786.5 Keyboard instruments**

Class mechanical keyboard instruments in 786.66; class keyboard idiophones in 786.83; class comprehensive works in 786. Class music for more than one performer on one keyboard instrument as an ensemble with the ensemble in 785.62–785.65, e.g., piano (four hands) 785.62192

> **786.2–786.4 Keyboard stringed instruments**

Class comprehensive works in 786

.2 *Pianos

.28 *Prepared pianos

.3 *Clavichords

.4 *Harpichords

Class here spinets, virginals

.5 *Organs

Class here keyboard wind instruments

Class concertinas in 788.84; class accordions in 788.86

.55 *Reed organs and regals

Variant names for reed organs: American organs, cabinet organs, harmoniums

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.59 *Electronic organs

Class here comprehensive works on keyboard electrophones

Class a keyboard instrument whose sound is generated by conventional means, even though amplified or modified electronically, with the instrument, e.g., electric piano 786.2

See also 786.74 for synthesizers

.6 *Mechanical and aeolian instruments

Subdivisions are added for mechanical and aeolian instruments together, for mechanical instruments alone

> 786.64–786.68 Mechanical instruments

Class comprehensive works in 786.6

.64 *Mechanical struck idiophones

Including carillons, mechanized bells

Class here comprehensive works on mechanical idiophones

For mechanical plucked idiophones, see 786.65

.65 *Mechanical plucked idiophones

Including music boxes, symphonions

.66 *Mechanical keyboard instruments

Mechanical instruments with attached functional keyboard

Including player pianos (pianolas)

Class mechanical wind keyboard instruments in 786.68

.67 *Mechanical stringed instruments

Class mechanical stringed keyboard instruments in 786.66

.68 *Mechanical wind instruments

Including fair organs

.69 *Aeolian instruments

Instruments activated by the blowing of the wind

.7 *Electronic instruments (Electrophones)

Class here electronic music in the sense of music with a focus on electronically produced or manipulated sounds; comprehensive works on electronic music

Class keyboard electrophones in 786.59. Class a specific electrically amplified or modified acoustic instrument with the instrument, e.g., electric guitar 787.87

For electronica, see 781.648

.73 *Monophonic electrophones

Electronic sound producers capable of producing only one pitch at a time

Including ondes martenot, theremins

.74 *Synthesizers

For tapes, see 786.75; for computers, see 786.76

Use of this number for comprehensive works on electronic music discontinued; class in 786.7

.75 Tapes

Class here musique concrète (concrete music)

.76 Computers

See also 781.34 for using computers to compose music

.8 *Percussion instruments

For drums, see 786.92–786.98; for struck stringed instruments, see 787.7

.82 *Idiophones (Vibrating sonorous solids)

Class here comprehensive works on percussion instruments of definite pitch

Class percussion instruments of indefinite pitch in 786.88

For mechanical idiophones, see 786.64; for keyboard idiophones, see 786.83; for set idiophones, see 786.84–786.87; for single idiophones, see 786.88

.83 *Keyboard idiophones

Class here celestas

> 786.84–786.87 Set idiophones

Class comprehensive works in 786.84

.84 *Percussed idiophones

Sonorous solids struck by or against nonsonorous objects, e.g., sticks struck on ground

Class here comprehensive works on set idiophones (similar sonorous solids combined to form one instrument)

For plucked idiophones, see 786.85; for friction idiophones, see 786.86; for concussion idiophones, see 786.87

.842–.848 Sonorous solids of specific shapes

Add to base number 786.84 the numbers following 786.884 in 786.8842–786.8848, e.g., bar idiophones 786.843, performances on bar idiophones 786.843078

.85 *Plucked idiophones

Elastic bars or rods, usually of metal, fixed at one end and vibrated by plucking the free end

Including sanzas (thumb pianos)

- .86 *Friction idiophones
 Objects rubbed to produce sounds of definite pitch
- .862–.868 Sonorous solids of specific shapes
 Add to base number 786.86 the numbers following 786.884 in
 786.8842–786.8848, e.g., vessels 786.866, rehearsing on vessels
 786.866144
- .87 *Concussion idiophones
 Two or more similar sonorous objects struck together to make both vibrate
- .872–.878 Sonorous objects of specific shapes
 Add to base number 786.87 the numbers following 786.884 in
 786.8842–786.8848, e.g., blocks 786.873, rehearsing playing of blocks
 786.873144
- .88 *Single idiophones
 Idiophones consisting of a single sonorous object
 Class here comprehensive works on percussion instruments of indefinite
 pitch
 *For a specific percussion instrument of indefinite pitch not provided for
 here, see the instrument, e.g., cymbals 786.873*
- .884 *Percussed idiophones
- .884 2 *Sticks and rods
 Including triangles
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .884 3 *Bars, plates, blocks
 Including anvils, gongs
 Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .884 4 *Troughs
- .884 5 *Tubes
- .884 6 *Vessels
 For bells, see 786.8848
- .884 8 *Bells
- .884 85 *Hand bells
- .885 *Rattled idiophones
 Including maracas, sistrums

- .886 *Scraped idiophones
 Idiophones consisting of two objects, a notched one being scraped by the other to create vibrations in one or the other
 Including football rattles, washboards
- .887 *Plucked idiophones
 Including jew's harps
- .888 *Friction idiophones
 Including musical saws

.9 *Drums and devices used for percussive effects

Subdivisions are added for drums and devices used for percussive effects together, for drums alone

> 786.92–786.98 Drums (Membranophones, Vibrating stretched membranes)

Class comprehensive works in 786.9

- .92 *Struck drums
 For kettle-shaped drums, see 786.93; for tubular drums, see 786.94; for frame-shaped drums, see 786.95
- .93 *Kettle-shaped drums
 Including timpani (kettledrums), nakers (naqara), tabla
- .94 *Tubular drums
 Including snare drums (side drums)
- .95 *Frame-shaped drums
 Drums with depth of body not exceeding radius of membrane
 Including bass drums, tambourines
- .96 *Rattle drums
 Drums whose membrane or membranes are struck by pellets or pendants
- .97 *Plucked drums
 Drums each with a string that when plucked transmits a vibration to the membrane through which the string passes
- .98 *Friction drums
 Drums whose membrane is made to vibrate by being rubbed either directly or by an attached stick or cord
 Including quicas, rommelpots

- .99 *Devices used for percussion effects
 Including motor horns, popguns, sirens, whips

787 *Stringed instruments (Chordophones)

Class here bowed string instruments, music for unspecified melody instrument, comprehensive works on the lute family (instruments whose strings run from the resonating belly to the neck)

Class keyboard stringed instruments in 786; class mechanical stringed instruments in 786.67

See Manual at 784–788

.2 *Violins

Class here comprehensive works on violin family

For violas, see 787.3; for cellos, see 787.4; for double basses, see 787.5

.3 *Violas

.4 *Cellos (Violoncellos)

.5 *Double basses

.6 *Viols and related instruments

Subdivisions are added for viols and related instruments together, for viols alone

For double basses, see 787.5

.62 *Descant viols

.63 *Treble viols

.64 *Tenor viols

.65 *Bass viols (Viola da gambas)

.66 *Viola d'amores

.69 *Hurdy-gurdies (Vielles)

.7 *Plectral instruments

Class here zithers, comprehensive works on struck stringed instruments

For plectral lute family, see 787.8; for harps and musical bows, see 787.9

> 787.72–787.75 Zithers

Class comprehensive works in 787.7

.72 *Stick, tube, trough zithers

Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

- .73 *Frame, ground, harp, raft zithers
 Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
- .74 *Board zithers
 Including cimbaloms, dulcimers, santirs, yang ch'ins
 Class here struck board zithers
 For plucked board zithers, see 787.75
- .75 *Plucked board zithers
 Including Appalachian dulcimers, autoharps, concert zithers, psalteries,
 Tyrolean zithers
- .78 *Lyres
- .8 *Plectral lute family**
 Class here long-necked, short-necked lutes
- .82 *Round-backed lute family
 Including sitars, tamburas
 For lutes, see 787.83; for mandolins, see 787.84
- .83 *Lutes
- .84 *Mandolins
- .85 *Flat-backed lute family
 Including biwas, citterns, shamisens
 *For vihuelas, see 787.86; for guitars, see 787.87; for banjos, see 787.88;
 for ukuleles, see 787.89*
- .86 *Vihuelas
- .87 *Guitars
- .875 *Balalaikas
- .88 *Banjos
- .89 *Ukuleles
- .9 *Harps and musical bows**
 Subdivisions are added for harps and musical bows together, for harps alone
- .92 *Musical bows
 Stringed instruments each with one or more strings stretched across a single
 flexible string bearer
 Class pluriarcs in 787.93
 See also 787.19 for the bow of bowed instruments

- .93 *Pluriarcs (Compound musical bows)
 Stringed instruments with strings stretched across several string bearers

> 787.94–787.98 Harps

Class comprehensive works in 787.9

- .94 *Bow harps (Arched harps) and angle harps
 Harps with neck forming an arch with the resonator
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

- .95 *Frame harps
 Harps with pillar joining end of neck to resonator
 Including Celtic harps, orchestral harps

- .98 *Bridge harps (Harp-lutes)
 Lute-bodied harps with strings that are perpendicular to body of the harp and
 that pass through a bridge
 Including koras

788 *Wind instruments (Aerophones)

Class keyboard wind instruments in 786.5; class mechanical wind instruments in 786.68

See Manual at 784–788

.2 *Woodwind instruments and free aerophones

Subdivisions are added for woodwind instruments and free aerophones together,
 for woodwind instruments alone

For specific woodwind instruments, see 788.3–788.8

.29 *Free aerophones

Aerophones in which the airstream is not directed into or through a cavity
 or tube but directly into the outer air, or the air remains static and the
 instrument when moved vibrates through friction with the air

Including bull-roarers

Class free aerophones used for percussion effects in 786.99

> **788.3–788.8 Specific woodwind instruments**

Class comprehensive works in 788.2

.3 *Flute family

Including nose flutes

- .32 *Transverse flutes (Side-blown flutes)
 Variant name: flutes
 For piccolos and fifes, see 788.33; for bass flutes, see 788.34
- .33 *Piccolos and fifes
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .34 *Bass flutes
- .35 *Duct, end-blown, notched flutes
 Including flageolots, penny whistles, shakuhachis
 Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
 For recorders, see 788.36
- .36 *Recorders
- .363 *Sopranino recorders
- .364 *Descant recorders (Soprano recorders)
- .365 *Treble recorders (Alto recorders)
- .366 *Tenor recorders
- .367 *Bass recorders
- .37 *Multiple flutes
 Several flutes formed into one instrument
 Class here pan pipes
- .38 *Vessel flutes
 Including ocarinas
- .4 ***Reed instruments**
 For double-reed instruments, see 788.5; for single-reed instruments, see 788.6; for free reeds, see 788.8
- .49 *Bagpipes
 Including cornemuses; Northumbrian, uilleann (union) pipes
 Class here single-reed and double-reed bagpipes
- .5 ***Double-reed instruments**
 Including crumhorns, racketts
 For bagpipes, see 788.49
- .52 *Oboes
- .53 *Cors anglais (English horns)

- .58 ***Bassoons**
 For double bassoons, see 788.59
- .59 ***Double bassoons (Contrabassoons)**
- .6 ***Single-reed instruments**
 For bagpipes, see 788.49; for saxophones, see 788.7
- .62 ***Clarinets**
 For bass clarinets, see 788.65
- .65 ***Bass clarinets**
- .7 ***Saxophones**
- .72 ***Soprano saxophones**
- .73 ***Alto saxophones**
- .74 ***Tenor saxophones**
- .75 ***Bass saxophones**
- .8 ***Free reeds**
 Instruments consisting of sets of individual free reeds
- .82 ***Mouth organs**
 Including shengs
 Class here harmonicicas
- .84 ***Concertinas**
 Including bandoneons
- .86 ***Accordions**
- .863 ***Button accordions**
 Class here melodeons
- .865 ***Piano accordions**
- .9 ***Brass instruments (Lip-reed instruments)**
- .92 ***Trumpets**
- .93 ***Trombones**
- .94 ***French horns (Horns)**
 See also 788.53 for English horns
- .95 ***Bugles**
- .96 ***Cornets**
- .97 ***Flugelhorns (Saxhorns)**

- .974 *Tenor horns
 Including B-flat horns (also called baritones in United Kingdom and Germany), E-flat horns (also called alto horns in North America and France)
- .975 *Euphoniums and baritones (American)
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .98 *Tubas
- .99 *Other brass instruments
 Including cornetts, ophicleides, serpents

(789) **Composers and traditions of music**

(Optional number and subdivisions; prefer 780 for music as a whole; prefer 781–788 for principles, forms, ensembles, voices, instruments)

(Option A: Arrange treatises about all composers at 789 plus an alphabetizing mark; then to the result add further as follows:

01–09 Music as a whole

 Add the numbers following 78 in 780.1–780.9, e.g., manuscripts 0262

1–8 Principles, forms, ensembles, voices, instruments

 Add the numbers following 78 in 781–788, e.g., vocal music 2

(Option B: Use 789 and its subdivisions for traditions of music

(Option C: Use 789 and its subdivisions for recordings of music

(If option A is used with either option B or C, class comprehensive works on traditions of music in 789.1)

Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 789 in the number coming last, e.g., Spanish folk music for springtime 789.261015242 (*not* 789.2015242)

(.1) †**General principles of traditions of music**

 Add to base number 789.1 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g., treatment of springtime music in various traditions 789.15242

(If Option A is used with either Option B or C, class here comprehensive works on traditions of music)

(.2) †**Folk music**

 Music originating within and associated with an ethnic or national group

 Class folk rock in 789.6172. Class a specific style of music provided for in 789.4–789.6 with the style, e.g., reggae 789.46, Afro-Cuban jazz 789.572687291

*Add as instructed under 784–788

†(Optional number; prefer 781–788)

- (.200 1–.200 7) †Standard subdivisions
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g.,
 performances of folk music 789.20078
- (.200 8) †Groups of people
- [.200 89] Specific ethnic and national groups
 Do not use; class in 789.21–789.29
- (.200 9) †History, geographic treatment, biography
- (.200 901–.200 903) †Historical periods to 1900
 Add to base number 789.20090 the numbers following 780.90
 in 780.901–780.903, e.g., folk music of the Renaissance
 789.2009031
- (.200 904–.200 905) †1900–2099
 Add to base number 789.20090 the numbers following —090
 in notation 0904–0905 from Table 1, e.g., folk music of the
 1970s 781.62009047
- (.200 91–.200 99) †Geographic treatment and biography
*For geographic treatment of folk music of specific ethnic and
 national groups, see 789.21–789.29*
- (.201) †General principles, influence of other traditions, musical forms
- (.201 1–.201 5) †General principles
 Add to base number 789.201 the numbers following 781 in
 781.1–781.5, e.g., folk music for springtime 789.2015242, rhythm in
 folk music for springtime 789.20152421224
- (.201 6) †Influence of other traditions of music
 Add to base number 789.2016 the numbers following 789 in
 789.3–789.9, e.g., influence of jazz on folk music 789.20165,
 performances of folk music influenced by jazz 789.20165078
- (.201 8) †Musical forms
 Add to base number 789.2018 the numbers following 784.18 in
 784.182–784.189, e.g., march form in folk music 789.201897
- (.202–.208) †Voices, instruments, ensembles
 Add to base number 789.20 the numbers following 78 in 782–788, e.g.,
 folk songs for women singers 789.202642

(.21–.29) †Folk music of specific ethnic and national groups

Add to base number 789.2 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., Spanish folk music 789.261; then add further as follows:

001–008 Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of Spanish folk music 789.2610078

009 History, geographic treatment, biography

00901–00903 Historical periods to 1900

Add to base number 0090 the numbers following 780.90 in 780.901–780.903, e.g., Spanish folk music of the Renaissance 789.261009031

00904–00905 1900–2099

Add to base number 0090 the numbers following —090 in notation 0904–0905 from Table 1, e.g., Spanish folk music of the 1970s 789.261009047

[0093–0099] Specific continents, countries, localities

Do not use; class in 03–09

01 General principles, influence of other traditions of music, musical forms

011–015 General principles

Add to 01 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g., Spanish folk music for springtime 789.261015242, rhythm in Spanish folk music for springtime 789.2610152421224

016 Influence of other traditions of music

Add to 016 the numbers following 789 in 789.3–789.9, e.g., influence of jazz on Spanish folk music 789.2610165, performances of Spanish folk music influenced by jazz 789.2610165078

018 Musical forms

Add to 018 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., march form in Spanish folk music 789.26101897

02 Voices, instruments, ensembles

Add to 02 the numbers following 78 in 782–788, e.g., Spanish folk music for the guitar 789.26102787

03–09 Specific continents, countries, localities

Add to 0 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Spanish folk music in New York City 789.26107471

†(Optional number; prefer 781–788)

> **(789.3–789.9) Other traditions of music**

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 001–008 Standard subdivisions
Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.8, e.g., performance 0078
- 009 History, geographic treatment, biography
- 00901–00903 Historical periods to 1900
Add to base number 0090 the numbers following 780.90 in 780.901–780.903, e.g., music of the Renaissance 009031
- 00904–00905 1900–2099
Add to base number 0090 the numbers following—090 in notation 0904–0905 from Table 1, e.g., music of the 1970s 009047
- 01 General principles, influence of other traditions of music, hybrid styles, musical forms
- 011–015 General principles
Add to 01 the numbers following 781 in 781.1–781.5, e.g., springtime music 015242, melody in springtime music 015242124
- 016 Influence of other traditions of music
Add to 016 the numbers following 789 in 789.2–789.9, e.g., influence of folk music 0162, performances of music influenced by folk music 0162078
See also 017 for hybrid styles
- 017 Hybrid styles
Fusion of two or more styles from different traditions of music to create a new style
Add to 017 the numbers following 789 in 789.2–789.9, e.g., fusion with folk music 0172, folk rock 789.60172
See also 016 for influence of other traditions of music
- 018 Musical forms
Add to 018 the numbers following 784.18 in 784.182–784.189, e.g., march form 01897
- 1 Voices, instruments, ensembles
Add to 1 the numbers following 78 in 782–788, e.g., guitar music 1787

Class comprehensive works in 789

(.3) †*Popular music

Class popular music originating within and associated with an ethnic or national group in 789.2

For western popular music, see 789.4

(.4) †*Western popular music

Class western popular music originating within and associated with an ethnic or national group in 789.2; class country music in 789.42

For jazz, see 789.5; for rock, see 789.6

*Add as instructed under 789.3–789.9

†(Optional number; prefer 781–788)

- (.42) †*Country music
Class here bluegrass music; specific country music styles
- (.43) †*Blues
Class here traditional rhythm and blues; specific blues styles
Comprehensive works on rhythm and blues relocated to 789.44
- (.44) †*Soul
Class here comprehensive works on rhythm and blues [*formerly* 789.43],
R&B; specific soul styles
For traditional rhythm and blues, see 789.43
- (.45) †*Ragtime
- (.46) †*Reggae
Class here specific reggae styles
- (.48) †*Electronica
Class here specific electronica styles
- (.49) †*Rap
Class here specific rap styles
- (.5) †*Jazz
- [.501 7] Hybrid styles
Do not use; class in 789.57
- (.52) †*Early jazz
Class here origins of jazz
- (.53) †*Traditional jazz
Including New Orleans, Dixieland, Southwest and Kansas City, Harlem,
white New York styles; Chicago breakdown
- (.54) †*Mainstream jazz
Including swing
- (.55) †*Modern jazz
Including bop (bebop), hard bop, cool jazz, progressive jazz
For avant-garde jazz, see 789.56
- (.56) †*Avant-garde jazz

*Add as instructed under 789.3–789.9

†(Optional number; prefer 781–788)

(.57) †Hybrid styles

Add to 789.57 the numbers following 781.6 in 781.62–781.69, e.g., Afro-Cuban 789.572687291, Indo-jazz 789.57291411

Third stream relocated to 789.80175

(.6) †***Rock (Rock'n' roll)**

Class here specific rock styles

(.7) †**Sacred music**

(.700 1–.700 9) †Standard subdivisions

Notation from Table 1 as modified under 780.1–780.9, e.g., performances of sacred music 789.70078

(.701) †General principles, influence of other traditions of music, musical forms

Add to base number 789.701 the numbers following 01 in notation 011–018 from table under 789.3–789.9, e.g., influence of folk music 789.70162

(.702) †Voices, instruments, ensembles

Add to base number 789.702 the numbers following 78 in 782–788, e.g., sacred music for the guitar 789.702787

(.71) †*Christian sacred music

For music of Christian church year, see 789.72

(.72) †*Music of Christian church year

(.722–.729) †Sacred music of specific parts of Christian church year

Add to base number 789.72 the numbers following 781.72 in 781.722–781.729, e.g., Christmas music 789.723; then add further as instructed under 789.3–789.9, e.g., Christmas music for the guitar 789.7231787

(.73) †*Sacred music of classical (Greek and Roman) and Germanic religions

(.74–.79) †Sacred music of other specific religions

Add to base number 789.7 the numbers following 29 in 294–299, e.g., Jewish sacred music 789.76; then add further as instructed under 789.3–789.9, e.g., Jewish sacred music for the guitar 789.761787

(.8) †***Western art music (Classical music)**

Limited to classical music as a tradition in contrast to other traditions

Class here comprehensive works on traditions of art music

For nonwestern art music, see 789.9

*Add as instructed under 789.3–789.9

†(Optional number; prefer 781–788)

(.801 75)

†Hybrid styles

Number built according to instructions under 789.3–789.9

Class here third stream [*formerly 789.57*]

(.9) †*Nonwestern art music

790 Recreational and performing arts

Class here government policy on recreation; interdisciplinary works on recreation

*For sociology of recreation, see 306.48; for music, see 780***SUMMARY**

- | | |
|------------|--|
| 790.01–.09 | Standard subdivisions of recreation; recreation centers |
| .1 | General kinds of recreational activities |
| .2 | The performing arts in general |
| 791 | Public performances |
| .01–.09 | Standard subdivisions and amusement parks |
| .1 | Traveling shows |
| .3 | Circuses |
| .4 | Motion pictures, radio, television |
| .5 | Puppetry and toy theaters |
| .6 | Pageantry |
| .8 | Animal performances |
| 792 | Stage presentations |
| .01–.09 | Standard subdivisions and types of stage presentation |
| .1 | Tragedy and serious drama |
| .2 | Comedy and melodrama |
| .3 | Pantomime |
| .5 | Opera |
| .6 | Musical plays |
| .7 | Variety shows and theatrical dancing |
| .8 | Ballet and modern dance |
| .9 | Stage productions |
| 793 | Indoor games and amusements |
| .01–.09 | Standard subdivisions; activities and programs for specific groups of people |
| .2 | Parties and entertainments |
| .3 | Social, folk, national dancing |
| .4 | Games of action |
| .5 | Forfeit and trick games |
| .7 | Games not characterized by action |
| .8 | Magic and related activities |
| .9 | Other indoor diversions |

*Add as instructed under 789.3–789.9

†(Optional number; prefer 781–788)

- | | |
|---------|---|
| 794 | Indoor games of skill |
| .1 | Chess |
| .2 | Checkers (Draughts) |
| .3 | Darts |
| .4 | Go |
| .6 | Bowling |
| .7 | Ball games |
| .8 | Electronic games |
| 795 | Games of chance |
| .01 | Philosophy and theory |
| .1 | Games with dice |
| .2 | Wheel and top games |
| .3 | Games dependent on drawing numbers or counters |
| .4 | Card games |
| 796 | Athletic and outdoor sports and games |
| .01-.09 | Standard subdivisions and general kinds of sports and games |
| .1 | Miscellaneous games |
| .2 | Activities and games requiring equipment |
| .3 | Ball games |
| .4 | Weight lifting, track and field, gymnastics |
| .5 | Outdoor life |
| .6 | Cycling and related activities |
| .7 | Driving motor vehicles |
| .8 | Combat sports |
| .9 | Ice and snow sports |
| 797 | Aquatic and air sports |
| .028 9 | Safety measures |
| .1 | Boating |
| .2 | Swimming and diving |
| .3 | Other aquatic sports |
| .5 | Air sports |
| 798 | Equestrian sports and animal racing |
| .2 | Horsemanship |
| .4 | Horse racing |
| .6 | Driving and coaching |
| .8 | Dog racing |
| 799 | Fishing, hunting, shooting |
| .1 | Fishing |
| .2 | Hunting |
| .3 | Shooting other than game |
| .01-.05 | Standard subdivisions of recreation |
| .06 | Organizations and management of recreation; recreation centers |
| | Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below |
| .068 | Recreation centers |
| | Do not use for management of recreation; class in 790.069 |
| | Indoor and outdoor |
| | Including parks and community centers as recreation centers |
| | Add to base number 790.068 notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., recreation centers of California 790.068794 |

- .069 Management of recreation
Add to base number 790.069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., personnel management 790.0693
- .07 Education, research, related topics of recreation
- .08 Recreation for groups of people
Do not use for activities and programs for specific classes of people; class in 790.19
- .09 History, geographic treatment, biography of recreation
- .1 General kinds of recreational activities**
Class here leisure
For a specific activity, see the activity, e.g., paper cutting and folding 736.98, piano playing 786.2143, outdoor sports 796
- [.101–.109] Standard subdivisions
Do not use; class in 790.01–790.09
- .13 Activities generally engaged in by individuals
Class here interdisciplinary works on hobbies
For a hobby, see the subject of the hobby, plus notation 023 from Table 1, e.g., knitting as a hobby 746.432023
- .132 Collecting
Class collecting a specific kind of object with the object, plus notation 075 from Table 1, e.g., coin collecting 737.4075, sports cards 796.075
- .133 Play with toys
Including electric trains
For play with a specific toy not provided for here, see the toy, e.g., flying model airplanes 796.154
- .134 Participation in contests
See also 659.17 for advertising by means of contests
- .138 Passive activities (Spectator activities)
Including listening, reading, watching
- .15 Activities generally engaged in by groups
- .18 Travel and tourism
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .19 Activities and programs for specific groups of people
Class activities generally engaged in by individuals in 790.13; class activities generally engaged in by groups other than families in 790.15
- .191 Activities and programs for families

- .192 Activities and programs by age level
 Class activities for specific sexes regardless of age in 790.194; class activities for people with physical illnesses, people with disabilities regardless of age in 790.196
- .192 2 Children
- .192 6 Adults aged 65 and over
- .194 Activities and programs for groups by sex
 Class activities for people with physical illnesses, people with disabilities regardless of sex in 790.196
- .196 Activities and programs for people with physical illnesses, people with disabilities
 See also 615.85153 for recreational therapy

.2 **The performing arts in general**

Use for works that treat athletic and outdoor sports and games as well as public performances

Class comprehensive works on public performances in 791; class comprehensive works on athletic and outdoor sports and games in 796

For sociology of performing arts, see 306.484. For a specific performing art, see the art, e.g., symphony orchestra performances 784.2078, motion pictures 791.43; for a specific sport, see the sport, e.g., basketball 796.323, swimming 797.21

See Manual at 780.079 vs. 790.2

791 **Public performances**

Other than sport and game performances

Class here performances at fairs

For musical performances other than stage presentations, see 780; for stage presentations, see 792; for musical stage presentations, see 792.5; for magic, see 793.8; for speech as a type of performance, see 808.54

See also 793–796 for sport and game performances

SUMMARY

- 791.01–.09 **Standard subdivisions and amusement parks**
- .1 **Traveling shows**
- .3 **Circuses**
- .4 **Motion pictures, radio, television**
- .5 **Puppetry and toy theaters**
- .6 **Pageantry**
- .8 **Animal performances**
- .06 Organizations and management; amusement parks

Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below

- .068 Amusement parks
 Do not use for management; class in 791.069
 Add to base number 791.068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., amusement parks of United States 791.06873
- .069 Management
 Add to base number 791.069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., marketing 791.0698
- .09 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .092 Biography
 See Manual at 780.92 and 791.092
- .1 Traveling shows**
 Including medicine shows
 For circuses, see 791.3; for showboats, see 792.022
- .12 Minstrel shows and skits
 See also 792.7 for vaudeville
- .3 Circuses**
 Class here amateur circuses
- .32 Animal performances
- .33 Clowns
- .34 Acrobatics and trapeze work
- .35 Freaks and sideshows
- .38 Parades
- .4 Motion pictures, radio, television**
 Unless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of 791.4 in the number coming last, e.g., critical appraisal of a specific film 791.4372 (*not* 791.433)
 See also 302.234 for social aspects of motion pictures, radio, and television as mass media
 See Manual at 363.31 vs. 303.376, 791.4; also at 384.54, 384.55, 384.8 vs. 791.4

- .43 Motion pictures
- Regardless of distribution medium or method
- Class here made-for-television movies, video recordings of motion pictures [*both formerly* 791.45]; direct-to-video and direct-to-DVD releases of motion pictures; dramatic films, entertainment films; films developed originally for Internet transmission; comprehensive works on dramatic, entertainment, documentary, educational, news films
- Class photographic aspects of motion pictures in 777
- For documentary, educational, news films, see 070.18*
- See also 384.8 for communication aspects of motion pictures*
- See Manual at 780.92 and 791.092; also at 791.43 vs. 791.45; also at 791.43, 791.45 vs. 777*
- .430 1–.430 8 Standard subdivisions
- Notation from Table 1 as modified under 792.01–792.02, e.g., makeup for motion pictures 791.43027; however, for programming (scheduling), see 384.84; for types of presentation, see 791.433
- .430 9 History, geographic treatment, biography
- Class here description, critical appraisal of specific companies and studios
- For description, critical appraisal of specific films, see 791.437*
- .430 92 Biography
- Do not use for people associated with only one aspect of motion pictures; class in 791.4302 e.g., actors 791.43028092
- .433 Types of presentation
- Including home and amateur films
- Class a specific genre or type of film with a specific type of presentation in 791.436; class specific films in 791.437
- .433 4 Animated films
- Including cartoon films, computer animated films, puppet films
- Class comprehensive works on puppetry in 791.53
- For animation of cartoon films, see 741.58; for time-lapse cinematography, see 776.6; for photographic techniques of cartoon films, see 777.7*
- .433 402 85 Computer applications
- Do not use for computer animated films; class in 791.4334
- .436 Special aspects of films
- Class here film adaptations, film genres

- .436 1 Films displaying specific qualities
 Add to base number 791.4361 the numbers following —1 in notation
 11–17 from Table 3C, e.g., comedies 791.43617
- .436 2–.436 9 Films dealing with specific themes and subjects
 Add to base number 791.436 the numbers following —3 in
 notation 32–39 from Table 3C, e.g., films of the West and westerns
 791.4365878
- .437 Films
 Class here screenplays
 Class texts of plays in 800. Class subject-oriented films themselves with
 the subject, e.g., films on flower gardening 635.9
 See Manual at 791.437 and 791.447, 791.457, 792.9; also at 808.82
 vs. 791.437, 791.447, 791.457, 792.9
- .437 2 Single films
 Arrange alphabetically by title of film
- .437 5 Two or more films
 Class here collections of film reviews
 Class works which focus on a specific aspect of films with the aspect
 in 791.436, e.g., westerns 791.4365878; class critical appraisal of
 films associated with a specific person with the person, e.g., films of a
 motion-picture photographer 777.092, of a director 791.430233092
- .44 Radio
 Regardless of distribution medium or method
 Class here dramatic programs, entertainment programs; radio programs
 developed originally for Internet transmission; comprehensive works on
 dramatic, entertainment, documentary, educational, news programs
 For documentary, educational, news programs, see 070.194
 See also 384.54 for communication aspects of radio
 See Manual at 780.92 and 791.092
- .440 1–.440 8 Standard subdivisions
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under 792.01–792.02, e.g.,
 value of radio 791.44013; however, for programming (scheduling),
 see 384.5442; for types of presentation, see 791.443
- .440 9 History, geographic treatment, biography
 Class here description, critical appraisal of specific companies and
 stations
 For description, critical appraisal of specific programs, see
 791.447

- .440 92 Biography
 Do not use for people associated with only one aspect of radio;
 class in 791.4402 e.g., actors 791.44028092
- .443 Types of presentation
 Including commercials, live or recorded programs, network programs
 Class a specific genre or type of program with a specific type of
 presentation in 791.446; class specific programs in 791.447
- .446 Special aspects of radio programs
 Class here radio adaptations, radio genres, types of programs
- .446 1 Programs displaying specific qualities
 Add to base number 791.4461 the numbers following —1 in notation
 11–17 from Table 3C, e.g., comedies 791.44617
- .446 2–.446 9 Programs dealing with specific themes and subjects
 Add to base number 791.446 the numbers following —3 in notation
 32–39 from Table 3C, e.g., programs of the West and westerns
 791.4465878
- .447 Radio programs
 Class here radio plays
 Class texts of plays in 800. Class subject-oriented programs themselves
 with the subject, e.g., programs on flower gardening 635.9
 See Manual at 791.437 and 791.447, 791.457, 792.9; also at 808.82
 vs. 791.437, 791.447, 791.457, 792.9
- .447 2 Single programs
 Arrange alphabetically by name of program
- .447 5 Two or more programs
 Class here collections of program reviews
 Class works which focus on a specific aspect of programs with the
 aspect in 791.446, e.g., westerns 791.4465878; class critical appraisal
 of programs associated with a specific person with the person, e.g.,
 programs of a director 791.440233092

- .45 **Television**
- Regardless of distribution medium or method
- Class here dramatic programs, entertainment programs; mini-series, extended pilots of television series; television-like programs developed originally for Internet transmission; comprehensive works on dramatic, entertainment, documentary, educational, news programs
- Class use of video recordings not provided for here with the use, e.g., video recordings of rock music 781.66
- For documentary, educational, news programs, see 070.195*
- See also 384.55 for communication aspects of television; also 791.43 for direct-to-video and direct-to-DVD releases of motion pictures*
- See Manual at 780.92 and 791.092; also at 791.43 vs. 791.45; also at 791.43, 791.45 vs. 777*
- Made-for-television movies, video recordings of motion pictures relocated to 791.43
- .450 1–.450 8 **Standard subdivisions**
- Notation from Table 1 as modified under 792.01–792.02, e.g., scenery and lighting for television 791.45025; however, for programming (scheduling), see 384.5531; for types of presentation, see 791.453
- .450 9 **History, geographic treatment, biography**
- Class here description, critical appraisal of specific companies, stations, networks
- For description, critical appraisal of specific programs, see 791.457*
- .450 92 **Biography**
- Do not use for people associated with only one aspect of television; class in 791.4502 e.g., actors 791.45028092
- .453 **Types of presentation**
- Including commercials, live or recorded programs, network programs
- Class a specific genre or type of program with a specific type of presentation in 791.456; class specific programs in 791.457
- .456 **Special aspects of television programs**
- Class here television adaptations, television genres, types of programs
- .456 1 **Programs displaying specific qualities**
- Add to base number 791.4561 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–17 from Table 3C, e.g., comedies 791.45617
- .456 2–.456 9 **Programs dealing with specific themes and subjects**
- Add to base number 791.456 the numbers following —3 in notation 32–39 from Table 3C, e.g., programs of the West and westerns 791.4565878

- .457 **Programs**
 Class here television plays
 Class texts of plays in 800. Class subject-oriented programs themselves with the subject, e.g., programs on flower gardening 635.9
 See Manual at 791.437 and 791.447, 791.457, 792.9; also at 808.82 vs. 791.437, 791.447, 791.457, 792.9
- .457 2 **Single programs**
 Arrange alphabetically by name of program
- .457 5 **Two or more programs**
 Class here collections of program reviews
 Class works which focus on a specific aspect of programs with the aspect in 791.456, e.g., westerns 791.456278; class critical appraisal of programs associated with a specific person with the person, e.g., programs of a television photographer 777.092, of a director 791.450233092
- .5 Puppetry and toy theaters**
- .53 **Puppetry**
 Class here marionettes, shadow puppets
 Class puppet films in 791.4334
- .538 **Production scripts of puppet plays**
 Class texts of plays in 800
- .6 Pageantry**
 Including parades, floats for parades
 Class interdisciplinary works on pageants, processions, parades in 394.5
 For circus parades, see 791.38; for water pageantry, see 797.203
 See also 794.17 for living chess
- .62 **Pageants**
 See also 791.66 for beauty pageants
- .622 **Religious pageants**
- .624 **Historical and patriotic pageants**
- .64 **Cheerleading**
 Add to base number 791.64 the numbers following 796.3 in 796.31–796.35, e.g., cheerleading at American football games 791.6432
- .66 **Beauty contests**
 Class here beauty pageants

.8 Animal performances

Including cockfighting

For circus animal performances, see 791.32; for equestrian sports and animal racing, see 798

.82 Bullfighting**.84 Rodeos**

Class here Wild West shows

792 Stage presentations

Class here dramatic presentation, theater

Class texts of plays in 800

For motion pictures, radio, television, see 791.4; for puppetry and toy theaters, see 791.5

See Manual at 780.92 and 791.092

SUMMARY**792.01-.09 Standard subdivisions and types of stage presentation**

- .1 Tragedy and serious drama**
- .2 Comedy and melodrama**
- .3 Pantomime**
- .5 Opera**
- .6 Musical plays**
- .7 Variety shows and theatrical dancing**
- .8 Ballet and modern dance**
- .9 Stage productions**

.01 Philosophy and theory

Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below

Do not use for value; class in 792.013

.013 Value, influence, effect

Class influence and effect on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., influence and effect on crime 364.254

.015 Criticism and appreciation

Do not use for scientific principles; class in 792.01

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.02 Techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials, miscellany

Do not use for miscellany; class in 792.029

- > 792.022–792.028 Specific techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials
- Use notation 01–09 (*except* —028 for apparatus, equipment, materials) from Table 1 under each subdivision identified by *, e.g., periodicals on amateur theater 792.022205, computer applications for special effects 792.0240285
- Class comprehensive works in 792.02
- .022 *Types of stage presentation
 - Including showboats, street theater, tent shows
 - .022 2 *Amateur theater
 - .022 3 *Little theater
 - .022 4 *Summer theater
 - .022 6 *Children's theater
 - .022 8 *Arena theater (Theater-in-the-round)
 - .023 *Supervision
 - .023 2 *Production
 - .023 3 *Direction
 - .023 6 *Programming
 - .024 *Special effects
 - Including sound effects, visual effects
 - .025 *Setting
 - Including lighting, scenery
 - .026 *Costuming
 - .027 *Makeup and hair
 - Standard subdivisions are added for makeup and hair together, for makeup alone
 - Including wigs
 - .028 *Acting and performance
 - Including impersonation, improvisation, use of expression and gestures
 - .029 Miscellany
 - Do not use for commercial miscellany; class in 792.0299
 - .029 07 Humorous treatment
 - .029 08 Audiovisual treatment

*Add as instructed under 792.022–792.028

- .029 1–.029 8 Miscellaneous works
 Add to base number 792.029 the numbers following —02 in notation
 021–028 from Table 1, e.g., stage as a profession 792.0293; however,
 for specific techniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials,
 see 792.022–792.028
- .029 9 Commercial miscellany
 Including price lists, prospectuses, trade catalogs
- .09 History, geographic treatment, biography
 Class here description, critical appraisal of specific theaters and companies
 For specific productions in specific theaters or by specific companies,
 see 792.9
- .092 Biography
 Do not use for people associated with only one aspect of stage
 presentations; class in 792.02 e.g., actors 792.028092

> **792.1–792.8 Specific kinds of performances**

Add to each subdivision identified by † the numbers following 792 in
 792.01–792.09, e.g., costuming for ballet 792.8026

Class comprehensive works in 792

.1 †Tragedy and serious drama

.12 †Tragedy

.14 †Historical drama

.16 †Religious and morality plays

Including miracle, mystery, passion plays

See also 792.09 for treatment of religious concepts in the theater; also
792.27 for modern mystery plays

.2 †Comedy and melodrama

.23 †Comedy

For panto, see 792.38; for stand-up comedy, see 792.76

.27 †Melodrama

Including modern mystery (suspense) drama

See also 792.16 for religious mystery-plays

.3 †Pantomime

Class here mime, silent pantomime

†Add as instructed under 792.1–792.8

- .38 †Panto
Pantomime in the nonsilent British tradition, usually performed around Christmas time
- .5 †Opera
Class here dramatic vocal forms
Class interdisciplinary works on dramatic vocal forms, on opera in 782.1
For musical plays, see 792.6; for variety shows, see 792.7
See Manual at 782.1 vs. 792.5, 792.6
- .509 History, geographic treatment, biography
Class here description, critical appraisal of specific theaters and companies
For specific productions in specific theaters or by specific companies, see 792.54
- .54 Opera productions
Class here production and stage guides
- .542 Single operas
Arrange alphabetically by title
- .545 Two or more operas
Class here collections of reviews
Class critical appraisal of operas associated with a specific person other than the composer or librettist with the person, e.g., operas associated with a singer 782.1092, with a director 792.50233092
- .6 †Musical plays
Class here ballad operas, musicals, revues
Class interdisciplinary works on musical plays in 782.14
See Manual at 782.1 vs. 792.5, 792.6
- .609 History, geographic treatment, biography
Class here description, critical appraisal of specific theaters and companies
For specific productions in specific theaters or by specific companies, see 792.64
- .62 Dancing
Including choreography
Class comprehensive works on theatrical dancing in 792.78; class comprehensive works on choreography in 792.82

- .64 Musical play productions
Class here production and stage guides
- .642 Single musical plays
Arrange alphabetically by name
- .645 Two or more musical plays
Class here collections of reviews
Class critical appraisal of musical plays associated with a specific person other than the composer or librettist with the person, e.g., musical plays associated with a singer 782.14092, with a director 792.60233092
- †.7 †Variety shows and theatrical dancing**
Class here burlesque, cabaret, vaudeville, music hall and nightclub presentations
Subdivisions are added for variety shows and theatrical dancing together, for variety shows alone
Class stage productions in 792.9
For magic shows, see 793.8; for juggling, see 793.87; for ventriloquism, see 793.89
See also 791.12 for minstrel shows and skits
- .76 †Stand-up comedy
- .78 †Theatrical dancing
Including tap dancing
Class stage productions in 792.9
For dancing in musical plays, see 792.62
- †.8 †Ballet and modern dance**
Class here comprehensive works on dancing
Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
For dancing in musical plays, see 792.62; for theatrical and tap dancing, see 792.78; for social, folk, national dancing, see 793.3
See Manual at 780.92 and 791.092
- .809 History, geographic treatment, biography
Class here description, critical appraisal of specific theaters and companies
For specific productions in specific theaters or by specific companies, see 792.84
- .809 2 Biography
Do not use for people associated with only one aspect of ballet and modern dance; class in 792.802 e.g., dancers 792.8028092

†Add as instructed under 792.1–792.8

- .82 Choreography
 Class here choreology, e.g., Labanotation, Benesh
- .84 Ballet productions
 Class here stories, plots, analyses, librettos, production scripts, stage guides
- .842 Single ballets
 Arrange alphabetically by title
- .845 Two or more ballets
 Class here collections of reviews
 Class critical appraisal of ballets associated with a specific person with
 the person, e.g., ballets associated with a director 792.80233092

.9 Stage productions

Class here production scripts, stage guides; description, critical appraisal of
 specific productions in specific theaters and companies

Class description, critical appraisal, production scripts of operas in 792.54; class
 description, critical appraisal, production scripts of musical plays in 792.64;
 class description, critical appraisal, production scripts of ballets in 792.84

*See Manual at 791.437 and 791.447, 791.457, 792.9; also at 808.82 vs.
 791.437, 791.447, 791.457, 792.9*

- .92 Single productions
 Arrange alphabetically by title
- .95 Two or more productions
 Class here collections of reviews
 Class critical appraisal of productions associated with a specific person
 other than the playwright with the person, e.g., productions associated with a
 director 792.0233092

793 Indoor games and amusements

For indoor games of skill, see 794; for games of chance, see 795

- .01 Philosophy and theory; activities and programs for specific groups of
 people
 Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below
- .019 Activities and programs for specific groups of people
 Do not use for psychological principles; class in 793.01
 Add to base number 793.019 the numbers following 790.19 in
 790.191–790.196, e.g., indoor games and amusements for children
 793.01922
- .08 Groups of people
 For activities and programs for specific groups of people, see 793.019

.2 Parties and entertainments

- .21 Children's parties
- .22 Seasonal parties
Class children's seasonal parties in 793.21
- .24 Charades and tableaux
- .3 Social, folk, national dancing**
Standard subdivisions are added for social, folk, national dancing together; for social dancing alone
Including belly, jazz dancing
- .31 Folk and national dancing
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in the heading
- [.310 9] History, geographic treatment, biography
Do not use; class in 793.319
- .319 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .319 001–.319 009 Standard subdivisions
Add to base number 793.31900 the numbers following —00 in notation 001–009 from Table 2, e.g., periodicals of the history of folk dancing 793.319005
- .319 01–.319 05 Historical periods
Add to base number 793.3190 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., folk dances of 20th century 793.31904
- .319 1–.319 9 Geographic treatment, biography
Add to base number 793.319 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., folk dances of Germany 793.31943
- .32 Clog dancing
- .33 Ballroom dancing (Round dances)
Including disco dancing, fox trot, jitterbug, waltz
- .34 Square dancing
- .35 Dances with accessory features
Including cotillions, germans, sword dances
- .36 Line dancing
- .38 Balls
Class ballroom dancing in 793.33
- .4 Games of action**
- .5 Forfeit and trick games**

.7 Games not characterized by action

For charades and tableaux, see 793.24

.73 Puzzles and puzzle games

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including acrostics, quizzes, rebuses; jigsaw puzzles

Class puzzles as formal instructional devices for the teaching of a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 07 from Table 1, e.g., puzzles teaching the use of the Bible 220.07

For mathematical games and recreations, see 793.74

.732 Crossword puzzles**.734 Word games**

Including anagrams, palindromes

.735 Riddles

Class riddles as folk literature in 398.6; class riddles as jokes by known authors, interdisciplinary works on riddles in 808.882

See Manual at T3A—8 + 02, T3B—802, T3B—8 + 02 vs. 398.6, 793.735

.738 Maze puzzles**.74 Mathematical games and recreations****.8 Magic and related activities**

Standard subdivisions are added for magic and related activities together, for magic alone

Including scientific recreations

Class here conjuring

.85 Card tricks**.87 Juggling****.89 Ventriloquism****.9 Other indoor diversions****.92 War games (Battle games)**

See also 355.48 for military use of war games; also 796.1 for outdoor war games

.93 Adventure games

Class here fantasy, mystery games, role-playing games

See also 793.92 for war games (battle games)

[.930 285] Computer applications

Do not use; class in 793.932

- .932 Computer adventure games
- Class here computer fantasy, video adventure, video fantasy games
- Unless it is redundant, add to base number 793.932 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., programs for digital personal computers 793.932536, but use of digital computers 793.932 (*not* 793.9324)
- Class comprehensive works on computer games in 794.8

See Manual at 793.932 vs. 794.822

- .96 String games
- Including making cat's cradles

794 **Indoor games of skill**

Class here board games

Class war games in 793.92; class adventure, fantasy, mystery games in 793.93; class games combining skill and chance in 795

For backgammon, see 795.15

.1 **Chess**

- [.102 85] Computer applications

Do not use; class in 794.172

- .12 Strategy and tactics

Including specific strategies and tactics, e.g., combinations, sacrifices, traps, pitfalls, attack, counterattack, defense

Class specific strategies and tactics applied during a specific portion of a game in 794.122–794.124; class strategy and tactics with individual chessmen in 794.14

- .122 Openings

- .123 Middle games

- .124 End games

- .14 Individual chessmen

Including specific attributes, e.g., position, moves, power, value

Class specific attributes of a specific piece in 794.142–794.147

- .142 Pawns

- .143 Rooks (Castles)

- .144 Knights

- .145 Bishops

- .146 Queen

- .147 King

- .15 Collections of games

- .152 **Master matches**
 Class master matches by individual players in 794.159
- .157 **Tournaments and championships**
 Class tournaments and championships of individual players in 794.159
- .159 **Games, matches, tournaments, championships of individual players**
- .17 **Special forms of chess**
 Including living chess, simultaneous play
- .172 **Computer chess**
 Unless it is redundant, add to base number 794.172 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., use of digital personal computers 794.172416, but use of digital computers 794.172 (*not* 794.1724)
- .18 **Variants of chess**
 Including fairy chess, shogi
- .2 Checkers (Draughts)**
- .3 Darts**
- .4 Go**
- .6 Bowling**
 Class here variants of bowling, e.g., ninepins (skittles), tenpins
 See also 796.315 for lawn bowling
- .7 Ball games**
 Class athletic ball games, comprehensive works on ball games in 796.3
 For bowling, see 794.6
- .72 **Billiards**
 Class here carom billiards
 For pocket billiards, see 794.73
- .73 **Pocket billiards**
 Including English billiards
- .733 **Pool (American pocket billiards)**
- .735 **Snooker**
- .75 **Pinball games**
- .8 Electronic games**
 Class here computer, video games
 Class computerized forms of a specific indoor game or amusement with the game or amusement in 793–795, plus notation 0285 from Table 1, e.g., computerized checkers 794.20285

- [.802 85] Computer applications
 Do not use; class in 794.81
- .81 **Computer applications**
 Class here data processing
 Unless it is redundant, add to base number 794.81 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., programs for digital personal computers 794.81536, but use of digital computers as a whole 794.81 (*not* 794.814)
 Class data processing for specific genres of computer games in 794.82; class data processing for computerized athletic and outdoor sports and games in 794.86–794.89
- .82 **Specific genres of computer games**
 Class computerized war games (battle games) in 793.920285; class computerized adventure, fantasy, mystery games in 793.932; class computerized athletic and outdoor sports and games in 794.86–794.89
- .822 **Arcade games**
 Unless it is redundant, add to base number 794.822 the numbers following 00 in 004–006, e.g., programs for digital personal computers 794.822536, but use of digital computers 794.822 (*not* 794.8224)
 See Manual at 793.932 vs. 794.822
- .86–.89 **Computerized athletic and outdoor sports and games**
 Add to base number 794.8 the numbers following 79 in 796–799, e.g., computerized baseball 794.86357

795 Games of chance

- Class here gambling
 Class gambling on a specific activity with the activity, e.g., on horse racing 798.401
 See also 364.172 for gambling as a crime; also 616.85841 for compulsive gambling
- .01 **Philosophy and theory**
 Including betting systems
- .015 192 **Probabilities**
 Class here probabilities of winning
 See Manual at 795.015192 vs. 519.27
- .1 Games with dice**
- .12 Craps
- .15 Backgammon
- .2 Wheel and top games**
- .23 Roulette

- .27 Slot machines
- .3 Games dependent on drawing numbers or counters**
- .32 Dominoes
- .34 Mah jong
- .36 Bingo
- .38 Lotteries
Including lotto
- .4 Card games**
- .41 Games in which skill is a major element
- .411 Cribbage
- .412 Poker
- .413 Whist and bridge whist
- .414 Auction bridge
- .415 Contract bridge
Class here comprehensive works on bridge
For bridge whist, see 795.413; for auction bridge, see 795.414
- .415 2 Bidding
- .415 3 Play of the hand
- .415 4 Scoring systems
- .415 8 Collections of games and matches
- .416 Pinochle
- .418 Rummy and its variants
Including canasta
- .42 Games based chiefly on chance
Including baccarat, faro
- .423 Blackjack (Twenty-one)
- .43 Games in which card position is a major element
Including solitaire, patience

796 Athletic and outdoor sports and games

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Including modern pentathlon

Class here government policy on sports

Use 796 for athletics covering sports as a whole. Use 796.42 for athletics limited to track and field

Class exercise and sports activities as means of improving physical fitness in 613.71; class computerized athletic and outdoor sports and games in 794.86

For aquatic and air sports, see 797; for equestrian sports and animal racing, see 798; for fishing, hunting, shooting, see 799. For a specific sport of modern pentathlon, see the sport, e.g., pistol shooting 799.312

See also 617.1027 for sports medicine

SUMMARY

- 796.01-.09 **Standard subdivisions and general kinds of sports and games**
- .1 **Miscellaneous games**
 - .2 **Activities and games requiring equipment**
 - .3 **Ball games**
 - .4 **Weight lifting, track and field, gymnastics**
 - .5 **Outdoor life**
 - .6 **Cycling and related activities**
 - .7 **Driving motor vehicles**
 - .8 **Combat sports**
 - .9 **Ice and snow sports**

.04 **General kinds of sports and games**

See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04

> 796.042-796.044 **Amateur and professional sports**

Class variants of amateur and professional sports in 796.045; class extreme amateur and professional sports in 796.046; class comprehensive works in 796.04

.042 **Amateur sports**

Class here intramural sports

For college sports, see 796.043

.043 **College sports**

Intercollegiate and intramural sports

.044 **Professional sports**

.045 **Variant sports and games**

Versions of sports and games developed by modifying the basic version of the original sports and games

Class variants of extreme sports and games in 796.046

- .045 6 Wheelchair sports
 Class here sports and games modified for participation of people with physical disabilities
- .046 Extreme sports
- .06 Organizations, facilities, management
 Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below
- .068 Facilities
 Do not use for management; class in 796.069
 Class here field houses, physical education facilities, playgrounds, stadiums
 Add to base number 796.068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., playgrounds of London 796.068421
 See also 725.8 for architecture of recreational buildings
- .069 Management
 Add to base number 796.069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., financial management 796.0691
- .07 Education, research, related topics
 Notation 07 from Table 1 as modified below
- .071 Education
 Do not use for teaching; class in 796.077
- .077 Coaching
 Class here teaching
- .08 Groups of people
 Class general kinds of sports and games for specific groups of people in 796.04
 See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04
- .087 People with disabilities and illnesses, gifted people
 Class sports and games modified for participation of people with physical disabilities in 796.0456
- .092 Biography
 See Manual at 796.092
- .1 **Miscellaneous games**
 Not provided for elsewhere
- .13 Singing and dancing games
- .14 Active games
 For activities and games requiring equipment, see 796.2

- .15 Play with remote-control vehicles; play with kites
 Toy or model vehicles
 Standard subdivisions are added for play with remote-control vehicles and play with kites together; for play with remote-control vehicles alone
 Class here control line vehicles; comprehensive works on model vehicles
 Class comprehensive works on play with toys in 790.133
 See Manual at 796.15 vs. 629.0460228
 Play with robots relocated to 796.16
-
- > 796.152–796.156 Play with remote-control vehicles
 Class comprehensive works in 796.15
- .152 Remote-control ships
 Class here comprehensive works on model ships
- .154 Remote-control aircraft
 Class here remote-control airplanes; comprehensive works on model aircraft, on model airplanes
 Class paper airplanes in 745.592
- .156 Remote-control land vehicles
 Including remote-control racing cars
 Class here model automobiles; comprehensive works on model land vehicles
 For play with model trains, play with remote-control trains, see 790.133
- .158 Play with kites
- .16 Play with robots [*formerly* 796.15]
- .2 Activities and games requiring equipment**
 Not provided for elsewhere
 Including flying discs, marbles, Yo-Yos
- .21 Roller skating
 Class here in-line skating (rollerblading)
 Class a specific sport using roller skates or rollerblades with the sport, e.g., roller hockey 796.3566
- .22 Skateboarding
- .24 Pitching games
 Including horseshoes, quoits

.3 Ball games

Class here comprehensive works on outdoor and indoor ball games

For indoor ball games, see 794.7

SUMMARY

796.31	Ball thrown or hit by hand
.32	Inflated ball thrown or hit by hand
.33	Inflated ball driven by foot
.34	Racket games
.35	Ball driven by club, mallet, bat

.31 Ball thrown or hit by hand

Including boccie, pétanque

For inflated ball thrown or hit by hand, see 796.32

.312 Court handball

Variant name: handball

See also 796.327 for team handball

.315 Lawn bowling

See also 794.6 for indoor bowling

.32 Inflated ball thrown or hit by hand**.323 Basketball****.323 01–.323 09 Standard subdivisions**

Notation from Table 1 as modified under
796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., basketball courts 796.323068

.323 2 Strategy and tactics**.323 3 Refereeing****.323 6 Specific types of basketball**

Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3232; class refereeing of specific types of basketball in 796.3233

See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04

[.323 601–.323 609] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 796.32301–796.32309

.323 62 Precollege basketball**.323 63 College basketball****.323 64 Professional and semiprofessional basketball**

- .323 8 Variants of basketball
 Including wheelchair basketball, women's rules
See also 796.323082 for women playing by standard rules
See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04
- .324 Netball
- .325 Volleyball
- .325 02 Miscellany
- .325 020 2 Handbooks and guides
 Use of this number for synopses and outlines discontinued;
 class in 796.32502
- .325 020 22 Official rules
- .325 020 24 Spectators' guides
- .325 06 Organizations, facilities, management
 Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below
 Including clubs, leagues
- .325 068 Grounds and their layout
 Add to base number 796.325068 notation 1–9 from Table 2,
 e.g., volleyball courts in Miami Beach 796.325068759381
 Management relocated to 796.325069
- .325 069 Management [*formerly* 796.325068]
 Add to base number 796.325069 the numbers following
 —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., financial
 management 796.3250691
- .325 07 Education, research, related topics
 Notation 07 from Table 1 as modified below
- .325 071 Education
 Teaching relocated to 796.325077
- .325 075 Museum activities and services Collecting
 Class here collectibles, e.g., volleyball cards
- .325 077 Coaching
 Class here teaching [*formerly* 796.325071]
- .325 2 Strategy and tactics
- .325 3 Refereeing and umpiring

- .325 6 Specific types of volleyball
 Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3252; class
 refereeing and umpiring of specific types of volleyball in 796.3253
 See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04
- [.325 601–.325 609] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 796.32501–796.32509
- .325 62 Precollege volleyball
- .325 63 College volleyball
- .325 64 Professional and semiprofessional volleyball
- .325 8 Variants of volleyball
 See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04
- .325 82 Beach volleyball
- .327 Team handball
 Variant names: field handball, fieldball, handball
 See also 796.312 for court handball
- .33 Inflated ball driven by foot
 Including Gaelic football

SUMMARY

- | | |
|---------|--------------------------------------|
| 796.332 | American football |
| .333 | Rugby |
| .334 | Soccer (Association football) |
| .335 | Canadian football |
| .336 | Australian-rules football |
- .332 American football
- .332 02 Miscellany
- .332 020 2 Handbooks and guides
 Do not use for synopses and outlines; class in 796.33202
- .332 020 22 Official rules
- .332 020 24 Spectators' guides
- .332 06 Organizations, facilities, management
 Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below
 Including clubs, leagues
- .332 068 Grounds and their layout
 Do not use for management; class in 796.332069
 Add to base number 796.332068 notation 1–9 from Table 2,
 e.g., football fields of Washington, D.C. 796.332068753

- .332 069 Management
 Add to base number 796.332069 the numbers following
 —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., financial
 management 796.3320691
- .332 07 Education, research, related topics
 Notation 07 from Table 1 as modified below
- .332 071 Education
 Do not use for teaching; class in 796.332077
- .332 075 Museum activities and services
 Class here collectibles, e.g., football cards
- .332 077 Coaching
 Class here teaching
- .332 08 Groups of people
See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04
- .332 2 Strategy and tactics
- .332 22 Formations
- .332 23 Line play
- .332 24 Backfield play
- .332 25 Passing
- .332 26 Blocking and tackling
- .332 27 Kicking
- .332 3 Refereeing and umpiring
- .332 6 Specific types of American football
 Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3322; class
 refereeing and umpiring of specific types of American football in
 796.3323
See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04
- [.332 601–.332 609] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 796.33201–796.33209
- .332 62 Precollege football
- .332 63 College football
 Including bowl games
See also 796.332648 for Super Bowl
- .332 64 Professional and semiprofessional football
- .332 648 Super Bowl

- .332 8 Variants of American football
 Including six-man football, touch football
See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04
- .333 Rugby
 Class here Rugby Union
- .333 01–.333 09 Standard subdivisions
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under
 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., official rules 796.33302022
- .333 2 Strategy and tactics
- .333 23 Forward play
- .333 24 Halfback play
- .333 25 Three-quarter play
- .333 26 Back play
- .333 3 Refereeing and umpiring
- .333 6 Specific types of rugby
 Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3332; class
 refereeing and umpiring of specific types of rugby in 796.3333
See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04
- [.333 601–.333 609] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 796.33301–796.33309
- .333 62 Clubs
 Including college and university
- .333 63 County cup competition
- .333 64 Tours
- .333 65 International rugby
- .333 8 Rugby League
- .334 Soccer (Association football)
See also 796.33 for Gaelic football
- .334 01–.334 09 Standard subdivisions
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under
 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., coaching 796.334077
- .334 2 Strategy and tactics
- .334 22 Formations
- .334 23 Forward play
- .334 24 Halfback play

- .334 25 Back play
- .334 26 Goalkeeping
- .334 3 Refereeing and umpiring
- .334 6 Specific types of soccer
 Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3342; class
 refereeing and umpiring of specific types of soccer in 796.3343
 See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04
- [.334 601–.334 609] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 796.33401–796.33409
- .334 62 Amateur soccer
- .334 63 League soccer
- .334 64 Cup competition
 For World Cup competition, see 796.334668
- .334 66 International soccer
- .334 668 World Cup competition
- .334 8 Variants of soccer
 See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04
- .335 Canadian football
- .335 01–.335 09 Standard subdivisions
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under
 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., coaching 796.335077
- .335 2 Strategy and tactics
- .335 3 Refereeing and umpiring
- .335 6 Specific types of Canadian football
 Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3352; class
 refereeing and umpiring of specific types of Canadian football in
 796.3353
 See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04
- [.335 601–.335 609] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 796.33501–796.33509
- .335 62 Precollege Canadian football
- .335 63 College Canadian football
- .335 64 Professional and semiprofessional Canadian football
- .335 648 Grey Cup

- .335 8 Variants of Canadian football
 Including touch football
See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04
- .336 Australian-rules football
- .34 Racket games
 Including court tennis (royal tennis), paddle tennis
See also 796.24 for deck tennis
- .342 Tennis (Lawn tennis)
- .342 01–.342 09 Standard subdivisions
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under
 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., layout of tennis courts 796.342068
- .342 2 Strategy and tactics
- .342 21 Service
- .342 22 Forehand
- .342 23 Backhand
- .342 27 Singles
- .342 28 Doubles
- .342 3 Refereeing
- .343 Squash
 Class here rackets, racquetball
- .345 Badminton
- .346 Table tennis
- .347 Lacrosse
- .35 Ball driven by club, mallet, bat
 Including hurling
- .352 Golf
- .352 01–.352 09 Standard subdivisions
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under
 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., official rules 796.3520222
See also 712.5 for design and construction of golf courses
- .352 2 Variants of golf
 Including miniature golf
See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04
- .352 3 Tactics of play
 Class here grip, swing, adapting to specific golf courses

- .352 32 Play with woods
- .352 33 Play with distance irons
Class here comprehensive works on play with irons
For play with chipping or pitching irons, see 796.35234
- .352 34 Play with chipping or pitching irons
- .352 35 Putting
- .352 4 Refereeing
- .352 6 Specific types of golf
Class tactics of play regardless of type in 796.3523; class refereeing of specific types of golf in 796.3524
See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04
- [.352 601--.352 609] Standard subdivisions
Do not use; class in 796.35201--796.35209
- .352 62 Amateur golf
Class open games and matches in 796.35266
- .352 64 Professional golf
Class open games and matches in 796.35266
- .352 66 Open games and matches
Including British Open, Masters Tournament
- .353 Polo
- .354 Croquet
- .355 Field hockey
Including indoor field hockey
Class comprehensive works on hockey in 796.356
- .356 Hockey
Using ball, puck, or ring
For field hockey, see 796.355; for hockey games played on ice, see 796.96; for hockey games played underwater, see 797.25
- .356 2 Floorball
- .356 4 Street hockey
Class here ball hockey, dek hockey
- .356 6 Roller hockey
Including skater hockey (inline skater hockey)
See also 796.35662 for inline hockey

- .407 1 Education
 Do not use for teaching; class in 796.4077
- .407 7 Coaching
 Class here teaching
- .41 Weight lifting
 Including bodybuilding for contests
 Class weight training for fitness and interdisciplinary works on weight training, bodybuilding for fitness and interdisciplinary works on bodybuilding in 613.713
- .42 Track and field
 Class here decathlon, heptathlon; running
 Use 796 for athletics covering sports as a whole. Use 796.42 for athletics limited to track and field
 For field events, see 796.43; for orienteering, see 796.58
 See also 613.7172 for running as an exercise
- .420 6 Organizations, facilities, management
 Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below
- .420 68 Athletic fields
 Do not use for management; class in 796.42069
 Add to base number 796.42068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., athletic fields of Russia 796.4206847
- .420 69 Management
 Add to base number 796.42069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., personnel management 796.420693
- .422 Sprints
 Class sprint relays in 796.427
- .423 Middle-distance races
 Class middle-distance relay races in 796.427
- .424 Distance races
 Class distance relay races in 796.427
 For marathon, see 796.4252; for triathlon, see 796.4257; for cross-country races, see 796.428
- .425 Non-track races
 Class here road running
 For cross-country races, see 796.428; for race walking, see 796.429
- .425 2 Marathon

- .425 7 Triathlon
- .426 Hurdles and steeplechase
 Class hurdle and steeplechase relay races in 796.427
- .427 Relay races
- .428 Cross-country races
- .429 Race walking (Heel-and-toe races)
- .43 Jumping and throwing
 Class here field events
- .432 Jumping
 Including long jump (broad jump), triple jump (hop, step, and jump),
 high jump
 For pole vaulting, see 796.434
- .434 Pole vaulting
 See also 796.442 for gymnastic vaulting
- .435 Throwing
 Including boomerang and discus throwing, javelin hurling, shot-putting
 See also 796.24 for throwing games
- .44 Gymnastics
 Including aerobic gymnastics (sports aerobics)
 Class interdisciplinary works on aerobic exercise in 613.71
 *For trapeze work, rope climbing, tightrope walking, see 796.46; for
 tumbling, trampolining, acrobatics, contortion, see 796.47*
 See also 613.714 for gymnastic exercises
- .440 92 Biography
 Class biography of a specific type of gymnast with the type, e.g.,
 artistic gymnast 796.442092
- .442 Artistic gymnastics
 Gymnastics whose routines use the following apparatus: floor [*formerly*
 796.47], balance beam, high bar, parallel bars, pommel horse, still rings,
 uneven bars, vault
- .443 Rhythmic gymnastics
 Gymnastics whose routines use the following apparatus: ball, clubs,
 hoop, ribbon rope
- .46 Trapeze work, rope climbing, tightrope walking
 See also 791.34 for trapeze work and tightrope walking as circus acts

- .47 **Tumbling, trampolining, acrobatics, contortion**
 Floor as an apparatus in artistic gymnastics relocated to 796.442
- .472 **Tumbling**
 Class tumbling as part of artistic gymnastics in 796.442; class tumbling as part of rhythmic gymnastics in 796.443; class tumbling as part of trampolining in 796.474
- .474 **Trampolining**
 Class here trampoline, synchronized trampoline, double mini-trampoline
- .476 **Acrobatics**
 Class here acrobatic gymnastics (sports acrobatics)
 For acrobatics as circus acts, see 791.34
- .48 **Olympic games**
 Arrange specific games chronologically
 Class Paralympics in 796.0456; class Special Olympics in 796.0874. Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., basketball 796.323, swimming 797.21
 For winter Olympic games, see 796.98
- .480 93–.480 99 **Geographic treatment**
 Do not use for specific games; class in 796.48
- .5 Outdoor life**
 Class a specific activity of outdoor life not provided for here with the activity, e.g., fishing 799.1
- .51 **Walking**
 Class here backpacking, hiking
 For walking by kind of terrain, see 796.52
 See also 796.58 for orienteering
 See Manual at 913–919 vs. 796.51
- .52 **Walking and exploring by kind of terrain**
- .522 **Mountains, hills, rocks**
 Class here mountaineering
- .522 3 **Rock climbing**
 Class sport and indoor rock climbing in 796.5224
- .522 4 **Sport climbing**
 Class here indoor climbing
- .524 **Canyons and other depressions**
 Class here a sport regardless of type of depression, e.g., canyoning (canyoneering), gorge walking

- .525 Caves
 Class here spelunking
 See also 797.2 for cave swimming
- .53 Beach activities
 For aquatic sports, see 797.1–797.3
- .54 Camping
 Including snow camping
- .542 Kinds of camps
 Class here camps operated for profit
 Class activities in specific kinds of camps in 796.545
- .542 2 Institutional camps
 Including church, school, scouts, YMCA camps
 Class institutional day camps in 796.5423
- .542 3 Day camps
- .545 Activities
 Including campfires, games, woodcraft
 For beach activities, see 796.53
- .56 Dude ranching and farming
- .58 Orienteering
 Class orientation in 912.014
- .6 Cycling and related activities**
 Use of wheeled vehicles not driven by motor or animal power
 Including soapbox racing
 For roller skating, see 796.21; for skateboarding, see 796.22

-
- > 796.62–796.64 Cycling
 Class comprehensive works in 796.6
- .62 Bicycle racing
 Class triathlon in 796.4257; class racing on mountain bikes in 796.63
 See also 796.75 for motorcycle racing
- .622 BMX (Bicycle motocross)
- .624 Cyclo-cross
- .626 Road cycling
- .628 Track cycling

- .63 Mountain biking (All-terrain cycling)
- .64 Bicycle touring for pleasure
See also 796.62 for touring as a form of racing
- .67 Street luge racing
See also 796.954 for lugeing
- .68 Landsailing (Sand yachting)
- .7 **Driving motor vehicles**
For snowmobiling, see 796.94
-
- > 796.72–796.76 Driving for competition
 Class comprehensive works in 796.7
- .72 Automobile racing
 Class here driving sports cars [*formerly 796.77*]
See also 796.156 for toy car racing
- .720 6 Organizations, facilities, management
 Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below
- .720 68 Racetracks and speedways
 Do not use for management; class in 796.72069
 Add to base number 796.72068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 Indianapolis Motor Speedway 796.7206877252
- .720 69 Management
 Add to base number 796.72069 the numbers following —068 in
 notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., financial management
 796.720691
- .73 Automobile rallies
- .75 Motorcycle and motor scooter racing
- .756 Motocross and supercross
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .76 Karting and midget car racing
 Standard subdivisions are added for karting and midget car racing together,
 for karting alone
- [.77] Driving sports cars
 Relocated to 796.72
- [.78] Travel by private passenger automobile
 Relocated to 910

- [.79] Travel by motor homes, recreational vehicles, trailers
Relocated to 910
- .8 Combat sports**
Class here interdisciplinary works on martial arts
Class combat with animals in 791.8; class Oriental martial arts forms in 796.815
For martial arts as exercises for physical fitness, see 613.7148
- .81 Unarmed combat
For boxing, see 796.83
- .812 Wrestling
Including arm wrestling
- .812 2 Greco-Roman wrestling
- .812 3 Freestyle wrestling (Catch-as-catch-can wrestling)
- .812 5 Sumo
- .815 Oriental martial arts forms
Class martial arts forms including both Oriental forms and other military forms, e.g., boxing, fencing, in 796.8
- .815 2 Judo
Class here jujitsu
- .815 3 Karate
- .815 4 Aikido
- .815 5 Chinese forms of martial arts
For kempo and kung fu, see 796.8159
- .815 7 Taekwondo
- .815 9 Kempo and kung fu
- .83 Boxing
- .86 Fencing
Including bojutsu, kendo
Class here sword fighting
- .9 Ice and snow sports**
For sled dog racing, see 798.83; for ice fishing, see 799.122
See also 796.54 for snow camping; also 798.6 for horse-drawn sleighing
- .91 Ice skating
- .912 Figure skating
Class here ice dancing, pair skating

- .914 Speed skating
 Class here long track speed skating, short track speed skating
- .92 Snowshoeing
- .93 Skiing and snowboarding
 Standard subdivisions are added for skiing and snowboarding together, for skiing alone
- .930 92 Biography
 Class biography of a specific type of skier with the type, e.g., alpine skier 796.935092
- .932 Cross-country skiing
 Class here Nordic combination, Nordic skiing
 For jumping, see 796.933
- .932 2 Biathlon
- .933 Jumping
- .935 Alpine skiing (Downhill skiing)
 Class here downhill, giant slalom, slalom, supergiant slalom racing
- .937 Freestyle skiing
 Including aerial and mogul skiing; ski cross
- .939 Snowboarding
 Including big air, halfpipe, slopestyle snowboarding; snowboard cross (boardercross), parallel giant slalom racing
 Class here alpine and freestyle snowboarding
- .94 Snowmobiling
- .95 Sledding and coasting
 Including tobogganing
- .952 Bobsleigh
- .954 Luge
 See also 796.67 for street luge racing
- .956 Skeleton
- .96 Ice games
- .962 Ice hockey
 Class comprehensive works on hockey in 796.356
- .962 01–.962 09 Standard subdivisions
 Notation from Table 1 as modified under
 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., coaching 796.962077

- .962 2 Strategy and tactics
 Including skating
- .962 27 Goalkeeping
- .962 3 Refereeing
- .962 6 Specific types of ice hockey
 Class strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.9622
 See Manual at 796.08 vs. 796.04
- [.962 601–.962 609] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 796.96201–796.96209
- .962 62 Junior hockey
- .962 63 College hockey
- .962 64 Professional hockey
- .962 648 Stanley Cup
- .962 66 International hockey
 Class here specific tournaments
- .963 Bandy
 Including rink bandy
- .964 Curling
- .965 Broomball
- .966 Ringette
 See also 796.356 for gym ringette, inline ringette
- .97 Iceboating
- .98 Winter Olympic games
 Arrange specific games chronologically
 Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., skating 796.91
- .980 93–.980 99 Geographic treatment
 Do not use for specific games; class in 796.98

797 Aquatic and air sports

Standard subdivisions are added for aquatic and air sports together, for aquatic sports alone

Class computerized aquatic and air sports in 794.87

- .028 9 Safety measures
 Class comprehensive works on water safety in aquatic sports in
 797.200289

>

797.1–797.3 Aquatic sports

Class comprehensive works in 797

*For fishing, see 799.1***.1 Boating****.12 Types of vessels**

Class seamanship for specific types of vessels in 623.882; class boat racing with specific types of vessels in 797.14

.121 Rafting**.122 Canoeing****.122 4 Kayaking****.123 Rowing****.124 Sailing***See also 796.68 for landsailing; also 797.33 for sailboarding***.124 6 Yachting**

Class here comprehensive works on yachting

*For motor yachting, see 797.1256**See also 643.29 for yachts permanently docked as dwellings***.125 Motorboating****.125 6 Yachting****.129 Houseboating***See also 643.29 for houseboats permanently docked as dwellings***.14 Boat racing and regattas**

Standard subdivisions are added for any type of racing, e.g., yacht racing in Britain 797.140941

.2 Swimming and diving

Standard subdivisions are added for swimming and diving together, for diving alone

Class here water parks

.200 1–200 9 Standard subdivisions**.203 Water pageantry***See also 797.21 for synchronized swimming***.21 Swimming**

Class triathlon in 796.4257

For underwater swimming, see 797.23

- .217 Synchronized swimming
 - .23 Underwater swimming
 - For a specific underwater game, see the game, e.g., underwater hockey 797.25*
 - .232 Skin diving and snorkeling
 - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 - .234 Scuba diving
 - .24 Springboard and platform diving
 - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 - .25 Water games
 - Including underwater hockey
 - .252 Water polo
 - .3 Other aquatic sports**
 - Including wakeboarding
 - .32 Surfing (Surf riding)
 - .33 Windsurfing (Boardsailing, Sailboarding)
 - .35 Water skiing
 - .37 Jet skiing
 - .5 Air sports**
 - Including bungee jumping
 - .51 Balloon flying
-
- > 797.52–797.54 Flying motor-driven aircraft
 - Class comprehensive works in 797.5
 - See also 797.55 for paramotoring*
 - .52 Racing
 - .53 Flying for pleasure
 - .54 Stunt flying
 - Class here display aerobatics
 - .55 Gliding and soaring
 - Including hang gliding, paramotoring
 - .56 Parachuting (Skydiving)
 - Including skysurfing

798 Equestrian sports and animal racing

Standard subdivisions are added for equestrian sports and animal racing together, for equestrian sports alone

Class computerized equestrian sports and animal racing in 794.88

798.2–798.6 Equestrian sports

Class rodeos in 791.84; class hunting with aid of horses in 799.23; class comprehensive works in 798

For polo, see 796.353

See also 636.108971027 for equine sports medicine

.2 Horsemanship

For horse racing, see 798.4

.23 Riding

Class here training of both horse and rider, dressage

Class training of only the horse in 636.1088

For jumping, see 798.25

.230 74 Museums, collections, exhibits

Do not use for riding exhibitions; class in 798.24

[.230 79] Competitions and awards

Do not use; class in 798.24

.24 Riding exhibitions and competitions

Class jumping in 798.25

.242 Eventing

Class here three-day events

.25 Jumping**.4 Horse racing**

Class here flat racing

.400 1–.400 5 Standard subdivisions**.400 6 Organizations, facilities, management**

Notation 06 from Table 1 as modified below

.400 68 Racetracks

Do not use for management; class in 798.40069

Add to base number 798.40068 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., racetracks of England 798.4006842

- .400 69 Management
 Add to base number 798.40069 the numbers following —068 in notation 0681–0688 from Table 1, e.g., management of marketing 798.400698
- .400 7–.400 8 Standard subdivisions
- .400 9 History, geographic treatment, biography
 Class here specific races
- .401 Betting
 Including pari-mutuel
- .45 Steeplechasing (National Hunt racing)
- .46 Harness racing
- .6 **Driving and coaching**
 Including horse-drawn sleighing
 For harness racing, see 798.46
- .8 **Dog racing**
- .83 Sled dog racing
- .85 Greyhound racing

799 **Fishing, hunting, shooting**

Class computerized fishing, hunting, shooting games in 794.89

See also 688.79 for the manufacture of both mass-produced and handcrafted equipment

SUMMARY

- 799.1 **Fishing**
 .2 **Hunting**
 .3 **Shooting other than game**

.1 **Fishing**

Class shellfishing in 799.254; class interdisciplinary works on fishing in 639.2

.11 **Freshwater fishing**

Class here coarse fishing

Class fishing for specific kinds of freshwater fishes in 799.17

> 799.12–799.14 **Specific methods of fishing**

Class specific methods of freshwater fishing in 799.11; class specific methods of saltwater fishing in 799.16; class specific methods of fishing for specific kinds of fish in 799.17; class comprehensive works in 799.1

- .12 **Angling**
 Class here game, pan fishing
 Class game fishing is the sense of fishing for salmon, trout, graylings in 799.1755
- .122 **Bait fishing**
 Variant names: bottom, still fishing
 Including ice fishing
- .124 **Fly fishing**
 Class here casting
 For bait-casting, see 799.126
 See also 688.79124 for making artificial flies
- .126 **Bait-casting (Spin-fishing)**
- .128 **Trolling**
- .13 **Net fishing**
- .14 **Other methods of fishing**
 Including spearfishing
- .16 **Saltwater fishing**
 Class fishing for specific kinds of saltwater fishes in 799.17
- .17 **Specific kinds of fishes**
 Class comprehensive works on fishing for freshwater fishes in 799.11; class comprehensive works on fishing for saltwater fishes in 799.16
- [.170 1--.170 9] **Standard subdivisions**
 Do not use; class in 799.101-799.109
- .172--.177 **Subdivisions for specific kinds of fishes**
 Add to base number 799.17 the numbers following 597 in 597.2-597.7, e.g., trout fishing 799.1757
 Class coarse fishing, game fishing in sense of sports fishing in 799.12; class game fishing in sense of fishing for salmon, trout, graylings in 799.1755
- .2 Hunting**
 Class here sports trapping; comprehensive works on hunting and shooting sports, on commercial and sports hunting
 For commercial, subsistence hunting, see 639.1; for shooting other than game, see 799.3
- .202 **Miscellany**

- .202 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
 Notation 028 from Table 1 as modified below
 Class here basic techniques and procedures
- .202 82 Blowpipes, bolas, boomerangs, lassos, nets, slings, spears
- .202 83 Guns
- .202 832 Rifles
- .202 833 Pistols
- .202 834 Shotguns
- .202 85 Bows and arrows
 Do not use for computer applications; class in 799.2028
- [.209] History, geographic treatment, biography
 Do not use; class in 799.29

-
- > 799.21–799.23 Methods
 Class methods of hunting specific kinds of animals in 799.24–799.27; class
 comprehensive works in 799.2
- .21 Shooting game
- .213 Shooting game with guns
- .215 Shooting game with bows and arrows
- .23 Hunting with aid of animals
- .232 Hunting with falcons
- .234 Hunting with dogs
-
- > 799.24–799.27 Hunting specific kinds of animals
 Class comprehensive works in 799.2
- .24 Birds
 Class here fowling, game birds, wildfowling
 Class waterfowling in 799.244
- .244 Waterfowl
 Class here ducks, lowland game birds
 Add to base number 799.244 the numbers following 598.41 in
 598.412–598.418, e.g., geese 799.2447

- .246 Upland game birds
 Class here Galliformes
 Add to base number 799.246 the numbers following 598.6 in 598.62–598.65, e.g., turkeys 799.24645
- .248 Specific kinds of birds other than waterfowl and upland game birds
 [.248 01–.248 09] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 799.2401–799.2409
- .248 3–.248 9 Subdivisions for specific kinds of birds other than waterfowl and upland game birds
 Add to base number 799.248 the numbers following 598 in 598.3–598.9, e.g., shore birds 799.24833
 Class comprehensive works in 799.24
- .25 Small game hunting
For birds, see 799.24
- .252–.259 Specific kinds of small game
 Add to base number 799.25 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., shellfishing 799.254, fox hunting 799.259775
- .26 Big game hunting
 Class here comprehensive works on hunting big game mammals
For specific kinds, see 799.27
- .27 Specific kinds of big game
For birds, see 799.24
- [.270 1–.270 9] Standard subdivisions
 Do not use; class in 799.2601–799.2609
- .271–.278 Specific kinds of big game mammals
 Add to base number 799.27 the numbers following 599 in 599.1–599.8, e.g., white-tailed deer 799.27652; however, for comprehensive works on big game, on big game mammals, see 799.26
- .279 Reptiles
 Add to base number 799.279 the numbers following 597.9 in 597.92–597.98, e.g., crocodiles 799.27982
- .29 History, geographic treatment, biography
- .290 01–.290 09 Standard subdivisions
 Add to base number 799.2900 the numbers following —00 in notation 001–009 from Table 2, e.g., periodicals of the history of hunting 799.29005

- .290 1–.290 5 Historical periods
 Add to base number 799.290 the numbers following —090 in notation
 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., hunting in 20th century 799.2904
- .291–.299 Geographic treatment, biography
 Add to base number 799.29 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., hunting in
 Germany 799.2943
- .3 Shooting other than game**
 For ballistic devices, see 799.20282–799.20285
- .31 Shooting with guns
- .312 Shooting at stationary targets
 For biathlon, see 796.932
- .313 Shooting at moving targets
- .313 2 Trapshooting
 Class here skeet shooting
- .32 Shooting with bow and arrow (Archery)

800

800 Literature (Belles-lettres) and rhetoric

Class here works of literature, works about literature

After general topics (800–809) the basic arrangement is literature by language, then literature of each language by form, then each form by historical period; however, miscellaneous writings are arranged first by historical period, then by form. More detailed instructions are given at the beginning of Table 3

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., collections of drama written in poetry from more than two literatures 808.82 (*not* 808.81):

- Drama
- Poetry
 - Class epigrams in verse with miscellaneous writings
- Fiction
- Essays
- Speeches
- Letters
- Miscellaneous writings
- Humor and satire

Class folk literature in 398.2; class librettos, poems, words written to be sung or recited with music in 780.268; class interdisciplinary works on language and literature in 400; class interdisciplinary works on the arts in 700

See Manual at 800; also at 080 vs. 800; also at 741.6 vs. 800; also at 800 vs. 398.2; also at 800, T3C—362 vs. 398.245, 590, 636

SUMMARY

- | | |
|---------|---|
| 801–807 | Standard subdivisions |
| 808 | Rhetoric and collections of literary texts from more than two literatures |
| 809 | History, description, critical appraisal of more than two literatures |
| 810 | American literature in English |
| .1–.9 | Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of American literature in English |
| 811 | American poetry in English |
| 812 | American drama in English |
| 813 | American fiction in English |
| 814 | American essays in English |
| 815 | American speeches in English |
| 816 | American letters in English |
| 817 | American humor and satire in English |
| 818 | American miscellaneous writings in English |

- 820 English and Old English (Anglo-Saxon) literatures
 .1-.9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of English literature
- 821 English poetry
- 822 English drama
- 823 English fiction
- 824 English essays
- 825 English speeches
- 826 English letters
- 827 English humor and satire
- 828 English miscellaneous writings
- 829 Old English (Anglo-Saxon) literature
- 830 German literature and literatures of related languages
 .01-.09 Standard subdivisions of literatures of Germanic languages
 .1-.9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of German literature
- 831 German poetry
- 832 German drama
- 833 German fiction
- 834 German essays
- 835 German speeches
- 836 German letters
- 837 German humor and satire
- 838 German miscellaneous writings
- 839 Other Germanic literatures
- 840 French literature and literatures of related Romance languages
 .01-.09 Standard subdivisions of literatures of Romance languages
 .1-.9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of French literature
- 841 French poetry
- 842 French drama
- 843 French fiction
- 844 French essays
- 845 French speeches
- 846 French letters
- 847 French humor and satire
- 848 French miscellaneous writings
- 849 Occitan, Catalan, Franco-Provençal literatures
- 850 Literatures of Italian, Dalmatian, Romanian, Rhaetian, Sardinian, Corsican languages
 .1-.9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Italian literature
- 851 Italian poetry
- 852 Italian drama
- 853 Italian fiction
- 854 Italian essays
- 855 Italian speeches
- 856 Italian letters
- 857 Italian humor and satire
- 858 Italian miscellaneous writings
- 859 Literatures of Romanian, Rhaetian, Sardinian, Corsican languages

801 Philosophy and theory

Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below

Do not use for value; class in 801.3. Do not use for techniques and principles of criticism; class in 801.95

.3 Value, influence, effect**.9 Nature and character**

Notation 019 from Table 1 as modified below

Do not use for psychological principles; class in 801.92

.92 Psychology

Including literature as a product of imagination

.93 Aesthetics**.95 Criticism**

Class here theory, technique, history of literary criticism

Class textual criticism of specific literary forms in 801.959; class theory, technique, history of literary criticism of specific literary forms in 808.1–808.7; class works of critical appraisal in 809

See Manual at 800: Literary criticism

.959 Textual criticism**802 Miscellany****803 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances****[804] [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

805 Serial publications

Class collections of literary texts in serial form in 808.80005; class history, description, critical appraisal in serial form in 809.005

806 Organizations and management**807 Education, research, related topics**

808 Rhetoric and collections of literary texts from more than two literatures

Rhetoric: effective use of language

Standard subdivisions are added for rhetoric and collections of literary texts from more than two literatures, for rhetoric alone

Do not use for literature with respect to groups of people; class in 808.89

Class here composition

Class general treatment of standard usage of language (prescriptive linguistics) in 418; class theory, technique, history of literary criticism in 801.95. Class treatment of standard usage in a specific language with the specific language, plus notation 8 from Table 4, e.g., English usage 428

SUMMARY

808.001–.009	Standard subdivisions
.02–.06	General topics in rhetoric
.1	Rhetoric of poetry
.2	Rhetoric of drama
.3	Rhetoric of fiction
.4	Rhetoric of essays
.5	Rhetoric of speech
.6	Rhetoric of letters
.7	Rhetoric of humor and satire
.8	Collections of literary texts from more than two literatures

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

> 808.02–808.06 General topics in rhetoric

Class comprehensive works in 808

.02 Authorship techniques, plagiarism, editorial techniques

Writing in publishable form

Class here comprehensive works on preparation and submission of manuscripts, on preparation and submission of scholarly manuscripts

Class authorship and editorial techniques for a specific kind of composition with the kind in 808.06, e.g., 808.066378 academic theses and dissertations

For submission of manuscripts to agents and publishers, see 070.52

See also 001.4 for research

.025 Plagiarism

Class here works that focus on avoiding unintentional plagiarism, interdisciplinary works on plagiarism

Class citation style in 808.027

For a specific aspect of plagiarism, see the aspect, e.g., plagiarism in the context of copyright law 346.0482, plagiarism as a kind of student cheating 371.58, plagiarism in the work of an American fiction writer of the late 20th century 813.54

- .027 Editorial techniques
 Preparation of manuscripts in publishable form
 Including proofreading
 Class here style manuals
- .03 Specific elements of rhetoric
 Class preparation of manuscripts using specific elements in 808.02; class
 specific kinds of writing using specific elements in 808.06
- .032 Figures of speech
 Including metaphor, simile
- .036 Narration
- .04 Rhetoric in specific languages
 Class preparation of manuscripts in specific languages in 808.02; class
 specific elements of rhetoric in specific languages in 808.03; class rhetoric
 of specific kinds of composition in specific languages in 808.06
- .042 Rhetoric in English
- .042 7 Study of rhetoric through critical reading
 Including collections and single works for critical reading
 Class here readers used in the study of composition
 *For readers limited to a particular literary form, see the form, e.g.,
 short stories 808.31*
- .042 8 Rhetoric in English for those whose native language is different
- .043–.049 Rhetoric in other languages
 Add to base number 808.04 notation 3–9 from Table 6, e.g., German
 rhetoric 808.0431; then to the result add the numbers following 808.042
 in 808.04201–808.0428, e.g., study of German rhetoric through critical
 reading 808.04317
- .06 Rhetoric of specific kinds of writing
 Class rhetoric in specific literary forms in 808.1–808.7
- .062 Abstracts and summaries

.066 Professional, technical, expository literature

Add to base number 808.066 three-digit numbers 001–999 (but stop before any zero that follows a non-zero number), e.g., legal writing 808.06634, writing about natural history 808.0665 (not 808.066508), writing on bridge engineering 808.066624 (not 808.0666242); then, for writing in a foreign language, add 0 and to the result add notation 2–9 from Table 6, e.g., legal writing in Spanish for speakers of another language 808.06634061; however, for résumé writing, writing cover letters for job hunting, see 650.142

For abstracts and summaries, see 808.062; for expository adult easy literature, see 808.067; for expository writing for children, see 808.0688

See Manual at 005.15 vs. 808.066005; also at 340 vs. 808.06634; also at 658.45 vs. 651.7, 808.06665

.066 378 Writing for and about higher education

Number built according to instructions under 808.066

Class here authorship and editorial techniques for academic theses and dissertations

Class comprehensive works on authorship and editorial techniques for scholarly writing in 808.02. Class authorship and editorial techniques for academic theses and dissertations about a specific subject other than higher education with the subject in 808.066, e.g., psychology 808.06615

.067 Adult easy literature

Works for adults learning to read or for adult beginners in foreign languages

.068 Children's literature

.068 1–.068 7 Specific literary forms

Add to base number 808.068 the numbers following 808 in 808.1–808.7, e.g., drama 808.0682

.068 8 Expository writing

> **808.1–808.7 Rhetoric in specific literary forms**

Class here aesthetics, appreciation, character and nature, composition, theory of specific literary forms; technique, theory, history of criticism of specific literary forms

Observe table of preference under 800

Class theory, technique, history of textual criticism of specific literary forms in 801.959; class specific forms for children in 808.0681–808.0687; class works of critical appraisal of specific literary forms in 809.1–809.7; class comprehensive works on theory, technique, history of literary criticism in 801.95; class comprehensive works on rhetoric in specific literary forms in 808

See Manual at 800: Literary criticism

- .1 Rhetoric of poetry**
 Class here prosody
 Add to base number 808.1 the numbers following —10 in notation 102–107 from Table 3B, e.g., lyric poetry 808.14
 Class linguistic studies of prosody across several languages and from the linguist's viewpoint in 414.6. Class prosodic studies of a particular language as a whole from the linguist's viewpoint with the intonation for the specific language, plus notation 16 from Table 4, e.g., prosodic studies of the Italian language 451.6
- .2 Rhetoric of drama**
 Add to base number 808.2 the numbers following —20 in notation 202–205 from Table 3B, e.g., one-act plays 808.241
- .3 Rhetoric of fiction**
 Class here rhetoric of novelettes and novels
- .31–.38 Fiction of specific scope and kinds**
 Add to base number 808.3 the numbers following —30 in notation 301–308 from Table 3B, e.g., science fiction 808.38762
- .39 Fiction displaying specific elements**
 Add to base number 808.39 the numbers following —2 in notation 22–27 from Table 3C, e.g., characters in fiction 808.397
 Class fiction of specific scope and kinds displaying specific elements in 808.31–808.38
- .4 Rhetoric of essays**
- .5 Rhetoric of speech**
 Art or technique of oral expression
 Class here voice, expression, gesture
- .51 Public speaking (Oratory)**
 Including public speaking for broadcast media
For preaching, see 251; for debating, see 808.53
- .512 Toasts and after-dinner speeches**
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .53 Debating**
 Class here public discussion of opposing views regardless of format
- .54 Recitation**
 Class here oral interpretation
 Class choral speaking in 808.55
- .543 Storytelling**

- .545 Oral interpretation of poetry
 Class here poetry slams
 Use of this number for reading aloud other kinds of materials discontinued; class in 808.54
- .55 Choral speaking
- .56 Conversation
- .6 Rhetoric of letters**
- .7 Rhetoric of humor and satire**
 Class here rhetoric of parody
- .8 Collections of literary texts from more than two literatures**
 Texts by more than one author in more than two languages not from the same language family
 Class here texts in more than two literatures from two or more language families
 Class works that are limited to a specific topic found in subdivisions of 808.8 and consist equally of literary texts and history, description, critical appraisal of literature with the topic in 808.8, e.g., texts and criticism of literature of the 18th century 808.80033, texts and criticism of drama 808.82; class collections of texts from more than two literatures in the same language with the literature of that language, e.g., collections of works from English, American, and Australian literatures in English (more than one literary form) 820.8; class collections of texts from literatures in more than two languages from the same family with the literature of that family, e.g., French, Italian, and Spanish literatures 840

See Manual at 808.8; also at 080 vs. 800

SUMMARY

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| 808.800 01--800 07 | Standard subdivisions |
| .800 1--800 5 | Collections from specific periods |
| .801--803 | Collections displaying specific features |
| .81 | Collections of poetry |
| .82 | Collections of drama |
| .83 | Collections of fiction |
| .84 | Collections of essays |
| .85 | Collections of speeches |
| .86 | Collections of letters |
| .87 | Collections of humor and satire |
| .88 | Collections of miscellaneous writings |
| .89 | Collections for and by groups of people |
| .800 01--800 07 | Standard subdivisions |
| [.800 08] | Groups of people |
| | Do not use; class in 808.89 |

- [.800 09] History, geographic treatment, biography
Do not use for collections of literature for and by people resident in specific regions, continents, countries, localities; class in 808.89. Do not use for history, description, critical appraisal; class in 809
- .800 1–.800 5 Collections from specific periods
Add to base number 808.800 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., collections of 18th century literature 808.80033
- .801–.803 Collections displaying specific features
Add to base number 808.80 notation 1–3 from Table 3C, e.g., collections of literature featuring classicism 808.80142, on death 808.803548

> 808.81–808.88 Collections in specific forms

Observe table of preference under 800

Class comprehensive works in 808.8

See Manual at 808.81–808.88 and 809.1–809.7

.81 Collections of poetry

Class here folk poetry

For anonymous nursery rhymes and related rhymes and rhyming games from the oral tradition, see 398.8

.810 01–.810 07 Standard subdivisions

[.810 08] Groups of people

Use of this number for comprehensive works discontinued; class in 808.81

[.810 081–.810 088] Poetry for and by groups of people with specific attributes

Relocated to 808.81992

[.810 089] Poetry for and by ethnic and national groups

Relocated to 808.8198

.810 09 History and geographic treatment

[.810 090 1–.810 090 5] Historical periods

Do not use; class in 808.8101–808.8105

.810 091 Areas, regions, places in general

Poetry for and by people resident in specific regions relocated to 808.81991

[.810 092] Biography

Do not use; class in 808.81 without adding notation from Table 1

- .810 093–.810 099 Specific continents, countries, localities
 Poetry for and by people resident in specific continents, countries, localities relocated to 808.81993–808.81999
- .810 1–.810 5 Historical periods
 Add to base number 808.810 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., 18th century poetry 808.81033
- .812–.817 Specific kinds of poetry
 Add to base number 808.81 the numbers following —10 in notation 102–107 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of narrative poetry 808.813
- .819 Poetry displaying specific features, poetry for and by specific groups of people
 Class poetry of specific kinds displaying specific features, poetry of specific kinds for and by specific groups of people in 808.812–808.817
- .819 1–.819 3 Poetry displaying specific features
 Add to base number 808.819 notation 1–3 from Table 3C, e.g., collections of poetry about animals 808.819362
- .819 8 Poetry for and by ethnic and national groups [*formerly* 808.810089]
 Observe table of preference under —8–9 in Table 3C
- .819 805–.819 809 Poetry for and by ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent
 Add to base number 808.8198 notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., poetry by people of mixed African and European descent 808.81980596009
- .819 81–.819 89 Poetry for and by specific ethnic and national groups
 Add to base number 808.8198 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., poetry by people of African ancestry 808.819896
- .819 9 Poetry for and by groups of people with specific attributes, residents of specific areas
 Add to base number 808.8199 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–99 from Table 3C, e.g., poetry for and by groups of people resident in specific regions 808.81991 [*formerly* 808.810091]; poetry for and by groups of people with specific attributes 808.81992 [*formerly* 808.810081–808.810088]; poetry for and by groups of people resident in specific continents, countries, localities 808.81993–808.81999 [*formerly* 808.810093–808.810099]
 Observe table of preference under —8–9 in Table 3C
- .82 Collections of drama
 Class here folk drama
 See Manual at 808.82 vs. 791.437, 791.447, 791.457, 792.9
- .820 01–.820 07 Standard subdivisions

- [.820 08] Groups of people
 Use of this number for comprehensive works discontinued; class
 in 808.82
- [.820 081–.820 088] Drama for and by groups of people with specific attributes
 Relocated to 808.82992
- [.820 089] Drama for and by ethnic and national groups
 Relocated to 808.8298
- .820 09 History and geographic treatment
- [.820 090 1–.820 090 5] Historical periods
 Do not use; class in 808.8201–808.8205
- .820 091 Areas, regions, places in general
 Drama for and by people resident in specific regions relocated
 to 808.82991
- [.820 092] Biography
 Do not use; class in 808.82 without adding notation from Table
 1
- .820 093–.820 099 Specific continents, countries, localities
 Drama for and by people resident in specific continents,
 countries, localities relocated to 808.82993–808.82999
- .820 1–.820 5 Historical periods
 Add to base number 808.820 the numbers following —090 in notation
 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., 18th century drama 808.82033
- .822–.825 Specific media, scope, kinds of drama
 Add to base number 808.82 the numbers following —20 in notation
 202–205 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of tragedies 808.82512
- .829 Drama displaying specific features, drama for and by specific groups
 of people
 Class drama of specific media, scope, kinds displaying specific features,
 drama of specific media, scope, kinds for and by specific groups of
 people in 808.822–808.825
- .829 1–.829 3 Drama displaying specific features
 Add to base number 808.829 notation 1–3 from Table 3C, e.g.,
 collections of plays about Faust 808.829351
- .829 8 Drama for and by ethnic and national groups [*formerly* 808.820089]
 Observe table of preference under —8–9 in Table 3C

- .829 805–.829 809 Drama for and by ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent
 Add to base number 808.8298 notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., drama by people of mixed Asian and European descent 808.82980595009
- .829 81–.829 89 Drama for and by specific ethnic and national groups
 Add to base number 808.8298 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., drama by people of Asian ancestry 808.829895
- .829 9 Drama for and by groups of people with specific attributes, residents of specific areas
 Add to base number 808.8299 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–99 from Table 3C, e.g., drama for and by people resident in specific regions 808.82991 [*formerly* 808.820091]; drama for and by groups of people with specific attributes 808.82992 [*formerly* 808.820081–808.820088]; drama for and by people resident in specific continents, countries, localities 808.82993–808.82999 [*formerly* 808.820093–808.820099]
 Observe table of preference under —8–9 in Table 3C
- .83 Collections of fiction
- .830 01–.830 07 Standard subdivisions
- [.830 08] Groups of people
 Use of this number for comprehensive works discontinued; class in 808.83
- [.830 081–.830 088] Fiction for and by groups of people with specific attributes
 Relocated to 808.83992
- [.830 089] Fiction for and by ethnic and national groups
 Relocated to 808.8398
- .830 09 History and geographic treatment
- [.830 090 1–.830 090 5] Historical periods
 Do not use; class in 808.8301–808.8305
- .830 091 Areas, regions, places in general
 Fiction for and by people resident in specific regions relocated to 808.83991
- [.830 092] Biography
 Do not use; class in 808.83 without adding notation from Table 1
- .830 093–.830 099 Specific continents, countries, localities
 Fiction for and by people resident in specific continents, countries, localities relocated to 808.83993–808.83999

- .830 1–.830 5 Historical periods
 Add to base number 808.830 the numbers following —090 in notation
 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., 18th century fiction 808.83033
- .831–.838 Specific scope and types of fiction
 Add to base number 808.83 the numbers following —30 in notation
 301–308 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of love stories 808.8385
- .839 Fiction displaying specific features, fiction for and by specific
 groups of people
 Class fiction of specific scope and types displaying specific features,
 fiction of specific scope and types for and by specific groups of people,
 in 808.831–808.838
- .839 1–.839 3 Fiction displaying specific features
 Add to base number 808.839 notation 1–3 from Table 3C, e.g.,
 collections of fiction about animals 808.839362
- .839 8 Fiction for and by ethnic and national groups [*formerly* 808.830089]
 Observe table of preference under —8–9 in Table 3C
- .839 805–.839 809 Fiction for and by ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins
 from more than one continent, of European descent
 Add to base number 808.8398 notation 05–09 from Table 5,
 e.g., fiction by people of mixed African and European descent
 808.83980596009
- .839 81–.839 89 Fiction for and by specific ethnic and national groups
 Add to base number 808.8398 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g.,
 fiction by people of African ancestry 808.839896
- .839 9 Fiction for and by groups of people with specific attributes, residents of
 specific areas
 Add to base number 808.8399 the numbers following —9 in notation
 91–99 from Table 3C, e.g., fiction for and by people resident in
 specific regions 808.83991 [*formerly* 808.830091]; fiction for and
 by groups of people with specific attributes 808.83992 [*formerly*
 808.830081–808.830088]; fiction for and by people resident in
 specific continents, countries, localities 808.83993–808.83999
 [*formerly* 808.830093–808.830099]
 Observe table of preference under —8–9 in Table 3C
- .84 Collections of essays
- .840 01–.840 07 Standard subdivisions
- [.840 08] Groups of people
 Use of this number for comprehensive works discontinued; class
 in 808.84
- [.840 081–.840 088] Essays for and by groups of people with specific attributes
 Relocated to 808.84992

- [.840 089] Essays for and by ethnic and national groups
 Relocated to 808.8498
- .840 09 History and geographic treatment
- [.840 090 1–.840 090 5] Historical periods
 Do not use; class in 808.8401–808.8405
- .840 091 Areas, regions, places in general
 Essays for and by people resident in specific regions relocated
 to 808.84991
- [.840 092] Biography
 Do not use; class in 808.84 without adding notation from Table
 1
- .840 093–.840 099 Specific continents, countries, localities
 Essays for and by people resident in specific continents,
 countries, localities relocated to 808.84993–808.84999
- .840 1–.840 5 Historical periods
 Add to base number 808.840 the numbers following —090 in notation
 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., 18th century essays 808.84033
- .849 Essays displaying specific features, essays for and by specific groups
 of people
- .849 1–.849 3 Essays displaying specific features
 Add to base number 808.849 notation 1–3 from Table 3C, e.g.,
 collections of descriptive essays 808.84922
- .849 8 Essays for and by ethnic and national groups [*formerly* 808.840089]
 Observe table of preference under —8–9 in Table 3C
- .849 805–.849 809 Essays for and by ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins
 from more than one continent, of European descent
 Add to base number 808.8498 notation 05–09 from Table 5,
 e.g., essays by people of mixed African and European descent
 808.84980596009
- .849 81–.849 89 Essays for and by specific ethnic and national groups
 Add to base number 808.8498 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g.,
 essays by people of African ancestry 808.849896

- .849 9 Essays for and by groups of people with specific attributes, residents of specific areas
- Add to base number 808.8499 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–99 from Table 3C, e.g., essays for and by people resident in specific regions 808.84991 [*formerly* 808.840091]; essays for and by groups of people with specific attributes 808.84992 [*formerly* 808.840081–808.840088]; essays for and by people resident in specific continents, countries, localities 808.84993–808.84999 [*formerly* 808.840093–808.840099]
- Observe table of preference under —8–9 in Table 3C
- .85 Collections of speeches
- .850 01–.850 07 Standard subdivisions
- [.850 08] Groups of people
- Use of this number for comprehensive works discontinued; class in 808.85
- [.850 081–.850 088] Speeches for and by groups of people with specific attributes
- Relocated to 808.85992
- [.850 089] Speeches for and by ethnic and national groups
- Relocated to 808.8598
- .850 09 History and geographic treatment
- [.850 090 1–.850 090 5] Historical periods
- Do not use; class in 808.8501–808.8505
- .850 091 Areas, regions, places in general
- Speeches for and by people resident in specific regions relocated to 808.85991
- [.850 092] Biography
- Do not use; class in 808.85 without adding notation from Table 1
- .850 093–.850 099 Specific continents, countries, localities
- Speeches for and by people resident in specific continents, countries, localities relocated to 808.85993–808.85999
- .850 1–.850 5 Historical periods
- Add to base number 808.850 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., 18th century speeches 808.85033
- .851–.856 Specific kinds of speeches
- Add to base number 808.85 the numbers following —50 in notation 501–506 from Table 3B, e.g., debates 808.853

- .859 Speeches displaying specific features, speeches for and by specific groups of people
 Class speeches of specific kinds displaying specific features, speeches of specific kinds for and by specific groups of people in 808.851–808.856
- .859 1–.859 3 Speeches displaying specific features
 Add to base number 808.859 notation 1–3 from Table 3C, e.g., collections of descriptive speeches 808.85922
- .859 8 Speeches for and by ethnic and national groups [*formerly* 808.850089]
 Observe table of preference under —8–9 in Table 3C
- .859 805–.859 809 Speeches for and by ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent
 Add to base number 808.8598 notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., speeches by people of mixed Asian and European descent 808.85980595009
- .859 81–.859 89 Speeches for and by specific ethnic and national groups
 Add to base number 808.8598 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., speeches by people of African ancestry 808.859896
- .859 9 Speeches for and by groups of people with specific attributes, residents of specific areas
 Add to base number 808.8599 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–99 from Table 3C, e.g., speeches for and by people resident in specific regions 808.85991 [*formerly* 808.850091]; speeches for and by groups of people with specific attributes 808.85992 [*formerly* 808.850081–808.850088]; speeches for and by people resident in specific continents, countries, localities 808.85993–808.85999 [*formerly* 808.850093–808.850099]
 Observe table of preference under —8–9 in Table 3C
- .86 Collections of letters
- .860 01–.860 07 Standard subdivisions
- [.860 08] Groups of people
 Use of this number for comprehensive works discontinued; class in 808.86
- [.860 081–.860 088] Letters for and by groups of people with specific attributes
 Relocated to 808.86992
- [.860 089] Letters for and by ethnic and national groups
 Relocated to 808.8698
- .860 09 History and geographic treatment
- [.860 090 1–.860 090 5] Historical periods
 Do not use; class in 808.8601–808.8605

- .860 091 Areas, regions, places in general
Letters for and by people resident in specific regions relocated to 808.86991
- [.860 092] Biography
Do not use; class in 808.86 without adding notation from Table 1
- .860 093–.860 099 Specific continents, countries, localities
Letters for and by people resident in specific continents, countries, localities relocated to 808.86993–808.86999
- .860 1–.860 5 Historical periods
Add to base number 808.860 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., 18th century letters 808.86033
- .869 Letters displaying specific features, letters for and by specific groups of people
- .869 1–.869 3 Letters displaying specific features
Add to base number 808.869 notation 1–3 from Table 3C, e.g., collections of letters displaying classicism 808.869142
- .869 8 Letters for and by ethnic and national groups [*formerly* 808.860089]
Observe table of preference under —8–9 in Table 3C
- .869 805–.869 809 Letters for and by ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent
Add to base number 808.8698 notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., letters by people of mixed African and European descent 808.86980596009
- .869 81–.869 89 Letters for and by specific ethnic and national groups
Add to base number 808.8698 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., letters by people of African ancestry 808.869896
- .869 9 Letters for and by groups of people with specific attributes, residents of specific areas
Add to base number 808.8699 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–99 from Table 3C, e.g., letters for and by people resident in specific regions 808.86991 [*formerly* 808.860091]; letters for and by groups of people with specific attributes 808.86992 [*formerly* 808.860081–808.860088]; letters for and by people resident in specific continents, countries, localities 808.86993–808.86999 [*formerly* 808.860093–808.860099]
Observe table of preference under —8–9 in Table 3C

- .87 Collections of humor and satire
 Limited to collections (or texts and criticism) of works in two or more literary forms including both verse and prose
 Class here parody
See also 808.888 for humor and satire in two or more prose forms
 (Option: Give preference to humor and satire over all other literary forms)
- .870 01–.870 07 Standard subdivisions
- [.870 08] Groups of people
 Use of this number for comprehensive works discontinued; class in 808.87
- [.870 081–.870 088] Humor and satire for and by groups of people with specific attributes
 Relocated to 808.87992
- [.870 089] Humor and satire for and by ethnic and national groups
 Relocated to 808.8798
- .870 09 History and geographic treatment
- [.870 090 1–.870 090 5] Historical periods
 Do not use; class in 808.8701–808.8705
- .870 091 Areas, regions, places in general
 Humor and satire for and by people resident in specific regions relocated to 808.87991
- [.870 092] Biography
 Do not use; class in 808.87 without adding notation from Table 1
- .870 093–.870 099 Specific continents, countries, localities
 Humor and satire for and by people resident in specific continents, countries, localities relocated to 808.87993–808.87999
- .870 1–.870 5 Historical periods
 Add to base number 808.870 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., 18th century literary humor 808.87033
- .879 Humor and satire displaying specific features, humor and satire for and by specific groups of people
- .879 1–.879 3 Humor and satire displaying specific features
 Add to base number 808.879 notation 1–3 from Table 3C, e.g., collections of literary humor about holidays 808.879334
- .879 8 Humor and satire for and by ethnic and national groups [*formerly* 808.870089]
 Observe table of preference under —8–9 in Table 3C

- .879 805–.879 809 Humor and satire for and by ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent
- Add to base number 808.8798 notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., humor and satire by people of mixed African and European descent 808.87980596009
- .879 81–.879 89 Humor and satire for and by specific ethnic and national groups
- Add to base number 808.8798 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., humor and satire by people of African ancestry 808.879896
- .879 9 Humor and satire for and by groups of people with specific attributes, residents of specific areas
- Add to base number 808.8799 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–99 from Table 3C, e.g., humor and satire for and by people resident in specific regions 808.87991 [*formerly* 808.870091]; humor and satire for and by groups of people with specific attributes 808.87992 [*formerly* 808.870081–808.870088]; humor and satire for and by people resident in specific continents, countries, localities 808.87993–808.87999 [*formerly* 808.870093–808.870099]
- Observe table of preference under —8–9 in Table 3C
- .88 Collections of miscellaneous writings
- Limited to kinds of miscellaneous writings provided for below
- .880 01–.880 08 Standard subdivisions
- .880 09 History and geographic treatment
- [.880 090 1–.880 090 5] Historical periods
- Do not use; class in 808.8801–808.8805
- [.880 092] Biography
- Do not use; class in 808.88 without adding notation from Table 1
- .880 1–.880 5 Historical periods
- Add to base number 808.880 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., 18th century miscellaneous writings 808.88033

.882 Anecdotes, epigrams, graffiti, jokes, jests, quotations, riddles, tongue twisters

Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

Class here interdisciplinary works on riddles [*formerly* 398.6]; interdisciplinary works on tongue twisters [*formerly* 398.8]; riddles as jokes by known authors; tongue twisters by known authors; jokes and jests by known authors, interdisciplinary works on jokes and jests

Class humor and satire in two or more literary forms, including both verse and prose, in 808.87

For anonymous riddles from the oral tradition, see 398.6; for anonymous jokes and jests from the oral tradition, see 398.7; for anonymous tongue twisters from the oral tradition, see 398.8; for riddles as a type of puzzle similar to logic puzzles, see 793.735

.883 Diaries, journals, notebooks, reminiscences

Class interdisciplinary collections of diaries in 900. Class diaries, journals, notebooks, reminiscences of nonliterary authors with the appropriate subject, e.g., diaries of astronomers 520.922

.887 Works without identifiable form

Class here experimental and nonformalized works

Class experimental works with an identifiable literary form with the form, e.g., experimental novels 808.83

.888 Prose literature

Class prose without identifiable form in 808.887. Class a specific form of prose literature with the form, e.g., essays 808.84

.89 Collections for and by groups of people

Class here comprehensive works consisting equally of literary texts and history, description, critical appraisal of literature with respect to groups of people

Add to base number 808.89 notation 8–9 from Table 3C, e.g., collections of literature in more than one language by people of African descent 808.89896

Class literature displaying specific features for and by groups of people in 808.801–808.803; class literature in specific forms for and by groups of people in 808.81–808.88; class literatures of specific languages for and by groups of people in 810–890

For history, description, critical appraisal of literature with respect to groups of people, see 809.8

809 History, description, critical appraisal of more than two literatures

Notation 09 from Table 1 as modified below

Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 809.89

History, description, critical appraisal of works by more than one author in more than two languages not from the same language family

Class here collected biography of authors, individual and collected biography of critics; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than two literatures from two or more language families

Class theory, technique, history of literary criticism in 801.95. Class history, description, critical appraisal of more than two literatures in the same language with the literature of that language, e.g., history of English, American, and Australian literatures in English (more than one literary form) 820.9; class history, description, critical appraisal of literatures in more than two languages from the same family with the literature of that family, e.g., French, Italian, and Spanish literatures 840

See Manual at 808.8

.001–.007 Standard subdivisions

[.008] Groups of people

Do not use; class in 809.8

[.009] History, geographic treatment, biography

Do not use for history without subdivision, biography; class in 809. Do not use for historical periods; class in 809.01–809.05. Do not use for geographic treatment; class in 809.89

.01–.05 Literature from specific periods

Add to base number 809.0 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of 18th century literature 809.033

.1–.7 **Literature in specific forms other than miscellaneous writings**

Add to base number 809 the numbers following 808.8 in 808.81–808.87, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of poetry 809.1, of poetry about animals 809.19362

Class theory, technique, history of literary criticism of specific literary forms other than miscellaneous writings in 808.1–808.7; class miscellaneous writings in 809.98

See Manual at 800: Literary criticism; also at 808.81–808.88 and 809.1–809.7

.8 Literature for and by groups of people

Class here history and description of literature with respect to groups of people

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of literature for or by American Roman Catholic girls 809.892827 (*not* 809.813, 809.8921282, or 809.8973):

People by age group	809.89282–809.89285
People by gender or sex	809.89286–809.89287
People by relationships, people by miscellaneous social attributes, people with disabilities and illnesses, gifted people	809.89205–809.89207
Occupational and religious groups	809.8921
Ethnic and national groups except for groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent	809.81–809.88
Ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent	809.805–809.809
Residents of specific continents, countries, localities	809.893–809.899
Residents of specific regions	809.891

Class literature in specific forms for and by groups of people in 809.1–809.7; class literature displaying specific features for and by groups of people in 809.9; class literatures of specific languages for and by groups of people in 810–890

.805–.809 Literature for and by ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent

Add to base number 809.80 the numbers following —0 in notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., Europeans 809.809

> 809.81–809.88 Literature for and by ethnic and national groups except for groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent

Class comprehensive works in 809.8

.81–.87 Literature for and by larger western ethnic and national groups

Add to base number 809.8 notation 1–7 from Table 5, e.g., North Americans 809.81

.88 Literature for and by ancient Greeks, modern Greeks and Cypriots, other ethnic and national groups

.881 Ancient Greeks

.888 Modern Greeks and Cypriots

.889 Other ethnic and national groups

Add to base number 809.889 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–99 from Table 5, e.g., Jewish literature 809.88924

.89 Literature for and by other groups of people

Add to base number 809.89 the numbers following —9 in notation 91–99 from Table 3C, e.g., literature in more than one language by painters 809.892175, literature by residents of Canada 809.8971

.9 Literature displaying specific features, miscellaneous writings

Class literature in specific forms other than miscellaneous writings displaying specific features in 809.1–809.7

.91–.92 Literature displaying specific qualities and elements

Add to base number 809.9 notation 1–2 from Table 3C, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of literature displaying tragedy and horror 809.916

Class literature dealing with specific themes and subjects and displaying specific qualities and elements in 809.933

.93 Literature displaying other aspects**.933 Literature dealing with specific themes and subjects**

Add to base number 809.933 the numbers following —3 in notation 32–39 from Table 3C, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of literature dealing with marriage 809.933543

.935 Literature emphasizing subjects

Works not basically belletristic discussed as literature, in which the real interest is in the literary quality of the text rather than the subject of the text

Add to base number 809.935 notation 001–999, e.g., religious works as literature 809.9352, biography and autobiography as literature 809.93592

Class literary examination of texts in which the real interest is in the subject of the texts with the texts, e.g., literary examination of sacred books in order to reach conclusions about meaning, structure, authorship, date 208.2

.98 Miscellaneous writings

Add to base number 809.98 the numbers following 808.88 in 808.882–808.887, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of jokes 809.982

Class theory, technique, history of literary criticism of miscellaneous writings in 808

>

810–890 Literatures of specific languages and language families

Literature is classed by the language in which originally written

(Option: Class translations into a language requiring local emphasis with the literature of that language)

Class here collections of texts from literatures of two languages; history, description, critical appraisal of literatures of two languages

Unless there is a specific provision for a dialect, literature in a dialect is classed with the literature of the basic language. Subdivisions are added for literature in a dialect if subdivisions can be added for literature of the basic language, e.g., poetry by early 20th-century author writing in Swiss German dialect 831.912

Literature in a pidgin or creole is classed with the source language from which more of its vocabulary comes than from its other source language(s). Subdivisions are added for literature in a pidgin or creole if subdivisions can be added for literature of the source language, e.g., poetry by late 20th-century author writing in French creole 841.914

Under each literature identified by *, add to designated base number notation 1–8 from Table 3A for works by or about individual authors, notation 01–09 or notation 1–8 from Table 3B for works by or about more than one author. If the base number is not identified in a note, it is the number given for the literature, e.g., for Dutch 839.31. Full instructions for building numbers are given at the start of Table 3

Use the same literary period table for all works of or about literature in the same language, regardless of country of origin, except for special provisions for American literature in English under 810. If option C below is followed, optional period tables may be used for affiliated literatures (literatures in the same language, but from countries other than the traditional homeland)

The numbers used in this schedule for literatures of individual languages do not necessarily correspond exactly with those in 420–490 or with the notation in Table 6. Use notation from Table 6 only when so instructed, e.g., at 899

Unless other instructions are given, class a work containing or discussing literatures of two languages in 810–890 in the number coming first, e.g., a collection of English and French texts 820.8 (*not* 840.8), but a collection of classical Greek and Latin texts 880

Class texts by more than one author in more than two languages not from the same language family in 808.8; class history, description, critical appraisal of works by more than one author in more than two languages not from the same language family in 809; class comprehensive works in 800

(Option: For any group of literatures, add notation 04 from Table 1 and then add notation 01–09 or notation 1–8 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of literary texts written in Ethiopian languages 892.80408. Other options for specific groups of literatures are found at 891.4, 894.8, 896, 897, 898)

(Option: To give preferred treatment to, or make available more and shorter numbers for the classification of, literature of any specific language that it is desired to emphasize, use one of the following options:

(Option A: Class in 810, where full instructions appear

(continued)

>

810–890 Literatures of specific languages and language families (continued)

(Option B: Give preferred treatment by placing before 810 through use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., literature of Arabic language 8A0, for which the base number is 8A)

(Option C: Where two or more countries share the same language, either [1] use initial letters to distinguish the separate countries, or [2] use the special number designated for literatures of those countries that are not preferred. Full instructions appear under 811–818, 819, 821–828, 828.99, 841–848, 848.99, 861–868, 868.99, 869, 869.899)

810 American literature in English

English-language literature of North America, South America, Hawaii, and geographically associated islands

Class comprehensive works on American literature in English and English literature in 820

(Option: To give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific literature other than American literature in English, e.g., Afrikaans literature, class it here; in that case class American literature in English in 820. Other options are described under 810–890)

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of American literature in English

Add to base number 810 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of American literature in English 810.8

Use period table under 811–818

>

811–818 Subdivisions for specific forms of American literature in English

Except for modifications shown below, add to base number 81 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., American poetry in English 811

Use the following period table for English-language literature from any part of North America, South America, Hawaii, and geographically associated islands; for comprehensive works on English-language literature from all these areas

PERIOD TABLE FOR AMERICAN LITERATURE IN ENGLISH

1	Colonial period, 1607–1776
2	1776–1829
3	1830–1861
	Class here 19th century
	<i>For 1800–1829, see 2; for 1861–1899, see 4</i>
4	1861–1899
5	1900–1999
52	1900–1945
54	1945–1999
6	2000–

Class comprehensive works in 810

(Option: Distinguish English-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Canada C810, of Jamaica J810, of United States U810; or class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 819. Other options are described under 810–890)

(OPTIONAL PERIOD TABLE FOR AMERICAN LITERATURE IN ENGLISH

(For Canada

(3	Colonial period to 1867 in Canada
	Class here 19th century
	<i>For 1867–1899, see 4</i>
(4	1867–1899 in Canada
(5	1900–1999 in Canada
(52	1900–1945 in Canada
(54	1945–1999 in Canada
(6	2000 to present in Canada)

811 American poetry in English

Number built according to instructions under 811–818 and at beginning of Table 3

812 American drama in English

Number built according to instructions under 811–818 and at beginning of Table 3

813 American fiction in English

Number built according to instructions under 811–818 and at beginning of Table 3

814 American essays in English

Number built according to instructions under 811–818 and at beginning of Table 3

815 American speeches in English

Number built according to instructions under 811–818 and at beginning of Table 3

816 American letters in English

Number built according to instructions under 811–818 and at beginning of Table 3

817 American humor and satire in English

Number built according to instructions under 811–818 and at beginning of Table 3

818 American miscellaneous writings in English

Number built according to instructions under 811–818 and at beginning of Table 3

(819) American literatures in English not requiring local emphasis

(Optional number; prefer 810 for all American literatures in English. Other options are described under 810–890)

Class here English-language literatures of specific American countries other than the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries emphasizing United States literature may class here Canadian literature, and libraries emphasizing Canadian literature may class here United States literature

(.1) *†Canada

(.3) *†United States

(.5) *†Mexico

(.7) **Central America**

(Optional number; prefer 810)

(.700 1–.700 9) Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Central American literature in English

(Optional numbers; prefer 810.1–810.9)

Add to base number 819.700 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Central American literature in English 819.7008

(.701–.708) Subdivisions for specific forms of Central American literature in English

(Optional numbers; prefer 811–818)

Add to base number 819.70 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Central American poetry in English 819.701

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

†(Optional number; prefer 810 for comprehensive works; prefer 810.1–810.9 for standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form; prefer 811–818 for specific forms)

(.71-.77) Specific countries

(Optional numbers; prefer 810)

Add to base number 819.7 the numbers following —728 in notation 7281–7287 from Table 2, e.g., English-language literature of Costa Rica 819.76; then add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of English-language literature of Costa Rica 819.7608

(.8) West Indies (Antilles) and Bermuda

(Optional number; prefer 810)

(.800 1–.800 9) Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of English-language literatures of West Indies (Antilles) and Bermuda

(Optional numbers; prefer 810.1–810.9)

Add to base number 819.800 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of English-language literature of West Indies 819.8008

(.801–.808) Subdivisions for specific forms of English-language literatures of West Indies (Antilles) and Bermuda

(Optional numbers; prefer 811–818)

Add to base number 819.80 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., English-language poetry of West Indies 819.801

(.81) *†Cuba**(.82) *†Jamaica****(.83) *†Dominican Republic****(.84) *†Haiti****(.85) *†Puerto Rico****(.86) *†Bahama Islands****(.87) *†Leeward Islands****(.88) *†Windward and other southern islands****(.89) *†Bermuda****(.9) South America**

(Optional number; prefer 810)

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

†(Optional number; prefer 810 for comprehensive works; prefer 810.1–810.9 for standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form; prefer 811–818 for specific forms)

- (.900 1-.900 9) Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of English-language literatures of South America
(Optional numbers; prefer 810.1-810.9)
Add to base number 819.900 the numbers following —0 in notation 01-09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of English-language literature from South America 819.9008
- (.901-.908) Subdivisions for specific forms of English-language literatures of South America
(Optional numbers; prefer 811-818)
Add to base number 819.90 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., English-language poetry from South America 819.901
- (.91-.99) Specific countries
(Optional numbers; prefer 810)
Add to base number 819.9 the numbers following —8 in notation 81-89 from Table 2, e.g., English-language literature of Brazil 819.91; then add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of English-language literature of Brazil 819.9108

820 English and Old English (Anglo-Saxon) literatures

Subdivisions are added for English literature alone

For American literature in English, see 810

- .1-9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of English literature**
Add to base number 820 the numbers following —0 in notation 01-09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of English literature 820.8
Use period table under 821-828

>

821–828 Subdivisions for specific forms of English literature

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to base number 82 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of English literature 820.8

Use the following period table for literature from all countries and continents except North America, South America, Hawaii, and associated islands; for comprehensive works on literature in English language

PERIOD TABLE FOR ENGLISH

1	Early English period, 1066–1400 Class here medieval period
2	1400–1558
3	Elizabethan period, 1558–1625 Class here 16th century; Renaissance and Jacobean periods <i>For 1500–1558, the pre-Elizabethan part of the Renaissance, see 2</i>
4	1625–1702 Class here Caroline and Restoration periods
5	Queen Anne period, 1702–1745 Class here 18th century <i>For 1700–1702, see 4; for 1745–1799, see 6</i>
6	1745–1799
7	1800–1837 Class here romantic period
8	Victorian period, 1837–1899 Class here 19th century <i>For 1800–1837, see 7</i>
9	1900–
91	1900–1999
912	1900–1945
914	1945–1999
92	2000–

Class comprehensive works in 820

(Option: Distinguish English-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of England E820, of Ireland Ir820, of Scotland S820, of Wales W820, or of all British Isles B820, of Australia A820, of India In820; or class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 828.99. If literatures are identified by one of these methods, assign optional period numbers given below for literature of Ireland, Africa, Asia, Australia, and New Zealand; otherwise, assign the period numbers given above for all English-language literatures except American literature. Other options are described under 810–890

(continued)

>

821–828 Subdivisions for specific forms of English literature (continued)

(OPTIONAL PERIOD TABLES FOR ENGLISH

(For Ireland

- (1) Medieval and early modern to 1659 in Ireland
Class here 17th century
For 1660–1699, see 2
- (2) 1660–1799 in Ireland
- (3) 1800–1899 in Ireland
- (4) 1900–1945 in Ireland
Class here Irish literary revival, 20th century
For Irish literary revival in 19th century, see 3; for 1945–1999, see 5
- (5) 1945–1999 in Ireland
- (6) 2000 to present in Ireland

(For African countries other than South Africa

- (1) Early period to 1959 in African countries other than South Africa
- (2) 1960–1999 in African countries other than South Africa
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1959, see 1
- (3) 2000 to present in African countries other than South Africa

(For Asian countries

- (1) Early period to 1858 in Asian countries
Class here 19th century
For 1858–1899, see 2
- (2) 1858–1947 in Asian countries
- (3) 1947–1999 in Asian countries
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1947, see 2
- (4) 2000 to present in Asian countries

(For Australia

- (1) Early period to 1889 in Australia
- (2) 1890–1945 in Australia
- (3) 1945–1999 in Australia
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1945, see 2
- (4) 2000 to present in Australia

(For New Zealand

- (1) Early period to 1907 in New Zealand
- (2) 1907–1999 in New Zealand
- (3) 2000 to present in New Zealand

(continued)

>

821–828 Subdivisions for specific forms of English literature (continued)

(For South Africa

- (1 Early period to 1909 in South Africa
- (2 1909–1961 in South Africa

Class here 20th century

For 1900–1909, see 1; for 1961–1994, see 3; for 1994–1999, see 4

- (3 1961–1994 in South Africa
- (4 1994 to present in South Africa)

821 English poetry

Number built according to instructions under 821–828 and at beginning of Table 3

822 English drama

Number built according to instructions under 821–828 and at beginning of Table 3

.3 Drama of Elizabethan period, 1558–1625

Number built according to instructions under 821–828 and at beginning of Table 3

.33

William Shakespeare

(Option: Subarrange works about and by Shakespeare according to the following table, which may be adapted for use with any specific author:

- A Authorship controversies
 - (Option: Class here bibliography; prefer 016.82233)
- B Biography
- D Critical appraisal
 - Class critical appraisal of individual works in O-Z
- E Textual criticism
 - Class textual criticism of individual works in O-Z
- F Sources, allusions, learning
- G Societies, concordances, miscellany
- H Quotations, condensations, adaptations
- I Complete works in English without notes
- J Complete works in English with notes
- K Complete works in translation
- L Partial collections in English without notes
- M Partial collections in English with notes
- N Partial collections in translation
- >O-Z Individual works
 - Use the first number of each pair for texts, the second for description and critical appraisal
 - Class poems in 821.3
- >O-R Comedies
 - O1-2 All's well that ends well
 - O3-4 As you like it
 - O5-6 The comedy of errors
 - O7-8 Love's labour's lost
 - P1-2 Measure for measure
 - P3-4 The merchant of Venice
 - P5-6 The merry wives of Windsor
 - P7-8 A midsummer night's dream
 - Q1-2 Much ado about nothing
 - Q3-4 The taming of the shrew
 - Q5-6 The tempest
 - Q7-8 Twelfth night
 - R1-2 The two gentlemen of Verona
 - R3-4 The winter's tale
- >S-V Tragedies
 - S1-2 Antony and Cleopatra
 - S3-4 Coriolanus
 - S5-6 Cymbeline
 - S7-8 Hamlet
 - T1-2 Julius Caesar
 - T3-4 King Lear
 - T5-6 Macbeth
 - T7-8 Othello
 - U1-2 Pericles
 - U3-4 Romeo and Juliet
 - U5-6 Timon of Athens
 - U7-8 Titus Andronicus
 - V1-2 Troilus and Cressida

(continued)

.33

William Shakespeare (continued)

- >W-X Histories
 - W1-2 Henry IV, parts 1-2
 - W3-4 Henry V
 - W5-6 Henry VI, parts 1-3
 - W7-8 Henry VIII
 - X1-2 King John
 - X3-4 Richard II
 - X5-6 Richard III
- Y Poems
 - (Optional numbers; prefer 821.3)
 - Y1-2 General works
 - Y3-4 Venus and Adonis
 - Y5-6 The rape of Lucrece
 - Y7-8 Sonnets
- Z Spurious and doubtful works)

823 English fiction

Number built according to instructions under 821-828 and at beginning of Table 3

824 English essays

Number built according to instructions under 821-828 and at beginning of Table 3

825 English speeches

Number built according to instructions under 821-828 and at beginning of Table 3

826 English letters

Number built according to instructions under 821-828 and at beginning of Table 3

827 English humor and satire

Number built according to instructions under 821-828 and at beginning of Table 3

828 English miscellaneous writings

Number built according to instructions under 821-828 and at beginning of Table 3

(.99) English-language literatures not requiring local emphasis

(Optional number; prefer 820 for all non-American English-language literatures. Other options are described under 810-890)

Class here English-language literatures of specific non-American countries other than the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries emphasizing British literature may class here Australian, Indian, other literatures, and libraries emphasizing Indian literature may class here British literature

- (.991) †Scotland and Ireland
 (Option: Class here all English-language literature of United Kingdom, of Great Britain, of British Isles. Add to base number 828.991 as instructed at beginning of Table 3 for United Kingdom, for Great Britain, for British Isles, e.g., a collection of English-language literature from the British Isles 828.99108)
- (.991 1) *†Scotland
- (.991 5) *†Ireland
- (.992) *†England and Wales
- (.992 9) *†Wales
- (.993) †New Zealand, Australia, India, South Africa
- (.993 3) *†New Zealand
- (.993 4) *†Australia
- (.993 5) *†India
- (.993 6) *†South Africa
- (.994–.999) Other parts of the world
 (Optional numbers; prefer 820)
 English-language literature except of British Isles, North America, South America, Hawaii, New Zealand, Australia, India, South Africa, and associated islands
 Add to base number 828.99 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., English-language literature of Israel 828.995694; then add 0 and to the result add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., English-language poetry of Israel 828.99569401

829 Old English (Anglo-Saxon) literature

- .01–.09 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Old English (Anglo-Saxon) literature
 Limited to works by or about more than one author
 Add to base number 829 notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form 829.09

.1 Poetry

For Caedmon, see 829.2; for Beowulf, see 829.3; for Cynewulf, see 829.4

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

†(Optional number; prefer 820 for comprehensive works; prefer 820.1–820.9 for standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form; prefer 821–828 for specific forms)

- .100 1-.100 9 Standard subdivisions; collections; history, description, critical appraisal
 Limited to works by or about more than one author
 Add to base number 829.100 the numbers following —100 in notation
 1001–1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of Old English poetry
 829.1008
- .2 Caedmon**
- .3 Beowulf**
- .4 Cynewulf**
- .8 Prose literature**
- .800 1-.800 9 Standard subdivisions; collections; history, description, critical appraisal
 Limited to works by or about more than one author
 Add to base number 829.800 the numbers following —100 in notation
 1001–1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of Old English prose
 829.8008

830 **German literature and literatures of related languages**

Class here literatures of Germanic languages

For English and Old English (Anglo-Saxon) literatures, see 820

- .01-.09 Standard subdivisions of literatures of Germanic languages

.1-.9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of German literature

Class here literature in Alsatian, Franconian, Pennsylvania Dutch (Pennsylvania German), Swabian, Swiss-German dialects

Add to base number 830 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of German literature 830.8

Use period table under 831–838

See also 839.1 for Yiddish (Judeo-German) literature; also 839.4 for low German (Plattdeutsch) literature

> **831–838 Subdivisions for specific forms of German literature**

Class here specific forms of literature in Alsatian, Franconian, Pennsylvania Dutch (Pennsylvania German), Swabian, Swiss-German dialects

Add to base number 83 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., German poetry 831

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1099 Class here Old High German literature
2	1100–1349 Class here medieval period, 750–1349; Middle High German literature <i>For 750–1099, see 1</i>
21	1100–1249 Class here 13th century, Blütezeit <i>For 1250–1299, see 22</i>
22	1250–1349 Class here 14th century <i>For 1350–1399, see 3</i>
3	1350–1517
4	Reformation period, 1517–1625
5	1625–1749 Class here baroque period
6	1750–1832 Class here 18th century, classical period, romantic period <i>For 1700–1749, see 5; for later romantic period, see 7</i>
7	1832–1856 Class here 19th century <i>For 1800–1832, see 6; for 1856–1899, see 8</i>
8	1856–1899
9	1900–
91	1900–1990
912	1900–1945
914	1945–1990
92	1990–

Class comprehensive works in 830

See also 839.1 for Yiddish (Judeo-German) literature; also 839.4 for low German (Plattdeutsch) literature

831 German poetry

Number built according to instructions under 831–838 and at beginning of Table 3

832 German drama

Number built according to instructions under 831–838 and at beginning of Table 3

833 German fiction

Number built according to instructions under 831–838 and at beginning of Table 3

834 German essays

Number built according to instructions under 831–838 and at beginning of Table 3

835 German speeches

Number built according to instructions under 831–838 and at beginning of Table 3

836 German letters

Number built according to instructions under 831–838 and at beginning of Table 3

837 German humor and satire 838

Number built according to instructions under 831–838 and at beginning of Table 3

838 German miscellaneous writings

Number built according to instructions under 831–838 and at beginning of Table 3

839 Other Germanic literatures**SUMMARY**

- 839.1 Yiddish literature
- .2 Frisian literature
- .3 Netherlandish literatures
- .4 Low German (Plattdeutsch) literature
- .5 North Germanic literatures (Nordic literatures)
- .6 Old Norse (Old Icelandic), Icelandic, Faroese literatures
- .7 Swedish literature
- .8 Danish and Norwegian literatures
- .9 East Germanic literatures

.1 *Yiddish literature

PERIOD TABLE

- 1 Early period to 1699
- 2 Period of enlightenment, 1700–1859
Class here 19th century
For 1860–1899, see 3
- 3 1860–1945
Class here 20th century
For 1945–1999, see 4
- 4 1945–

839.2–839.4 Low Germanic literatures

Class comprehensive works in 839

> *Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

.2 *Frisian literature

Including Old Frisian literature

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1609
2	1609–1799
3	1800–1899
4	1900–1999
5	2000–

.3 Netherlandish literatures**.31 *Dutch literature**

Including Old Low Franconian literature

Class here Flemish literature

PERIOD TABLE

1	Medieval period to 1449 Class here 15th century <i>For 1450–1499, see 2</i>
2	Renaissance period, 1450–1599
3	1600–1699
4	1700–1799
5	1800–1899
6	1900–1999
62	1900–1945
64	1945–1999
7	2000–

.36 *Afrikaans literature

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1875
2	1875–1904
3	1904–1924
4	1924–1961 Class here 20th century <i>For 1900–1904, see 2; for 1904–1924, see 3; for 1961–1994, see 5; for 1994–1999, see 6</i>
5	1961–1994
6	1994–

.4 *Low German (Plattdeutsch) literature

Including Old Low German literature, Old Saxon literature

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1599
2	1600–1899
3	1900–1999
4	2000–

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

.5 North Germanic literatures (Nordic literatures)

Class here comprehensive works on East Scandinavian literatures, West Scandinavian literatures, modern West Scandinavian literatures; comprehensive works on literatures of the Nordic countries

For specific North Germanic literatures, see 839.6–839.8; for Finnic literatures, see 894.54; for Sámi literatures, see 894.57

839.6–839.8 Specific North Germanic literatures

Class comprehensive works in 839.5

.6 Old Norse (Old Icelandic), Icelandic, Faroese literatures

.600 1–.600 9 Standard subdivisions of comprehensive works on Old Norse (Old Icelandic), Icelandic, Faroese literatures

.601–.609 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Old Norse (Old Icelandic) literature

Add to base number 839.60 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Old Norse literature 839.608

.61–.68 Subdivisions for specific forms of Old Norse (Old Icelandic) literature

Add to base number 839.6 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Old Norse poetry 839.61

.69 Icelandic and Faroese literatures

.690 01–.690 09 Standard subdivisions of comprehensive works on Icelandic and Faroese literatures

.690 1–.690 9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Icelandic literature

Add to base number 839.690 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Icelandic literature 839.6908

Use period table under 839.691–839.698

.691–.698 Subdivisions for specific forms of Icelandic literature

Add to base number 839.69 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Icelandic poetry 839.691

PERIOD TABLE

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1 | Early period, 1500–1719 |
| 2 | Age of enlightenment, 1720–1835 |
| 3 | 1835–1899 |
| | Class here 19th century |
| | <i>For 1800–1835, see 2</i> |
| 4 | 1900–1999 |
| 5 | 2000– |

.699 *Faroese literature

.7 *Swedish literature

PERIOD TABLE

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | Medieval period to 1519 |
| 2 | Reformation period, 1520–1639 |
| 3 | 1640–1739
Class here 17th century
<i>For 1600–1639, see 2</i> |
| 4 | 1740–1779
Class here 18th century
<i>For 1700–1739, see 3; for 1780–1799, see 5</i> |
| 5 | Age of Gustavus, 1780–1809
Including 1800–1809 [<i>formerly 6</i>] |
| 6 | 1809–1909
1800–1809 relocated to 5 |
| 62 | 1809–1830
Class here period of romanticism |
| 64 | 1830–1879
Class here period of liberalism |
| 67 | 1879–1909
Including 1900–1909 [<i>formerly 72</i>]
Class here period of realism |
| 7 | 1909–1999 |
| 72 | 1909–1945
1900–1909 relocated to 67 |
| 74 | 1945–1999 |
| 8 | 2000– |

.8 Danish and Norwegian literatures

.81 *Danish literature

PERIOD TABLE

- | | |
|----|---|
| 1 | Medieval period to 1499 |
| 2 | Reformation period, 1500–1559
Class here 16th century
<i>For 1560–1599, see 3</i> |
| 3 | Learned period, 1560–1699 |
| 4 | Age of Holberg, 1700–1749
Class here 18th century
<i>For 1750–1799, see 5</i> |
| 5 | Period of enlightenment, 1750–1799 |
| 6 | 1800–1899 |
| 7 | 1900–1999 |
| 72 | 1900–1945 |
| 74 | 1945–1999 |
| 8 | 2000– |

Class Dano-Norwegian literature in 839.82

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

.82 *Norwegian literature

Class here Dano-Norwegian, New Norwegian, Bokmål, Landsmål, Riksmål literature

PERIOD TABLE

1	Medieval period to 1499
2	Reformation period, 1500–1559 Class here 16th century <i>For 1560–1599, see 3</i>
3	Learned period, 1560–1699
4	1700–1749 Class here 18th century <i>For 1750–1799, see 5</i>
5	Period of enlightenment, 1750–1799
6	1800–1899
7	1900–1999
72	1900–1945
74	1945–1999
8	2000–

.9 East Germanic literatures

840 French literature and literatures of related Romance languages

Class here literatures of Romance languages

Class comprehensive works on literatures of Italic languages in 870

For literatures of Italian, Dalmatian, Romanian, Rhaetian, Sardinian, Corsican languages, see 850; for literatures of Spanish, Portuguese, Galician languages, see 860

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of literatures of Romance languages

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of French literature

Add to base number 840 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of French literature 840.8

Use period table under 841–848

See also 849 for Occitan literature

>

841–848 Subdivisions for specific forms of French literature

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to base number 84 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., French poetry 841

Use the following period table for literature in French language from all countries and continents, for comprehensive works on literature in French language

PERIOD TABLE FOR FRENCH

1	Early period to 1399 Class here medieval period
2	1400–1499
3	Renaissance period, 1500–1599
4	Classical period, 1600–1715
5	1715–1789 Class here 18th century, Enlightenment, Age of Reason <i>For 1700–1715, see 4; for 1789–1799, see 6</i>
6	Revolution and Empire, 1789–1815
7	Constitutional monarchy, 1815–1848 Class here 19th century <i>For 1800–1815, see 6; for 1848–1899, see 8</i>
8	1848–1899
9	1900–
91	1900–1999
912	1900–1945
914	1945–1999
92	2000–

Class comprehensive works in 840

See also 849 for Occitan literature

(Option: Distinguish French-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Canada C840, of France F840; or class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 848.99. If literatures are identified by one of these methods, assign the optional period numbers given below for Belgium and non-European countries; otherwise, assign the period numbers given above for all French-language literatures. Other options are described under 810–890

(continued)

> **841–848 Subdivisions for specific forms of French literature (continued)**

(OPTIONAL PERIOD TABLES FOR FRENCH

(For Asian and African countries

- (1 Early period to 1959 in Asian and African countries
- (2 1960–1999 in Asian and African countries
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1959, see 1
- (3 2000 to present in Asian and African countries

(For Belgium

- (1 Early period to 1829 in Belgium
- (2 1830–1899 in Belgium
Class here 19th century
For 1800–1829, see 2
- (3 1900–1999 in Belgium
- (32 1900–1945 in Belgium
- (34 1945–1999 in Belgium
- (4 2000 to present in Belgium

(For Canada

- (3 Colonial period to 1867 in Canada
Class here 19th century
For 1867–1899, see 4
- (4 1867–1899 in Canada
- (5 1900–1999 in Canada
- (52 1900–1945 in Canada
- (54 1945–1999 in Canada
- (6 2000 to present in Canada)

841 French poetry

Number built according to instructions under 841–848 and at beginning of Table 3

842 French drama

Number built according to instructions under 841–848 and at beginning of Table 3

843 French fiction

Number built according to instructions under 841–848 and at beginning of Table 3

844 French essays

Number built according to instructions under 841–848 and at beginning of Table 3

845 French speeches

Number built according to instructions under 841–848 and at beginning of Table 3

846 French letters

Number built according to instructions under 841–848 and at beginning of Table 3

847 French humor and satire

Number built according to instructions under 841–848 and at beginning of Table 3

848 French miscellaneous writings

Number built according to instructions under 841–848 and at beginning of Table 3

- (.99) French-language literatures not requiring local emphasis
 (Optional number; prefer 840 for all French-language literatures. Other options are described under 810–890)
 Class here literatures of specific countries, e.g., libraries emphasizing literature of France may class here Belgian and Canadian literatures, libraries emphasizing Canadian literature may class here literature of France
- (.991) *†France
- (.992) *†Canada
- (.993) *†Belgium
- (.994–.999) Other parts of the world
 (Optional numbers; prefer 840)
 French-language literature except of France, Belgium, Canada
 Add to base number 848.99 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., French-language literature of Tahiti 848.9996211; then add 0 and to the result add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., French-language drama of Tahiti 848.999621102

849 Occitan, Catalan, Franco-Provençal literatures

Subdivisions are added for Occitan literature alone

- .01–.09 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Occitan literature
 Class here Langue d'oc literature; literature in Auvergnat, Gascon, Languedocien, Limousin, Provençal dialects
 Add to base number 849.0 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Occitan literature 849.08
 Use period table under 849.1–849.8
 Class Franco-Provençal literature in 849 without further addition

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

†(Optional number; prefer 840 for comprehensive works; prefer 840.1–840.9 for standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form; prefer 821–848 for specific forms)

.1-8 Subdivisions for specific forms of Occitan literature

Class here specific forms of Langue d'oc literature; specific forms of literature in Auvergnat, Gascon, Languedocien, Limousin, Provençal dialects

Add to base number 849 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Occitan poetry 849.1

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1099
2	Golden age, 1100-1299
3	1300-1499
4	1500-1899
5	1900-1999
52	1900-1945
54	1945-1999
6	2000-

Class Franco-Provençal literature in 849 without further addition

.9 *Catalan literature**PERIOD TABLE**

1	Early period to 1349 Class here 14th century <i>For 1350-1399, see 2</i>
2	1350-1449
3	Golden age, 1450-1499 Class here 15th century <i>For 1400-1449, see 2</i>
4	1500-1899
5	1900-1999
52	1900-1945
54	1945-1999
6	2000-

850 Literatures of Italian, Dalmatian, Romanian, Rhaetian, Sardinian, Corsican languages

Subdivisions are added for Italian literature alone

Class comprehensive works on literatures of Romance languages in 840; class comprehensive works on literatures of Italic languages in 870

.1-9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Italian literature

Add to base number 850 the numbers following —0 in notation 01-09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Italian literature 850.8

Use period table under 851-858

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

> **851–858 Subdivisions for specific forms of Italian literature**

Add to base number 85 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Italian poetry 851

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1375
2	Period of classical learning, 1375–1492 Class here Renaissance period <i>For later Renaissance period, see 3</i>
3	1492–1542
4	1542–1585 Class here 16th century <i>For 1500–1542, see 3; for 1585–1599, see 5</i>
5	1585–1748
6	1748–1814 Class here 18th century <i>For 1700–1748, see 5</i>
7	1814–1859 Class here 19th century, romantic period <i>For 1800–1814, see 6; for 1859–1899, see 8</i>
8	1859–1899
9	1900–
91	1900–1999
912	1900–1945
914	1945–1999
92	2000–

Class comprehensive works in 850

851 Italian poetry

Number built according to instructions under 851–858 and at beginning of Table 3

852 Italian drama

Number built according to instructions under 851–858 and at beginning of Table 3

853 Italian fiction

Number built according to instructions under 851–858 and at beginning of Table 3

854 Italian essays

Number built according to instructions under 851–858 and at beginning of Table 3

855 Italian speeches

Number built according to instructions under 851–858 and at beginning of Table 3

856 Italian letters

Number built according to instructions under 851–858 and at beginning of Table 3

857 Italian humor and satire

Number built according to instructions under 851–858 and at beginning of Table 3

858 Italian miscellaneous writings

Number built according to instructions under 851–858 and at beginning of Table 3

859 Literatures of Romanian, Rhaetian, Sardinian, Corsican languages

Subdivisions are added for Romanian literature alone

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Romanian literature

Add to base number 859.0 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Romanian literature 859.08

Use period table under 859.1–859.8

.1–.8 Subdivisions for specific forms of Romanian literature

Add to base number 859 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Romanian poetry 859.1

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1799
2	1800–1899
3	1900–
32	1900–1945
34	1945–1989
35	1989–

.9 Literatures of Rhaetian, Sardinian, Corsican languages

.92 *Friulian literature

.94 *Ladin literature

.96 *Romansch literature

.98 Sardinian and Corsican literatures

.982 *Sardinian literature

.984 *Corsican literature

860 Literatures of Spanish, Portuguese, Galician languages

Class comprehensive works on literatures of Romance languages in 840

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of literatures of Spanish, Portuguese, Galician languages

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

.1-.9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Spanish literature

Class here Judeo-Spanish (Ladino), Papiamentu literature

Add to base number 860 the numbers following —0 in notation 01-09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Spanish literature 860.8

Use period table under 861-868

See also 849.9 for Catalan literature

>

861–868 Subdivisions for specific forms of Spanish literature

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to base number 86 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Spanish poetry 861

Class here specific forms of Judeo-Spanish (Ladino), Papiamentu literature

Use the following period table for literature in Spanish language from all countries and continents, for comprehensive works on literature in Spanish language

PERIOD TABLE FOR SPANISH

1	Early period to 1369 Class here 14th century <i>For 1369–1399, see 2</i>
2	1369–1516
3	Golden Age, 1516–1699
4	1700–1799
5	1800–1899
6	1900–1999
62	1900–1945
64	1945–1999
7	2000–

Class comprehensive works in 860

See also 849.9 for Catalan literature

(Option: Distinguish Spanish-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Chile Ch860, of Colombia Co860, of Mexico M860 [or, of all American countries A860], of Spain S860; or class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 868.99. If literatures are identified by one of these methods, assign the optional period numbers given below for literature of American countries; otherwise, assign the period numbers given above for all Spanish-language literatures. Other options are described under 810–890

(OPTIONAL PERIOD TABLE FOR SPANISH

(For American countries

(1	Colonial and revolutionary period, 1519–1826, in American countries
(2	1826–1888 in American countries Class here 19th century <i>For 1800–1826, see 1; for 1888–1899, see 3</i>
(3	1888–1909 in American countries
(4	1910–1999 in American countries
(42	1910–1945 in American countries
(44	1945–1999 in American countries
(5	2000 to present in American countries)

861 Spanish poetry

Number built according to instructions under 861–868 and at beginning of Table 3

862 Spanish drama

Number built according to instructions under 861–868 and at beginning of Table 3

863 Spanish fiction

Number built according to instructions under 861–868 and at beginning of Table 3

864 Spanish essays

Number built according to instructions under 861–868 and at beginning of Table 3

865 Spanish speeches

Number built according to instructions under 861–868 and at beginning of Table 3

866 Spanish letters

Number built according to instructions under 861–868 and at beginning of Table 3

867 Spanish humor and satire

Number built according to instructions under 861–868 and at beginning of Table 3

868 Spanish miscellaneous writings

Number built according to instructions under 861–868 and at beginning of Table 3

(.99) Spanish-language literatures not requiring local emphasis

(Optional number; prefer 860 for all Spanish-language literatures. Other options are described under 810–890)

Class here literatures of specific countries other than the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries emphasizing literature of Spain may class here Hispanic-American literatures, and libraries emphasizing literature of Mexico may class here literatures of other Hispanic-American countries and of Spain

(.991) *†Spain**(.992) Hispanic North America**

(Optional number; prefer 860)

Class here comprehensive works on Spanish-language literature of Hispanic America

For Hispanic South America, see 868.993

(.992 001–.992 009)

Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Spanish-language literatures of Hispanic North America

(Optional numbers; prefer 860.1–860.9)

Add to base number 868.9920 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Spanish-language literature of Hispanic North America 868.992008

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

†(Optional number; prefer 860 for comprehensive works; prefer 860.1–860.9 for standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form; prefer 861–868 for specific forms)

- (.992 01–.992 08) Subdivisions for specific forms of Spanish-language literatures of Hispanic North America
(Optional numbers; prefer 861–868)
Add to base number 868.9920 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Spanish-language poetry of Hispanic North America 868.99201
- (.992 1) *†Mexico
- (.992 2) Central America
(Optional number; prefer 860)
- (.992 200 1–.992 200 9) Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Spanish-language literatures of Central America
(Optional numbers; prefer 860.1–860.9)
Add to base number 868.992200 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Spanish-language literature of Central America 868.9922008
- (.992 201–.992 208) Subdivisions for specific forms of Spanish-language literatures of Central America
(Optional numbers; prefer 861–868)
Add to base number 868.99220 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Spanish-language poetry of Central America 868.992201
- (.992 21–.992 27) Specific countries
(Optional numbers; prefer 860)
Add to base number 868.9922 the numbers following —728 in notation 7281–7287 from Table 2, e.g., Spanish-language literature of Costa Rica 868.99226; then add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., collections of Spanish-language literature of Costa Rica 868.9922608
- (.992 3) West Indies (Antilles)
(Optional number; prefer 860)

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

†(Optional number; prefer 860 for comprehensive works; prefer 860.1–860.9 for standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form; prefer 861–868 for specific forms)

- (.992 300 1–.992 300 9) Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Spanish literatures of West Indies
(Optional numbers; prefer 860.1–860.9)
Add to base number 868.992300 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Spanish-language literature of West Indies 868.9923008
- (.992 301–.992 308) Subdivisions for specific forms of Spanish-language literatures of West Indies
(Optional numbers; prefer 861–868)
Add to base number 868.99230 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Spanish-language poetry of West Indies 868.992301
- (.992 31) *†Cuba
- (.992 33) *†Dominican Republic
- (.992 35) *†Puerto Rico
- (.993) Hispanic South America
(Optional number; prefer 860)
- (.993 001–.993 009) Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Spanish-language literatures of Hispanic South America
(Optional numbers; prefer 860.1–860.9)
Add to base number 868.99300 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Spanish-language literature of Hispanic South America 868.993008
- (.993 01–.993 08) Subdivisions for specific forms of Spanish-language literatures of Hispanic South America
(Optional numbers; prefer 861–868)
Add to base number 868.9930 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Spanish-language poetry of Hispanic South America 868.99301

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

†(Optional number; prefer 860 for comprehensive works; prefer 860.1–860.9 for standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form; prefer 861–868 for specific forms)

- (.993 2–.993 7) Argentina, Chile, Bolivia, Peru, Colombia, Ecuador, Venezuela
 (Optional numbers; prefer 860)
 Add to base number 868.993 the numbers following —8 in notation 82–87 from Table 2, e.g., Spanish-language literature of Chile 868.9933; then add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., history and critical appraisal of Spanish-language literature of Chile 868.993309
- (.993 9) Paraguay and Uruguay
 (Optional numbers; prefer 860)
 Add to base number 868.9939 the numbers following —89 in notation 892–895 from Table 2, e.g., Spanish-language literature of Uruguay 868.99395; then add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., history and critical appraisal of Spanish-language literature of Uruguay 868.9939509
- (.994–.999) Other parts of the world
 (Optional numbers; prefer 860)
 Spanish-language literature except of Spain, Hispanic America
 Add to base number 868.99 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Spanish-language literature of the United States 868.9973; then add 0 and to the result add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Spanish-language poetry of the United States 868.997301

869 *Literatures of Portuguese and Galician languages

Subdivisions are added for literature of Portuguese language alone

Use the following period table for literature in Portuguese language from all countries and continents, for comprehensive works on literature in Portuguese language

PERIOD TABLE FOR PORTUGUESE

1	Early period to 1499
2	1500–1799
	Class here classical period
3	1800–1899
4	1900–1999
41	1900–1945
42	1945–1999
5	2000–

See also 860 for Papiamentu literature

(Option: Distinguish Portuguese-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Brazil B869, of Portugal P869; or class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 869.899. If literatures are identified by one of these methods, assign the optional period numbers given below for literature of Brazil; otherwise, assign the period numbers given above for all Portuguese-language literatures. Other options are described under 810–890)

(OPTIONAL PERIOD TABLE FOR PORTUGUESE

(For Brazil)

(1	Period of formation, 1500–1749, in Brazil
	Class here 18th century
	<i>For 1750–1799, see 2</i>
(2	Period of transformation, 1750–1829, in Brazil
(3	1830–1921 in Brazil
	Class here 19th century
	<i>For 1800–1829, see 2</i>
(4	1921–1999 in Brazil
(5	2000 to present in Brazil)

(.899) Portuguese-language literatures not requiring local emphasis

(Optional number; prefer 869 for all Portuguese-language literatures. Other options are described under 810–890)

Class here literatures of specific countries other than the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries emphasizing literature of Portugal may class here Brazilian literature, and libraries emphasizing Brazilian literature may class here literature of Portugal

(.899 1) *‡Portugal

(.899 2) *‡Brazil

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

‡(Optional number; prefer 869 for comprehensive works; prefer 869.01–869.09 for standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form; prefer 869.1–869.8 for specific forms)

(.899 4–.899 9) ‡Other parts of world

Portuguese-language literature except of Portugal, Brazil

Add to base number 869.899 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Portuguese-language literature of India 869.89954; then add 0 and to the result add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Portuguese-language drama of India 869.8995402

.9 *Galician literature

Class here Gallegan literature

Use the following period table for literature in Galician language from all countries and continents, for comprehensive works on literature in Galician language

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1499
2	1500–1799
3	1800–1899
	Class here period of revival
4	1900–1999
5	2000–

870 Latin literature and literatures of related Italic languages

Class here literatures of Italic languages

Class comprehensive works of or on literatures of classical (Greek and Latin) languages in 880

For literatures of Romance languages, see 840

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of literatures of Italic languages

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Latin literature

Add to base number 870 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Latin literature 870.8

Use period table under 871–878

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

‡(Optional number; prefer 869 for comprehensive works; prefer 869.01–869.09 for standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form; prefer 869.1–869.8 for specific forms)

> **871–878 Subdivisions for specific forms of Latin literature**

Add to base number 87 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Latin letters 876; however, observe the special interpretations of and exceptions to notation from Table 3 that appear below, e.g., Latin poetry of the Roman period 871.01, Latin epic poetry and fiction of the Roman period 873.01

PERIOD TABLE

- 1 Roman period to ca. 499
- 2 Pre-Carolingian period, ca. 500–ca. 749
Class here 8th century
For 750–799, see 3
- 3 Medieval period, ca. 750–1349
Class here 14th century
For 1350–1399, see 4
- 4 Modern period, 1350–

Class comprehensive works in 870

871 †Latin poetry

For dramatic poetry, see 872; for epic poetry, see 873; for lyric poetry, see 874

.01–.04 Specific periods

Add to base number 871.0 notation 1–4 from the period table under 871–878, e.g., Latin poetry of the Roman period 871.01; then, for works by or about more than one author, add the numbers following —10 in notation 1001–1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of Latin poetry from the Roman period 871.0108

Do not use 871.02–871.07 for specific kinds

872 †Latin dramatic poetry and drama

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.01–.04 Specific periods

Add to base number 872.0 notation 1–4 from the period table under 871–878, e.g., Latin drama of the Roman period 872.01; then, for works by or about more than one author, add the numbers following —10 in notation 1001–1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of Latin drama from the Roman period 872.0108

Do not use 872.02–872.05 for specific media, scope, kinds

873 †Latin epic poetry and fiction

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

†Add as instructed under 871–878 and at beginning of Table 3

.01–.04 **Specific periods**

Add to base number 873.0 notation 1–4 from the period table under 871–878, e.g., Latin epic poetry of the Roman period 873.01; then, for works by or about more than one author, add the numbers following —10 in notation 1001–1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of Latin epic poetry from the Roman period 873.0108

Do not use 873.01–873.08 for specific scope and kinds

874 **†Latin lyric poetry****.01–.04** **Specific periods**

Add to base number 874.0 notation 1–4 from the period table under 871–878, e.g., Latin lyric poetry of the Roman period 874.01; then, for works by or about more than one author, add the numbers following —10 in notation 1001–1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of Latin lyric poetry from the Roman period 874.0108

875 **†Latin speeches****.01–.04** **Specific periods**

Add to base number 875.0 notation 1–4 from the period table under 871–878, e.g., Latin speeches of the Roman period 875.01; then, for works by or about more than one author, add the numbers following —10 in notation 1001–1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of Latin speeches from the Roman period 875.0108

Do not use 875.01–875.06 for specific kinds

876 **†Latin letters****.01–.04** **Specific periods**

Add to base number 876.0 notation 1–4 from the period table under 871–878, e.g., Latin letters of the Roman period 876.01; then, for works by or about more than one author, add the numbers following —10 in notation 1001–1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of Latin letters from the Roman period 876.0108

877 **†Latin humor and satire****.01–.04** **Specific periods**

Add to base number 877.0 notation 1–4 from the period table under 871–878, e.g., Latin humor and satire of the Roman period 877.01; then, for works by or about more than one author, add the numbers following —10 in notation 1001–1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of Latin humor and satire from the Roman period 877.0108

878 **†Latin miscellaneous writings****.000 1–.000 9** **Standard subdivisions**

†Add as instructed under 871–878 and at beginning of Table 3

881 ‡Classical Greek poetry

For dramatic poetry, see 882; for epic poetry, see 883; for lyric poetry, see 884

.01–.03 Specific periods

Add to base number 881.0 notation 1–3 from the period table under 881–888, e.g., classical Greek poetry of the ancient period 881.01; then, for works by or about more than one author, add the numbers following —10 in notation 1001–1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of classical Greek poetry of the ancient period 881.0108

Do not use 881.02–881.07 for specific kinds

882 ‡Classical Greek dramatic poetry and drama

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.01–.03 Specific periods

Add to base number 882.0 notation 1–3 from the period table under 881–888, e.g., classical Greek drama of the ancient period 882.01; then, for works by or about more than one author, add the numbers following —10 in notation 1001–1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of classical Greek drama of the ancient period 882.0108

Do not use 882.02–882.05 for specific media, scope, kinds

883 ‡Classical Greek epic poetry and fiction

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.01–.03 Specific periods

Add to base number 883.0 notation 1–3 from the period table under 881–888, e.g., classical Greek epic poetry of the ancient period 883.01; then, for works by or about more than one author, add the numbers following —10 in notation 1001–1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of classical Greek epic poetry of the ancient period 883.0108

Do not use 883.01–883.08 for specific scope and kinds

884 ‡Classical Greek lyric poetry**.01–.03 Specific periods**

Add to base number 884.0 notation 1–3 from the period table under 881–888, e.g., classical Greek lyric poetry of the ancient period 884.01; then, for works by or about more than one author, add the numbers following —10 in notation 1001–1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of classical Greek lyric poetry of the ancient period 884.0108

885 ‡Classical Greek speeches

‡Add as instructed under 881–888 and at beginning of Table 3

.01-.03 **Specific periods**

Add to base number 885.0 notation 1-3 from the period table under 881-888, e.g., classical Greek speeches of the ancient period 885.01; then, for works by or about more than one author, add the numbers following —10 in notation 1001-1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of classical Greek speeches of the ancient period 885.0108

Do not use 885.01-885.06 for specific kinds

886 **‡Classical Greek letters****.01-.03** **Specific periods**

Add to base number 886.0 notation 1-3 from the period table under 881-888, e.g., classical Greek letters of the ancient period 886.01; then, for works by or about more than one author, add the numbers following —10 in notation 1001-1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of classical Greek letters of the ancient period 886.0108

887 **‡Classical Greek humor and satire****.01-.03** **Specific periods**

Add to base number 887.0 notation 1-3 from the period table under 881-888, e.g., classical Greek humor and satire of the ancient period 887.01; then, for works by or about more than one author, add the numbers following —10 in notation 1001-1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of classical Greek humor and satire of the ancient period 887.0108

888 **‡Classical Greek miscellaneous writings****.000 1-.000 9** **Standard subdivisions****.002-.008** **Specific kinds of miscellaneous writings**

Numbers built according to instructions under 881-888 and at beginning of Table 3

.01-.03 **Specific periods**

Add to base number 888.0 notation 1-3 from the period table under 881-888, e.g., classical Greek miscellaneous writings of the ancient period 888.01; then, for works by or about more than one author, add the numbers following —10 in notation 1001-1009 from Table 3B, e.g., collections of classical Greek miscellaneous writings of the ancient period 888.0108

‡Add as instructed under 881-888 and at beginning of Table 3

889 *Modern Greek literature

Class here Katharevusa and Demotic literature

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1821
2	1821–1899
3	1900–1999
32	1900–1945
34	1945–1999
4	2000–

890 Literatures of other specific languages and language families

Class texts by more than one author in more than two languages not from the same language family in 808.8; class history, description, critical appraisal of works by more than one author in more than two languages not from the same language family in 809

SUMMARY

891	East Indo-European and Celtic literatures
892	Afro-Asiatic literatures
893	Non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic literatures
894	Literatures of Altaic, Uralic, Hyperborean, Dravidian languages; literatures of miscellaneous languages of south Asia
895	Literatures of East and Southeast Asia
896	African literatures
897	Literatures of North American native languages
898	Literatures of South American native languages
899	Literatures of non-Austronesian languages of Oceania, of Austronesian languages, of miscellaneous languages

891 East Indo-European and Celtic literatures

Standard subdivisions are added for East Indo-European and Celtic literatures together, for East Indo-European literatures alone

SUMMARY

891.1	Indo-Iranian literatures
.2	Sanskrit literature
.3	Middle Indo-Aryan literatures
.4	Modern Modern Indo-Aryan literatures
.5	Iranian literatures
.6	Celtic literatures
.7	Russian literature and related East Slavic literatures
.8	Slavic (Slavonic) literatures
.9	Baltic and other Indo-European literatures

.1 Indo-Iranian literatures

For Indo-Aryan literatures, see 891.2–891.4; for Iranian literatures, see 891.5

- > **891.2–891.4 Indo-Aryan literatures**
 Class comprehensive works in 891.1
- .2 ***Sanskrit literature**
 Class here classical Sanskrit literature
- .29 Vedic (Old Indo-Aryan) literature
- .3 **Middle Indo-Aryan literatures**
 Former heading: Middle Indic literatures
 Class here comprehensive works on Prakrit literatures
 For modern Prakrit literatures, see 891.4
- .37 ***Pali literature**

.4 **Modern Indo-Aryan literatures**

Former heading: Modern Indic literatures

PERIOD TABLE FOR SPECIFIC MODERN INDO-ARYAN LITERATURES

1	Early period to 1345
2	1345–1645 Class here 14th century <i>For 1300–1345, see 1</i>
3	1645–1845 Class here 17th century <i>For 1600–1645, see 2</i>
4	1845–1895 Class here 19th century <i>For 1800–1845, see 3; for 1895–1899, see 5</i>
5	1895–1919
6	1920–1939
7	1940–
71	1940–1999 Class here 20th century <i>For 1900–1919, see 5; for 1920–1939, see 6</i>
72	2000–

Class comprehensive works on Prakrit literatures in 891.3

(Option: Treat literatures of all modern Indo-Aryan languages as literature of one language, with base number 891.4. Add to base number 891.4 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of literary texts in modern Indo-Aryan languages 891.408)

- .41 **Sindhi and Lahnda literatures**
 Subdivisions are added for Sindhi literature alone

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

- .410 1-.410 9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Sindhi literature
 Add to base number 891.410 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Sindhi literature 891.4108
 Use period table under 891.4
- .411–.418 Subdivisions for specific forms of Sindhi literature
 Add to base number 891.41 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Sindhi poetry 891.411
 Use period table under 891.4
- .419 *Lahnda literature
 Use period table under 891.4
- .42 *Panjabi literature
 Use period table under 891.4
- .43 Hindi literature and related Western Hindi literatures
 Class here Western Hindi literatures
 For languages of east central zone of Indo-Aryan languages (Eastern Hindi languages), see 891.492
- .430 01-.430 09 Standard subdivisions of Western Hindi literatures
- .430 1-.430 9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Hindi literature
 Add to base number 891.430 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Hindi literature 891.4308
 Use period table under 891.4
- .431–.438 Subdivisions for specific forms of Hindi literature
 Add to base number 891.43 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Hindi poetry 891.431
 Use period table under 891.4
- .439 *Urdu literature
 Use period table under 891.4
- .44 *Bengali literature
 Use period table under 891.4
- .45 Assamese, Bihari, Oriya literatures
- .451 *Assamese literature
 Use period table under 891.4

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

- .454 ***Bihari literature**
 Class here literatures in Bhojpuri, Magahi, Maithili
 Use period table under 891.4
- .456 ***Oriya literature**
 Use period table under 891.4
- .46 **Marathi and Konkani literatures**
 Subdivisions are added for Marathi literature alone
- .460 1–.460 9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history,
 description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Marathi
 literature
 Add to base number 891.460 the numbers following —0 in notation
 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Marathi literature 891.4608
 Use period table under 891.4
- .461–.468 Subdivisions for specific forms of Marathi literature
 Add to base number 891.46 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g.,
 Marathi poetry 891.461
 Use period table under 891.4
- .469 ***Konkani literature**
 Use period table under 891.4
- .47 **Gujarati, Bhili, Rajasthani literatures**
 Subdivisions are added for Gujarati literature alone
- .470 1–.470 9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history,
 description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Gujarati
 literature
 Add to base number 891.470 the numbers following —0 in notation
 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Gujarati literature 891.4708
 Use period table under 891.4
- .471–.478 Subdivisions for specific forms of Gujarati literature
 Add to base number 891.47 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g.,
 Gujarati poetry 891.471
 Use period table under 891.4
- .479 ***Rajasthani literature**
 Class here Jaipuri, Marwari literatures
 Use period table under 891.4
- .48 **Sinhalese-Maldivian literatures**
 Class here Sinhalese (Sinahala) literature

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

- .480 1-.480 9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Sinhalese (Sinhala) literature
 Add to base number 891.480 the numbers following —0 in notation 01-09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Sinhalese literature 891.4808
 Use period table under 891.4
- .481-488 Subdivisions for specific forms of Sinhalese (Sinhala) literature
 Add to base number 891.48 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Sinhalese poetry 891.481
 Use period table under 891.4
- .489 *Divehi (Maldivian) literature
 Use period table under 891.4
- .49 Other Indo-Aryan literatures
 Including Nuristani (Kafiri) literature
 See also 894.8 for Dravidian literatures; also 895.4 for Tibeto-Burman literatures; also 895.95 for Munda literatures
- .492 Literatures of east central zone of Indo-Aryan languages (Eastern Hindi literatures)
 Including Awadhi, Bagheli, Chattisgarhi, Fijian Hindustani (Fiji Hindi) literatures
 Class comprehensive works on Hindi literatures in 891.43
- .495 *Nepali literature
- .496 Pahari literatures
 Including Garhwali literature
 Class here literatures of northern zone of Indo-Aryan languages
 For Nepali literature, see 891.495
- .497 *Romani literature
- .499 Dardic (Pisacha) literatures
 Including Kashmiri, Khowar, Kohistani, Shina literatures
- .5 Iranian literatures**
- .51 *Old Persian literature
 Class here ancient West Iranian literatures
 See also 891.52 for Avestan literature
- .52 *Avestan literature
 Class here ancient East Iranian literatures

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

- .53 Middle Iranian literatures
Including Khotanese (Saka), Pahlavi (Middle Persian), Sogdian literatures
- .55 *Modern Persian (Farsi) literature
PERIOD TABLE
1 Period of formal development, ca. 1000–1389
2 1389–1899
3 1900–1999
4 2000–
- See also 891.56 for Dari literature; also 891.57 for Tajik literature*
- .56 *Dari literature
- .57 *Tajik literature
- .59 Other modern Iranian literatures
Including Pamir literatures, Ossetic literature
- .593 *Pashto (Afghan) literature
- .597 Kurdish literatures and literatures of related languages
Including central and southern Kurdish
Class here Kurdish (Kurmanji, northern Kurdish) literature
- .597 01–.597 09 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Kurdish (Kurmanji, northern Kurdish) literature
Add to base number 891.5970 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Kurdish literature 891.59708
- .597 1–.597 8 Subdivisions for specific forms of Kurdish (Kurmanji, northern Kurdish) literature
Add to base number 891.597 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Kurdish poetry 891.5971
- .598 *Baluchi literature
- .6 **Celtic literatures**
Including Gaulish

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

.62 *Irish Gaelic literature

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1171 Class here 12th century <i>For 1171–1199, see 2</i>
2	1171–1599
3	1600–1875
4	1875–1999
42	1875–1922 Class here Irish literary revival
43	1922–1999
5	2000–

.63 *Scottish Gaelic literature

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1599
2	1600–1829
3	1830–1999
32	1830–1899 Class here 19th century <i>For 1800–1829, see 2</i>
34	1900–1999
4	2000–

.64 *Manx literature

.66 *Welsh (Cymric) literature

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1599
12	Early period to 1299
14	1300–1599
2	1600–1999
22	1600–1799
24	1800–1899
26	1900–1945 Class here 20th century <i>For 1945–1999, see 28</i>
28	1945–1999
3	2000–

.67 *Cornish literature

.68 *Breton literature

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1799
2	1800–1899
3	1900–1999
4	2000–

.7 Russian literature and related East Slavic literatures

Class here East Slavic literatures

Class comprehensive works on Slavic (Slavonic) literatures in 891.8

.700 1–.700 9 Standard subdivisions of East Slavic literatures

.701–.709 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Russian literature

Add to base number 891.70 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Russian literature 891.708

Use period table under 891.71–891.78

.71–.78 Subdivisions for specific forms of Russian literature

Add to base number 891.7 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Russian poetry 891.71

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1699
2	1700–1799
3	1800–1917
4	1917–1991
	Class here 20th century
	<i>For 1900–1917, see 3; for 1991–1999, see 5</i>
42	1917–1945
44	1945–1991
5	1991–

.79 Ukrainian and Belarusian literatures

Subdivisions are added for Ukrainian literature alone

.790 1–.790 9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Ukrainian literature

Add to base number 891.790 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Ukrainian literature 891.7908

Use period table under 891.791–891.798

.791–.798 Subdivisions for specific forms of Ukrainian literature

Add to base number 891.79 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Ukrainian poetry 891.791

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1798
2	1798–1917
3	1917–1991
	Class here 20th century
	<i>For 1900–1917, see 2; for 1991–1999, see 4</i>
32	1917–1945
34	1945–1991
4	1991–

.799 *Belarusian literature

PERIOD TABLE

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Early period to 1798 |
| 2 | 1798–1917 |
| 3 | 1917–1991 |
| | Class here 20th century |
| | <i>For 1900–1917, see 2; for 1991–1999, see 4</i> |
| 4 | 1991– |

.8 **Slavic (Slavonic) literatures**

Class here comprehensive works on literatures of Balto-Slavic languages

For East Slavic literatures, see 891.7; for Baltic literatures, see 891.91–891.93

.81 Bulgarian literature and related South Slavic literatures

Class here South Slavic literatures

For Serbian literature, see 891.82; for Croatian and Bosnian literatures, see 891.83; for Slovenian literature, see 891.84

.810 01–810 09 Standard subdivisions of South Slavic literatures

.810 1–810 9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Bulgarian literature

Add to base number 891.810 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Bulgarian literature 891.8108

Use period table under 891.811–891.818

.811–818 Subdivisions for specific forms of Bulgarian literature

Add to base number 891.81 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Bulgarian poetry 891.811

PERIOD TABLE

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1 | Early period to 1849 |
| | Class here 19th century |
| | <i>For 1850–1899, see 2</i> |
| 2 | 1850–1899 |
| 3 | 1900–1991 |
| 4 | 1991– |

.819 *Macedonian literature

.82 *Serbian literature

Class here Serbo-Croatian literature; comprehensive works on Serbian, Croatian, Bosnian literatures

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to ca. 1549 Class here 16th century <i>For 1550-1599, see 2</i>
2	Period of renaissance, ca. 1550-1699
3	1700-1799
4	1800-1899
5	1900-1991
52	1900-1945
54	1945-1991
6	1991-

Croatian literature relocated to 891.83; Bosnian literature relocated to 891.839

.83 Croatian literature [*formerly* 891.82] and Bosnian literature

Subdivisions are added for Croatian literature alone

.830 1-.830 9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Croatian literature

Add to base number 891.830 the numbers following —0 in notation 01-09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Croatian literature 891.8308

Use period table under 891.831-891.838

.831-.838 Subdivisions for specific forms of Croatian literature

Add to base number 891.83 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Croatian poetry 891.831

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to ca. 1549 Class here 16th century <i>For 1550-1599, see 2</i>
2	Period of renaissance, ca. 1550-1699
3	1700-1799
4	1800-1899
5	1900-1991
52	1900-1945
54	1945-1991
6	1991-

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

.839 *Bosnian literature [*formerly* 891.82]

PERIOD TABLE

- | | |
|----|--|
| 1 | Early period to ca. 1549
Class here 16th century
<i>For 1550–1599, see 2</i> |
| 2 | Period of renaissance, ca. 1550–1699 |
| 3 | 1700–1799 |
| 4 | 1800–1899 |
| 5 | 1900–1991 |
| 52 | 1900–1945 |
| 54 | 1945–1991 |
| 6 | 1991– |

.84 *Slovenian literature

PERIOD TABLE

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 | Early period to ca. 1549
Class here 16th century
<i>For 1550–1599, see 2</i> |
| 2 | Period of renaissance, ca. 1550–1699 |
| 3 | 1700–1799 |
| 4 | 1800–1899 |
| 5 | 1900–1991 |
| 6 | 1991– |

.85 Polish literature and related West Slavic literatures

Including Kashubian literature

Class here West Slavic literatures

*For Czech literature, see 891.86; for Slovak literature, see 891.87; for
Wendish literature, see 891.88; for Polabian literature, see 891.89*

.850 01–.850 09 Standard subdivisions of West Slavic literatures

.850 1–.850 9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Polish literature

Add to base number 891.850 the numbers following —0 in notation
01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Polish literature 891.8508

Use period table under 891.851–891.858

.851-.858 Subdivisions for specific forms of Polish literature

Add to base number 891.85 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g.,
Polish poetry 891.851

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1399
2	1400-1499
3	Golden age, 1500-1599
4	1600-1699
5	1700-1795
6	1795-1919
7	1919-1989
	Class here 20th century
	<i>For 1900-1919, see 6; for 1989-1999, see 8</i>
72	1919-1945
73	1945-1989
8	1989-

.86 *Czech literature

Class here literature in Moravian dialects

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1399
2	1400-1449
	Class here 15th century
	<i>For 1450-1499, see 3</i>
3	Humanist period, 1450-1620
4	1620-1899
	Class here 17th century
	<i>For 1600-1620, see 3</i>
5	1900-1989
52	1900-1945
54	1945-1989
6	1989-

.87 *Slovak literature

.88 *Wendish (Lusatian, Sorbian) literature

.89 *Polabian literature

.9 Baltic and other Indo-European literatures

> 891.91-891.93 Baltic literatures

Class comprehensive works in 891.9

.91 Old Prussian literature

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

.92 *Lithuanian literature

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1799
2	1800–1899
3	1900–1991
4	1991–

.93 *Latvian (Lettish) literature

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1799
2	1800–1899
3	1900–1991
4	1991–

.99 Other Indo-European literatures

Add to base number 891.99 the numbers following —9199 in notation 91991–91998 from Table 6, e.g., Armenian literature 891.992, Hittite literature 891.998; then to the number given for each literature listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of Armenian literature 891.99208

891.991 Albanian

891.992 Armenian

PERIOD TABLE FOR ARMENIAN

1	Early period to 599
2	600–999
3	1000–1399
4	1400–1849
5	1850–1991
	Class here 19th century
	<i>For 1800–1849, see 4</i>
6	1991–

892 Afro-Asiatic literatures

Class here Semitic literatures

For non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic literatures, see 893

.1 Akkadian (Assyro-Babylonian) literature

Class here East Semitic literatures; literatures in Assyrian, Babylonian dialects of Akkadian

For Eblaite literature, see 892.6

See also 899.95 for Sumerian literature

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

- > **892.2–892.9 West Semitic literatures**
 Class comprehensive works in 892
- .2 **Aramaic literatures**
 For Eastern Aramaic literatures, see 892.3
- .29 Western Aramaic literatures
 Including Samaritan literature
- .3 **Eastern Aramaic literatures**
 Class here Syriac literature
- .4 ***Hebrew literature**
 PERIOD TABLE
 1 Early period to 699
 2 700–1699
 Class here medieval period
 3 1700–1819
 4 1820–1885
 Class here 19th century
 For 1800–1819, see 3; for 1885–1899, see 5
 5 1885–1947
 6 1947–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1947, see 5
 7 2000–
- Class comprehensive works on Canaanitic literatures in 892.6
- .6 **Canaanite literatures**
 Including Eblaite literature
 Class here comprehensive works on Canaanitic literatures
 For Hebrew, see 892.4
- .67 Ugaritic literature
- .7 **Arabic and Maltese literatures**
 Class here classical Arabic literature, modern standard Arabic literature,
 Judeo-Arabic literature; literatures of Arabic and Maltese languages
 See also 892.9 for South Arabian literatures

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

.701–.709 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Arabic literatures

Add to base number 892.70 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Arabic literature 892.708

Use period table under 892.71–892.78

.71–.78 Subdivisions for specific forms of Arabic literatures

Add to base number 892.7 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Arabic poetry 892.71

PERIOD TABLE

- | | |
|----|--|
| 1 | Pre-Islamic period to 622 |
| 2 | Early Islamic and Mukhadrami period, 622–661
Class here 7th century
<i>For 600–622, see 1; for 661–699, see 32</i> |
| 3 | 661–1258 |
| 32 | Umayyad period, 661–749
Class here 8th century
<i>For 750–799, see 34</i> |
| 34 | Abbasid period, 750–1258
Class here 13th century
<i>For 1258–1299, see 4</i> |
| 4 | 1258–1799 |
| 5 | 1800–1945 |
| 6 | 1945–1999
Class here 20th century
<i>For 1900–1945, see 5</i> |
| 7 | 2000– |

.79 *Maltese literature

.8 Ethiopian literatures

Including Gurage, Harari literatures

Class here comprehensive works on South Semitic literatures

For South Arabian literatures, see 892.9

.81 Ge'ez literature

.82 *Tigré literature

.83 *Tigrinya (Tigrigna) literature

.87 *Amharic literature

.9 South Arabian literatures

Including Mahri, Sokotri literatures

Class comprehensive works on South Semitic literatures in 892.8

See also 892.7 for North Arabic literatures

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

893 Non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic literatures

Add to base number 893 the numbers following —93 in notation 931–937 from Table 6, e.g., Berber literatures 893.3, Somali literature 893.54; then to the number given for each literature listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of Somali literature 893.5408

893.1 Egyptian

893.2 Coptic

893.33 Tamazight

893.34 Kabyle

893.38 Tamashek

893.54 Somali

893.55 Oromo

893.72 Hausa

894 Literatures of Altaic, Uralic, Hyperborean, Dravidian languages; literatures of miscellaneous languages of south Asia**SUMMARY**

894.1–.3	Altaic literatures
.4	Samoyedic literatures
.5	Finno-Ugric literatures
.6	Hyperborean (Paleosiberian) literatures
.8	Dravidian literatures and literatures of miscellaneous languages of south Asia

.1–3 Altaic literatures

Add to base number 894 the numbers following —94 in notation 941–943 from Table 6, e.g., Mongolian literature 894.23, Altai literature 894.33; then to the number given for each literature listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of Mongolian literature 894.2308

894.23 Mongolian proper, Halh Mongolian (Khalkha Mongolian)

894.315 Chuvash

894.323 Uighur

894.325 Uzbek

894.332 Yakut

894.345 Kazakh

894.347 Kyrgyz

894.35 Turkish (Osmanli), Ottoman Turkish

PERIOD TABLE FOR TURKISH (OSMANLI), OTTOMAN TURKISH

1 Early period to 1499

2 1500–1849

3 1850–1999

Class here 19th century, 20th century

For 1800–1849, see 2

4 2000–

894.361 Azerbaijani

894.364 Turkmen

894.387 Tatar

894.388 Crimean Tatar

Class comprehensive works in 894

For Ainu literature, see 894.6; for Japanese literature, see 895.6; for Korean literature, see 895.7

.4 Samoyedic literatures**.5 Finno-Ugric literatures**

Class here comprehensive works on Uralic literatures, on Uralic and Yukaghir literatures

For Samoyedic literatures, see 894.4; for Yukaghir literatures, see 894.6

.51 Ugric literatures

Including Ostyak (Khanty), Vogul literatures

- .511 *Hungarian (Magyar) literature
- PERIOD TABLE
- | | |
|----|----------------------|
| 1 | Early period to 1799 |
| 2 | 1800–1899 |
| 3 | 1900–1989 |
| 32 | 1900–1945 |
| 34 | 1945–1989 |
| 4 | 1989– |
- .53 Permic literatures
- Including Votyak (Udmurt), Zyrian (Komi) literatures
- .54 Finnic literatures
- Including Karelian, Kven Finnish, Livonian, Tornedalen Finnish, Veps literatures
- For Permic literatures, see 894.53; for Middle Volga literatures, see 894.56; for Sámi literatures, see 894.57*
- .541 *Finnish (Suomi) literature
- PERIOD TABLE
- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| 1 | Early period to 1799 |
| 2 | 1800–1899 |
| 3 | 1900–1999 |
| 4 | 2000– |
- Class Kven Finnish literature, Tornedalen Finnish literature in 894.54
- .545 *Estonian literature
- PERIOD TABLE
- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1 | Early period to 1861 |
| | Class here 19th century |
| | <i>For 1861–1899, see 2</i> |
| 2 | 1861–1991 |
| 3 | 1991– |
- [.55] Sámi (Saami) literatures
- Relocated to 894.57
- .56 Middle Volga literatures
- Including Mari, Mordvin literatures

.57 Sámi (Saami) literatures [*formerly* 894.55]

Add to base number 894.57 the numbers following —9457 in notation 94572–94576 from Table 6, e.g., Eastern Sámi literatures 894.576, North Sámi literature 894.5745; then to the number given for each literature listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of North Sámi literature 894.574508

894.5722 South Sámi

894.5743 Lule Sámi

894.5745 North Sámi

.6 **Hyperborean (Paleosiberian) literatures**

Including Ainu literature, Yukaghir literatures

Class comprehensive works on Uralic and Yukaghir literatures in 894.5

.8 **Dravidian literatures and literatures of miscellaneous languages of south Asia**

Standard subdivisions are added for Dravidian literatures and literatures of miscellaneous languages of south Asia together, for Dravidian literatures alone

PERIOD TABLE FOR SPECIFIC DRAVIDIAN LITERATURES

1	Early period to 1345
2	1345–1645 Class here 14th century <i>For 1300–1345, see 1</i>
3	1645–1845 Class here 17th century <i>For 1600–1645, see 2</i>
4	1845–1895 Class here 19th century <i>For 1800–1845, see 3; for 1895–1899, see 5</i>
5	1895–1919
6	1920–1939
7	1940–
71	1940–1999 Class here 20th century <i>For 1900–1919, see 5; for 1920–1939, see 6</i>
72	2000–

(Option: Treat literatures of all Dravidian languages as literature of one language, with base number 894.8. Add to base number 894.8 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of literature in Dravidian languages 894.808)

.81 South Dravidian literatures

Including Kota, Toda literatures

Class here literatures of the Dravida group

- .811 *Tamil literature
 Use period table under 894.8
- .812 *Malayalam literature
 Use period table under 894.8
- .814 *Kannada (Kanarese) literature
 Use period table under 894.8
- .82 Central Dravidian literatures
- .823 *Gondi literature
 Use period table under 894.8
- .824 *Kui (Khond, Kandh) literature
 Use period table under 894.8
- .827 *Telugu literature
 Use period table under 894.8
- .83 Brahui literature and related North Dravidian literatures
 Class here North Dravidian literatures
- .830 01–.830 09 Standard subdivisions of North Dravidian literatures
- .830 1–.830 9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history,
 description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Brahui
 literature
 Add to base number 894.830 the numbers following —0 in notation
 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Brahui literature 894.8308
 Use period table under 894.8
- .831–.838 Subdivisions for specific forms of Brahui literature
 Add to base number 894.83 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g.,
 Brahui poetry 894.831
 Use period table under 894.8
- .89 Literatures of miscellaneous languages of south Asia
 Only those literatures provided for below
 Class literatures of languages of south Asia closely related to languages of
 east and southeast Asia in 895; class literatures of Indo-Iranian languages of
 south Asia and comprehensive works on literatures of south Asia in 891.1
- .892 *Burushaski literature

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

895 Literatures of East and Southeast Asia

Class here Sino-Tibetan literatures

Here are classed literatures of South Asian languages closely related to the languages of East and Southeast Asia

For literature of Austronesian languages of East and Southeast Asia, see 899.2

.1 *Chinese literature**PERIOD TABLE**

1	Origins, 15th century to 221 B.C. Class here classical age
2	221 B.C.–618 A.D. Class here middle epoch
22	Period of Qin (Ch'in) and Han dynasties, 221 B.C.–220 A.D.
24	Period of Six dynasties and Sui dynasty, 220–618 A.D.
3	Period of Tang dynasty, Five dynasties, Ten kingdoms, 618–960 Class here renaissance and neoclassicism
4	960–1912
42	Period of Song dynasty, 960–1279
44	Period of Yuan (Mongol) dynasty, 1271–1368 <i>For period of Yuan dynasty during 1271–1279, see 42</i>
46	Period of Ming dynasty, 1368–1644
48	Period of Qing (Manchu) dynasty, 1644–1912
5	1912–2009
51	1912–1949
52	1949–2009
6	2010–

.4 Tibetan literature and related Tibeto-Burman literatures

Class here Tibeto-Burman literatures

For Burmese literature, see 895.8

- .400 1–.400 9 Standard subdivisions of Tibeto-Burman literatures
- .401–.409 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Tibetan literature
Add to base number 895.40 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Tibetan literature 895.408
- .41–.48 Subdivisions for specific forms of Tibetan literature
Add to base number 895.4 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Tibetan poetry 895.41
- .49 Literatures of Eastern Himalayan languages
Including Newari literature
Class here literatures of Kiranti languages, of Mahakiranti languages
See also 891.495 for Nepali literature

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

.6 *Japanese literature

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1185
14	Heian period, 794–1185
2	Medieval period, 1185–1603
22	Kamakura period, 1185–1334
24	1334–1603 Class here 14th century, Muromachi period <i>For 1300–1334, see 22</i>
3	Tokugawa (Edo) period, 1603–1868
32	1603–1769 Class here 18th century, Genroku period <i>For 1770–1799, see 34</i>
34	1770–1868 Class here Bunka-Bunsei period (1804–1829), 19th century <i>For 1868–1899, see 4</i>
4	1868–1945
42	Meiji period, 1868–1912
44	1912–1945 Class here 20th century <i>For 1900–1912, see 42; for 1945–1999, see 5</i>
5	1945–1999
6	2000–

.7 *Korean literature

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1392
2	Yi period, 1392–1910
28	1894–1910
3	1910–1945
4	1945–1999 Class here 20th century <i>For 1900–1910, see 28; for 1910–1945, see 3</i>
5	2000–

.8 *Burmese literature

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1799
2	1800–1899
3	1900–1999
4	2000–

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

.9 Literatures of miscellaneous languages of Southeast Asia; Munda literatures

Limited to the literatures provided for below

Including literatures of Kadai languages, Kam-Sui languages

Class here literatures of Daic languages

Class literatures in Austroasiatic languages in 895.93

For literatures in Austronesian languages, see 899.2

.91 Thai (Siamese) literature and Tai literatures

Class here Tai literatures

.910 01–.910 09 Standard subdivisions of literatures of Tai languages

.910 1–.910 9 Standard subdivisions; collections in more than one form; history, description, critical appraisal of works in more than one form of Thai (Siamese) literature

Add to base number 895.910 the numbers following —0 in notation 01–09 from Table 3B, e.g., a collection of Thai literature 895.9108

Use period table under 895.911–895.918

.911–.918 Subdivisions for specific forms of Thai (Siamese) literature

Add to base number 895.91 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., Thai poetry 895.911

PERIOD TABLE

1	Early period to 1799
2	1800–1899
3	1900–1999
4	2000–

.919 Other Tai literatures

Including Shan literature

For Viet-Muong literatures, see 895.92

.919 1 *Lao literature

*Add to base number as instructed at beginning of Table 3

.92-.97 Viet-Muong, Austroasiatic, Munda, Hmong-Mien (Miao-Yao) literatures

Add to base number 895.9 the numbers following —959 in notation 9592-9597 from Table 6, e.g., Vietnamese literature 895.922, Mundari literature 895.95; then to the number given for each literature listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of Vietnamese literature 895.92208

895.922 Vietnamese

PERIOD TABLE FOR VIETNAMESE

1	Early period to 1799
2	1800-1899
3	1900-1999
32	1900-1945
	Class here 20th century
	<i>For 1945-1999, see 34</i>
34	1945-1999
4	2000-

895.932 Khmer (Cambodian)

895.972 Hmong (Miao)

895.978 Yao

896 African literatures

Add to base number 896 the numbers following —96 in notation 961-965 from Table 6, e.g., Songhai literature 896.5, Swahili literature 896.392; then to the number given for each literature listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of Swahili literature 896.39208

896.3214 Wolof

896.322 Fula (Fulani)

896.332 Ibo (Igbo)

896.333 Yoruba

896.3374 Ewe

896.3378 Gã

896.3385 Akan, Fante, Twi

896.3452 Bambara

896.348 Mende

896.3616 Sango

896.3642 Efik

896.3915 Bemba

(continued)

896 African literatures (continued)

- 896.3918 Nyanja, Chichewa (Chewa)
- 896.392 Swahili
- 896.3931 Kongo (Koongo)
- 896.3932 Mbundu (Kimbundu)
- 896.39461 Rwanda (Kinyarwanda)
- 896.39465 Rundi
- 896.3954 Kikuyu
- 896.3957 Ganda (Luganda)
- 896.3962 Duala
- 896.39686 Lingala
- 896.3975 Shona
- 896.3976 Venda (Tshivenda)
- 896.39771 Northern Sotho
- 896.39772 Southern Sotho
- 896.39775 Tswana
- 896.3978 Tsonga
- 896.3985 Xhosa
- 896.3986 Zulu
- 896.3987 Swazi (siSwati)
- 896.3989 Ndebele (South Africa)

PERIOD TABLE FOR SPECIFIC AFRICAN LITERATURES

- 1 Early period to 1959
- 2 1960–1999
 - Class here 20th century
 - For 1900–1959, see 1*
- 3 2000–

Class Afrikaans literature in 839.36; class Malagasy literature in 899.3. Class literature in an African creole having a non-African primary source language with the source language, e.g., Krio literature 820

For Ethiopian literatures, see 892.8; for non-Semitic Afro-Asiatic literatures, see 893

(Option: Treat literatures of all African languages as literature of one language, with base number 896. Add to base number 896 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of literature in African languages 896.08)

897 Literatures of North American native languages

Class here comprehensive works on literatures of North and South American native languages

Add to base number 897 the numbers following —97 in notation 971–979 from Table 6, e.g., Zoque literature 897.43, Nahuatl literature 897.452; then to the number given for each literature listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of Nahuatl literature 897.45208

- 897.124 Eastern Canadian Inuktitut
- 897.19 Aleut
- 897.26 Navajo (Diné)
- 897.28 Haida
- 897.323 Cree
- 897.333 Ojibwa, Chippewa
- 897.422 Cakchikel
- 897.423 Quiché
- 897.427 Maya, Yucatec Maya
- 897.4287 Tzotzil
- 897.452 Nahuatl (Aztec)
- 897.4542 Yaqui
- 897.4544 Huichol
- 897.4552 Tohono O'Odham
- 897.45529 Akimel O'Odham
- 897.4574 Shoshoni
- 897.458 Hopi
- 897.492 Kiowa
- 897.494 Tewa
- 897.5243 Dakota
- 897.557 Cherokee
- 897.68 Zapotec
- 897.83 San Blas Kuna (San Blas Cuna)
- 897.933 Pawnee

(continued)

897 Literatures of North American native languages (continued)

897.9435 Kalispel, Pend d'Oreille

897.994 Zuni

For literatures of South American native languages, see 898

(Option: Treat literatures of all North American native languages as literature of one language, with base number 897. Add to base number 897 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of literary texts in North American native languages 897.08)

898 Literatures of South American native languages

Add to base number 898 the numbers following—98 in notation 982–984 from Table 6, e.g., Quechua literature 898.323, Tucano literature 898.35; then to the number given for each literature listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of Quechua literature 898.32308

898.323 Quechua (Kechua)

898.324 Aymara

898.372 Shuar

898.3822 Paraguayan Guaraní

898.3832 Tupí (Nhengatu)

898.72 Mapudungun (Mapuche)

Class comprehensive works on literatures of North and South American native languages in 897

(Option: Treat literatures of all South American native languages as literature of one language, with base number 898. Add to base number 898 as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of literature in South American Native languages 898.08)

899 Literatures of non-Austronesian languages of Oceania, of Austronesian languages, of miscellaneous languages

Add to base number 899 the numbers following—99 in notation 991–999 from Table 6, e.g., Polynesian literatures 899.4, Maori literature 899.442, literature originally composed and presented in sign languages 899.98, American Sign Language literature 899.987; then to the number given for each literature listed below add further as instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of Maori literature 899.44208

899.211 Tagalog (Filipino)

PERIOD TABLE FOR TAGALOG (FILIPINO)

1	Early period to 1799
2	1800–1899
3	1900–1999
4	2000–

(continued)

**899 Literatures of non-Austronesian languages of Oceania,
of Austronesian languages, of miscellaneous languages
(continued)**

899.221 Indonesian (Bahasa Indonesia)

PERIOD TABLE FOR INDONESIAN (BAHASA INDONESIA)

- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| 1 | Early period to 1899 |
| 2 | 1900-1999 |
| 3 | 2000- |

899.222 Javanese

899.2232 Sunda (Sundanese)

899.2234 Madura (Madurese)

899.2238 Bali (Balinese)

899.2242 Aceh (Achinese)

899.2244 Minangkabau

899.22462 Batak Toba

899.22466 Batak Dairi

899.2248 Lampung

899.2256 Banjar (Banjarese)

899.2262 Bugis (Buginese)

899.2264 Makasar

899.28 Malay (Bahasa Malaysia, Standard Malay)

899.3 Malagasy

899.42 Hawaiian

899.442 Maori

899.444 Tahitian

899.462 Samoan

899.482 Tongan (Tonga)

899.484 Niue (Niuean)

899.59 Fijian

899.92 Basque

899.95 Sumerian

(continued)

899

**Literatures of non-Austronesian languages of Oceania,
of Austronesian languages, of miscellaneous languages
(continued)**

899.9623 Abkhaz

899.9625 Adyghe

899.969 Georgian

899.992 Esperanto

900

900 History, geography, and auxiliary disciplines

Class here social situations and conditions; general political history; military, diplomatic, political, economic, social, welfare aspects of specific wars

Class interdisciplinary works on ancient world, on specific continents, countries, localities in 930-990. Class history and geographic treatment of a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 09 from Table 1, e.g., history and geographic treatment of natural sciences 509, of economic situations and conditions 330.9, of purely political situations and conditions 320.9, history of military science 355.009

See also 303.49 for future history (projected events other than travel)

See Manual at 900

SUMMARY

- 900.1-.9 Standard subdivisions of history and geography
- 901-903 Standard subdivisions of history
- 904 Collected accounts of events
- 905-908 Standard subdivisions of history
- 909 World history

- 910 Geography and travel
 - .01-.02 [Philosophy and theory of geography and travel; the earth (physical geography)]
 - .2-.9 Standard subdivisions, world travel guides, accounts of travel and facilities for travelers
- 911 Historical geography
- 912 Graphic representations of surface of earth and of extraterrestrial worlds
- 913-919 Geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds

- 920 Biography, genealogy, insignia
 - .001-.009 Standard subdivisions of biography as a discipline
 - .02-.09 [General collections of biography not limited by period, group, or subject]
 - .7 People by gender or sex
- 929 Genealogy, names, insignia

- 930 History of ancient world to ca. 499
 - .01-.09 Standard subdivisions
 - .1-.5 [Archaeology and historical periods]
- 931 China to 420
- 932 Egypt to 640
- 933 Palestine to 70
- 934 South Asia to 647
- 935 Mesopotamia to 637 and Iranian Plateau to 637
- 936 Europe north and west of Italian Peninsula to ca. 499
- 937 Italian Peninsula to 476 and adjacent territories to 476
- 938 Greece to 323
- 939 Other parts of ancient world

- 940 History of Europe
 .01-.09 Standard subdivisions
 .1-.5 [Historical periods]
- 941 British Isles
942 England and Wales
943 Germany and neighboring central European countries
944 France and Monaco
945 Italy, San Marino, Vatican City, Malta
946 Spain, Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal
947 Russia and neighboring east European countries
948 Scandinavia
949 Other parts of Europe
- 950 History of Asia
 .01-.09 Standard subdivisions
 .1-.4 [Historical periods]
- 951 China and adjacent areas
952 Japan
953 Arabian Peninsula and adjacent areas
954 India and neighboring south Asian countries
955 Iran
956 Middle East (Near East)
957 Siberia (Asiatic Russia)
958 Central Asia
959 Southeast Asia
- 960 History of Africa
 .01-.09 Standard subdivisions
 .1-.3 [Historical periods]
- 961 Tunisia and Libya
962 Egypt and Sudan
963 Ethiopia and Eritrea
964 Morocco, Ceuta, Melilla, Western Sahara, Canary Islands
965 Algeria
966 West Africa and offshore islands
967 Central Africa and offshore islands
968 Republic of South Africa and neighboring southern African countries
969 South Indian Ocean islands
- 970 History of North America
 .001-.009 Standard subdivisions
 .01-.05 Historical periods
- 971 Canada
972 Mexico, Central America, West Indies, Bermuda
973 United States
974 Northeastern United States (New England and Middle Atlantic states)
975 Southeastern United States (South Atlantic states)
976 South central United States
977 North central United States
978 Western United States
979 Great Basin and Pacific Slope region of United States

- 980 **History of South America**
 .001–.009 **Standard subdivisions**
 .01–.04 **Historical periods**
- 981 **Brazil**
 982 **Argentina**
 983 **Chile**
 984 **Bolivia**
 985 **Peru**
 986 **Colombia and Ecuador**
 987 **Venezuela**
 988 **Guiana**
 989 **Paraguay and Uruguay**
- 990 **History of Australasia, Pacific Ocean islands, Atlantic Ocean islands, Arctic islands, Antarctica, extraterrestrial worlds**
 .01–.09 **Standard subdivisions of Australasia, Pacific Ocean islands, Atlantic Ocean islands, Arctic islands, Antarctica, extraterrestrial worlds together; of Australasia alone; of Pacific Ocean islands alone**
- 993 **New Zealand**
 994 **Australia**
 995 **New Guinea and neighboring countries of Melanesia**
 996 **Polynesia and other Pacific Ocean islands**
 997 **Atlantic Ocean islands**
 998 **Arctic islands and Antarctica**
 999 **Extraterrestrial worlds**

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions of history and geography

901 Philosophy and theory of history

902 Miscellany of history

[.23] Maps, plans, diagrams

Do not use; class in 911

903 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of history

904 Collected accounts of events

Class here adventure

Class travel in 910; class collections limited to a specific period in 909; class collections limited to a specific area or region but not limited by continent, country, locality in 909.09; class collections limited to a specific continent, country, locality in 930–990. Class history of a specific kind of event with the event, e.g., geological history of California earthquakes 551.2209794

See Manual at 900: Historic events vs. nonhistoric events

.5 Events of natural origin

.7 Events induced by human activity

905 Serial publications of history

906 Organizations and management of history

907 Education, research, related topics of history

.2 Historical research

Including oral history

Class here interdisciplinary works on historical research [*formerly* 001.432], on historiography

Class writing of history in 808.0669

.201--.209 Geographic treatment and biography

Add to base number 907.20 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., historians and historiographers 907.202

Class historians and historiographers who specialize in a specific area with the area in 930–990, plus notation 007202 from table under 930–990, e.g., the biography of a German who specializes in French history in general 944.007202; class historians and historiographers who specialize in specific historical periods of a specific area with the historical period for the area studied, plus notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., biography of a German historian who specializes in the French Revolutionary period 944.04092

908 History with respect to groups of people**[.9] Ethnic and national groups**

Do not use; class in 909.04

909 World history

Civilization and events not limited by continent, country, locality

Class collected accounts of events not limited by period, area, region, subject in 904

See Manual at 306 vs. 305, 909, 930–990; also at 324 vs. 320.5, 320.9, 909, 930–990; also at 909, 930–990 vs. 320; also at 909, 930–990 vs. 320.4, 321, 321.09; also at 909, 930–990 vs. 910

(Option: Class primary textbooks on general history in 372.89045)

[.001–.008] Standard subdivisions

Do not use; class in 901–908

[.009] History

Do not use for historiography; class in 907.2. Do not use for general works on history; class in 909

[.009 01–.009 05] Historical periods

Do not use; class in 909.1–909.8

[.009 1] Areas, regions, places in general

Do not use; class in 909.09

[.009 2] Biography

Do not use; class in 920

[.009 3–.009 9] Specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds

Do not use; class in 930–990

.04 History with respect to ethnic and national groups

See also 920.0092 for general collections of biography of members of a specific ethnic or national group

See Manual at 920.008 vs. 305–306, 362

.040 5–.040 9 People of mixed ancestry with ethnic origins from more than one continent, people of European descent

Add to base number 909.04 notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., world history of people of European descent 909.0409; then add 0* and to the result add the numbers following 909 in 909.1–909.8, e.g., world history of people of European descent in 18th century 909.040907

(Option: Class here general history of specific ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent in a specific continent, country, locality; prefer subdivision 004 from table under 930–990. If option is chosen, add notation 05–09 from Table 5 as above; then add 00 instead of 0 as above for world history by period, e.g., world history of people of European descent in 18th century 909.0409007; for specific areas add 0 and to the result add notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., history of people of European descent in United States 909.0409073)

.041–.049 Specific ethnic and national groups

Add to base number 909.04 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., world history of Jews 909.04924; then add 0* and to the result add the numbers following 909 in 909.1–909.8, e.g., world history of Jews in 18th century 909.0492407

(Option: Class here general history of specific ethnic and national groups in a specific continent, country, locality; prefer subdivision 004 from table under 930–990. If option is chosen, add notation 1–9 from Table 5 as above; then add 00 instead of 0 as above for world history by period, e.g., world history of Jews in 18th century 909.04924007; for specific areas add 0 and to the result add notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., history of Jews in Germany 909.04924043)

> 909.07–909.08 General historical periods

Class here general histories covering three or more continents (or three or more countries if not on the same continent)

Class specific historical periods in 909.1–909.8; class comprehensive works in 909

For ancient history, see 930

*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

- .07 Ca. 500–1450/1500
 Including comprehensive works on Crusades
 Class here Middle Ages
 Class history of a place during the period of the Crusades with the history of the place, e.g., history of Europe during the period of Crusades 940.18
For comprehensive works on a specific Crusade, see the history of the country or region in which most of the fighting took place, e.g., First Crusade 956.014, Fourth Crusade 949.503
See also 940.1 for history of Europe during Middle Ages
- .08 Modern history, 1450/1500–
- .09 Areas, regions, places in general
 Not limited by continent, country, locality
 Class here interdisciplinary works on areas, regions, places in general (other than landforms, oceans, seas)
 Class general collections of biography by areas, regions, places in general in 920.0091; class interdisciplinary works on landforms, oceans, seas in 551.4
For geography of and travel in areas, regions, places in general, see 910.91
See Manual at T1—092: Comprehensive biography: Public figures; also at 920.009, 920.03–920.09 vs. 909.09, 909.1–909.8, 930–990; also at 930–990: Biography
- .090 1–.090 9 Standard subdivisions
- .091–.099 Specific areas, regions, places in general
 Add to base number 909.09 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., history of tropical regions 909.093, of Caribbean Sea 909.096365, of western civilization 909.09821; then add 0* and to the result add the numbers following 909 in 909.1–909.8, e.g., history of tropical regions in 20th century 909.093082

> 909.1–909.8 Specific historical periods

Class general historical periods in 909.07–909.08; class general biographies limited to a specific historical period in 920.00901–920.00905; class comprehensive works in 909

For historical periods through 5th century, see 930.1–930.5

See Manual at T1—092: Comprehensive biography: Public figures; also at 920.009, 920.03–920.09 vs. 909.09, 909.1–909.8, 930–990; also at 930–990: Biography

*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1; however, class historical atlases in 911.1

- .1 6th–12th centuries, 500–1199**
 Class comprehensive works on Middle Ages in 909.07
- .2 13th century, 1200–1299**
- .3 14th century, 1300–1399**
- .4 15th century, 1400–1499**
- .5 16th century, 1500–1599**
- .6 17th century, 1600–1699**
- .7 18th century, 1700–1799**
- .8 1800–**
- .81 19th century, 1800–1899
 Class here industrial revolution
- .82 20th century, 1900–1999
- .821 1900–1919
 Class here early 20th century
For World War I, see 940.3. For a part of early 20th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1930–1939 909.823
- .822 1920–1929
- .823 1930–1939
- .824 1940–1949
For World War II, see 940.53
- .825 1950–1959
 Class here late 20th century, post World War II period
For a part of late 20th century, post World War II period not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1980–1989 909.828
- .826 1960–1969
- .827 1970–1979
- .828 1980–1989
- .829 1990–1999
- .83 21st century, 2000–2099
See also 303.49 for futurology
- .831 2000–2019
- .831 1 2000–2009
- .831 2 2010–2019

910 Geography and travel

Class here travel by private passenger automobile [*formerly* 796.78]; travel by motor homes, recreational vehicles, trailers [*all formerly* 796.79]; interdisciplinary works on tourism, on travel

Class general works on civilization, other than accounts of travel, in 909; class works on civilization, other than accounts of travel, in ancient world and specific places in modern world in 930–990. Class geographic treatment of a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 09 from Table 1, e.g., geographic treatment of religion 200.9, of geomorphology 551.4109

For a specific aspect of tourism, see the aspect, e.g., tourist industry 338.4791, travel and tourism in Mexico 917.204

See Manual at 550 vs. 910; also at 578 vs. 304.2, 508, 910; also at 909, 930–990 vs. 910

(Option: Class primary textbooks on general geography in 372.891045)

SUMMARY

- 910.01–.02 **[Philosophy and theory of geography and travel; the earth (physical geography)]**
 .2–.9 **Standard subdivisions, world travel guides, accounts of travel and facilities for travelers**
 911 **Historical geography**
 912 **Graphic representations of surface of earth and of extraterrestrial worlds**
 913–919 **Geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds**

.01 Philosophy and theory of geography and travel

.014 Communication

Class here discursive works on place names and their origin, history, meaning

Class dictionaries and gazetteers of place names in 910.3

.02 The earth (Physical geography)

Class physical geography of a specific geological feature with the feature in 550, e.g., glaciers 551.312

See also 551.41 for geomorphology

See Manual at 550 vs. 910

.020 9 History and biography

[.020 91] Areas, regions, places in general

Do not use; class in 910.021

[.020 93–.020 99] Specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds

Do not use; class in 913–919 plus notation 02 from table under 913–919

- .021 Physical geography of areas, regions, places in general
 Add to base number 910.021 the numbers following —1 in notation
 11–18 from Table 2, e.g., physical geography of forests 910.02152
- (.1) **Topical geography**
 (Optional number; prefer specific subject, e.g., economic geography
 330.91–330.99)
 Do not use for philosophy and theory of geography and travel; class in 910.01
 Add to base number 910.1 notation 001–899, e.g., economic geography
 910.133; then add 0* and to the result add notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 economic geography of British Isles 910.133041
- .2 **Miscellany; world travel guides**
 Notation 02 from Table 1 as modified below
- .202 World travel guides
 Do not use for synopses and outlines; class in 910.2
 Class here guidebooks and tour books providing tourists updated
 information about places in many areas of the globe: how to travel, what
 to see, where to stay, how to plan a vacation
 Class guides to areas, regions, places in general in 910.91; class guides
 to specific continents, countries, localities in 913–919, plus notation 04
 from table under 913–919
- .22 Illustrations, models, miniatures
- .223 Diagrams
 Do not use for maps and plans; class in 912
- .25 Directories of persons and organizations
 Class here city directories, telephone books
 Class city directories, telephone books of a specific place in 913–919, plus
 notation 0025 from table under 913–919
 See also 910.46 for directories of facilities for travelers
 See Manual at T1–025 vs. T1–029
- .28 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials

*Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

.285 Computer applications

Class here interdisciplinary works on geographic information systems (GIS), global positioning systems (GPS), real-time locating systems (RTLS)

Class real-time locating systems that use radio frequency identification in 910.2856245

For an application of geographic information systems (GIS), global positioning systems (GPS), or real-time locating systems (RTLS) to a subject, see the subject, plus notation 0285 from Table 1, e.g., GIS applications in mathematical geography 526.0285

.3 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances, gazetteers

Class here works on place names systematically arranged for ready reference

Class discursive works on place names in 910.014; class historical material associated with place names in general in 909; class historical material associated with place names of specific places in 930–990

.4 Accounts of travel and facilities for travelers

Standard subdivisions are added for accounts of travel and facilities for travelers together, for accounts of travel alone

Not geographically limited

For travel accounts that emphasize civilization of places visited, see 909; for discovery and exploration, see 910.9

See also 508 for scientific exploration and travel; also 910.202 for world travel guides

.41 Trips around the world**.45 Ocean travel and seafaring adventures**

Including pirates' expeditions

Class how to plan a cruise vacation in 910.202; class ocean trips around the world in 910.41; class travel in specific oceans in 910.9163–910.9167

.452 Shipwrecks

Class here comprehensive works on ocean and inland waterway shipwrecks

Class water transportation safety in 363.123

For ocean shipwrecks, see the location of the wrecks in 910.9163–910.9167, e.g., sinking of Titanic 910.91634, shipwrecks of Alaskan waters of the Pacific Ocean 910.916434; for inland waterway shipwrecks, see the location of the wrecks in 913–919, plus notation 04 from table under 913–919, e.g., shipwrecks of Mississippi River 917.704, shipwrecks of Lake Superior 917.74904

See Manual at 900: Historic events vs. nonhistoric events

.46 Facilities for travelers

Class here directories of lodging for temporary residents; interdisciplinary and descriptive works on lodging for temporary residents, hotels, inns, motels

For a specific kind of facility for travelers other than lodging, see the kind of facility, e.g., transportation facilities 388.04, eating and drinking places 647.95; for a specific aspect of lodging for temporary residents, see the aspect, e.g., household management 647.94

[.460 25] Directories of persons and organizations

Do not use for general directories of persons and organizations; class in 910.46. Do not use for directories of persons and organizations limited to specific continents, countries, localities; class in 913–919 plus notation 06 from table under 913–919

.460 9 History and biography

[.460 93–.460 99] Specific continents, countries, localities

Do not use; class in 913–919 plus notation 06 from table under 913–919

.462 Resorts

Class here park and safari lodges, directories

[.462 025] Directories of persons and organizations

Do not use for general directories of persons and organizations; class in 910.462. Do not use for directories of persons and organizations limited to specific continents, countries, localities; class in 913–919 plus notation 062 from table under 913–919

.462 09 History and biography

[.462 093–.462 099] Specific continents, countries, localities

Do not use; class in 913–919 plus notation 062 from table under 913–919

.464 Bed and breakfast accommodations

Class here boarding and rooming houses, directories

[.464 025] Directories of persons and organizations

Do not use for general directories of persons and organizations; class in 910.464. Do not use for directories of persons and organizations limited to specific continents, countries, localities; class in 913–919 plus notation 064 from table under 913–919

.464 09 History and biography

[.464 093–.464 099] Specific continents, countries, localities

Do not use; class in 913–919 plus notation 064 from table under 913–919

- .466 **Hostels**
 Class here elder, youth hostels; directories
- [.466 025] Directories of persons and organizations
 Do not use for general directories of persons and organizations;
 class in 910.466. Do not use for directories of persons and
 organizations limited to specific continents, countries,
 localities; class in 913-919 plus notation 066 from table under
 913-919
- .466 09 **History and biography**
- [.466 093-.466 099] Specific continents, countries, localities
 Do not use; class in 913-919 plus notation 066 from table
 under 913-919
- .468 **Campsites**
 Class here recreation vehicle (RV), trailer camps; directories
 Class trailer camps for long-term residents in 647.92; class travel by
 motor homes, recreational vehicles, trailers in 910
- [.468 025] Directories of persons and organizations
 Do not use for general directories of persons and organizations;
 class in 910.468. Do not use for directories of persons and
 organizations limited to specific continents, countries,
 localities; class in 913-919 plus notation 068 from table under
 913-919
- .468 09 **History and biography**
- [.468 093-.468 099] Specific continents, countries, localities
 Do not use; class in 913-919 plus notation 068 from table
 under 913-919
- .5-.8 Standard subdivisions**
- .9 History, geographic treatment, biography**
 Class here discovery, exploration, growth of geographic knowledge
- .91 **Geography of and travel in areas, regions, places in general**
 Class physical geography of areas, regions, places in general in 910.02; class
 interdisciplinary works on landforms, oceans, seas in 551.4
 (Option: Class primary geography textbooks on specific areas, regions,
 places in general in 372.8911)
- .92 **Geographers, travelers, explorers regardless of country of origin**

.93–.99 **Discovery and exploration by specific countries**

Do not use for geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds; class in 913–919

Add to base number 910.9 notation 3–9 from Table 2 for the country responsible, e.g., explorations by Great Britain 910.941

Class discovery and exploration by a specific country in areas, regions, places in general in 910.91; class discovery and exploration by a specific country in specific continents, countries, localities, extraterrestrial worlds in 913–919, plus notation 04 from table under 913–919; class periods of discovery and exploration in history in 930–990

911 Historical geography

Growth and changes in political divisions

Class here historical atlases

.09 **History**

[.091–.099] **Geographic treatment and biography**

Do not use; class in 911.1–911.9

.1–.9 **Geographic treatment and biography**

Add to base number 911 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., historical geography of China 911.51

912 Graphic representations of surface of earth and of extraterrestrial worlds

Class here atlases, maps, charts, plans, road maps (highway maps)

Class map drawing in 526

For graphic representation of a specific subject other than geography, travel, and roads, see the subject, plus notation 0223 from Table 1, e.g., railroad atlases 385.0223

.01 **Philosophy and theory; map reading**

Notation 01 from Table 1 as modified below

.014 **Map reading**

Do not use for communication; class in 912.01

Class here orientation

Class orienteering in 796.58

.014 8 **Map scales, symbols, abbreviations, acronyms**

.09 **History and biography of maps and map making**

[.091] **Maps and map making of specific areas, regions, places in general**

Do not use; class in 912.19

[.093–.099] Maps and map making of specific continents, countries, localities, extraterrestrial worlds

Do not use; class in 912.3–912.9

.1 Areas, regions, places in general

.19 Specific areas, regions, places in general

Add to base number 912.19 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., maps of Western Hemisphere 912.19812

.3–.9 Specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds

Class here land atlases of countries, tax maps that provide general descriptions of assessed land and structures

Add to base number 912 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., maps of Du Page County, Illinois 912.77324

913–919 Geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds

Class here comprehensive works on ancient and modern geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 91 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., geography of England 914.2, of Norfolk, England 914.261; then add further as follows:

- 001 Philosophy and theory
- 0014 Communication
 - Class here discursive works on place names and their origin, history, and meaning
 - Class dictionaries and gazetteers of place names in 003
- 002 Miscellany
- 0022 Illustrations, models, miniatures
- 00222 Pictures and related illustrations
 - Including aerial photographs
 - Class photographs reflecting the civilization of places in 930–990
- [00223] Maps, plans, diagrams
 - Do not use; class in 912
- 0025 Directories of persons and organizations
 - Class here city directories, telephone books
- 0028 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
- 00285 Computer applications
 - Class here geographic information systems (GIS), global positioning systems (GPS), real-time locating systems (RTLS)
 - Class real-time locating systems that use radio frequency identification in 002856245
- 003 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances, gazetteers
 - Class here works on place names systematically arranged for ready reference
 - Class discursive works on place names in 0014; class historical material associated with place names in 930–990
- 005–008 Standard subdivisions
- [009] History, geographic treatment, biography
 - Do not use; class in 913–919 without adding from this table
- 01 Prehistoric geography
 - Do not add to notation 4–6 from Table 2 if there is a corresponding notation 3 from Table 2, e.g., prehistoric geography of Greece 913.801 (*not* 914.9501), of Russia 914.701
 - Class prehistoric physical geography in 02; class prehistoric geography of areas, regions, places in general in 09
- 02 The earth (Physical geography)
 - Class physical geography of a specific geological feature with the feature in 550, e.g., glaciers of Canada 551.3120971
 - See also 551.41 for geomorphology*
 - See Manual at 550 vs. 910*

(continued)

913–919 Geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds (continued)

- 04 Travel
 Class here discovery, exploration; guidebooks
 Class world travel guides in 910.202; class travel accounts that emphasize the civilization of country visited in 930–990
For facilities for travelers, see 06
See Manual at 913–919: Add table: 04; also at 913–919 vs. 796.51
- 040901–040905 Historical periods for regions
 Do not use for historical periods of continents countries, localities; for historical periods for regions sharing the same historical period numbers as a country; class in 041–049
 Limited to regions not sharing the same historical period numbers as a country, e.g., travel in central Europe during 19th century 914.30409034
- 041–049 Historical periods
 Add to 04 the historical period numbers following 0 that appear in subdivisions of 930–990, e.g., travel in England during period of House of Tudor 914.2045; however, for historical periods of United States as a whole, see 917.3041–917.3049
For historical periods for regions not sharing the same historical period numbers as a country, see 040901–040905
- 06 Facilities for travelers
 Class here lodging for travelers; directories of facilities for travelers; interdisciplinary and descriptive works on lodging for temporary residents, hotels, motels, inns in specific continents, countries, localities
For a specific kind of facility for travelers other than lodging, see the kind of facility, e.g., transportation facilities 388.04, eating and drinking places 647.953–647.959; for a specific aspect of lodging for temporary residents, see the aspect, e.g., household management 647.94093–647.94099
- [06025] Directories of persons and organizations
 Do not use; class in 06
- 0609 History and biography
- 060901–060905 Historical periods for regions
 Do not use for historical periods of continents countries, localities; for historical periods for regions sharing the same historical period numbers as a country; class in 061
 Limited to regions not sharing the same historical period numbers as a country, e.g., facilities for travelers in central Europe during 19th century 914.30609034
- 061 Historical periods
 Add to 061 the historical period numbers following 0 that appear in subdivisions of 930–990, e.g., facilities for travelers in England in 2011 914.20618612; however, for historical periods of United States as a whole, see 917.3061
For historical periods for regions not sharing the same historical period numbers as a country, see 060901–060905

(continued)

913–919 Geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds (continued)

- 062 Resorts
 Class here park and safari lodges
- 06201–06209 Standard subdivisions
 As modified under 0602–0609
- 0621–0629 Historical periods
 Add to 062 the historical period numbers following 0 that appear in subdivisions of 930–990, e.g., resorts in England in 2011 914.20628612; however, for historical periods of United States as a whole, see 917.30621–917.30629
 For historical periods for regions not sharing the same historical period numbers as a country, see 0620901–0620905
- 064 Bed and breakfast accommodations
 Class here boarding and rooming houses, directories
- 06401–06409 Standard subdivisions
 As modified under 0602–0609
- 0641–0649 Historical periods
 Add to 064 the historical period numbers following 0 that appear in subdivisions of 930–990, e.g., bed and breakfast accommodations in England in 2011 914.20648612; however, for historical periods of United States as a whole, see 917.30641–917.30649
 For historical periods for regions not sharing the same historical period numbers as a country, see 0640901–0640905
- 066 Hostels
 Class here elder, youth hostels; directories
- 06601–06609 Standard subdivisions
 As modified under 0602–0609
- 0661–0669 Historical periods
 Add to 066 the historical period numbers following 0 that appear in subdivisions of 930–990, e.g., hostels in England in 2011 914.20668612; however, for historical periods of United States as a whole, see 917.30661–917.30669
 For historical periods for regions not sharing the same historical period numbers as a country, see 0660901–0660905
- 068 Campsites
 Class here recreation vehicle (RV), trailer camps; directories; interdisciplinary and descriptive works on lodging for campsites in specific continents, countries, localities
 Class trailer camps for long-term residents in 647.92

(continued)

913–919 Geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds (continued)

- 06801–06809 Standard subdivisions
As modified under 0602–0609
- 0681–0689 Historical periods
Add to 068 the historical period numbers following 0 that appear in subdivisions of 930–990, e.g., campsites in England in 2011 914.20688612; however, for historical periods of United States as a whole, see 917.30681–917.30689
For historical periods for regions not sharing the same historical period numbers as a country, see 0680901–0680905
- 09 Areas, regions, places in general
Add to 09 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–18 from Table 2, e.g., geography of urban regions of England 914.209732
Class physical geography of areas, regions, places in 02; class travel in 04; class civilization in 930–990, plus notation 0091–0098 from Table under 930–990

Class historical geography in 911; class graphic representations in 912; class area studies in 940–990; class comprehensive works, geography of and travel in more than one continent in 910; class interdisciplinary works on geography and history of ancient world, of specific continents, countries, localities in 930–990

See Manual at 913–919; also at 333.7–333.9 vs. 508, 913–919, 930–990; also at 520 vs. 500.5, 523.1, 530.1, 919.9

(Option: Class primary geography textbooks on ancient world, on specific continents, countries, localities in 372.8913–372.8919)

913 Geography of and travel in ancient world

Number built according to instructions under 913–919

914 Geography of and travel in Europe

Number built according to instructions under 913–919

915 Geography of and travel in Asia

Number built according to instructions under 913–919

916 Geography of and travel in Africa

Number built according to instructions under 913–919

917 Geography of and travel in North America

Number built according to instructions under 913–919

.3 Geography of and travel in United States

Number built according to instructions under 913–919

For geography of and travel in specific states of United States, see 917.4–917.9

.304 Travel

Number built according to instructions under 913–919

- .304 1–.304 9 Historical periods
 Add to 04 the numbers following 973 in 973.1–973.9, e.g., travel in United States during the Clinton administration 917.304929
- .306 Facilities for travelers
 Number built according to instructions under 913–919
- .306 1 Historical periods
 Add to base number 917.3061 the numbers following 973 in 973.1–973.9, e.g., facilities for travelers in United States in 1993–2001 917.3061929
- .306 2 Resorts
 Number built according to instructions under 913–919
- .306 21–.306 29 Historical periods
 Add to base number 917.3062 the numbers following 973 in 973.1–973.9, e.g., resorts in United States in 1993–2001 917.3062929
- .306 4 Bed and breakfast accommodations
 Number built according to instructions under 913–919
- .306 41–.306 49 Historical periods
 Add to base number 917.3064 the numbers following 973 in 973.1–973.9, e.g., bed and breakfast accommodations in United States in 1993–2001 917.3064929
- .306 6 Hostels
 Number built according to instructions under 913–919
- .306 61–.306 69 Historical periods
 Add to base number 917.3066 the numbers following 973 in 973.1–973.9, e.g., hostels in United States in 1993–2001 917.3066929
- .306 8 Campsites
 Number built according to instructions under 913–919
- .306 81–.306 89 Historical periods
 Add to base number 917.3068 the numbers following 973 in 973.1–973.9, e.g., campsites in United States in 1993–2001 917.3068929

.4–.9 Geography of and travel in specific states of United States

Add to base number 91 notation 74–79 from Table 2, e.g., geography of and travel in California 917.94; then add further as instructed under 913–919, e.g., travel in California 917.9404, travel in California in 2001 917.940454

For geography of and travel in specific states of Hawaii, see 919.69

918 Geography of and travel in South America

Number built according to instructions under 913–919

919 Geography of and travel in Australasia, Pacific Ocean islands, Atlantic Ocean islands, Arctic islands, Antarctica and on extraterrestrial worlds

Number built according to instructions under 913–919

.904 Travel on extraterrestrial worlds

Number built according to instructions under 913–919

Class here accounts of projected flights

See Manual at 629.43, 629.45 vs. 559.9, 919.904

.920 4 Travel in planets of solar system and their satellites

Number built according to instructions under 913–919

Class here accounts of projected planetary flights

Class accounts of projected flights to a specific planet with the planet in 919.921–919.929, plus notation 04 from table under 913–919, e.g., projected accounts of flights to Mars 919.92304

920 Biography, genealogy, insignia

Class here autobiographies, diaries, reminiscences, correspondence; biography as a discipline

Class biography of people associated with a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., biography of chemists 540.92

(Option A: For biography of people associated with a specific subject, use subdivisions identified by *, then, for each number identified by †, add notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., Baptists from Louisiana 922.6763

(Option B: Class individual biography in 92 or B; class collected biography in 92 or 920 undivided

(Option C: Class individual biography of men in 920.71; class individual biography of women in 920.72)

See Manual at T1–092

.001–.002 Standard subdivisions of biography as a discipline**.003 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of biography as a discipline**

See also 920.02 for biographical dictionaries

.005–.007 Standard subdivisions of biography as a discipline**.008 Biography as a discipline with respect to groups of people; general collections of biography by groups of people with specific attributes**

See Manual at 920.008 vs. 305–306, 362

- [.008 1] People by gender or sex
Do not use; class in 920.7
- [.008 2] Women
Do not use; class in 920.72
- [.008 8] Occupational and religious groups
Do not use; class with the specific group plus notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., biography of Lutherans 284.1092
- [.008 9] Ethnic and national groups
Do not use; class in 920.0092
- .009 History and geographic treatment of biography as a discipline; general collections of biography by period, region, group
Subdivisions are added for biography as a discipline, for general collections of biography, or for both
See Manual at T1—092: Comprehensive biography: Public figures; also at 920.009, 920.03—920.09 vs. 909.09, 909.1—909.8, 930—990; also at 930—990: Biography
- .009 01—.009 05 Historical periods
Add to base number 920.0090 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901—0905 from Table 1, e.g., general biography of 19th century 920.009034
- .009 1 Areas, regions, places in general
Add to base number 920.0091 the numbers following —1 in notation 11—19 from Table 2, e.g., biographies of suburbanites 920.0091733
- .009 2 Ethnic and national groups
Do not use for biography of biography as a discipline; class in 920 without subdivision
See Manual at 920.008 vs. 305—306, 362
- .009 205—.009 209 People of mixed ancestry with ethnic origins from more than one continent, people of European descent
Add to base number 920.0092 notation 05—09 from Table 5, e.g., biographies of people of European descent 920.009209
- .009 21—.009 29 Specific ethnic and national groups
Add to base number 920.0092 notation 1—9 from Table 5, e.g., biographies of Swedes 920.0092397
- .009 3—.009 9 Biography as a discipline by specific continents, countries, localities
Do not use for general collections of biography by specific continents, countries, localities; class in 920.03—920.09

.02 General collections of biography

For a collection limited by period, place, group, or subject, see the period, place, group, or subject, e.g., collections of biographies of people resident in England 920.042, collections of biographies of scientists 509.22

[.020 3] Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

Do not use; class in 920.02

[.020 8] General collections of biography with respect to groups of people

Do not use; class in 920.008

[.020 81] People by gender or sex

Do not use; class in 920.7

[.020 82] Women

Do not use; class in 920.72

[.020 88] Occupational and religious groups

Do not use; class with the specific group plus notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., biography of Lutherans 284.1092

[.020 89] Ethnic and national groups

Do not use; class in 920.0092

.03-.09 General collections of biography by specific continents, countries, localities

Not associated with a specific subject

Add to base number 920.0 notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., collections of biographies of people resident in England 920.042

Class collections by sex regardless of continent, country, locality in 920.7

For collected biography of public figures who had a significant impact upon general history of a specific continent, country, or locality, see the history of the continent, country, or locality in 930-990, plus 0099 from table under 930-990, e.g., collected biography of kings and queens of England 942.0099

See Manual at T1-092: Comprehensive biography: Public figures; also at 920.009, 920.03-920.09 vs. 909.09, 909.1-909.8, 930-990; also at 930-990: Biography

(1) *Bibliographers**(2) *Librarians and book collectors****(3) *Encyclopedists**

Class lexicographers in 924

(4) *Publishers and booksellers

*(Optional number; prefer specific subject, as described under 920)

(.5) *Journalists and news commentators**.7 People by gender or sex**

Class here individual biography of people not associated with a specific subject, collected biography of people by gender or sex

Class general collections of biography in 920.02

For collected biography of transgender or intersex people, see 920.00867

(Option: Class here all individual biography; prefer specific subject, plus notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., biography of a female scientist 509.2)

.71 Men

See Manual at 920.008 vs. 305–306, 362

.72 Women

See Manual at 920.008 vs. 305–306, 362

(.9) *People associated with other subjects

Not provided for in 920.1–920.5, 921–928

Add to base number 920.9 notation 001–999, e.g., astrologers 920.91335

(921) *Philosophers and psychologists**> (921.1–921.8) Modern western philosophers and psychologists**

Class comprehensive works in 921

(.1) *United States and Canadian philosophers and psychologists**(.2) *British philosophers and psychologists**

Including English, Scottish, Irish, Welsh philosophers and psychologists

(.3) *German and Austrian philosophers and psychologists**(.4) *French philosophers and psychologists****(.5) *Italian philosophers and psychologists****(.6) *Spanish and Portuguese philosophers and psychologists****(.7) *Russian philosophers and psychologists****(.8) *†Other modern western philosophers and psychologists****(.9) *Ancient, medieval, eastern philosophers and psychologists**

Add to base number 921.9 the numbers following 18 in 181–189, e.g., Aristotelian philosophers 921.95

*(Optional number; prefer specific subject, as described under 920)

†Add as instructed under 920

(922) *Religious leaders, thinkers, workers**(922.1–922.8) Christians**

Class comprehensive works in 922

(.1) *†Early church and Eastern churches

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

(.2) *Roman Catholics**(.21) *Popes****(.22) *Saints****(.24–.29) *Roman Catholics from specific continents, countries, localities in modern world**

Add to base number 922.2 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Roman Catholics from the City of Montréal 922.271428

For popes, see 922.21; for saints, see 922.22

(.3) *†Anglicans**(.4) *†Lutherans, Huguenots, continental Protestants**

Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

(.5) *†Presbyterians, Congregationalists, American Reformed

Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

(.6) *†Baptists, Disciples of Christ, Adventists

Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

(.7) *†Methodists**(.8) *Members of other Christian denominations and sects****(.81) *†Unitarians and Universalists**

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

(.83) *†Latter-Day Saints**(.84) *†Swedenborgians****(.85) *†Christian Scientists****(.86) *†Friends (Quakers)****(.87) *†Mennonites****(.88) *†Shakers**

*Optional number; prefer specific subject, as described under 920

†Add as instructed under 920

(.89) *Other Christian denominations and sects

Not provided for elsewhere

(.9) *Adherents of other religions

(.91) *Atheists and Deists

(.94) *Adherents of Indic religions

(.943) *Buddhists

(.944) *Jains

(.945) *Hindus

(.946) *Sikhs

(.95) *Zoroastrians (Parsees)

(.96) *Adherents of Judaism

(.97) *Adherents of Islam

(.99) *Other religions

Not provided for elsewhere

(923) *People in social sciences

(.1) *†Heads of state

Class here kings, queens, presidents

(.2) *†People in political science and politics

Class here legislators, governors, politicians, statesmen, diplomats, nobility; political scientists

For heads of state, see 923.1

(.3) *People in economics

(.31) *†Labor leaders

(.33–.39) *People in economics from specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 923.3 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., people in economics from Chicago 923.377311

For labor leaders, see 923.31

(.4) *Criminals and people in law

(.41) *†Criminals

(.43–.49) *People in law

Add to base number 923.4 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., people in law from Sydney 923.49441

*(Optional number; prefer specific subject, as described under 920)

†Add as instructed under 920

(.5) *†Public administrators and military personnel

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

For heads of state, see 923.1; for governors, politicians, statesmen, see 923.2

(.6) *†Philanthropists, humanitarians, social reformers

Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

(.7) *†Educators**(.8) *†People in commerce, communications, transportation**

Subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading

(.9) *Explorers, geographers, pioneers**(924) *Philologists and lexicographers**

Add to base number 924 notation 1–9 from Table 6, e.g., lexicographers of Chinese 924.951

(925) *Scientists

Add to base number 925 the numbers following 5 in 510–590, e.g., botanists 925.8

(926) *People in technology

Add to base number 926 the numbers following 6 in 610–690, e.g., engineers 926.2

See also 920.4 for booksellers

(927) *People in the arts and recreation

Add to base number 927 the numbers following 7 in 710–790, e.g., baseball players 927.96357

For people in literature, see 928

(928) *People in literature, history, biography, genealogy

Including historians, writers and critics of belles-lettres

See also 923.9 for explorers, geographers, pioneers

(.1) *Americans**(.2–.9) *Writers in literature, history, biography, genealogy by language**

Add to base number 928 notation 2–9 from Table 6 for language in which person has written, e.g., writers in Italian 928.51

Class Americans in 928.1

929 Genealogy, names, insignia

* (Optional number; prefer specific subject, as described under 920)

† Add as instructed under 920

.1 Genealogy

For family histories, see 929.2; for sources, see 929.3

- [.102 84] Apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use; class in 929.3
- .107 2 Research
 Class here the specific techniques and procedures involved in doing
 genealogical research in a specific area
 Class comprehensive works on genealogical research in 929.1
- [.109 4-.109 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 929.107204-929.107209

.2 Family histories

Class family histories emphasizing the contributions of the members of the family to a specific occupation with the occupation, e.g., the Rothschilds as a family of bankers 332.10922; class family histories of a prominent person that emphasize the person's life with the biography number for the person, e.g., forebears, family, and life of John Fitzgerald Kennedy 973.922092

For royal houses, peerage, see 929.7

See Manual at 929.2

(Option: Arrange alphabetically by name)

- .202 8 Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use for the techniques of compiling family histories; class in
 929.1

.3 Genealogical sources

Standard subdivisions are added for miscellaneous collections and individual sources

Class here census records, court records, tax lists, wills

Use only for sources published by a genealogical organization or compiled by a genealogist. Sources published or compiled by other agencies are normally classed with the subject of the publication, e.g., United States population census records 304.60973; however, if the source has been either enhanced or rearranged to emphasize the genealogical content, the source is classed here, e.g., United States population census records with name indexes added 929.373

Class how to use sources in 929.1; class cemetery records used as genealogical sources in 929.5

For epitaphs, see 929.5

- [.309 3-.309 9] Specific continents, countries, localities
 Do not use; class in 929.33-929.39

- .33–.39 **Specific continents, countries, localities**
 Regardless of form
 Add to base number 929.3 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., sources from
 New York 929.3747

.4 Personal names

See also 929.97 for names of houses, pets, ships

- .42 Surnames

- .44 Forenames

Class here lists of names for babies

.5 Cemetery records

Regardless of form

Including epitaphs

.6 Heraldry

Including crests

Class here armorial bearings, coats of arms

For royal houses, peerage, orders of knighthood, see 929.7

.7 Royal houses, peerage, orders of knighthood

Class here rank, precedence, titles of honor; genealogies tracing or establishing titles of honor; works emphasizing lineage or descent with respect to royalty or the peerage; history and genealogy of royal families

Class histories of a royal family that include general historical events or biographies of members of the royal family in 930–990. Class family histories of a prominent person that emphasize the person's life with the biography number for the person, e.g., forebears, family, and life of Winston Churchill 941.084092

- [.709 41–.709 49] **Specific countries of Europe**

Do not use; class in 929.72–929.79

- .71 **Orders of knighthood**

Class Christian orders of knighthood in 255.791; class Christian orders of knighthood in church history in 271.791

> 929.72–929.79 **Treatment of royal houses, peerage, gentry by specific countries of Europe**

Class comprehensive works in 929.7094

- .72 **Great Britain and Ireland**

- .73–.79 **Other countries of Europe**

Add to base number 929.7 the numbers following —4 in notation 43–49 from Table 2, e.g., royal houses of France 929.74

.8 Orders, decorations, autographs**.81 Orders and decorations**

Add to base number 929.81 notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., orders of Germany 929.8143

Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

For armorial bearings, see 929.6

.88 Autographs

Class autographs associated a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 075 from Table 1, e.g., American football autographs 796.332075

.9 Forms of insignia and identification

Including identification cards, motor vehicle registration plates, seals

Class seals with armorial bearings in 929.6. Class forms of insignia and identification not provided for here with the form, e.g., coats of arms 929.6; class a specific aspect of identification cards not provided for here with the aspect, e.g., forgery of identification cards 364.163; class identification marks in a specific subject with the subject, plus notation 027 from Table 1, e.g., airline insignia 387.70275

See also 737.6 for artistic aspects of seals

.92 Flags and banners

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Including ship, ownership flags and banners

Class here national, state, provincial flags and banners

Class military use in 355.15

.95 Service marks and trademarks

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.97 Names

Including names of houses, ships, pets

Class here interdisciplinary works on onomastics (study of origin, history, use of proper names)

For place names, see 910.014; for personal names, see 929.4

.970 14 Communication

Do not use for etymology; class in 412

> 930–990 History of specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds

Civilization and events

Class here interdisciplinary works on geography and history of ancient world, of specific continents, countries, localities

Add to base number 9 notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., general history of Europe 940, of England 942, of Norfolk, England 942.61; then add further as follows:

- 001 Philosophy and theory
- 002 Miscellany
- 00223 Maps, plans, diagrams
 - Do not use for historical atlases; class in 911.1–911.9
- 003 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances
- 004 Ethnic and national groups
 - (Option: Class in 909.04)
- 00405–00409 Specific ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent
 - Add to 0040 the numbers following —0 in notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., history and civilization of people of European descent in New York 974.700409
 - Class relation of ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent to a war with the war, plus notation 089 from Table 1, e.g., relation of Europeans to World War II 940.5308909
- 0041–0049 Specific ethnic and national groups
 - Add to 004 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., history and civilization of North American native peoples in New York 974.700497
 - Class indigenous groups in the prehistoric period with the period, e.g., Inca empire before Spanish conquest 985.019; class relation of ethnic and national groups to a war with the war, plus notation 089 from Table 1, e.g., relation of Arabs to World War II 940.53089927
- 005–006 Standard subdivisions
- 007 Education, research, related topics
- 0072 Historical research
- 007202 Historians and historiographers
 - Class historians and historiographers specializing in a specific historical period of a specific area with the historical period for the area studied, plus notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., the biography of a Canadian historian who specializes in United States Revolutionary War 973.3092
 - See Manual at 930–990: Biography*
- 008 Groups of people
- [0089] Ethnic and national groups
 - Do not use; class in 004

(continued)

>

930–990 History of specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds (continued)

- 009 Areas, regions places in general; collected biography
 Notation 09 from Table 1 as modified below
 Do not use for history, geographic treatment, biography together; class in 930–990 without adding from this table. Do not use for historical periods; class in 01–09. Do not use for individual biography; class in 01–09, plus notation 092 from Table 1. Do not use for specific continents, countries, localities; class in 930–990 without adding from this table
- 0091–0098 Areas, regions, places in general
 Add to 009 the numbers following —1 in notation 11–18 from Table 2, e.g., urban regions 009732
- 0099 Collected biography
 Description, critical appraisal, biography of people associated with the history of the continent, country, locality but limited to no specific period
 Class collected biography of a specific period in 01–09, plus notation 0922 from Table 1; class historians and historiographers in 007202; class comprehensive works on collected biography of a specific continent, country, or locality in 920.03–920.09
See Manual at T1–092: Comprehensive biography: Public figures; also at 920.009, 920.03–920.09 vs. 909.09, 909.1–909.8, 930–990; also at 930–990: Biography
- 01–09 Historical periods
 Class here indigenous groups in the prehistoric period, e.g., Inca empire before Spanish conquest 985.019 (*not* 985.00498323)
 Add to 0 the period division numbers following 0 from the appropriate continent, country, locality in 930–990, e.g., period of 1760–1820 in British history 073 (from 941.073), period of 1815–1847 in German history 073 (from 943.073), period of 1815–1847 in Austrian history 042 (from 943.6042)
 Unless other period notation is specified, add to each geographic subdivision of an area the period notation for the area as a whole, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire in Saudi Arabia 953.803 (based on period of Ottoman Empire in Arabian Peninsula 953.03)
 Class areas, regions, places in general in a specific period in 0091–0098; class ethnic and national groups in a specific period in 004. Class relation of ethnic and national groups to a war with the war, plus notation 089 from Table 1, e.g., relation of Arabs to World War II 940.53089927
See Manual at 930–990: Biography; also at 930–990: Add table: 01–09

The schedules that follow do not enumerate all the countries and localities that appear in Table 2; however, the foregoing instructions apply to history of any place in notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., period of 1815–1847 in Viennese history 943.613042

(continued)

>

930–990 History of specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds (continued)

Class sociology of war in 303.66; class sociology of military institutions in 306.27; class social factors affecting war in 355.02; class social causes of war in 355.0274; class historical geography in 911; class geography of ancient world, of specific continents, countries, localities in 913–919; class comprehensive works in 909

See Manual at 930–990; also at 306 vs. 305, 909, 930–990; also at 324 vs. 320.5, 320.9, 909, 930–990; also at 333.7–333.9 vs. 508, 913–919, 930–990; also at 909, 930–990 vs. 320; also at 909, 930–990 vs. 320.4, 321, 321.09; also at 909, 930–990 vs. 910; also at 930–990 vs. 355.009, 355–359

(Option: Class primary history textbooks on ancient world, on specific continents, countries, localities in 372.893–372.899)

930 History of ancient world to ca. 499

SUMMARY

930.01–.09	Standard subdivisions
.1–.5	[Archaeology and historical periods]
931	China to 420
932	Egypt to 640
933	Palestine to 70
934	South Asia to 647
935	Mesopotamia to 637 and Iranian Plateau to 637
936	Europe north and west of Italian Peninsula to ca. 499
937	Italian Peninsula to 476 and adjacent territories to 476
938	Greece to 323
939	Other parts of ancient world

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 930–990; however, for archaeology, see 930.1

.1 Archaeology

Study of past civilizations through discovery, collection, interpretation of material remains

Class here early history to 4000 B.C.; prehistoric archaeology; interdisciplinary works on archaeology

For industrial archaeology, see 609; for archaeology of specific oceans and seas, see 909.0963–909.0967; for archaeology of continents, countries, localities provided for in notation 3 from Table 2, see 931–939; for archaeology of modern period, ancient and prehistoric archaeology of continents, countries, localities not provided for in notation 3 from Table 2, see 940–990

See also 700 for artistic aspects of archaeological objects

.102 Miscellany

.16 Iron Age

Class here 999–1 B.C.

See also 938.08 for Hellenistic period

.5 1st–5th centuries, 1–499**> 931–939 Specific places**

Class archaeology and history of specific oceans and seas in 909.0963–909.0967; class archaeology and history of modern period, ancient and prehistoric archaeology and history of continents, countries, localities not provided for in notation 3 from Table 2 in 940–990; class comprehensive works in 930

931 *China to 420

(Option: Class in 951.01)

- .01 Early history to ca. 1523 B.C.
- .02 Period of Shang (Yin) dynasty, ca. 1523–ca. 1028 B.C.
- .03 Period of Zhou (Chou) dynasty and warring states, ca. 1028–221 B.C.
- .04 Period of Qin (Ch'in) to Jin (Chin) dynasties, 221 B.C.–420 A.D.
Including Han dynasty, 202 B.C.–220 A.D.

932 *Egypt to 640

(Option: Class in 962.01)

- .01 Early history to 332 B.C.
- .011 Prehistoric period to ca. 3100 B.C.
- .012 Protodynastic, Old Kingdom, first intermediate periods, ca. 3100–2052 B.C.
Including 1st–11th dynasties
- .013 Middle Kingdom and second intermediate periods, 2052–1570 B.C.
Including 12th–17th dynasties
- .014 Period of New Kingdom, 1570–1075 B.C.
Including 18th–20th dynasties
- .015 Late and Saite periods, 1075–525 B.C.
Including 21st–26th dynasties, period of sovereignty of Cush
- .016 Persian periods and last Egyptian kingdom, 525–332 B.C.
Including 27th–31st dynasties
- .02 Hellenistic, Roman, Byzantine periods, 332 B.C.–640 A.D.

- .021 Hellenistic period, 332–30 B.C.
- .022 Roman period, 30 B.C.–324 A.D.
- .023 Byzantine (Coptic) period, 324–640

933 *Palestine to 70

See also 220.93 for Biblical archaeology; also 220.95 for history of Biblical events

(Option: Class Palestine, Israel in 956.9401; class Jordan, West Bank in 956.9501)

- .01 Early history to return of Jews from bondage in Egypt, ca. 1225 B.C.
- .02 Great age of Twelve Tribes, ca. 1225–922 B.C.
Including rule of Judges, Saul, David, Solomon
- .03 Periods of partition, conquest, foreign rule, 922–168 B.C.
Including periods of Assyrian, Babylonian, Persian, Hellenistic rule
- .04 168–63 B.C.
Including Hasmonean (Maccabean) period
- .05 Period of Roman protectorate and rule to destruction of Jerusalem, 63 B.C.–70 A.D.

934 *South Asia to 647

Class here India to 647

(Option: Class in 954.01)

- .01 Pre-Aryan civilizations to ca. 1500 B.C.
- .02 Indo-Aryan (Vedic) period, ca. 1500–ca. 600 B.C.
Including Iron Age culture in south India
- .03 Ca. 600–ca. 322 B.C.
- .04 Period of Maurya dynasty, ca. 322–185 B.C.
- .043 Ca. 322–ca. 274 B.C.
- .045 Reign of Aśoka, ca. 274–ca. 237 B.C.
- .047 Ca. 237–185 B.C.
- .05 Period of changing dynasties, 185 B.C.–318 A.D.
- .06 Period of Gupta dynasty, 318–500
- .07 500–647
Including reign of Harsha, 606–647

.9 Other jurisdictions to 647

Class here Pakistan (West and East, 1947–1971) to 647

(Option: Class in 954.901)

.91 *Pakistan to 647

(Option: Class in 954.9101)

.92 *Bangladesh to 647

(Option: Class in 954.9201)

935 *Mesopotamia to 637 and Iranian Plateau to 637

Subdivisions are added for Mesopotamia and Iranian Plateau together, for Mesopotamia alone

(Option: Class in 956.701)

.01 Early history to ca. 1900 B.C.**.02 Ca. 1900–ca. 900 B.C.****.03 Period of Assyrian Empire, ca. 900–625 B.C.****.04 625–539 B.C.**

Including reign of Nebuchadnezzar II, 605–562 B.C.

Class here Neo-Babylonian (Chaldean) Empire

.05 Period of Persian Empire, 539–332 B.C.

For Persian Wars, see 938.03

.06 Hellenistic period, 332 B.C.–226 A.D.**.062 332–ca. 250 B.C.**

Class here period of Seleucid Empire, 323–ca. 250 B.C.

.064 Period of Parthian Empire, ca. 250 B.C.–226 A.D.**.07 Period of Neo-Persian (Sassanian) Empire, 226–637****> 935.2–935.5 Mesopotamia to 637**

Class here Iraq to 637

Class comprehensive works in 935

.2 Kurdish Autonomous Region of Iraq to 637

Add to base number 935.2 the numbers following 935 in 935.01–935.07, e.g., period of Persian Empire 935.205

(Optional number; prefer 956.7201)

.4 Upper Mesopotamia to 637

Including Upper Mesopotamian portion of Arabia Deserta to 637 [*formerly* 939.47]

Add to base number 935.4 the numbers following 935 in 935.01–935.07, e.g., Kingdom of Mitanni 935.402

(Option: Class in 956.7401)

.5 Lower Mesopotamia to 637

Including Lower Mesopotamian portion of Arabia Deserta to 637 [*formerly* 939.47]

Class here Babylonia

(Option: Class in 956.7501)

.501 Early history to ca. 1900 B.C.

Class here Akkadian, Sumerian, Ur periods

.502 Period of Babylonian Empire, ca. 1900–ca. 900 B.C.

Including reign of Hammurabi, ca. 1792–ca. 1750 B.C.

.503–.507 Ca. 900 B.C.–637 A.D.

Add to base number 935.5 the numbers following 935 in 935.03–935.07, e.g., period of Neo-Babylonian Empire 935.504

.7 Iranian Plateau to 637

Class here Iran to 637, Persia to 637

(Option: Class in 955.01)

.701–.707 Historical periods of Iranian Plateau to 637

Add to base number 935.7 the numbers following 935 in 935.01–935.07, e.g., period of Persian Empire 935.705

.71–.79 Provinces of Iran to 637

Add to 935.7 the numbers following —55 in notation 551–559 from Table 2, e.g., Media 935.75, Elam 935.76; then add 0† and to the result add the numbers following 935.0 in 935.01–935.07, e.g., Median Empire 935.7504, Media province of Persian Empire 935.7504, Elamite Kingdom 935.7601, Elam province of Persian Empire 935.7605

(Option: Class Media, Ecbatana in 955.501; class Elam, Susa in 955.601; class Persis, Pasargadae, Persepolis in 955.7201)

†Add 00 for standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

936 *Europe north and west of Italian Peninsula to ca. 499

Including western Mediterranean region

Class here Europe, western Europe

For a specific part of ancient Europe not provided for here, see the part, e.g., Italy 937; Eastern Europe 947.000901, Russia 947.01

(Option: Class western Mediterranean region in 909.098221; class Europe, Europe north and west of Italian Peninsula, western Europe in 940.11)

.01 Early history to ca. 1000 B.C.

(Option: Class in 940.111)

.02 Ca. 1000–ca. 200 B.C.

(Option: Class in 940.112)

.03 Ca. 200 B.C.–ca. 499 A.D.

(Option: Class in 940.113)

.1 *British Isles to 410

For England to 410 and Wales to 410, see 936.2

(Option: Class in 941.012)

.101–.104 Historical periods of British Isles to 410

Add to base number 936.10 the numbers following 936.20 in 936.201–936.204, e.g., Roman period 936.104

.11 *Scotland to 410

(Option: Class in 941.1012)

.110 1 Early history to ca. 600 B.C.

(Option: Class in 941.10121)

.110 2 Ca. 600–79 B.C.

Class here Celtic period

(Option: Class in 941.10122)

.110 3 79 B.C.–410 A.D.

Class here period of Roman contacts

(Option: Class in 941.10123)

.12 *Northeastern Scotland to 410

(Option: Class in 941.2012)

.120 1 Early history to ca. 600 B.C.

(Option: Class in 941.20121)

- .120 2 Ca. 600–79 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 941.20122)
- .120 3 79 B.C.–410 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 941.20123)
- .13 *Southeastern Scotland to 410
 (Option: Class in 941.3012)
- .130 1 Early history to ca. 600 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 941.30121)
- .130 2 Ca. 600–79 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 941.30122)
- .130 3 79 B.C.–410 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 941.30123)
- .14 *Southwestern Scotland to 410
 (Option: Class in 941.4012)
- .140 1 Early history to ca. 600 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 941.40121)
- .140 2 Ca. 600–79 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 941.40122)
- .140 3 79 B.C.–410 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 941.40123)
- .15 *Ireland to 433
 (Option: Class in 941.5012)
- .150 1 Early history to ca. 400 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 941.50121)
- .150 2 Celtic period, ca. 400 B.C.–433 A.D.
 Including 410–433 [*formerly* 941.501]
 (Option: Class in 941.50122)
- .16 *Northern Ireland to 433; Donegal, Monaghan, Cavan counties of
 Republic of Ireland to 433
 Subdivisions are added for Northern Ireland, Donegal, Monaghan, Cavan
 counties together; for Northern Ireland alone
- .160 1 Early history to ca. 400 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 941.60121)

- .160 2 Celtic period, ca. 400 B.C.–433 A.D.
Including 410–433 [*formerly* 941.601]
(Option: Class in 941.60122)
- .17 *Republic of Ireland to 433
(Option: Class in 941.7012)
- .170 1 Early history to ca. 400 B.C.
(Option: Class in 941.70121)
- .170 2 Celtic period, ca. 400 B.C.–433 A.D.
Including 410–433 [*formerly* 941.701]
(Option: Class in 941.70122)
- .18 *Leinster to 433
(Option: Class in 941.8012)
- .180 1 Early history to ca. 400 B.C.
(Option: Class in 941.80121)
- .180 2 Celtic period, ca. 400 B.C.–433 A.D.
Including 410–433 [*formerly* 941.801]
(Option: Class in 941.80122)
- .19 *Munster to 433
(Option: Class in 941.9012)
- .190 1 Early history to ca. 400 B.C.
(Option: Class in 941.90121)
- .190 2 Celtic period, ca. 400 B.C.–433 A.D.
Including 410–433 [*formerly* 941.901]
(Option: Class in 941.90122)
- .2 *England to 410 and Wales to 410**
Subdivisions are added for England to 410 and Wales to 410 together, for England to 410 alone
(Option: Class England to 410 in 942.012; class Wales to 410 in 942.9012)
- .201 Early history to ca. 600 B.C.
- .201 1–.201 5 Early history to ca. 1000 B.C.
Add to base number 936.201 the numbers following 930.1 in 930.11–930.15, e.g., Bronze Age 936.20156
- .201 6 Ca. 1000–ca. 600 B.C.

*Add as instructed under 930–990

- .202 Celtic period, ca. 600–55 B.C.
- .203 Period of early Roman contacts, 55 B.C.–43 A.D.
- .204 Roman period, 43–410
- .3 *Germanic regions to 481 and Pannonia**
For British Isles to 410, see 936.1
 (Option: Class Germanic regions, Germany in 943.012)
 Scandinavia to 481 relocated to 936.8; Norway to 481 relocated to 936.81;
 Sweden to 481 relocated to 936.85; Denmark to 481 relocated to 936.89;
 Germanic regions in Netherlands to 481 relocated to 936.921; Germanic regions
 in Switzerland to 481 relocated to 936.947
- .301 Early history to 113 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 943.0121)
- .301 1–.301 5 Early history to ca. 1000 B.C.
 Add to base number 936.301 the numbers following 930.1 in
 930.11–930.15, e.g., Bronze Age 936.30156
- .301 6 Ca. 1000–113 B.C.
- .302 Period of contacts with Roman Republic and Empire, 113 B.C.–481
 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 943.0122)
- .36 *Austria and Liechtenstein to 476
 Class here Noricum
 Subdivisions are added for Austria and Liechtenstein together, for Austria
 alone
 (Option: Class in 943.601)
- .360 1 Early history to ca. 390 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 943.6011)
- .360 2 Celtic period, ca. 390–15 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 943.6012)
- .360 3 Roman period, ca. 15 B.C.–476 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 943.6013)
- .364 *Western Austria, and Liechtenstein
 Subdivisions are added for Western Austria and Liechtenstein together,
 for Western Austria alone
- .364 8 *Liechtenstein to 476
 (Option: Class in 943.648)

- .364 801 Early history to ca. 390 B.C.
 .364 802 Celtic period, ca. 390–15 B.C.
 .364 803 Roman period, ca. 15 B.C.–476 A.D.

.39 *Pannonia [*formerly* 939.8]
 Class here Hungary to ca. 640 [*formerly* 939.8]
 (Option: Class in 943.9011)

.4 *Celtic regions to 486

For British Isles, see 936.1

(Option: Class Celtic regions, France in 944.012)

Netherlands to 486 relocated to 936.92; Belgium to 486 relocated to 936.93;
 Luxembourg to 486 relocated to 936.935; Switzerland to 486 relocated to
 936.94

.401 Early history to 125 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 944.0121)

.401 1–.401 5 Early history to ca. 1000 B.C.
 Add to base number 936.401 the numbers following 930.1 in
 930.11–930.15, e.g., Bronze Age 936.40156

.401 6 Ca. 1000–125 B.C.

.402 Gallo-Roman period, 125 B.C.–486 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 944.0122)

.6 *Iberian Peninsula to 415 and adjacent islands to 415

(Option: Class Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands in 946.000901; class
 Spain in 946.012)

.601 Early history to ca. 1000 B.C.
 (Option: Class Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands to 4000 B.C. in
 946.0009012; Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands, 3999–1000 B.C.,
 in 946.0009013; class Spain in 946.0121)

.602 Period of Greek, Phoenician, and early Celtic and Germanic
 contacts, ca. 1000–218 B.C.
 (Option: Class Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands in 946.0009014;
 class Spain in 946.0122)

.603 Roman period, 218 B.C.–415 A.D.
 (Option: Class Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands to 999–1 B.C.
 in 946.0009014; Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands, 1–415, in
 946.0009015; class Spain in 946.0123)

- .69 *Portugal to 415
 (Option: Class in 946.9012)
- .690 1 Early history to ca. 1000 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 946.90121)
- .690 2 Period of Greek, Phoenician, and early Celtic and Germanic contacts, ca.
 1000–218 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 946.90122)
- .690 3 Roman period, 218 B.C.–415 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 946.90123)
- .8 *Scandinavia to 481 [formerly 936.3]**
 For Finland to 481, see 948.9701
 (Option: Class in 948.012)
- .81 *Norway to 481 [formerly 936.3]
 (Option: Class in 948.1012)
- .85 *Sweden to 481 [formerly 936.3]
 (Option: Class in 948.5012)
- .89 *Denmark to 481 [formerly 936.3]
 (Option: Class in 948.9012)
- .9 †Netherlands to 486, Belgium to 486, Luxembourg to 486, Switzerland
 to 486**
- .92 *Netherlands to 486 [formerly 936.4]
 Class here Celtic regions of Netherlands to 486, comprehensive works on
 Low Countries to 486
 For southern Low Countries to 486, see 936.93
 (Option: Class in 949.2012)
- .920 1 Early history to 125 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 949.20121)
- .920 2 Gallo-Roman period, 125 B.C.–486 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 949.20122)
- .921 *Northeastern provinces of Netherlands to 481
 Class here Germanic regions of Netherlands to 481 [formerly 936.3]
 For Flevoland to 481, see 936.922
 (Option: Class in 949.21012)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .921 01 Early history to 113 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 949.210121)
- .921 02 Period of contacts with Roman Republic and Empire, 113 B.C.–481
 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 949.210122)
- .93 *Belgium to 486 [*formerly* 936.4]
 (Option: Class in 949.3012)
- .930 1 Early history to 125 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 949.30121)
- .930 2 Gallo-Roman period, 125 B.C.–486 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 949.30122)
- .935 *Luxembourg to 486 [*formerly* 936.4]
 (Option: Class in 949.35012)
- .935 01 Early history to 125 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 949.350121)
- .935 02 Gallo-Roman period, 125 B.C.–486 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 949.350122)
- .94 *Switzerland to 486 [*formerly* 936.4]
 (Option: Class in 949.4012)
- .940 1 Early history to 125 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 949.40121)
- .940 2 Gallo-Roman period, 125 B.C.–486 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 949.40122)
- .947 *Alpine region cantons to 481
 Class here Germanic regions of Switzerland to 481 [*formerly* 936.3]
 (Option: Class in 949.47012)
- .947 01 Early history to 113 B.C.
 (Option: Class 949.470121)
- .947 02 Period of contacts with Roman Republic and Empire, 113 B.C.–481
 A.D.
 (Option: Class 949.47012)

937 *Italian Peninsula to 476 and adjacent territories to 476

Class here Mediterranean region

Subdivisions are added for Italian Peninsula and adjacent territories together, for Italian Peninsula alone

(Option: Class Mediterranean region in 909.1822; class Italian Peninsula and adjacent territories in 945.012)

.01 Early history to 510 B.C.

Class here Roman Kingdom, 753–510 B.C.

.02 Period of Roman Republic, 510–31 B.C.

For specific periods, see 937.03–937.05

> 937.03–937.05 Specific periods under the Republic

Class comprehensive works in 937.02

.03 Period of unification of Italy, 510–264 B.C.

.04 Period of Punic Wars, 264–146 B.C.

.05 Period of civil strife, 146–31 B.C.

.06 Period of Roman Empire, 31 B.C.–476 A.D.

For specific periods, see 937.07–937.09

> 937.07–937.09 Specific periods under the Empire

Class comprehensive works in 937.06

.07 Early and middle periods, 31 B.C.–284 A.D.

.08 Period of absolutism, 284–395

.09 Final period, 395–476

.9 *Sardinia to 453 and Corsica to 453

Subdivisions are added for Sardinia and Corsica together; for Sardinia alone

(Option: Class in 945.9012)

.901–.908 Early history to 395

Add to base number 937.90 the numbers following 937.0 in 937.01–937.08, e.g., Sardinia during period of Roman Empire 937.906

.909 Final period of Roman Empire, 395–453

453–476 relocated to 945.901

.99 *Corsica

(Option: Class in 945.99012)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

- .990 1–.990 8 Early history to 395
 Add to base number 937.990 the numbers following 937.0 in
 937.01–937.08, e.g., Corsica during period of Roman Empire
 937.9906
- .990 9 Final period of Roman Empire, 395–453
 453–476 relocated to 944.9901

938 *Greece to 323

Class here the Hellenistic World; the eastern Mediterranean region; southern Europe

(Option: Class eastern Mediterranean region in 909.098224; class southern Europe in 940.11; class Greece in 949.5012)

- .01 Early history to 775 B.C.
- .02 775–500 B.C.
- .03 Persian Wars, 500–479 B.C.
- .04 Period of Athenian supremacy, 479–431 B.C.
- .05 Period of Peloponnesian War, 431–404 B.C.
- .06 Period of Spartan and Theban supremacy, 404–362 B.C.
- .07 Period of Macedonian supremacy, 362–323 B.C.
- .08 Hellenistic period, 323–146 B.C.
- .09 Roman era, 146 B.C.–323 A.D.

939 *Other parts of ancient world

.1 *Aegean Islands to 323

(Option: Class in 949.58012)

- .101–.109 Historical periods
 Add to base number 939.10 the numbers following 938.0 in
 938.01–938.09, e.g., Hellenistic period 939.108
- .18 *Crete to 323

(Option: Class in 949.59012)

.2 †Diocese of Asia (Dioecesis Asiana)

Class here western Asia Minor to 640, comprehensive works on Asia Minor to 640

For eastern Asia Minor to 640, see 939.3

(Option: Class in 956.1012)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .3 †Eastern Asia Minor to 640 and Cyprus to 640**
 (Option: Class eastern Asia Minor in 956.1012)
- .37 †Cyprus to 640
 (Option: Class in 956.93012)
- .4 *Middle East to 640**
 Class a specific part of Middle East not provided for here with the part, e.g.,
 Egypt 932, Palestine 933
 (Option: Class in 956.012)
- .401 Early history to ca. 1900 B.C.
- .402 Period of Babylonian and Assyrian Empires, ca. 1900–539 B.C.
- .403 Period of Persian Empire, 539–332 B.C.
- .404 Hellenistic period, 332–30 B.C.
- .405 Roman period, 30 B.C.–ca. 640 A.D.
- .43 *Syria to 640
 (Option: Class in 956.9101)
- .431 *Hatay Province of modern Turkey to 640
 Including Antioch
 (Option: Class in 956.48)
- .44 *Phoenicia
 Class here Lebanon to 640
 (Option: Class in 956.9202)
- .46 Moab and Edom
- .462 *Moab
 (Option: Class in 956.95601)
- .464 *Edom
 (Option: Class in 956.94901)
- [.47] Arabia Deserta
 Upper Mesopotamian portion of Arabia Deserta to 637 relocated to 935.4;
 Lower Mesopotamian portion of Arabia Deserta to 637 relocated to 935.5;
 Arabia Deserta to 622 relocated to 939.49; Arabia Deserta, 622–637
 relocated to 953.02

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .48 *Arabia Petraea
 Including Sinai Peninsula to 622; Petra
 (Option: Class Arabia Petraea in 953.01; class Sinai Peninsula in 953.101;
 class Petra in 956.957701)
- .49 *Arabian Peninsula to 622
 Including Bahrain to 622, Kuwait to 622, Oman to 622, Persian Gulf States
 to 622, Qatar to 622, Saudi Arabia to 622, United Arab Emirates to 622,
 Yemen to 622
 Class here Arabia Deserta to 622 [*formerly* 939.47]; Arabia Felix
 For Upper Mesopotamian portion of Arabia Deserta to 637, see 935.4;
 for Lower Mesopotamian portion of Arabia Deserta to 637, see 935.5;
 for Arabia Petraea, see 939.48
 (Option: Class Arabia Felix, Arabia to 622 in 953.01; class Yemen to 622 in
 953.301; class Oman to 622 in 953.53; class United Arab Emirates to 622
 in 953.57; class Persian Gulf States to 622 in 953.6; class Qatar to 622 in
 953.63; class Bahrain to 622 in 953.65; class Kuwait to 622 in 953.67; class
 Saudi Arabia to 622 in 953.801)
- .5 †**Black Sea region to 640 and Caucasus to 640**
 Subdivisions are added for Black Sea region to 640 and Caucasus to 640
 together, for Black Sea region to 640 alone
 (Option: Class Black Sea region to 640 in 909.098229)
- .51 †Scythia
 Class here Black Sea area of Romania to 640
 (Option: Class in 949.83)
- .52 †Sarmatia
 Class here Ukraine to 640
 (Option: Class in 947.7)
- .53 †Caucasus
 (Option: Class in 947.5)
- .534 †Albania
 (Option: Class in 947.54)
- .536 †Iberia
 Class here Georgia to 640
 (Option: Class in 947.58)
- .538 †Colchis
 (Option: Class in 947.58)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .55 †Armenia
 Class here Armenia region to 640
 (Option: Class modern country of Armenia in 947.56; class Armenia region to 640, Armenia [ancient kingdom] in 956.62012)
- .6 †Central Asia to ca. 640
 Including Afghanistan to ca. 640, Māzandarān province of Iran to 637, Tajikistan to ca. 640, Turkmenistan to ca. 640, Uzbekistan to ca. 640; Ariana, Bactria, Hyrcania, Margiana, Parthia, Sogdiana
For Kyrgyzstan to ca. 640, see 958.43; for Kazakhstan to ca. 640, see 958.45
 (Option: Class Māzandarān province of Iran to 637, Hyrcania in 955.23; class Central Asia to ca. 640 in 958; class Afghanistan to ca. 640, Ariana, Bactria, Parthia in 958.101; class Turkmenistan to ca. 640, Margiana in 958.507; class Tajikistan to ca. 640 in 958.607; class Uzbekistan to ca. 640, Sogdiana in 958.707)
- .7 *North Africa to ca. 640
For Egypt to 640, see 932
 (Option: Class in 961.01)
- .701 Early history to ca. 800 B.C.
- .702 Carthaginian period, ca. 800–146 B.C.
- .703 Roman period, 146 B.C.–429 A.D.
 Vandal period, 429–534 relocated to 939.704; Byzantine period, 534–ca. 640 relocated to 939.705
- .704 Vandal period, 429–534 [*formerly* 939.703]
- .705 Byzantine period, 534–ca. 640 [*formerly* 939.703]
- .71 *Mauretania
 (Option: Class in 965.01)
- .710 1 Early history to ca. 800 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 965.011)
- .710 2 Carthaginian period, ca. 800–146 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 965.012)
- .710 3 Period of Kingdom of Mauretania, 146 B.C.–42 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 965.013)
- .710 4 Roman period, 42–ca. 435 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 965.014)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .710 5 Vandal period, ca. 435–534
 (Option: Class in 965.015)
- .710 6 Byzantine period, 534–647
 (Option: Class in 965.016)
- .712 *Mauretania Tingitana
 Class here Morocco to 647
 (Option: Class in 964.01)
- .712 01 Early history to ca. 800 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 964.011)
- .712 02 Carthaginian period, ca. 800–146 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 964.012)
- .712 03 Period of Kingdom of Mauretania, 146–25 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 964.013)
- .712 04 Roman period, 25 B.C.–429 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 964.014)
- .712 05 Vandal period, 429–534
 (Option: Class 964.015)
- .712 06 Byzantine period, 534–647
 (Option: Class in 964.016)
- .714 *Mauretania Caesariensis
 Class here Algeria to 647
 (Option: Class in 965.01)
- .714 01–.714 06 Historical periods of Mauretania Caesariensis
 Add to base number 939.7140 the numbers following 939.710 in
 939.7101–939.7106, e.g., Roman period 939.71404
- .72 *Numidia
 Class here northeastern provinces of Algeria to 647
 (Option: Class in 965.501)
- .720 1 Early history to ca. 800 B.C.
 (Option: Class 965.5011)
- .720 2 Carthaginian period, ca. 800–146 B.C.
 (Option: Class 965.5012)

- .720 3 Period of Kingdom of Numidia, 146–46 B.C.
 (Option: Class 965.5013)
- .720 4 Roman period, 46 B.C.–439 A.D.
 (Option: Class 965.5014)
- .720 5 Vandal period, 439–534
 (Option: Class 965.5015)
- .720 6 Byzantine period, 534–647
 (Option: Class 965.5016)
- .73 *Carthage
 Class here Tunisia to 647
 (Option: Class in 961.101)
- .730 1 Early history to ca. 800 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 961.1011)
- .730 2 Carthaginian period, ca. 800–146 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 961.1012)
- .730 3 Roman period, 146 B.C.–439 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 961.1013)
- .730 4 Vandal period, 439–534
 (Option: Class in 961.1014)
- .730 5 Byzantine period, 534–647
 (Option: Class in 961.1015)
- .74 *Tripolis
 (Option: Class in 961.201)
- .740 1 Early history to ca. 800 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 961.2011)
- .740 2 Carthaginian period, ca. 800–146 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 961.2012)
- .740 3 Roman period, 146 B.C.–439 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 961.2013)
- .740 4 Vandal period, 439–534
 (Option: Class in 961.2014)
- .740 5 Byzantine period, 534–644
 (Option: Class in 961.2015)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

- .75 *Cyrenaica
 (Option: Class in 961.201)
- .750 1 Early history to ca. 940 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 961.201)
- .750 2 Egyptian period, ca. 940–ca. 630 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 961.201)
- .750 3 Greek period, ca. 630–ca. 500 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 961.201)
- .750 4 Persian period, ca. 500–323 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 961.201)
- .750 5 Hellenistic period, 323–96 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 961.201)
- .750 6 Roman period, 96 B.C.–330 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 961.201)
- .750 7 Byzantine period, 330–642
 (Option: Class in 961.201)
- .76 *Marmarica to 642
 (Option: Class in 961.201)
- .760 1 Early history to ca. 940 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 961.201)
- .760 2 Egyptian period, ca. 940–ca. 630 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 961.201)
- .760 3 Greek period, ca. 630–ca. 500 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 961.201)
- .760 4 Persian period, ca. 500–323 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 961.201)
- .760 5 Hellenistic period, 323–96 B.C.
 (Option: Class in 961.201)
- .760 6 Roman period, 96 B.C.–330 A.D.
 (Option: Class in 961.201)
- .760 7 Byzantine period, 330–642
 (Option: Class in 961.201)

- .77 *Gaetulia
 Class here Sahara provinces of Algeria to 647
 (Option: Class in 965.701)
- .78 *Nubia
 Class here northern states of Sudan to 500, Ethiopia (a part of what is now modern Sudan, not modern Ethiopia), Kush
 Class comprehensive works on the Sudan to 500 in 962.401
 (Option: Class in 962.501)
- .8 †**Southeastern Europe to ca. 640**
 See also 939.5 for Black Sea region to 640
 (Option: Class Thrace to 323 in 949.57012; class southeastern Europe to ca. 640 in 949.601; class Turkey in Europe [Eastern Thrace] to 323 in 949.61012; class İstanbul Province to 323, Constantinople to 323 in 949.618012; class Albania to 640 in 949.65012; class former Yugoslavia to ca. 640, Illyria, Illyricum in 949.7012; class Serbia to ca. 640 in 949.71011; class Croatia to ca. 640 in 949.72012; class Slovenia to ca. 640 in 949.73012; class Bosnia and Hercegovina to ca. 640 in 949.742012; class Montenegro to ca. 640 in 949.745012; class Macedonia to ca. 640 in 949.76012; class Bulgaria to ca. 640, Moesia in 949.9012)
 Hungary to ca. 640, Pannonia relocated to 936.39
- .88 Dacia
 Number built according to instructions under 939.8
 Including Moldova to ca. 640 [*formerly* 947.6]
 Class here Romania to ca. 640
 (Option: Class Moldova to ca. 640 in 947.6; class Romania to ca. 640, Dacia in 949.8012)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

>

940–990 History of specific continents, countries, localities in modern world; extraterrestrial worlds

Class here area studies; comprehensive works on ancient and modern history of specific continents, countries, localities

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by ‡ as follows:

- 08 Groups of people
 - Do not use for enemy sympathizers, pacifists; class in 1
- [086914] Displaced persons
 - Relocated to 1
- 09 History, geographic treatment, biography
 - Do not use for participation of specific groups of countries; class in 3
- [094–099] Specific continents, countries, localities
 - Do not use for specific continents; class in 3. Do not use for specific countries and localities; class in 34–39
- 1 Social, political, economic history
 - Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading Including displaced persons [*formerly* 086914], consequences, e.g., movement of people; causes, results, efforts to preserve or restore peace
 - Class general diplomatic history in 2; class prisoner-of-war camps in 7. Class results in and effects on a specific country with the history of the country, e.g., effect of Vietnamese War on United States 973.923 (*not* 959.70431)
- 2 Diplomatic history
 - Class diplomatic causes, efforts to preserve or restore peace, diplomatic results in 1
- 3 Participation of specific groups of countries and of specific countries, localities
 - Class military participation of specific groups of countries, of specific countries, localities in 409. Class participation in a specific activity with the activity, e.g., efforts to preserve or restore peace 1
- 34–39 Participation of specific countries and localities
 - Add to 3 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., participation by France 344
- 4 Military operations and units
 - Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 - Class here military history
 - Class units engaged in a specific type of service with the service, e.g., medical units 7
 - For an aspect of military history not provided for here, see the aspect, e.g., prisoner-of-war camps 7*
- 42 Land operations
- 45 Naval operations
- 48 Air operations

(continued)

> **940–990 History of specific continents, countries, localities in modern world; extraterrestrial worlds (continued)**

- 6 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
Including decorations and awards, rolls of honor, cemeteries, monuments
- 7 Prisoners of war, medical and social services
Including prisoner-of-war camps
- 8 Other military topics
Including deserters; military life and customs; military personnel missing in action; unconventional warfare, propaganda

Class comprehensive works in 909

For general history of ancient world, see 930

See Manual at 930–990: Wars

940 History of Europe

SUMMARY

- 940.01–.09 **Standard subdivisions**
 - .1 Early history to 1453
 - .2 1453–
 - .3 World War I, 1914–1918
 - .4 Military history of World War I
 - .5 1918–
- 941 **British Isles**
 - .01–.08 [Historical periods]
 - .1 Scotland
 - .2 Northeastern Scotland
 - .3 Southeastern Scotland
 - .4 Southwestern Scotland
 - .5 Ireland
 - .6 Northern Ireland; Donegal, Monaghan, Cavan counties of Republic of Ireland
 - .7 Republic of Ireland
 - .8 Leinster
 - .9 Munster
- 942 **England and Wales**
 - .01–.08 Historical periods of England and Wales together, of England alone
- 943 **Germany and neighboring central European countries**
 - .000 1–.000 9 **Standard subdivisions of central Europe**
 - .001–.009 **Standard subdivisions of Germany**
 - .01–.08 **Historical periods of Germany**
 - .1 Northeastern Germany
 - .2 Saxony and Thuringia
 - .6 Austria and Liechtenstein
 - .7 Czech Republic and Slovakia
 - .8 Poland
 - .9 Hungary

- 944 **France and Monaco**
 .01–.08 Historical periods of France and Monaco together, of France alone
 .9 Provence-Côte d’Azur, Monaco, Corsica
- 945 **Italy, San Marino, Vatican City, Malta**
 .01–.09 Historical periods of Italy, San Marino, Vatican City, Malta together; of Italy alone
 .1 Northwestern Italy
 .2 Lombardy (Lombardia) region
 .3 Northeastern Italy
 .4 Emilia-Romagna region and San Marino
 .5 Tuscany (Toscana) region
 .6 Central Italy and Vatican City
 .7 Southern Italy
 .8 Sicily and adjacent islands
 .9 Sardinia
- 946 **Spain, Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal**
 .000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of Spain, Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal
 .001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Spain
 .01–.08 Historical periods of Spain
 .7 Eastern Spain and Andorra
 .8 Andalusia autonomous community and Gibraltar
 .9 Portugal
- 947 **Russia and neighboring east European countries**
 .000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of eastern Europe
 .001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Russia
 .01–.08 Historical periods of Russia
 .5 Caucasus
 .6 Moldova
 .7 Ukraine
 .8 Belarus
 .9 Lithuania, Latvia, Estonia
- 948 **Scandinavia**
 .01–.07 Historical periods of northern Europe, of Scandinavia
 .1 Norway
 .2 Southeastern Norway (Østlandet)
 .3 Southwestern Norway (Sørlandet and Vestlandet)
 .4 Central and northern Norway (Trøndelag and Nord-Norge)
 .5 Sweden
 .6 Southern Sweden (Götaland)
 .7 Central Sweden (Svealand)
 .8 Northern Sweden (Norrland)
 .9 Denmark and Finland
- 949 **Other parts of Europe**
 .1 Northwestern islands
 .2 Netherlands
 .3 Belgium and Luxembourg
 .4 Switzerland
 .5 Greece
 .6 Balkan Peninsula
 .7 Serbia, Croatia, Slovenia, Bosnia and Hercegovina, Montenegro, Macedonia
 .8 Romania
 .9 Bulgaria
- .01–.09 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 930–990

.1 Early history to 1453

Class here Middle Ages, 476–1453

For ancient history to ca. 499, see 936

(.11) Early history to ca. 499

(Optional number; prefer 936)

(.111) Early history to ca. 1000 B.C.

(Optional number; prefer 936.01)

(.112) Ca. 1000–ca. 200 B.C.

(Optional number; prefer 936.02)

(.113) Ca. 200 B.C.–ca. 499 A.D.

(Optional number; prefer 936.03)

.12 Ca. 500–799

Class here Early Middle Ages (Dark Ages), 476–999

For 800–899, see 940.142; for 900–999, see 940.144

.14 Age of feudalism, 800–1099

.142 800–899

.144 900–999

.146 1000–1099

For period of First Crusade, see 940.18

.17 1100–1453

For period of Crusades, 1100–1299, see 940.18; for 1300–1453, see 940.19

.18 Period of Crusades, 1100–1299

Including period of First Crusade, 1096–1099

Class here High Middle Ages, 1000–1299

Class comprehensive works on Crusades in 909.07. Class comprehensive works on a specific Crusade with the history of the country or region in which most of the fighting took place, e.g., First Crusade 956.014

For 1000–1099, see 940.146

.182 1100–1199

.184 1200–1299

.19 1300–1453

Class here Late Middle Ages

.192 1300–1399

Including period of Black Death

- .193 1400–1453
- .2 1453–**
For World War I, see 940.3; for 1918 to present, see 940.5
- .21 Renaissance period, 1453–1517
 Class here 15th century
For 1400–1453, see 940.193
See also 945.05 for Renaissance period in Italy
- .22 1517–1789
For Reformation period, 1517–1648, see 940.23; for 1648–1789, see 940.25
- .23 Reformation period, 1517–1648
For Thirty Years' War, see 940.24
- .232 1517–1618
- .24 ‡Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648
- .25 1648–1789
- .252 1648–1715
 Class here 17th century
For 1600–1648, see 940.23
- .252 3 1648–1688
- .252 5 1688–1701
 Class here War of the League of Augsburg (War of the Grand Alliance), 1688–1697
For North American aspects of War of the League of Augsburg, see 973.25
- .252 6 1701–1715
 Class here War of the Spanish Succession, 1701–1714
For North American aspects of War of the Spanish Succession, see 973.25
- .253 1715–1789
 Class here 18th century
For 1700–1715, see 940.252; for 1789–1799, see 940.27
- .253 1 1715–1740

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

- .253 2 War of the Austrian Succession, 1740–1748
 Class Silesian Wars in 943.054
 For North American aspects of War of the Austrian Succession,
 see 973.26
- .253 3 1748–1756
- .253 4 Seven Years' War, 1756–1763
 For North American aspects of Seven Years' War, see 973.26
- .253 5 1763–1789
- .27 ‡Period of French Revolution and Napoleon I, 1789–1815
 Class here Napoleonic Wars in specific European countries, e.g., war in
 Spain (Peninsular War), 1807–1814
- .271 Social, political, economic history
 Number built according to instructions under 940–990
- .271 4 Congress of Vienna
 Class results in and effects on a specific country with the history of
 the country, e.g., effect on France 944.061
- .28 1815–1914
 Class here comprehensive works on 19th–20th centuries
 For comprehensive works on 20th century, see 940.5
- .282 1815–1829
- .283 1830–1848
 For revolutions of 1848, see 940.284
- .284 Revolutions of 1848
- .285 1849–1859
- .286 1860–1869
- .287 1870–1899
- .288 1900–1914
- .3 World War I, 1914–1918**
 For military history, see 940.4
- .308 Groups of people
 Do not use for noncombatants, pacifists, enemy sympathizers; class in
 940.316

- .332 Allies and associated powers
- .334 Central Powers
- .335 Neutrals
- .34–.39 Participation of specific countries and localities
- Class here mobilization in specific countries and localities
- Add to base number 940.3 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., participation of Great Britain 940.341
- Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., efforts by a specific country to preserve or restore peace 940.312

.4 Military history of World War I

SUMMARY

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| 940.400 1–.400 9 | Standard subdivisions |
| .401–.409 | [General aspects] |
| .41 | Operations and units |
| .42 | Land campaigns and battles of 1914–1916 |
| .43 | Land campaigns and battles of 1917–1918 |
| .44 | Air operations |
| .45 | Naval operations |
| .46–.48 | Celebrations, commemorations, memorials; prisoners of war; medical and social services; other military topics |
- .400 1–.400 8 Standard subdivisions
- .400 9 History, geographic treatment, biography
- Do not use for military campaigns; class in 940.41–940.45
- .400 92 Biography
- Do not use for personal narratives; class in 940.481–940.482
- [.400 94–.400 99] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
- Do not use for military participation of specific countries; class in 940.4094–940.4099. Do not use for land operations; class in 940.41
- .401 Strategy
- .401 2 Allies and associated powers
- .401 3 Central Powers
- .402 Mobilization
- [.402 094–.402 099] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
- Do not use; class in 940.34–940.39
- .403 Ethnic minorities as troops
- .405 Repressive measures and atrocities
- Class internment camps in 940.317; class Armenian massacres, 1915–1916, in 956.620154

.409 Military participation of specific countries

Add to base number 940.409 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., military participation of Germany 940.40943

.41 Operations and units

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here land operations

For land campaigns and battles of 1914–1916, see 940.42; for land campaigns and battles of 1917–1918, see 940.43; for air operations, see 940.44; for naval operations, see 940.45

[.410 94–.410 99] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 940.449

> 940.412–940.413 Military units and their operations

Class here organization, history, rosters, service records

Class comprehensive works in 940.41. Class units engaged in a special service with the service, e.g., ambulance companies 940.4753

For operations in Europe, see 940.414; for operations in Asia, see 940.415; for operations in Africa, see 940.416; for rolls of honor and lists of dead, see 940.467

.412 Military units of Allies and associated powers

[.412 094–.412 099] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 940.4124–940.4129

.412 4–.412 9 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Add to base number 940.412 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., French units 940.41244

.413 Military units of Central Powers

[.413 094–.413 099] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Do not use; class in 940.4134–940.4139

.413 4–.413 9 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Add to base number 940.413 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., Austrian units 940.413436

.414 Operations in Europe

.414 4 Western front

Class here German western front, French front

.414 5 Austro-Italian front

.414 7 Eastern front

Class here German eastern front, Russian front

- .415 Operations in Asia
- .416 Operations in Africa
- .42 Land campaigns and battles of 1914–1916
- .421 1914, western front
- .422 1914, eastern front
- .423 1914, other areas
- .424 1915, western and Austro-Italian fronts
- .425 1915, eastern front
- .426 1915, other areas
Including Gallipoli Campaign
- .427 1916, European fronts
- .427 2 Western and Austro-Italian fronts
- .427 5 Eastern front
- .429 1916, other areas
- .429 1 Asia Minor
- .43 Land campaigns and battles of 1917–1918
- .431 1917, western and Austro-Italian fronts
- .432 1917, eastern front
- .433 1917, other areas
- .434 1918, western and Austro-Italian fronts
Including final German offensives
Class final allied offensives in 940.435–940.436
-
- > 940.435–940.436 Final allied offensives
Class comprehensive works in 940.434
- .435 Allied offensives of July 18–September 24, 1918
- .436 Allied offensives of September 25–November 11, 1918
- .437 1918, eastern front
- .438 1918, other areas
- .439 Armistice, November 11, 1918
- .44 Air operations
Including anti-aircraft defenses
Class here combined air and naval operations
For naval operations, see 940.45

- [.440 94--440 99] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.449
- .442 Air raids
 Class specific events by year in 940.444–940.448
- .443 Air bases
-
- > 940.444–940.448 Events by year
 Class comprehensive works in 940.44
- .444 Events of 1914
- .445 Events of 1915
- .446 Events of 1916
- .447 Events of 1917
- .448 Events of 1918
- .449 Operations of specific countries
 Class here aircraft, crews, units
 Add to base number 940.449 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., air
 operations of Germany 940.44943
 Class events by year regardless of country in 940.444–940.448
- .45 Naval operations
- [.450 94--450 99] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.459
- .451 Submarine warfare
- .451 2 German use
 Class events by year in 940.4514
- .451 3 Allied use
 Class events by year in 940.4514
- [.451 309 4--451 309 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.45134–940.45139
- .451 34--451 39 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Add to base number 940.4513 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 United States use of submarines 940.451373
- .451 4 Specific events
- .451 6 Antisubmarine warfare
 Class events by year in 940.4514

.452 Blockades and blockade running
 Class events by year in 940.454–940.458

.453 Naval bases

> 940.454–940.458 Events by year

Class events in submarine warfare by year in 940.4514; class comprehensive works in 940.45

.454 Events of 1914

.455 Events of 1915

.456 Events of 1916

.457 Events of 1917

.458 Events of 1918

.459 Naval operations of specific countries

Class here ships, crews, units

Add to base number 940.459 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., naval operations of Italy 940.45945

Class events by year regardless of country in 940.454–940.458

.46–.48 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials; prisoners of war; medical and social services; other military topics

Add to base number 940.4 the numbers following 940.54 in 940.546–940.548, e.g., prisoners of war 940.472

.5 1918–

SUMMARY

940.51	1918–1929
.52	1930–1939
.53	World War II, 1939–1945
.54	Military history of World War II
.55	1945–1999
.56	2000–

.51 1918–1929

.52 1930–1939

Class Holocaust in 940.5318

.53 World War II, 1939–1945

Class here Sino-Japanese Conflict, 1937–1945

For military history, see 940.54; for Sino-Japanese Conflict during 1937–1941, see 951.042

SUMMARY

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| 940.530 1–.530 9 | Standard subdivisions |
| .531 | Social, political, economic history; Holocaust |
| .532 | Diplomatic history |
| .533 | Participation of specific groups of countries |
| .534–.539 | Participation of specific countries and localities |
- .530 8 Groups of people
- Do not use for noncombatants, pacifists, enemy sympathizers; class in 940.5316
- See also 940.5318 for Holocaust*
- [.530 869 14] Displaced persons
- Relocated to 940.53145
- .530 9 History, geographic treatment, biography
- Do not use for participation of specific groups of countries; class in 940.533
- [.530 94–.530 99] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
- Do not use; class in 940.534–940.539
- .531 Social, political, economic history; Holocaust
- For diplomatic history, see 940.532*

SUMMARY

- | | |
|-----------|---|
| 940.531 1 | Causes |
| .531 2 | Efforts to preserve or restore peace |
| .531 4 | Political, diplomatic, economic results |
| .531 6 | Noncombatants, pacifists, enemy sympathizers |
| .531 7 | Concentration and related camps |
| .531 8 | Holocaust |
- .531 1 Causes
- .531 12 Political and diplomatic causes
- .531 13 Economic causes
- .531 14 Social and psychological causes
- .531 2 Efforts to preserve or restore peace
- .531 4 Political, diplomatic, economic results
- Class here consequences
- Class results in and effects on a specific country with the history of the country, e.g., on Norway 948.1043
- .531 41 Conferences and treaties
- For consequences of conferences and treaties, see 940.53142*

- .531 42 Consequences of conferences and treaties
 For movement of people, see 940.53145
- .531 422 Reparations
- .531 424 Territorial questions
- .531 425 Establishment of new nations
- .531 426 Establishment of mandates
- .531 44 Reconstruction
- .531 45 Movement of people
 Class here displaced persons [*formerly 940.53086914*]; forced
 repatriation, population transfers
 For emigration of Jews in relation to Holocaust, see
 940.5318142
- .531 6 Noncombatants, pacifists, enemy sympathizers
- .531 61 Noncombatants
 Including children
- .531 62 Pacifists
- .531 63 Enemy sympathizers
- .531 7 Concentration and related camps
 Class here internment camps
 Class camps as a part of the Holocaust in 940.53185; class
 prisoner-of-war camps in 940.5472
- .531 709 History, geographic treatment, biography
 Use area notation to indicate country maintaining the camps,
 e.g., internment camps maintained by the United States
 940.53170973
 For camps by location, see 940.53174–940.53179
- .531 709 4 Camps maintained by countries in Europe
 Do not use for camps maintained by Axis Powers; class in
 940.53185
- .531 74–.531 79 Camps by location
 Add to base number 940.5317 notation 4–9 from Table 2,
 e.g., Manzanar internment camp for Japanese-Americans
 940.531779487; however, for specific European concentration
 camps maintained by Axis Powers, see 940.531853–940.531859
 Class extermination camps in 940.53185
- .531 8 Holocaust
 Class here Holocaust, 1933–1945; Holocaust with respect to Jews

- [.531 808 992 4] Holocaust with respect to Jews
Do not use; class in 940.5318
- .531 809 2 Biography
Class here life of persons in a specific ghetto or extermination camp
- .531 81 General topics of Holocaust
- [.531 810 1–.531 810 9] Standard subdivisions
Do not use; class in 940.531801–940.531809
- .531 811 Causes
- .531 813 Economic history
- .531 813 2 Economic actions against businesses and property
Class here boycott, confiscation
Class indemnification and restitution of confiscated and stolen property in 940.5318144
- .531 813 4 Forced labor
Class general works on forced labor during World War II in 940.5405
- .531 814 Consequences
Class long-term welfare services to Holocaust survivors and their descendants in 362.87
For war crime trials, see 341.690268
- .531 814 2 Emigration of Jews
Class here emigration to Palestine
For emigration of Jews to Palestine as part of the history of Israel, see 956.9404
- .531 814 4 Indemnification and restitution of confiscated and stolen property
Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
Class comprehensive works on confiscated and stolen property in 940.5318132
See also 341.67 for law of enemy aliens and their property, war victims
- .531 818 Holocaust denial
Class here denial of extermination camps
- .531 83 Resistance movements and rescue operations

- .531 832 Resistance movements
 Class resistance movements associated with a specific ghetto or extermination camp in 940.53185; class general works on resistance movements during World War II in 940.5336
- .531 835 Rescue operations
 Class here Righteous Gentiles
- .531 84 Specific events
 Class a specific event associated with a specific ghetto or extermination camp in 940.53185
- .531 842 Events of 1933–1938
 Class here Nuremberg laws, Kristallnacht
- .531 844 Events of 1939–1945
 Class here Wannsee-Konferenz
- .531 844 5 Babi Yar Massacre
- .531 846 Events of 1945
 Class here liberation of extermination camps
- .531 85 Ghettos and extermination camps maintained by Axis Powers
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
 Class here European concentration camps maintained by Axis Powers
 Class denial of extermination camps in 940.531818; class Wannsee-Konferenz in 940.531844; class comprehensive works on concentration camps in 940.5317
- [.531 850 92] Biography
 Do not use; class in 940.5318092
- [.531 850 943–.531 850 949] Geographic treatment
 Do not use; class in 940.531853–940.531859
- .531 853–.531 859 Specific ghettos and extermination camps
 Class here specific European concentration camps maintained by Axis Powers
 Add to base number 940.53185 the numbers following —4 in notation 43–49 from Table 2, e.g., Warsaw Ghetto 940.531853841, Auschwitz 940.531853858; however, do not add notation 092 from Table 1 for biography; class in 940.5318092
 Subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .531 86 Commemorations and memorials
 Class commemorations and memorials associated with a specific ghetto or extermination camp in 940.53185

- .531 862 Commemorations
 Class here remembrance days
- .531 864 Memorials
 Class museums that are also memorials in 940.5318074
- .531 87 Welfare services to Holocaust victims
 Services provided during and immediately after the Holocaust
 Class long-term welfare services to Holocaust survivors and their
 descendants in 362.87; class rescue operations in 940.531835
- .532 Diplomatic history
 *For diplomatic causes, see 940.53112; for efforts to preserve or
 restore peace, see 940.5312; for diplomatic results, see 940.5314*
- .532 2 Allies
- [.532 209 4–.532 209 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.53224–940.53229
- .532 24–.532 29 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Add to base number 940.5322 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 diplomatic history of Great Britain 940.532241
- .532 4 Axis Powers
- [.532 409 4–.532 409 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.53244–940.53249
- .532 44–.532 49 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Add to base number 940.5324 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 diplomatic history of Japan 940.532452
- .532 5 Neutrals
 Add to base number 940.5325 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 diplomatic history of Switzerland 940.5325494
- [.532 509 4–.532 509 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.53254–940.53259
- .532 54–.532 59 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Add to base number 940.5325 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 diplomatic history of Switzerland 940.5325494
- .533 Participation of specific groups of countries
 Class here national groups, anti-Axis and pro-Axis national groups,
 mobilization
 Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., diplomatic history among
 Axis Powers 940.5324
 For participation of specific countries, see 940.534–940.539

- .533 2 Allies
- .533 4 Axis Powers
- .533 5 Neutrals
- .533 6 Occupied countries
 Class here governments-in-exile; resistance, underground movements
 Class resistance movements as part of Holocaust in 940.531832
For countries occupied by Axis Powers, see 940.5337; for countries occupied by Allies, see 940.5338
- .533 7 Countries occupied by Axis Powers
- .533 8 Countries occupied by Allies
- .534--.539 Participation of specific countries and localities
 Add to base number 940.53 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., participation of Great Britain 940.5341
 Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., efforts by a specific country to preserve or restore peace 940.5312
- .54 Military history of World War II

SUMMARY

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| 940.540 01--.540 09 | Standard subdivisions |
| .540 1--.540 9 | [General aspects] |
| .541 | Operations and units |
| .542 | Campaigns and battles by theater |
| .544 | Air operations |
| .545 | Naval operations |
| .546 | Celebrations, commemorations, memorials |
| .547 | Prisoners of war; medical and social services |
| .548 | Other military topics |
| .540 01--.540 08 | Standard subdivisions |
| .540 09 | History, geographic treatment, biography
Do not use for military campaigns; class in 940.541–940.545 |
| .540 092 | Biography
Do not use for personal narratives; class in 940.5481–940.5482 |
| [.540 094--.540 099] | Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
Do not use for military participation of specific countries; class in 940.54094–940.54099. Do not use for land operations; class in 940.541 |
| .540 1 | Strategy |
| .540 12 | Allies |
| .540 13 | Axis Powers |
| .540 2 | Mobilization |

- [.540 209 4–.540 209 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.534–940.539
- .540 3 African Americans and American native peoples as troops
- .540 4 Ethnic minorities as troops
 For African Americans and American native peoples as troops, see
 940.5403
- .540 5 Repressive measures and atrocities
 Including forced labor
 Class concentration and related camps in 940.5317; class Holocaust in
 940.5318; class forced labor as part of Holocaust in 940.5318134
- .540 9 Military participation of specific countries
 Add to base number 940.5409 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 military participation of Germany 940.540943
- .541 Operations and units
 For air operations, see 940.544; for naval operations, see 940.545
- [.541 094–.541 099] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use for operations of specific countries; class in
 940.5412–940.5413. Do not use for specific campaigns and
 battles by theater; class in 940.542
-
- > 940.541 2–940.541 3 Military units and their operations
 Class here organization, history, rosters, service records; comprehensive works
 on units whose operations were limited to a specific theater
 Class comprehensive works in 940.541. Class units engaged in a special service
 with the service, e.g., ambulance companies 940.54753
 For units engaged in a specific campaign or battle not equal to a theater,
 see 940.542; for rolls of honor and lists of dead, see 940.5467
- .541 2 Military units of Allies
- [.541 209 4–.541 209 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.54124–940.54129
- .541 24–.541 29 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Add to base number 940.5412 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 French units 940.541244
- .541 3 Military units of Axis Powers
- [.541 309 4–.541 309 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.54134–940.54139

- .541 34-.541 39 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Add to base number 940.5413 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 Japanese units 940.541352
- .542 Campaigns and battles by theater
- .542 1 European theater
 Add to base number 940.5421 the numbers following —4 in notation
 41-49 from Table 2, e.g., battles in France 940.54214
- .542 3 African theater
 Add to base number 940.5423 the numbers following —6 in notation
 61-69 from Table 2, e.g., battles in North Africa 940.54231
- .542 4 Middle East theater
 Class African countries of the Middle East in 940.5423
- .542 5 East and South Asian theaters
 Standard subdivisions are added for East and South Asian theaters
 together, for East Asian theater alone
- .542 51-.542 52 Battles in China, Korea, Japan, adjacent areas
 Add to base number 940.5425 the numbers following —5 in
 notation 51-52 from Table 2, e.g., battles in China 940.54251
 Class Sino-Japanese Conflict during 1937-1941 in 951.042
- .542 59 Southeast Asian theater
 Add to base number 940.54259 the numbers following —59
 in notation 591-599 from Table 2, e.g., battles in Philippines
 940.542599
 For battles in western New Guinea, see 940.542651
- .542 6 Pacific Ocean theater
 Add to base number 940.5426 the numbers following —9 in notation
 93-96 from Table 2, e.g., battles in western New Guinea 940.542651,
 battle of Midway 940.5426699, attack on Pearl Harbor 940.5426693
 For Southeast Asian theater, see 940.54259
 See also 940.54252 for Japan; also 940.542599 for Philippines
- .542 8 American theater
- .542 9 Other areas
- .542 93 Atlantic Ocean
 Class here battle of the Atlantic, 1939-1945
- .544 Air operations
 Including antiaircraft defenses
 Class here combined air and naval operations
 For naval operations, see 940.545

- [.544 094–.544 099] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use for campaigns and battles by theater; class in 940.542. Do not use for operations of specific countries; class in 940.5449
- .544 2 Campaigns and battles
- .544 209 4–.544 209 9 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Class here comprehensive works on campaigns and battles by a specific country
 Do not use for a specific campaign or battle; class in 940.542 e.g., battle of Britain 940.54211, attack on Pearl Harbor 940.5426693
- .544 3 Air bases
- [.544 309 4–.544 309 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.54434–940.54439
- .544 34–.544 39 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Add to base number 940.5443 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., air bases in England 940.544342
- .544 9 Operations of specific countries
 Class here aircraft, crews, units
 Add to base number 940.5449 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., operations of Germany 940.544943
 For comprehensive works on campaigns and battles by a specific country, see 940.5442. For a specific campaign or battle, see the campaign or battle in 940.5421–940.5429, e.g., battle of Britain 940.54211, attack on Pearl Harbor 940.5426693
- .545 Naval operations
 Class here campaigns and battles
- [.545 094–.545 099] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use for campaigns and battles by theater; class in 940.542. Do not use for operations of specific countries; class in 940.5459
- .545 1 Submarine warfare
- .545 16 Antisubmarine warfare
- .545 2 Blockades and blockade running
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .545 3 Naval bases

- .545 9 Operations of specific countries
 Class here ships, crews, units; comprehensive works on campaigns
 and battles by a specific country
 Add to base number 940.5459 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 Australian naval operations 940.545994
 Class a specific kind of operation with the operation, e.g., blockades
 940.5452
 For a specific campaign or battle, see the campaign or battle in
 940.5421–940.5429, e.g., battle of Midway 940.5426699, battle of
 the Atlantic 940.54293
- .546 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
 Standard subdivisions are added for any or all topics in heading
 Including commemorative meetings, decorations and awards
 For celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event, see
 the event, e.g., Normandy Invasion 940.5421421
- .546 5 Monuments and cemeteries
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- [.546 509 4–.546 509 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.54654–940.54659
- .546 54–.546 59 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Add to base number 940.5465 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 monuments and cemeteries in France 940.546544
- .546 7 Rolls of honor and lists of dead
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- [.546 709 4–.546 709 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.54674–940.54679
- .546 74–.546 79 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Add to base number 940.5467 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., lists
 of Japanese dead 940.546752
- .547 Prisoners of war; medical and social services
- .547 2 Prisoner-of-war camps
 Class here prisoners of war
 For prisoners exchange, see 940.5473
- [.547 209 4–.547 209 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.54724–940.54729
- .547 24–.547 29 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Add to base number 940.5472 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 prisoner-of-war camps maintained by Germany 940.547243

- .547 3 Prisoners exchange
- .547 5 Medical services
For hospitals, see 940.5476
- .547 509 4--547 509 9 Specific continents and localities in modern world
 Do not use for services of specific countries; class in 940.54754-940.54759
- .547 52 Sanitary affairs
- .547 53 Ambulance services
- .547 54-.547 59 Services of specific countries
 Add to base number 940.5475 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., French medical services 940.547544
- .547 6 Hospitals
- [.547 609 4-.547 609 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use for hospitals in specific places; class in 940.54763. Do not use for hospitals maintained by specific countries; class in 940.54764-940.54769
- .547 63 Hospitals in specific places
 Add to base number 940.54763 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., hospitals in Rome 940.5476345632
 Class hospitals maintained in specific places by specific countries in 940.54764-940.54769
- .547 64-.547 69 Hospitals maintained by specific countries
 Add to base number 940.5476 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., hospitals maintained by Italy 940.547645
- .547 7 Relief and welfare services
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- [.547 709 4-.547 709 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use for activities conducted by specific countries; class in 940.54778. Do not use for activities in specific places; class in 940.54779
- .547 71 Activities of Red Cross
- .547 78 Activities conducted by specific countries
 Add to base number 940.54778 notation 4-9 from Table 2, e.g., activities conducted by Switzerland 940.54778494
 Class Red Cross activities conducted by specific countries in 940.54771

- .547 79 Activities in specific places
 Add to base number 940.54779 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 welfare activities in Paris 940.5477944361
 Class activities of Red Cross in specific places in 940.54771; class
 welfare activities conducted in specific places by specific countries
 in 940.54778
- .547 8 Religious life and chaplain services
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .548 Other military topics
 Including deserters, military personnel missing in action
- .548 1 Personal narratives of individuals from Allies
 Class here comprehensive works on personal narratives
 Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, plus
 notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., on blockade running 940.5452092
 For personal narratives of individuals from Axis Powers, see
 940.5482
- [.548 109 4–.548 109 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.548 14–940.548 19
- .548 14–.548 19 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Add to base number 940.548 1 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 personal narratives of Britons 940.548 141
- .548 2 Personal narratives of individuals from Axis Powers
 Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, plus
 notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., on blockade running 940.5452092
- [.548 209 4–.548 209 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.54824–940.54829
- .548 24–.548 29 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Add to base number 940.5482 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 personal narratives of Germans 940.548243
- .548 3 Military life and customs of Allies
 Class here comprehensive works on military life and customs
 For celebrations, commemorations, memorials, see 940.546; for
 military life and customs of Axis Powers, see 940.5484
- [.548 309 4–.548 309 9] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.54834–940.54839
- .548 34–.548 39 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Add to base number 940.5483 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 military life in United States Navy 940.548373

- .548 864–.548 869 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Add to base number 940.54886 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 propaganda by United States 940.5488673
- .548 87 Propaganda by Axis Powers
- [.548 870 94–.548 870 99] Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Do not use; class in 940.548874–940.548879
- .548 874–.548 879 Specific continents, countries, localities in modern world
 Add to base number 940.54887 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 propaganda by Germany 940.5488743
- .548 89 Propaganda in specific places
 Add to base number 940.54889 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g.,
 propaganda in United States 940.5488973
 Class propaganda by one side or one country regardless of location
 in 940.54886–940.54887
- .55 1945–1999
- .554 1945–1949
- .555 1950–1959
- .556 1960–1969
- .557 1970–1979
- .558 1980–1989
- .559 1990–1999
- .56 2000–
- .561 2000–2019
- .561 1 2000–2009
- .561 2 2010–2019

941 *British Isles

Class here Great Britain, United Kingdom

See Manual at 941

SUMMARY

- 941.01-.08 [Historical periods]
- .1 Scotland
- .2 Northeastern Scotland
- .3 Southeastern Scotland
- .4 Southwestern Scotland
- .5 Ireland
- .6 Northern Ireland; Donegal, Monaghan, Cavan counties of Republic of Ireland
- .7 Republic of Ireland
- .8 Leinster
- .9 Munster
- .01 Early history to 1066
For ancient history to 410, see 936.1
- (.012) Ancient history to 410
(Optional number; prefer 936.1)
Add to base number 941.012 the numbers following 936.20 in 936.201-936.204, e.g., 4th century 941.0124
- .013-.019 Pre-Anglo-Saxon period through reign of Saxon kings, 410-1066
Add to base number 941.01 the numbers following 942.01 in 942.013-942.019, e.g., period of Danish kings 941.018
- .02-.05 Norman period through House of Tudor period, 1066-1603
Add to base number 941.0 the numbers following 942.0 in 942.02-942.05, e.g., reign of Henry VIII 941.052
- .06 House of Stuart and Commonwealth periods, 1603-1714
(Option: Class here Anglo-Dutch Wars; prefer 949.204)
- .061 Reign of James I, 1603-1625
- .062 Reign of Charles I, 1625-1649
Class Civil War in 942.062
- .063 Period as Commonwealth and Protectorate, 1649-1660
For Protectorate of Oliver Cromwell, see 941.064; for Protectorate of Richard Cromwell, see 941.065
- .064 Protectorate of Oliver Cromwell, 1653-1658
- .065 Protectorate of Richard Cromwell, 1658-1659
- .066 Reign of Charles II, 1660-1685 (Restoration)
- .067 1685-1689
Class here reign of James II, 1685-1688
- .068 Reigns of William III (of Orange) and Mary II, 1689-1702
- .069 Reign of Anne, 1702-1714
- .07 Period of House of Hanover, 1714-1837

- .071 Reign of George I, 1714–1727
- .072 Reign of George II, 1727–1760
(Option: Class here War of Jenkins' Ear; prefer 946.055)
- .073 Reign of George III, 1760–1820
Including formation of United Kingdom
- .074 Reign of George IV, 1820–1830
- .075 Reign of William IV, 1830–1837
- .08 Period of Victoria and House of Windsor, 1837–
- .081 Reign of Victoria, 1837–1901
Class here 19th century
For 1800–1820, see 941.073; for 1820–1830, see 941.074; for 1830–1837, see 941.075
(Option: Class here Crimean War; prefer 947.0738. Class here South African [Second Anglo-Boer] War; prefer 968.048)
- .082 1901–1999
For reign of George V, see 941.083; for 1936–1945, see 941.084; for 1945–1999, see 941.085
- .082 3 Reign of Edward VII, 1901–1910
- .083 Reign of George V, 1910–1936
- .084 1936–1945
Class here reigns of Edward VIII, 1936, and George VI, 1936–1952; period of World War II, 1939–1945
For reign of George VI during 1945–1949, see 941.0854; for reign of George VI during 1950–1952, see 941.0855
- .085 1945–1999
Class here reign of Elizabeth II, 1952 to present
For 2000 to present, see 941.086
- .085 4 1945–1949
- .085 5 1950–1959
- .085 6 1960–1969
- .085 7 1970–1979
- .085 8 1980–1989
- .085 9 1990–1999
- .086 2000–
- .086 1 2000–2019
- .086 11 2000–2009

- .086 12 2010–2019
- .1 *Scotland**
- For northeastern Scotland, see 941.2; for southeastern Scotland, see 941.3;
for southwestern Scotland, see 941.4*
- .101 Early history to 1057
 Including 11th century
 For ancient history to 410, see 936.11; for 1057–1099, see 941.102
- (.101 2) Ancient history to 410
 (Optional number; prefer 936.11)
- (.101 21) Early history to ca. 600 B.C.
 (Optional number; prefer 936.11)
- (.101 22) Celtic period, ca. 600–79 B.C.
 (Optional number; prefer 936.1102)
- (.101 23) Period of Roman contacts, 79 B.C.–410 A.D.
 (Optional number; prefer 936.1103)
- .102 1057–1314
 Including Battle of Bannockburn, 1314
- .103 1314–1424
- .104 Reigns of James I through James V, 1424–1542
- .105 Reformation period, 1542–1603
 Class here 16th century
 For 1500–1542, see 941.104
- .106–.108 Personal union with England to present, 1603–
 Add to base number 941.10 the numbers following 941.10 in
 941.06–941.08, e.g., reign of Edward VII 941.10823
- .2 *Northeastern Scotland**
- .201–.208 Historical periods
 Add to base number 941.20 the numbers following 941.10 in
 941.101–941.108, e.g., Reformation period 941.205
- .3 *Southeastern Scotland**
- .301–.308 Historical periods
 Add to base number 941.30 the numbers following 941.10 in
 941.101–941.108, e.g., Reformation period 941.305
- .4 *Southwestern Scotland**

.401-.408 Historical periods

Add to base number 941.40 the numbers following 941.10 in 941.101-941.108, e.g., Reformation period 941.405

.5 *Ireland

.501 Early history to 1086

Including Battle of Clontarf, 1014

For ancient history to 433, see 936.15

410-433 relocated to 936.1502

(.501 2) Ancient history to 433

(Optional number; prefer 936.15)

(.501 21) Early history to ca. 400 B.C.

(Optional number; prefer 936.1501)

(.501 22) Celtic period, ca. 400 B.C.-433 A.D.

(Optional number; prefer 936.1502)

.502 1086-1171

.503 Period under House of Plantagenet, 1171-1399

.504 Period under Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399-1485

.505 Period under House of Tudor, 1485-1603

.506 Period under House of Stuart, 1603-1691

.507 1691-1799

.508 1800-

.508 1 1800-1899

.508 2 1900-1999

.508 21 1900-1921

Including Sinn Fein Rebellion (Easter Rebellion), 1916;
Anglo-Irish War, 1919-1921

.508 22 1921-1949

.508 23 1950-1969

.508 24 1970-1999

.508 3 2000-

.6 *Northern Ireland; Donegal, Monaghan, Cavan counties of Republic of Ireland

Subdivisions are added for Northern Ireland, Donegal, Monaghan, Cavan counties together; for Northern Ireland alone

- .601–.607 Early history to 1800
 Add to base number 941.60 the numbers following 941.50 in
 941.501–941.507, e.g., period under House of Tudor 941.605; however,
 410–433 relocated from 941.601 to 936.1602
- .608 1800–
- .608 1 1800–1899
- .608 2 1900–1999
- .608 21 1900–1920
 Including Government of Ireland Act, 1920
- .608 22 1921–1949
- .608 23 1949–1968
- .608 24 1969–1999
- .608 3 2000–
- .7 *Republic of Ireland**
 For Leinster, see 941.8; for Munster, see 941.9
- .701–.707 Early history to 1800
 Add to base number 941.70 the numbers following 941.50 in
 941.501–941.507, e.g., period under House of Tudor 941.705; however,
 410–433 relocated from 941.701 to 936.1702
- .708 1800–
- .708 1 1800–1899
- .708 2 1900–1999
- .708 21 1900–1921
- .708 22 1922–1949
 Including period as Irish Free State, 1922–1937; as Eire,
 1937–1949
- .708 23 1949–1969
- .708 24 1970–1999
- .708 3 2000–
- .8 *Leinster**
- .801–.807 Early history to 1800
 Add to base number 941.80 the numbers following 941.50 in
 941.501–941.507, e.g., period under House of Tudor 941.805; however,
 410–433 relocated from 941.801 to 936.1802

.808

1800–

Add to base number 941.808 the numbers following 941.708 in 941.7081–941.7083, e.g., 1949–1969 941.80823

.9***Munster**

.901–.907

Early history to 1800

Add to base number 941.90 the numbers following 941.50 in 941.501–941.507, e.g., period under House of Tudor 941.905; however, 410–433 relocated from 941.901 to 936.1902

.908

1800–

Add to base number 941.908 the numbers following 941.708 in 941.7081–941.7083, e.g., 1949–1969 941.90823

942 *England and Wales

Subdivisions are added for England and Wales together, for England alone

See Manual at 941

>

942.01–942.08 Historical periods of England and Wales together, of England alone

Class comprehensive works in 942

.01

Early history to 1066

For ancient history to 410, see 936.2

(.012)

Ancient history of southern Britain to 410

(Optional number; prefer 936.2)

Add to base number 942.012 the numbers following 936.20 in 936.201–936.204, e.g., Celtic period 942.0122

.013

Pre-Anglo-Saxon period, 410–449

.014

449–ca. 600

Including reign of King Arthur

.015

Period of Heptarchy, ca. 600–829

Class supremacy of Wessex in 942.016

.015 3

Supremacy of Northumbria, 603–685

.015 7

Supremacy of Mercia, 757–796

.016

Supremacy of Wessex, 829–924

Class here 9th century

For 800–829, see 942.015

.016 1

Reign of Egbert, 829–839

*Add as instructed under 930–990

- .016 2 Reign of Ethelwulf, 839–858
- .016 3 Reigns of Ethelbald, Ethelbert, Ethelred I, 858–871
- .016 4 Reign of Alfred the Great, 871–899
- .016 5 Reign of Edward the Elder, 899–924
- .017 Reigns of Saxon kings of England, 924–1016
- .017 1 Reign of Athelstan, 924–940
- .017 2 Reigns of Edmund I, Edred, Edwy, 940–959
- .017 3 Reigns of Edgar and Edward the Martyr, 959–978
- .017 4 Reigns of Ethelred II and Edmund II, 978–1016
- .018 Reigns of Danish kings, 1016–1042
- Class here 11th century
- For 1000–1016, see 942.0174; for 1042–1066, see 942.019; for 1066–1099, see 942.02*
- .018 1 Reign of Canute, 1016–1035
- .018 2 Reign of Harold I, 1035–1040
- .018 3 Reign of Hardecanute, 1040–1042
- .019 1042–1066
- Including reign of Harold II, 1066
- Class here reign of Edward the Confessor, 1042–1066
- .02 Norman period, 1066–1154
- Class here 12th century
- For 1154–1199, see 942.03*
- .021 Reign of William I, 1066–1087
- Including Battle of Hastings, 1066
- .022 Reign of William II, 1087–1100
- .023 Reign of Henry I, 1100–1135
- .024 Reign of Stephen, 1135–1154
- .03 Period of House of Plantagenet, 1154–1399
- Class here medieval period
- For 1066–1154, see 942.02; for 1399–1485, see 942.04*
- .031 Reign of Henry II, 1154–1189
- .032 Reign of Richard I, 1189–1199
- .033 Reign of John, 1199–1216

- .034 Reign of Henry III, 1216–1272
 Class here 13th century
 For 1200–1216, see 942.033; for 1272–1299, see 942.035
- .035 Reign of Edward I, 1272–1307
- .036 Reign of Edward II, 1307–1327
- .037 Reign of Edward III, 1327–1377
 Class here 14th century
 *For 1300–1307, see 942.035; for 1307–1327, see 942.036; for
 1377–1399, see 942.038*
 (Option: Class here Hundred Years' War; prefer 944.025)
- .038 Reign of Richard II, 1377–1399
- .04 Period of Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485
 Class here Wars of the Roses, 1455–1485
- .041 Reign of Henry IV, 1399–1413
- .042 Reign of Henry V, 1413–1422
- .043 Reign of Henry VI, 1422–1461
- .044 Reign of Edward IV, 1461–1483
- .045 Reign of Edward V, 1483
- .046 Reign of Richard III, 1483–1485
- .05 Period of House of Tudor, 1485–1603
- .051 Reign of Henry VII, 1485–1509
- .052 Reign of Henry VIII, 1509–1547
- .053 Reign of Edward VI, 1547–1553
- .054 Reign of Mary I, 1553–1558
- .055 Reign of Elizabeth I, 1558–1603
 Including Spanish Armada, 1588
- .06–.08 House of Stuart and Commonwealth periods to present, 1603–
 Add to base number 942.0 the numbers following 941.0 in 941.06–941.08,
 e.g., reign of Victoria 942.081
- .062 ‡Reign of Charles I, 1625–1649
 Number built according to instructions under 942.06–942.08
 Class here Civil War, 1642–1649

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

943 Germany and neighboring central European countries

Class here central Europe

SUMMARY

- 943.000 1-.000 9** Standard subdivisions of central Europe
.001-.009 Standard subdivisions of Germany
.01-.08 Historical periods of Germany
.1 Northeastern Germany
.6 Austria and Liechtenstein
.7 Czech Republic and Slovakia
.8 Poland
.9 Hungary
- .000 1-.000 8** Standard subdivisions of central Europe
 As modified under 930-990
- .000 9** Historical periods; areas, regions, places; biography of central Europe
- .000 901-.000 905** Historical periods
 Add to base number 943.00090 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901-0905 from Table I, e.g., central Europe during the Middle Ages 943.000902.
 Class specific periods of Holy Roman Empire in 943.02-943.05; class comprehensive works on Holy Roman Empire in 943
- .000 91-.000 99** Areas, regions, places in general; biography
 As modified under 930-990
- .001-.009** Standard subdivisions of Germany
 As modified under 930-990

SUMMARY

- 943.01** Early history to 843
.02 843-1519
.03 Period of Reformation and Counter-Reformation, 1519-1618
.04 1618-1705
.05 1705-1790
.06 Period of Napoleonic Wars, 1790-1815
.07 Period of German Confederation, 1815-1866
.08 1866-

> 943.01-943.08 Historical periods of Germany

Class comprehensive works in 943

.01 Early history to 843

For ancient history to 481, see 936.3

(.012) Ancient history to 481

(Optional number; prefer 936.3)

- (.012 1) Early history to 113 B.C.
(Optional number; prefer 936.301)
- (.012 2) Period of contacts with Roman Republic and Empire, 113 B.C.–481 A.D.
(Optional number; prefer 936.302)
- .013 Period of Merovingian dynasty in Germany, 481–751
Including 8th century
Class comprehensive works on Merovingian dynasty in France and Germany in 944.013
For 751–800, see 943.014
- .014 751–843
Class here Carolingian dynasty in Germany, 751–911; reign of Charlemagne in Germany, 768–814
Class comprehensive works on Carolingian dynasty in 944.014; class comprehensive works on reign of Charlemagne in France and Germany in 944.0142
For 843–911, see 943.021
-
- > 943.02–943.05 Specific periods of Holy Roman Empire
Class comprehensive works in 943.02
- .02 843–1519
After Treaty of Verdun, 843
Class here medieval period; comprehensive works on period of Holy Roman Empire, 962–1806
For later part of period of Holy Roman Empire, see 943.03–943.06
- .021 843–911
Class here 9th century
For 800–843, see 943.014
- .022 Period of Conrad I and House of Saxony, 911–1024
- .023 1024–1137
Including reign of Lothair II, Holy Roman Emperor, 1125–1137
Class here period of Salian (Franconian) emperors, 1024–1125
- .024 1138–1198
Class here period of Hohenstaufen dynasty, 1138–1254; reign of Frederick I Barbarossa, 1152–1190; 12th century
For 1100–1137, see 943.023; for later period of Hohenstaufen dynasty, see 943.025

- .025 Later period of Hohenstaufen dynasty and Interregnum, 1198–1273
 Including reign of Frederick II, 1215–1250
 Class here 13th century
For 1273–1299, see 943.026
- .026 1273–1346
- .027 1346–1438
 Including reign of Charles IV, 1346–1378; 14th century
 Class here period of House of Luxemburg
For 1300–1346, reign of Henry VII, 1273–1313, see 943.026
- .028 Reigns of Albert II and Frederick III, 1438–1493
 Class here 15th century
For 1400–1438, see 943.027; for 1493–1499, see 943.029
- .029 Reign of Maximilian I, 1493–1519
- .03 Period of Reformation and Counter-Reformation, 1519–1618
 Class here period of House of Habsburg, 1493–1806
For the reign of a specific Habsburg not provided for here, see the reign, e.g., reign of Leopold I 943.044
- .031 Reign of Charles V, 1519–1556
 Including Peasants' War, 1524–1525; Schmalkaldic War, 1546–1547
 Campaigns and battles of wars between France and Holy Roman Empire fought outside of Italy, 1521–1599, relocated to 944.028; campaigns and battles of wars between France and Holy Roman Empire fought in Italy, comprehensive works on campaigns and battles of wars between France and Holy Roman Empire, 1521–1599, relocated to 945.06
- .032 Reign of Ferdinand I, 1556–1564
- .033 Reign of Maximilian II, 1564–1576
- .034 Reign of Rudolf II, 1576–1612
- .035 Reign of Matthias, 1612–1619
- .04 1618–1705
- .041 Period of Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648
 Class comprehensive works on Thirty Years' War in 940.24
For reign of Matthias during Thirty Years' War, see 943.035; for reign of Ferdinand II during Thirty Years' War, see 943.042; for reign of Ferdinand III during Thirty Years' War, see 943.043
- .042 Reign of Ferdinand II, 1619–1637
- .043 Reign of Ferdinand III, 1637–1657
- .044 Reign of Leopold I, 1658–1705

- .05 1705–1790
- .051 Reign of Joseph I, 1705–1711
- .052 Reign of Charles VI, 1711–1740
- .053 1740–1786
 Class here reign of Frederick the Great, King of Prussia, 1740–1786
For 1742–1745, see 943.054; for 1745–1765, see 943.055; for 1765–1786, see 943.057
- .054 Period of First and Second Silesian Wars, 1740–1745
 Class here First Silesian War, 1740–1742; Second Silesian War, 1744–1745; reign of Charles VII, 1742–1745
 Class War of the Austrian Succession in 940.2532
See also 940.2534 for Seven Years' War (Third Silesian War)
- .055 Reign of Francis I, 1745–1765
 Including period of Seven Years' War, 1756–1763
 Class comprehensive works on Seven Years' War in 940.2534
- .057 Reign of Joseph II, 1765–1790
- .06 Period of Napoleonic Wars, 1790–1815
 Including Confederation of the Rhine
 Class comprehensive works on Napoleonic Wars in 940.27
- .07 Period of German Confederation, 1815–1866
 Class here 19th century, comprehensive works on Prussia
For 1800–1815, see 943.06; for 1866–1899, see 943.08. For a specific period of history of Prussia not provided for here, see the period, e.g., reign of Frederick the Great 943.053
- .073 1815–1847
- .074 Revolution of 1848–1849
- .076 1849–1866
 Including Schleswig-Holstein War, 1864; Austro-Prussian War (Seven Weeks' War), 1866
 (Option: Class Schleswig-Holstein War in 948.904)
- .08 1866–
- .081 1866–1871
 Class here period of North German Confederation
For Franco-German War, see 943.082

- .082 ‡Franco-German War, 1870–1871
(Option: Class in 944.07)
- .083 Reign of William I, 1871–1888
Class here comprehensive works on administrations of Otto von Bismarck, 1862–1890; German Empire, 1871–1918
For reigns of Frederick III and William II, see 943.084. For a specific part of administrations of Otto von Bismarck not provided for here, see the part, e.g., administration during period of North German Confederation 943.081
- .084 Reigns of Frederick III and William II, 1888–1918
- .084 9 Period of World War I, 1914–1918
- .085 Period of Weimar Republic, 1918–1933
- .085 1 Revolution of 1918
- .086 Period of Third Reich, 1933–1945
Class Holocaust in 940.5318
- .086 2 1933–1939
- .086 4 Period of World War II, 1939–1945
- .087 1945–1990
Class here 20th century; Federal Republic, 1949 to present; comprehensive works on Federal and Democratic Republics
For 1900–1918, see 943.084; for period of Weimar Republic, see 943.085; for period of Third Reich, 1933–1945, see 943.086; for 1990 to present, see 943.088; for German Democratic Republic, see 943.1087
- .087 4 1945–1949
- .087 5 Administration of Konrad Adenauer, 1949–1962
- .087 6 1962–1969
Including administrations of Ludwig Erhard, 1962–1966; Kurt Georg Kiesinger, 1966–1969
- .087 7 1969–1982
Including administrations of Willy Brandt, 1969–1974; Helmut Schmidt, 1974–1982
- .087 8 1982–1990
Class here administration of Helmut Kohl, 1982–1998
Including period of reunification, 1989–1990
For administration of Helmut Kohl during 1990–1998, see 943.0881

- .088 1990–
- .088 1 Later half of administration of Helmut Kohl, 1990–1998
- .088 2 Administration of Gerhard Schröder, 1998–2005
- .088 3 Administration of Angela Merkel, 2005–
- .1 *Northeastern Germany**
- For Saxony and Thuringia, see 943.2*
- .101–.107 Early history to 1866
- Add to base number 943.10 the numbers following 943.0 in 943.01–943.07, e.g., northeastern Germany during period of German Confederation 943.107
- .108 1866–
- .108 1–.108 6 1866–1945
- Add to base number 943.108 the numbers following 943.08 in 943.081–943.086, e.g., northeastern Germany during period of German Empire 943.1083
- .108 7 Period of East Germany, 1945–1990
- Class here period of German Democratic Republic, 1949–1990
- .108 74 1945–1949
- .108 75 Administration of Walter Ulbricht, 1949–1971
- .108 77 Administration of Erich Honecker, 1971–1989
- .108 79 1989–1990
- Class comprehensive works on reunification of Germany in 943.0878
- Class here fall of Berlin Wall, 1989
- .108 8 Period as part of Federal Republic, 1990–
- .108 81 1990–1998
- .108 82 1998–2005
- .108 83 2005–

.2 *Saxony and Thuringia

.201–.208 Historical periods

Add to base number 943.20 the numbers following 943.10 in 943.101–943.108, e.g., period as part of East Germany 943.2087

.6 *Austria and Liechtenstein

Subdivisions are added for Austria and Liechtenstein together, for Austria alone

For ancient history to 476, see 936.36

*Add as instructed under 930–990

(.601) Ancient history to 476

(Optional number; prefer 936.36)

> 943.602–943.605 Historical periods of Austria and Liechtenstein together,
of Austria alone

Class comprehensive works in 943.6

.602 Medieval period, 476–1526

.602 2 476–976

.602 3 Period of House of Babenberg, 976–1246

Including 13th century

For 1246–1273, see 943.6024; for 1273–1299, see 943.6025

.602 4 1246–1273

.602 5 1273–1526

.603 1526–1815

Class here comprehensive works on period of House of Habsburg,
1273–1919

*For a specific part of the period of House of Habsburg, see the part,
e.g., period of Austro-Hungarian Monarchy 943.6044, period of
House of Habsburg in Spain 946.04*

.603 1 1526–1740

.603 2 1740–1815

Class here 18th century

For 1700–1740, see 943.6031

See also 940.2532 for War of the Austrian Succession

.604 1815–1918

Class here Austrian Empire, 1804–1918

For Austrian Empire during 1804–1815, see 943.6032

.604 2 1815–1848

.604 3 1848–1867

.604 4 Period of Austro-Hungarian Monarchy, 1867–1918

.604 41 1867–1914

.604 42 Period of World War I, 1914–1918

.605 1918–

.605 1 Period of First Republic, 1918–1938

.605 11 1918–1933

.605 12 1933–1938

- .605 2 1938–1955
- .605 22 Anschluss and World War II periods, 1938–1945
 Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
- .605 23 1945–1955
- .605 3 1955–
 Class here period of Second Republic, 1945–
 For 1945–1955, see 943.60523
- .605 32 1955–1970
- .605 33 1970–1983
- .605 34 1983–1999
- .605 35 2000–
- .64 *Western Austria, and Liechtenstein
 Subdivisions are added for Western Austria and Liechtenstein together, for Western Austria alone
- .648 †Liechtenstein
 For ancient history to 476, see 936.36
- .7 *Czech Republic and Slovakia**
- .702 Early history to 1918
- .702 1 Early history to 907
 Including Great Moravian Empire
- .702 2 907–1526
- .702 23 Period of Přemyslid dynasty, 907–1306
- .702 24 Period of House of Luxemburg, 1306–1526
 Including Hussite Wars, 1419–1436
- .702 3 1526–1815
- .702 32 1526–1620
- .702 33 1620–1800
- .702 34 1800–1815
- .702 4 1815–1918

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .703 1918–1992
Class here Czechoslovakia
For 1945–1992, see 943.704
- .703 2 Period of Czechoslovak Republic, 1918–1939
- .703 3 1939–1945
Class here Protectorate of Bohemia and Moravia
- .704 1945–1992
- .704 2 1945–1968
Including reform and repression, 1968
- .704 3 1968–1992
- .705 1993–
Period of two sovereign nations
- .71 *Czech Republic
For Moravia, see 943.72
- .710 2–.710 4 Early history to 1992
Add to base number 943.710 the numbers following 943.70 in 943.702–943.704, e.g., Kingdom of Bohemia 943.7102
- .710 5 Period of Republic, 1993–
- .710 51 1993–
- .710 511 Administration of Václav Havel, 1993–2003
- .710 512 Administration of Václav Klaus, 2003–
- .72 *Moravia
- .720 2–.720 5 Historical periods
Add to base number 943.720 the numbers following 943.70 in 943.702–943.705, e.g., period as a part of Czech Republic 943.7205
- .73 *Slovakia
- .730 2–.730 4 Early history to 1992
Add to base number 943.730 the numbers following 943.70 in 943.702–943.704, e.g., Slovak Republic, 1939–1945, 943.73033
- .730 5 Period of Slovak Republic, 1993–
- .730 51 1993–
- .730 511 1993–1999
Class here administration of Michal Kováč, 1993–1998
- .730 512 Administration of Rudolf Schuster, 1999–2004

- .730 513 Administration of Ivan Gašparovič, 2004–
- .8 *Poland**
- .802 Early history to 1795
- .802 2 Early history to 1370
Including period of Piast dynasty
- .802 3 Period of Jagellon dynasty, 1370–1572
Including 16th century
For 1572–1599, see 943.8024
- .802 4 Period of elective kings, 1572–1697
- .802 5 1697–1795
Including partitions of 1772, 1793, 1795
- .803 Period of foreign rule, 1795–1918
- .803 2 1795–1862
- .803 3 1863–1918
- .804 Period of Republic, 1918–1939
- .805 1939–
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1918, see 943.8033; for 1918–1939, see 943.804
- .805 3 1939–1945
- .805 4 1945–1956
- .805 5 1956–1980
- .805 6 1980–1989
- .805 7 1989–
- .805 71 1989–1995
Class here administration of Lech Wałęsa, 1990–1995
- .805 72 Administration of Aleksander Kwaśniewski, 1995–2005
- .805 73 Administration of Lech Kaczyński, 2005–2010
- .805 74 Administration of Bronisław Komorowski, 2010–
- .9 *Hungary**
- .901 Early history to 894
For ancient history to ca. 640, see 939.8

- (.901 1) Ancient history to ca. 640
 (Optional number; prefer 939.8)
- .902 Period of House of Árpád, 894–1301
- .903 Period of elective kings, 1301–1526
- .904 Turkish and House of Habsburg periods, 1526–1918
- .904 1 Turkish period, 1526–1686
 Including 16th century
For 1500–1526, see 943.903
- .904 2 Period of House of Habsburg, 1686–1918
For period of Austro-Hungarian Monarchy, see 943.9043
- .904 3 Period of Austro-Hungarian Monarchy, 1867–1918
- .905 1918–
- .905 1 1918–1941
- .905 2 1942–1956
 Including uprising and suppression, 1956
- .905 3 1956–1989
- .905 4 1989–
- .905 41 1989–2000
 Class here administration of Árpád Göncz, 1990–2000
- .905 42 Administration of Ferenc Mádl, 2000–2005
- .905 43 Administration of László Sólyom, 2005–2010
- .905 44 Administration of Pál Schmitt, 2010–

944 *France and Monaco

Subdivisions are added for France and Monaco together, for France alone

SUMMARY

- 944.01 Early history to 987
- .02 Medieval period, 987–1589
- .03 Period of House of Bourbon, 1589–1789
- .04 Revolutionary period, 1789–1804
- .05 Period of First Empire, 1804–1815
- .06 Period of Restoration, 1815–1848
- .07 Period of Second Republic and Second Empire (period of Napoleon III), 1848–1870
- .08 1870–
- .9 Provence-Côte d'Azur, Monaco, Corsica

- > 944.01–944.08 Historical periods of France and Monaco together, of France alone
- Class comprehensive works in 944
- .01 Early history to 987
For ancient history to 486, see 936.4
- (.012) Ancient history to 486
 (Optional number; prefer 936.4)
- (.012 1) Early history to 125 B.C.
 (Optional number; prefer 936.401)
- (.012 2) Gallo-Roman period, 125 B.C.–486 A.D.
 (Optional number; prefer 936.402)
- .013 Period of Merovingian dynasty, 486–751
 Including 8th century
 Class here comprehensive works on Merovingian dynasty in France and Germany
For Merovingian dynasty in Germany, see 943.013; for 751–800, see 944.014
- .014 Period of Carolingian dynasty, 751–987
 Class here comprehensive works on Carolingian dynasty in France, Germany, and Italy
For Carolingian dynasty in Germany, see 943.014; for Carolingian dynasty in Italy, see 945.02
- .014 2 Reign of Charlemagne, 768–814
- .02 Medieval period, 987–1589
- .021 Period of Capetian dynasty, 987–1328
 Including reigns of Hugh Capet, Robert II, Henry I, 987–1060; 11th century
For reigns of other Capetian kings, see 944.022–944.024; for 1060–1099, see 944.022
- .022 Reigns of Philip I, Louis VI, Louis VII, 1060–1180
- .023 Reigns of Philip II, Louis VIII, Louis IX, 1180–1270
 Class here 13th century
For 1270–1299, see 944.024
- .024 Reigns of Philip III, Philip IV, Louis X, Jean I, Philip V, Charles IV, 1270–1328

- .025 ‡Period of House of Valois, 1328–1589
 Including reigns of Philip VI, Jean II, Charles V, 1328–1380
 Class here Hundred Years' War, 1337–1453; 14th century
 (Option: Class Hundred Years' War in 942.037)
For 1300–1328, see 944.024; for reigns of other Valois kings, see 944.026–944.029
- .026 Reigns of Charles VI and Charles VII, 1380–1461
 Class here 15th century
For 1461–1499, see 944.027
- .027 Reigns of Louis XI, Charles VIII, Louis XII, 1461–1515
 French invasions of Italy, 1494–1559, relocated to 945.06
- .028 Period of House of Angoulême, 1515–1589
 Including reigns of Francis I and Henry II, 1515–1559
 Class here campaigns and battles of wars between France and Holy Roman Empire fought outside of Italy, 1521–1599 [*both formerly 943.031*]; 16th century
For 1500–1515, see 944.027; for reigns of Francis II, Charles IX, Henry III, see 944.029; for 1589–1600, see 944.031
 French invasions of Italy during period of House of Angoulême relocated to 945.06
- .029 Reigns of Francis II, Charles IX, Henry III, 1559–1589
- .03 Period of House of Bourbon, 1589–1789
- .031 Reign of Henry IV, 1589–1610
- .032 Reign of Louis XIII, 1610–1643
- .033 Reign of Louis XIV, 1643–1715
 Including War of Devolution, 1667–1668
 Class here 17th century
For 1600–1610, see 944.031; for 1610–1643, see 944.032
- .034 Reign of Louis XV, 1715–1774
 Class here 18th century
For a specific part of 18th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., Reign of Terror 944.044
- .035 1774–1789
 Class here period of Louis XVI, 1774–1792
For period of Louis XVI during 1789–1792, see 944.041

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

- .04 Revolutionary period, 1789–1804
- .041 Period of Estates-General, National Assembly, Legislative Assembly, 1789–1792
- .042 Period of First Republic, 1792–1799
Including Vendean War, 1793–1800
For period of National Convention, see 944.043; for period of Directory, see 944.045
- .043 Period of National Convention, 1792–1795
For Reign of Terror, see 944.044
- .044 Period of Reign of Terror, 1793–1794
- .045 Period of Directory, 1795–1799
- .046 Period of Consulate, 1799–1804
- .05 Period of First Empire, 1804–1815
Including reign of Louis XVIII, 1814–1815; Hundred Days, 1815
Class here reign of Napoleon I, 1804–1814
Class Napoleonic Wars in 940.27
- .06 Period of Restoration, 1815–1848
Class here 19th century
For a specific part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., Second Empire 944.07
- .061 Reign of Louis XVIII, 1815–1824
- .062 Reign of Charles X, 1824–1830
- .063 Period of Louis Philippe, 1830–1848 (July Monarchy)
- .07 Period of Second Republic and Second Empire (period of Napoleon III), 1848–1870
(Option: Class here Franco-German War; prefer 943.082)
- .08 1870–
- .081 Period of Third Republic, 1870–1945
Class here 20th century
For 1945–1958, see 944.082; for 1958–1999, see 944.083
- .081 2 1870–1899
Including Paris Commune, 1871
- .081 3 1900–1914
- .081 4 Period of World War I, 1914–1918
- .081 5 1918–1939

- .081 6 Period of World War II, 1939–1945
- .082 Period of Fourth Republic, 1945–1958
- .083 Period of Fifth Republic, 1958–
 For 2000 to present, see 944.084
- .083 6 1958–1969
- .083 7 1970–1979
- .083 8 1980–1989
- .083 9 1990–1999
- .084 2000–
- .084 1 2000–2019
- .084 11 2000–2009
- .084 12 2010–2019
- .9 *Provence-Côte d’Azur, Monaco, Corsica**
 Subdivisions are added for Provence-Côte d’Azur, Monaco, Corsica together;
 for Provence-Côte d’Azur alone
- .94 *Alpes-Maritimes department and Monaco
- .949 †Monaco
 For ancient history to 486, see 936.4
- .99 *Corsica (Corse)
- .990 1 Early history to 1077
 Including 453–476 [*formerly* 937.9909], 987–1060 [*formerly*
 944.99021], 1060–1077 [*formerly* 944.99022]
 For ancient history to 453, see 937.99
- (.990 12) Ancient history to 453
 (Optional number; prefer 937.99)
- [.990 13–.990 14] 486–987
 Numbers discontinued; class in 944.9901
- .990 2 Pisan period, 1077–1347
 Including assumption of sovereignty by Pope Gregory VII, 1077
- [.990 21] 987–1060
 Relocated to 944.9901

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- [.990 22] 1060–1180
Use of this number for 1077–1180 discontinued; class in 944.9902
1060–1077 relocated to 944.9901
- [.990 23–.990 24] 1180–1328
Numbers discontinued; class in 944.9902
- [.990 25] 1328–1380
Use of this number for 1328–1347 discontinued; class in 944.9902
1347–1380 relocated to 944.9903
- [.990 26–.990 29] 1380–1589
Relocated to 944.9903
- .990 3 Genoan period, 1347–1768
Including 1347–1380 [*formerly* 944.99025], 1380–1589 [*formerly* 944.99026–944.99029]; 14th century, 18th century
For 1300–1347, see 944.9902; for 1768–1799, see 944.9904
- [.990 31–.990 33] 1589–1715
Numbers discontinued; class in 944.9903
- [.990 34] 1715–1774
Use of this number for 1715–1768 discontinued; class in 944.9903
1768–1774 relocated to 944.9904
- [.990 35] 1774–1789
Relocated to 944.9904
- .990 4 1768–1804
Including 1768–1774 [*formerly* 944.99034], 1774–1789 [*formerly* 944.99035]; British period, 1794–1796
Class here periods as part of France, 1768–1794, 1796–1804
- .990 5–.990 8 1804–
Add to base number 944.990 the numbers following 944.0 in 944.05–944.08, e.g., period of Third Republic 944.99081

945 *Italy, San Marino, Vatican City, Malta

Subdivisions are added for Italy, San Marino, Vatican City, Malta together; for Italy alone

- .05 Period of Black Death to invasion of Charles VIII, 1348–1494
 Including 14th century
 Class here Renaissance period
 1300–1348, comprehensive works on Late Middle Ages relocated to 945.04
- .06 1494–1527
 Class here campaigns and battles of wars between France and Holy Roman Empire fought in Italy, comprehensive works on campaigns and battles of wars between France and Holy Roman Empire, 1521–1599 [*all formerly* 943.031]; French invasions of Italy, 1494–1559 [*formerly* 944.027]; French invasions of Italy during period of House of Angoulême [*formerly* 944.028]; comprehensive works on Italian Wars, 1494–1559
 For campaigns and battles of wars between France and Holy Roman Empire fought outside of Italy, 1521–1599, see 944.028; for Italian Wars during 1527–1559, see 945.07
- .07 Spanish and Austrian period, 1527–1796
 Including 16th century
 For 1500–1527, see 945.06
- .08 1796–1900
- .082 Napoleonic period, 1796–1815
 Including 1814–1815 [*formerly* 945.083]; Kingdom of Italy, 1805–1814
- .083 Period of Risorgimento, 1815–1861
 Napoleonic period during 1814–1815 relocated to 945.082
- .084 Reigns of Victor Emmanuel II and Umberto I, 1861–1900
 Class here Roman question; period of House of Savoy in Kingdom of Italy, 1861–1946; comprehensive works on period of House of Savoy in Italy, 1343–1946
 For comprehensive works on period of House of Savoy in Piedmont, see 945.105; for reign of Victor Emmanuel III, see 945.091
- .09 1900–
- .091 Reign of Victor Emmanuel III, 1900–1946
 Including Fascist period, 1922–1943
 Class here 20th century
 For 1946–1999, see 945.092
- .092 Period of Republic, 1946–
 For 2000 to present, see 945.093
- .092 4 1946–1949
- .092 5 1950–1959
- .092 6 1960–1969

- .092 7 1970–1979
- .092 8 1980–1989
- .092 9 1990–1999
- .093 2000–
- .093 1 2000–2019
- .093 11 2000–2009
- .093 12 2010–2019
- .1 *Northwestern Italy**
- Class here Piedmont (Piemonte) region
- .101 Early history to 774
- Class here comprehensive works on medieval period (Middle Ages)
 [formerly 945.103]
- For ancient history to 476, see 937.222; for Early Middle Ages, see
 945.102; for Late Middle Ages, see 945.104*
- (.101 2) Ancient history to 476
- (Optional number; prefer 937.222)
- Add to base number 945.1012 the numbers following 937.0 in
 937.01–937.09, e.g., Punic Wars 945.10124
- .102 Period of Carolingian dynasty, 774–962
- Including 10th century
- Class here comprehensive works on Early Middle Ages (Dark Ages)
- For Early Middle Ages during 476–774, see 945.101; for Early
 Middle Ages during 962–1122, see 945.103*
- .103 Period of German emperors, 962–1122
- Class here Margravate of Ivrea
- Comprehensive works on medieval period (Middle Ages) relocated to
 945.101
- .104 1122–1343
- Including 1300–1343 [formerly 945.105]
- Class here comprehensive works on Late Middle Ages [formerly
 945.105]
- For Late Middle Ages during 1343–1492, see 945.105*

- .105 Period of House of Savoy to death of Philibert II, 1343–1504
 Including 1494–1504 [*formerly* 945.106], 14th century
 Class here comprehensive works on period of House of Savoy in Piedmont, 1343–1861
 Class comprehensive works on period of House of Savoy in Italy, 1343–1946, in 945.084
 For a specific part of the period of House of Savoy in Piedmont, see the part, e.g., House of Savoy during Napoleonic period 945.1082
 1300–1343, comprehensive works on Late Middle Ages relocated to 945.104
- .106 Period of Charles III, 1504–1553
 Including 1527–1553 [*formerly* 945.107]
 Class here 16th century [*formerly* 945.107]
 For 1553–1600, see 945.107
 1494–1504 relocated to 945.105
- .107 Period of Emmanuel Philibert through Victor Amadeus III, 1553–1796
 Including comprehensive works on Kingdom of Sardinia, 1718–1861
 For Kingdom of Sardinia during 1796–1815, see 945.1082; for Kingdom of Sardinia during 1815–1861, see 945.1083; for Kingdom of Sardinia in Sardinia, see 945.907
 Period of Charles III during 1527–1553, 16th century relocated to 945.106
- .108 1796–1900
- .108 2 Napoleonic period, 1796–1815
 Including 1814–1815 [*formerly* 945.1083]
 Class here reign of Victor Emmanuel I, 1802–1821
 For reign of Victor Emmanuel I during 1815–1821, see 945.1083
- .108 3 Period of Risorgimento, 1815–1861
 Napoleonic period during 1814–1815 relocated to 945.1082
- .108 4 Reigns of Victor Emmanuel II and Umberto I, 1861–1900
- .109 1900–
 Add to base number 945.109 the numbers following 945.09 in 945.091–945.093, e.g., Piedmont during the Fascist period 945.1091
- .11 *Valle d’Aosta region

- .110 1–.110 9 Historical periods
 Add to base number 945.110 the numbers following 945.0 in
 945.01–945.09, e.g., Valle d’Aosta during the Fascist period
 945.11091
 For ancient history to 476, see 937.221
- .18 *Liguria region
 Class here period of Republic of Genoa, 1056–1797
- .180 1–.180 9 Historical periods
 Add to base number 945.180 the numbers following 945.0 in
 945.01–945.09, e.g., Ligurian Republic, 1797–1805 945.18082
 For ancient history to 476, see 937.1
- .2 *Lombardy (Lombardia) region**
- .201 Early history to 774
 Class here comprehensive works on medieval period (Middle Ages)
 [formerly 945.203]
 For ancient history to 476, see 937.22; for Early Middle Ages, see
 945.202; for Late Middle Ages, see 945.204
- (.201 2) Ancient history to 476
 (Optional number; prefer 937.22)
 Add to base number 945.2012 the numbers following 937.0 in
 937.01–937.09, e.g., Punic Wars 945.20124
- .202 Period of Carolingian dynasty, 774–962
 Including 10th century
 Class here comprehensive works on Early Middle Ages (Dark Ages)
 For Early Middle Ages during 476–774, see 945.201; for Early
 Middle Ages during 962–1122, see 945.203
- .203 Period of German emperors, 962–1122
 Comprehensive works on medieval period (Middle Ages) relocated to
 945.201
- .204 1122–1277
 Period of House of Visconti during 1277–1300 relocated to 945.205
- .205 Period of House of Visconti, 1277–1447
 Including 1277–1300 [formerly 945.204]
 Class here comprehensive works on Late Middle Ages
 Period of House of Sforza during 1447–1494 relocated to 945.206

- .206 Period of House of Sforza, 1447–1535
 Including 1447–1494 [*formerly* 945.205], 1527–1535 [*formerly*
 945.207]; 15th century
 For 1400–1447, see 945.205
- .207 Spanish and Austrian period, 1535–1796
 Including 16th century
 For 1500–1527, see 945.206
 Period of House of Sforza during 1527–1535 relocated to 945.206
- .208 1796–1900
- .208 2 Napoleonic period, 1796–1815
 Including 1814–1815 [*formerly* 945.2083]; Cisalpine Republic,
 1797–1802
- .208 3 Period of Risorgimento, 1815–1861
 Napoleonic period during 1814–1815 relocated to 945.2082
- .208 4 Reigns of Victor Emmanuel II and Umberto I, 1861–1900
- .209 1900–
 Add to base number 945.209 the numbers following 945.09 in
 945.091–945.093, e.g., Lombardy during the Fascist period 945.2091
- .3 *Northeastern Italy**
 Class here Veneto region; period of Republic of Venice, 810–1797
- .301 Early history to 774
 Class here comprehensive works on medieval period (Middle Ages)
 [*formerly* 945.303]
 For ancient history to 476, see 937.3; for Early Middle Ages, see
 945.302; for Late Middle Ages, see 945.304
- (.301 2) Ancient history to 476
 (Optional number; prefer 937.3)
 Add to base number 945.3012 the numbers following 937.0 in
 937.01–937.09, e.g., Punic Wars 945.30124
- .302 Period of Carolingian dynasty, 774–962
 Including 10th century
 Class here comprehensive works on Early Middle Ages (Dark Ages)
 For Early Middle Ages during 476–774, see 945.301; for Early
 Middle Ages during 962–1122, see 945.303

- .303 Period of German emperors, 962–1122
 Comprehensive works on medieval period (Middle Ages) relocated to
 945.301
- .304 1122–1339
 Including 1300–1339 [*formerly* 945.305]; period of House of Scaliger,
 1259–1339
 Class here comprehensive works on Late Middle Ages [*formerly*
 945.305]
 For Late Middle Ages during 1339–1494, see 945.305
- .305 Period after defeat of House of Scaliger to invasion of Charles VIII,
 1339–1494
 Including 14th century
 1300–1339, comprehensive works on Late Middle Ages relocated to
 945.304
- .306 Period of invasion of Charles VIII to Treaty of Noyon, 1494–1516
 1516–1527 relocated to 945.307
- .307 Period after Treaty of Noyon to Treaty of Campo Formio,
 1516–1797
 Including 1516–1527 [*formerly* 945.306], 1796–1797 [*formerly*
 945.3082]
 For wars between Venice and Ottoman Empire, see 949.505
- .308 1797–1900
- .308 2 Napoleonic period, 1797–1815
 Including 1814–1815 [*formerly* 945.3083]
 1796–1797 relocated to 945.307
- .308 3 Period of Risorgimento, 1815–1866
 Including Venetian Republic, 1849
 Napoleonic period during 1814–1815 relocated to 945.3082
- .308 4 Reigns of Victor Emmanuel II and Umberto I, 1866–1900
- .309 1900–
 Add to base number 945.309 the numbers following 945.09 in
 945.091–945.093, e.g., Veneto region during the Fascist period 945.3091
- .38 *Trentino-Alto Adige region

- .380 1--380 9 Historical periods
 Add to base number 945.380 the numbers following 945.0 in
 945.01–945.09, e.g., Trentino-Alto Adige region during the Fascist
 period 945.38091
 For ancient history to 476, see 937.37
- .39 *Friuli-Venezia Giulia region
- .390 1--390 9 Historical periods
 Add to base number 945.390 the numbers following 945.0 in
 945.01–945.09, e.g., Friuli-Venezia Giulia region during the Fascist
 period 945.39091
 For ancient history to 476, see 937.38
- .4 ***Emilia-Romagna region and San Marino**
 Subdivisions are added for Emilia-Romagna region and San Marino together,
 for Emilia-Romagna region alone
- .49 †San Marino
 For ancient history to 476, see 937.269
- .5 ***Tuscany (Toscana) region**
 Class here period of city-state of Florence, ca. 1100–1569
- .501 Early history to 774
 Class here comprehensive works on medieval period (Middle Ages)
 [formerly 945.503]
 For ancient history to 476, see 937.5; for Early Middle Ages, see
 945.502; for Late Middle Ages, see 945.504
- (.501 2) Ancient history to 476
 (Optional number; prefer 937.5)
 Add to base number 945.5012 the numbers following 937.0 in
 937.01–937.09, e.g., Punic Wars 945.50124
- .502 Period of Carolingian dynasty, 774–962
 Including 10th century
 Class here comprehensive works on Early Middle Ages (Dark Ages)
 For Early Middle Ages during 476–774, see 945.501; for Early
 Middle Ages during 962–1122, see 945.503
- .503 Period of House of Attoni, 962–1115
 Comprehensive works on medieval period (Middle Ages) relocated to
 945.501; 1115–1122 relocated to 945.504

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .504 1115–1348
 Including 1115–1122 [*formerly* 945.503], 1300–1348 [*formerly* 945.505]
 Class here comprehensive works on Late Middle Ages [*formerly* 945.505]
For Late Middle Ages during 1348–1492, see 945.505
- .505 Period of Black Death to invasion of Charles VIII, 1348–1494
 Including 14th century
 Class here period of House of Medici during 1434–1494; comprehensive works on period of House of Medici
For period of House of Medici during 1512–1527, see 945.506; for period of Ducal Medici, see 945.507
 1300–1348, comprehensive works on Late Middle Ages relocated to 945.504
- .506 1494–1531
 Including 1527–1531 [*formerly* 945.507]; period of invasion of Charles VIII, 1494–1495; period of House of Medici during 1512–1527
 Class here periods of Florence as a republic, 1494–1512 and 1527–1530
 Class comprehensive works on period of House of Medici in 945.505
- .507 1531–1801
 Including 1796–1801 [*formerly* 945.5082]; period of Ducal Medici, 1531–1737; 16th century; period of House of Lorraine, 1737–1801, comprehensive works on House of Lorraine
 Class here Grand Duchy of Tuscany during 1569–1801, comprehensive works on Grand Duchy of Tuscany
For 1500–1531, see 945.506; for Grand Duchy of Tuscany and House of Lorraine during 1814–1860, see 945.5083
 1527–1531 relocated to 945.506
- .508 1801–1900
- .508 2 Napoleonic period, 1801–1814
 Class here Kingdom of Etruria, 1801–1807
 1796–1801 relocated to 945.507
- .508 3 Period of Risorgimento, 1814–1861
 Class here Grand Duchy of Tuscany and House of Lorraine during 1814–1860
 Class comprehensive works on Grand Duchy of Tuscany and House of Lorraine in 945.507
- .508 4 Reigns of Victor Emmanuel II and Umberto I, 1861–1900

- .509 1900–
 Add to base number 945.509 the numbers following 945.09 in
 945.091–945.093, e.g., Tuscany during the Fascist period 945.5091
- .6 *Central Italy and Vatican City**
 Class here Papal States (States of the Church), 728–1870
 Subdivisions are added for central Italy and Vatican City together, for central
 Italy alone
 *For a specific part of Papal States, see the part, e.g., Tuscany 945.5,
 Marches 945.67*
- .601–.609 Historical periods
 Add to base number 945.60 the numbers following 945.0 in
 945.01–945.09, e.g., Central Italy during the Fascist period 945.6091
 For ancient history to 476, see 937.6
- .63 *Rome (Roma) province and Vatican City
 Subdivisions are added for Rome province and Vatican City together, for
 Rome province alone
- .634 †Vatican City
 [.634 01–.634 09] Historical periods
 Numbers discontinued; class in 945.634
- .7 *Southern Italy**
 Class here period of Kingdom of Naples, 1266–1815
 For ancient history to 476, see 937.7; for Sicily, see 945.8
- .701 Early history to 774
 Including comprehensive works on Byzantine period, 553–1071, on
 Lombardic period, 568–1076
 Class here comprehensive works on medieval period (Middle Ages)
 [formerly 945.703]
 *For ancient history to 476, see 937.7; for Early Middle Ages, see
 945.702; for Late Middle Ages, see 945.704. For a part of Byzantine
 or Lombardic period not provided for here, see the part, e.g.,
 Byzantine or Lombardic period during 1030–1071 945.703*
- (.701 2) Ancient history to 476
 (Optional number; prefer 937.7)
 Add to base number 945.7012 the numbers following 937.0 in
 937.01–937.09, e.g., Punic Wars 945.70124

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .702 Period of conflict between Byzantines and Arabs to start of Norman period, 774–1030
 Including 962–1030 [*formerly* 945.703]
 Class here comprehensive works on Early Middle Ages (Dark Ages)
For Early Middle Ages during 476–774, see 945.701; for Early Middle Ages during 962–1111, see 945.703
- .703 Norman period, 1030–1186
 Including 1122–1186 [*formerly* 945.704], 11th century
 Comprehensive works on medieval period (Middle Ages) relocated to 945.701; 962–1030 relocated to 945.702
- .704 Period of Swabian dynasties, 1186–1266
 Class here comprehensive works on Late Middle Ages [*formerly* 945.705], 13th century; period of House of Hohenstaufen, 1194–1266
For Late Middle Ages during 1266–1442, see 945.705; for Late Middle Ages during 1442–1492, see 945.706
 1122–1186 relocated to 945.703; 1266–1300 relocated to 945.705
- .705 Period of House of Anjou, 1266–1442
 Including 1266–1300 [*formerly* 945.704]
 Comprehensive works on Late Middle Ages relocated to 945.704; 1442–1494 relocated to 945.706
- .706 Period as part of Kingdom of Aragon, 1442–1516
 Including 1442–1494 [*formerly* 945.705]
 Class here 15th century
For 1400–1442, see 945.705
 1516–1527 relocated to 945.707
- .707 Spanish and Austrian period to Parthenopaeian Republic, 1516–1799
 Including 1516–1527 [*formerly* 945.706], 1796–1799 [*formerly* 947.7082], comprehensive works on period of House of Bourbon
For period of House of Bourbon during 1815–1860, see 945.7083
- .708 1799–1900
- .708 2 Napoleonic period, 1799–1815
 Including 1814–1815 [*formerly* 945.7083]
 1796–1799 relocated to 945.707
- .708 3 1815–1861
 Class here period of Kingdom of the Two Sicilies, 1816–1860
For period of Kingdom of the Two Sicilies in Sicily, see 945.8083
 Napoleonic period during 1814–1815 relocated to 945.7082

- .708 4 Reigns of Victor Emmanuel II and Umberto I, 1861–1900
- .709 1900–
- Class here questione meridionale (Southern question)
- Add to base number 945.709 the numbers following 945.09 in
945.091–945.093, e.g., Southern Italy during the Fascist period 945.7091

.8 *Sicily and adjacent islands

Standard subdivisions are added for Sicily and adjacent islands together, for Sicily alone

Class here period of Kingdom of Sicily, 1130–1815

.801 Early history to 827

Including 774–827 [*formerly* 945.802]; period of Gothic kingdom, 476–535; period of Byzantine Empire, 535–827

Class here comprehensive works on medieval period (Middle Ages) [*formerly* 945.803]

For ancient history to 476, see 937.8; for Early Middle Ages, see 945.802; for Late Middle Ages, see 945.804

(.801 2) Ancient history to 476

(Optional number; prefer 937.8)

Add to base number 945.8012 the numbers following 937.0 in 937.01–937.09, e.g., Punic Wars 945.80124

.802 Arabic period, 827–1061

Including 962–1061 [*formerly* 945.803]; 9th century, 11th century

Class here comprehensive works on Early Middle Ages (Dark Ages)

For Early Middle Ages during 476–827, see 945.801; for Early Middle Ages during 1061–1189, see 945.803

774–827 relocated to 945.801

.803 Norman period, 1061–1189

Including 1122–1189 [*formerly* 945.804]

Comprehensive works on medieval period (Middle Ages) relocated to 945.801; 962–1061 relocated to 945.802

- .804 Period of Swabian dynasties and House of Anjou, 1189–1302
 Including 1300–1302 [*formerly* 945.805]; period of House of
 Hohenstaufen, 1194–1266
 Class here comprehensive works on Late Middle Ages [*formerly*
 945.805]
 For Late Middle Ages during 1302–1412, see 945.805; for Late
 Middle Ages during 1412–1492, see 945.806
 1122–1189 relocated to 945.803
- .805 Period as part of Kingdom of Aragon, 1302–1412
 1300–1302, comprehensive works on Late Middle Ages relocated to
 945.804; 1412–1494 relocated to 945.806
- .806 Spanish period, 1412–1712
 Including 1412–1494 [*formerly* 945.805]
 Class here 1527–1712 [*formerly* 945.807]
- .807 First period of House of Bourbon, 1712–1799
 Including 1796–1799 [*formerly* 945.8082]
 Class here comprehensive works on period of House of Bourbon
 For period of House of Bourbon during 1815–1860, see 945.8083
 1527–1712 relocated to 945.806
- .808 1799–1900
- .808 2 Napoleonic period, 1799–1815
 Including 1814–1815 [*formerly* 945.8083]
 1796–1799 relocated to 945.807
- .808 3 1815–1861
 Class here period of Kingdom of the Two Sicilies in Sicily,
 1816–1860
 Class comprehensive works on Kingdom of the Two Sicilies in
 945.7083
 Napoleonic period during 1814–1815 relocated to 945.8082
- .808 4 Reigns of Victor Emmanuel II and Umberto I, 1861–1900
- .809 1900–
 Add to base number 945.809 the numbers following 945.09 in
 945.091–945.093, e.g., Sicily during the Fascist period 945.8091
- .85 *Malta

- .850 1 Early history to 1530
 For ancient history to 476, see 937.85
- (.850 12) Ancient history to 476
 (Optional number; prefer 937.85)
 Add to base number 945.85012 the numbers following 937.0 in
 937.01–937.09, e.g., early period of Roman Empire 945.850127
- .850 2 Period of Knights of Malta, 1530–1798
 Including 16th century
 For 1500–1530, see 945.8501
- .850 3 1798–1964
 Including French period, 1798–1800
 Class here British period, 1800–1964; 20th century
 For 1964 to present, see 945.8504
- .850 4 1964–
- .9 *Sardinia**
- .901 Early history to 534
 Including 453–476 [*formerly* 937.909]; Vandal kingdom, 476–534; 5th
 century
 For ancient history to 534, see 937.9
 534–774 relocated to 945.902
- (.901 2) Ancient history to 453
 (Optional number; prefer 937.9)
 Add to base number 945.9012 the numbers following 937.0 in
 937.01–937.09, e.g., Punic Wars 945.90124
- .902 Byzantine period, 534–900
 Including 534–774 [*formerly* 945.901]; 6th century
 Class here comprehensive works on medieval period (Middle Ages)
 [*formerly* 945.903]; comprehensive works on Early Middle Ages (Dark
 Ages)
 *For Early Middle Ages during 453–534, see 945.901; for Late Middle
 Ages, see 945.903*
 900–962 relocated to 945.903

- .903 Period of Giudicati, 900–1323
 Including 900–962 [*formerly* 945.902], 1122–1300 [*formerly* 945.904],
 1300–1323 [*formerly* 945.905]
 Class here comprehensive works on Late Middle Ages [*formerly*
 945.905]
 For Late Middle Ages during 1323–1479, see 945.905; for Late
 Middle Ages during 1479–1492, see 945.906
 Comprehensive works on medieval period (Middle Ages) relocated to
 945.902
- [.904] 1122–1300
 Relocated to 945.903
- .905 Period as part of Kingdom of Aragon, 1323–1479
 1300–1323, comprehensive works on Late Middle Ages relocated to
 945.903; 1479–1494 relocated to 945.906
- .906 Spanish period, 1479–1717
 Including 1479–1494 [*formerly* 945.905], 1527–1717 [*formerly* 945.907]
- .907 1717–1793
 Class here Kingdom of Sardinia in Sardinia, 1718–1861
 Class comprehensive works on Kingdom of Sardinia in 945.107
 For Kingdom of Sardinia in Sardinia during 1793–1848, see
 945.9082; for Kingdom of Sardinia in Sardinia during 1848–1861,
 see 945.9083
 1527–1717 relocated to 945.906; 1793–1796 relocated to 945.9082
- .908 1793–1900
- .908 2 Period of antifeudal movements prior to Albertine Statute, 1793–1848
 Including 1793–1796 [*formerly* 945.907], 1814–1848 [*formerly*
 945.9083]
- .908 3 Period of proclamation of Albertine Statute to the start of Kingdom of
 Italy, 1848–1861
 1814–1848 relocated to 945.9082
- .908 4 Reigns of Victor Emmanuel II and Umberto I, 1861–1900
- .909 1900–
 Add to base number 945.909 the numbers following 945.09 in
 945.091–945.093, e.g., Sardinia during the Fascist period 945.9091

946 Spain, Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal

- .000 1–.000 8 Standard subdivisions of Spain, Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal together
 As modified under 930–990

.000 9 Historical periods; areas, regions, places; biography of Spain, Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal together

.000 901–.000 905 Historical periods

Add to base number 946.00090 the numbers following
 --090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., Spain,
 Andorra, Gibraltar, Portugal together during the Middle Ages
 946.000902

.000 91–.000 99 Areas, regions, places in general; biography

As modified under 930–990

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Spain

As modified under 930–990

> 946.01–946.08 Historical periods of Spain

Class comprehensive works in 946

.01 Early history to 711

Class here period of Visigothic domination, 415–711

For ancient history to 415, see 936.6

(.012) Ancient history to 415

(Optional number; prefer 936.6)

(.012 1) Early history to ca. 1000 B.C.

(Optional number; prefer 936.601)

(.012 2) Period of Greek, Phoenician, early Celtic and Germanic contacts, ca. 1000–218 B.C.

(Optional number; prefer 936.602)

(.012 3) Roman period, 218 B.C.–415 A.D.

(Optional number; prefer 936.603)

.02 Period of Moorish dynasties and reconquest, 711–1479

.03 Reign of Ferdinand V and Isabella I, 1479–1516

Including union of Castile and Aragon

.04 Period of House of Habsburg, 1516–1700

Class here 16th century

*For 1500–1516, see 946.03; for 1598–1599, later period of House of
 Habsburg, see 946.051*

.042 Reign of Charles I, 1516–1556

.043 Reign of Philip II, 1556–1598

.05 Later period of House of Habsburg and period of House of Bourbon,
 1598–1808

- .051 Later period of House of Habsburg, 1598–1700
 Including reign of Philip III, 1598–1621
For reign of Philip IV, see 946.052; for reign of Charles II, see 946.053
- .052 Reign of Philip IV, 1621–1665
- .053 Reign of Charles II, 1665–1700
- .054 1700–1808
 Class here comprehensive works on House of Bourbon in Spain
For the reign of a specific Bourbon ruler, see the reign, e.g., reign of Isabella II 946.072
- .055 Reign of Philip V, 1700–1746
 Including Anglo-Spanish War (War of Jenkins' Ear), 1739–1741
 (Option: Class War of Jenkins' Ear in 941.072)
See also 940.2526 for War of the Spanish Succession
- .056 Reign of Ferdinand VI, 1746–1759
- .057 Reign of Charles III, 1759–1788
- .058 Reign of Charles IV, 1788–1808
- .06 Period of Peninsular War and rule of Joseph Bonaparte, 1808–1814
 Class comprehensive works on Peninsular War in 940.27
- .07 1814–1931
- .072 Reigns of Ferdinand VII and Isabella II, 1814–1868
 Including first Bourbon Restoration
 (Option: Class here Spanish-Moroccan War; prefer 964.03)
- .073 1868–1874
 Including revolution 1868–1871; second Bourbon Restoration, 1871–1873; First Republic, 1873–1874
- .074 Reigns of Alfonso XII and Alfonso XIII, 1874–1931
 (Option: Class here Spanish-American War; prefer 973.89)
- .08 1931–
 Class here 20th century
For 1900–1931, see 946.074
- .081 ‡Period of Second Republic, 1931–1939
 Class here Civil War, 1936–1939
- .082 Period of Francisco Franco, 1939–1975

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

- .082 4 1939–1949
- .082 5 1950–1959
- .082 6 1960–1969
- .082 7 1970–1975
- .083 Reign of Juan Carlos I, 1975–
- .7 *Eastern Spain and Andorra**
- Subdivisions are added for eastern Spain and Andorra together, for eastern Spain alone
- .79 †Andorra
- For ancient history to 415, see 936.6*
- .8 *Andalusia autonomous community and Gibraltar**
- Subdivisions are added for Andalusia autonomous community and Gibraltar together, for Andalusia autonomous community alone
- .89 †Gibraltar
- For ancient history to 415, see 936.6*
- .9 *Portugal**
- .901 Early history to 1143
- For ancient history to 415, see 936.6*
- (.901 2) Ancient history to 415
- (Optional number; prefer 936.6)
- Add to base number 946.9012 the numbers following 946.012 in 946.0121–946.0123, e.g., period of Greek contacts 946.90122
- .902 1143–1640
- Including 12th century
- For 1100–1143, see 946.901*
- .903 Period of House of Braganza, 1640–1910
- .903 2 1640–1750
- Including restoration of Portuguese monarchy; 17th century, 18th century
- For 1600–1640, see 946.902; for 1750–1799, see 946.9033*
- .903 3 1750–1807
- Including Pombaline reforms

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .903 4 Period of monarchy in exile, 1807–1820
 Including period of Peninsular War
 Class comprehensive works on Peninsular War in 940.27
- .903 5 1820–1847
- .903 6 1847–1910
 Class here 19th century
 For a specific part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1807–1820 946.9034
- .904 1910–
- .904 1 Period of Republic, 1910–1926
- .904 2 1926–1968
 Including period of Salazar, 1933–1968
 Class here Novo Estado, 1933–1974
 For Novo Estado during 1968–1974, see 946.9043
- .904 3 1968–1974
- .904 4 1974–

947 **Russia and neighboring east European countries**

Class here eastern Europe

Subdivisions are added for Russia and neighboring east European countries together, for Russia alone

SUMMARY

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| 947.000 1–.000 9 | Standard subdivisions of eastern Europe |
| .001–.009 | Standard subdivisions of Russia |
| .01–.08 | Historical periods of Russia |
| .5 | Caucasus |
| .6 | Moldova |
| .7 | Ukraine |
| .8 | Belarus |
| .9 | Lithuania, Latvia, Estonia |
- .000 1–.000 8 Standard subdivisions of eastern Europe
 As modified under 930–990
- .000 9 Historical periods; areas, regions, places; biography of eastern Europe
- .000 901–.000 905 Historical periods
 Add to base number 947.00090 the numbers following —090
 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., eastern Europe
 during the Middle Ages 947.000902
- .000 91–.000 99 Areas, regions, places in general; biography
 As modified under 930–990

- .001-.009 Standard subdivisions of Russia
 As modified under 930-990
-
- > 947.01-947.08 Historical periods of Russia
 Class comprehensive works in 947
- .01 Early history to 862
 Including 9th century
 For 862-899, see 947.02
- .02 Period of Kievan Rus, 862-1240
- .03 Period of Tatar suzerainty, 1240-1462
 Including 13th century, 15th century
 Class here 14th century
 For 1200-1240, see 947.02; for 1462-1499, see 947.041
- .04 1462-1689
- .041 Reign of Ivan III, 1462-1505
- .042 Reign of Basil III, 1505-1533
- .043 Reign of Ivan IV (the Terrible), 1533-1584
 Including Livonian War, 1557-1582
 (Option: Class Livonian War in 948.50322)
 Class here 16th century
 *For a specific part of 16th century not provided for here, see the part,
 e.g., 1505-1533 947.042*
- .044 Reigns of Theodore I and Boris Godunov, 1584-1605
- .045 Time of Troubles, 1605-1613
 Including reigns of False Dmitri I and False Dmitri II
- .046 Period of House of Romanov, 1613-1917
 For reigns of specific Romanovs, see 947.047-947.083
- .047 Reign of Michael, 1613-1645
 Class here 17th century
 *For a specific part of 17th century not provided for here, see the part,
 e.g., 1689-1699 947.05*
- .048 Reign of Alexis, 1645-1676
- .049 Reigns of Theodore III and regent Sophia, 1676-1689
- .05 Reign of Peter I (the Great), 1689-1725
 Including Great Northern War, 1700-1721
 (Option: Class Great Northern War in 948.04 or 948.50345)

- .06 1725–1796
Class here 18th century
For 1700–1725, see 947.05; for 1796–1799, see 947.071
- .061 Reigns of Catherine I, Peter II, Anna, Ivan VI, 1725–1741
- .062 Reigns of Elizabeth and Peter III, 1741–1762
- .063 Reign of Catherine II (the Great), 1762–1796
- .07 1796–1855
Class here 19th century
For 1855–1900, see 947.08
- .071 Reign of Paul I, 1796–1801
- .072 Reign of Alexander I, 1801–1825
Including period of invasion by Napoleon, 1812
- .073 Reign of Nicholas I, 1825–1855
- .073 8 ‡Crimean War, 1853–1856
(Option: Class in 941.081)
- .08 1855–
- .081 Reign of Alexander II, 1855–1881
Russo-Turkish War, 1877–1878, relocated to 949.60387
- .082 Reign of Alexander III, 1881–1894
- .083 Reign of Nicholas II, 1894–1917
(Option: Class here Russo-Japanese War; prefer 952.031)
- .084 1917–1991
Class here 20th century; Communist period; comprehensive works on Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, 1923–1991
For 1900–1917, see 947.083; for 1953–1991, see 947.085. For a specific part of Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, see the part, e.g., Ukraine 947.7085
- .084 1 Period of revolutions, Alexander Kerensky, Vladimir Il'ich Lenin, 1917–1924
- .084 2 Period of Joseph Stalin, 1924–1953
(Option: Class here Russo-Finnish War; prefer 948.97032)
- .085 1953–1991
- .085 2 Periods of Georgi Malenkov, Nikolay Aleksandrovich Bulganin, Nikita Sergeevich Khrushchev, 1953–1964

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

- .085 3 Period of Leonid Il'ich Brezhnev and Aleksey Nikolayevich Kosygin, 1964–1982
- .085 4 Periods of Û. V. Andropov, K. U. Chernenko, and Mikhail Sergeevich Gorbachev, 1982–1991
- .086 1991–
- Class here comprehensive works on Commonwealth of Independent States, 1991–
- For a specific part of Commonwealth of Independent States, see the part, e.g., Ukraine 947.7086*
- .086 1 Administration of Boris Nikolayevich Yeltsin, 1991–1999
- .086 2 Administration of Vladimir Vladimirovich Putin, 1999–2008
- .086 3 Administration of Dmitry Medvedev, 2008–

> **947.5–947.9 European countries of former Soviet Union other than Russia; Caucasus area of Russia**

Except for modifications shown under specific entries, add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 07 1796–1855
Class here period as part of Russia
Add to 07 the numbers following 947.07 in 947.071–947.073, e.g., reign of Paul I 071
For a period as part of Russia not provided for here, see the period, e.g., period during reign of Alexander II 081
- 08 1855–
- 081 Reign of Alexander II, 1855–1881
- 082 Reign of Alexander III, 1881–1894
- 083 Reign of Nicholas II, 1894–1917
- 084 1917–1953
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1917, see 083; for 1953–1991, see 085; for 1991–1999, see 086
- 0841 1917–1940
Class here period of independent countries, ca. 1917–ca. 1920
- 0842 Period of Joseph Stalin, 1940–1953
- 085 1953–1991
Class here period as part of Soviet Union, ca. 1920–1991
For ca. 1920–1940, see 0841; for period of Joseph Stalin, 1940–1953, see 0842
- 0852 Periods of Georgi Malenkov, Nikolay Aleksandrovich Bulganin, Nikita Sergeevich Khrushchev, 1953–1964
- 0853 Period of Leonid Il'ich Brezhnev and Aleksey Nikolayevich Kosygin, 1964–1982
- 0854 Periods of Û. V. Andropov, K. U. Chernenko, and Mikhail Sergeevich Gorbachev, 1982–1991
- 086 1991–

Class comprehensive works in 947

.5 *†Caucasus

(Option: Class here ancient Caucasus; prefer 939.53)

.52 *Caucasus area of Russia

.520 1–.520 8 Historical periods

Add to base number 947.520 the numbers following 947.0 in 947.01–947.08, e.g., later 20th century 947.52085

.54 *†Azerbaijan

(Option: Class here ancient Albania; prefer 939.534)

.56 *†Armenia

Class comprehensive works on Armenia region in 956.62

.58 *†Georgia

(Options: Class here ancient Iberia; prefer 939.536. Class here ancient Colchis; prefer 939.538)

.6 *†Moldova

Moldova to ca. 640 relocated to 939.88

.7 *†Ukraine

(Options: Class here ancient Black Sea region; prefer 939.5. Class here ancient Sarmatia; prefer 939.52)

.8 *†Belarus**.9 *†Lithuania, Latvia, Estonia**

Class here Baltic States

.93 *Lithuania

.930 6 Period of union with Poland, 1569–1795

.930 7–.930 8 †1795–

.96 *Latvia

.960 5–.960 6 1721–1796

Add to base number 947.960 the numbers following 947.0 in 947.05–947.06, e.g., reign of Peter I 947.9605

.960 7–.960 8 †1796–

.98 *Estonia

.980 5–.980 6 1721–1796

Add to base number 947.980 the numbers following 947.0 in 947.05–947.06, e.g., reign of Peter I 947.9805

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add historical periods as instructed under 947.5–947.9

.980 7-.980 8 †1796-

948 *Scandinavia

Class here northern Europe

SUMMARY

948.01-.07	Historical periods
.1	Norway
.2	Southeastern Norway (Østlandet)
.3	Southwestern Norway (Sørlandet and Vestlandet)
.4	Central and northern Norway (Trøndelag and Nord-Norge)
.5	Sweden
.6	Southern Sweden (Götaland)
.7	Central Sweden (Svealand)
.8	Northern Sweden (Norrland)
.9	Denmark and Finland

- > 948.01-948.07 Historical periods
 Class comprehensive works in 948
- .01 Early history to ca. 800
For ancient history to 481, see 936.8
- (.012) Ancient history to 481
 (Optional number; prefer 936.8)
- .02 Medieval period, ca. 800-1523
For 1387-1523, see 948.03
- .022 Viking period, ca. 800-ca. 1050
 Including 11th century
For ca. 1050-1099, see 948.023
- .023 Ca. 1050-1387
- .03 1387-1523
 Class here period of Union of Kalmar, 1397-1523
- .04 1523-1814
 (Option: Class here Great Northern War; prefer 947.05)
- .05 1814-1905
- .06 1905-1999
- .061 1905-1939
- .062 1940-1945

*Add as instructed under 930-990

†Add historical periods as instructed under 947.5-947.9

- .063 1945–1969
- .064 1970–1999
- .07 2000–
- .071 2000–2019
- .071 1 2000–2009
- .071 2 2010–2019
- .1 *Norway**
- For southeastern Norway, see 948.2; for southwestern Norway, see 948.3; for central and northern Norway, see 948.4*
- .101 Early history to 1536
- Including period of Union of Kalmar, 1397–1523
- Class here medieval period
- For ancient history to 481, see 936.81*
- (.101 2) Ancient history to 481
- (Optional number; prefer 936.81)
- .101 4 Viking period, ca. 800–ca. 1050
- Including 11th century
- For ca. 1050–1099, see 948.101*
- .102 Period of union with Denmark, 1536–1814
- Including 16th century
- For 1500–1536, see 948.101*
- .103 Period of union with Sweden, 1814–1905
- .103 1 1814–1884
- .103 6 1884–1905
- .104 1905–1999
- .104 1 1905–1945
- .104 3 1945–1969
- .104 4 1970–1999
- .105 2000–
- .105 1 2000–2019
- .105 11 2000–2009
- .105 12 2010–2019

.2 *Southeastern Norway (Østlandet)**.201–.205** Historical periods

Add to base number 948.20 the numbers following 948.10 in
948.101–948.105, e.g., Viking period 948.2014

.3 *Southwestern Norway (Sørlandet and Vestlandet)**.301–.305** Historical periods

Add to base number 948.30 the numbers following 948.10 in
948.101–948.105, e.g., Viking period 948.3014

.4 *Central and northern Norway (Trøndelag and Nord-Norge)**.401–.405** Historical periods

Add to base number 948.40 the numbers following 948.10 in
948.101–948.105, e.g., Viking period 948.4014

.5 *Sweden

*For southern Sweden, see 948.6; for central Sweden, see 948.7; for northern
Sweden, see 948.8*

.501 Early history to 1523

Class here medieval period

*For ancient history to 481, see 936.85***(.501 2)** Ancient history to 481

(Optional number; prefer 936.85)

.501 4 Viking period, ca. 800–ca. 1050

Including 11th century

*For ca. 1050–1099, see 948.5018***.501 8** Ca. 1050–1523**.501 81** Ca. 1050–1397**.501 82** Period of Union of Kalmar, 1397–1523**.503** 1523–1809**.503 2** Period of Vasa, 1523–1611Class here comprehensive works on period of House of Vasa,
1523–1654*For 1611–1654, see 948.5034***.503 21** Reign of Gustav I Vasa, 1523–1560**.503 22** Reign of Erik XIV, 1560–1568

(Option: Class here Livonian War; prefer 947.043)

- .503 23 Reign of John III, 1568–1592
- .503 24 Reign of Sigismund III, 1592–1599
- .503 25 Reign of Charles IX, 1599–1611
- .503 4 Age of Greatness, 1611–1718
- .503 41 Reign of Gustav II Adolf, 1611–1632
- .503 42 Reign of Christina, 1632–1654
- .503 43 Reign of Charles X Gustav, 1654–1660
- .503 44 Reign of Charles XI, 1660–1697
- .503 45 Reign of Charles XII, 1697–1718
 (Option: Class here Great Northern War; prefer 947.05)
- .503 6 Age of Freedom, 1718–1772
 Class here 18th century
 For 1700–1718, see 948.5034; for 1772–1799, see 948.5038
- .503 61 Reign of Ulrika Eleonora, 1719–1720
- .503 62 Reign of Fredrik I, 1720–1751
- .503 63 1751–1772
 Class here reign of Adolf Fredrik, 1751–1771
- .503 8 Gustavian Period, 1772–1809
- .503 81 Reign of Gustav III, 1772–1792
- .503 82 Reign of Gustav IV Adolf, 1792–1809
- .504 1809–1905
- .504 1 1809–1872
 Including reigns of Charles XIII, 1809–1818; Charles XIV John, 1818–1844; Oscar I, 1844–1859; Charles XV, 1859–1872; Riksdag Act, 1866
- .504 2 Reign of Oscar II, 1872–1907
 For reign of Oscar II during 1905–1907, see 948.5051
- .505 1905–1999
- .505 1 1905–1945
 Class here reign of Gustav V, 1907–1950
 For reign of Gustav V during 1945–1950, see 948.5053
- .505 3 1945–1969
 Class here reign of Gustav VI Adolf, 1950–1973
 For reign of Gustav VI Adolf during 1970–1973, see 948.5054

.505 4 1970–1999

Class here Carl XVI Gustaf, 1973 to present

For reign of Carl XVI Gustaf, 2000 to present, see 948.506

.506 2000–

.6 *Southern Sweden (Götaland)

.601–.606 Historical periods

Add to base number 948.60 the numbers following 948.50 in
948.501–948.506, e.g., period of House of Vasa 948.6032

.7 *Central Sweden (Svealand)

.701–.706 Historical periods

Add to base number 948.70 the numbers following 948.50 in
948.501–948.506, e.g., period of House of Vasa 948.7032

.8 *Northern Sweden (Norrland)

.801–.806 Historical periods

Add to base number 948.80 the numbers following 948.50 in
948.501–948.506, e.g., period of House of Vasa 948.8032

.9 Denmark and Finland

.900 1–.900 9 Standard subdivisions of Denmark

As modified under 930–990

> 948.901–948.906 Historical periods of Denmark

Class comprehensive works in 948.9

.901 Early history to 1387

Class here medieval period

For ancient history to 481, see 936.89; for 1387–1536, see 948.902

(.901 2) Ancient history to 481

(Optional number; prefer 936.89)

.901 3 481–ca. 800

.901 4 Viking period, ca. 800–ca. 1050

Including 11th century

For ca. 1050–1099, see 948.9015

- .901 5 Ca. 1050–1387
 Class here period of Estrith dynasty, 1047–1448
 For 1387–1448, see 948.902
- .902 Period of union with Norway and Sweden, 1387–1536
 Class here period of Union of Kalmar, 1397–1523
- .903 Period of union with Norway, 1536–1814
 Including 16th century
 For Great Northern War, see 947.05; for 1500–1536, see 948.902
- .904 1814–1906
 (Option: Class here Schleswig-Holstein War; prefer 943.076)
- .905 1906–1999
- .905 1 1906–1945
- .905 3 1945–1969
- .905 4 1970–1999
- .906 2000–
- .906 1 2000–2019
- .906 11 2000–2009
- .906 12 2010–2019
- .97 *Finland
- .970 1 Early history to end of Swedish rule, 1809
 For Great Northern War, see 947.05
- .970 2 Period of Russian rule, 1809–1917
- .970 3 1917–
- .970 31 1917–1939
- .970 32 1939–1945
 Including Russo-Finnish War, 1939–1940
 (Option: Class Russo-Finnish War in 947.0842)
- .970 33 1945–1982
- .970 34 1982–

949 Other parts of Europe

*Add as instructed under 930–990

SUMMARY

- 949.1 **Northwestern islands**
- .2 **Netherlands**
- .3 **Belgium and Luxembourg**
- .4 **Switzerland**
- .5 **Greece**
- .6 **Balkan Peninsula**
- .7 **Serbia, Croatia, Slovenia, Bosnia and Hercegovina, Montenegro, Macedonia**
- .8 **Romania**
- .9 **Bulgaria**

- .1 *Northwestern islands**
- .12 *Iceland
- .120 1 Early history to 1262
 Including 13th century
 For 1262–1299, see 949.1202
- .120 2 Medieval period, 1262–1550
 Including 16th century
 For 1550–1599, see 949.1203
- .120 3 1550–1874
 Including 19th century
 For 1874–1899, see 949.1204
- .120 4 Period of Governors, 1874–1904
- .120 5 1904–1999
 Including independence under Danish crown, 1918–1944; period of Republic, 1944–1999
- .120 6 2000–
 Class here comprehensive works on period of Republic, 1944 to present
 For period of Republic, 1944–1999, see 949.1205
- .15 †Faeroes
- .2 *Netherlands**
- Class here comprehensive works on Low Countries, on Benelux countries
 For southern Low Countries, see 949.3
- .201 Early history to 1477
 For ancient history to 486, see 936.92

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- (.201 2) Ancient history to 486
(Optional number; prefer 936.92)
- .202 Period of House of Habsburg, 1477–1568
Including 16th century
For 1568–1599, see 949.203
- .203 Period of struggle for independence, 1568–1648
- .204 Period of Dutch Republic, 1648–1795
Including Anglo-Dutch Wars, 1652–1653, 1665–1667; Great Wars against England, France, and allies, 1672–1678; Coalition War, 1690–1697; 17th century
(Option: Class Anglo-Dutch Wars in 941.06)
For 1600–1648, see 949.203
- .205 1795–1830
Including Batavian Republic, 1795–1806; Kingdom of Holland, 1806–1813
Class here Napoleonic era
- .206 1830–1901
Class here 19th century
For 1800–1830, see 949.205
- .207 1901–
- .207 1 Reign of Wilhelmina, 1890–1948
For reign of Wilhelmina during 1890–1901, see 949.206
- .207 2 Reign of Juliana, 1948–1980
- .207 3 Reign of Beatrix, 1980–
- .3 *Belgium and Luxembourg**
Subdivisions are added for Belgium and Luxembourg together, for Belgium alone
- .301 Early history to 1477
For ancient history to 486, see 936.93
- (.301 2) Ancient history to 486
(Optional number; prefer 936.93)
- .302 Period of foreign rule, 1477–1830

- .303 1830–1909
 Class here 19th century
 For 1800–1830, see 949.302
- .304 1909–
- .304 1 Reign of Albert I, 1909–1934
- .304 2 Reign of Léopold III, 1934–1951
- .304 3 Reign of Baudouin I, 1951–1993
- .304 4 Reign of Albert II, 1993–
- .35 ***Luxembourg**
- .350 1 Early history to 1482
 For ancient history to 486, see 936.935
- (.350 12) Ancient history to 486
 (Optional number; prefer 936.935)
- .350 2 Period of foreign rule, 1482–1830
- .350 3 1830–1890
 Class here 19th century
 For 1800–1830, see 949.3502; for 1890–1899, see 949.35041
- .350 4 1890–
- .350 41 1890–1918
- .350 42 1918–1945
- .350 43 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1918, see 949.35041; for 1918–1945, see 949.35042
- .350 44 2000–
- .4 *Switzerland**
- .401 Early history to 1291
 For ancient history to 486, see 936.94
- (.401 2) Ancient history to 486
 (Optional number; prefer 936.94)
- .402 1291–1499
- .403 1499–1648

- .404 1648–1798
Including 17th century
For 1600–1648, see 949.403
- .405 Napoleonic period, 1798–1815
Class here Helvetic Republic, 1798–1803
- .406 1815–1900
- .406 2 Period of restoration, 1815–1848
- .406 3 1848–1900
- .407 1900–
- .407 1 1900–1918
- .407 2 1918–1945
- .407 3 1945–1999
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1918, see 949.4071; for 1918–1945, see 949.4072
- .407 4 2000–
- .5 *Greece**
- .501 Early history to 717
For ancient history to 323, see 938
- (.501 2) Ancient history to 323
(Optional number; prefer 938)
Add to base number 949.5012 the numbers following 938.0 in 938.01–938.09, e.g., Persian Wars 949.50123
- .501 3 Early Byzantine period, 323–717
Including wars against Avars and Persians
Class here Eastern Roman (Byzantine) Empire, 323–717
- .502 Middle Byzantine period, 717–1081
Class here comprehensive works on Byzantine Empire
For early Byzantine period, see 949.5013; for late Byzantine period, see 949.503. For a specific part of Byzantine Empire, see the part, e.g., Byzantine Empire in Egypt 932.023
- .503 Late Byzantine period, 1081–1204
Including Fourth Crusade, 1202–1204

- .504 Period of Latin and Greek states and Turkish conquest, 1204–1453
Including 15th century
For 1453–1499, see 949.505
- .505 Period of Turkish domination, 1453–1821
- .506 War of Independence, 1821–1830
- .507 1830–
- .507 1 1830–1833
- .507 2 Period of monarchy, 1833–1924
Including Greco-Turkish War, 1896–1897
Class here 19th century
For Balkan Wars, see 949.6039. For a specific part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1821–1830 949.506
- .507 3 Period of Republic, 1924–1935
- .507 4 The period of the restoration of the monarchy, 1935–1967
Class here 20th century
For a specific part of 20th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1974–1999 949.5076
- .507 5 Period of military junta, 1967–1974
- .507 6 Period of restoration of democratic rule, 1974–
- .58 *Former Aegean Islands region (Aigaio Nēsoi periphēria)
- .580 1 Early history to 717
Number built according to instructions under 930–990
For ancient history to 323, see 939.1
- (.580 12) Ancient history to 323
(Optional number; prefer 939.1)
Add to base number 949.58012 the numbers following 938.0 in 938.01–938.09, e.g., mythical age to 775 B.C. 949.580121
- .59 *Crete region (Krētē periphēria)
- .590 1 Early history to 827
For ancient history to 323, see 939.18

- (.590 12) Ancient history to 323
 (Optional number; prefer 939.18)
 Add to base number 949.59012 the numbers following 938.0 in 938.01–938.09, e.g., mythical age to 775 B.C. 949.590121
- .590 13 First Byzantine period, 323–827
- .590 2 Period of Arab rule, 827–961
 Including 9th century, 10th century
For 800–827, see 949.59013; for 961–999, see 949.5903
- .590 3 Second Byzantine period, 961–1206
- .590 4 Period of Venetian rule, 1206–1669
 Including 17th century
For 1669–1699, see 949.5905
- .590 5 Period of Turkish domination, 1669–1898
- .590 6 Period of autonomy, 1898–1913
- .590 7 1913–
- .590 72 Period of incorporation into Greece, 1913–1924
- .590 73–.590 76 1924–
 Add to base number 949.5907 the numbers following 949.507 in 949.5073–949.5076, e.g., restoration of monarchy 949.59074

.6 *Balkan Peninsula

For ancient history to ca. 640, see 939.8

- (.601) Ancient history to ca. 640
 (Optional number; prefer 939.8)
- .602 Ca. 640–1362
 Class here 14th century
For 1362–1399, see 949.6031
- .603 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1362–1913
- .603 1 Period of conquest by Ottoman Empire, 1362–1529
- .603 8 Period of national liberation, 1804–1912
- .603 87 ‡Russo-Turkish War, 1877–1878 [*formerly* 947.081]
- .603 9 ‡Balkan Wars, 1912–1913
- .604 1913–1991

*Add as instructed under 930–990

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

- .604 8 Communist period, 1945–1991
- .605 1991–
- .61 *Turkey in Europe (Eastern Thrace)
- .610 1 Early history to 1918
- .610 11–.610 14 Early history to 1453
- Add to base number 949.6101 the numbers following 949.50 in 949.501–949.504, e.g., period of Byzantine prosperity, 717–1081 949.61012
- For ancient history to 323, see 939.8*
- .610 15 1453–1918
- Class here period of Ottoman empire, 1453–1922
- For 1918–1922, see 949.61023*
- .610 2–.610 4 1918–
- Add to base number 949.610 the numbers following 956.10 in 956.102–956.104, e.g., 1918–1923 949.61023
- .65 *Albania
- .650 1 Early history to 1912
- For ancient history to 323, see 939.8*
- (.650 12) Ancient history to 323
- (Optional number; prefer 939.8)
- .650 2 1912–1946
- .650 3 1946–1992
- Class here period of People’s Republic, 1946–1991; 20th century
- For a specific part of 20th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1912–1946 949.6502*
- .650 4 1992–
- .7 *Serbia, Croatia, Slovenia, Bosnia and Hercegovina, Montenegro, Macedonia**
- .701 Early history to 1918
- For ancient history to ca. 640, see 939.87; for Balkan Wars, see 949.6039*
- (.701 2) Ancient history to ca. 640
- (Optional number; prefer 939.87)

- .702 Yugoslavia, 1918–1991
 Class here comprehensive works on former Yugoslavia, 20th century
For 1900–1918, see 949.701; for 1991–1999, see 949.703; for Yugoslavia (1991–2003), see 949.7103
- .702 1 Period of Kingdom, 1918–1939
 Class 1939–1941 in 949.7022
- .702 2 Period of World War II, 1939–1945
- .702 3 Administration of Josip Broz Tito, 1945–1980
- .702 4 1980–1991
- .703 Period as sovereign nations, 1991–
See also 949.71031 for Yugoslavia (1991–2003)
- .71 *Serbia
- .710 1 Early history to 1918
For ancient history to ca. 640, see 939.87
- (.710 11) Ancient history to ca. 640
 (Optional number; prefer 939.87)
- .710 12 Ca. 640–1389
- .710 13 Turkish period, 1389–1878
For 1804–1878, see 949.71014
- .710 14 Period of revolt and autonomy, 1804–1878
 Class here 19th century
For 1800–1804, see 949.71013; for 1878–1899, see 949.71015
- .710 15 Period of independence, 1878–1918
- .710 2 1918–1991
 Class here 20th century
 Add to base number 949.7102 the numbers following 949.702 in 949.7021–949.7024, e.g., period of World War II 949.71022
For 1900–1918, see 949.71015; for 1991–1999, see 949.7103
- .710 3 1991–
- .710 31 1991–2006
 Class here Yugoslavia (1991–2003), Serbia and Montenegro (2003–2006)
 Class Yugoslavia (1918–1991) in 949.702
For Montenegro, see 949.745

- .710 315 ‡Kosovo Civil War, 1998–1999
- .710 32 2006–
- .72 *Croatia
- .720 1–.720 3 Historical periods
Add to base number 949.720 the numbers following 949.70 in 949.701–949.703, e.g., period of World War II 949.72022
- .73 *Slovenia
- .730 1–.730 3 Historical periods
Add to base number 949.730 the numbers following 949.70 in 949.701–949.703, e.g., period of World War II 949.73022
- .74 *Bosnia and Hercegovina, Montenegro
- .742 *Bosnia and Hercegovina
- .742 01–.742 03 Historical periods
Add to base number 949.7420 the numbers following 949.70 in 949.701–949.703, e.g., period of World War II 949.742022
- .745 *Montenegro
- .745 01–.745 02 Historical periods
Add to base number 949.7450 the numbers following 949.70 in 949.701–949.702, e.g., period of World War II 949.745022
- .745 03 1991–
- .745 031 1991–2006
Class here period as part of Yugoslavia (1991–2003), Serbia and Montenegro (2003–2006)
Class comprehensive works on Yugoslavia (1991–2003), on Serbia and Montenegro (2003–2006) in 949.71031
- .745 032 2006–
- .76 *Macedonia
- .760 1–.760 3 Historical periods
Add to base number 949.760 the numbers following 949.70 in 949.701–949.703, e.g., period of World War II 949.76022
- .8 *Romania**
- .801 Early history to 1861
For ancient history to ca. 640, see 939.88
- (.801 2) Ancient history to ca. 640
(Optional number; prefer 939.88)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

- .801 3 Ca. 640–1250
Including 13th century
For 1250–1299, see 949.8014
- .801 4 Period of Wallachia and Moldavia principalities, 1250–ca. 1500
- .801 5 Turkish period, ca. 1500–1821
Including reign of Michael the Brave, 1593–1601; Phanarist period, 1711–1821
- .801 6 1821–1861
Class here 19th century
For 1800–1821, see 949.8015; for 1861–1899, see 949.802
- .802 Period of monarchy, 1861–1947
Class here period of Kingdom, 1881–1947; 20th century
For Balkan Wars, see 949.6039; for 1947–1999, see 949.803
- .803 1947–
- .803 1 Period of People's Republic, 1947–1989
- .803 2 1989–
- .83 *Black Sea area
For early history to 640, see 939.51
- .9 *Bulgaria**
- .901 Early history to 1878
For ancient history to ca. 640, see 939.89
- (.901 2) Ancient history to ca. 640
(Optional number; prefer 939.89)
- .901 3 Ca. 640–1018
Class here First Bulgarian Empire, ca. 680–1014
- .901 4 Period of Byzantine rule and Second Bulgarian Empire, 1018–1396
- .901 5 Turkish period, 1396–1878
- .902 1878–1946
Class here 20th century
For 1946–1999, see 949.903
- .902 2 1878–1918
For Balkan Wars, see 949.6039
- .902 3 1918–1946

*Add as instructed under 930–990

- .903 1946--
 .903 1 Period of People's Republic, 1946-1991
 .903 2 1991--

950 History of Asia

SUMMARY

- 950.01--.09** Standard subdivisions
 .1-.4 [Historical periods]
- 951** China and adjacent areas
952 Japan
953 Arabian Peninsula and adjacent areas
954 India and neighboring south Asian countries
955 Iran
956 Middle East (Near East)
957 Siberia (Asiatic Russia)
958 Central Asia
959 Southeast Asia
- .01--.09** Standard subdivisions
 As modified under 930-990
- .1** **Early history to 1162**
 Including 12th century
For 1162-1199, see 950.21
- .2** **1162-1480**
 Class here Mongol Empire
- .21** 1162-1227
 Class here reign of Genghis Khan, ca. 1200-1227
- .22** 1227-1294
 Class here reign of Kublai Khan, ca. 1259-1294; 13th century
For 1200-1227, see 950.21; for 1294-1299, see 950.23
- .23** 1294-1336
- .24** 1336-1405
 Class here reign of Timur (Tamerlane), ca. 1358-1405; 14th century
For 1300-1336, see 950.23
- .25** 1405-1480
 Class here 15th century
For 1400-1405, see 950.24; for 1480-1499, see 950.3
- .3** **Period of European exploration and penetration, 1480-1905**
- .4** **1905--**

- .41 1905–1945
 .42 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1905, see 950.3; for 1905–1945, see 950.41
 .424 1945–1949
 .425 1950–1959
 .426 1960–1969
 .427 1970–1979
 .428 1980–1989
 .429 1990–1999
 .43 2000–
 .431 2000–2019
 .431 1 2000–2009
 .431 2 2010–2019

951 *China and adjacent areas

Subdivisions are added for China and adjacent areas together, for China alone

> 951.01–951.06 Historical periods of China and adjacent areas together, of China alone

Class comprehensive works in 951

- .01 Early history to 960
 For ancient history to 420, see 931
 (.011–.014) Ancient history to 420
 (Optional numbers; prefer 931)
 Add to base number 951.01 the numbers following 931.0 in 931.01–931.04, e.g., Shang dynasty 951.012
 .015 Period of Northern and Southern dynasties, 420–581
 .016 Period of Sui dynasty, 581–618
 .017 Period of Tang dynasty, 618–907
 .018 Period of Five dynasties and Ten kingdoms, 907–960
 Class here 10th century
 For 900–907, see 951.017; for 960–999, see 951.024
 .02 960–1644

*Add as instructed under 930–990

- .024 Period of Song dynasty, 960–1279
- .025 1279–1368
Class here period of Yuan (Mongol) dynasty, 1271–1368; 14th century
For period of Yuan dynasty during 1271–1279, see 951.024; for 1368–1399, see 951.026.
- .026 Period of Ming dynasty, 1368–1644
- .03 Period of Qing (Manchu) dynasty, 1644–1912
- .032 1644–1795
Including 17th century
For 1600–1644, see 951.026
- .033 1796–1850
Including Opium War, 1840–1842
Class here 19th century
For 1850–1864, see 951.034; for 1864–1899, see 951.035
- .034 Period of Taiping Rebellion, 1850–1864
- .035 1864–1911
Including Sino-Japanese War, 1894–1895; Boxer Rebellion, 1899–1901
(Option: Class Sino-Japanese War in 952.031)
- .036 Period of Revolution of 1911–1912
- .04 Period of Republic, 1912–1949
- .041 1912–1927
- .042 Period of nationalist government, 1927–1949
Including Sino-Japanese Conflict during 1937–1941
(Option: Class Sino-Japanese Conflict during 1937–1941 in 952.033)
Class comprehensive works on Sino-Japanese Conflict, 1937–1945, in 940.53
- .05 Period of People's Republic, 1949–
Class here 20th century
For 2000 to present, see 951.06. For a specific part of 20th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., Revolution of 1911–1912 951.036
- .055 1949–1959
- .056 1960–1969
Including Cultural Revolution
- .057 1970–1979
- .058 1980–1989
- .059 1990–1999

- .06 2000–
- .061 2000–2019
- .061 1 2000–2009
- .061 2 2010–2019
- .2 *Southeastern China and adjacent areas**
- .24 *East China Sea area
- .249 *Taiwan (Formosa) and adjacent islands
- .249 02 Early history to 1683
 For ancient history to 420, see 931.249
- .249 03 Chinese period, 1683–1895
- .249 04 Japanese period, 1895–1945
- .249 05 Period of Republic of China (Nationalist China), 1945–
 Including 20th century
 For 1900–1945, see 951.24904
- .25 *Hong Kong
- .250 1–.250 3 Chinese period to 1843
 Add to base number 951.250 the numbers following 951.0 in
 951.01–951.03, e.g., period of Ming dynasty 951.25026
- .250 4 Period as a British dependency, 1843–1997
 Including 19th century
 For 1800–1843, see 951.25033; for 1945–1997, see 951.2505
- .250 5 1945–1997
- .250 6 Period as part of People’s Republic, 1997–
- .26 *Macau
 For ancient history to 420, see 931
- .260 1–.260 3 Chinese period to 1849
 Add to base number 951.260 the numbers following 951.0 in
 951.01–951.03, e.g., period of Ming dynasty 951.26026
- .260 4 Period as an overseas territory of Portugal, 1849–1999
- .260 6 Period as part of People’s Republic, 1999–
- .7 *Mongolia**
- .73 †Outer Mongolia (Mongolian People’s Republic)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

.9 *Korea

.901 Early history to 1392

.902 Period of Yi dynasty, 1392–1910

.903 Japanese period, 1910–1945

.904 1945–1999

Class here 20th century

For 1900–1910, see 951.902; for 1910–1945, see 951.903

.904 1 1945–1950

.904 2 ‡Korean War, 1950–1953

.904 3 1953–1999

.905 2000–

.93 *North Korea (People's Democratic Republic of Korea)

.930 1 Early history to 1392

.930 2 Period of Yi dynasty, 1392–1910

.930 3 Japanese period, 1910–1945

.930 4 1945–1994

Class here 20th century

For 1900–1910, see 951.9302; for 1910–1945, see 951.9303; for 1994–1999, see 951.93051

.930 41 1945–1950

.930 42 Period of Korean War, 1950–1953

.930 43 Administration of Kim Il-sŏng, 1948–1994

For administration of Kim Il-sŏng during 1948–1950, see 951.93041; for administration of Kim Il-sŏng during 1950–1953, see 951.93042

.930 5 1994–

.930 51 Administration of Kim Chŏng-il, 1994–

.95 *South Korea (Republic of Korea)

.950 1 Early history to 1392

.950 2 Period of Yi dynasty, 1392–1910

.950 3 Japanese period, 1910–1945

*Add as instructed under 930–990

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

- .950 4 1945–1998
 Class here 20th century
 *For 1900–1910, see 951.9502; for 1910–1945, see 951.9503; for
 1998–1999, see 951.9505*
- .950 41 1945–1950
- .950 42 Period of Korean War, 1950–1953
- .950 43 1953–1979
 Class here administration of Park Chung Hee, 1962–1979
- .950 44 1979–1998
- .950 5 1998–
 Including administration of Kim Dae Jung, 1998–2003

952 *Japan

- .01 Early history to 1185
- .02 Feudal period, 1185–1868
 Class here chūsei period
- .021 Kamakura period, 1185–1334
- .022 Namboku period, 1334–1392
 Class here 14th century
 For 1300–1334, see 952.021; for 1392–1399, see 952.023
- .023 Muromachi period, 1392–1573
 Including 16th century
 For 1573–1599, see 952.024
- .024 Momoyama period, 1573–1603
- .025 Tokugawa (Edo) period, 1603–1868
 Including 19th century
 Class here kinsei period
 *For 1868–1899, see 952.031. For a specific part of kinsei period not
 provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1945–1999 952.04*
- .03 1868–1945
- .031 Meiji period, 1868–1912
 Including Russo-Japanese War, 1904–1905
 (Option: Class Russo-Japanese War in 947.083)
 (Option: Class here Sino-Japanese War, 1894–1895; prefer 951.035)

- .032 Taishō period, 1912–1926
- .033 Shōwa period, 1926–1989
 Class here 20th century
For Shōwa period during 1945–1989, see 952.04. For a specific part of 20th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., Russo-Japanese War, 1904–1905 952.031
 (Option: Class here Sino-Japanese Conflict, 1937–1941; prefer 951.042)
- .04 1945–1999
- .044 1945–1949
- .045 1950–1959
- .046 1960–1969
- .047 1970–1979
- .048 1980–1989
- .049 1990–1999
 Class here Heisei period, 1989 to present
For Heisei period in 1989, see 952.048; for 2000 to present, see 952.05
- .05 2000–
- .051 2000–2019
- .051 1 2000–2009
- .051 2 2010–2019

953 *Arabian Peninsula and adjacent areas

For ancient history to 622, see 939.49

- (.01) Ancient history to 622
 (Optional number; prefer 939.49)

- > 953.02–953.05 Historical periods of Arabian Peninsula and adjacent areas together, of Arabian Peninsula alone
 Class comprehensive works in 953
- .02 622–1517
 Including Arabia Deserta, 622–637 [*formerly* 939.47]
- .03 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1517–1740
 Class period of struggles to overthrow Turks in 953.04

- .04 1740–1926
Including 18th century
Class here period of struggles to overthrow Turks, 1740–1918
For 1700–1740, see 953.03
- .05 1926–
- .052 1926–1964
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1926, see 953.04; for 1964–1999, see 953.053
- .053 1964–1999
- .054 2000–
- .1 *Sinai Peninsula**
- .101–.105 Historical periods
Add to base number 953.10 the numbers following 962.0 in 962.01–962.05, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 953.103
For ancient history to 622, see 939.48
- .3 *Yemen**
For ancient history to 622, see 939.49
- (.301) Ancient history to 622
(Optional number; prefer 939.49)
- .302 622–1517
- .303 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1517–1740
Class period of struggles to overthrow Turks in 953.304
- .304 1740–1918
Including 18th century
For 1700–1740, see 953.303
- .305 1918–
- .305 2 1918–1990
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1918, see 953.304; for 1990–1999, see 953.3053
- .305 3 Period as Republic of Yemen, 1990–
- .32 *Northern Yemen
For ancient history to 622, see 939.49

- (.320 1) Ancient history to 622
(Optional number; prefer 939.49)
- .320 2--320 4 622–1918
Add to base number 953.320 the numbers following 953.30 in 953.302–953.304, e.g., 1740–1918 953.3204
- .320 5 1918–
- .320 52 1918–1990
Including Yemen Arab Republic, 1962–1990
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1918, see 953.3204; for 1990–1999, see 953.32053
- .320 53 Period as part of Republic of Yemen, 1990–
- .35 *Southern Yemen
For ancient history to 622, see 939.49
- (.350 1) Ancient history to 622
(Optional number; prefer 939.49)
- .350 2 622–1517
- .350 3 1517–1839
- .350 4 British period, 1839–1967
Including 19th century, 20th century
For 1800–1839, see 953.3503; for 1967–1990, see 953.35052; for 1900–1999, see 953.35053
- .350 5 1967–
- .350 52 1967–1990
Class here People's Democratic Republic of Yemen, 1970–1990
- .350 53 Period as part of Republic of Yemen, 1990–
- .5 †Oman and United Arab Emirates
For ancient history to 622, see 939.49
- .53 †Oman
For ancient history to 622, see 939.49
(Option: Class here Oman to 622; prefer 939.49)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .57 †United Arab Emirates
For ancient history to 622, see 939.49
 (Option: Class here United Arab Emirates to 622; prefer 939.49)
- .6 †**Persian Gulf States**
For ancient history to 622, see 939.49; for Oman and United Arab Emirates, see 953.5
 (Option: Class here Persian Gulf States to 622; prefer 939.49)
- .63 †Qatar
For ancient history to 622, see 939.49
 (Option: Class here Qatar to 622; prefer 939.49)
- .65 †Bahrain
For ancient history to 622, see 939.49
 (Option: Class here Bahrain to 622; prefer 939.49)
- .67 †Kuwait
For ancient history to 622, see 939.49
 (Options: Class here Kuwait to 622; prefer 939.49. Class here Persian Gulf Crisis and War, 1990–1991; prefer 956.70442)
- .8 ***Saudi Arabia**
For ancient history to 622, see 939.49
- (.801) History to 622
 (Optional number; prefer 939.49)
- .802–.805 622–
 Add to base number 953.80 the numbers following 953.0 in 953.02–953.05, e.g., 1740–1926 953.804
- .805 3 1964–1999
 Number built according to instructions under 953.802–953.805
 Class military operations in Saudi Arabia during Persian Gulf Crisis and War, 1990–1991, in 956.704424

954 ***India and neighboring south Asian countries**

Class here south Asia

Subdivisions are added for India and neighboring south Asian countries together, for India alone

For history of India to 647, see 934

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

SUMMARY

- | | |
|--------|-----------------------------------|
| 954.02 | 647–1785 |
| .03 | Period of British rule, 1785–1947 |
| .04 | 1947–1971 |
| .05 | 1971– |
| .9 | Other jurisdictions |
- (.01) Ancient history to 647
 (Optional number; prefer 934)
 Add to base number 954.01 the numbers following 934.0 in 934.01–934.07,
 e.g., reign of Aśoka 954.0145
- .02 647–1785
- .021 647–997
 Including 7th century
For 600–647, see 934.07
- .022 Period of Muslim conquests, 997–1206
- .022 3 Period of Ghazni dynasty, 997–1196
- .022 5 Period of Ghor dynasty, 1196–1206
- .023 1206–1414
- .023 2 Period of slave kings of Delhi, 1206–1290
- .023 4 Period of Khalji dynasty, 1290–1320
- .023 6 Period of Tughluk dynasty, 1320–1414
- .024 1414–1526
- .024 2 Period of Sayyid dynasty, 1414–1451
- .024 5 Period of Lodi dynasty, 1451–1526
- .025 Period of Mogul Empire, 1526–1707
- .025 2 Reign of Babur, 1526–1530
- .025 3 Reign of Humayun, 1530–1556
- .025 4 Reign of Akbar, 1556–1605
 Class here 16th century
*For a specific part of 16th century not provided for here, see the
 part, e.g., 1500–1526 954.0236*
- .025 6 Reign of Jahangir, 1605–1627
- .025 7 Reign of Shahjahan, 1628–1658

- .025 8 Reign of Aurangzeb, 1658–1707
 Class here 17th century
For a specific part of 17th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1605–1627 954.0256
- .029 Period of European penetration, 1707–1785
- .029 2 1707–1744
- .029 4 Period of Anglo-French conflict, 1744–1757
 Including Battle of Plassey, 1757
- .029 6 1757–1772
 Including governorship of Lord Clive, 1757–1767
- .029 8 Governorship of Warren Hastings, 1772–1785
- .03 Period of British rule, 1785–1947
For governorship of Lord Clive, see 954.0296; for governorship of Warren Hastings, see 954.0298
- .031 Period of East India Company, 1785–1858
 Class here 19th century
For 1858–1899, see 954.035
- .031 1 Governorships of Sir John Macpherson, Marquis Cornwallis (first term), John Shore (Lord Teignmouth), 1785–1798
- .031 2 Governorships of Marquess Wellesley, Marquess Cornwallis (second term), Sir George Barlow, 1798–1807
- .031 3 Governorships of 1st Earl of Minto, Marquess of Hastings, Earl Amherst, 1807–1828
- .031 4 Governorships of Lord Bentinck, Baron Metcalfe, Earl of Auckland, 1828–1842
- .031 5 Governorships of Earl of Ellenborough and Viscount Hardinge, 1842–1848
- .031 6 Governorship of Marquis of Dalhousie, 1848–1856
- .031 7 Governorship of Earl Canning, 1856–1862
 Including Sepoy Mutiny, 1857–1858
For governorship of Earl Canning during 1858–1862, see 954.0351
- .035 Period of control by crown, 1858–1947
 Class here period of Indian national movement, 1885–1947; 20th century
For 1947–1971, see 954.04; for 1971–1999, see 954.05
- .035 1 Governorships of Earl Canning, 8th Earl of Elgin, Baron Lawrence, 1858–1868

- .035 2 Governorships of Earl of Mayo and Earl of Northbrook, 1869–1876
- .035 3 Governorships of Earl of Lytton and Marquess of Ripon, 1876–1884
- .035 4 Governorships of Marquis of Dufferin and Marquess of Lansdowne, 1884–1894
- .035 5 Governorships of 9th Earl of Elgin and Marquis of Curzon, 1894–1905
- .035 6 Governorships of 4th Earl of Minto and Baron Hardinge, 1905–1916
- .035 7 Governorships of Viscount Chelmsford and Marquess of Reading, 1916–1926
- .035 8 Governorships of Earl of Halifax and Marquess of Willingdon, 1926–1936
- .035 9 Governorships of Marquess of Linlithgow, Earl of Wavell, Earl Mountbatten, 1936–1947
- .04 1947–1971
- .042 Prime ministership of Jawaharlal Nehru, 1947–1964
- .043 Prime ministership of Lal Bahadur Shastri, 1964–1966
(Option: Class here Indo-Pakistan War, 1965; prefer 954.9045)
- .045 First prime ministership of Indira Gandhi, 1966–1977
For first prime ministership of Indira Gandhi during 1971–1977, see 954.051
- .05 1971–
- .051 Later half of first prime ministership of Indira Gandhi, 1971–1977
(Option: Class here Indo-Pakistan War, 1971; prefer 954.92051)
- .052 1977–1999
Including prime ministerships of Morarji Desai, 1977–1979; of Charan Singh, 1979; of Rajiv Gandhi, 1984–1989; of Vishwanath Pratap Singh, 1989–1990; of Chandra Shekhar, 1990–1991; of P. V. Narasimha Rao, 1991–1999; second prime ministership of Indira Gandhi, 1980–1984
- .053 1999–
- .053 1 Prime ministership of Atal Bihari Vajpayee, 1999–2004
- .053 2 2004–
Including prime ministership of Manmohan Singh, 2004–
- .9 Other jurisdictions**
Class here Pakistan (West and East, 1947–1971)
- .900 1–.900 9 Standard subdivisions of Pakistan (West and East, 1947–1971)
As modified under 930–990

- (.901) History of Pakistan (West and East, 1947–1971) to 647
 (Optional number; prefer 934.9)

Add to base number 954.901 the numbers following 934.0 in
 934.01–934.07, e.g., reign of Aśoka 954.90145

- > 954.902–954.905 Historical periods of Pakistan (West and East,
 1947–1971)

Class comprehensive works in 954.9

For ancient history to 647, see 934.9

(Option: Class early history to 647 in 954.901; prefer 934.9)

- .902–.903 647–1947

Add to base number 954.90 the numbers following 954.0 in
 954.02–954.03, e.g., period of East India Company 954.9031

- .904 1947–1971

- .904 2 Administration of Mahomed Ali Jinnah, 1947–1948

- .904 3 1948–1958

- .904 5 Administration of Mohammad Ayub Khan, 1958–1969

Including Indo-Pakistan War, 1965

(Option: Class Indo-Pakistan War, 1965, in 954.043)

- .904 6 Administration of Aga Muhammad Yahya Khan, 1969–1971

- .905 1971–

- .91 *Pakistan

- (.910 1) Ancient history to 647

(Optional number; prefer 934.91)

Add to base number 954.9101 the numbers following 934.0 in
 934.01–934.07, e.g., reign of Aśoka 954.910145

- > 954.910 2–954.910 5 Historical periods of Pakistan

Class comprehensive works in 954.91

For ancient history to 647, see 934.91

(Option: Class early history to 647 in 954.9101; prefer 934.91)

- .910 2–.910 3 647–1947

Add to base number 954.910 the numbers following 954.0 in
 954.02–954.03, e.g., period of East India Company 954.91031

.910 4 1947–1971
 Add to base number 954.9104 the numbers following 954.904 in
 954.9042–954.9046, e.g., administration of Mahomed Ali Jinnah
 954.91042

.910 5 1971–
 For Indo-Pakistan War, 1971, see 954.9205

.910 51 1971–1988

.910 52 1988–1999

.910 53 1999–

.92 *Bangladesh

(.920 1) Ancient history to 647
 (Optional number; prefer 934.92)

 Add to base number 954.9202 the numbers following 934.0 in
 934.01–934.07, e.g., reign of Aśoka 954.920145

> 954.920 2–954.920 5 Historical periods of Bangladesh

 Class comprehensive works in 954.92

For ancient history to 647, see 934.92

 (Option: Class early history to 647 in 954.9201; prefer 934.92)

.920 2–.920 3 647–1947

 Add to base number 954.920 the numbers following 954.0 in
 954.02–954.03, e.g., period of East India Company 954.92031

.920 4 1947–1971

 Add to base number 954.9204 the numbers following 954.904 in
 954.9042–954.9046, e.g., administration of Mahomed Ali Jinnah
 954.92042

.920 5 1971–

.920 51 ‡Indo-Pakistan War, 1971

 (Option: Class Indo-Pakistan War, 1971, in 954.051)

.93 *Sri Lanka

.930 1 Early history to 1795

.930 2 British period, 1795–1948

 Including 20th century

For 1948–1972, see 954.93031; for 1972–1999, see 954.93032

*Add as instructed under 930–990

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

- .930 3 1948–
 .930 31 Period as independent Commonwealth state, 1948–1972
 .930 32 Period as republic, 1972–
 .95 †Maldives
 .96 †Nepal
 .98 †Bhutan

955 *Iran

For early history to 637, see 935.7

- (.01) Early history to 637
 (Optional number; prefer 935.7)
 Add to base number 955.01 the numbers following 935.0 in 935.01–935.07,
 e.g., period of Sassanian Empire 955.017
- .02 637–1499
 .022 Period of Arab domination, 637–1055
 Including 7th century, 11th century
 For 600–637, see 935.07; for 1055–1099, see 955.024
 See Manual at 930–990: Add table: Centuries
- .024 Period of Turkish domination, 1055–1219
 .026 Period of Mongol domination, 1219–1335
 .028 1335–1499
 Including 14th century
 Class here period of Turkoman domination, 1405–1499
 For 1300–1335, see 955.026
- .03 Period of Persian dynasties, 1499–1794
 .04 1794–1906
 .05 1906–2005
 .051 1906–1925
 .052 Reign of Reza Shah Pahlavi, 1925–1941
 .053 Reign of Mohammed Reza Pahlavi, 1941–1979
 .054 1979–2005

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .054 2 †Period of Ruhollah Khomeini, 1979–1989
 Class here Iraqi-Iranian Conflict, 1980–1988
 (Option: Class Iraqi-Iranian Conflict in 956.70441)
- .054 3 1989–1997
- .054 4 Administration of Muḥammad Khātāmī, 1997–2005
- .06 2005–
- .061 Administration of Mahmoud Ahmadinejad, 2005–
- .23 *Māzandarān province
For early history to 637, see 939.6
- (.230 1) Early history to 637
 (Optional number; prefer 939.6)
 Class here Hyrcania

956 *Middle East (Near East)

SUMMARY

- 956.01–.05 [Historical periods]
- .1 Turkey
- .2 Western Turkey
- .3 North central Turkey
- .4 South central Turkey
- .5 East central Turkey
- .6 Eastern Turkey
- .7 Iraq
- .9 Syria, Lebanon, Cyprus, Israel, Jordan
- .01 Early history to 1900
For ancient history to ca. 640, see 939.4
- (.012) Ancient history to ca. 640
 (Optional number; prefer 939.4)
 Add to base number 956.012 the numbers following 939.40 in
 939.401–939.405, e.g., Hellenistic period 956.0124
- .013 640–1000
 Including 7th century
For 600–640, see 939.405
- .014 Period of Seljuk supremacy, 1000–1300
 Including First Crusade, 1096–1099; Second Crusade, 1147–1149; Third
 Crusade, 1189–1192

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 940–990

- .015 1300–1900
 Class here Ottoman Empire, ca. 1300–1922
 *For 1900–1918, see 956.02; for 1918–1922, see 956.03. For a
 specific part of the Ottoman Empire, see the part, e.g., Ottoman
 Empire in Turkey 956.1015*
- .02 1900–1918
- .03 1918–1945
- .04 1945–1980
 Class here 20th century
 *For 1900–1918, see 956.02; for 1918–1945, see 956.03; for 1980–1999,
 see 956.05*
- .042 Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949
- .044 Sinai Campaign, 1956
- .046 Israel-Arab War, 1967 (Six Days' War)
- .048 Israel-Arab War, 1973 (Yom Kippur War)
- .05 1980–
- .052 Israel-Lebanon-Syria Conflict, 1982–1985
- .053 1985–1999
- .054 2000–
- .1 *Turkey**
 For divisions of Turkey, see 956.2–956.6
- .101 Early history to 1918
 For ancient history to ca. 640, see 939.2
- (.101 2) Ancient history to ca. 640
 (Optional number; prefer 939.2)
- .101 3 640–1100
 Including 7th century
 For 600–640, see 939.2
- .101 4 Period of Seljuk dynasty, 1100–1300
- .101 5 1300–1918
 Class here period of Ottoman Empire, 1300–1922
 For 1918–1922, see 956.1023

- .101 51 1300–1451
 Including 15th century
 For 1451–1499, see 956.10152
- .101 52 1451–1566
 Including 16th century
 For 1566–1599, see 956.10153
- .101 53 1566–1774
 Including 18th century
 For 1774–1799, see 956.10154
- .101 54 1774–1918
 For Russo-Turkish War, 1877–1878, see 949.60387
- .102 1918–1950
 Class here 20th century; period of Republic, 1923 to present
 For 1900–1918, see 956.1015; for 1950–1999, see 956.103
- .102 3 1918–1923
- .102 4 Administration of Kemal Atatürk, 1923–1938
- .102 5 Administration of İsmet İnönü, 1938–1950
- .103 1950–1999
- .103 5 1950–1959
- .103 6 1960–1969
- .103 7 1970–1979
- .103 8 1980–1989
- .103 9 1990–1999
- .104 2000–
- .104 1 2000–2019
- .104 11 2000–2009
- .104 12 2010–2019

> **956.2–956.6 Divisions of Turkey**

Class comprehensive works in 956.1

For Turkey in Europe, see 949.61

.2 *Western Turkey

For history of western Turkey to 640, see 939.2. For history of a specific part of western Turkey to 640, see the part in 939, e.g., history of Troy 939.21

(Option: Class history of a specific part of western Turkey to 640 with the part in 956.2, e.g., history of Troy 956.22)

.201–.204 Historical periods

Add to base number 956.20 the numbers following 956.10 in 956.101–956.104, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 956.2015

.3 *North central Turkey

For history of north central Turkey to 640, see 939.3. For history of a specific part of western Turkey to 640, see the part in 939, e.g., history of Paphlagonia 939.317

(Option: Class history of a specific part of north central Turkey to 640 with the part in 956.3, e.g., history of Paphlagonia 956.37)

.301–.304 Historical periods

Add to base number 956.30 the numbers following 956.10 in 956.101–956.104, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 956.3015

.4 *South central Turkey

For history of south central Turkey to 640, see 939.2. For history of a specific part of south central Turkey to 640, see the part in 939, e.g., history of Cappadocia to 640 939.34

(Option: Class history of a specific part of south central Turkey to 640 with the part in 956.4, e.g., history of Cappadocia to 640 956.41)

.401–.404 Historical periods

Add to base number 956.40 the numbers following 956.10 in 956.101–956.104, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 956.4015

.5 *East central Turkey

For history of east central Turkey to 640, see 939.33. For history of a specific part of east central Turkey to 640, see the part in 939, e.g., history of Commagene 939.36

(Option: Class history of a specific part of east central Turkey to 640 with the part in 956.5, e.g., history of Commagene 956.52)

.501–.504 Historical periods

Add to base number 956.50 the numbers following 956.10 in 956.101–956.104, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 956.5015

.6 *Eastern Turkey

For history of eastern Turkey to 640, see 939.42. For history of a specific part of eastern Turkey to 640, see the part in 939, e.g., history of ancient kingdom of Armenia 939.55

(Option: Class history of a specific part of eastern Turkey to 640 with the part in 956.6, e.g., history of ancient kingdom of Armenia 956.62012)

.601–.604 Historical periods

Add to base number 956.60 the numbers following 956.10 in 956.101–956.104, e.g., period of Ottoman Empire 956.6015

.62 Northeastern Turkey

Number built according to instructions under 930–990

Class here comprehensive works on Armenia region

For country of Armenia, see 947.56

(.620 12) Ancient history to 640

(Optional number; prefer 939.55)

.620 154 1774–1918

Number built according to instructions under 930–990

Including Armenian massacres, 1894–1896, 1915–1916

.620 23 1918–1923

Number built according to instructions under 930–990

Class here Republic of Armenia, 1918–1920

.7 *Iraq

For history to 637, see 935

(.701) Ancient history to 637

(Optional number; prefer 935)

Add to base number 956.701 the numbers following 935.0 in 935.01–935.07, e.g., Hellenistic period 956.7016

.702 637–1553

Including 7th century, 16th century

For 600–637, see 935.07; for 1553–1600, see 956.703

See Manual at 930–990: Add table: Centuries

.703 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1553–1920**.704 1920–**

- .704 1 Period of mandate, 1920–1932
 Class here reign of Faysal I, 1921–1933
 For reign of Faysal I during 1932–1933, see 956.7042
- .704 2 Period of independent monarchy, 1932–1958
 Including reigns of Ghazi I, Faisal II
- .704 3 Period of Republic, 1958–
 For administration of Saddam Hussein, see 956.7044
- .704 4 1979–
 Class here administration of Saddam Hussein, 1979–2003
- .704 41 1979–1990
 (Option: Class here Iraqi-Iranian Conflict, 1980–1988; prefer
 955.0542)
- .704 42 ‡Persian Gulf Crisis and War, 1990–1991
 Class here Iraq-Kuwait Crisis, 1990–1991, Persian Gulf War, 1991
 (Option: Class in 953.67)
- .704 423 1 Participation of specific groups of countries
 Number built according to instructions under 940–990
 *For participation of specific countries, see
 956.7044234–956.7044239*
- .704 423 12 Participation of Arab countries
- .704 43 ‡1991–
 Class here Iraq War, 2003 to present; period of occupation and
 reconstruction, 2003 to present
- .9 *Syria, Lebanon, Cyprus, Israel, Jordan**
- .901–.905 Early history to present
 Add to base number 956.90 the numbers following 956.0 in
 956.01–956.05, e.g., 1945–1980 956.904
- .91 *Syria
 For early history to ca. 640, see 939.43
- (.910 1) Early history to ca. 640
 (Optional number; prefer 939.43)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

- .910 2 640–1516
 Including 7th century
 For 600–640, see 939.43
- .910 3 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1516–1920
- .910 4 1920–
- .910 41 Period of mandate, 1920–1945
- .910 42 Period of Republic, 1945–
 Including period as a part of United Arab Republic, 1958–1961
 Class Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949, in 956.042; class Israel-Arab War, 1967, in 956.046; class Israel-Arab War, 1973, in 956.048; class Israel-Lebanon-Syria Conflict, 1982–1985, in 956.052; class comprehensive works on United Arab Republic in 962.053
- .92 *Lebanon
 For early history to ca. 640, see 939.44
- (.920 2) Early history to ca. 640
 Class here Phoenicia
 (Optional number; prefer 939.44)
- .920 3 640–1926
- .920 32 640–1517
 Including 7th century
 For 600–640, see 939.44
- .920 34 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1517–1920
 Including period of autonomy, 1861–1918
- .920 35 Period of mandate, 1920–1941
 For 1926–1941, see 956.92042
- .920 4 1926–
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1920, see 956.92034; for 1920–1926, see 956.92035
- .920 42 1926–1941
- .920 43 1941–
 Class Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949, in 956.042
 For 1975 to present, see 956.92044

- .920 44 ‡Period of civil war and religious strife, 1975–1990
 Class here Civil War, 1975–1990
 Class Israel-Lebanon-Syria Conflict, 1982–1985, in 956.052
- .920 45 1990–
- .920 451 1990–2006
- .920 452 ‡Lebanon War, 2006
- .920 453 2006–
- .93 *Cyprus
- .930 1 Early history to 1571
 Including 16th century
 For ancient history to ca. 640, see 939.37; for 1571–1599, see 956.9302
- (.930 12) Ancient history to ca. 640
 (Optional number; prefer 939.37)
- .930 2 1571–1878
- .930 3 British period, 1878–1960
 Class here 20th century
 For 1960–1999, see 956.9304
- .930 4 1960–
- .94 *Palestine; Israel
 For early history of Palestine to 70, see 933; for early history of Israel to 70, see 933.4
 See also 320.54095694 for Zionism; also 909.04924 for world history of Jews
- (.940 1) Early history to 70
 (Optional number; prefer 933 for Palestine to 70; prefer 933.4 for Israel to 70)
 Add to base number 956.9401 the numbers following 933.0 in 933.01–933.05, e.g., age of Solomon 956.94012
- .940 2 Mishnaic and Talmudic periods, 70–640
- .940 3 640–1917
- .940 31 640–1096
 Including 7th century
 For 600–640, see 956.9402

*Add as instructed under 930–990

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

- .940 32 Period of Crusades, 1096–1291
- .940 33 Mameluke period, 1291–1517
- .940 34 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1517–1917
- .940 4 Period of British control, 1917–1948
- .940 5 1948–
- Class here 20th century
- For 1900–1917, see 956.9403; for 1917–1948, see 956.9404*
- .940 52 1948–1967
- Class Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949, in 956.042; class Sinai Campaign, 1956, in 956.044; class Israel-Arab War, 1967, in 956.046
- .940 53 1967–1974
- Class Israel-Arab War, 1973, in 956.048
- .940 54 1974–
- Class Israel-Lebanon-Syria Conflict, 1982–1985, in 956.052
- .949 *Darom district
- For early history of Judah, Judaea portion of Darom district to 70, see 933.49; for early history of Edom portion of Darom district to 70, see 939.464*
- (.949 01) Early history to 70
- (Optional number; prefer 933.49 for Judah, Judaea; prefer 939.464 for Edom)
- Including Edom, Judah, Judaea
- .95 *Jordan and West Bank
- Subdivisions are added for Jordan and West Bank together, for Jordan alone
- For early history to 70, see 933.5*
- (.950 1) Early history to 70
- (Optional number; prefer 933.5)
- Add to base number 956.9501 the numbers following 933.0 in 933.01–933.05, e.g., Roman period 956.95015
- .950 2 70–640
- .950 3 640–1923
- Including 7th century, period of Ottoman Empire
- For 600–640, see 956.9502*
- .950 4 1923–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

- .950 42 Period of mandate, 1923–1946
- .950 43 Period of Hashemite Kingdom, 1946–
 Class Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949, in 956.042; class Israel-Arab
 War, 1967, in 956.046
 For 1967 to present, see 956.95044
- .950 44 1967–
- .953 *Nablus district
 Class here comprehensive works on West Bank
 *For a part of West Bank not provided for here, see the part, e.g.,
 Hebron district 956.951*
- .956 3 *Karak Province
 For early history to 70, see 939.462
- (.956 301) Early history to 70
 (Optional number; prefer 939.462)
 Class here Moab
- .957 7 *Ma‘ān Province
 For early history to 70, see 939.48
- (.957 701) Early history to 70
 (Optional number; prefer 939.48)
 Class here Petra

957 *Siberia (Asiatic Russia)

- .03 Pre-Russian period to 1581
- .07 1581–1855
- .08 1855–
 Add to base number 957.08 the numbers following 947.08 in
 947.081–947.086, e.g., period of Siberia under Stalin 957.0842

958 *Central Asia

- For early history to ca. 640, see 939.6*
 (Option: Class here early history to ca. 640; prefer 939.6)
- .01–.04 Historical periods
 Add to base number 958.0 the numbers following 950 in 950.1–950.4, e.g.,
 period of Mongol Empire 958.02

.1 *Afghanistan

- .101 Early history to 1221
For early history to ca. 640, see 939.6
 (Option: Class here early history to ca. 640; prefer 939.6)
- .102 1221–1709
- .103 1709–1919
- .104 1919–
- .104 2 1919–1933
- .104 3 Reign of Muhammad Zahir Shah, 1933–1973
- .104 4 Period of Republic, 1973–1978
- .104 5 Period of Democratic Republic, 1978–1992
 Including 1991–1992 [*formerly* 958.1046]
- .104 6 1992–2001
 Class here Taliban period, 1996–2001
 Period of Democratic Republic during 1991–1992 relocated to 958.1045
- .104 7 ‡2001–
 Class here Afghan War, 2001 to present
- .4 *Turkestan**
For Turkmenistan, see 958.5; for Tajikistan, see 958.6; for Uzbekistan, see 958.7
- .407 Pre-Russian period to 1855
 Including 19th century
For early history to ca. 640, see 939.6; for 1855–1899, see 958.408
 (Option: Class here early history to ca. 640; prefer 939.6)
- .408 1855–
 Add to base number 958.408 the numbers following 947.08 in 947.081–947.086, e.g., later 20th century 958.4085
- .43 *Kyrgyzstan**
- .430 7 Pre-Russian period to 1855
 Including 19th century
For 1855–1899, see 958.4308

*Add as instructed under 930–990

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

- .430 8 1855–
 Add to base number 958.4308 the numbers following 947.08 in
 947.081–947.086, e.g., later 20th century 958.43085
- .45 ***Kazakhstan**
- .450 7 Pre-Russian period to 1855
 Including 19th century
 For 1855–1899, see 958.4508
- .450 8 1855–
 Add to base number 958.4508 the numbers following 947.08 in
 947.081–947.086, e.g., later 20th century 958.45085
- .5 *Turkmenistan**
- .507 Pre-Russian period to 1855
 Including 19th century
 For early history to ca. 640, see 939.6; for 1855–1899, see 958.508
 (Option: Class here early history to ca. 640; prefer 939.6)
- .508 1855–
- .508 1–.508 5 1855–1991
 Add to base number 958.508 the numbers following 947.08 in
 947.081–947.085, e.g., later 20th century 958.5085
- .508 6 1991–
- .508 61 Administration of Saparmurad Niyazov, 1991–2006
- .508 62 2006–
- .6 *Tajikistan**
- .607 Pre-Russian period to 1855
 Including 19th century
 For early history to ca. 640, see 939.6; for 1855–1899, see 958.608
 (Option: Class here early history to ca. 640; prefer 939.6)
- .608 1855–
 Add to base number 958.608 the numbers following 947.08 in
 947.081–947.086, e.g., later 20th century 958.6085
- .7 *Uzbekistan**

- .707 Pre-Russian period to 1855
 Including 19th century
For early history to ca. 640, see 939.6; for 1855–1899, see 958.708
 (Option: Class here early history to ca. 640; prefer 939.6)
- .708 1855–
 Add to base number 958.708 the numbers following 947.08 in
 947.081–947.086, e.g., later 20th century 958.7085

959 *Southeast Asia

SUMMARY

- 959.01–.05 [Historical periods]
- .1 Myanmar
 - .3 Thailand
 - .4 Laos
 - .5 Malaysia, Brunei, Singapore
 - .6 Cambodia
 - .7 Vietnam
 - .8 Indonesia and East Timor
 - .9 Philippines
- .01 Early history to 1499
- .02 1500–1699
- .03 1700–1799
- .04 1800–1899
- .05 1900–
- .051 1900–1941
 Class here 20th century
For 1941–1945, see 959.052; for 1945–1999, see 959.053
- .052 Period of Japanese occupation, 1941–1945
- .053 1945–1999
- .054 2000–
- .1 *Myanmar**
- .102 Early history to 1826
- .103 Period of British conquest, 1826–1885
 Class here 19th century
For 1800–1826, see 959.102; for 1886–1899, see 959.104

- .104 Period of British rule, 1886–1948
 Class here 20th century
 For 1948–1999, see 959.105
- .105 1948–
- .105 1 1948–1962
- .105 2 1962–1989
- .105 3 1989–
- .3 *Thailand**
- .302 Early history to 1782
- .302 1 Early history to 1219
- .302 2 Period as Sukhothai, 1219–1350
 Including 14th century
 For 1350–1399, see 959.3023
- .302 3 Period as Ayutthaya, 1350–1767
 Including 18th century
 For 1767–1782, see 959.3024; for 1782–1799, see 959.3031
- .302 4 Reign of Tāk Sin, 1767–1782
- .303 1782–1910
- .303 1 Reign of Phutthayōtfā Čhulālōk (Rama I), 1782–1809
- .303 2 Reign of Phutthalōtlā Naphālai (Rama II), 1809–1824
- .303 3 Reign of Nangkloa (Rama III), 1824–1851
- .303 4 Reign of Mongkut (Rama IV), 1851–1868
- .303 5 Reign of Chulalongkorn (Rama V), 1868–1910
- .304 1910–
- .304 1 Reign of Vajiravudh (Rama VI), 1910–1925
- .304 2 Reign of Prajadhipok (Rama VII), 1925–1935
- .304 3 Reign of Ananda Mahidol (Rama VIII), 1935–1946
- .304 4 Reign of Bhumibol Adulyadej (Rama IX), 1946–
- .4 *Laos**
- .403 Early history to 1949
 Including period as a part of French Indochina, 1893–1954
 For 1949–1954, see 949.4041

- .404 1949–
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1949, see 959.403
- .404 1 1949–1975
Class military operations in Laos during Vietnamese War in
959.70434
- .404 2 Period as People's Democratic Republic, 1975–
- .5 *Malaysia, Brunei, Singapore**
Subdivisions are added for Malaysia, Brunei, Singapore together; for Malaysia
alone
- .503 Early history to 1946
- .504 1946–1963
- .505 Period of federation, 1963–
Class here 20th century
*For 1900–1946, see 959.503; for 1946–1963, see 959.504; for 2003
to present, see 959.506*
- .505 1 Prime ministership of Tunku Abdul Rahman Putra Al-Haj, 1963–1970
Including separation of Singapore, 1965
- .505 2 Prime ministership of Tun Haji Abdul Razak bin Dato' Hussein,
1971–1976
- .505 3 Prime ministership of Datuk Hussein Onn, 1976–1981
- .505 4 Prime ministership of Mahathir bin Mohamad, 1981–2003
- .506 2003–
- .506 1 Prime ministership of Abdullah bin Ahmad Haji Badawi, 2003–2009
- .506 2 Prime ministership of Datuk Najib Tun Razak, 2009–
- .55 *Brunei**
- .550 3 Early history to 1888
- .550 4 Period as British protectorate, 1888–1983
- .550 5 1984–
- .57 *Singapore**
- .570 3 Early history to 1946
- .570 4 1946–1963

- .570 5 1963–
 Class here 20th century; period as separate nation, 1965–
 For 1900–1946, see 959.5703; for 1946–1963, see 959.5704
- .570 51 1963–1990
 Including period of federation with Malaysia, 1963–1965
 Class here prime ministership of Lee Kuan Yew, 1959–1990
 For prime ministership of Lee Kuan Yew during 1959–1963, see 959.5704
- .570 52 Prime ministership of Goh Chok Tong, 1990–2004
- .570 53 Prime ministership of Lee Hsien Loong, 2004–
- .6 *Cambodia**
- .601 Early history to 802
- .602 Period of Khmer Empire, 802–1431
- .603 1431–1949
 Including period as a part of French Indochina, 1863–1949; 15th century
- .604 1949–
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1949, see 959.603
- .604 1 1949–1970
 Class military operations in Cambodia during Vietnamese War in
 959.70434
- .604 2 1970–1993
 Including period as Khmer Republic, 1970–1979
 Class here period as Kampuchea, 1979–1993
- .604 3 1993–
- .7 *Vietnam**
- .701 Early history to 939 [*formerly 959.703*]
- .702 939–1883 [*formerly 959.703*]

- .703 French period, 1883–1945
 Class here comprehensive works on French Indochina
For Laos as a part of French Indochina, see 959.403; for Cambodia as a part of French Indochina, see 959.603; for Indochinese War, 1946–1954, see 959.7041
 Early history to 939 relocated to 959.701; 939–1883 relocated to 959.702; 1945–1949 relocated to 959.7041
- .704 1945–
 Class here 20th century
For 1900–1945, see 959.703
- .704 1 ‡1945–1954
 Class here 1945–1949 [*formerly 959.703*]; Indochinese War, 1946–1954
- .704 2 1954–1961
 Class comprehensive works on period of North Vietnam and South Vietnam, 1954–1975, in 959.7043
- .704 3 ‡Vietnamese War, 1961–1975
 Class here comprehensive works on period of North Vietnam and South Vietnam, 1954–1975
For 1954–1961, see 959.7042
- .704 33 Participation of specific groups of countries, of specific countries, localities, groups
 Number built according to instructions under 940–990
 Class military participation of specific countries, localities, groups in 959.70434. Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., efforts to preserve or restore peace 959.70431
- .704 331 North Vietnam
- .704 332 South Vietnam
- .704 332 2 National Liberation Front
 Class here Vietcong
- .704 332 5 Government forces
- .704 334–.704 339 Participation of specific countries and localities
 Number built according to instructions under 940–990
 Add to base number 959.70433 notation 4–9 from Table 2, e.g., United States participation 959.7043373; however, for North Vietnam, see 959.704331; for South Vietnam, see 959.704332
- .704 4 1975–

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

.8 *Indonesia and East Timor

Subdivisions are added for Indonesia and East Timor together, for Indonesia alone

- > 959.801–959.804 Historical periods for Indonesia and East Timor together, for Indonesia alone
- Class comprehensive works in 959.8
- .801 Early history to 1602
 - .801 1 Early history to 358 [*formerly* 959.8012]
 - .801 2 Period of Hindu kingdoms, 358–1478
Early history to 358 relocated to 959.8011
 - .801 5 Period of Muslim rule, 1478–1602
 - .802 1602–1945
 - .802 1 Period of Dutch East India Company, 1602–1800
Including 1798–1800 [*formerly* 959.8022]
 - .802 2 Periods under control of British and Netherlands governments, 1800–1945
1798–1800 relocated to 959.8021
 - .802 21 1800–1808
 - .802 22 Administration of Herman Willem Daendels, 1808–1811
 - .802 23 1811–1942
Including Java War, 1825–1830
 - .802 24 Period of Japanese occupation, 1942–1945
 - .803 1945–1998
Class here 20th century; period of Republic, 1950 to present
For 1900–1942, see 959.80223; for 1942–1945, see 959.80224; for 1998 to present, see 959.804
 - .803 5 Administration of Soekarno, 1945–1967
Including 1960–1967 [*formerly* 959.8036]; period as United States of Indonesia, 1949–1950
 - [.803 6] 1960–1969
1960–1967 relocated to 959.8035; 1967–1969 relocated to 959.8037
 - .803 7 Administration of Soeharto, 1967–1998
Including 1967–1969 [*formerly* 959.8036]; 1980–1989 [*formerly* 959.8038]; 1990–1998 [*formerly* 959.8039]

*Add as instructed under 930–990

- [.803 8] 1980–1989
Relocated to 959.8037
- [.803 9] 1990–1999
1990–1998 relocated to 959.8037; administration of B. J. Habibie,
1998–1999 relocated to 959.8041
- .804 1998–
- .804 1 1998–2004
Including administration of B. J. Habibie, 1998–1999 [*formerly*
959.8039]; administration of Abdurrahman Wahid, 1999–2001
Class here: administration of Megawati Soekarnoputri, 2001–2004
- .804 2 Administration of Susilo Bambang Yudhoyono, 2004–
- .86 *Lesser Sunda Islands (Nusa Tenggara)
- .87 *East Timor
- .870 1 Early history to 1520
- .870 2 1520–1945
- .870 3 1945–1999
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1945, see 959.8702
- .870 31 1945–1975
- .870 32 1975–1999
- .870 4 1999–
Class here period as Democratic Republic of East Timor, 2002–
- .9 *Philippines**
- .901 Early history to 1564
Including 16th century
For 1564–1599, see 959.902
- .902 Spanish period, 1564–1898
- .902 7 Period of insurrection against Spanish, 1896–1898
- .903 United States period, 1898–1946
Class here 20th century
For 1946–1999, see 959.904
- .903 1 Philippine-American War, 1898–1901
- .903 2 Period of United States rule, 1901–1935

- .903 5 Period of Commonwealth, 1935–1946
- .904 Period of Republic, 1946–
 For 2001 to present, see 959.905
- .904 1 Administration of Manuel Roxas, 1946–1948
- .904 2 Administration of Elpidio Quirino, 1948–1954
- .904 3 Administration of Ramon Magsaysay, 1954–1957
- .904 4 Administration of Carlos Garcia, 1957–1961
- .904 5 Administration of Diosdado Macapagal, 1961–1965
- .904 6 Administration of Ferdinand Marcos, 1965–1986
- .904 7 Administration of Corazon Cojuangco Aquino, 1986–1992
- .904 8 Administration of Fidel V. Ramos, 1992–1998
- .904 9 Administration of Joseph Ejercito Estrada, 1998–2001
- .905 2001–
- .905 1 Administration of Gloria Macapagal-Arroyo, 2001–2010
- .905 2 Administration of Benigno S. Aquino III, 2010–

960 **History of Africa**

SUMMARY

- 960.01–.09 Standard subdivisions
- .1–.3 [Historical periods]
- 961 Tunisia and Libya
- 962 Egypt and Sudan
- 963 Ethiopia and Eritrea
- 964 Morocco, Ceuta, Melilla, Western Sahara, Canary Islands
- 965 Algeria
- 966 West Africa and offshore islands
- 967 Central Africa and offshore islands
- 968 Republic of South Africa and neighboring southern African countries
- 969 South Indian Ocean islands
- .01–.09 Standard subdivisions
- As modified under 930–990
- .1 **Early history to 640**
- .2 **640–1885**
- .21 640–1450
- Including 7th century, 15th century
- For 600–640, see 960.1; for 1450–1499, see 960.22*
- See Manual at 930–990: Add table: Centuries*
- .22 1450–1799

- .23 1800–1885
- .3 1885–**
- .31 1885–1945
Class here 20th century
For 1945–1999, see 960.32
- .312 1885–1914
- .314 1914–1918
- .316 1918–1945
- .32 1945–1999
- .324 1945–1949
- .325 1950–1959
- .326 1960–1969
- .327 1970–1979
- .328 1980–1989
- .329 1990–1999
- .33 2000–
- .331 2000–2019
- .331 1 2000–2009
- .331 2 2010–2019

961 *Tunisia and Libya

Class here North Africa

For early history to ca. 640, see 939.7

- (.01) Early history to ca. 640
(Optional number; prefer 939.7)
Add to base number 961.01 the numbers following 939.70 in 939.701–939.705, e.g., Carthaginian period 961.012
- .02 Periods of Arab rule and Ottoman Empire, ca. 640–1830
- .022 Period of Arab rule, ca. 640–ca. 1520
Including 7th century
For 600–ca. 640, see 939.705
- .023 Period of Ottoman Empire, ca. 1520–1830
(Option: Class here Tripolitan War with the United States; prefer 973.47.
Class here United States War with Algiers; prefer 973.53)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

- .03 Period of European conquest and hegemony, 1830–1950
Including 19th century, 20th century
For 1800–1830, see 961.023; for 1950–1999, see 961.04
- .04 1950–1999
- .045 1950–1959
- .046 1960–1969
- .047 1970–1979
- .048 1980–1989
- .049 1990–1999
- .05 2000–
- .051 2000–2019
- .051 1 2000–2009
- .051 2 2010–2019

.1 *Tunisia

For early history to 647, see 939.73

- (.101) Early history to 647
(Optional number; prefer 939.73)
Add to base number 961.101 the numbers following 939.730 in
939.7301–939.7305, e.g., Carthaginian period 961.1012
- .102 Period of Arab rule, 647–1516
Including 7th century
For 600–647, see 939.7305
- .103 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1516–1881
- .104 1881–1956
Class here 20th century
For 1956–1999, see 961.105
- .105 1956–
- .105 1 Administration of Habib Bourguiba, 1956–1987
- .105 2 Administration of Zayn al-‘Ābidīn Bin ‘Alī, 1987–2011
- .105 3 2011–

.2 *Libya

For early history to 644, see 939.74; for Cyrenaica to 642, see 939.75; for Marmarica to 642, see 939.76

- (.201) Early history to 644
(Optional number; prefer 939.74)
Add to base number 961.201 the numbers following 939.740 in 939.7401–939.7405, e.g., Carthaginian period 961.2012; however, for Cyrenaica, Marmarica to 642, see 961.2
- .202 644–1911
- .202 2 Period of Arab rule, 644–1551
Including 7th century, 16th century
For 600–644, see 939.7405; for 1551–1599, see 961.2024
See Manual at 930–990: Add table: Centuries
- .202 4 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1551–1911
- .203 Period of Italian rule, 1911–1952
- .204 1952–
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1911, see 961.2024; for 1911–1952, see 961.203
- .204 1 Reign of Idris I, 1952–1969
- .204 2 Period of Muammar Qaddafi, 1969–

962 Egypt and Sudan

- .000 1–.000 8 Standard subdivisions of Egypt and Sudan
As modified under 930–990
- .000 9 Historical periods; areas, regions, places; collected biography of Egypt and Sudan
- .000 901–.000 905 Historical periods
Add to base number 962.00090 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., Egypt and Sudan during 20th century 962.000904
- .000 91–.000 99 Areas, regions, places in general; collected biography
As modified under 930–990
- .001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Egypt
As modified under 930–990
- (.01) Early history to 640
(Optional number; prefer 932)
Add to base number 962.01 the numbers following 932.0 in 932.01–932.02, e.g., period of New Kingdom 962.0114

- > 962.02–962.05 Historical periods of Egypt
- Class comprehensive works in 962
- For early history to 640, see 932*
- (Option: Class early history to 640 in 962.01; prefer 932)
- .02 Period of Arab rule, 640–1517
- Including 7th century
- For 600–640, see 932.023*
- .024 Mameluke period, 1250–1517
- .03 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1517–1882
- .04 Period of British occupation and protectorate, 1882–1922
- .05 1922–
- .051 Reign of Fu'ād I, 1922–1936
- .052 1936–1953
- Class here reign of Faruk I, 1936–1952
- Class Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949, in 956.042
- .053 1953–1970
- Including administration of Mohammed Naguib, 1953–1954; period of United Arab Republic, 1958–1961
- Class here administration of Gamal Abdel Nasser, 1954–1970
- Class Sinai Campaign, 1956, in 956.044; class Israel-Arab War, 1967, in 956.046
- For Syrian part of United Arab Republic, see 956.91042*
- .054 Administration of Anwar Sadat, 1970–1981
- Class Israel-Arab War, 1973, in 956.048
- .055 Administration of Muḥammad Ḥusnī Mubārak, 1981–2011
- .056 2011–
- .4 *Sudan**
- For parts of Sudan, see 962.5–962.9*
- .401 Early history to 500
- .402 500–1820
- .402 2 Period of Christian kingdoms, 500–1504
- .402 3 Period of Funj Sultanate, 1504–1820

- .403 Period as Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, 1820–1956
 Including 20th century
 Class here period of Egyptian and British rule
 For 1956–1999, see 962.404
- .404 1956–
- .404 1 1956–1969
 Class here Civil War of 1955–1972
- .404 2 Administration of Ja'far Muḥammad Numayrī, 1969–1985
- .404 3 1985–
 Class here administration of Omar Hassan Ahmad al-Bashir, 1996 to present

> **962.5–962.9 Parts of Sudan**

 Class comprehensive works in 962.4

.5 *Eastern and Northern regions of Sudan

For early history to 500, see 939.78

(.501) Early history to 500

 (Optional number; prefer 939.78)

 Class here ancient Ethiopia (a part of what is now modern Sudan, not modern Ethiopia), Nubia, Kush

See also 963.01 for ancient history of modern Ethiopia

.502–.504 500–

 Add to base number 962.50 the numbers following 962.40 in 962.401–962.404, e.g., period of Christian kingdoms 962.5022

.6 *Khartoum province and Central region of Sudan

.601–.604 Historical periods

 Add to base number 962.60 the numbers following 962.40 in 962.401–962.404, e.g., period as a part of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan 962.603

.7 *Darfur region of Sudan

.701–.704 Historical periods

 Add to base number 962.70 the numbers following 962.40 in 962.401–962.404, e.g., period as a part of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan 962.703

.8 *Kordofan region of Sudan

.801--804 Historical periods

Add to base number 962.80 the numbers following 962.40 in 962.401--962.404, e.g., period as a part of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan 962.803

.9 *Southern regions of Sudan

.901--904 Historical periods

Add to base number 962.90 the numbers following 962.40 in 962.401--962.404, e.g., period as a part of Anglo-Egyptian Sudan 962.903; however, for Civil War of 1955--1972, see 962.4041

963 *Ethiopia and Eritrea

Subdivisions are added for Ethiopia and Eritrea together, for Ethiopia alone

> 963.01--963.07 Historical periods for Ethiopia and Eritrea together, for Ethiopia alone

Class comprehensive works in 963

.01 Early history to 640

See also 939.78 for ancient Ethiopia (a part of what is now modern Sudan, not modern Ethiopia)

.02 640--1543

Including 7th century

For 600--640, see 963.01

.03 1543--1855

Including 16th century, 19th century

For 1500--1543, see 963.02; for 1855--1899, see 963.04

See Manual at 930--990: Add table: Centuries

.04 1855--1913

.041 Reign of Theodore II, 1855--1868

.042 1868--1889

Class here reign of John IV, 1872--1889

.043 Reign of Menelik II, 1889--1913

Including Ethiopian War, 1895--1896

.05 1913--1941

Class here 20th century

For 1900--1913, see 963.043; for 1941--1974, see 963.06; for 1974--1999, see 963.07

*Add as instructed under 930--990

- .053 Reign of Lij Yasu, 1913–1916
- .054 Period of Jah Rastafari (Haile Selassie) as regent and king,
1917–1930
- .055 Reign of Haile Selassie (Jah Rastafari) as emperor, 1930–1974
*For reign during 1935–1936, see 963.056; for reign during
1936–1941, see 963.057; for reign during 1941–1974, see 963.06*
- .056 Italo-Ethiopian War, 1935–1936
- .057 Period of Italian rule, 1936–1941
- .06 1941–1974
 Including deposition of Haile Selassie, 1974
- .07 1974–
- .071 1974–1991
 Including Ogaden War, 1977–1978
 Class here chairmanship of Mengistu Haile-Mariam, 1977–1991;
 Somali-Ethiopian conflicts, 1978–1991
 1991–1993 relocated to 963.0721
- .072 1991–
- .072 1 1991–
 Including 1991–1993 [*formerly* 963.071]
 Class here prime ministership of Malas Zénāwi, 1995 to present
 Class Somalia Civil War, 1991 to present, in 967.73053
- .4 *Northern provinces**
 Number built according to instructions under 930–990
 Including period of kingdom of Aksum
 For period of kingdom of Aksum in Eritrea, see 963.501
- .5 *Eritrea**
- .501 Early history to 640
- .502 640–1543
 Including 7th century
 For 600–640, see 963.501

- .503 1543–1855
 Including 16th century, 19th century
For 1500–1543, see 963.502; for 1855–1889, see 963.504; for 1889–1899, see 963.505
See Manual at 930–990: Add table: Centuries
- .504 1855–1889
- .504 1 Reign of Theodore II, 1855–1868
- .504 2 1868–1889
 Including reign of John IV, 1872–1889
- .505 Period of Italian control, 1889–1941
 Class here 20th century
For 1941–1952, see 963.506; for 1952–1999, see 963.507
- .506 Period of British control, 1941–1952
- .507 1952–
- .507 1 Period of union with Ethiopia, 1952–1993
- .507 2 1993–

964 *Morocco, Ceuta, Melilla, Western Sahara, Canary Islands

Subdivisions are added for Morocco, Ceuta, Melilla, Western Sahara, Canary Islands together; for Morocco alone

- (.01) Ancient history to 647
 (Optional number; prefer 939.712)
 Add to base number 964.01 the numbers following 939.7120 in 939.71201–939.71206, e.g., Roman period 964.014

- > 964.02–964.05 Historical periods of Morocco
 Class comprehensive works in 964
For early history to 647, see 939.712
 (Option: Class early history to 647 in 964.01; prefer 939.712)
- .02 Periods of Arab and Berber rule, 647–1830
- .021 647–ca. 1050
 Including 7th century, 11th century
For 600–647, see 939.71206; for ca. 1050–1099, see 964.023
See Manual at 930–990: Add table: Centuries

- .023 Ca. 1050–ca. 1550
Including 16th century
For ca. 1550–1599, see 964.025
- .025 Ca. 1550–1830
- .03 1830–1899
Including Spanish-Moroccan War, 1859–1860
(Option: Class Spanish-Moroccan War in 946.072)
Class here 19th century
For 1800–1830, see 964.02
- .04 1900–1956
Class here 20th century; period of French and Spanish protectorates,
1912–1956; reign of Muḥammad V, 1927–1961
*For 1956–1999, see 964.05; for reign of Muḥammad V during
1956–1961, see 964.051*
- .05 1956–
- .051 Later portion of reign of Muḥammad V, 1956–1961
- .052 Reign of Hassan II, 1961–1999
- .053 Reign of Mohammed VI, 1999–
- .8 *Western Sahara**
- .801 Early history to 1888
- .802 Spanish period, 1888–1976
- .803 Moroccan period, 1976–
Including Moroccan and Mauritanian period, 1976–1979
- .9 *Canary Islands**
- .906 Early history to 1402
- .907 Periods of French, Portuguese, Spanish rule, 1402–1927
- .908 Period as Provinces of Spain, 1927–
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1927, see 964.907
- .908 1 1927–1939
- .908 2 Period of Francisco Franco, 1939–1975
Add to base number 964.9082 the numbers following 946.082 in
946.0824–946.0827, e.g., 1960–1969 964.90826
- .908 3 Reign of Juan Carlos I, 1975–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

965 *Algeria

For early history to 647, see 939.714

- (.01) Early history to 647
 (Optional number; prefer 939.714)
 Add to base number 965.01 the numbers following 939.710 in 939.7101–939.7105, e.g., Roman period 965.014
- .02 647–1830
- .022 Periods of Arab and Berber rule, 647–1516
 Including 7th century
For 600–647, see 939.7106
- .024 Period of Ottoman Empire, 1516–1830
- .03 Period of French rule, 1830–1962
 Class here 19th century
For 1800–1830, see 965.024; for 1900–1962, see 965.04
- .04 1900–1962
 Class here 20th century
For 1962–1999, see 965.05
- .046 ‡Period of Revolution, 1954–1962
- .05 1962–
- .051 1962–1965
- .052 1965–1979
- .053 Administration of Chadli Bendjedid, 1979–1992
- .054 1992–
 Class here administration of Abdelaziz Bouteflika, 1999 to present
- .5 *Northeastern provinces**
For early history to 647, see 939.72
- (.501) Early history to 647
 Class here Numidia
 (Optional number; prefer 939.72)
 Add to base number 965.501 the numbers following 939.720 in 939.7201–939.7206, e.g., Roman period 965.5014

Add as instructed under 930–990

Add as instructed under 940–990

.7 *Sahara provinces*For early history to 647, see 939.77***(.701) Early history to 647**

Class here Gactulia

(Optional number; prefer 939.77)

966 *West Africa and offshore islands**SUMMARY**

966.01–.03	Historical periods
.1	Mauritania
.2	Mali, Burkina Faso, Niger
.3	Senegal
.4	Sierra Leone
.5	Gambia, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Cape Verde
.6	Liberia and Côte d'Ivoire
.7	Ghana
.8	Togo and Benin
.9	Nigeria

.01–.03 Historical periods

Add to base number 966.0 the numbers following 960 in 960.1–960.3, e.g., early history to 640 966.01

.1 *Mauritania**.101 Early history to 1903****.101 6 300–1200**

Class here comprehensive works on period of Ghana Empire

*For period of Ghana Empire in Mali history, see 966.2301***.101 7 1200–1500**

Class here period of Mali Empire

.103 French period, 1903–1960

Class here 20th century

*For 1900–1903, see 966.101; for 1960–1999, see 966.105***.105 1960–2005****.105 1 1960–1978**

Class here administration of Mokhtar Ould Daddah, 1961–1978

.105 2 1978–1984

Class here administration of Khouna Ould Haidallah, 1980–1984

*Add as instructed under 930–990

- .105 3 1984–2005
 Class here administration of Maawiya Ould Sid'Ahmed Taya,
 1992–2005
- .106 2005–
- .2 *Mali, Burkina Faso, Niger**
- .201 Early history to ca. 1900
- .201 7 1200–1400
 Class here period of Mali Empire
 For period of Mali Empire in Mauritanian history, see 966.1017
- .201 8 1400–1500
 Class here period of Songhai Empire
- .202 French period, ca. 1900–1960
 Class here 20th century
 For 1960–1999, see 966.203
- .203 1960–
- .23 *Mali
- .230 1 Early history to 1902
 Class comprehensive works on Mali Empire in 966.2017
- .230 3 Period as French Sudan, 1902–1960
 Class here 20th century, French period
 For 1900–1902, see 966.2301; for 1960–1999, see 966.2305
- .230 5 1960–
- .230 51 1960–1991
 Class here administration of Moussa Traoré, 1968–1991
- .230 52 1991–2002
 Class here administration of Alpha Oumar Konaré, 1992–2002
- .230 53 Administration of Ahmadou Touré, 2002–
- .25 *Burkina Faso**
- .250 1 Early history to 1897
 Including kingdom of Mossi

- .250 3 French period, 1897–1960
 Class here 20th century; period as Upper Volta, 1919–1932 and
 1947–1984
 For 1960–1999, see 966.2505
- .250 5 1960–
- .250 51 1960–1983
- .250 52 Administration of Thomas Sankara, 1983–1987
- .250 53 Administration of Blaise Compaoré, 1987–
- .26 *Niger**
- .260 1 Early history to 1900
- .260 3 French period, 1900–1960
 Class here 20th century
 For 1960–1999, see 966.2605
- .260 5 1960–
- .260 51 Administration of Hamani Diori, 1960–1974
- .260 52 1974–1999
 Including administration of Seyni Kountché, 1974–1987
- .260 53 Administration of Mamadou Tandja, 1999–2010
- .260 54 2010–
- .3 *Senegal**
- .301 Early history to 1895
 Including kingdom of Tekrur
- .303 French period, 1895–1960
 Class here 20th century
 For 1960–1999, see 966.305
- .305 1960–
- .305 1 1960–2000
 Including administration of Abdou Diouf, 1981–2000; Confederation
 of Senegambia, 1982–1989
 For Gambian part of Senegambia, see 966.51031
- .305 2 Administration of Abdoulaye Wade, 2000–
- .4 *Sierra Leone**
- .401 Early history to 1787

- .402 Period as a British colony, 1787–1896
- .403 Period as both colony and protectorate, 1896–1961
 Class here 20th century
 For 1961–1999, see 966.404
- .404 1961–2007
- .404 1 1961–1971
- .404 2 Administration of Siaka Probyn Stevens, 1971–1985
- .404 3 Administration of Joseph Saidu Momoh, 1985–1992
- .404 4 ‡1992–1998
 Class here chairmanship of Valentine E. M. Strasser, 1992–1996;
 Sierra Leone civil war, 1991–2002
 For Sierra Leone civil war during 1991–1992, see 966.4043
- .404 5 Administration of Amad Tejan Kabbah, 1998–2007
- .405 2007–
- .5 *Gambia, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Cape Verde**
- .51 *Gambia
- .510 1 Early history to 1807
- .510 2 Period as a British colony, 1807–1965
 Class here 20th century
 For 1965–1999, see 966.5103
- .510 3 1965–
- .510 31 Administration of Dawda Kairaba Jawara, 1965–1994
 Including period as a part of Senegambia, 1982–1989
 Class comprehensive works on Senegambia in 966.305
- .510 32 Administration of A. J. J. Jammeh, 1994–
- .52 *Guinea
- .520 1 Early history to 1882
- .520 3 Period as French Guinea, 1882–1958
 Class here 20th century
 For 1958–1999, see 966.5205
- .520 5 1958–
- .520 51 Administration of Ahmed Sékou Touré, 1958–1984

Add as instructed under 930–990

Add as instructed under 940–990

- .520 52 Administration of Lansana Conte, 1984–2008
- .520 53 2008–
- .57 *Guinea-Bissau
- .570 1 Early history to 1879
- .570 2 Period as Portuguese Guinea, 1879–1974
- .570 3 1974–
- .570 31 1974–1980
- .570 32 First administration of João Bernardo Vieira, 1980–1999
- .570 33 1999–2005
- .570 34 Second administration of João Bernardo Vieira, 2005–2009
- .570 35 2009–
- .58 *Cape Verde
- .580 1 Early history to 1900
- .580 2 1900–1975
- .580 3 1975–
- .580 31 Administration of Aristides Pereira, 1975–1991
- .580 32 Administration of António Mascarenhas Monteiro, 1991–2001
- .580 33 Administration of Pedro Verona Rodrigues Pires, 2001–
- .6 Liberia and Côte d'Ivoire**
- .62 *Liberia
- .620 1 Early history to 1847
- .620 2 1847–1945
- Class here 19th century
For 1800–1847, see 966.6201
- .620 3 1945–
- Class here 20th century
For 1900–1945, see 966.6202
- .620 31 1945–1980
- .620 32 Administration of Samuel K. Doe, 1980–1990
- .620 33 1990–2003
- Class here administration of Charles Ghankay Taylor, 1997–2003

- .620 34 2003–
 Class here administration of Ellen Johnson-Sirleaf, 2006 to present
- .68 *Côte d'Ivoire (Ivory Coast)
- .680 1 Early history to 1904
- .680 3 French period, 1904–1960
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1904, see 966.6801; for 1960–1999, see 966.6805
- .680 5 1960–
- .680 51 Administration of Félix Houphouët-Boigny, 1960–1993
- .680 52 Administration of Henri Konan Bédié, 1993–1999
- .680 53 1999–
 Class here administration of Laurent Gbagbo, 2000 to present
- .7 *Ghana**
 See also 966.1016 for Ghana Empire
- .701 Early history to 1874
- .701 6 Period of Akan states, 1295–1740
 Including Akwamu, Bono kingdoms
- .701 8 Period of Asante (Ashanti) empire, 1740–1874
 Including 18th century
 For 1700–1740, see 966.7016
- .703 Period as Gold Coast, 1874–1957
 Including British Togoland, 1914–1957
 Class here 20th century, British period
 For 1957–1999, see 966.705
- .705 1957–
- .705 1 1957–1979
 Including administration of Kwame Nkrumah, 1957–1966
- .705 2 1979–2001
 Class here administration of Jerry J. Rawlings, 1981–2001
- .705 3 Administration of John Agyekum Kufuor, 2001–2009
- .705 4 2009–
- .8 Togo and Benin**

- .81 ***Togo**
- .810 1 Early history to 1894
- .810 2 Period as Togoland, 1894–1914
- .810 3 Period as French Togoland, 1914–1960
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1914, see 966.8102; for 1960–1999, see 966.8104
- .810 4 1960–
- .810 41 1960–1967
- .810 42 Administration of Gnassingbé Eyadéma, 1967–2005
- .810 43 Administration of Faure Gnassingbé, 2005–
- .83 ***Benin**
- See also 966.9301 for kingdom of Benin*
- .830 1 Early history to 1904
- .830 18 Period of kingdom of Dahomey, 1600–1904
- .830 3 French period, 1904–1960
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1904, see 966.83018; for 1960–1999, see 966.8305
- .830 5 1960–
- .830 51 1960–1991
 Class here first administration of Mathieu Kérékou, 1972–1991
- .830 52 Administration of Nicéphore Dieudonné Soglo, 1991–1996
- .830 53 Second administration of Mathieu Kérékou, 1996–2006
- .830 54 Administration of Boni Yayi, 2006–
- .9 *Nigeria**
- .901 Early history to 1886
- .903 Period as a British colony, 1886–1960
 Class here 20th century
 For 1960–1999, see 966.905
- .905 1960–
- .905 1 1960–1967
- .905 2 Period of Nigerian Civil War, 1967–1970

- .905 3 1970–1999
 Including administration of Ibrahim Badamosi Babangida, 1985–1993
- .905 4 Administration of Olusegun Obasanjo, 1999–2007
- .905 5 Administration of Umaru Musa Yar'adua, 2007–2010
- .905 6 2010–

967 *Central Africa and offshore islands

Class here Sub-Saharan Africa (Africa south of the Sahara)

For each specific part of Sub-Saharan Africa not provided for here, see the part, e.g., Nigeria 966.9

SUMMARY

- 967.01–.03 Historical periods**
- .1 **Cameroon, Sao Tome and Principe, Equatorial Guinea**
- .2 **Gabon and Republic of the Congo**
- .3 **Angola**
- .4 **Central African Republic and Chad**
- .5 **Democratic Republic of the Congo, Rwanda, Burundi**
- .6 **Uganda and Kenya**
- .7 **Djibouti and Somalia**
- .8 **Tanzania**
- .9 **Mozambique**

- .01–.03 Historical periods

Add to base number 967.0 the numbers following 960 in 960.1–960.3, e.g., early history to 967.01

.1 *Cameroon, Sao Tome and Principe, Equatorial Guinea

Class here Islands of Gulf of Guinea, Lower Guinea area

.11 *Cameroon

- .110 1 Early history to 1884
- .110 2 Period as Kamerun, 1884–1916
 Class here German period
- .110 3 Anglo-French period, 1916–1959
 Class here 20th century

For 1900–1916, see 967.1102; for 1960–1999, see 967.1104

- .110 4 1960–
- .110 41 Administration of Ahmadou Ahidjo, 1960–1982
- .110 42 Administration of Paul Biya, 1982–
- .15 *Sao Tome and Principe
- .150 1 Early history to 1975

*Add as instructed under 930–990

- .150 2 Period of Republic, 1975–
- .150 21 Administration of Manuel Pinto da Costa, 1975–1991
- .150 22 Administration of Miguel Trovoadá, 1991–2001
- .150 23 Administration of Fradique Bandeira Melo de Menezes, 2001–
- .18 *Equatorial Guinea
- .180 1 Early history to 1469
- .180 2 Portuguese, British, Spanish periods, 1469–1968
 Including 20th century
 For 1968–1999, see 967.1803
- .180 3 1968–
- .180 31 Administration of Francisco Macías Nguema, 1968–1979
- .180 32 Administration of Teodoro Obiang Nguema Mbasogo, 1979–
- .2 *Gabon and Republic of the Congo**
- .201 Early history to 1910
- .203 Period as French Equatorial Africa, 1910–1959
 Class here 20th century; comprehensive works on French Equatorial Africa
 For 1900–1910, see 967.201; for 1959–1999, see 967.205; for Ubangi-Shari as part of French Equatorial Africa, see 967.4103; for Chad as part of French Equatorial Africa, see 967.4302
- .205 1959–
- .21 *Gabon
- .210 1 Early history to 1839
- .210 2 French period, 1839–1960
 Including period as a part of French Equatorial Africa; 19th century, 20th century
 Class comprehensive works on French Equatorial Africa in 967.203
 For 1800–1839, see 967.2101; for 1960–1999, see 967.2104
- .210 4 1960–
- .210 41 1960–1967
- .210 42 Administration of Omar Bongo, 1967–2009
- .210 43 2009–
- .24 *Republic of the Congo
- .240 1 Early history to 1885

- .240 3 Period as Middle Congo, 1885–1960
 Class here 20th century, French period
 Class comprehensive works on French Equatorial Africa in 967.203
 For 1960–1999, see 967.2405
- .240 5 1960–
- .240 51 1960–1979
- .240 52 First administration of Denis Sassou Nguesso, 1979–1992
- .240 53 1992–1997
- .240 54 Second administration of Denis Sassou Nguesso, 1997–
- .3 *Angola**
- .301 Early history to 1648
- .302 1648–1899
 Including 17th century
 For 1600–1648, see 967.301
- .303 1900–1975
- .304 1975–
- .304 1 Administration of António Agostinho Neto, 1975–1979
- .304 2 ‡Administration of José Eduardo dos Santos, 1979–
 Class here Angolan Civil War, 1975–2002
 For Angolan Civil War during 1975–1979, see 967.3041
- .4 *Central African Republic and Chad**
- .41 *Central African Republic
- .410 1 Early history to 1890
- .410 3 Period as Ubangi-Shari, 1890–1960
 Class here 20th century, French period, period as part of French
 Equatorial Africa
 Class comprehensive works on French Equatorial Africa in 967.203
 For 1960–1999, see 967.4105
- .410 5 1960–
- .410 51 1960–1979
- .410 52 1979–1993
 Class here administration of André Kolingba, 1981–1993

*Add as instructed under 930–990

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

- .410 53 Administration of Ange-Félix Patasse, 1993–2003
- .410 54 Administration of François Bozizé, 2003–
- .43 *Chad
- .430 1 Early history to 1850
Including 19th century, kingdom of Kanem
Class Kanem-Bornu in 966.9801
For 1850–1899, see 967.4302
- .430 2 Colonial period, 1850–1960
Including period as part of French Equatorial Africa; 20th century
Class comprehensive works on French Equatorial Africa in 967.203
For 1960–1999, see 967.4304
- .430 4 1960–
- .430 41 1960–1975
- .430 42 1975–1982
- .430 43 Administration of Hissein Habré, 1982–1990
- .430 44 1990–
- .5 *Democratic Republic of the Congo, Rwanda, Burundi**
- .51 *Democratic Republic of the Congo
- .510 1 Early history to 1885
- .510 2 Belgian period, 1885–1960
- .510 22 Period as Congo Free State, 1885–1908
- .510 24 Period as Belgian Congo, 1908–1960
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1908, see 967.51022; for 1960–1999, see 967.5103
- .510 3 1960–
- .510 31 1960–1965
- .510 33 Administration of Mobutu Sese Seko, 1965–1997
Class here period as Zaire, 1971–1997
- .510 34 1997–
- .57 *Rwanda and Burundi
- .570 1 Early history to 1899
- .570 2 German period, 1899–1917

- .570 3 Belgian period, 1917–1962
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1917, see 967.5702; for 1962–1999, see 967.5704
- .570 4 1962–
- .571 *Rwanda
- .571 01 Early history to 1899
- .571 02 German period, 1899–1917
- .571 03 Belgian period, 1917–1962
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1917, see 967.57102; for 1962–1999, see 967.57104
- .571 04 1962–
- .571 041 1962–1973
- .571 042 Administration of Juvénal Habyarimana, 1973–1994
- .571 043 1994–
- .571 043 1 Civil War of 1994
- .572 *Burundi
- .572 01 Early history to 1899
- .572 02 German period, 1899–1917
- .572 03 Belgian period, 1917–1962
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1917, see 967.57202; for 1962–1999, see 967.57204
- .572 04 1962–
- .572 041 1962–1993
- .572 041 5 Administration of Jean-Baptiste Bagaza, 1976–1987
- .572 042 1993–2005
- .572 043 2005–
- .6 *Uganda and Kenya**
 Class here East Africa
- .601 Early history to 1894
- .603 1894–1961
 Class here 20th century
 For 1961–1999, see 967.604

- .604 1961–1999
- .605 2000–
- .605 1 2000–2009
- .605 2 2010–2019
- .61 *Uganda
- .610 1 Early history to 1894
Including kingdoms of Ankole, Buganda, Bunyoro, Busoga, Karagwe
- .610 3 British period, 1894–1962
Class here 20th century
For 1962–1999, see 967.6104
- .610 4 1962–
- .610 41 First administration of A. Milton Obote, 1962–1971
- .610 42 Administration of Idi Amin, 1971–1979
- .610 43 Second administration of A. Milton Obote, 1980–1985
- .610 44 Administration of Yoweri Museveni, 1986–
- .62 *Kenya
- .620 1 Early history to 1895
- .620 3 British period, 1895–1963
Class here 20th century
For 1963–1999, see 967.6204
- .620 4 1963–
- .620 41 Administration of Jomo Kenyatta, 1963–1978
- .620 42 Administration of Daniel Arap Moi, 1978–2002
- .620 43 Administration of Mwai Kibaki, 2002–
- .7 *Djibouti and Somalia**
Class here Somaliland
- .71 *Djibouti
- .710 1 Early history to 1881
- .710 3 French period, 1881–1977
- .710 32 Period as French Somaliland, 1881–1967
Class here 20th century
For 1967–1977, see 967.71034; for 1977–1999, see 967.7104

- .710 34 Period as French Territory of the Afars and Issas, 1967–1977
- .710 4 1977–
- .710 41 Administration of Hassan Gouled Aptidon, 1977–1999
- .710 42 Administration of Ismail Omar Guelleh, 1999–
- .73 ***Somalia**
- .730 1 Early history to 1884
 Including kingdom of Mogadishu
- .730 3 Period of British and Italian control, 1884–1960
 Class here 20th century
 For 1960–1999, see 967.7305
- .730 5 1960–
- .730 51 1960–1969
- .730 52 Administration of Maxamed Siyaad Barre, 1969–1991
 Including 1990–1991 [*formerly 967.73053*]
 Class Somali-Ethiopian conflicts, 1978–1991, in 963.071
- .730 53 1991–
 Class here Civil War, 1991 to present
 1990–1991 relocated to 967.73052
- .8 *Tanzania**
- .801 Early history to 1884
- .802 German period, 1884–1916
- .803 1916–1964
 Class here British period, 1916–1961; 20th century
 For 1900–1916, see 967.802; for 1964–1999, see 967.804
- .804 Period as United Republic, 1964–
- .804 1 Administration of Julius K. Nyerere, 1964–1985
- .804 2 Administration of Ali Hassan Mwinyi, 1985–1995
- .804 3 Administration of Benjamin W. Mkapa, 1995–2005
- .804 4 Administration of Jakaya Khalifan Mrisho Kikwete, 2005–
- .81 ***Zanzibar and Pemba regions**
- .810 1 Early history to 1700
- .810 2 Period of Arab rule, 1700–1890

- .810 3 Period as a British protectorate, 1890–1963
 Class here 20th century
 For 1963–1999, see 967.8104
- .810 4 1963–
- .810 41 1963–1985
- .810 42 1985–1995
- .810 43 1995–2005
- .810 44 2005–
- .82 ***Mainland regions**
- .820 1 Early history to 1884
- .820 2 German period, 1884–1916
- .820 3 Period as Tanganyika, 1916–1961
 Class here 20th century, British period
 For 1900–1916, see 967.8202; for 1961–1999, see 967.8204
- .820 4 1961–
- .820 41 1961–1985
- .820 42 1985–1995
- .820 43 1995–2005
- .820 44 2005–
- .9 *Mozambique**
- .901 Early history to 1648
- .902 1648–1900
 Including 17th century
 Class here Portuguese period, 1648–1975
 For 1600–1648, see 967.901; for 1900–1975, see 967.903
- .903 1900–1975
- .905 1975–
- .905 1 Administration of Samora Machel, 1975–1986
- .905 2 Administration of Joaquim Alberto Chissano, 1986–2005
- .905 3 Administration of Armando Emilio Guebuza, 2005–

968 Republic of South Africa and neighboring southern African countries

Class here southern Africa

SUMMARY

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| 968.000 1--.000 9 | Standard subdivisions of southern Africa |
| .001--.009 | Standard subdivisions of Republic of South Africa |
| .02--.06 | Historical periods of Republic of South Africa |
| .2 | Gauteng, North-West, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, former homelands
(national states) of Republic of South Africa |
| .4 | KwaZulu-Natal |
| .5 | Free State |
| .7 | Northern Cape, Western Cape, Eastern Cape |
| .8 | Namibia, Botswana, Lesotho, Swaziland |
| .9 | Zimbabwe, Zambia, Malawi |
| .000 1--.000 8 | Standard subdivisions of southern Africa |
| | As modified under 930-990 |
| .000 9 | Historical periods; areas, regions, places; biography of southern Africa |
| .000 901--.000 905 | Historical periods |
| | Add to base number 968.00090 the numbers following —090
in notation 0901-0905 from Table 1, e.g., southern Africa
during 20th century 968.000904 |
| .000 91--.000 99 | Areas, regions, places in general; biography |
| | As modified under 930-990 |
| .001--.009 | Standard subdivisions of Republic of South Africa |
| | As modified under 930-990 |

968.02-968.06 Historical periods of Republic of South Africa

- Class comprehensive works in 968
- | | |
|------|--|
| .02 | Early history to 1488 |
| .03 | Period of European exploration and settlement, 1488-1814 |
| .04 | 1814-1910 |
| .041 | 1814-1835 |
| | Class here Mfecane (Difaqane) |
| .042 | Great Trek, 1835-1838 |
| .044 | 1838-1854 |
| .045 | 1854-1899 |

See also 968.2046 for First Anglo-Boer War

- .048 ‡South African War (Second Anglo-Boer War), 1899–1902
(Option: Class South African War [Second Anglo-Boer War] in 941.081)
- .048 3 Participation of specific groups of countries, of specific countries,
localities, groups
Number built according to instructions under 940–990
Class military participation of specific countries, localities, groups
in 968.0484. Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., efforts to
preserve or restore peace 968.0481
- .048 31 Great Britain
- .048 32 Orange Free State and South African Republic
Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in
heading
- [.048 34–.048 39] Participation of specific countries and localities
Do not use; class in 968.0483
- .049 1902–1910
- .05 Period of Union, 1910–1961
Class here 20th century
*For 1900–1902, see 968.048; for 1902–1910, see 968.049; for
1961–1999, see 968.06*
- .052 Prime ministership of Louis Botha, 1910–1919
- .053 First prime ministership of Jan Christiaan Smuts, 1919–1924
- .054 Prime ministership of James Barry Munnik Hertzog, 1924–1939
- .055 Second prime ministership of Jan Christiaan Smuts, 1939–1948
- .056 Prime ministership of Daniel François Malan, 1948–1954
- .057 Prime ministership of Johannes Gerhardus Strijdom, 1954–1958
- .058 Prime ministership of Hendrik Frensch Verwoerd, 1958–1966
Including Sharpeville Massacre, 1960
For 1961–1966, see 968.061
- .06 Period as Republic, 1961–
- .061 Period of prime ministership of Hendrik Frensch Verwoerd under
republic, 1961–1966
- .062 Prime ministership of B. J. Vorster, 1966–1978
- .062 7 1976–1977
Class here Soweto and related riots
- .063 Administration of P. W. Botha, 1978–1989

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

- .064 Administration of F. W. de Klerk, 1989–1994
- .065 Administration of Nelson Mandela, 1994–1999
- .066 Administration of Thabo Mbeki, 1999–2008
- .067 Administration of Kgalema Motlanthe, 2008–2009
- .068 Administration of Jacob Zuma, 2009–
- .2 *Gauteng, North-West, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, former homelands (national states) of Republic of South Africa**
- .203 Early history to 1835
- .204 1835–1910
- Class here 19th century
- For 1800–1835, see 968.203*
- .204 2 Period of Great Trek and Boer settlement, 1835–1852
- .204 5 Period as South African Republic, 1852–1877
- .204 6 Period of British control, 1877–1881
- Including First Anglo-Boer War, 1880–1881
- .204 7 1881–1899
- .204 75 Jameson raid, 1895–1896
- .204 8 Period of South African (Second Anglo-Boer) War, 1899–1902
- .204 9 Period as Transvaal Colony, 1902–1910
- .205 Period of Union, 1910–1961
- Class here 20th century; period as province of Transvaal, 1910–1996
- Add to base number 968.205 the numbers following 968.05 in 968.052–968.058, e.g., period of World War II 968.2055
- For 1900–1902, see 968.2048; for 1902–1910, see 968.2049; for 1961–1999, see 968.206*
- .206 Period of Republic, 1961–
- Add to base number 968.206 the numbers following 968.06 in 968.061–968.068, e.g., period of administration of Nelson Mandela 968.2065
- .29 Former homelands (national states [South Africa])
- Limited to pre-1997 periods
- For a specific homeland or part of a homeland, see the homeland or the part, e.g., Ciskei 968.755*
- .4 *KwaZulu-Natal**
- Province of Republic of South Africa

- .403 Early history to 1824
- .403 8 Period of early Nguni kingdoms, ca. 1500–1816
Including kingdoms of Mthethwa, Ndwandwe, Qwabe
- .403 9 Reign of Shaka, 1816–1828
For reign of Shaka during 1824–1828, see 968.4041
- .404 1824–1910
Class here period of Zululand, 1816–1879
For reign of Shaka, see 968.4039
- .404 1 Period of early British settlement, 1824–1835
Class here reign of Dingaan, 1828–1840
For reign of Dingaan during 1835–1840, see 968.4042
- .404 2 Period of Great Trek and Boer settlement, 1835–1843
Including Battle of Blood River, 1838; republic of Natalia
- .404 5 Period as a British colony, 1843–1899
Including reign of Cetewayo, 1872–1879; Zulu War, 1879; annexation of Zululand, 1897
- .404 8 Period of South African (Second Anglo-Boer) War, 1899–1902
- .404 9 1902–1910
- .405 Period of Union, 1910–1961
Class here 20th century; period as province of Natal, 1910–1996
Add to base number 968.405 the numbers following 968.05 in 968.052–968.058, e.g., period of World War II 968.4055
For 1900–1902, see 968.4048; for 1902–1910, see 968.4049; for 1961–1999, see 968.406
- .406 Period of Republic, 1961–
Add to base number 968.406 the numbers following 968.06 in 968.061–968.068, e.g., period of administration of Nelson Mandela 968.4065
- .5 *Free State**
Province of Republic of South Africa
- .503 Early history to 1828
- .504 1828–1910
Class here 19th century
For 1800–1828, see 968.503

- .504 2 Periods of Great Trek and as Orange River Sovereignty, 1835–1854
- .504 5 Period as Orange Free State, 1854–1899
- .504 8 Period of South African (Second Anglo-Boer) War, 1899–1902
- .504 9 Period as Orange River Colony, 1902–1910
- .505 Period of Union, 1910–1961
- Class here 20th century; period as province of Orange Free State, 1910–1996
- Add to base number 968.505 the numbers following 968.05 in 968.052–968.058, e.g., period of World War II 968.5055
- For 1900–1902, see 968.5048; for 1902–1910, see 968.5049; for 1961–1999, see 968.506*
- .506 Period of Republic, 1961–
- Add to base number 968.506 the numbers following 968.06 in 968.061–968.068, e.g., period of administration of Nelson Mandela 968.5065
- .7 *Northern Cape, Western Cape, Eastern Cape**
- Provinces of Republic of South Africa
- .702 Early history to 1488
- .703 Period of exploration and settlement, 1488–1814
- .703 1 1488–1652
- Including 17th century
- For 1652–1699, see 968.7032*
- .703 2 Period of Dutch control, 1652–1795
- Class period of control by Batavian Republic in 968.7033
- .703 3 1795–1806
- Including periods of British occupation, 1795–1803, control by Batavian Republic, 1803–1806
- .704 1806–1910
- .704 2 Period of British control, 1806–1854
- Including period of Great Trek
- Class period of British occupation, 1795–1803, in 968.7033
- .704 5 Period of self-government, 1854–1899
- .704 8 Period of South African (Second Anglo-Boer) War, 1899–1902
- .704 9 1902–1910

- .705 Period of Union, 1910–1961
 Class here 20th century; period as province of Cape of Good Hope, 1910–1996
 Add to base number 968.705 the numbers following 968.05 in 968.052–968.058, e.g., period of World War II 968.7055
 For 1900–1902, see 968.7048; for 1902–1910, see 968.7049; for 1961–1999, see 968.706
- .706 Period of Republic, 1961–
 Add to base number 968.706 the numbers following 968.06 in 968.061–968.068, e.g., period of administration of Nelson Mandela 968.7065
- .8 *Namibia, Botswana, Lesotho, Swaziland**
- .801–.803 Historical periods
 Add to base number 968.80 the numbers following 960 in 960.1–960.3, e.g., 20th century 968.8031
- .81 *Namibia
- .810 1 Early history to 1884
- .810 2 German period, 1884–1915
- .810 3 South African period, 1915–1990
- .810 4 1990–
- .810 41 Administration of Sam Nujoma, 1990–2005
- .810 42 Administration of Hifikepunye Lucas Pohamba, 2005–
- .83 *Botswana
- .830 1 Early history to 1885
- .830 2 Period as Bechuanaland, 1885–1966
 Class here 20th century, British period
 For 1966–1999, see 968.8303
- .830 3 1966–
- .830 31 Administration of Seretse Khama, 1966–1980
 1980–1990 relocated to 968.83032
- .830 32 Administration of Sir Ketumile Masire, 1980–1998
 Including 1980–1990 [*formerly* 968.83031]
- .830 33 Administration of Festus Gontebanye Mogae, 1998–2008
- .830 34 Administration of Seretse Khama Ian Khama, 2008–
- .85 *Lesotho

- .850 1 Early history to 1868
- .850 2 Period as Basutoland, 1868–1966
Including 20th century
Class here British period
For 1966–1999, see 968.8503
- .850 3 1966–
- .850 31 First reign of Moshoeshoe II, 1966–1990
Class here prime ministership of Leabua Jonathan, 1966–1986
- .850 32 1990–
Including second reign of Moshoeshoe II, 1995–1996; prime
ministership of Pakalitha Bethuel Mosisili, 1998 to present
Class here reigns of Letsie III, 1990–1995 and 1996 to present
- .87 *Swaziland
- .870 1 Early history to 1840
- .870 2 British period, 1840–1968
Including 19th century, 20th century
For 1800–1840, see 968.8701; for 1968–1999, see 968.8703
- .870 3 1968–
Including reigns of Sobhuza II, 1968–1982; Mswati III, 1986 to
present
- .9 *Zimbabwe, Zambia, Malawi**
- .901 Early history to 1888
- .902 Period of British control, 1888–1953
Class here 20th century
For 1953–1963, see 968.903; for 1964–1999, see 968.904
- .903 Period as Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland (Central African
Federation), 1953–1963
Class here prime ministership of Roy Welensky, 1956–1963
- .904 1964–
- .91 *Zimbabwe
- .910 1 Early history to 1889
Including Karanga kingdoms of Changamire, the Monomotapas

- .910 2 Period as Southern Rhodesia, 1889–1953
 Class here 20th century, British period
 *For 1953–1963, see 968.9103; for 1964–1980, see 968.9104; for
 1980–1999, see 968.9105*
- .910 3 Period of federation, 1953–1963
- .910 4 Period as Rhodesia, 1964–1980
 Class here prime ministership of Ian Douglas Smith, 1965–1979
- .910 5 Period as Republic of Zimbabwe, 1980–
- .910 51 Prime ministership of Robert Gabriel Mugabe, 1980–
- .94 *Zambia
- .940 1 Early history to 1890
 Including kingdoms of the Barotse, of the Bemba
- .940 2 Period of British control, 1890–1953
 Including periods as North-eastern Rhodesia and North-western
 Rhodesia provinces, 1890–1911; as Northern Rhodesia, 1911–1953
 Class here 20th century
 For 1953–1963, see 968.9403; for 1964–1999, see 968.9404
- .940 3 Period of federation, 1953–1963
- .940 4 Period as Republic of Zambia, 1964–
- .940 41 Administration of Kenneth D. Kaunda, 1964–1991
- .940 42 Administration of Frederick Chiluba, 1991–2002
- .940 43 Administration of Levy P. Mwanawasa, 2002–2008
- .940 44 2008–
- .97 *Malawi
- .970 1 Early history to 1891
 Including kingdom of Malawi
- .970 2 Period as Nyasaland, 1891–1953
 Class here 20th century, British period
 For 1953–1963, see 968.9703; for 1964–1999, see 968.9704
- .970 3 Period of federation, 1953–1963
- .970 4 1964–
- .970 41 Administration of H. Kamuzu Banda, 1964–1994
- .970 42 Administration of Bakili Muluzi, 1994–2004

.970 43 Administration of B. W. T. Mutharika, 2004–

969 †South Indian Ocean islands

.1 *Madagascar

.101 Early history to 1895

Including kingdoms of Betsimisaraka, Boina, Menabe, Merina

.103 French period, 1895–1960

Class here 20th century

For 1960–1999, see 969.105

.105 1960–

.105 1 1960–1975

Class here administration of Philibert Tsiranana, 1960–1972

.105 2 First administration of Didier Ratsiraka, 1975–1993

.105 3 1993–1997

.105 4 Second administration Didier Ratsiraka, 1997–2002

.105 5 Administration of Marc Ravalomanana, 2002–2009

.105 6 2009–

.4 †Comoro Islands

.41 †Comoros (Federal and Islamic Republic of the Comoros)

.45 †Mayotte

.6 †Seychelles

.7 †Chagos Islands

.8 †Réunion and Mauritius

.81 *Réunion

.810 2 Early history to 1946

.810 4 Period as a Department of France, 1946–

Class here 20th century

For 1900–1946, see 969.8102

.82 *Mauritius

.820 1 Early history to 1810

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .820 2 Period of British rule, 1810–1968
 Including 20th century
 For 1968–1999, see 969.8203
- .820 3 1968–1992
- .820 4 Period as republic, 1992–
- .820 41 Administration of Cassam Uteem, 1992–2002
- .820 42 2002–
 Class here administration of Aneerood Jugnauth, 2003 to present
- .9 †Isolated islands**
 Including Amsterdam, Cocos (Keeling), Crozet, Kerguelen, Prince Edward,
 Saint Paul

970 **History of North America**

SUMMARY

- 970.001–.009 Standard subdivisions**
 .01–.05 Historical periods
- 971 Canada**
972 Mexico, Central America, West Indies, Bermuda
973 United States
974 Northeastern United States (New England and Middle Atlantic states)
975 Southeastern United States (South Atlantic states)
976 South central United States
977 North central United States
978 Western United States
979 Great Basin and Pacific Slope region of United States
- .001–.003 Standard subdivisions
- .004 Ethnic and national groups
- .004 05–.004 09 Specific ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more
 than one continent, of European descent
 Add to base number 970.0040 the numbers following —0 in
 notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., general history and civilization
 of people of European descent in North America 970.00409
- .004 1–.004 9 Specific ethnic and national groups
 Add to base number 970.004 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., general
 history and civilization of North American native peoples in North
 America 970.00497
 (Option: Class North American native peoples in North America
 in 970.1; class specific native peoples in 970.3)
 Class history and civilization of North American native peoples in a
 specific place before European discovery and conquest with the place,
 without using notation 00497 from add table under 930–990, e.g.,
 Aztecs before 1519 972.018

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

.005-.009 Standard subdivisions
As modified under 930-990

> 970.01-970.05 Historical periods

Class comprehensive works in 970

.01 Early history to 1599

.011 Early history to 1492

Including pre-Columbian claims

*For Chinese claims, see 970.012; for Norse claims, see 970.013; for
Welsh claims, see 970.014*

.012 Chinese claims

.013 Norse claims

.014 Welsh claims

> 970.015-970.019 Period of European discovery and exploration

Class comprehensive works in 970.01

.015 Discoveries by Columbus

.016 Spanish and Portuguese explorations

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

.017 English explorations

.018 French explorations

.019 Explorations by other nations

.02 1600-1699

.03 1700-1799

.04 1800-1899

.05 1900-

.051 1900-1918

Class here period of World War I, 1914-1918

.052 1918-1945

Class here period of World War II, 1939-1945

.053 1945-1999

Class here 20th century

For 1900-1918, see 970.051; for 1918-1945, see 970.052

.053 4 1945-1949

.053 5 1950-1959

.053 6	1960–1969
.053 7	1970–1979
.053 8	1980–1989
.053 9	1990–1999
.054	2000–
.054 1	2000–2019
.054 11	2000–2009
.054 12	2010–2019

(.1) North American native peoples

(Optional number; prefer 970.00497)

Class special topics in 970.3–970.5

(.3) Specific native peoples

(Optional number; prefer 971–979 with use of subdivision 00497 from table under 930–990, e.g., the Hopi in Arizona 979.100497458)

Arrange alphabetically by name of people

Class government relations with specific native peoples in 970.5

(.4) Native peoples in specific places in North America

(Optional number; prefer 971–979 with use of subdivision 00497 from table under 930–990, e.g., native peoples in United States 973.0497, in Arizona 979.100497)

Add to base number 970.4 the numbers following —7 in notation 71–79 from Table 2, e.g., Indians in Arizona 970.491

Class specific native peoples in specific places in 970.3; class government relations in specific places in 970.5

(.5) Government relations with North American native peoples

(Optional number; prefer 323.1197 for comprehensive works; a specific subject with the subject, e.g., Black Hawk War 973.56, relation to the state in Canada 323.1197071)

History and policy

> **971–979 Countries and localities**

Class comprehensive works in 970. Class specific native peoples in a specific place with the place in 971–979 with use of subdivision 00497 from table under 930–990, e.g., the Hopi in Arizona 979.100497458

(Option: Class native peoples in specific places in North America in 970.4)

971 *Canada

SUMMARY

971.01–.07	[Historical periods]
.1	British Columbia
.2	Prairie Provinces
.3	Ontario
.4	Quebec
.5	Atlantic Provinces
.6	Nova Scotia
.7	Prince Edward Island
.8	Newfoundland and Labrador, Saint Pierre and Miquelon
.9	Northern territories

SUMMARY

971.01	Early history to 1763
.02	Period of early British rule, 1763–1791
.03	Period of Upper and Lower Canada, 1791–1841
.04	Period of Province of Canada, 1841–1867
.05	Period of Dominion of Canada, 1867–
.06	1911–1999
.07	2000–
.01	Early history to 1763
.011	Early history to 1632
.011 1	Period before European discovery and exploration
.011 2	Norse explorations
.011 3	French explorations
.011 4	English explorations
.016	Period of French and English expansion, 1632–1689
	Class here 17th century
	<i>For 1600–1632, see 971.011; for 1689–1699, see 971.018</i>
.016 2	Period of Company of New France, 1632–1663
.016 3	1663–1689

- .018 Period of struggle of France and England for supremacy, 1689–1763
 Including periods of War of the League of Augsburg, 1688–1697; War of the Spanish Succession, 1701–1714; War of the Austrian Succession, 1740–1748
 (Option: Class here North American aspects of War of the League of Augsburg, War of the Spanish Succession; prefer 973.25. Class here North American aspects of War of the Austrian Succession; prefer 973.26)
 Class here comprehensive works on period as a French royal province, 1663–1763; 18th century
 Class North American aspects of War of the League of Augsburg, War of the Spanish Succession in 973.25; class North American aspects of War of the Austrian Succession in 973.26; class comprehensive works on War of the League of Augsburg in 940.2525; class comprehensive works on War of the Spanish Succession in 940.2526; class comprehensive works on War of the Austrian Succession in 940.2532
 For 1663–1689, see 971.0163; for 1763–1791, see 971.02; for 1791–1799, see 971.032
- [.018 7] Expulsion of Acadians, 1755
 Relocated to 971.5017
- .018 8 Period of Seven Years' War, 1756–1763
 Class North American aspects of Seven Years' War in 973.26; class comprehensive works on Seven Years' War in 940.2534
 (Option: Class here North American aspects of Seven Years' War; prefer 973.26)
 Expulsion of Acadians, 1758, relocated to 971.5017
- .02 Period of early British rule, 1763–1791
- .022 1763–1774
 Including Quebec Act, 1774
 (Option: Class here Pontiac's conspiracy, 1763–1764; prefer 973.27)
- .024 Period of American Revolution, 1774–1783
 Including settlement of Loyalists from United States, 1774–1789
 For settlement of Loyalists during 1783–1789, see 971.028
- .028 1783–1791
 Class here Constitutional Act, 1791
- .03 Period of Upper and Lower Canada, 1791–1841
 Class here 19th century
 For 1841–1867, see 971.04; for 1867–1899, see 971.05
- .032 1791–1812

- .034 Period of War of 1812, 1812–1814
(Option: Class here War of 1812; prefer 973.52)
- .036 1814–1837
- .038 Period of rebellions of 1837–1838
Including Family Compact of Upper Canada; Chateau Clique of Lower Canada
- .039 1838–1841
Class here Durham mission and report, 1838–1839; Act of Union, 1840
- .04 Period of Province of Canada, 1841–1867
- .042 1841–1864
- .048 Period of Fenian activities, 1866–1871
- .049 Period of Confederation, 1864–1867
Including Charlottetown and Quebec Conferences, 1864; British North America Act, 1867
For period of Fenian activities, see 971.048
- .05 Period of Dominion of Canada, 1867–
For 1911–1999, see 971.06; for 2000 to present, see 971.07
- .051 First prime ministership of Sir John A. Macdonald, 1867–1873
Including Riel's first (Red River) rebellion, 1869–1870
For Fenian activities during 1867–1871, see 971.048
- .052 Prime ministership of Alexander Mackenzie, 1873–1878
- .054 Second prime ministership of Sir John A. Macdonald, 1878–1891
Including Riel's second (Northwest) rebellion, 1885
- .055 1891–1896
Including prime ministerships of Sir John J. C. Abbott, 1891–1892; of Sir John Sparrow Thompson, 1892–1894; of Sir Mackenzie Bowell, 1894–1896; of Sir Charles Tupper, 1896
- .056 Prime ministership of Sir Wilfrid Laurier, 1896–1911
- .06 1911–1999
- .061 1911–1921
- .061 2 Prime ministership of Sir Robert Laird Borden, 1911–1920
- .061 3 First prime ministership of Arthur Meighen, 1920–1921
- .062 1921–1935
- .062 2 First and second prime ministerships of William Lyon Mackenzie King, 1921–1930
Including second prime ministership of Arthur Meighen, 1926

- .062 3 Prime ministership of Richard Bedford Bennett, 1930–1935
- .063 1935–1957
- .063 2 Third prime ministership of William Lyon Mackenzie King, 1935–1948
- .063 3 Prime ministership of Louis Stephen Saint-Laurent, 1948–1957
- .064 1957–1999
- .064 2 Prime ministership of John G. Diefenbaker, 1957–1963
- .064 3 Prime ministership of Lester B. Pearson, 1963–1968
- .064 4 First prime ministership of Pierre Elliott Trudeau, 1968–1979
- .064 5 Prime ministership of Joe (Charles Joseph) Clark, 1979–1980
- .064 6 Second prime ministership of Pierre Elliott Trudeau, 1980–1984
Including prime ministership of John Turner, 1984
- .064 7 Prime ministership of Brian Mulroney, 1984–1993
Including prime ministership of Kim Campbell, 1993
- .064 8 1993–1999
Class here prime ministership of Jean Chrétien, 1993–2003
For prime ministership of Jean Chrétien during 2000–2003, see 971.071
- .07 2000–
- .071 Later portion of prime ministership of Jean Chrétien, 2000–2003
- .072 Prime ministership of Paul Martin, 2003–2006
- .073 Prime ministership of Stephen Harper, 2006–
- .1 *British Columbia**
- .101 Early history to 1790
- .102 Period of settlement and colony, 1790–1871
Including colony of New Caledonia
Class here 19th century
For 1871–1899, see 971.103
- .103 Period as a Province of Canada, 1871–
For 1945–1999, see 971.104; for 2000 to present, see 971.105
- .104 1945–1999
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1945, see 971.103
- .105 2000–

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.2 *Prairie Provinces

- .201 Early history to 1869
Including Rupert's Land
- .202 1869–1945
- .203 1945–1999
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1945, see 971.202
- .204 2000–

.3 *Ontario

- .301 Early history to 1791
- .302 Period of Upper Canada and Act of Union, 1791–1867
Class here 19th century
For 1867–1899, see 971.303
- .303 Period as a Province of Canada, 1867–
For 1945–1999, see 971.304; for 2000 to present, see 971.305
- .304 1945–1999
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1945, see 971.303
- .305 2000–

.4 *Quebec

- .401 Early history to 1763
- .401 2 Early history to 1608
Including period of explorations by Jacques Cartier, 1534–1535
- .401 4 French period, 1608–1763
Including 18th century
For 1763–1799, see 971.402
- .402 British period, 1763–1867
Including period of Lower Canada, 1791–1841; 19th century
For 1867–1899, see 971.403
- .403 Period as a Province of Canada, 1867–
For 1945–1999, see 971.404; for 2000 to present, see 971.405

- .404 1945–1999
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1945, see 971.403
- .405 2000–
- .5 *Atlantic Provinces**
Class here Maritime Provinces
For Nova Scotia, see 971.6; for Prince Edward Island, see 971.7; for Newfoundland and Labrador, see 971.8
- .501 Early history to 1763
Including 18th century
For 1763–1799, see 971.502
- .501 7 1604–1763
Class here expulsion of Acadians, 1755 [*formerly* 971.0187] and 1758 [*formerly* 971.0188]; comprehensive works on Acadia [*formerly* 971.601]
For a specific part of Acadia not provided for here, see the part, e.g., Acadia in Nova Scotia 971.601
- .502 Period as British colonies, 1763–1867
Including 19th century
For 1867–1899, see 971.503
- .503 Period as provinces of Canada, 1867–
For 1945–1999, see 971.504; for 2000 to present, see 971.505
- .504 1945–1999
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1945, see 971.503
- .505 2000–
- .51 *New Brunswick**
- .510 1 Early history to 1784
For expulsion of Acadians, see 971.5017
- .510 2 Period as separate province, 1784–1867
Including 19th century
For 1867–1899, see 971.5103
- .510 3 Period as a Province of Canada, 1867–
For 1945–1999, see 971.5104; for 2000 to present, see 971.5105

- .510 4 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1945, see 971.5103
- .510 5 2000–
- .6 *Nova Scotia**
- .601 Early history to 1763
 Including 18th century
 For expulsion of Acadians, see 971.5017; for 1763–1799, see 971.602
 Comprehensive works on Acadia relocated to 971.5017
- .602 Period as a British colony, 1763–1867
 Including 19th century
 For 1867–1899, see 971.603
- .603 Period as a Province of Canada, 1867–
 For 1945–1999, see 971.604; for 2000 to present, see 971.605
- .604 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1945, see 971.603
- .605 2000–
- .7 *Prince Edward Island**
- .701 Early history to 1769
 Including 18th century
 For expulsion of Acadians, see 971.5017; for 1769–1799, see 971.702
- .702 Period as separate province, 1769–1873
 Including 19th century
 For 1873–1899, see 971.703
- .703 Period as a Province of Canada, 1873–
 For 1945–1999, see 971.704; for 2000 to present, see 971.705
- .704 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1945, see 971.703
- .705 2000–

.8 *Newfoundland and Labrador, Saint Pierre and Miquelon

Class here Newfoundland

> 971.801–971.805 Historical periods for Newfoundland and Labrador

Class comprehensive works in 971.8

.801 Early history to 1855

Including 19th century

For 1855–1899, see 971.802

.802 1855–1934

.803 Period of suspension of parliamentary government, 1934–1949

.804 Period as a Province of Canada, 1949–

Class here 20th century

For 1900–1934, see 971.802; for 1934–1949, see 971.803; for 2001 to present, see 971.805

.805 2001–

.82 *Labrador

.820 1 Early history to 1763

Including 18th century

For 1763–1799, see 971.8202

.820 2 Period when claimed by Lower Canada (Quebec) and Newfoundland, 1763–1927

.820 3 Period as dependency of Newfoundland, 1927–1949

.820 4 Period as part of Province of Newfoundland and Labrador, 1949–

Class here 20th century

For 1900–1927, see 971.8202; for 1927–1949, see 971.8203; for 2001 to present, see 971.8205

.820 5 2001–

.88 †Saint Pierre and Miquelon

.9 *Northern territories

.901 Early history to 1870

Including 19th century

For 1870–1899, see 971.902

.902 1870–1945

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .903 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1945, see 971.902
- .904 1999–
- .91 *Yukon
- .910 1 Early history to 1898
- .910 2 1898–1945
- .910 3 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1945, see 971.9102
- .910 4 1999–
- .92 *Northwest Territories (1870–1999)
 See also 971.93 for Northwest Territories (1999–); also 971.95 for Nunavut
- .920 1–.920 4 Historical periods
 Add to base number 971.920 the numbers following 971.90 in 971.901–971.904, e.g., 1945–1999 971.9203
- .93 *Northwest Territories (1999–)
 See also 971.92 for Northwest Territories (1870–1999)
- .930 1–.930 4 Historical periods
 Add to base number 971.930 the numbers following 971.90 in 971.901–971.904, e.g., 1945–1999 971.9303
- .95 *Nunavut
- .950 1–.950 4 Historical periods
 Add to base number 971.950 the numbers following 971.90 in 971.901–971.904, e.g., 1945–1999 971.9503

972 **Mexico, Central America, West Indies, Bermuda**

Class here Middle America

SUMMARY

- 972.000 1–.000 9 Standard subdivisions of Mexico, Central America, West Indies, Bermuda together**
- .001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Mexico**
- .01–.08 Historical periods of Mexico**
- .8 Central America**
- .9 West Indies (Antilles) and Bermuda**

*Add as instructed under 930–990

- .000 1--.000 8 Standard subdivisions of Mexico, Central America, West Indies, Bermuda together
 As modified under 930--990
- .000 9 Historical periods; areas, regions, places in general; biography of Mexico, Central America, West Indies, Bermuda together
- .000 901--.000 905 Historical periods
 Add to base number 972.00090 the numbers following —090 in notation 0901--0905 from Table 1, e.g., Mexico, Central America, West Indies, Bermuda together during 20th century 972.000904
- .000 91--.000 99 Areas, regions, places in general; biography
 As modified under 930--990
- .001--.009 Standard subdivisions of Mexico
 As modified under 930--990

-
- > 972.01--972.08 Historical periods of Mexico
 Class comprehensive works in 972
- .01 Early history to 1519
- .016 Classical period, ca. 100--ca. 900
- .017 Ca. 900--1325
 Class here period of Toltec empire, ca. 900--ca. 1200
- .018 Aztec period, 1325--1519
 Including 14th century
 For 1300--1325, see 972.017
- .02 Conquest and colonial period, 1519--1810
- .03 Revolutionary period and period of independence, 1810--1822
- .04 Periods of first empire and republic, 1822--1845
 Class here 19th century
 For a part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., period of second empire 972.07
- .05 Period of war with United States, 1845--1848
 (Option: Class here Mexican War; prefer 973.62)
- .06 Period of reaction and reform, 1848--1861

- .07 Period of European intervention, 1861–1867
 Class here period of second empire, 1864–1867; comprehensive works on
 administration of Benito Juárez, 1858–1872
 For administration of Benito Juárez during 1858–1861, see 972.06; for
 administration of Benito Juárez during 1867–1872, see 972.0812
- .08 Period of Republic, 1867–
- .081 1867–1917
- .081 2 1867–1876
- .081 4 Porfiriato, 1876–1910
 Class here administrations of Porfirio Díaz, 1876–1880, 1884–1910
- .081 6 Period of Mexican Revolution, 1910–1917
- .082 1917–1964
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1910, see 972.0814; for 1910–1917, see 972.0816; for
 1964–1999, see 972.083
- .082 1 Administrations of Venustiano Carranza and Adolfo de la Huerta,
 1917–1920
- .082 2 Administration of Alvaro Obregón, 1920–1924
- .082 3 Administration of Plutarco Elías Calles, 1924–1928
- .082 4 Administrations of Emilio Portes Gil, Pascual Ortiz Rubio, Abelardo L.
 Rodríguez, 1928–1934
- .082 42 Administration of Emilio Portes Gil, 1928–1930
- .082 43 Administration of Pascual Ortiz Rubio, 1930–1932
- .082 44 Administration of Abelardo L. Rodríguez, 1932–1934
- .082 5 Administration of Lázaro Cárdenas, 1934–1940
- .082 6 Administration of Manuel Avila Camacho, 1940–1946
- .082 7 Administration of Miguel Alemán, 1946–1952
- .082 8 Administration of Adolfo Ruiz Cortines, 1952–1958
- .082 9 Administration of Adolfo López Mateos, 1958–1964
- .083 1964–2000
- .083 1 Administration of Gustavo Díaz Ordaz, 1964–1970
- .083 2 Administration of Luis Echeverría, 1970–1976
- .083 3 Administration of José López Portillo, 1976–1982
- .083 4 Administration of Miguel de la Madrid Hurtado, 1982–1988
- .083 5 Administration of Carlos Salinas de Gortari, 1988–1994
- .083 6 Administration of Ernesto Zedillo Ponce de León, 1994–2000

- .084 2000–
 .084 1 Administration of Vicente Fox Quesada, 2000–2006
 .084 2 Administration of Felipe Calderón Hinojosa, 2006–

> **972.8–972.9 Other parts of Middle America**

Class comprehensive works in 972

.8 *Central America

- .801 Early history to 1502
 .802 Period of European discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1535
 .803 Colonial period, 1535–1821
 Including 16th century
 For 1500–1502, see 978.801; for 1502–1535, see 978.802
 .804 1821–1899
 Including period of United Provinces of Central America, 1823–1840
 .805 1900–
 .805 1 1900–1944
 Class here 20th century
 For 1944–1979, see 972.8052; for 1979–1999, see 972.8053
 .805 2 1944–1979
 .805 3 1979–1999
 .805 4 2000–

.81 *Guatemala

- .810 1 Early history to 1502
 .810 16 Mayan period, ca. 300–ca. 900
 Class here comprehensive works on Mayan period in Middle America
 For a specific aspect of the Mayan period not provided for here, see the aspect, e.g., Mayan period from ca. 900 to 1325 in Mexico 972.6017
 .810 2 Period of European discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1524
 .810 3 Colonial period, 1524–1821
 Including 16th century
 For 1500–1502, see 972.8101; for 1502–1524, see 972.8102

- .810 4 1821–1871
 Class here 19th century
 For 1800–1821, see 972.8103; for 1871–1899, see 972.81051
- .810 42 1821–1839
 Class here period as a part of United Provinces of Central
 America, 1823–1839
- .810 44 1839–1871
 Class here administration of Rafael Carrera, 1839–1865
- .810 5 1871–
- .810 51 1871–1931
- .810 52 1931–1986
 Including Civil War, 1960–1996
 Class here 20th century
 *For 1900–1931, see 972.81051; for 1986–1999, see
 972.810531*
- .810 53 1986–
- .810 531 1986–2000
- .810 532 Administration of Alfonso Portillo, 2000–2004
- .810 533 Administration of Oscar Berger Perdomo, 2004–2008
- .810 534 Administration of Álvaro Colom Caballeros, 2008–
- .82 *Belize
- .820 1 Early history to 1502
- .820 2 Period of Spanish discovery and colonization, 1502–1638
- .820 3 1638–1862
 Including 17th century, 19th century
 Class here period of British involvement, 1638–1963; 18th century
 For 1600–1638, see 972.8202; for 1862–1963, see 972.8204
- .820 4 Period as a British colony, 1862–1981
 Including period as self-governing colony, 1964–1981 [*formerly*
 972.8205]
 Class here 20th century
 For 1981–1999, see 972.8205
- .820 5 1981–
 Period as self-governing colony, 1964–1981 relocated to 972.8204

- .83 *Honduras
- .830 1 Early history to 1502
- .830 2 Period of Spanish discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1542
- .830 3 Colonial period, 1542–1821
 Including 16th century
 For 1500–1502, see 972.8301; for 1502–1542, see 972.8302
- .830 4 1821–1838
 Class here period as a part of United Provinces of Central America,
 1823–1838
- .830 5 1838–
- .830 51 1838–1924
 Class here 19th century
 For 1800–1821, see 972.8303; for 1821–1838, see 972.8304
- .830 52 1924–1978
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1924, see 972.83051; for 1978–1999, see 972.83053
- .830 53 1978–
- .830 531 1978–1982
- .830 532 Administration of Roberto Suazo Córdova, 1982–1986
- .830 533 Administration of José Azcona H., 1986–1990
- .830 534 Administration of Rafael Leonardo Callejas Romero, 1990–1994
- .830 535 Administration of Carlos Roberto Reina, 1994–1998
- .830 536 Administration of Carlos Flores Facussé, 1998–2002
- .830 537 Administration of Ricardo Maduro, 2002–2006
- .830 538 2006–
- .84 *El Salvador
- .840 1 Early history to 1524
- .840 2 Period of Spanish discovery, exploration, conquest, 1524–1542
- .840 3 Colonial period, 1542–1821
 Including 16th century
 For 1500–1524, see 972.8401; for 1524–1542, see 972.8402

- .840 4 1821–1859
 Class here 19th century
 For 1800–1821, see 972.8403; for 1859–1899, see 972.8451
- .840 42 1821–1839
 Class here period as a part of United Provinces of Central
 America, 1823–1839
- .840 44 1839–1859
- .840 5 1859–
- .840 51 1859–1931
- .840 52 1931–1979
 Class here 20th century
 *For 1900–1931, see 972.84051; for 1979–1994, see
 972.84053; for 1994–1999, see 972.84054*
- .840 53 1979–1994
- .840 54 1994–
- .840 541 Administration of Armando Calderón Sol, 1994–1999
- .840 542 Administration of Francisco Flores Pérez, 1999–2004
- .840 543 Administration of Elías Antonio Saca, 2004–2009
- .840 544 Administration of Carlos Mauricio Funes, 2009–
- .85 ***Nicaragua**
- .850 1 Early history to 1502
- .850 2 Period of Spanish discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1527
- .850 3 Colonial period, 1527–1821
 Including 16th century
 For 1500–1502, see 972.8501; for 1502–1527, see 972.8502
- .850 4 1821–1893
 Class here 19th century
 For 1800–1821, see 972.8503; for 1893–1899, see 972.85051
- .850 42 1821–1838
 Class here period as a part of United Provinces of Central
 America, 1823–1838
- .850 44 1838–1893
- .850 5 1893–

- .850 51 1893–1934
Class here period of interventions by United States, 1909–1933
- .850 52 1934–1979
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1934, see 972.85051; for 1979–1990, see 972.85053; for 1990–1999, see 972.85054
- .850 53 1979–1990
Including first administration of Daniel Ortega, 1985–1990
- .850 54 1990–
- .850 541 Administration of Violeta Barrios de Chamorro, 1990–1997
- .850 542 Administration of Arnoldo Alemán, 1997–2002
- .850 543 Administration of Enrique Bolaños Geyer, 2002–2007
- .850 544 Second administration of Daniel Ortega, 2007–
- .86 *Costa Rica
- .860 1 Early history to 1502
- .860 2 Period of Spanish discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1560
- .860 3 Colonial period, 1560–1821
Including 16th century
For 1500–1502, see 972.8601; for 1502–1560, see 972.8602
- .860 4 1821–1948
- .860 42 1821–1838
Class here period as a part of United Provinces of Central America, 1823–1838
- .860 44 1838–1948
- .860 5 1948–
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1948, see 972.86044
- .860 51 1948–1986
- .860 52 1986–
- .860 521 First administration of Óscar Arias Sánchez, 1986–1990
- .860 522 Administration of Rafael Angel Calderón Fournier, 1990–1994
- .860 523 Administration of José María Figueres, 1994–1998
- .860 524 Administration of Miguel Angel Rodríguez, 1998–2002

- .860 525 Administration of Abel Pacheco, 2002–2006
- .860 526 Second administration of Óscar Arias Sánchez, 2006–2010
- .860 527 Administration of Laura Chinchilla, 2010–
- .87 *Panama
- .870 1 Early history to 1514
- .870 11 Early history to 1501
- .870 12 Period of Spanish discovery, exploration, conquest, 1501–1514
- .870 2 Colonial period, 1514–1821
Including period as a part of Viceroyalty of New Granada, 1739–1810
- .870 3 Period as a part of Colombia, 1821–1903
- .870 5 1903–
- .870 51 1903–1977
- .870 53 1977–1999
- .870 54 1999–
- .870 541 Administration of Mireya Moscoso, 1999–2004
- .870 542 Administration of Martín Torrijos Espino, 2004–2009
- .870 543 Administration of Ricardo Alberto Martinelli Berrocal, 2009–

.9 *West Indies (Antilles) and Bermuda

Class here Caribbean Area

*For a part of Caribbean Area not provided for here, see the part, e.g.,
Venezuela 987*

- .901 Early history to 1492
- .902 Period of European discovery and early colonial period, 1492–1608
- .903 1608–1801
- .904 1801–1902
- .905 1902–
- .905 1 1902–1945
- .905 2 1945–1999
- Class here 20th century
- For 1900–1902, see 972.904; for 1902–1945, see 972.9051*
- .905 3 2000–

.91 *Cuba

- .910 1 Early history to 1492

- .910 2 Period of European discovery, exploration, conquest, 1492–1514
- .910 3 1514–1763
 Including 18th century
 For 1763–1799, see 972.9104
- .910 4 1763–1810
- .910 5 1810–1899
 For Spanish-American War, see 973.89
- .910 6 1899–
 Class here period of Republic, 1902 to present
 For 2008 to present, see 972.9107
- .910 61 Period of American military occupation, 1899–1902
- .910 62 1902–1933
- .910 63 1933–1958
- .910 64 Period of Fidel Castro, 1959–2008
- .910 7 2008–
- .92 *Jamaica and Cayman Islands
 Subdivisions are added for Jamaica and Cayman Islands together, for
 Jamaica alone

> 972.920 1–972.920 6 Historical periods of Jamaica

Class comprehensive works in 972.92

- .920 1 Early history to 1494
- .920 2 1494–1607
- .920 3 1607–1832
- .920 31 Last period of Spanish rule, 1607–1655
- .920 32 1655–1692
 Including Great Earthquake, 1692
 Class here 17th century
 *For a specific part of 17th century not provided for here, see
 the part, e.g., 1600–1607 972.9202*
- .920 33 1692–1782
- .920 34 1782–1832

- .920 4 1832–1904
 Class here 19th century
 For 1801–1832, see 972.92034
- .920 5 1904–1962
 Class here 20th century
 For 1901–1904, see 972.9204; for 1962–1999, see 972.9206
- .920 6 1962–
- .921 †Cayman Islands
- .93 *Dominican Republic
- .930 1 Early history to 1492
- .930 2 Period of European discovery and early colonial period, 1492–1608
- .930 3 1608–1801
- .930 4 1801–1902
- .930 5 1902–
- .930 52 1902–1930
- .930 53 Period of Rafael Léonidas Trujillo Molina, 1930–1961
- .930 54 1961–2000
- .930 55 2000–
- .94 *Haiti
- .940 1 Early history to 1492
- .940 2 Period of Spanish rule, 1492–1625
- .940 3 Period as a French colony, 1625–1804
- .940 4 1804–1915
- .940 5 Period of American occupation, 1915–1934
- .940 6 1934–1957
 Class here 20th century
 *For 1900–1915, see 972.9404; for 1915–1934, see 972.9405; for
 1957–1999, see 972.9407*
- .940 7 1957–
- .940 72 Periods of François Duvalier and Jean-Claude Duvalier, 1957–1986
- .940 73 1986–
- .95 *Puerto Rico

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .950 1 Early history to 1493
- .950 2 Period of European discovery and early colonial period, 1493–1602
- .950 3 1602–1804
- .950 4 1804–1899
- .950 5 1900–
- .950 52 1900–1952
- Class here 20th century
- For 1952–1999, see 972.95053*
- .950 53 Period of Commonwealth, 1952–
- .96 †Bahama Islands
- .97 †Leeward Islands
- For Dominica, see 972.9841*
- .972 †Virgin Islands
- .973 †Anguilla and Saint Kitts-Nevis
- .974 †Antigua and Barbuda
- .975 †Montserrat
- .976 †Guadeloupe
- .977 †Leeward Netherlands islands
- .98 †Windward and other southern islands
- .981 †Barbados
- .982 †Martinique
- .983 *Trinidad and Tobago
- .983 01 Early history to 1498
- .983 02 Spanish period, 1498–1797
- .983 03 British period, 1797–1962
- Including 20th century
- For 1962–1999, see 972.98304*
- .983 04 1962–
- .984 †Windward Islands
- .984 1 †Dominica
- .984 3 †Saint Lucia

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .984 4 †Saint Vincent and the Grenadines
For Carriacou, see 972.9845
- .984 5 †Grenada and Carriacou
- .986 †Netherlands islands
For Leeward Netherlands islands, see 972.977
- .99 †Bermuda

973 United States

For specific states, see 974–979

SUMMARY

- 973.01–.09 Standard subdivisions
- .1 Early history to 1607
 - .2 Colonial period, 1607–1775
 - .3 Periods of Revolution and Confederation, 1775–1789
 - .4 Constitutional period, 1789–1809
 - .5 1809–1845
 - .6 1845–1861
 - .7 Administration of Abraham Lincoln, 1861–1865
 - .8 Reconstruction period, 1865–1901
 - .9 1901–

- .01–.09 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 930–990

(If optional notation 734–739 from Table 2 is chosen, use 973.01–973.09 for historical periods, and 973.001–973.009 for standard subdivisions)

.1 Early history to 1607

Add to base number 973.1 the numbers following 970.01 in 970.011–970.019, e.g., French explorations 973.18

.2 Colonial period, 1607–1775

> 973.21–973.22 Period of early settlements, 1607–1643

Class comprehensive works in 973.21. Class a specific European settlement with the settlement in 974–975, e.g., settlement of New Plymouth Colony 974.48202, of Jamestown 975.5425101

- .21 Period of Virginia settlements, 1607–1620
- .22 Period of other early settlements, 1620–1643
 Including Pequot War, 1636–1638
- .23 1643–1664
- .24 1664–1689
 Including King Philip's War, 1675–1676

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

.25 1689–1732

Including King William's War (North American aspect of War of the League of Augsburg), 1688–1697; Queen Anne's War (North American aspects of War of the Spanish Succession), 1701–1714
(Option: Class North American aspects of War of the League of Augsburg, War of the Spanish Succession in 971.018)

Class here 18th century

Class comprehensive works on War of the League of Augsburg in 940.2525; class comprehensive works on War of the Spanish Succession in 940.2526

For a specific part of 18th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1175–1789 973.3

.26 Period of extension of English rule, 1732–1763

Including King George's War (North American aspects of War of the Austrian Succession), 1740–1748; French and Indian War (North American aspects of Seven Year's War), 1756–1763

(Option: Class North American aspects of War of the Austrian Succession in 971.018; class Seven Years' War in 971.0188)

Class comprehensive works on War of the Austrian Succession in 940.2532; class comprehensive works on Seven Years' War in 940.2534

.27 End of colonial period, 1763–1775

Including Pontiac's Conspiracy, 1763–1764

(Option: Class Pontiac's Conspiracy in 971.022)

Class events of 1763–1775 as causes of American Revolution in 973.311

.3 Periods of Revolution and Confederation, 1775–1789

Standard subdivisions are added for periods of Revolution and Confederation together, for period of Revolution alone

.31 Social, political, economic history

For diplomatic history, see 973.32

.311 Causes

.311 1 Stamp Act, 1765–1766

.311 2 Commercial restrictions

Including Navigation Acts, Townshend Acts, burning of the Gaspee, 1772

For tax on tea, see 973.3115

.311 3 Quartering of troops and Boston Massacre, 1770

.311 4 Taxation and representation

.311 5 Tax on tea and Boston Tea Party, 1773

.311 6 Boston Port Bill, 1774

.312 Continental Congress

.313 Declaration of Independence, 1776

- .314 Loyalists (Tories)
 Class settlement of Loyalists in Canada in 971.024
- .316 Results
 For Treaty of Peace, see 973.317
- .317 Definitive Treaty of Peace Between Great Britain and the United States (Treaty of Paris), 1783
 Class here Definitive Treaty of Peace with Spain (Treaty of Versailles), 1783
- .318 Period of confederation, 1783–1789

> 973.32–973.38 Aspects of American Revolution

Class comprehensive works in 973.3

- .32 Diplomatic history
 Class here relations of United States with other nations
 For Treaty of Paris, see 973.317

[.320 941–.320 949] Relations with European nations
 Do not use; class in 973.321–973.329

- .321–.329 Relations with European nations
 Add to base number 973.32 the numbers following —4 in notation 41–49 from Table 2, e.g., relations with France 973.324

.33 Operations

Class here military history

For military units, see 973.34; for naval operations, see 973.35

- .331 Operations of 1775
- .331 1 Battles of Lexington and Concord, 1775
- .331 2 Battle of Bunker Hill, 1775
- .332 Operations of 1776–January 3, 1777
- .333 Operations of 1777
 For Battle of Princeton, see 973.332; for winter at Valley Forge, see 973.3341
- .334 Operations of 1778
- .334 1 Winter at Valley Forge, 1777–1778
- .335 Operations of 1779
- .336 Operations of 1780
- .337 Operations of 1781
- .338 Operations of 1782

- .339 Operations of 1783
- .34 Military units
 Class here organization, history, rosters, service records
 Class operations of military units in 973.33. Class units engaged in a special service with the service, e.g., privateering 973.35
For naval units, see 973.35; for rolls of honor, lists of dead, see 973.36
- .341 British troops
For mercenary troops, see 973.342; for American native peoples as allies, see 973.343
- .342 Mercenary troops
- .343 American native peoples as allies of British
- .344–.345 American troops
 Add to base number 973.34 the numbers following —7 in notation 74–75 from Table 2, e.g., Pennsylvania troops 973.3448
- .346 Auxiliary troops on American side
 Including Polish, Spanish, Swedish
For French troops, see 973.347
- .347 French troops
- .35 Naval history
 Including privateering
 Class here operations, ships, units
- .36 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
 Including rolls of honor, lists of dead
 Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e.g., Battle of Bunker Hill 973.3312
- .37 Prisoners of war, medical and social services
- .371 Prisoners of war
 Including British prisons and prison ships, exchange of prisoners
For American prisons, see 973.372
- .372 American prisons
- .375 Medical services
For hospitals, see 973.376
- .376 Hospitals
- .38 Other topics of American Revolution
 Including deserters, military life and customs, military personnel missing in action

- .381 Treason
 For treason of Benedict Arnold, see 973.382; for treason of Charles Lee, see 973.383
- .382 Treason of Benedict Arnold
- .383 Treason of Charles Lee
- .385 American secret service and spies
 Class here comprehensive works on secret service and spies
 For British secret service and spies, see 973.386
- .386 British secret service and spies
- .388 Propaganda
- .4 Constitutional period, 1789–1809**
- .41 Administration of George Washington, 1789–1797
 For second term, see 973.43
- .43 Second term of the administration of George Washington, 1793–1797
- .44 Administration of John Adams, 1797–1801
- .46 Administration of Thomas Jefferson, 1801–1809
 For Tripolitan War, see 973.47; for second term, see 973.48
- .47 Tripolitan War, 1801–1805
 (Option: Class in 961.023)
- .48 Second term of the administration of Thomas Jefferson, 1805–1809
- .5 1809–1845**
 Class here 19th century
 Class events of 1809–1845 as causes of Civil War in 973.711
 For a specific part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., Civil War 973.7
- .51 Administration of James Madison, 1809–1817
 For War of 1812, see 973.52; for war with Algiers, see 973.53
- .52 ‡ War of 1812, 1812–1815
 (Option: Class in 971.034)

- .523 Military operations
 Do not use for participation of specific groups of countries, of specific
 countries, localities, groups; class in 973.52
 Class here land operations, military history
 *For naval operations, see 973.525. For an aspect of military history
 not provided for here, see the aspect, e.g., prisoner-of-war camps
 973.527*
- .523 8 Operations in the South
 For Battle of New Orleans, see 973.5239
- .523 9 Battle of New Orleans, 1815
- .524 Military units
 Number built according to instructions under 940–990
 Do not use for military operations, land operations, military history; class
 in 973.523. Do not use for naval operations; class in 973.525
- .524 1 British troops
- .524 2 American native peoples as allies of the British
- .524 4–.524 7 American troops
 Add to base number 973.524 the numbers following —7 in notation
 74–77 from Table 2, e.g., Pennsylvania troops 973.52448
- .525 Naval operations
 Class here ships, units
 Including privateering
- .525 4 Battle of Lake Erie, 1813
- .525 6 Battle of Lake Champlain, 1814
- .53 War with Algiers, 1815
 (Option: Class in 961.023)
- .54 Administration of James Monroe, 1817–1825
 Including First Seminole War, 1818; Missouri Compromise, 1820
 See also 973.7113 for Missouri Compromise as a cause of Civil War
- .55 Administration of John Quincy Adams, 1825–1829
- .56 Administration of Andrew Jackson, 1829–1837
 Including Black Hawk War, 1832
 (Option: Class Black Hawk War in 970.5)
- .561 Nullification movement
- .57 Administration of Martin Van Buren, 1837–1841
 Including Second Seminole War, 1835–1842

- .58 Administrations of William Henry Harrison and John Tyler, 1841–1845
- .6 1845–1861**
 Class events of 1845–1861 as causes of Civil War in 973.711
- .61 Administration of James Knox Polk, 1845–1849
 Including Wilmot Proviso, 1847
For Mexican War, see 973.62
See also 973.7113 for Wilmot Proviso as a cause of Civil War
- .62 ‡Mexican War, 1845–1848
 (Option: Class in 972.05)
- .63 Administration of Zachary Taylor, 1849–1850
- .64 Administration of Millard Fillmore, 1850–1853
 Including Compromise of 1850
See also 973.7113 for Compromise of 1850 as a cause of Civil War
- .66 Administration of Franklin Pierce, 1853–1857
- .68 Administration of James Buchanan, 1857–1861
For Dred Scott decision, see 973.7115; for John Brown's Raid, see 973.7116

.7 Administration of Abraham Lincoln, 1861–1865

Class here Civil War

SUMMARY

973.701–709	Standard subdivisions
.71	Social, political, economic history
.72	Diplomatic history
.73	Operations
.74	Military units
.75	Naval history
.76	Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
.77	Prisoners of war; medical and social services
.78	Other military topics and personal narratives

- .708 Groups of people
 Do not use for southern Union sympathizers; class in 973.717. Do not use for northern Confederate sympathizers; class in 973.718
- [.708 691 4] Displaced persons
 Relocated to 973.714
- .709 2 Biography
 Do not use for personal narratives; class in 973.781–973.782

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

- .71 Social, political, economic history
 - For diplomatic history, see 973.72*
- .711 Causes
 - For the South and secession, see 973.713*
- .711 2 Extension of slavery
- .711 3 Wilmot Proviso, 1847, and compromises
 - Including Missouri Compromise, 1820; Compromise of 1850
- .711 4 Abolition movement
- .711 5 Fugitive slaves
 - Including underground railroad, Dred Scott decision
- .711 6 John Brown's Raid, 1859
- .712 Efforts to preserve or restore peace
 - For compromises, see 973.7113*
- .713 The South and secession
 - Confederate States of America in the war
- .714 Results
 - Including displaced persons [*formerly* 973.7086914], movement of people; Emancipation Proclamation, 1863; establishment of Freedmen's Bureau, 1865
 - Class a result as a specific event with the event, e.g., Reconstruction 973.8
- .717 Southern Union sympathizers
- .718 Northern Confederate sympathizers
- .72 Diplomatic history
- .721 Relations of Confederacy with other nations
- .722 Relations of Union with other nations
- .73 Operations
 - For naval operations, see 973.75*
- .730 1 Strategy
 - Do not use for philosophy and theory; class in 973.73
- .730 12 Union side
- .730 13 Confederate side
- .731 Opening phase, 1861–April, 1862
- .732 May–August, 1862
- .733 September, 1862–May, 1863

- .733 6 Lee's invasion of Maryland, 1862
- .734 June–August, 1863
- .734 4 Siege and fall of Vicksburg, 1863
- .734 9 Battle of Gettysburg, 1863
- .735 September–December, 1863
- .735 9 Chattanooga campaign, 1863
- .736 January–May, 1864
For Atlanta Campaign, see 973.7371
- .737 June–December, 1864
- .737 1 Atlanta Campaign, 1864
- .737 8 Sherman's March to the Sea and Savannah campaign, 1864
- .738 1865
- .74 Military units
 Class here organization, history, rosters, service records
 Class operations of military units in 973.73. Class units engaged in a special service with the service, e.g., privateering 973.75
For naval units, see 973.75; for rolls of honor, lists of dead, see 973.76
- .741 Union troops
For state units, see 973.744–973.749
- .741 5 African American troops
- .742 Confederate troops
For state units, see 973.744–973.749
- .744–.749 State units
 Add to base number 973.74 the numbers following —7 in notation 74–79 from Table 2, e.g., Ohio troops 973.7471
- .75 Naval history
 Including operations, privateering, blockade running
- .752 Battle of Monitor and Merrimac, 1862
- .754 Battle of Kearsarge and Alabama, 1864
- .757 Confederate Navy
 Ships and units
- .758 Union navy
 Ships and units

- .76 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
 Including rolls of honor, lists of dead
 Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e.g., Battle of Antietam 973.7336
- .77 Prisoners of war; medical and social services
- .771 Confederate prisoner-of-war camps
 Including exchange of prisoners
 Class here prisoners of war
For Union prisoner-of-war camps, see 973.772
- .772 Union prisoner-of-war camps
- .775 Medical services
For hospitals, see 973.776
- .776 Hospitals
- .777 Welfare services
 Including United States Sanitary Commission
- .778 Religious life and chaplain services
- .78 Other military topics and personal narratives
 Including deserters, military personnel missing in action
- .781 Personal narratives of individuals from Union side
 Class here comprehensive works on personal narratives
 Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on prisoner-of-war camps 973.771
For personal narratives of individuals from Confederate side, see 973.782
- .782 Personal narratives of individuals from Confederate side
- .783 Military life and customs of Union side
 Class here comprehensive works on military life and customs
For military life and customs of Confederate side, see 973.784
- .784 Military life and customs of Confederate side
- .785 Union secret service and spies
 Class here comprehensive works on secret service and spies
For Confederate secret service and spies, see 973.786
- .786 Confederate secret service and spies
- .788 Propaganda
- .8 Reconstruction period, 1865–1901**

- .81 Administration of Andrew Johnson, 1865–1869
- .82 Administration of Ulysses Simpson Grant, 1869–1877
- .83 Administration of Rutherford Birchard Hayes, 1877–1881
- .84 Administrations of James Abram Garfield and Chester Alan Arthur, 1881–1885
- .85 First administration of Grover Cleveland, 1885–1889
- .86 Administration of Benjamin Harrison, 1889–1893
- .87 Second administration of Grover Cleveland, 1893–1897
- .88 Administration of William McKinley, 1897–1901
For Spanish-American War, see 973.89
- .89 ‡Spanish-American War, 1898
 (Option: Class in 946.074)
- .893 Military operations
 Do not use for participation of specific groups of countries, of specific countries, localities, groups; class in 973.89
 Class here land operations, military history
For naval operations, see 973.895. For an aspect of military history not provided for here, see the aspect, e.g., prisoner-of-war camps 973.897
- .893 3 Cuban campaign, 1898
- .893 5 Puerto Rican campaign, 1898
- .893 7 Philippine campaign, 1898
- .894 Military units
 Number built according to instructions under 940–990
 Do not use for military operations, land operations, military history; class in 973.893. Do not use for naval operations; class in 973.895
- .895 Naval operations
 Class here ships, units
- .9 1901–**
- .91 1901–1953
 Class here 20th century
For 1900–1901, see 973.88; for 1953–1999, see 973.92
- .911 Administration of Theodore Roosevelt, 1901–1909
- .912 Administration of William Howard Taft, 1909–1913

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

- .913 Administration of Woodrow Wilson, 1913–1921
- .914 Administration of Warren Gamaliel Harding, 1921–1923
- .915 Administration of Calvin Coolidge, 1923–1929
- .916 Administration of Herbert Clark Hoover, 1929–1933
- .917 Administration of Franklin Delano Roosevelt, 1933–1945
- .918 Administration of Harry S Truman, 1945–1953
- .92 1953–2001
- .921 Administration of Dwight David Eisenhower, 1953–1961
- .922 Administration of John Fitzgerald Kennedy, 1961–1963
- .923 Administration of Lyndon Baines Johnson, 1963–1969
 Class here period of Vietnamese War, 1961–1975
For 1961–1963 period of Vietnamese War, see 973.922; for 1969–1974 period of Vietnamese War, see 973.924; for 1974–1975 period of Vietnamese War, see 973.925
- .924 Administration of Richard Milhous Nixon, 1969–1974
- .925 Administration of Gerald Rudolph Ford, 1974–1977
- .926 Administration of Jimmy (James Earl) Carter, 1977–1981
- .927 Administration of Ronald Reagan, 1981–1989
- .928 Administration of George Bush, 1989–1993
- .929 Administration of Bill Clinton, 1993–2001
- .93 2001–
- .931 Administration of George W. Bush, 2001–2009
- .932 Administration of Barack Obama, 2009–

>

974–979 Specific states of United States

Class comprehensive works in 973

For Hawaii, see 996.9

>

974-975 Northeastern and southeastern United States

Add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:

- 01 Early history to 1620
- 02 Colonial period, 1620-1776
- 03 1776-1865
Class here 19th century
For 1865-1899, see 041
- 04 1865--
- 041 1865-1918
- 042 1918-1945
- 043 1945-1999
Class here 20th century
For 1900-1918, see 041; for 1918-1945, see 042
- 044 2000--

Class comprehensive works in 974

974 *†Northeastern United States (New England and Middle Atlantic states)

- .1 *†Maine
- .2 *†New Hampshire
- .3 *†Vermont
- .4 *†Massachusetts
- .5 *†Rhode Island
- .6 *†Connecticut
- .7 *†New York
- .8 *†Pennsylvania
- .9 *†New Jersey

975 *†Southeastern United States (South Atlantic states)

- .1 *†Delaware
- .2 *†Maryland
- .3 *†District of Columbia (Washington)
- .301 Early history to 1799
- .302 1800-1865

Class here 19th century

For 1865-1899, see 975.303

*Add as instructed under 930-990

†Add historical periods as instructed under 974-975

.303 1865–1933

.304 1933–

.304 1 1933–1999

Class here 20th century

For 1900–1933, see 975.303

.304 2 2000–

.4 *†West Virginia

.5 *†Virginia

.6 *†North Carolina

.7 *†South Carolina

.8 *†Georgia

.9 *Florida

.901 Early history to 1763

Including 18th century

For 1763–1783, see 975.902; for 1783–1799, see 975.903

.902 English period, 1763–1783

.903 Spanish period, 1783–1821

.904 Territorial period, 1821–1845

Class here 19th century

For a specific part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1865–1899 975.9061

.905 Early statehood period, 1845–1865

.906 1865–

.906 1 1865–1918

.906 2 1918–1945

.906 3 1945–1999

Class here 20th century

For 1900–1918, see 975.9061; for 1918–1945, see 975.9062

.906 4 2000–

976 *South central United States

.01 Early history to 1700

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add historical periods as instructed under 974–975

- .02 1700–1799
- .03 1800–1865
 Class here 19th century
 For 1865–1899, see 976.041
- .04 1865–
- .041 1865–1918
- .042 1918–1945
- .043 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1918, see 976.041; for 1918–1945, see 976.042
- .044 2000–
- .1 *Alabama**
- .101 Early history to 1701
- .102 French period, 1701–1763
 Class here 18th century
 For 1763–1783, see 976.103; for 1783–1799, see 976.104
- .103 British period, 1763–1783
- .104 Spanish and territorial periods, 1783–1817
- .105 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1817–1865
 Class here 19th century
 For 1800–1817, see 976.104; for 1865–1899, see 976.1061
- .106 1865–
- .106 1 1865–1918
- .106 2 1918–1945
- .106 3 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1918, see 976.1061; for 1918–1945, see 976.1062
- .106 4 2000–
- .2 *Mississippi**
- .201–.206 Historical periods
 Add to base number 976.20 the numbers following 976.10 in
 976.101–976.106, e.g., British period 976.203

.3 *Louisiana

.301 Early history to 1718

.302 French period, 1718–1763

Class here 18th century

For 1700–1718, see 976.301; for 1763–1799, see 976.303

.303 1763–1803

Including French period, 1800–1803

Class here Spanish period, 1763–1800

.304 Territorial period, 1803–1812

.305 Early statehood period, 1812–1865

Class here 19th century

For a specific part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1865–1899 976.3061

.306 1865–

.306 1 1865–1918

.306 2 1918–1945

.306 3 1945–1999

Class here 20th century

For 1900–1918, see 976.3061; for 1918–1945, see 976.3062

.306 4 2000–

.4 *Texas

.401 Early history to 1680

.402 Spanish and French periods, 1680–1821

.403 Mexican period, 1821–1836

.404 Period of the Republic, 1836–1846

.405 Early statehood period, 1846–1865

Class here 19th century

For a specific part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1836–1846 976.404

.406 1865–

.406 1 1865–1918

.406 2 1918–1945

- .406 3 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1918, see 976.4061; for 1918–1945, see 976.4062
- .406 4 2000–
- .6 *Oklahoma**
- .601 Early history to 1682
- .602 French and Spanish periods, 1682–1803
- .603 Period of Indian Territory, 1803–1866
 Class here 19th century
 For 1800–1803, see 976.602; for 1866–1899, see 976.604
- .604 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1866–1907
- .605 1907–
- .605 2 1907–1945
- .605 3 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1907, see 976.604; for 1907–1945, see 976.6052
- .605 4 2000–
- .7 *Arkansas**
- .701 Early history to 1686
- .702 French and Spanish periods, 1686–1803
- .703 Preterritorial and territorial periods, 1803–1836
- .704 Early statehood period, 1836–1865
 Class here 19th century
 For a specific part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1865–1899 976.7051
- .705 1865–
- .705 1 1865–1918
- .705 2 1918–1945
- .705 3 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1918, see 976.7051; for 1918–1945, see 976.7052
- .705 4 2000–

.8 *Tennessee

- .801 Early history to 1682
- .802 French, Spanish, English periods, 1682–1769
Class here 18th century
For 1769–1796, see 976.803; for 1796–1799, see 976.804
- .803 Early settlement and territorial periods, 1769–1796
Including District of Washington, State of Franklin
- .804 Early statehood period, 1796–1865
Class here 19th century
For 1865–1899, see 976.8051
- .805 1865–
- .805 1 1865–1918
- .805 2 1918–1945
- .805 3 1945–1999
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1918, see 976.8051; for 1918–1945, see 976.8052
- .805 4 2000–

.9 *Kentucky

- .901 Early history to 1736
- .902 1736–1792
Class here 18th century
Including periods of French, British, Virginian control; Transylvania Colony
For 1700–1736, see 976.901; for 1792–1799, see 976.903
- .903 Early statehood period, 1792–1865
Class here 19th century
For 1865–1899, see 976.9041
- .904 1865–
- .904 1 1865–1918
- .904 2 1918–1945
- .904 3 1945–1999
Class here 20th century
For 1900–1918, see 976.9041; for 1918–1945, see 976.9042

*Add as instructed under 930–990

.904 4 2000--

977 *North central United States

.01 Early history to 1787

.02 1787–1865

Class here 19th century

For 1865–1899, see 977.031

.03 1865--

.031 1865–1918

.032 1918–1945

.033 1945–1999

Class here 20th century

For 1900–1918, see 977.031; for 1918–1945, see 977.032

.034 2000--

.1 *Ohio

.101 Early history to 1763

Including 18th century

For 1763–1787, see 977.102; for 1787–1799, see 977.103

.102 British and early United States periods, 1763–1787

.103 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1787–1865

Class here 19th century

For 1865–1899, see 977.1041

.104 1865--

.104 1 1865–1918

.104 2 1918–1945

.104 3 1945–1999

Class here 20th century

For 1900–1918, see 977.1041; for 1918–1945, see 977.1042

.104 4 2000--

.2 *Indiana

.201–.204 Historical periods

Add to base number 977.20 the numbers following 977.10 in
977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period 977.203

.3 *Illinois

.301-.304 Historical periods

Add to base number 977.30 the numbers following 977.10 in
977.101-977.104, e.g., territorial period 977.303

.4 *Michigan

.401-.404 Historical periods

Add to base number 977.40 the numbers following 977.10 in
977.101-977.104, e.g., territorial period 977.403

.5 *Wisconsin

.501-.504 Historical periods

Add to base number 977.50 the numbers following 977.10 in
977.101-977.104, e.g., territorial period 977.503

.6 *Minnesota

.601 Early history to 1660

Including 17th century

For 1660-1699, see 977.602

.602 French period, 1660-1783

.603 Preterritorial period, 1783-1849

.604 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1849-1900

Class here 19th century

For 1800-1849, see 977.603

.605 1900-

.605 1 1900-1918

.605 2 1918-1945

.605 3 1945-1999

Class here 20th century

For 1900-1918, see 977.6051; for 1918-1945, see 977.6052

.605 4 2000-

.7 *Iowa

.701 Early history to 1838

.702 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1838-1899

Class here 19th century

For 1800-1838, see 977.701

.703 1900–

.703 1 1900–1918

.703 2 1918–1945

.703 3 1945–1999

Class here 20th century

For 1900–1918, see 977.7031; for 1918–1945, see 977.7032

.703 4 2000–

.8 *Missouri

.801 Early history to 1750

Including 18th century

For 1750–1799, see 977.802

.802 French and Spanish periods, 1750–1803

.803 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1803–1899

.804 1900–

.804 1 1900–1918

.804 2 1918–1945

.804 3 1945–1999

Class here 20th century

For 1900–1918, see 977.8041; for 1918–1945, see 977.8042

.804 4 2000–

978 *Western United States

.01 Early history to 1799

.02 1800–1899

.03 1900–

.031 1900–1918

.032 1918–1945

.033 1945–1999

Class here 20th century

For 1900–1918, see 978.031; for 1918–1945, see 978.032

.034 2000–

.1 *Kansas

.101 Early history to 1803

- .102 Territorial period, 1803–1861
 Class here 19th century
For 1800–1803, see 978.101; for 1861–1899, see 978.1031
- .103 Statehood period, 1861–
- .103 1 1861–1918
- .103 2 1918–1945
- .103 3 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
For 1900–1918, see 978.1031; for 1918–1945, see 978.1032
- .103 4 2000–
- .2 *Nebraska**
- .201 Early history to 1854
 Including 19th century
For 1854–1867, see 978.202; for 1867–1899, see 978.2031
- .202 Territorial period, 1854–1867
- .203 Statehood period, 1867–
- .203 1 1867–1918
- .203 2 1918–1945
- .203 3 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
For 1900–1918, see 978.2031; for 1918–1945, see 978.2032
- .203 4 2000–
- .3 *South Dakota**
- .301 Early history to 1861
 Including 19th century
For 1861–1889, see 978.302; for 1889–1899, see 978.3031
- .302 Territorial period, 1861–1889
- .303 Statehood period, 1889–
- .303 1 1889–1918
- .303 2 1918–1945

- .303 3 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1918, see 978.3031; for 1918–1945, see 978.3032
- .303 4 2000–
- .4 *North Dakota**
- .401–.403 Historical periods
 Add to base number 978.40 the numbers following 978.30 in
 978.301–978.303, e.g., territorial period 978.402
- .6 *Montana**
- .601 Early history to 1864
 Including 19th century
 For 1864–1889, see 978.602; for 1889–1899, see 978.6031
- .602 Territorial period, 1864–1889
- .603 Statehood period, 1889–
- .603 1 1889–1918
- .603 2 1918–1945
- .603 3 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1918, see 978.6031; for 1918–1945, see 978.6032
- .603 4 2000–
- .7 *Wyoming**
- .701 Early history to 1868
 Including 19th century
 For 1868–1890, see 978.702; for 1890–1899, see 978.7031
- .702 Territorial period, 1868–1890
- .703 Statehood period, 1890–
- .703 1 1890–1918
- .703 2 1918–1945
- .703 3 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1918, see 978.7031; for 1918–1945, see 978.7032
- .703 4 2000–

.8 *Colorado

.801 Early history to 1803

.802 Acquisition and territorial periods, 1803–1876

Class here 19th century

For 1800–1803, see 978.801; for 1876–1899, see 978.8031

.803 Statehood period, 1876–

.803 1 1876–1918

.803 2 1918–1945

.803 3 1945–1999

Class here 20th century

For 1900–1918, see 978.8031; for 1918–1945, see 978.8032

.803 4 2000–

.9 *New Mexico

.901 Early history to 1598

.902 Spanish period, 1598–1821

.903 Mexican period, 1821–1848

.904 Territorial period, 1848–1912

Class here 19th century

For 1800–1821, see 978.902; for 1821–1848, see 978.903

.905 Statehood period, 1912–

.905 2 1912–1945

.905 3 1945–1999

Class here 20th century

For 1900–1912, see 978.904; for 1912–1945, see 978.9052

.905 4 2000–

979 *Great Basin and Pacific Slope region of United States

.01–.03 Historical periods

Add to base number 979.0 the numbers following 978.0 in 978.01–978.03, e.g., 1900 to present 979.03

.1 *Arizona

- .101--.105 Historical periods
 Add to base number 979.10 the numbers following 978.90 in
 978.901-978.905, e.g., territorial period 979.104
- .2 *Utah**
- .201 Early history to 1848
- .202 Territorial period, 1848-1896
 Class here 19th century
 For 1800-1848, see 979.201; for 1896-1899, see 979.2031
- .203 Statehood period, 1896--
- .203 1 1896-1918
- .203 2 1918-1945
- .203 3 1945-1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900-1918, see 979.2031; for 1918-1945, see 979.2032
- .203 4 2000--
- .3 *Nevada**
- .301 Early history to 1861
 Including 19th century
 For 1861-1899, see 979.302
- .302 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1861-1899
- .303 1900--
- .303 1 1900-1918
- .303 2 1918-1945
- .303 3 1945-1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900-1918, see 979.3031; for 1918-1945, see 979.3032
- .303 4 2000--
- .4 *California**
- .401 Early history to 1769
 Including 18th century
 For 1769-1799, see 979.402
- .402 Spanish period, 1769-1822

- .403 Mexican period, 1822–1848
- .404 Territorial and early statehood periods, 1848–1899
 Class here 19th century
For 1800–1822, see 979.402; for 1822–1848, see 979.403
- .405 1900–
- .405 1 1900–1918
- .405 2 1918–1945
- .405 3 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
For 1900–1918, see 979.4051; for 1918–1945, see 979.4052
- .405 4 2000–
- .5 *Oregon**
- .501 Early history to 1778
- .502 Spanish and British periods, 1778–1819
- .503 Preterritorial and territorial periods, 1819–1859
 Class here 19th century
For 1800–1819, see 979.502; for 1859–1899, see 979.5041
- .504 Statehood period, 1859–
- .504 1 1859–1918
- .504 2 1918–1945
- .504 3 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
For 1900–1918, see 979.5041; for 1918–1945, see 979.5042
- .504 4 2000–
- .6 *Idaho**
- .601 Early history to 1863
 Including 19th century
For 1863–1890, see 979.602; for 1889–1899, see 979.6031
- .602 Territorial period, 1863–1890
- .603 Statehood period, 1890–
- .603 1 1890–1918
- .603 2 1918–1945

*Add as instructed under 930–990

- .603 3 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1918, see 979.6031; for 1918–1945, see 979.6032
- .603 4 2000–
- .7 *Washington**
- .701 Early history to 1818
- .702 British and preterritorial periods, 1818–1853
- .703 Territorial period, 1853–1889
 Class here 19th century
 For a specific part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1889–1899 979.7041
- .704 Statehood period, 1889–
- .704 1 1889–1918
- .704 2 1918–1945
- .704 3 1945–1999
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1918, see 979.7041; for 1918–1945, see 979.7042
- .704 4 2000–
- .8 *Alaska**
- .801 Early history to 1799
- .802 Russian period, 1799–1867
 Class here 19th century
 For 1867–1899, see 979.803
- .803 Preterritorial period, 1867–1912
- .804 Territorial period, 1912–1959
 Class here 20th century
 For 1900–1912, see 979.803; for 1959–1999, see 979.8051
- .805 Statehood period, 1959–
- .805 1 1959–1999
- .805 2 2000–

980 History of South America

Class here Latin America

For Middle America, see 972

SUMMARY

980.001–.009	Standard subdivisions
.01–.04	Historical periods
981	Brazil
982	Argentina
983	Chile
984	Bolivia
985	Peru
986	Colombia and Ecuador
987	Venezuela
988	Guiana
989	Paraguay and Uruguay

.001–.003 Standard subdivisions

.004 Ethnic and national groups

.004 05–.004 09 Specific ethnic and national groups with ethnic origins from more than one continent, of European descent

Add to base number 980.0040 the numbers following —0 in notation 05–09 from Table 5, e.g., general history and civilization of people of European descent in South America 980.00409

.004 1–.004 9 Specific ethnic and national groups

Add to base number 980.004 notation 1–9 from Table 5, e.g., general history and civilization of South American native peoples in South America 980.00498

(Option: Class South American native peoples in South America in 980.1; class specific native peoples in 980.3)

Class prehispanic history and civilization of South American native peoples in a specific place with the place, without using notation 00498 from add table under 930–990, e.g., Incas before 1519 985.019

.005–.009 Standard subdivisions

As modified under 930–990

> 980.01–980.04 Historical periods

Class comprehensive works in 980

.01 Early history to 1806

.012 Early history to 1498

.013 Period of European discovery, exploration, colonization, 1498–1806

.02 Period of struggles for independence, 1806–1830

.03 1830–1999

- .031 1830–1899
 Class here 19th century
 For 1801–1806, see 980.013; for 1806–1830, see 980.02
- .032 1900–1918
- .033 1918–1949
 Class here 20th century
 For a specific part of 20th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1950–1959 980.035
- .035 1950–1959
- .036 1960–1969
- .037 1970–1979
- .038 1980–1989
- .039 1990–1999
- .04 2000–
- .041 2000–2019
- .041 1 2000–2009
- .041 2 2010–2019

(.1) South American native peoples (Indians)

(Optional number; prefer 980.00498)

Class special topics in 980.3–980.5

(.3) Specific native peoples

(Optional number; prefer 981–989 with use of subdivision 00498 from table under 930–990, e.g., Quechua in Potosi department of Bolivia 984.1400498323)

Arrange alphabetically by name of people

Class government relations with specific native peoples in 980.5

(.4) Native peoples in specific places in South America

(Optional number; prefer 981–989 with use of subdivision 00498 from table under 930–990, e.g., native peoples in Brazil 981.00498)

Add to base number 980.4 the numbers following —8 in notation 81–89 from Table 2, e.g., native peoples in Brazil 980.41

Class specific native peoples in specific places in 980.3; class government relations in specific places in 980.5

(.5) Government relations with native South Americans

(Optional number; prefer 323.1198 for comprehensive works; a specific subject with the subject, e.g., conquest of Incas by Pizarro 985.02, relation to state in Chile 323.1198083)

> **981–989 Countries and localities**

Class comprehensive works in 980. Class a specific native people in a specific place with the place in 981–989 with use of subdivision 00498 from table under 930–990, e.g., Quechua in Potosi department of Bolivia 984.1400498323
(Option: Class South American native peoples in specific places in South America in 980.4)

981 *Brazil

- .01 Early history to 1500
- .03 Colonial period, 1500–1822
- .031 Period of European explorations, 1500–1533
- .032 Period of hereditary captaincies, 1533–1762
 - Including 16th century, 18th century
 - Class here 17th century
 - For 1500–1533, see 981.031; for 1762–1799, see 981.033*
- .033 1762–1822
- .04 Period of Empire, 1822–1889
 - Class here 19th century
 - For 1800–1822, see 981.033; for 1889–1899, see 981.05; for Paraguayan War, see 989.205*
- .05 Period of First Republic, 1889–1930
- .06 Period of Second Republic, 1930–
 - Class here 20th century
 - For 1901–1930, see 981.05*
- .061 Period of Getúlio Vargas, 1930–1954
 - Including administrations of José Finol Linhares and Eurico Gaspar Dutra, 1945–1951
- .062 1954–1964
- .063 Period of military presidents, 1964–1985
- .064 1985–2002
 - Including administrations of José Sarney, Fernando Affonso Collor de Mello, Itamar Franco, Fernando Henrique Cardoso
- .065 Administration of Luiz Inácio Lula da Silva, 2003–2011
- .066 2011–

982 *Argentina

*Add as instructed under 930–990

- .01 Early history to 1516
- .02 Period of European discovery, conquest, colonization, 1516–1810
- .022 Period of European discovery and conquest, 1516–1580
 Class here 16th century
For 1500–1516, see 982.01; for 1580–1599, see 982.023
- .023 Colonial period, 1580–1810
For period of viceroyalty of La Plata, 1776–1810, see 982.024
- .024 Period of viceroyalty of La Plata, 1776–1810
- .03 Period of struggle for independence, 1810–1829
- .04 1829–1861
 Class here 19th century
For 1801–1810, see 982.024; for 1810–1829, see 982.03; for 1861–1900, see 982.05
- .05 1861–1910
For Paraguayan War, see 989.205
- .06 1910–1999
- .061 1910–1946
- .062 First administration of Juan Domingo Perón, 1946–1955
- .063 1955–1973
- .064 1973–1989
 Including second administration of Juan Domingo Perón, 1973–1974;
 administration of Isabel Perón, 1974–1976
- .065 Administration of Carlos Saúl Menem, 1989–1999
- .07 1999–
- .071 1999–2003
 Class here administrations of Fernando de la Rúa, 1999–2001; Eduardo
 Alberto Duhalde, 2002–2003
- .072 Administration of Néstor Kirchner, 2003–2007
- .073 Administration of Cristina Fernández de Kirchner, 2007–

983 *Chile

- .01 Early history to 1535

- .02 Period of European discovery and conquest, 1535–1560
 Class here 16th century
 For 1500–1535, see 983.01; for 1560–1599, see 983.03
- .03 Colonial period, 1560–1810
- .04 Period of early republics, 1810–1861
 Class here 19th century
 For period of autocratic republic, 1830–1861, see 983.05. For a specific part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1879–1883 983.0616
- .05 Period of autocratic republic, 1830–1861
- .06 Period of later republics, 1861–
- .061 Period of liberal republic, 1861–1891
- .061 6 ‡War of the Pacific, 1879–1883
 (Option: Class Bolivian aspects of War of the Pacific in 984.045; Peruvian aspects of War of the Pacific in 985.061)
- .062 Revolution of 1891
- .063 Period of parliamentary republic, 1891–1925
- .064 1925–1973
 Class here 20th century
 For 1901–1925, see 983.063; for 1973–1990, see 983.065; for 1990–1999, see 983.066
- .064 1 1925–1932
- .064 2 1932–1946
- .064 3 1946–1958
- .064 4 Administration of Jorge Alessandri, 1958–1964
- .064 5 Administration of Eduardo Frei Montalva, 1964–1970
- .064 6 Administration of Salvador Allende Gossens, 1970–1973
- .065 Period of military rule, 1973–1990
- .066 1990–
- .066 1 Administration of Patricio Aylwin Azócar, 1990–1994
- .066 2 Administration of Eduardo Frei Ruiz-Tagle, 1994–2000
- .066 3 Administration of Ricardo Lagos Escobar, 2000–2006
- .066 4 Administration of Michelle Bachelet, 2006–

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

984 *Bolivia

- .01 Early history to 1532
- .02 Period of European discovery and conquest, 1532–1559
 Class here 16th century
For 1500–1532, see 984.01; for 1559–1599, see 984.03
- .03 Colonial period, 1559–1809
- .04 1809–1899
- .041 Period of struggle for independence, 1809–1825
- .042 Period of formation of the Republic, 1825–1831
- .044 Administration of Andrés Santa Cruz, 1831–1839
 Including Peru-Bolivian Confederation, 1836–1839
- .045 1839–1883
 (Option: Class here War of the Pacific; prefer 983.0616)
- .046 Period of conservative republic, 1883–1899
- .05 1899–
- .051 1899–1952
 Class here 20th century
For 1952–1999, see 984.052
 (Option: Class here Chaco War; prefer 989.20716)
- .052 1952–1982
 Including revolution of 1952
- .053 1982–1997
- .054 1997–
- .054 1 1997–2006
 Including second administration of Hugo Banzer Suárez, 1997–2001
- .054 2 Administration of Evo Morales Ayma, 2006–

985 *Peru

- .01 Early history to 1519
- .019 Period of Inca (Inka) empire, ca. 1438–1519
*For a part of Inca empire not provided for here, see the part, e.g.,
 Inca empire in Bolivia 984.01*

- .02 Period of European discovery and conquest, 1519–1555
 Class here 16th century
For 1500–1519, see 985.019; for 1555–1599, see 985.031
 (Option: Class conquest in 980.5)
- .03 Colonial period, 1555–1808
- .031 1555–1599
- .032 1600–1699
- .033 1700–1808
- .04 Period of struggle for independence, 1808–1824
- .05 1824–1867
 Class here 19th century
 Including Peru-Bolivian Confederation, 1836–1839
For a specific part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1867–1883 985.061
- .06 1867–
- .061 1867–1883
 (Option: Class here War of the Pacific, 1879–1883; prefer 983.0616)
- .062 Period of reconstruction, 1883–1895
- .063 1895–1980
- .063 1 1895–1930
- .063 2 1930–1968
- .063 3 Period of the Revolutionary Government, 1968–1980
- .064 1980–
- .064 3 Administration of Alberto Fujimori, 1990–2000
- .064 4 2000–2006
 Class here administration of Alejandro Toledo Manrique, 2001–2006
- .064 5 Administration of Alan García, 2006–

986 *Colombia and Ecuador

.1 *Colombia

- .101 Early history to 1550
 Including 16th century
For 1550–1599, see 986.102

- .102 Colonial period, 1550–1810
 Including periods as Viceroyalty of New Granada, 1718–1724 and 1740–1810
 Class here comprehensive works on Viceroyalty of New Granada
For Panama as part of Viceroyalty of New Granada, see 972.8702; for Ecuador as part of Viceroyalty of New Granada, see 986.602; for Venezuela as part of Viceroyalty of New Granada, see 987.03
- .103 Period of struggle for independence, 1810–1819
- .104 Period of Gran Colombia, 1819–1832
 Class here comprehensive works on Gran Colombia
For Panama as a part of Gran Colombia, see 972.8703; for Ecuador as part of Gran Colombia, see 986.604; for Venezuela as part of Gran Colombia, see 987.05
- .105 1832–1863
 Class here 19th century
For a specific part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1810–1819 986.103
- .105 2 Period of Republic of New Granada, 1832–1858
 Class here comprehensive works on Republic of New Granada
For Panama as part of Republic of New Granada, see 972.8703
- .105 3 Period of Granadine Confederation, 1858–1863
 Class here comprehensive works on Granadine Confederation
For Panama as part of Granadine Confederation, see 972.8703
- .106 1863–
- .106 1 Period of United States of Colombia, 1863–1886
 Class here comprehensive works on United States of Colombia
For Panama as part of United States of Colombia, see 972.8703
- .106 2 Period of Republic of Colombia, 1886–
For Panama as part of Republic of Colombia, see 972.8703; for Colombian history from 1930 to present, see 986.1063
- .106 3 1930–
 Class here 20th century
For 1901–1930, see 986.1062
- .106 31 Period of liberal domination, 1930–1946
- .106 32 1946–1958
- .106 33 Period of National Front, 1958–1974
- .106 34 1974–1991

- .106 35 1991--
- .6 *Ecuador**
- .601 Early history to 1562
 Including 16th century
 For 1562–1599, see 986.602
- .602 Colonial period, 1562–1810
 Including period as part of Viceroyalty of New Granada, 1740–1810
- .603 Period of struggle for independence, 1810–1822
- .604 Period as part of Gran Colombia, 1822–1830
 Class here Quito Presidency
- .605 1830–1859
 Including period of formation of Republic
 Class here 19th century
 *For a specific part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part,
 e.g., 1810–1822 986.603*
- .606 1860–1895
- .607 1896--
- .607 1 1896–1925
 Class here 20th century
 *For a specific part of 20th century not provided for here, see the
 part, e.g., 1960–1999 986.6074*
- .607 2 1925–1948
- .607 3 1948–1960
- .607 4 1960–2000
- .607 5 2000--

987 *Venezuela

- .01 Early history to 1498
- .02 Period of discovery and conquest, 1498–1528
- .03 Colonial period, 1528–1810
 Including period of Welsers, 1528–1556; period as part of Viceroyalty of
 New Granada, 1740–1810; 16th century
 For 1500–1528, see 987.02
- .04 Period of struggle for independence, 1810–1821

- .05 Period as part of Gran Colombia, 1821–1830
- .06 Period of Republic, 1830–
- .061 1830–1848
- .062 1848–1899
- Including Revolution of April 1870
- Class here 19th century
- For a specific part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part, e.g., 1810–1821 987.04*
- .062 8 1870–1899
- Class here administration of Antonio Guzmán Blanco, 1870–1888
- .063 1899–1989
- .063 1 1899–1945
- .063 12 Period of Cipriano Castro, 1899–1908
- .063 13 Period of Juan Vicente Gómez, 1908–1935
- .063 14 Administration of Eleazar López Contreras, 1935–1941
- .063 15 Administration of Isaias Medina Angarita, 1941–1945
- .063 2 1945–1958
- Including Revolution of October 1945
- .063 3 1958–1989
- Including Revolution of 1958
- .064 1989–
- .064 2 Administration of Hugo Chávez Frías, 1999–

988 *Guiana

- .01 Early history to 1815
- .02 1815–1945
- .03 1945–
- Class here 20th century
- For 1901–1945, see 988.02*

.1 *Guyana

- .101 Early history to 1815
- .102 1815–1945

- .103 1945–
Class here 20th century
For 1901–1945, see 988.102
- .103 1 1945–1966
- .103 2 1966–1992
- .103 3 1992–
- .103 31 Administration of Cheddi Jagan, 1992–1997
- .103 32 Administration of Janet Jagan, 1997–1999
- .103 33 Administration of Bharrat Jagdeo, 1999–

.2 †French Guiana (Guyane)

.3 *Suriname

- .301 Early history to 1815
- .302 1815–1945
- .303 1945–
Class here 20th century
For 1901–1945, see 988.302
- .303 1 1945–1975
- .303 2 1975–
- .303 21 1975–1991
- .303 22 First administration of Runaldo Ronald Venetiaan, 1991–1996
- .303 23 Administration of Jules A. Wijdenbosch, 1996–2000
- .303 24 Second administration of Runaldo Ronald Venetiaan, 2000–

989 †Paraguay and Uruguay

.2 *Paraguay

- .201 Early history to 1524
- .202 Period of European discovery, exploration, conquest, 1524–1537
- .203 Colonial period, 1537–1811
Including 16th century
For 1500–1524, see 989.201; for 1524–1537, see 989.202
- .204 Period of struggle for independence, 1811–1814

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .205 Period of dictatorship, 1814–1870
 Including Paraguayan War (War of the Triple Alliance), 1865–1870
 Class here 19th century
 *For a specific part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part,
 e.g., 1811–1814 989.204*
- .206 1870–1902
- .207 1902–
- .207 1 1902–1940
- .207 16 ‡Chaco War, 1933–1935
 (Option: Class in 984.051)
- .207 2 1940–1954
 1954–1958 relocated to 989.2073
- .207 3 Administration of Alfredo Stroessner, 1954–1989
 Including 1954–1958 [*formerly* 989.2072]
- .207 4 1989–
- .207 41 Administration of Andrés Rodríguez, 1989–1993
- .207 42 Administration of Juan Carlos Wasmosy, 1993–1998
- .207 43 Administration of Raúl Cubas Grau, 1998–1999
- .207 44 Administration of Luis Angel González Macchi, 1999–2003
- .207 45 Administration of Nicanor Duarte Frutos, 2003–2008
- .207 46 Administration of Fernando Lugo Méndez, 2008–
- .5 *Uruguay**
- .501 Early history to 1516
- .502 Period of European discovery and conquest, 1516–1724
- .503 Colonial period, 1724–1811
- .504 Period of struggle for independence, 1811–1830
- .505 Period of Republic, 1830–
 Class here 19th century
 *For Paraguayan War, see 989.205; for 1886 to present, see 989.506.
 For a specific part of 19th century not provided for here, see the part,
 e.g., 1811–1830 989.504*
- .506 1886–
- .506 1 1886–1917

*Add as instructed under 930–990

‡Add as instructed under 940–990

- | | |
|---------|---|
| .506 2 | 1917–1933 |
| .506 3 | 1933–1951 |
| .506 4 | 1951–1966 |
| .506 5 | 1966–1973 |
| .506 6 | 1973–1985 |
| .506 7 | 1985– |
| .506 71 | First administration of Julio María Sanguinetti, 1985–1990 |
| .506 72 | Administration of Luis Albert Lacalle Herrera, 1990–1995 |
| .506 73 | Second administration of Julio María Sanguinetti, 1995–2000 |
| .506 74 | Administration of Jorge Batlle Ibáñez, 2000–2005 |
| .506 75 | Administration of Tabaré Vázquez, 2005–2010 |
| .506 76 | Administration of José Alberto Mujica Cordano, 2010– |

990 **History of Australasia, Pacific Ocean islands, Atlantic Ocean islands, Arctic islands, Antarctica, extraterrestrial worlds**

- .01–.09 Standard subdivisions of Australasia, Pacific Ocean islands, Atlantic Ocean islands, Arctic islands, Antarctica, extraterrestrial worlds together; of Australasia alone; of Pacific Ocean islands alone

As modified under 930–990

[991] **[Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 17

[992] **[Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 17

993 ***New Zealand**

- | | |
|------|---|
| .01 | Early history to 1840 |
| | Including history of Maori before European settlement, of European settlers |
| .02 | Colonial period, 1840–1908 |
| | Class here 19th century |
| | <i>For 1800–1840, see 993.01</i> |
| .021 | Period as a Crown colony, 1840–1853 |
| | Including New Zealand Wars of 1843–1847 |

*Add as instructed under 930–990

- .022 Period of provincial governments, 1853–1876
 Class here comprehensive works on New Zealand Wars
 For New Zealand Wars of 1843–1847, see 993.021
- .023 Period of centralized government, 1876–1908
- .03 1908–1999
 Class here Dominion period, 1908–1947
- .031 1908–1918
- .032 1918–1945
- .035 1945–1969
- .037 1970–1984
- .038 1984–1999
- .04 2000–
- .041 2000–2019
- .041 1 2000–2009
- .041 2 2010–2019

994 *Australia

- .01 Early history to 1788
- .02 Period of settlement and growth, 1788–1851
 Class here 19th century
 For 1851–1899, see 994.03
- .03 Period of development of self government, 1851–1901
- .031 Period of gold discovery and consolidation, 1851–1891
- .032 1891–1901
- .04 Period of Commonwealth, 1901–
 Class here 20th century
 For 1945–1966, see 994.05; for 1966–1999, see 994.06; for 2000 to present, see 994.07
- .041 1901–1922
- .042 1922–1945
 Including first prime ministership of Robert Menzies, 1939–1941
- .05 1945–1966
 Class here second prime ministership of Robert Menzies, 1949–1966

- .06 1966–1999
- .061 1966–1972
- .062 Prime ministership of Gough Whitlam, 1972–1975
- .063 Prime ministership of Malcolm Fraser, 1975–1983
- .064 Prime ministership of Bob Hawke, 1983–1991
- .065 Prime ministership of Paul Keating, 1991–1996
- .066 1996–1999
- Class here prime ministership of John Howard, 1996–2007
- For prime ministership of John Howard during 2000–2007, see 994.071*
- .07 2000–
- .071 Later part of prime ministership of John Howard, 2000–2007
- .072 2007–

995 †New Guinea and neighboring countries of Melanesia

Class here Oceania

Subdivisions are added for New Guinea and neighboring countries of Melanesia together, for New Guinea alone

Class Polynesia in 996

> 995.1–995.7 New Guinea

Class comprehensive works in 995

.1 *Western New Guinea (Irian Barat)

.101–.104 Historical periods

Add to base number 995.10 the numbers following 959.80 in 959.801–959.804, e.g., period of administration of Soekarno 995.1035

.3 *Papua New Guinea

Class here New Guinea region

For Papuan region, see 995.4; for Highlands region, see 995.6; for Momase region, see 995.7; for Bismarck Archipelago, see 995.8; for North Solomons Province, see 995.92

.301 Early history to 1884

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .302 1884–1942
 Class here 20th century
For 1942–1945, see 995.303; for 1945–1975, see 995.304; for 1975–1999, see 995.305
- .302 1 1884–1921
 Class here German New Guinea
- .302 2 1921–1942
 Class here period as Territory of New Guinea, 1921–1949
For 1942–1945, see 995.303; for 1945–1949, see 995.304
- .303 Period of World War II, 1942–1945
- .304 1945–1975
 Class here Territory of Papua and New Guinea, 1949–1975
- .305 Period of independence, 1975–
- .4 *Papuan region**
- .401 Early history to 1884
- .402 1884–1942
 Class here 20th century
For 1942–1945, see 995.403; for 1945–1975, see 995.404; for 1975–1999, see 995.405
- .402 1 Period as British New Guinea, 1884–1906
- .402 2 1906–1942
 Class here period as Territory of Papua, 1906–1949
For 1942–1945, see 995.403; for 1945–1949, see 995.404
- .403 Period of World War II, 1942–1945
- .404 1945–1975
 Class here Papuan region as a part of Territory of Papua and New Guinea, 1949–1975
- .405 Period of independence, 1975–
- .6 *Highlands region**
- .601–.605 Historical periods
 Add to base number 995.60 the numbers following 995.30 in 995.301–995.305, e.g., period of World War II 995.603
- .7 *Momase (Northern coastal) region**

.701–.705 Historical periods

Add to base number 995.70 the numbers following 995.30 in
995.301–995.305, e.g., period of World War II 995.703

.8 *Bismarck Archipelago

.801–.805 Historical periods

Add to base number 995.80 the numbers following 995.30 in
995.301–995.305, e.g., period of World War II 995.803

.9 †Other parts of Melanesia

.92 *North Solomons Province

.920 1–.920 5 Historical periods

Add to base number 995.920 the numbers following 995.30 in
995.301–995.305, e.g., period of World War II 995.9203

.93 †Solomon Islands

.95 †Vanuatu

.97 †New Caledonia

996 Polynesia and other Pacific Ocean islands

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions of Polynesia and other Pacific Ocean islands
together, of Polynesia alone

As modified under 930–990

.1 †Southwest central Pacific, and isolated islands of southeast Pacific

.11 †Fiji

.12 †Tonga (Friendly Islands)

.13 †American Samoa

.14 †Samoa

.15 †Tokelau (Union Islands)

.16 †Wallis and Futuna Islands

.18 †Isolated islands of southeast Pacific

.2 †South central Pacific Ocean islands

.3 †Southeast central Pacific Ocean islands

For isolated islands of southeast Pacific, see 996.18

.4 †Line Islands (Equatorial Islands)

.5 †West central Pacific Ocean islands (Micronesia)

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

- .6 †Federated States of Micronesia and Republic of Palau**
- .7 †Mariana Islands**
- .8 †Islands of eastern Micronesia**
- .81 †Kiribati
- .82 †Tuvalu
- .83 †Marshall Islands
- .85 †Nauru (Pleasant Island)
- .9 Hawaii and neighboring north central Pacific Ocean islands**
- .900 01–.900 08 Standard subdivisions of north central Pacific islands
As modified under 930–990
- .900 09 Historical periods; areas, regions, places in general; biography of
north central Pacific islands
- .900 090 1–.900 090 5 Historical periods
Add to base number 996.900090 the numbers following
—090 in notation 0901–0905 from Table 1, e.g., north
central Pacific islands during 20th century 996.9000904
- .900 091–.900 099 Areas, regions, places in general; biography
As modified under 930–990
- .900 1–.900 9 Standard subdivisions of Hawaii
As modified under 930–990
-
- > 996.902–996.904 Historical periods of Hawaii
Class comprehensive works in 996.9
- .902 Early history to 1898
- .902 7 Period of kingdom, 1810–1893
- .902 8 Period of republic, 1893–1898
- .903 Territorial period, 1898–1959
Class here 20th century
For 1959–1999, see 996.9041
- .904 Statehood period, 1959–
- .904 1 1959–1999
- .904 2 2000–
- .99 †Outlying islands

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

997 †Atlantic Ocean islands

For each specific island or group of islands not provided for here, see the island or group of islands, e.g., Azores 946.99

.1 †Falkland Islands, South Georgia and South Sandwich Islands, Bouvet Island**.11 *Falkland Islands (Islas Malvinas)****.110 1** Early history to 1832

Including French, British, Spanish, Argentine presence

.110 2 British period, 1832–

Including 19th century

*For 1800–1832, see 997.1101***.110 24** †Falkland Islands War, 1982**.3 †Saint Helena and dependencies****998 †Arctic islands and Antarctica****.2 †Greenland****999 Extraterrestrial worlds**

Class here extraterrestrial civilization, extraterrestrial intelligence, SETI (search for extraterrestrial intelligence)

Do not add from table under 930–990

*Add as instructed under 930–990

†Add as instructed under 930–990; however, do not add historical periods

‡Add as instructed under 940–990